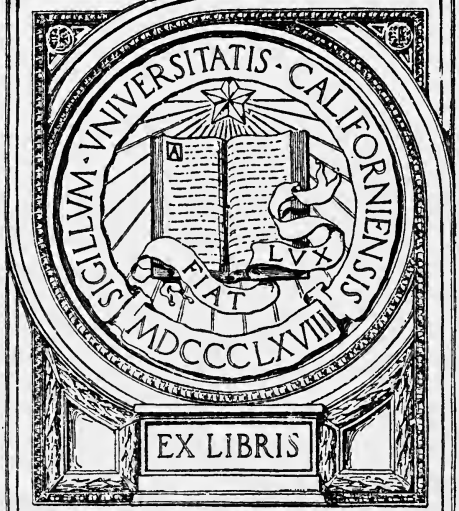
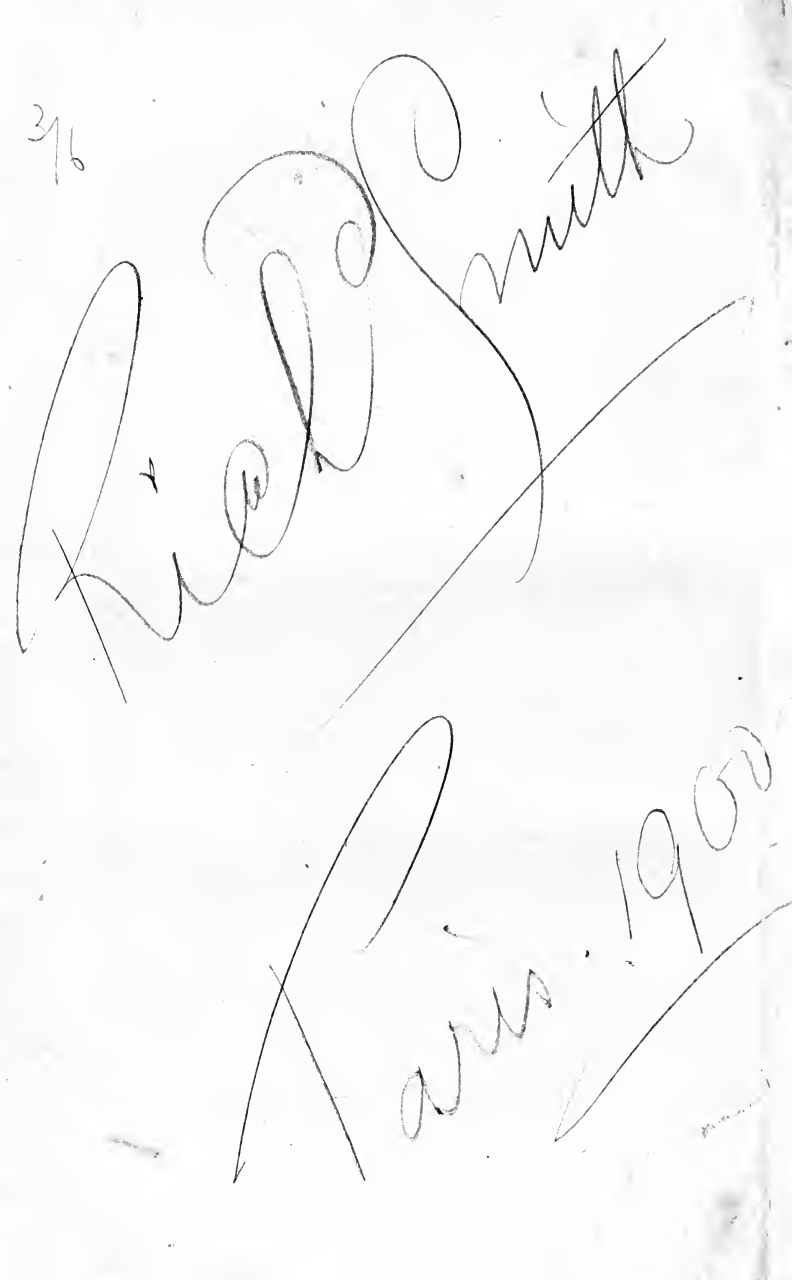
GIFT OF




760
R 468

Chambers.
Paris, 1912



3/6

Rich Smith

Paris. 1900

A

# LATIN GRAMMAR

## FOR SCHOOLS

BY

HENRY JOHN ROBY,

AUTHOR OF 'A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE FROM PLAUTUS TO SUETONIUS' IN TWO PARTS.

---

Dicta sunt omnia antequam præciperentur: mox ea scriptores observata et collecta ediderunt. QUINTIL.

---

London:

MACMILLAN AND CO.

1885

[*All Rights reserved.*]

*STEREOTYPED EDITION.*

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

Cambridge:
PRINTED BY C. J. CLAY, M.A. AND SON,
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

PA 2087
K65
1885
MAIN

# PREFACE.

THIS book is in the main an abridgment for school purposes of my larger Latin Grammar, but the abridgment is very unequal, some parts being reproduced with slight omissions, some parts being largely reduced, and others again being rewritten. Under the last head fall especially chaps. i and ii of Book I, and chap. vi of Book II. Of the last-named chapter, part, particularly § 132, contains an analysis which is, I think, new and interesting. I have added an English translation of the Examples in almost the whole of the Syntax. It will be found that in some cases I have given the ordinary English equivalent, whilst in others I have aimed rather at explaining the Latin construction. Three Appendices are new, viz. those on Metre, on Grammatical and Rhetorical terms, and on Latin authors. Some changes in arrangement have been made (e.g. as regards degrees of comparison, and Numerals) to suit ordinary usage.

The Index has been made fuller than is usual in a book of this class—so full, that it may not be unimportant to observe that the book is really intended not for reference, but for study. The lists are not exhaustive, the statements of occurrence or non-occurrence of forms or expressions must not be taken too literally, but only as approximations to the truth, with especial regard to the classical authors and usages of recognized authority in schools; and many of the rarer usages are not noticed at all, but left to be picked up in the student's own reading, or obtained, when needed, from a dictionary.

260526

I have given Greek nouns in considerable detail, partly because some of my readers may not be Greek scholars, and partly because a certain mass of examples is necessary to stamp on the mind the general treatment of Greek nouns by Latin writers. Chaps. xix, xxi, and xxii should be studied, because they group the verbs according to their natural relations, but in my judgment the best way of getting up the (so-called) irregular verbs is learning them, by sheer memory, as given in the list in chap. xxiv. They are not reducible to very definite rules, and a page of mixed verbs tests the student far better than small sorted packets.

The number of Examples in the Syntax has purposely been kept small in order that the main lines of the analysis may be more clearly seen than was possible in the larger work. If a student once gets the classification fairly into his head, he will not find much difficulty in increasing the number of specimens from his daily reading of authors or in assigning the new ones to their proper classes.

The sectional numbering has been carried throughout the book, including the Appendices. It is merely for the purpose of reference, and is sometimes quite independent of the internal division of the matter.

Prof. A. S. Wilkins of Owens College has kindly looked over several of the proof sheets. Had I submitted them all to him, my readers would, doubtless, have been spared some errors of author and printer which I have, and possibly more which I have not, noticed. I shall be much obliged for any corrections or suggestions (addressed to the publishers).

24 *July*, 1880.

IN this third edition a few corrections have been made and the translation of the Examples in the Syntax has been completed.

H. J. R.

*October*, 1885.

# CONTENTS.

## Book I. Sounds.


| CHAP. | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|
| I. | Introduction and Alphabet | 1 |
| II. | Phonetic Composition | 5 |
| III. | Quantity of Syllables | 13 |
| IV. | Accentuation | 19 |


## Book II. Inflexions.


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I. | Inflexions in general | 22 |
| II. | Inflexions of Nouns | 23 |
| III. | Of Gender | 25 |
| IV. | Of Noun Inflexions of Number | 30 |
| V. | First Declension | 32 |
| VI. | Second Declension | 38 |
| VII. | Greek Nouns, esp. Class I | 52 |
| VIII. | Greek Nouns, Class II | 55 |
| IX. | Degrees of Nouns Adjective | 61 |
| X. | Numerals | 65 |
| XI. | Peculiar Inflexions of certain Pronouns | 71 |
| XII. | Adverbs and Conjunctions | 76 |
| | Appendix to Chaps. XI. XII. Pronominal Adjectives and Adverbs | 84 |
| XIII. | Inflexions of Verbs | 86 |
| XIV. | Examples of the system of Inflexions of Verbs | 89 |
| XV. | Inflexions of **sum** and other Irregular Verbs | 104 |
| XVI. | Inflexions of Person, Number and Voice | 108 |
| XVII. | Inflexions of Mood | 111 |
| XVIII. | Tenses formed from Present Stem | 113 |

| CHAP. | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|
| XIX. | Of Verb Stems, esp. the Present Stem | 117 |
| XX. | Tenses formed from Perfect Stem | 122 |
| XXI. | Formation of Perfect Stem | 123 |
| XXII. | Formation of Supine Stem | 128 |
| XXIII. | Of the traditional classification of Verbs | 133 |
| XXIV. | List of Verbs, with Perfects, Supines, &c. | 134 |

BOOK III. WORD-FORMATION.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I. | Elements of Word-formation | 154 |
| II. | Derivative Suffixes | 156 |
| III. | Labial and Guttural Noun-stems | 158 |
| IV. | Dental Noun-stems | 160 |
| V. | Lingual Noun-stems | 165 |
| VI. | Vowel Noun-stems | 170 |
| VII. | Verb-Stems | 173 |
| VIII. | Composition | 176 |
| IX. | Interjections | 182 |

BOOK IV. SYNTAX OR USE OF INFLEXIONAL FORMS.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I. | Classification of Words | 184 |
| II. | Parts of a Simple Sentence and Use of the parts of Speech | 186 |
| III. | Use of Noun-Inflexions; especially those of Gender and Number | 192 |
| IV. | Use of Cases | 195 |
| V. | Use of Nominative Case | 196 |
| VI. | Use of Accusative Case | 197 |
| VII. | Use of Dative Case | 201 |
| VIII. | Use of Locative and Ablative Cases | 204 |
| IX. | Use of Genitive Case | 212 |
| X. | Use of Infinitive | 216 |
| XI. | Tenses of Infinitive | 219 |
| XII. | Use of Verbal Nouns | 222 |
| XIII. | Use of Verb-Inflexions. Inflexions of Voice | 227 |
| XIV. | Use of Verbal Inflexions of Person and Number | 230 |
| XV. | Of the Indicative and Imperative Moods and their Tenses | 234 |
| XVI. | Of the Subjunctive Mood and its Tenses | 244 |
| XVII. | Typical Subjunctives | 249 |

| CHAP. | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|
| XVIII. | Use of Moods, especially Subjunctive, in (A) Hypothetical and (B) Conditional clauses | 258 |
| XIX. | Use of Subjunctive Mood to express desire (C, D) | 270 |
| XX. | Use of Subjunctive Mood to express causation (E, F) | 284 |
| XXI. | Use of Subjunctive Mood to express alien or contingent assertions | 296 |
| XXII. | Of Reported Speech | 307 |
| XXIII. | Order of Words and Sentences | 312 |

SUPPLEMENT TO SYNTAX.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I. | Prepositions and quasi-prepositional Adverbs | 317 |
| II. | Conjunctions | 331 |
| III. | Negative particles | 335 |
| IV. | Interrogative particles | 339 |
| V. | Pronouns | 340 |

APPENDICES.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A. | Money, Measures, Weights | 348 |
| B. | Division of Time and Expression of Date | 352 |
| C. | Names of Relations by Blood and Marriage | 354 |
| D. | Elements and Terms of Latin Metre | 356 |
| E. | Explanation of some Grammatical and Rhetorical terms | 367 |
| F. | Principal (extant) Latin Authors | 372 |
| G. | Abbreviations | 375 |

TRANSLATION OF EXAMPLES IN SYNTAX, §§ 439—761 . 378

INDEX . . . . . 412

# BOOK I.

## *SOUNDS.*

### CHAPTER I.

### INTRODUCTION and ALPHABET.

1 LATIN was the language spoken by the inhabitants of a district on the western side of Italy hundreds of years B.C. Of this tract the chief town was Rome, and the conquests of the Romans spread the language over the neighbouring countries. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, Portugal, Wallachia, and of parts of eastern Switzerland, are derived from it; and mainly through the influence of the Christian Church it was the language principally used in European literature, law, State documents, and learned intercourse, during the middle ages.

With the exception of a very few short inscriptions on stones and works of art, the earliest documents in Latin which are still preserved to us are a few fragments of Livius Andronicus and of Naevius, dating from about 240 B.C. or later. The earliest literary compositions in Latin in a complete state, are the plays of Plautus (born 254 B.C., died 184 B.C.). The best period of the Latin language and literature was comprised in the lifetimes of Cicero and Augustus. After about A.D. 120, the decline both in language and literature became more sensible.

Latin belongs to the Indo-European family of languages, and is most nearly related to Greek. Its alphabet was taken probably from that of the Dorian Greeks of the trading colony of Cumae in Campania. The forms of the letters were similar to, and in the time of Cicero almost the same as, the capital letters now in use in English and other languages of western Europe.

2 The following table contains the letters of the Latin alphabet as used in Cicero's time, with their names and probable pronunciation.

| Sign. | Name. | Pronounced as English |
|---|---|---|
| A | a | *a* in *papa* |
| B | be | *b* |
| C | ce | *k* |
| D | de | *d* |
| E | e | *a* in *late*, or *e* in *fête* |
| F | ef | *f* |
| G | ge | *g* hard, as in *give* |
| H | ha | *h* in *hat* |
| I | i | *ee* in *feet*, or *i* in *machine* |
| K | ka | *k* |
| L | el | *l* |
| M | em | *m* (except at end of words) |
| N | en | *n*, but, when before a guttural, as *ng* |
| O | o | *o*, approaching to *aw* |
| P | pe | *p* |
| Q | qu | *q* = *k* |
| R | er | *r* (trilled) |
| S | es | *s* sharp (as in *hiss*, not *his*) |
| T | te | *t* |
| V | u | *oo* in *shoot*, or *u* in *brute* |
| X | ix | *x* |

To which may be added two letters used only in copying Greek words, namely:

| | |
|---|---|
| Y | *u* French, or *ü* Germ. |
| Z | Engl. *z* or more likely Engl. *j* or *dz* |

G was not distinguished in writing from C until, it is said, the third century B.C.

## CONSONANTS.

3 Consonants are classified according to the character of the sound.

Of the Latin consonants **p**, **b**; **c**, **g**; **t**, **d** are *momentary*, or *non-continuous* (often called *mutes*); that is to say, the voice cannot dwell upon them: **s** and **f** are *continuous*.

Again, **p**, **c**, **t**, **s**, **f** are *voiceless*; i.e. they are not accompanied by any sound of the voice; **b**, **g**, **d** and usually **r**, **l** are *voiced*. (For *voiceless* the terms *sharp*, *hard*, *surd*, and the Latin **tenues** are often used; for *voiced* are used *flat*, *soft*, *sonant*, and the Latin **mediae**.)

4 **c** and **g** are sounded at the soft palate (i.e. the part nearest to the *throat*), and are called *guttural*; **t** and **d** at the forward part of the palate near the gums, and are called *dental*; **p** and **b** at the lips, and are called *labial*; **f** is a *labio-dental*, being pronounced between the under lip and upper teeth.

5 **r** and **l** are called *liquids*[1], or *linguals*; **r** is caused by the breath passing over the tip of the tongue, while it is vibrated; **l** by the breath passing over the sides of the back of the tongue. In pronouncing **s**, the breath passes through a small opening over the centre of the forepart of the tongue, which is pressed against the palate near the gums.

6 If the uvula be lowered so as to obstruct the passage of the air through the mouth, the breath passes through the nose, and a *nasal* sound is produced. If the organs are otherwise in the positions required for **b**, **d**, **g**, but the air passes into the nose, **m**, **n**, **ng** (the last being a single sound as in *sing*) are produced. In Latin, **n** has this sound of **ng** when it comes before a guttural, as in **uncus**, **unguis**, pronounced **ung-cus**, **ung-gwis**.

7 **k** and **q** had the same sound as **c**. But **k** went out of use at a very early period, except in a few old abbreviations; e.g. **K** represented the name **Kaeso**, and **K.** or **KAL.** in dates stood for **kalendis** or **kalendas**. **q** is always followed by **u**; and **qu**, sounded nearly as in English *queen*, was regarded in prosody as a single consonant. **x** was merely written instead of **cs**.

8 **h** was a mark of aspiration, like a slight English **h**. In several words, the spelling, probably following on the pronunciation, sometimes prefixed, sometimes omitted, **h**; e.g. **hārēna**, or **ārēna**, **hordeum**, or **ordeum**; **hĕdĕra**, or **ĕdĕra**, &c.

## Vowels.

9 Of the vowels **a** is the simplest: for **e** and **i** (called *lingual* vowels), the back part of the tongue is raised; for **o** and **u** (called *labial* vowels), the lips are protruded. **e** is intermediate between **a** and **i**, and **o** between **a** and **u**.

10 **i** and **u**, when pronounced rapidly before other vowels, become half-consonants. When they have this character, they are in modern times often written and printed **j** and **v** respectively. The Romans, though aware of the difference in sound, made no such distinction in writing. The sound of **i** was as German **j**, or English **y**, as in *yes*, *you*. The sound of **v** was as French **ou** in *oui*, or (nearly) English **w** in *we*. In some parts of Italy, e.g. near Pompeii, Latin **v** as semi-vowel was probably pronounced as the South German **w**, which being sounded between the lips, differs from the English **v**, which is sounded between the under lip and upper teeth. This South German **w** is very close in sound to **b**, and thus many inscriptions after the second century and many mss. write with **b** words properly requiring **v**; e.g. **bixit** for **vixit**.

11 Diphthongs are sounds produced in the passage from one vowel sound to another inclusive. Besides the combinations of **u** and **i** with other vowels just spoken of (which are not generally called diphthongs), Latin has the following diphthongs; **au**, **eu** (rare), **ae**, **oe**, **ei**; also in

[1] **m** and **n** are by some writers classed as liquids, as well as **l** and **r**.

early inscriptions **ai**, **ou**, and **oi**. **ei** appears to have gone out of use in Augustus' time (except in the interjection **hei**).

The right rule for pronouncing diphthongs is to sound the constituent vowels rapidly in the proper order. The actual sound will, of course, differ according to the precise quality of the vowels, and the time during which the voice dwells on them severally. Hence we get as follows:

**au** as German **au**; a broader sound than ordinary English **ow** in *cow*, *town*.

**eu** as **ow** in a cockney or yankee pronunciation of *cow*, *town*.

**ae** nearly as the single vowel **a** in *hat* lengthened.

**ei** nearly as in English *feint*, or as **ai** in *faint*.

**oe** between **oi** in *boil*, and **ei** in *feint*.

## CAUTIONS.

12 The following cautions may be useful to English students.

Let each vowel have the same character of sound when short as when long; only do not dwell on the vowel when short. The English short **o** and **e** (in *not*, *pet*) are probably not far from the true Latin sounds; and these sounds should be lengthened for long **o** and long **e**. (The ordinary English long **o** (e.g. in *note*) and **a** (e.g. in *fate*) are really diphthongs = Latin **ou**, **ei** respectively.) Conversely **u** in *brute* (= **oo** in *pool*) and **i** in *machine* (= **ee** in *feet*) are right for Latin, and the short Latin **u** and **i** were those same sounds pronounced quickly. (The English short **u** in *pull* and **i** in *fit* are different from the Latin **ŭ**, **ĭ**. A Frenchman pronouncing these English words would give the Latin short **u** and **i**, though to English ears the Frenchman's pronunciation often *appears* to make the vowels long.)

The common English vowel heard in *burn*, *dull*, *irk*, &c. should be altogether avoided in Latin. And the true vowel sound should be always given, whether the syllable has the accent or not. A long vowel should always be pronounced long, whether open or before one or more consonants; a short vowel always short, even though the syllable be long in prosody.

13 **r** should be always trilled, and run closely on to the preceding vowel. In English we often omit the trill (unless a vowel follows), and we usually insert a vowel sound immediately before it. Thus sound **ēre** as English *ā-ra*, not as *airy;* **ĭre** as English *ee-ra*, not as *eary:* **per** as in *per-ry*, not as in *pert* (as commonly known in English).

**s** always as in *hiss*, not like **z**, as in English *his*. This mispronunciation is very common after **e** or **n**. Pronounce **rēs** as *race*, not as *raze;* **dens** as *dense*, not as *denze*.

**ti** always as **tee** (long or short as the word may require), not as *sh* or *shi:* e.g. **natio** as *nah-tee-o*, not as *nay-shĭo*.

**bs** as **ps**, not as **bz**: **x** as **ks**, as in *axe;* not as **gz** (as in *exact*).

14 TABLES OF LATIN SOUNDS.

| | Non-Continuous. Voiceless. | Non-Continuous. Voiced. | Nasal. Usually voiced. | Continuous. Voiceless. | Continuous. Voiced. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Labial (*lip* sounds). | **p** | **b** | **m** | | |
| Labiodental. | | | | **f** | |
| Guttural (*throat* sounds). | **c, k, g** | **g** | **n** before a guttural. | | |
| Dental (*tooth* sounds). | **t** | **d** | **n** (when not before a guttural). | **s** | |
| Lingual (*tongue* sounds). | | | | | **r, l** (usually) |

The vowels may be arranged thus, so as to suggest their respective affinities.

**a**

**e** **o**

**i** **y** **u**

## CHAPTER II.

### PHONETIC COMPOSITION.

15 A SYLLABLE is such a sound, or combination of sounds, as can be uttered with one breath. It may consist of a vowel (or diphthong) only, or of a vowel (or diphthong) combined with one or more consonants. Some combinations of consonants can be sounded only if a vowel precedes, others can be sounded only if a vowel follows.

A word consists of as many syllables, as it has vowels separately pronounced.

In ordinary pronunciation, a consonant between two vowels is uttered partly with both. The real division of the syllables is in the middle of the consonant. Thus **pater** is really divided in the middle of the **t**, the first syllable being **pat**, the second being **ter**. The **t** is not sounded twice, but one half is sounded with each syllable.

(In English double letters are often used, where only one is really sounded. For instance, in *waggon* we have only one **g** pronounced: in *wag gone* both are sounded as well as written.) When consonants are doubled in Latin, probably they should be sounded as two, but this is not certain.

In Latin pronunciation, the tendency was to pronounce with each vowel as many of the consonants immediately following, as could be readily pronounced with it.

16 A syllable may begin with any vowel or diphthong, or single consonant. But of combinations of consonants, the following only are found in Latin words as initial (i. e. before the first vowel).

(1) A non-continuous consonant or **f** followed by **r** or **l**, viz. **pl, pr; bl, br; cl, cr; gl, gr; tr; fl, fr**; but not **tl, dl, dr**: e.g. **plaudo, prandeo; blandus, brevis; clamo, crudus; gloria, gravis; traho; fluo, frango** (**draco, Druidae** and perhaps **Drusus** are foreign words).

(2) **s** followed by a sharp non-continuous consonant, with or without a following **r** or **l**, viz. **sp, spl, spr; sc, scr; st, str**; e. g. **sperno, splendeo, sprevi; scio, scribo; sto, struo.**

(3) **gn** was found in the older language; e.g. **gnātus, gnosco, gnārus**: but the **g** was usually omitted in Cicero's time, except in **Gnaeus.** (So in English *gnaw, gnat, gnarl*, the **g** is rarely pronounced.)

17 **i** and **u** when used as semivowels are always *before* (not after) the vowel of the syllable. They were sometimes so pronounced when following consonants in the same syllable; e. g. **suavis,** pronounced **swāwis, scio,** in verse pronounced **scyo** sometimes.

In the combinations **ai** and **ei** when followed by a vowel, the **i** both made a diphthong with the preceding **a** or **e** and also was pronounced like English **y**, e. g. **Staienus,** pronounced **Stai-yenus; Pompeius,** pronounced **Pompei-yus.** Cicero wrote the **i** double, e. g. **Pompeiius.**

## PHONETIC CHANGES.

18 Many words in the Latin language underwent changes which made them easier to pronounce.

### *Omission of Sounds or Syllables.*

19 Thus the last syllable, which in Latin is always unaccented, was frequently slurred in pronunciation.

Final **m** was frequently omitted in early inscriptions; e. g. **Scipione, optumo,** for **Scipionem, optumom**: and in the classical period was disregarded in verse, when the next word began with a vowel; e. g. **verum haec tantum alias** was pronounced **veru haec tantu alias,** the **u-hae** or **u-a** being pronounced in the time of a single syllable.

Final **m** before an initial consonant was perhaps also omitted in pronunciation, but (if Mr A. J. Ellis' highly ingenious theory be true) if there was no pause in sense between the words, the initial consonant of the following word was doubled, thus **omnem crede diem tibi diluxisse supremum** was pronounced **omneccrede diettibi diluxisse supremu.**

Final **d**, which was the sign of the ablative singular in early times, was omitted in classical times: thus the prepositions **pro, ante, post,** stand for **prod** (cf. **prod-eo**), *in the fore part*, **antid,** *in front*, **postid,** *in the hind part.*

Final **s** was frequently omitted; as for instance in early inscriptions, **Cornelio, Herenio,** for **Cornelios, Herenios** (later **Cornelius, Herennius**); and in Lucretius and earlier poets it is omitted in scansion; **omnibu' princeps; Quid dubitas quin omni' sit haec rationi' potestas?** (Lucr. 2. 53).

20 An entire syllable was sometimes omitted in what would otherwise have been too long a word, especially if several weak syllables came together:

e.g. **hŏmĭcīdium** for **hŏmĭnĭ-cīdium**; **venēfĭcium** for **vēnēnĭ-fĭcium**; **corpŭlentius** for **corpŏrŭlentius**; **vŏluntas** for **vŏlunti-tas.**

*Omission or Change of Consonants.*

21 When three consonants come together, the middle one is often omitted: e.g. **fulmen** for **fulg-men**; **fultus** for **fulg-tus**; **mul-si** for **mulgsi**; **tormentum** for **torq-mentum**; **artus**, *narrow*, for **arctus**; **pars** for **parts**; **mens** for **ments**; **regens** for **regents.**

22 Of two consonants the former is often omitted or assimilated to the latter.

23 If the consonant is omitted altogether, the preceding vowel is often lengthened so as to maintain the length or weight of the syllable: e.g. **exāmen** for **exagmen**; **jūmentum** for **jug-mentum**; **caementum** (*quarried stone*) for **caed-mentum**; **sēmestris** for **sex-mestris**; **pōno** for **pos-no**; **lūna** for **luc-na**; **dēni** for **dec-ni**; **jū-dex** for **jus-dex**; **īdem** for **is-dem**; **ănēnum** for **aes-num**; **dīmoveo** for **dismoveo, dīduco** for **disduco**; **dīlabor** for **dislabor**; **trāmitto** for **transmitto** (which would become **trasmitto**).

24 A consonant may be assimilated to another either completely or partially; that is, it may either become the same consonant, or it may be changed into another consonant of the same character as the preceding consonant.

25 *Complete assimilation* is chiefly found, either (*a*) when both consonants are of the same character, or (*b*) in the case of prepositions in composition.

(*a*) **ces-si** for **ced-si**; **fossus** for **fod-sus**; **sum-mus** for **sub-mus**; **sella** for **sed-la**; **puella** for **puer-la**; **columella** for **columen-la.** When an assimilation produces double **s**, often one **s** only was written; e.g. **prōsa** for **prorsa** (i.e. **proversa**) **oratio**; **rūsus**, old **russus**, for **rursus**; **tostum** for **torstum**; **quotiēs** for **quotiens**; **vicēsumus** for **vicensumus**; **mīsi** for **mit-si**; **clausi** for **claud-si.**

(*b*) **ad** in compounds: **appello, accurro, aggero,** &c.
**ob** in **oppono, occurro,** &c.; **sub** in **suppono, succurro, suggero,** &c.
**ec** in **effugio,** &c.; **dis** in **diffugio,** &c.; **com** in **corruo, colluo,** &c.

26 *Partial assimilation* is found chiefly in the following cases:

(*a*) A voiced consonant is changed into the corresponding voiceless consonant; e.g. **scrip-tus** for **scrib-tus**; **ac-tus** for **ag-tus**; **auxi** (=**auc-si**) for **aug-si**; **optineo** for **obtineo.** This change was necessary for articulation, even where the spelling was not altered.

(*b*) **m** is changed into **n** if a dental follow; **n** into **m** if a labial follow: e.g. **con-tero** for **com-tero**; **exin-de** for **exim-de**; **im-pero** for **in-pero**; **im-berbis** for **in-berbis,** &c.

Before a guttural **n** is written, but pronounced as the guttural nasal, i.e. as **ng** in English; e.g. **inquam** pronounced **ing-qwam.**

27 Another change very common in Latin is that of **tt** or **dt** to **ss** or **s**; e.g. **defensum** for **defendtum**; **missum** for **mit-tum**; **nexum** (i.e. **nec-sum**) for **nect-tum**; &c. So always when a suffix beginning with **t** is appended to a form ending in **d** or **t**. (The right theory of this change is that the **t** of the suffix is changed to **s**, and the final **d** or **t** of the stem is assimilated to it; e.g. **mit-tum, mit-sum, missum.**)

28 **s** between two vowels changed to **r**; thus **pignŭs** makes **pignŏris**; **ŏnŭs, ŏnĕra** (but shows its proper final consonant in **onustus**); **pulvis, pulvĕris**; **Păpīrius** was formerly **Papīsius**; **Nŭmĕrius** is for **Nŭmĭsius**; **dĭs-** in composition becomes **dīr-**; e.g. **dīrĭmo** for **dĭs-ĕmo**; **dīrĭbeo** for **dis-hăbeo**, &c.

29 After **m** and before a dental **p** is sometimes inserted; e.g. **sumptus, sumpsi** for **sum-tus, sum-si**; **hiemps** for **hiems.** The **p** is in fact almost involuntarily pronounced in passing from **m** to **t** or **s.** (Analogously in Greek *ἀνδρὸς* for *ἀν-ρος*, *μεσημβρία* for *μεσημερία*; in French **vendredi** from **veneris dies**; **nombre** from **numerus.**)

### *Omission or Change of Vowels.*

30 Vowels are sometimes changed in quantity or in quality.

### *Change in Quantity of Vowels.*

Change in quantity is either from short to long, or from long to short.

31 Short vowels are changed to long (the quality of the vowel usually remaining the same):

(*a*) From the absorption of a consonant; e.g. **cāsum** for **cadtum (cassum)**; **exāmen** for **exagmen**; **jūmentum** for **jŭgmentum**; **pōno** for **posno.**

(*b*) In forming the perfect tense; e.g. **lĕgo**, perf. **lēgi**; **ĕmo**, **ēmi**; **sĕdeo**, **sēdi**; **fŭgio**, **fūgi**; **vĭdeo**, **vīdi**; **fŏdio**, **fōdi**; but **a** when lengthened in perfects becomes **e**; e.g. **ăgo**, **ēgi**; **căpio**, **cēpi**; **făcio**, **fēci** (except before **u**, e.g. **lăuo**, **lāvi**).

(*c*) In some compounds or derivatives; e.g. **plăcēre, plācāre**; **sŏnare, persōna**; **sŏpor, sōpire**; **rĕgĕre, rex, rēgis**; **sĕdere, sēdes**; **tĕgere, tēgula**; **dŭx, dūcis, dūco**; **mălĕ-dĭc-us, dīcare, dīco**; **fĭdes, perfĭdus, fīdo.** (It is assumed in these cases that the *short* vowel is the original.)

(*d*) By transposition, **ăr, ĕr** (which is often for **ĭr**), &c. become **rā, rē, rĭ**, &c.

e. g. **ster-no, strā-vi, strā-men**; **cer-no, crē-vi, crĭ-men**; **serpo, (s)rēpo**; **ter-nus, trĭ-nus**; **tĕro, trīvi, trītus**; and probably **por, prō**; **sŭpĕr-ĭmus (supermus), sŭprē-mus.**

(*e*) By contraction with another vowel (see instances below).

32 Long vowels are changed to short, chiefly in the final syllable; e.g. **calcăr** for **calcāre, bĭdentăl** for **bidentāle**; **ămātŏr, mājŏr** from stems with **o** long; in verbs **ămŏr, ămăt, monĕt, audĭt**, all of which are pro-

perly long by contractions (for **ăma-or, ăma-ĭt,** &c.); **audīvērīs** (sometimes); so **ămŏ, rēgŏ, cŭpĭŏ** occasionally in later poets; and many final syllables in Plautus; &c.

*Change in Quality of Vowels.*

33 Change in the quality of the vowel has usually been in this order: **a, o, u, e, i,** not the reverse; that is to say, an original **a** may change to any of these; **o** may change to **u, e,** or **i**; **u** may change to **e** or **i**; **e** may change to **i**; but an original **i** does not change to **a,** &c.

34 *Root* vowels are often changed when by a syllable being prefixed (as in composition) the root syllable loses the first place. The usual changes of radical vowels are as follows:

Radical **a** to **e** before a final consonant or two consonants, or **r**; e.g. **carpo, discerpo; răpio, correptus; damno, condemno; săcer, consĕcro; fallo, fefelli; pars, expers; făcio, artĭfex, effectus; annus, pĕrennis; părio, pepĕri; păro, impĕro;** &c.

Radical **a** to **i** before **ng,** or before any single consonant, except **r**; e.g. **pango, impingo; tango, attingo; pango, pĕpĭgi; tango, tĕtĭgi; răpio, corrĭpio; ăpiscor, indĭpiscor; făcio, effĭcio; rātus, irrĭtus; căpŭt, occĭpŭt; ămīcus, inīmīcus; făcies, sŭperfĭcies;** &c.

Radical **a** to **u** before labials or **l** with another consonant; e.g. **căpio, aucŭpari; tăberna, contŭbernium; lăvo, dīlŭvies; salto, insulto; calco, inculco;** &c.

Radical **e** to **i,** e.g. **lĕgo, collĭgo, dīlĭgo; ĕmo, ădĭmo; ĕgeo, indĭgeo; prĕmo, opprĭmo, tĕneo, rĕtĭneo.**

Radical **o** is occasionally changed to **u**; e.g. **ădŏleo, ădŭlescens;** radical **u** to **i**; e.g. **clŭpeus, clīpeus; lŭbet, lĭbet.**

The diphthong **ae** becomes in compounds **ī,** and **au** becomes **o** or **u**; e.g. **aestīmo, exīstīmo; aequus, inīquus; plaudo, explōdo; suffōco** from **fauces; accūso** from **causa; exclūdo** from **claudo.**

The *usual* changes of vowels in *suffixes* are as follows:

35 **a** in suffixes becomes **u** before **l, e** before **r** or **ll,** and **i** before other single consonants; e.g. **căsa, căsula; porta, portŭla; cista, cistella; Allia, Alliensis.**

36 **o** in the older language often gave place to **u** in the later language; e.g. **cōsentiont, consentiunt; vīvont, vīvunt; lōquontur, lōquuntur; pŏpŏlos, pŏpŭlus; volt, vult; mortuos** (nom. s.), **mortuus; quom, cum; fīlios, fīlius,** &c.;

but it is retained after **e, i** or **u**; e.g. **aureŏlus, ēbrĭŏlus, frīvŏlus.**

**o** was changed to **u** before two consonants or a final **s**; e.g. **carbŏn-, carbuncŭlus; mīnŏs-, mīnŭs, minuscŭlus; corpŏs-, corpŭs, corpuscŭlum;**

but also to **e** sometimes before two consonants, or when final; e.g. **mājor-, mājestas; faciundus** (probably earlier **faciondus**), **faciendus; ipse** (for **ipsŏs, ipsŏ-**); **taurĕ** (voc.) for **taurŏ-** or **taurōs;** &c.

**ŏ** in final stem syllable to **i**; e.g. **cardŏn-, cardĭnis; hŏmŏn-, hŏmĭnis; alto-, altĭtūdo; armo-, armĭpŏtens; fāto-, fātĭdicus.**

ŏ in final stem syllable to ĭ; e.g. **cardŏn-, cardĭnis; hŏmŏn-, hŏmĭnis; alto-, altĭtūdo; armo-, armĭpŏtens; fāto-, fātĭdĭcus.**

37 ŭ in the older (prae-Augustan) language is often found where ĭ is used in the later language; e.g. **maxŭmus, sanctissŭmus, vīcensŭmus, arcŭbus** (from **arcus**), **portŭbus, mancŭpem, căpŭtālem** became later **maxĭmus, sanctissĭmus, vīcēsĭmus, arcĭbus, portĭbus, mancĭpem, căpĭtālem.**

38 ĕ is found as final, where ĭ is found before **s** or **d**; e.g. **făcĭlĕ, făcĭlĭs; mărĕ, mărĭs; pŏtĕ, pŏtĭs; fortasse, fortassis; rĕgĕ, rĕgĭs; rēge, rēgĭs; fāteārĕ, fāteārĭs.**

ĕ is *changed* to ĭ in the final syllable of a stem to which a letter or syllable is suffixed:

either if ĕ be final in the stem, but the suffix begin with a consonant; e.g. **illĕ, illĭc; undĕ, undĭque; indĕ, indidem; antĕ, antistēs; bĕnĕ, bĕnignus; mŏnĕ-, mŏnĭtus; hăbĕ-, hăbĭto; rĕgĕ, rĕgĭte, rĕgĭto:**

or if ĕ be not final in the stem, but the suffix begin with a vowel; e.g. **ālēs** (for **ālet-s**), **ālīt-ĭs; pĕdēs** (for **pĕdet-s**), **pĕdĭt-ĭs; antistes** (for **antistets**), **antistĭt-a; agmĕn, agmĭn-ĭs; bĭceps, bĭcĭpĭt-em; vertex, vertĭc-ĭs; dĕcem, dĕcĭm-us.**

But (in the last-mentioned case) ĕ *remains* after **i**, or before **r** or **tr**; e.g. **ăries, ărietis; tĕnĕr, tenĕra; pĭpĕr, pĭpĕrĭs; gĕnĭtor, gĕnĕtrix; fĕro, rĕfĕro; sentio, consentio.**

ĕ (when not final in the stem) remains also if the suffix begin with a consonant; e.g. **ālēs** for **ālēt-s; obsĕs** for **obsĕd-s; nūtrīmĕn, nūtrīmen-tum** (compared with **nutrīmĭn-ĭs**); **sĕnex** (i.e. **senec-s**), **sĕnectus.**

39 Occasionally a vowel is assimilated to the vowel in the next syllable; e.g. **sĭmŭlo, sĭmĭlis; Aemĭlius** compared with **aemŭlus; fămĭlia** with **fămŭlus; exsĭlium** with **exsŭl.** In all these cases the **u**, which is both earlier than **i**, and has a special affinity to **l**, is changed to **i**, because an **i** follows the **l.**

*Affinity of vowels to consonants.*

40 It will be seen from the preceding, that some vowels appear to have special affinity to some consonants following. Thus we find

**u** before **l**; **e** before **ll**; comp. **vello, vulsum; percello, percŭli; fallo, fĕfelli; pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum.**

**e** before **r**; comp. **fĕro, confĕro** with **rĕgo, corrĭgo; ansĕr, ansĕrĭs** with **ālēs, ālĭtis**; &c.

**u** before **m**; the **u** however eventually gave way to ĭ, which is the ordinary short vowel in unaccented syllables; e.g. **mŏnŭmentum, maxŭmus, centēsŭmus**; later **mŏnĭmentum, maxĭmus, centēsĭmus.**

**e** before two consonants; **i** before one (not final); e.g. **nutrīmĕn, nutrīmĭnĭs, nutrīmentum; scando, conscendo** compared with **cāno, concĭno.**

**i** is especially frequent before the dentals **t**, **d**, **n** and **s**, but this is partly because it is the lightest vowel, and suffixes with **t**, **d**, **n**, **s** are especially frequent.

*Omission of Vowels.*

41 A short vowel is often omitted between two consonants; e.g. **i** has been dropped in **facilitas** for **făcĭlĭtas**; **misertum** for **mīsĕrĭtum**; **puertia** (Hor.) for **pŭerĭtia**; **postus** (Verg.) for **pŏsĭtus**; **replictus** (Verg.) for **replĭcĭtus**; **audacter** for **audācĭter**; **fert** for **fĕrĭt**; **valdē** for **vălĭdē**; **caldus** for **călĭdŭs**. And even when the vowel is radical; e.g. **pergo** for **perrĭgo** (from **per rĕgo**); **surgo** for **surrĭgo** (from **sub rĕgo**).

**ŭ** in suffixes **-cŭlo**, **-pŭlo**, especially in verse; e.g. **mănĭpŭlus** makes **mănĭplus**; **vincŭlum**, **vinclum**; **pĕrĭcŭlum**, **pĕrĭclum**; **cŏlŭmen** (Plaut.), **culmen**.

**ĕ** before **r**, e.g. **ăcĕr**, **ăcrĭs**; **ăgĕr**, **ăgrum**; **dextĕra**, **dextra**; **infĕra**, **infra**; **nostĕr**, **nostra**; also **mălignus** for **mălĭgĕnus**, **gigno** for **gĭgĕno**; **calfacere** for **calĕfacere**, &c.

*Other Changes.*

42 **ŏ** was in the earlier prae-Augustan language retained *after* **v**; e.g. **servŏs**, later **servŭs**. Hence when **o** in **qvo-** changed to **u**, the **v** was dropped, and **c** (sometimes) written for **q**. Thus **quom** became **cum**; **quoi**, **quor** became **cui**, **cur**; **aliquobi**, **alicŭbi**; **quŏquŏs** (Plaut.) became **cŏcŭs** (also written **coquus**), *a cook*; **ĕquŏs**, **ĕcŭs** (also **equus**); **loquontur**, **locuntur** (also **loquuntur**).

43 **h** and **v** between two vowels often dropped out, or the **v** was treated as a vowel, and the vowels, thus brought together, coalesced into a single vowel or a diphthong.

**dehĭbeo**, **praehĭbeo** (in Plautus) became **dēbeo**, **praebeo**; **comprĕhendo** became **comprendo**; **cŏhors**, **cors**; **nĭhil**, **nīl**; **mĭhi**, often **mi**; **dehinc**, **mehercŭles** are in verse sometimes treated, though not written, as if contracted into **denc**, **mercules**.

**amāvĕram**, **amāram**; **flēvĕram**, **flēram**; **amāvisse**, **amāsse**; **nāvĭta**, **nauta**; **ăvĭceps**, **auceps**; **aevĭtas**, **aetas**; **hovorsum**, **horsum**; **prōvĭdens**, **prūdens**; **jŭvĕnior**, **jūnior**; **brĕvĭma**, **brūma**; **nevŏlo**, **nōlo**; **oblīvĭtus**, **oblītus**.

So in Plautus **Jŏvem**, **ŏvis**, **bŏves**, **brĕvi** are monosyllabic, and **ăvoncŭlus**, **oblivisci** are trisyllables.

44 **i** and **v**, in some words where they ordinarily were pronounced as vowels, sometimes in verse were treated as consonants (pronounced as Engl. **y** and **w**).

Thus in Plautus **scio**, **dies**, **filio**, **otium** are scanned as if pronounced **scjo**, **djes**, **filjo**, **otjum**; in the dactylic poets we have **arjētat**, **abjĕtĕ**, **parjētĭbus**, **stēljo**, **omnja**, **precantja**, **vindemjātor**, **consiljum**, &c.

Similarly in Plautus **tuos**, **suos**, **puer**, **fuit** are scanned as **tvos**, **svos**, **pver**, **fvit**; and in dactylic poets we have **genva**, **pitvīta**, **patrvi**, **sinvātis**. So the trisyllabic earlier forms **mīluus**, **lārua**, were in the later pronounced **milvus**, **larva**. **Tenvis**, **tenvior** seem to have been always disyllables.

45 In several cases, changes, which might according to the usual practice be expected, were avoided, lest confusion should arise.

e.g. **ab** is not so often changed in composition as **sub** is, because of the

danger of confusion with compounds of **ad**; hence we have **abreptus**, not **arreptus**, like **surreptus**. The vowel before the suffix **tāt-** is usually **ĭ**; e.g. **aviditas, pravitas, gravitas**, but after **i, ĕ** is used; e.g. **pietas, societas** (not **piitas, sociitas**). Similarly the vowel before the suffix **-lo** is usually **ŭ**; e.g. **singulus, populus, tantulus, hortulus**; but after **i, e** or **v**, the older **o** is often preserved; e.g. **aureolus, filiolus, servolus.**

This principle appears to have frequently preserved the **i** before **s** in the nom. sing. of nouns of the second class. Thus **cănis, jŭvĕnis**, if deprived of **i** would become **caus**, then **cas**; **juvens**, then **juves**, or even **jus**, where the stem would be greatly disguised.

46 When vowels come together in a word, sometimes they remain unchanged, sometimes they coalesce into a new sound (vowel or diphthong).

47 A broader vowel followed by a long narrower vowel is usually absorbed into it or forms a diphthong with it.

**a**+**u** becomes **au**; e.g. **caulītum, cautum**; **ăvĭceps, auceps.**

**a**+**ī** becomes **ē**; e.g. **amētis** for **amaītis.**

**o**+**i** becomes **ī**; e.g. **domīnī** for **domīnoi, dominīs** for **dominois**;

or **oi**; e.g. **quoi, proin.**

Exceptions:

**u**+**ī** either remains as in **cui, huic**, where **u** was probably semi-consonantal, or the **i** is dropped; e.g. **senatu-i**, sometimes **senatu.**

**e**+**ī**; e.g. **spei** or **spē, rei** or **rē**, sometimes pronounced as disyllable **spēī, rĕī** or **rēī.**

48 A broader vowel followed by a short narrower vowel often absorbs it.

**a**+**ŏ**, or **ŭ**, or **ĕ**, or **ĭ**; e.g. **ama-ont** (or **ama-unt**), **amant**; **amāvĕram, amāram**; **amavisse, amasse**; but **Gāĭus** remains as dactyl.

**o**+**ĕ**, or **ĭ**; e.g. **noveram, nōram**; **movisse, mosse**; **coemptus, comptus**; **co-imo, cōmo.** But **o**+**vi** often becomes **ū**; e.g. **prōvĭdens, prūdens**; **ŏvĭpilio, ūpilio**; **novumper, nūper**; **mŏvīto, mūto.**

**u**+**ĭ**; **senatu-is, senatūs.**

**e**+**ĭ**; **delevisse, delēsse**; **mone-is, monēs**; **dehĭbeo, dēbeo.**

49 A narrower vowel followed by a broader vowel either remains unchanged, or assumes a quasi-consonantal character.

**u**+**a**, or **o**; e.g. **tuas, tuos.**

**e**+**a**, or **o**, or **u**; e.g. **moneas, saxea, saxeo, saxeum**; **eunt, eam, eo.** In **alveo, alvearia**; **eodem, eadem**, &c. the **e** must be regarded as semi-consonantal. But **monent**, not **moneunt.**

**i**+**a**, or **o**, or **u**, or **e**; e.g. **audiam, audiunt, audies**; **filias, filios.** But in **fili** for **filie, sis** for **sies, magis** for **magios**, and some other words, the **i** absorbs the following vowel.

50 A vowel before the same vowel, usually absorbs it and becomes long; e.g. **cooperio, coperio**; **cohors, cors**; **delēvērat, delērat**; **prehendo, prendo.**

But **i**+**i**, if one be long, gives **ī**; if both are short, **ĭ**; e.g. **dīī, dĭ**; **consilīī, consilĭ**; **audiīsti, audīsti**; **mihī, mĭ**; but **fugī-is, fugīs**; **egregī-ior, egregĭor**; **navī-ibus, navĭbus.**

# CHAPTER III.

## QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

51 THAT part of grammar which treats of the Quantity of Syllables is often called *Prosody*, a term which the ancients applied principally to *accentuation*.

If the voice dwells upon a syllable in pronouncing it, it is called a *long* syllable: if it passes rapidly over it, it is called a *short* syllable.

Two short syllables are considered to occupy the same time as one long syllable.

A *syllable* is long or short, either because it contains a *vowel* naturally long or short; or on account of the position of its vowel.

Long vowels are marked in grammars by a straight line over the vowel: thus **dēmēs.**

Short vowels are marked by a curved line over the vowel: thus, **rĕgĕ.**

These marks over the *vowels* are frequently (though improperly) used to denote the length or shortness of the *syllable*. But it must be remembered that a long syllable may have a short vowel.

52 i. Quantity of vowels not in the last syllable of a word.

1. All diphthongs are long (except before another vowel); e.g. **aurum; deinde;** &c.

2. All vowels which have originated from contraction are long; e.g. **cōgo** for **cŏ-ĭgo** (from **com ăgo**), **mōmentum** for **mŏvĭmentum, tibīcen** for **tibĭĭ-cen**; &c.

3. The quantity of the radical syllables of a word is *generally* preserved in composition or derivation, even when the vowel is changed; e.g. **māter, māternus; căno, incĭno; caedo, incīdo; ămo, ămor, ămīcus, inīmīcus**; &c.

So also almost always where the members of what is apparently a compound word may be treated as separate words, as **quāpropter, mēcum, aliōqui, agrīcultura.** But we have **sīquĭdem** and **quandŏquĭdem** (from **sī** and **quandō**); and of the compounds of **ubī, utī,** the following, **ubĭvis, sicutī, nēcubī, utīnam, utīque,** have **ĭ** always short, **ubīque** always long.

For the quantity of root vowels no rule can be given. The quantity of inflexional or derivative affixes is given in Books II. III.

Greek words usually retain in Latin their own quantity.

53 ii. Quantity of vowels in the last syllable of a word.

(A) *Monosyllables are long.*

Except

(*a*) The enclitics **-quĕ, -nĕ, -vĕ, -cĕ**, which are always appended to other words.

(*b*) Words ending with **b, d, t**; e.g. **ăb, sŭb, ŏb**; **ăd, ĭd, quŏd, quĭd**; **ăt, dăt, ĕt, flĕt, tŏt**; &c.

(*c*) **făc, lăc, nĕc, ăn, ĭn, fĕl, mĕl, vĕl, fĕr, pĕr, tĕr, vĭr, cŏr, quĭs** (nom. sing.), **ĭs, bĭs, cĭs, ŏs** (*a bone*). The nom. masculine **hic** is not frequently short. **ĕs** (*thou art*) usually short; but **ēs** in Plaut., Ter.

54 (B) *In polysyllables:*

**a** *and* **e** (*and* **ў**) *final are short;*

Except **ā** in

(*a*) Abl. sing. of nouns with **a-** stem; e.g. **musā.**

(*b*) Imperative sing. act. of verbs with **a-** stem; e.g. **amā.**

(*c*) Indeclinable words; e.g. **ergā, intrā, quadragintā**; but **ităquiă, ejă**; and (in Pers. and Mart.) **pută**, *for instance* (properly imper. of **putāre**).

(*d*) Greek vocatives from nominatives in **ās**; e.g. **Aeneā, Pallā**: and Greek nom. sing. of **a-** stems; e.g. **Ēlectrā.**

55 Except **ē** in

(*a*) Gen. dat. abl. sing. of nouns with **e-** stems; e.g. **faciē**; so also **hŏdiē.** But **hĕrĕ**, *yesterday*, has **ĕ** short.

(*b*) Imperative sing. act. of verbs with **e-** stems; e.g. **monē**; but in **cave** (Hor. Ov.), **ăud vide** (Phaedr. Pers.), it is sometimes short.

(*c*) Adverbs from adjectives with **o-** stems; e.g. **doctē**, to which add **fērē, fermē, pĕrĕgrē, ohē**; but **benĕ, malĕ, infernĕ, supernĕ. tĕmĕre** is only found before a vowel. **mactĕ**, probably an adverb, also has **e** short.

(*d*) Greek neut. pl.; e.g. **tempē, pelagē**; fem. sing. **crambē, Circē**; masc. voc. **Alcidē.**

56 **ı, o, u** (*in polysyllables*) *final are long;*

Except **ĭ** in

(*a*) **mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi**, in which **ĭ is** common;
and **quāsī, nīsī.** (Of the compounds **ŭbīnam, ŭbīvīs** are always short, **ubīque, utrobīque** always long. **utīnam, nūtĭquam** (or **ne ūtĭquam**, not **neutiquam**) are short, though **ūtī** is long.)

(*b*) Greek nom. acc. neuters sing.; e.g. **sinapi**:
vocatives; e.g. **Parī, Amaryllĭ**: rarely dat. sing. e.g. **Minoidī.**

57 Except **ŏ** in

(*a*) **citŏ, immŏ, modŏ** (and compounds), **duŏ, egŏ, cĕdŏ** and **endŏ** (old form of **in**). Rarely **ergŏ.** Martial, Juvenal, &c., have **intrŏ, porrŏ, serŏ, octŏ**, &c.; **modo** has sometimes final **o** long in Lucretius and earlier poets.

(*b*) In the present tense of the verbs **sciŏ, nesciŏ, putŏ, volŏ,** used parenthetically, **o** is sometimes short: and occasionally in and after the Augustan age in other verbs with short penult; e.g. **rogŏ, vetŏ, nuntiŏ, obsecrŏ.** Instances of **o** being short in other parts of the verb, or in verbs with long penult, are rarer; e.g. **estŏ, caeditŏ, oderŏ, dabŏ, tendŏ, tollŏ, credŏ.**

(*c*) In Nominatives of Proper names with consonant stems **ŏ** is common, e.g. **Pollĭŏ, Scīpĭŏ, Cūrĭŏ, Nasŏ**; sometimes **virgŏ, nemŏ, homŏ,** and other appellatives in Martial, Juvenal, &c.

Datives and ablatives in **o** are never short, except the ablative gerund once or twice in Juvenal and Seneca.

58 *Final syllables (of polysyllables) ending in any other single consonant than* **s** *are short.*

But the final syllable is long in

(*a*) all cases of **illĭc, istĭc,** except the nom. masc.

(*b*) all compounds of **pār,** e.g. **dispār, compār.**

(*c*) **alēc, lĭēn.**

(*d*) **īīt, petīīt,** and their compounds (and of course **ĭt, petĭt** as contracted perfects).

(*e*) some Greek nominatives in **-er**; e.g. **cratēr, charactēr, āēr, aethēr**; and some cases in **-n**; e.g. **sirēn** (nom.), **Aeneān** (acc.), **Euclidēn** (acc.), **epigrammātōn** (gen. pl.); &c.

59 *Of the final syllables in* **s,**

**as, os, es,** *are long.*

Except

(*a*) **ănăs** (probably); **exŏs**; **compŏs, impŏs**; **pĕnĕs.**

(*b*) nom. sing. in **-es** of nouns with consonant stems, which have **ĕtis, ĭtis, ĭdis** in genitive, e.g. **sĕgĕs, mīlĕs, obsĕs**: but **pariēs, abiēs, ariēs, Cĕrēs.**

(*c*) compounds of **es** (from **sum**), e.g. **abĕs.**

(*d*) some Greek words; e.g. **Iliăs** (nom.), **cratērăs** (acc. pl.); **Delŏs** (n. sing.), **Erinnўŏs, chlămўdŏs** (gen. sing.), **Arcadĕs, cratērēs** (nom. pl.); **Cynosargĕs** (neut. s.).

60 **us** *and* **is** *are short.*

Except **ūs** in

(*a*) gen. sing. and nom. and acc. plu. of nouns with **-u** stems.

(*b*) nom. sing. of consonant nouns, when genitive singular has long penultimate, e.g. **tellūs (tellūris), palūs (palūdis), virtūs (virtūtis).** (Hor. has once **palŭs.**)

(*c*) some Greek names; **Sapphūs** (gen. s.), **Panthūs** (nom. s.).

61 Except **īs** in

(*a*) dat. and abl. plural, e.g. **mensīs, vobīs, quīs**; so **gratīs, forīs.** Also in acc. (and nom.) plural of **-i** stems; e.g. **omnīs.**

(*b*) 2nd pers. sing. pres. ind. of verbs with **-ī** stems; e.g. **audīs**: also **possīs** (and other compounds of **sīs**), **velīs, nolīs, malīs.**

(*c*) 2nd pers. sing. of perf. subj. and compl. fut. in which **is** is common; e.g. **viderīs.**

(*d*) **Samnīs, Quirīs. sangvis** sometimes (always in Lucr.), **pulvis** (once Enn., once Verg.), have **-īs.**

(*e*) some Greek words; **Simoīs, Eleusīs, Salamīs** (nom. sing.).

62 iii. Quantity of syllables by position in the same word.

1. A syllable ending with a vowel (or diphthong) immediately followed by another syllable beginning with a vowel, or with **h** and a vowel, is short; as, **vĭa, praĕustus, contrăhit.**

Except

(*a*) In the genitives of pronouns, &c. in **-ius**; e.g. **illĭus**, where **i** is common. In **alīus** (gen. case) the **i** is always long: in **solĭus** it is short once in Ter. In **utrĭus, neutrĭus** it is not found short, but in **utrĭusque** frequently.

(*b*) **a** in the penultimate of the old genitive of nouns with **a-** stems; e.g. **aulāī.** So also **e** in **dīēī**, and, in Lucretius, **rēī**, and (once) **fīdēī.** Also **ēī** (dat. pronoun), unless contracted **ēi.**

(*c*) **a** or **e** before **i** (where **i** is a vowel) in all the cases of proper names ending in **-ius**; e.g. **Gāĭŭs, Pompēĭŭs** (but see § 17).

(*d*) The syllable **fi** in **fĭo** (except before **er**; e.g. **fĭĕri, fĭĕrem**).

(*e*) The first syllable of **ĕheu!** and the adjective **dīus.** In **Dĭana** and **ōhē** the first syllable is common.

In Greek words a long vowel is not shortened by coming before another vowel; e.g. **Nerēĭdī, Ēōō, Aenēās, āĕra, Maeōtia.**

2. A syllable containing a vowel immediately followed by two consonants, or by **x**, or **z**, is long; as the last syllable in **regent, auspex.**

[The vowel itself is short in **auspex (auspĭc-em)**, long in **regēnt.**]

But if the two consonants immediately following a short vowel be the first a mute or **f**, and the second **l** or **r**, the vowel remains short in prose and in comic poets, though in other verse it is frequently lengthened.

The following combinations occur in Latin words: **pr, br, cr, gr, tr**[1], **dr, fr; pl, cl, fl**; e.g. **apro, tĕnebrae, vŏlucris, agrum, patris, quadrīga, vafrum; maniplus, assecla, refluus.**

(**bl** also occurs in **publicus**, but the first syllable is always long.)

In Greek words other combinations allow the vowel to remain short; e.g. **Ătlas, Tĕcmessa, Cўcnus, Dăphne.**

[1] **Arbitro, arbitrium**, &c., **genetrix, meretrix**, are nowhere found with long second syllable.

Where the combination is due to composition only, the syllable is always lengthened, just as if the words were separate (cf. § 66); e.g. **sūbruo, abluo.**

iv. Effect of initial sounds on the final syllable of a preceding word.

63 In verse the final syllable of a word is affected by the vowel or consonants at the commencement of the next word, in much the same way in which one syllable is affected by the succeeding syllable in the same word.

A final vowel or diphthong or a final syllable in **m** is omitted (or at least slurred) in pronunciation, if the next word commence with a vowel or diphthong or **h.**

Thus **vidi ipsum, vive hodie, monstrum ingens** are read in verse as of no more length than **vid-ipsum, viv-odie, monstr-ingens.**

When **est** follows a vowel or **m** the **e** was omitted, e.g. **amata est, amatum est** were pronounced **amatast, amatumst.**

64 But the poets (except the early dramatists) refrain in certain cases from so putting words as to occasion such an elision[1]. Especially such an elision is avoided when the first word ends with a long vowel or **m**, and the second word begins with a short vowel.

An elision at the end of a verse before a vowel in the same verse is very rare in any poet, except in Horace's Satires and Epistles; e.g. **in urbemst** (Sat. 1. 1. 11), **centum an** (ib. 50), **atque hic** (ib. 2. 22).

An elision at the end of a verse before a vowel at the beginning of the next verse is found not uncommonly in Vergil, only once or twice in other writers' hexameters. In glyconic and sapphic stanzas it is not uncommon; e.g.

**Aut dulcis musti Volcano decoquit umorem,**
**et foliis,** &c. (Verg.)

**Dissidens plebi numero beatorum**
**eximit virtus.** (Hor.)

65 An hiatus is however permitted;

*always* at the end of one verse before an initial vowel in the next verse, except in an anapaestic metre:

*occasionally* in the same verse; viz.

(*a*) if there is an interruption of the sense; though it is very rare, when the first of the two vowels is short; e.g.

**Promissam eripui genero, arma impia sumpsi.** (Verg.)
**Addam cerea pruna: honos erit huic quoque pomo.** (Verg.)

[1] These statements are abridged from Luc. Müller.

(*b*) in arsis[1], chiefly at the regular caesura; e.g.

**Stant et juniperi et castaneae hirsutae.** (Verg.)
**Si pereo, hominum manibus periisse juvabit.** (Verg.)

(*c*) in thesis[1], a long vowel, especially in a monosyllable, is sometimes shortened instead of elided; e.g.

**Credimus? an qui amant ipsi sibi somnia fingunt?** (Verg.)
**Hoc motu radiantis Etesiae in vada ponti.** (Cic.)

(*d*) a word ending in **m** is rarely not elided; e.g.

**Miscent inter sese inimicitiam agitantes.** (Enn.)
**Sed dum abest quod avemus, id exsuperare videtur.** (Lucr.)

66 A short final syllable ending in a consonant is always lengthened by an initial consonant in the word following; e.g. (in **liquuntur** and **Phoebus**)

**Vellitur, huic atro liquuntur sanguine guttae.** (Verg.)
**Quo Phoebus vocet errantis jubeatque reverti.** (Verg.)

67 A short final syllable ending in a vowel is rarely lengthened before two consonants at the beginning of the next word.

This is done before **sp, sc, st**; more rarely still before **pr, br, fr, tr.** There are a few instances in Catullus, Tibullus, Martial, &c. (none in Lucretius, Vergil, Horace, Propertius, Ovid); e.g.

**Nulla fugae ratio; nulla spes; omnia muta.** (Cat.)
**Tua si bona nescis**
**servare, frustra clavis inest foribus.** (Tib.)

On the other hand a short final vowel is rarely found before **sp, sc, sq, st, gn.**

Lucilius, Lucretius, Horace in Satires, and Propertius have, in all, about 23 instances; Vergil one, and that where the sense is interrupted. Other poets have hardly a single instance: such a collocation was avoided altogether. A short final vowel is not put before an initial **z** by the best writers except in **zmăragdus, Zăcynthus.**

The enclitic **-que** is lengthened in arsis not uncommonly by Vergil (before two consonants, or a liquid or **s**), and by Ovid: very rarely by others; e.g.

**Tribulaque traheaeque et iniquo pondere rastra.** (Verg.)

So once final **a**;

**Dona dehinc auro gravia sectoque elephanto.** (Verg.)

68 Occasionally (in Vergil about 50 times) a short final closed syllable is lengthened by the arsis, though the next word begins with a vowel: this is chiefly in the caesura, or when a proper name or Greek word follows, or where the sense is interrupted; e.g. (all from Vergil)

[1] The *arsis* is the metrical accent of a foot, and is on the first syllable in dactyl, spondee, and trochee; on the last in iambus and anapaest. The *thesis* is the want of metrical accent, and is on the last syllable of dactyl, &c., on the first of iambus, &c.

**Pacem me exanimis et Martis sorte peremptis**
**oratis? Equidem et vivis concedere vellem.**

**Desine plura puer, et quod nunc instat agamus.**

**Olli serva datur, operum haud ignara Minervae.**

**Ipse, ubi tempus erit, omnes in fonte lavabo.**

**Pectoribus inhians, spirantia consulit exta.**

In thesis it is very rare; e.g.

**Si non periret immiserabilis | captiva pubes.** (Hor.)

69 v. Peculiarities in early dramatic verse.

In early dramatic verse the quantity of syllables was not so definitely fixed or observed, as in the later dactylic and other verse. The principal cases of deviation from the rules given above may be classified as follows.

1. Final syllables, afterwards short, were sometimes used with their original long quantity; e.g. **famā** (nom. s.), **sorōr, patēr; amēt, sciāt, ponebāt, percipīt, vendidīt; amēr, loquār**, &c.

2. Final syllables with long vowels were sometimes used as short; e.g. **domŏ** (abl. s.), **probĕ** (adv.), **tacĕ, manŭ, virī**, &c.; **conrigī, bonās, forās, dolōs, ovēs, manūs** (acc. pl.), **bonīs**, &c. This is almost confined to iambic words.

3. Syllables containing a vowel followed by two consonants were sometimes used as short. Such are

(*a*) Syllables in the later language written with doubled consonants; e.g. **immo, ille, simillimae, Philippus, ĕsse, ŏcculto**, &c.

(*b*) Some syllables with two different consonants; e.g. **ĭnter, ĭnterim, ĭntus, ĭnde, ŭnde, nĕmpe, ŏmnis**. So also (according to some) **volŭptas, magĭstratus, minĭstrabit, venŭstas, senĕctus**, &c. (or perhaps **volptas, magstratus**, &c.); **ĕxpediant, ĕxigere, ŭxorem**.

4. Final syllables ending in a consonant were sometimes not lengthened, though the next word began with a consonant; e.g. (in Terence) **enĭm vero, auctŭs sit, sorŏr dictast, dabĭt nēmo, simŭl conficiam, tamĕn suspicor**, &c.; **apud** is frequently so used: even **studĕnt facere**. This licence is most frequent, when the final consonant is **m, s, r**, or **t**; and is due to the tendency of the early language to drop the final consonant, and to shorten the final vowel.

5. On the freer use of what grammarians call synizesis, e.g. **tvos** for **tuos, scjo** for **scĭo**, &c. see § 44.

## CHAPTER IV.

## ACCENTUATION.

70 Accent is the elevation of voice, with which one syllable of a word is pronounced, in comparison with the more subdued tone with which the other syllables are pronounced.

This subdued tone is called by grammarians the *grave accent*. The principal rules of Latin accentuation are given by Quintilian, 1. 5. 22—31.

It is the habit in modern times to understand by accent in Latin (as in English) only *stress*, or greater stress on one syllable relatively to other syllables, and to denote this by loudness, or greater loudness of voice. There are however some grounds for thinking that the Romans meant by accent *musical pitch* and pronounced acutely accented syllables in a higher pitch, but not with greater stress or force or loudness[1].

71 Monosyllables always have the accent.

Disyllables have the accent on the penultimate syllable, unless they are enclitic.

Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the ante-penultimate, if the penultimate syllable is short; on the penultimate, if it is long.

The Romans distinguish between an acute and a circumflex accent. The circumflex is only on monosyllables which have long vowels; and, in words of more than one syllable, on the penultimate, if that have a long vowel, and the final syllable have a short vowel.

If the acute be marked by a ´ over the vowel; the circumflex by a ^, the above rules may be illustrated by the following examples:

*Monosyllables;* **áb, mél, fél; árs, párs, níx, fáx; spês, flôs, môs, lis; môns, fôns, lûx.**

*Disyllables;* **déus, cítus, árat; déo, Cáto, árant; sóllers, póntus, pónto, lúnă; lûnă, Rômă, vîdît.**

*Polysyllables;* **Sérgius, fúscina, crédere; Sérgio, fúscinas, créderent; Metéllus, fenéstra; Metéllo, fenéstrae; Sabíno, praedíves; Sabînus, Române, amîcus, amâre.**

72 All compound words, whether their parts can or cannot be used as separate words, are accented according to the regular rules; e.g. **anhélo, rédimo; úndique, ítaque** (*therefore*); **ítidem, útinam, póstĥac, póstmodo, intrórsus, quicúmque, jamdúdum, exadvérsum, qúodsi, fórsan,** &c. So **respública** or **rés pública.**

A few words, called enclitics, always appended to other words, caused, according to the Roman grammarians, the accent to fall on the last syllable of the word to which they were attached. These are **-que** (*and*), **-ne, -ve, -ce, -met, -pte, -dum,** and also the separable words, **quando, inde;**

e.g. **itáque** (*and so*), **utíque** (*and as*), **illíce, hicíne, mihímet, respicédum, éxinde, écquando,** &c. So also **que** in **pleráque.** In the case of many words called enclitics (owing to their own quantity) the accentuation is the same, whether they be considered as enclitics proper, or parts of a compound; e.g. **quandóquidem, scílicet, quibúslibet, quantúmvis,** &c.

73 Prepositions and adverbs used as prepositions (e.g. **intra**) were regarded as closely attached to the word which they precede and qualify. In inscriptions they are frequently written as one word with their nouns. The Roman grammarians considered them to have no accent when thus preceding their noun or a word (e.g. adjective or genitive case) dependent on

[1] So A. J. Ellis, *Hints on the Quantitative Pronunciation of Latin*. I do not profess here to decide the question.

it; e.g. **ad éas, adhûc, in fóro, virtútem propter pátris,** &c. But if they *follow* their noun, they are said to retain their own accent; e.g. **quae-próptер, quácúm**; but **cum** after personal pronouns is said to be enclitic; e.g. **nobíscum.**

(L. Müller, resting on the usage of dactylic poets as to the caesura, &c., confines this to the words **me, te, se, nos, vos,** in company with disyllabic prepositions in **-ter, -tra**; e.g. **inter nós, intra sé.**)

So also the relative was unaccented, the interrogative accented; e.g. **quo díe rediit,** *on which day he returned:* **quô díe?** *on which day?*

74 Apparent exceptions to the general rules are some words in which the accent remains, notwithstanding the loss of a syllable; e.g.

1. Some words where the accent is on what is now the last syllable; e.g. **illic, produc, tantôn, bonân, satín, nostrâs,** for **illice, produce, tantône, bonâne, satísne, nostrâtis,** &c.

2. Some where the accent is on the penult instead of on the antepenult; e.g. (gen. and voc.) **Valéri, Vergíli,** &c. (for **Valerie, Valerii**; **Vergilie, Vergilii**; &c.); and the verbs (really not complete compounds) **calefácis, mansuefácit,** &c.

75 It would appear, though little reference is made to such a doctrine in the Roman grammarians, that words of more than three syllables must have frequently had besides the principal accent another subordinate one; e.g. **numerávimus, sisterêmus, longitûdo, difficultátibus** had probably a subordinate accent on the first syllables.

The first part of a compound especially may have retained to some extent the accent which it had as a simple word; e.g. **pérgrándis, prâeterire, vérsipéllis, úndevigínti.**

76 The frequent omission or absorption of a short vowel, or of a syllable which has according to the general rules the accent, leads to the inference that there must have been a tendency to put the accent nearer to the beginning of the word than the antepenultimate or penultimate syllable. The effort to do this, and the resistance made by the heavy dragging of the unaccented syllables after it, were the cause of the omission, e.g. **intellexísti** became **intelléxti**; **dehíbeo, débeo**; **gavídeo, gaúdeo**; **surrípuit, súrpuit**; **calcâre** (nom. sing.), **cálcar**; **armígerus, ármiger**; **puerítia, puértia**; &c.

So the weakening of the vowel in compounds; e.g. **inquiro** for **inquaero, concludo** for **com-claudo, abreptus** for **ab-raptus,** is difficult to explain, so long as the affected syllable is considered as accented.

Similarly the change of **ille-ce** to **illice, illic,** suggests doubts as to the truth of the doctrine respecting enclitics, given above, § 72.

# BOOK II.

## *INFLEXIONS.*

### CHAPTER I.

### INFLEXIONS IN GENERAL.

77 WORDS may be divided into two classes, those which have *inflexions*, and those which have not inflexions.

Nouns, pronouns, and verbs are *inflected;* other words, viz. adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections, are not inflected.

78 *Inflexions* are those alterations or additions, which are made in a word in order to give it special meanings suited to the different functions which it is to fulfil as part of a sentence. That part of a word which is essentially the same under such different uses is called the *stem* (or *theme*, or *crude form*).

Thus from stem **bon**, we have **bon-us**, *a good he;* **bon-a**, *a good she;* **bon-um**, *a good thing.*

From stem **mulier**, **mulier-is**, *woman's;* **mulier-es**, *women;* **mulier-um**, *women's.*

From stem **princep**, **princep-s**, *a chief;* **princip-is**, *a chief's.*

From stem **ama**, **ama-t**, *love-s;* **ama-sti**, *love-dst;* **ama-tus**, *love-d;* **ama-ns**, *lov-ing.*

From stem **pug**, **pu-n-go**, *I prick;* **pu-pug-i**, *I prick-ed;* **pu-n-c-tus**, *prick-ed.*

Sometimes the inflexion is a mere addition at the end of the stem, as **-is** and **-es** are appended to **mulier**; **-t**, **-sti**, **-tus**, **-ns** appended to **ama**. Sometimes it is inserted in the middle, as **n** in **pungo**, **punctus**; sometimes prefixed, as **pu-** in **pupugi**; sometimes the stem is changed in consequence of the addition, as the addition of **is** to **princep** makes it into **princip-is**, or as **stă-** becomes **stāre** for **stă-ĕre.**

79 A stem is (in Latin) rarely used without having an inflexion, unless the inflexion, which would otherwise be used, is on phonetic

grounds inapplicable; e.g. the stem **mulier** is used as the nominative case without the inflexion **s** being added, because **mulierS** would have come to be pronounced as **mulies**, and the characteristic **r** would have been lost.

Different nouns and verbs and other words have often a common part; such common part is called a *root*. Thus the root **sta-** (originally **stă**, sometimes **stā**) is common to **stā-re**, **stă-tio**, **stă-tuo**, **stă-men**, **stă-tura**, **stă-tim**, &c., *to stand*, *standing*, *stablish*, *standing-thread* (*i.e.* warp), *standing-height*, *instantly*. A root may be used as a stem, or the stem may contain the root with alterations or additions.

## CHAPTER II.

### INFLEXIONS OF NOUNS.

80 THE inflexions of nouns and pronouns are in the main the same. The inflexions of verbs are quite distinct.

The inflexions of nouns are always additions to, or alterations in, the end of the stem. They serve to mark the gender, the case, and the number of the word.

81 There are in Latin

Three genders—called *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.

Six cases—called *nominative*, *accusative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *locative*, and *ablative*. Another form is found in some nouns, to which the name of *vocative* case has often been applied.

Two numbers—called *singular* and *plural*.

Originally a noun probably received a special modification to denote its gender, its case, and its number; that is to say, the form of the word showed whether the person denoted by it was (for instance) considered as male or female (*gender*), as the agent or object of an action (*case*), as by himself or as joined with others (*number*).

E.g. a common stem **serv-** denoting *slave* became **servo-** for *male slave*, **serva-** for *female slave*. If the slave was the *object* of the action, **m** was added, thus, **servom**, **servam**; if not one, but several slaves were spoken of as the object of the action, **s** was added, thus **servoms**, **servams**, which were eventually pronounced and written **servōs**, **servās**.

But many of the inflexions, as they are found in regular Latin, do not show their purpose so plainly, being only the remains of a fuller system of inflexions, and having their original form often altered or disguised by contact with the final letters of the stem.

82 Latin nouns may be conveniently divided according to their inflexions into two main classes:

The first containing the stems ending in **a** or **e** or **o**;

The second containing the stems ending in **u** or **i** or a consonant.

In the first class **a** and **o** are as regards adjectives entirely, and as regards substantives to a large extent, suffixes expressing respectively **a** the feminine gender, **o** the masculine and neuter genders. The neuter is distinguished from the masculine only in the nominative and accusative cases. The stems in **e** are confined to substantives, and are all feminine.

In the second class there are both masculine and feminine nouns with all of these stems, and the inflexions of case and number are the same for both genders. Neuter nouns differ from masculine and feminine only in the nominative and accusative cases. Stems in **u** are confined to substantives.

In both classes neuter nouns have the accusative and nominative alike, which in the plural always end in **a**.

83 The chief constant differences between the inflexions of the two classes (besides the difference in stem-ending) are these:—

Nouns of the first class have the genitive singular, the locative singular, and the nominative plural (except in a few **e** stems) alike, and ending in a long vowel or diphthong; the genitive plural ends in **-rum** preceded by a long vowel; the dative and ablative plural (except in two **e** stems and a few old forms) end in **-is**.

Nouns of the second class have the genitive singular and nominative plural ending in **-s**; the locative usually the same as the ablative; the genitive plural in **-um** preceded by a consonant or short vowel; the dative and ablative plural in **-bus** (usually **-ĭbus**).

Personal pronouns are peculiar in their inflexions. Other pronouns belong to the first class, but have the genitive singular in **-ius**, and dative in **-i**, for all genders. And there are some other points in which they differ from ordinary nouns.

84 The following examples will serve to give a general notion of the inflexions of nouns. The peculiarities of the various stems will be given later. The terminations after the hyphens are the case inflexions combined with the stem vowel, except in the last, which has no stem vowel.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| CLASS I. | **a-** stem: | **serva**, *a female slave.* |
| | **o-** stem (masc.): | **servos** (often written **servus**), *a male slave.* |
| | (neut.): | **servom** (often written **servum**), *a slave thing.* |
| CLASS II. | **u-** stem: | **artus** (m.), *a joint.* |
| | **i-** stem: | **nāvis** (f.), *a ship.* |
| | consonant stem: | **crūs** (n.), *a leg.* |

| | CLASS I. | | | CLASS II. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | SINGULAR. | | Neut. | | | Neut. |
| Nom. | serv-ă | servŏs (usually serv-ūs) | serv-om (usually serv-um) | art-ūs | nāv-īs | crūs |
| Acc. | serv-am | serv-om (serv-um) | serv-om (serv-um) | art-um | nav-im or nav-em | crūs |
| Gen. | serv-ae | serv-ī | serv-ī | art-ūs | nav-īs | crūr-īs |
| Loc. | serv-ae | serv-ī | serv-ī | art-uī | nav-ī | crur-ī |
| Dat. | serv-ae | serv-ō | serv-ō | art-uī or art-ū | nav-ī | crur-ī |
| Abl. | serv-ā | serv-ō | serv-ō | art-ū | nav-ī or nav-ĕ | crur-ĕ |
| | PLURAL. | | | | | |
| Nom. | serv-ae | serv-ī | serv-ă | art-ūs | nāv-ēs | crūr-ă |
| Acc. | serv-ās | serv-ōs | serv-ă | art-ūs | nav-īs or nav-ēs | crur-ă |
| Gen. | serv-ārum | serv-ōrum | serv-ōrum | art-uum | nav-ium | crur-um |
| Loc. Dat. Abl. | serv-īs | serv-īs | serv-īs | art-ŭbŭs or art-ībŭs | nav-ĭbŭs | crur-ĭbŭs |

85 [According to the arrangement usually followed, substantives and adjectives are treated separately, and are classed as follows:

Substantives in five declensions. Of these the 1st contains **a** stems, the 2nd **o** stems; the 3rd consonant and **i** stems; the 4th **u** stems and the 5th **e** stems.

Adjectives were divided into adjectives of three terminations, nom. **-us, -a, -um** (i.e. stems in **o** and **a**); adjectives of two terminations **is** and **e**, and also **or** and **us** (i.e. **i** stems and some consonant stems), and adjectives of one termination (i.e. rest of consonant and **i** stems).]

## CHAPTER III.

### OF GENDER.

86 IN marking the *gender* of nouns a two-fold distinction was made; (1) according as sex could be attributed or not; (2) according as the sex attributed was male or female.

Names of things, to which sex was not attributed, are said to be of the *neuter* gender: but the Romans, yielding to their imaginations, attributed sex to many things, which really had it not, and thus living creatures are but a small number of the objects, which have names of the *masculine* and *feminine* genders.

87 The distinction of gender is not marked throughout all the cases. In the nouns put together as the first class, the feminine was perhaps

originally different from the masculine and neuter throughout, and it still is so in most cases. In the second class, the masculine and feminine are alike throughout: the neuter form is the same as the masculine except in the nominative and accusative cases. In the singular of the first class the neuter form both for nominative and accusative is the same as that of the accusative masculine: in the second class it is the bare stem, unprotected by a suffix, and therefore sometimes withered: in the plural of both declensions it always ends in **-a**.

The real significance of the inflexions is best seen in adjectives, because they have the same stem modified, if of the first class, to represent all three genders; if of the second class, usually only to represent the masculine and feminine genders as distinguished from the neuter; i.e. sex as distinguished from no sex; e.g. **bonus** (m.), **bona** (f.), **bonum** (n.); **tristis** (m. f.), **triste** (n.); **amans** (m. f. n.), but accusative **amantem** (m. f.), **amans** (n.).

88 Substantives differ from adjectives as regards their inflexions, chiefly in being fixed to one gender only. But

1. Some substantival stems have a masculine and feminine form; e.g. **Julius** (m.), **Julia** (f.); **equus** (m.), **equa** (f.).

2. A few substantives of the first class are feminine, though with stems in **-o**; others masculine, though with stems in **-a**.

3. A substantive of the second class may be masculine, or feminine, or both, the form being indeterminate.

4. Some suffixes of derivation are exclusively used for substantives, and not for adjectives: some again are confined to the masculine gender, others to the feminine. For instance, no adjective is formed with the suffix **-iōn**: again, all abstract substantives, if formed by the suffix **-iōn**, or **-tāt**, are feminine; if formed by the suffix **-ōr** are masculine.

89 It follows from the above, that the gender is not always known by the form.

The test of a substantive's being of a particular gender is the use of an adjective of that particular gender as an attribute to it; e.g. **humus** is known to be feminine, because **dura humus**, not **durus humus**, is used.

An adjective, where the form is not determinately significant, is commonly said to be in the same gender as that of the substantive to which it is used as an attribute.

But though the sex attributed to the person or thing is not always expressed by the form, the gender was never assigned in defiance of the true sex in persons, nor in animals, if the sex was of importance. Many animals are denoted by a substantive of only one form and only one gender, the masculine or feminine having been originally selected, according as the male or female was most frequently thought of. Animals of the kind generally would be spoken of, without distinction, by this noun, whether it were masculine or feminine; e.g. **olōres** (m.), *swans* in general; **anātes**, *ducks*, including *drakes*. If a distinction is important, the word **mas** or **femina**, as the case may be, is added; e.g. **olor femina**, *the female swan*; **anas mas**, *the male duck*. Such nouns are called **epicoena** (Quint. I. 1. 24).

In the same way a feminine, e.g. **Aetna**, can be spoken of as masculine, if **mons** be added; a river can be neuter, if **flumen** be added: and the appropriate change of gender takes place sometimes without the explanatory word being expressed; e.g. **Eunuchus acta est**, i.e. *the play Eunuchus;* **Centauro invĕhĭtur magna**, i.e. *he is borne on the great (ship) Centaurus.* So occasionally **herba** or **litera** is understood.

The genders assigned to names of persons, animals, or vegetables, and of some other classes of natural objects, were as follows:

90 *Names of persons.* Names of males are masculine, of females feminine. Thus proper names of females, derived from the Greek, though retaining the neuter suffix corresponding to their neuter gender in Greek, are in Latin feminine; e.g. in Plautus, and Terence, **Planēsium, Glycĕrium, Phronēsium, Stephănium, Delphium.**

For *Appellatives*, especially those derived from age or relationship, there are separate forms, sometimes from different roots, for the males and females; e.g. **mās**, *male*, **fēmĭna**, *female;* **păter**, *father*, **māter**, *mother;* **ăvus**, *grandfather*, **avia**, *grandmother;* **proăvus**, *great-grandfather*, **proavia**, &c.; **fīlius**, *son*, **filia**, *daughter;* **puer**, *boy*, **puella**, *girl;* **nĕpos**, *grandson*, **neptis**, *granddaughter*, &c.; **vīr**, *man*, **mŭlier**, *woman;* **mărītus**, *husband*, **uxor**, *wife;* **vitrĭcus**, *stepfather*, **noverca**, *stepmother;* **prīvignus**, *stepson*, **privigna**, *stepdaughter;* **sŏcer**, *father-in-law*, **socrus**, *mother-in-law;* **gĕner**, *son-in-law*, **nūrus**, *daughter-in-law;* **frāter**, *brother*, **sŏror**, *sister;* **pătruus**, *uncle* (*father's brother*); **ămĭta**, *aunt* (*father's sister*); **ăvuncŭlus**, *uncle* (*mother's brother*), **mātertĕra**, *aunt* (*mother's sister*); **verna** (*male*) *house-born slave*, **ancilla** (*female*) *slave;* **antistes**, *priest*, **antistīta**, *priestess;* **hospes**, *host* or *guest*, **hospīta**, *hostess* or *female guest;* **cliens**, *client*, **clienta**; **tībĭcen**, *flute-player*, **tībĭcĭna**; **fĭdĭcen**, *harper*, **fidĭcĭna**. So also many (derived from verbs) with **-tor** (or **-sor**) for masculine (nom. sing.), and **-trix** for feminine; e.g. **tonsor**, *barber*, **tonstrix.**

**Hŏmo**, *man*, **ănĭmans**, *living being* (of a rational creature), are masculine; **virgo**, *girl*, and **matrōna**, *matron*, feminine.

Others (all of 2nd class of nouns) are common to male and female: viz. **conjunx**, *consort;* **părens**, *parent;* **affīnis**, *connexion by marriage;* **patruēlis**, *cousin;* **sĕnex**, *old man* or rarely *woman;* **jŭvĕnis**, *youth;* **ădŭlescens**, *youth;* **infans**, *infant*. So are ranked **hospes** (in the poets) and **antistes.**

91 Other personal appellatives are usually or exclusively masculine, because the offices, occupations, &c., denoted were filled by men, or at least by men as much as by women.

The following are sometimes feminine; **cīvis**, *citizen;* **mūnĭceps**, *burgher;* **contubernalis**, *comrade;* **hostis**, *enemy;* **exul**, *exile;* **vātes**, *seer;* **săcerdos**, *priest;* **dux**, *leader;* **cŏmes**, *companion;* **sătelles**, *follower;* **custōs**, *guard;* **interpres**, *a go-between;* **mīles**, *soldier;* **vindex**, *defender, avenger;* **index**, *informer;* **jūdex**, *judge;* **testis**, *witness;* **praeses**, *president;* **hēres**, *heir;* **artĭfex**, *artist;* **auctor**, *responsible adviser.* Others are used of females, but without a feminine adjective; e.g. **ŏpĭfex**, *worker;* **carnĭfex**, *butcher;* **auspex**, *bird-observer;* **sponsor**, *bondsman;* **viātor**, *traveller;* **defensor**, *defender;* **tūtor**, *guardian;* **auceps**, *fowler;* **manceps**, *purchaser.*

So also some with **-a** stems; **aurīga**, *charioteer;* **advĕna**, *stranger*, &c.

Others are nowhere found applied to females; e.g. **cornĭcen**, *horn-blower;* **tībĭcen**, *flute-player;* **tūbĭcen**, *trumpeter;* **latro**, *brigand;* **fullo**, *fuller;* **mango**, *slave-dealer;* **nĕbŭlo**, *rascal.*

Some words which are only metaphorically applied to men or women retain their original gender; e.g. **mancĭpium** (n.), *a chattel;* **acroāma** (n.), *a musical performer;* **scortum** (n.), *harlot;* **prostĭbŭlum** (n.), *prostitute;* **vigĭliae** (f.), *watch;* **excŭbiae** (f.), *nightwatch;* **ŏpĕrae** (f.), *hands;* **dēlĭciae** (f.), *darling;* **auxĭlia** (n.), *auxiliary troops.*

92 *Names of Animals.* For some quadrupeds, with which the Romans had much to do, separate forms are found for the male and female. The stems in **-o** are masc., those in **-a** fem.

**Agnus**, *lamb*, **agna**; **ăper**, *wild boar*, **apra**; **ăries** (m.), *ram*, **vervex** (m.), *wether*, **ŏvis** (f.), *sheep;* **āsĭnus**, *ass*, **asina**; **asellus**, *young ass*, **asella**; **hircus**, *he-goat*, **căper**, *goat*, **capra**; **cătŭlus**, *whelp*, **catula**; **cervus**, *stag*, **cerva**; **cŏlumbus**, *dove*, **columba**; **ĕquus**, *horse*, **equa**, *mare;* **gallus**, *cock*, **gallīna**, *hen;* **haedus**, *kid*, **căpella**; **hinnus**, *mule* (with horse for father), **hinna**; **juvencus**, *steer*, **juvenca**, *heifer;* **leo** (m.), *lion*, **lea**, or (Greek) **leaena**, *lioness;* **lŭpus**, *wolf*, **lupa**; **mūlus**, **mula**, *mule* (with ass for father); **porcus**, *pig*, **porca**; **sīmius**, *ape*, **simia** (the fem. also of *apes* in general); **taurus**, *bull*, **vacca**, *cow;* **verres**, *boar*, **scrōfa**, *sow;* **vĭtŭlus**, *calf*, **vitula**; **ursus**, *bear*, **ursa.**

93 For most other animals there was only one form; e.g.—

*Quadrupeds:* **bīdens** (f., *sc.* **ovis**), *sheep;* **bōs** (m. f.), *ox;* **cămēlus** (m. f.), *camel;* **cănis** (m. f.), *dog;* **damma** (m. f.), *deer;* **ĕlĕphans, elephantus** (m. rarely f.), *elephant;* **feles** (f.), *weasel*, later *cat;* **fĭber** (m.), *beaver;* **glīs** (m.), *dormouse;* **hystrix** (f.), *porcupine;* **lĕpus** (m. rarely f.), *hare;* **lynx** (f. rarely m.), *lynx;* **mūs** (m.), *mouse;* **mustella** (f.), *weasel;* **nītella** (f.), *dormouse;* **panthēra** (f.), *panther;* **pardus** (m.), *leopard;* **quadrūpes** (m. f. n.), *quadruped;* **sorex** (m.), *shrew;* **sūs** (m. f.), *swine;* **talpa** (f. rarely m.), *mole;* **tigris** (f. rarely m.), *tiger;* **vespertilio** (m.), *bat;* **vulpes** (f.), *fox.*

*Birds:* e.g. **accĭpĭter** (m. rarely f.), *hawk;* **āles** (m. f.), *winged*, hence *a bird;* **ānās** (f.), *duck;* **anser** (m. rarely f.), *gander goose;* **āquīla** (f.), *eagle;* **āvis** (f.), *bird;* **būbo** (m. rarely f.), *horned owl;* **cĭcōnia** (f.), *stork;* **cornix** (f.), *crow;* **cotūrnix** (f.), *quail;* **cygnus** (m.), *swan;* **ōlor** (m.), *swan;* **fŭlica** and **fulix** (f.), *coot;* **grācŭlus** (m.), *jackdaw;* **grūs** (f. rarely m.), *crane;* **hĭrundo** (f.), *swallow;* **ibis** (f.), *ibis;* **luscĭnius** (m.), **luscinia** (f. also of *nightingales* in general); **mĕrŭla** (f.), *blackbird;* **mīluus, milvus** (m.), *kite;* **noctua** (f.), *owl;* **oscen** (m. f.), *singing bird;* **pălumbes** (m. f.), **palumbus** (m.), *woodpigeon;* **passer** (m.), *sparrow;* **pāvo** (m.), *peacock;* **perdix** (m. f.), *partridge;* **pĭca** (f.), *pie;* **stūrnus** (m.), *starling;* **strūthŏcămēlus** (m. f.), *ostrich;* **turdus** (rarely f.), *fieldfare;* **turtur** (m. f.), *turtle-dove;* **vultur** (m.), *vulture.*

*Reptiles:* e. g. **anguis** (m. f.), *snake;* **būfo** (m.), *toad;* **chamaeleon** (m.); **cŏlŭber** (m.), *water snake;* **colubra** (f. also of *snakes* generally); **crŏcŏdīlus** (m.); **drăco** (m.), *dragon;* **lăcertus** (m.), **lacerta** (f. also of *lizards* generally); **rāna** (f.), *frog;* **serpens** (m. f.), *serpent;* **stēlio** (m.), *gecko;* **testūdo** (f.), *tortoise.*

*Fishes:* **ăcīpenser** (m.), *sturgeon;* **mūgil** (m.); **muraena** (f.), *lamprey;* **mullus** (m.), *mullet;* **piscis** (m.), *fish;* **rhombus** (m.), *turbot;* **sălar** (m.), *salmon;* **scărus** (m.), *wrasse;* **sōlea** (f.), *sole.*

*Invertebrates:* **ăpis** (f.), *bee:* **cĭcāda** (f.), *grasshopper;* **ărāneus** (m.), **aranea** (f. also of *spiders* generally); **cīmex** (m.), *bug;* **cŭlex** (m.), *gnat;* **formīca** (f.), *ant;* **hīrūdo** (f.), *leech;* **lendes** (pl. f.), *nits;* **līmax** (f. rarely m.), *snail;* **mūrex** (m.), *purple-fish;* **musca** (f.), *fly;* **pāpĭlio** (m.), *butterfly;* **pĕdis** (m. f.), *louse;* **pŭlex** (m.), *flea;* **sēpia** (f.), *cuttlefish;* **vermis** (m.), *worm;* **vespa** (f.), *wasp.*

**94** Almost all *trees* and *shrubs* are feminine. Some of them have **-o** stems, but these are mostly from the Greek.

Of *plants* and *flowers*, some are masculine, the rest chiefly feminine.

Names of *fruits* and *woods* are often neuter, with stems in **-o**, and some *trees* are also neuter, probably because the name was first applied to the product.

The principal masculine names are: **ăcanthus**; **ămărăcus** (also f.); **asparăgus**; **bōlētus**; **călămus**, *reed;* **carduus**, *thistle;* **crŏcus**; **cўtĭsus** (also f.); **dūmus**, *thicket;* **fĭcus** (also f.), *fig;* **fungus**; **helleborus** (often **-um** n.); **intŭbus** (also **intŭbum** n.), *endive;* **juncus**, *bulrush;* **lōtus** (usually f.); **mālus** (but as an *apple tree* f.); **muscus**, *moss;* **ŏleaster**; **pampĭnus** (also f.), *vine;* **raphănus**, *radish;* **rhamnus**, *buckthorn;* **rŭbus**, *bramble;* **rūmex** (also f.), *sorrel;* **scirpus**, *rush.*

The principal neuter names are: **ăpium**, *parsley;* **ăcer**, *maple;* **balsămum**; **lăser**; **păpāver** (also m.), *poppy;* **pĭper**, *pepper;* **rōbur**, *oak;* **sĭler**; **sĭser** (but in plural **siseres**), *skirret;* **tūber** (*truffle*): and the *fruits* or *woods* **arbūtum**, **buxum**, &c. (but **castănea**, *chestnut;* **ŏlea**; **bălănus**, *acorn;* are also used as fruits, and retain their fem. gen. So **buxus** (besides **buxum**), *boxtree*, for a *flute*).

**95** Names of *jewels* are mainly feminine and Greek.

Masculine are **ădămas**, **beryllus**, **carbunculus**, **chrysŏlīthus** (also f.), **ŏnyx** (as a *marble*, or a *cup*), **ŏpălus**, **sardŏnyx** (also f.), **smăragdus**, &c.

**96** Names of *towns*, *countries*, &c. have, if of Latin origin, their gender marked by their termination; e.g. masculine; **Veji**, properly the *Veians*, **Puteoli**, *little wells*, &c.: feminine; e.g. **Africa** (sc. **terra**), **Itălia**, **Rōma**: neuter; **Tarentum**, **Bĕnĕventum**, **Reāte**, **Praeneste**, **Anxur** (n., also m. of the mountain), **Tĭbur** (n.).

Of Greek nouns many retain their Greek gender (though often with stems in **-o**), others, owing sometimes to their termination being misunderstood, have other genders: e.g. **Argos** usually neut., but Vergil has **dulcīs Argōs**; Statius frequently **patrios Argos**, **afflictos Argos**, &c.; Livy occasionally **Argi**, as nom. pl.

The Spanish towns are sometimes feminine in **-is**, e.g. **Illiturgis**; sometimes neuter in **-i**, e.g. **Illiturgi.**

Some neuter plurals are found; e.g. **Leuctră**, **Mĕgără**, **Artaxătă**, **Tigranocertă.**

Names of *mountains* are all masculine, except those with marked feminine terminations (stems in **-a** or Greek **-ē**); e.g. **Aetna**, **Ida**,

**Rhŏdŏpē**, &c.; or neuter terminations; e.g. **Pēlion**, **Sōractĕ**. **Alpes** (pl.) is feminine.

Names of *rivers* are masculine, even those with **-a** stems, except **Allia**, **Duria**, **Sagra**, **Lēthē**, **Styx**, which are feminine. But sometimes rivers are made neuter by prefixing **flumen** and giving a termination in **-um**; e.g. **flumen Rhenum** (Hor.); **flumen Granīcum** (Plin.); &c.

Names of *winds* are masculine; e.g. **ăquĭlo**, **Vulturnus**, &c. So also **Etēsiae** (pl.).

97 All *indeclinable* words (except barbaric names, e.g. **Abraham**) are neuter: e.g. **fas**, **nefas**, **instar**; and to this class belong infinitives (e.g. **non dolere istud**, **totum hoc philosophari**); words used as names of themselves (e.g. **istuc** '**taceo**,' **hoc ipsum** '**honesti**'); and often the letters of the alphabet (as '**c in g commutato**'); but these last are sometimes feminine, **litera** being expressed or understood.

## CHAPTER IV.

### OF NOUN INFLEXIONS OF NUMBER.

98 IN Latin the only distinction in point of number which is marked by inflexions is between one (*singular* number), and more than one (*plural* number).

The particular inflexions of number will be best treated in connexion with the case inflexions.

Some nouns, in consequence of their meaning, are used only in the singular, others only in the plural.

99 The following are found ordinarily in the singular only:

(*a*) *Proper names of persons and places;* e.g. **Metellus**, **Rōma**, &c.; but **Metelli** of several members of the family; **Camilli** of persons with qualities like **Camillus**; **Galliae** of the two divisions of Gaul (**Gallia Cisalpina** and **Transalpina**); **Volcani** of gods with different attributes, but bearing the name of Vulcan, or of statues of Vulcan, &c.

(*b*) *Single natural objects;* e.g. **sol**, *the sun;* **caelum**, *the sky, heaven;* **tellus**, *the earth;* but **soles** is used in discussions as to whether there are more *suns* than one, or as equivalent to *days*, &c.

(*c*) *Continua;* i.e. natural objects which are measured or weighed, not numbered, e.g. **cruor**, *blood;* **rōs**, *dew;* **aes**, *bronze;* **frumentum**, *corn;* **făba**, *beans*, as a class; **fūmus**, *smoke*. But these are used in the plural, when several *kinds*, or distinct *pieces* or *drops*, are meant; e.g. **vīna**, *different wines;* **nĭves**, *flakes of snow;* **fābae**, *individual beans;* **aera**, *bronze works of art;* **carnes**, *pieces of flesh;* **fūmi**, *wreaths of smoke*. In poetry the plural is sometimes used without such a distinction.

(*d*) *Abstract nouns;* e.g. **justitia**, *justice;* but not uncommonly the plural is used even in these in order to express the occurrence of the event or exhibition of the quality at several times or in several forms, e.g. **virtūtes**, *virtues;* **cupiditātes**, *desires;* **ōdia**, *cases of hatred;* **conscientiae**, *several persons' consciousness* (*of guilt*); **mortes**, *deaths* (*of several persons*); **ōtia**, *periods of rest;* **adventus**, *arrivals;* **mātūrĭtātes**, *culminations;* **vĭcīnĭtātes**, *position of people as neighbours;* **lapsus**, *slips;* **călōres**, **frīgŏra**, *times of heat, of cold;* **sĭmĭlĭtūdĭnes**, *resemblances;* &c.

100 The following are found only or ordinarily in the plural; though some of them correspond to what in other languages are denoted by singulars.

(*a*) *Names of certain towns or places*, &c.: **Thēbae**, **Tigrancocertă**, **Leuctră**, **Veji** (originally the *Veians*), **Cannae** (i.e. *Reeds*): **Gădes**, **Cūmae**. So **Pergămă**, *the towers of Troy*, **Tartără**.

(*b*) *Groups of islands and mountains*, &c.; e.g. **Cyclădes**, **Alpes**, **Esquĭlĭae**, **Tempē** (properly *glens*).

(*c*) *Collections of persons:* e.g. **decemvĭri**, *a commission of ten* (though we have **decemvir** also used of *a commissioner*), &c.; **majōres**, *ancestors;* **prŏcĕres**, **primōres**, *leading men;* **lĭbĕri**, *children;* **infĕri**, *the spirits below;* **sŭpĕri**, *the Gods above;* **caelĭtes**, *the heavenly ones;* **pĕnātes**, *the hearth gods;* **mānes**, *the ghosts;* **grātiae**, *the Graces;* **Fūriae**, *the Furies;* **Dīrae**, *Curses* (conceived as goddesses); &c.

(*d*) *Parts of the body;* e.g. **artūs**, *the joints;* **cervīces** (Hortensius is said to have first used the singular in this sense), *the neck* (*neckbones?*); **exta**, **intestīna**, **viscĕra**, *the internal organs;* **fauces**, *the throat;* **lactes**, *the lacteal vessels;* **pantĭces**, *bowels;* **rēnes**, *kidneys;* **tŏri**, *the muscles;* **praecordia**, *midriff;* **ĭlia**, *loins.*

(*e*) *Names of feasts or days;* e.g. **Calendae**, **Nōnae**, **Idus**; **fĕriae**, *the feast-day;* **nundĭnae**, *market-day;* **Baccānālia**, *feast of Bacchus;* &c.

(*f*) Other *collections* of things, actions, &c.; **altāria**, *an altar;* **ambāges**, *evasion;* **angustiae**, *straits* (sing. rare); **argūtiae**, *subtlety;* **antes**, *rows*, e.g. of vines; **arma**, *tools*, esp. *weapons, armour;* **armāmenta**, *ship's tackling;* **balneae**, *the baths*, i.e. *bath-house;* **bīgae**, *a carriage and pair* (sing. not till Sen.); **cancelli**, *railings;* **casses**, *a hunting net* (properly *meshes*); **castra**, *a camp* (properly *huts, tents*? **castrum** is found only as part of proper names, e.g. **Castrum Novum**); **claustra**, *bars* (sing. in Sen. Curt. rarely); **clītellae**, *a pack saddle* (*panniers?*); **compĕdes**, *fetters;* **crepundia**, *child's rattle*, &c.; **cūnae**, **cūnābŭla**, **incūnābŭla**, *cradle;* **dēlĭciae**, *delight;* **dīvĭtiae**, *riches;* **excŭbiae**, *the watch;* **ĕpŭlae**, *a dinner;* **exsĕquiae**, *funeral procession;* **exŭviae**, *things stripped off, spoils;* **facētiae**, *jokes* (sing. rare); **fasti**, *the Calendar;* **fōri**, *decks;* **grātes**, *thanks;* **indūtiae**, *a truce;* **ineptiae**, *silliness* (sing. in Plaut. Ter.); **infĕriae**, *offerings to the shades below;* **infĭtias** (acc.), *denial;* **insĭdiae**, *ambush;* **inĭmĭcĭtiae**, *hostility* (rarely sing.); **lăpĭcīdĭnae**, *stone quarries;* **lŏcŭli**, *compartments*, and so *box, bag*, &c.; **lustra**, *a den;* **mānŭbiae**, *booty;* **mĭnae**, *threats;* **moenia**, *town walls;* **nūgae**, *trifles;* **nuptiae**, *marriage;* **ōbĭces**, *bolts* (also abl. s. **obice**); **părietīnae**, *ruins;* **phălĕrae**, *horse trappings;* **praestĭgiae**, *juggling tricks;* **prīmĭtiae**, *first-fruits;* **pugillāres**, *writing tablets;* **quadrīgae**, *a carriage and four* (sing. not till Propert.); **quisquĭliae**, *refuse;* **rellĭquiae**, *the remains;* **rēpāgula**, *bolts*, &c.: **salīnae**, *saltpits;*

**sāta**, *the crops;* **scālae**, *stairs;* **scōpae**, *a broom;* **sentes**, *thornbush;* **serta**, *a wreath;* **sordes**, *filth* (sing. rare); **suppĕtĭas** (acc.), *supply;* **tĕnĕbrae**, *the darkness;* **thermae**, *the warm baths* (cf. **balneae**); **tesqua**, *wastes;* **valvae**, *folding-doors;* **vindĭciae**, *claims;* **virgulta**, *bushes;* **ūtensĭlia**, *necessaries.*

Some of these words are used in one or two cases of the singular.

**101** The following words are used in the plural with a special meaning, besides their use (in most instances) as an ordinary plural:

**aedes** sing. *a temple*, plur. *a house* (properly, *hearths, chambers*?); **ăqua**, *water;* **aquae**, *a watering-place:* **auxĭlium**, *assistance;* **auxilia**, *means of assistance, auxiliary troops:* **bŏnum**, *a good;* **bŏna**, *goods*, i.e. *one's property:* **carcer**, *a prison;* **carcĕres**, *the barriers* (in horse races): **cōdĭcillus**, *a small piece of wood;* **cōdĭcilli**, *writing tablets, supplementary will:* **cōpia**, *plenty;* **cōpiae**, *supplies, troops:* **cŏmĭtium**, *the place of tribes-assembly at Rome;* **cŏmĭtĭa**, *the assembly:* **fĭdes** sing. *a harpstring*, plur. *a stringed instrument:* **fortūna**, *fortune;* **fortūnae**, *one's possessions:* **grātia**, *thankfulness;* **grātiae, grātēs**, *thanks:* **hortus**, *a garden;* **horti**, *pleasure-gardens, a country house:* **impĕdīmentum**, *a hindrance;* **impedimenta**, *baggage:* **littĕra**, *a letter* (of the alphabet); **litterae**, *a letter*, i.e. epistle: **lūdus**, *a game;* **lūdi**, *Public Games:* **nātālis**, *a birthday;* **nātāles**, *one's descent:* **ŏpĕra**, *work;* **operae**, *services, hands*, i.e. *workmen:* **Ops**, a goddess; **ŏpem**, *help;* **ŏpes**, *wealth, resources:* **pars**, *a part;* **partes**, *a part on the stage:* **rostrum**, *a beak;* **rostra**, *the tribune* or *pulpit at Rome:* **tăbŭla**, *a plank;* **tăbŭlae**, *account books.*

# CHAPTER V.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

**102** THE first declension contains stems ending in **a**, **e**, and **o**.

### 1. DECLENSION OF -a STEMS.

Stems in **a** are feminine, excepting some substantives which, being names of men or rivers, are masculine. All adjective stems in **a** are feminine.

E.g. **mensa** (f.), *a table;* **bŏna** (adj.), *a good she;* **scrība** (m.), *a clerk;* **Claudia**, *a woman of the Claudian house.*

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **mensă** | **bŏnă** | **scrībă** | **Claudiă** |
| Acc. | **mensa-m** | **bona-m** | **scriba-m** | **Claudia-m** |
| Gen. Loc. Dat. | **mensae** | **bonae** | **scribae** | **Claudiae** |
| Abl. | **mensā** | **bonā** | **scribā** | **Claudiā** |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **mensae** | **bonae** | **scribae** | **Claudiae** |
| Acc. | **mensās** | **bonās** | **scribās** | **Claudiās** |
| Gen. | **mensārum** | **bonārum** | **scribārum** | **Claudiārum** |
| Loc. Dat. Abl. | **mensīs** | **bonīs** | **scribīs** | **Claudiīs** |

Peculiar forms of cases are found as follows:

103 SINGULAR. *Genitive.* Two old forms of the genitive ending in **ās** and **ai**; the former in the word **fămĭlia** (*household*), combined with **păter, māter, filius, filia**; e.g. **pater familias, patres familias**; &c.

The ending **āī** is found (as two long syllables) in early poetry, chiefly in Lucretius, and occasionally in Vergil; e.g. **aquāī, pictāī**; **magnai rei publicai gratia** (as iambic line) in Plautus. It is also found in inscriptions for the locative and dative.

The ablative in early times ended in **ād**; e.g. **praidad (praedā), sententiad.**

104 PLURAL. The genitive sometimes ended in **-um** instead of **-ārum**;

(*a*) chiefly in names derived from Greek; viz. **amphŏrum** (e.g. **trium amphorum**, *of three jars*), **drachmum**; and in proper names in Vergil, &c.; e.g. **Lapithum** for **Lapitharum, Dardanidum** for **Dardanidarum.** Also in compounds of **gigno** and **colo, Grajŭgĕnum, caelicŏlum** for **Grajugenarum, caelicolarum.**

*Dat. Loc. Abl.* The ordinary form **īs** is apparently a contraction of **āīs**, i.e. **s** added to the locative singular; e.g. **mensa-i-, mensa-is, mens-s.**

Stems in **ia** sometimes have **īs**, instead **iis**; e.g. **taenis** (Verg.) for **taeniīs.** Hence **gratiis** (abl.), *for thanks*, became in ordinary language **gratīs.**

A few words have a form **ābus** instead of **īs.** Thus **ambābus, duābus** are the only forms in use (never **ambis, duis**). Similarly, chiefly in old legal and religious forms, we have **deabus, filiabus, libertabus** probably to distinguish the females from the males **deis** or **dis, filiis, libertis.**

105 The most usual *masculine* stems in **a** are the following:

**accŏlă**, *a neighbour*
**agrĭcŏlă**, *a farmer*
**incŏlă**, *an inhabitant*
**advĕna**, *a new comer*
**aurīga**, *a chariot driver*
**collēga**, *a colleague*
**convīva**, *a guest*
**nauta** } *a sailor*
**nāvīta** } (Gr. *ναύτης*)
**parricīda**, *a parricide*
**pŏēta**, *a poet* (Gr. *ποιητής*)
**prōfŭga**, *an exile*
**transfŭga**, *a deserter*
**scrība**, *a clerk*
**scurra**, *a buffoon*
**verna**, *a slave* born in the family

Sometimes also
**damma**, *a deer*; and rarely
**talpa**, *a mole*

So also proper names like **Sulla, Numa**, &c. And rivers; e.g. **Sequăna**, *Seine*; **Trebia**, and **Hadria**, *the Hadriatic sea.*

## 2. Declension of -e Stems.

106 Stems in **e** are all feminine substantives, except **merīdies** (m.), *noon*. **Dies**, *day* (m.) is often feminine, when *an appointed day* is spoken of; and almost always when it means *time*; e.g. **longa dies**, *a long period of time*.

Only two words with stem in **e** are inflected throughout all cases of both numbers. These are **res**, *a thing* and **dies**, *day*. Besides these none have any plural, except **ăcies**, *edge*; **făcies**, *face*; **effĭgies**, *likeness*; **spĕcies**, *form*; **spes**, *hope*; **sĕries**, *a row*, which are found in nom. and accus. plural: **glăcies** in accus. and **eluvies** in nom. plur.

Most words with stem in **e** are of four syllables and end in **ie**. Many of these have also stems in **a**.

Singular.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **rē-s** | **diē-s** | **aciē-s** | **luxŭries** or **luxuriă** |
| Acc. | **re-m** | **die-m** | **acie-m** | **luxurie-m** or **luxuria-m** |
| Gen.) Dat. ( | **rei** or **rē** | **diēī** or **diē** | **acii** or **aciē** | **luxuriae** |
| Abl. | **rē** | **diē** | **aciē** | **luxuriē** or **luxuriă** |

Plural.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom.) Acc. ( | **rē-s** | **diē-s** | **aciē-s** | (no plural except possibly from stem in **a**) |
| Gen. | **rē-rum** | **diē-rum** | (not found) | |
| Dat.) Abl.( | **rē-bus** | **diē-bus** | (not found) | |

107 There is some uncertainty about the form of the genitive and dative singular. Neither case is common except from **dies**, **res**, **spes**, **fides**, and **plebes**. In modern books these cases are generally made to end in **ei**, and this practice is as old as the 2nd century after Christ. But there is no proof of **ei** being disyllabic except in the words **diēī** (often), **rēī** (Hor.) and **rēī** (Lucr.), **fīdēī** (post-August.) and **fĭdēī** (Lucr.). (But **die** and **diēi**, **rēi** and **rē**, **fideī** and **fidē** are also used.) **Spei** is monosyllabic in Terence; **plebei** is only used in prose. In other words in classical times **i**, **e**, and **ei** were perhaps written indifferently. Where there is a collateral stem in **a**, this supplies the gen. and dat. sing. e.g. **luxuriae** not **luxuriei**. A gen. in **-es** is rarely found; e.g. **rabies** (Lucr.).

## 3. Declension of -o Stems.

108 Stems in **o** are almost always either masculine or neuter; a few substantives are feminine, chiefly names of trees or Greek words. No adjective stems are feminine. A shortened form of the masculine nominative is used in addresses and is often called the *vocative* case.

e.g. **dŏmĭnŭs** (m.), *an owner, a lord*; **bŏnŭs** (adj.), *a good he*; **ulmus** (f.), *an elm*; **bellum** (n.), *war*; **bŏnum** (n.), *a good thing*.

| SINGULAR. | subst. | adj. | subst. | subst. | adj. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **dŏmĭnŭs** | **bŏnŭs** | **ulmŭs** | **bellum** | **bŏnum** |
| Voc. | **domĭnĕ** | **bonĕ** | (not found) | | |
| Acc. | **dominum** | **bonum** | **ulmum** | **bellum** | **bonum** |
| Gen. Loc. | **dominī** | **bonī** | **ulmi** | **belli** | **bonī** |
| Dat. Abl. | **dominō** | **bonō** | **ulmō** | **bello** | **bonō** |
| PLURAL. | | | | | |
| Nom. | **dŏmĭnī** | **bŏnī** | **ulmī** | **bellă** | **bŏnă** |
| Acc. | **dominōs** | **bonōs** | **ulmōs** | **bellă** | **bonă** |
| Gen. | **dominōrum** | **bonorum** | **ulmōrum** | **bellorum** | **bonōrum** |
| Loc. Dat. Abl. | **dominīs** | **bonīs** | **ulmīs** | **bellīs** | **bonīs** |

**109** Stems in **ĕro** have usually certain peculiarities. Most drop the final **ŭs** in the nominative singular; and many omit the **ĕ** before **-ro** in all cases, except the nom. voc. masculine singular.

e.g. **nŭmĕrŭs** (m.), *a number;* **puer** (m.), *a boy;* **făber** (m.), *a workman;* **vĭr** (m.), *a man;* **membrum** (n.), *a limb.*

| SINGULAR. | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **nŭmĕrŭs** | **puĕr** | **făbĕr** | **vĭr** | **membrum** |
| Acc. | **numerum** | **puĕrum** | **fabrum** | **vĭrum** | **membrum** |
| Gen. Loc. | **numerī** | **puerī** | **fabrī** | **vĭrī** | **membrī** |
| Dat. Abl. | **numerō** | **puerō** | **fabrō** | **vĭro** | **membrō** |
| PLURAL. | | | | | |
| Nom. | **nŭmĕrī** | **puĕrī** | **fabrī** | **vĭrī** | **membră** |
| Acc. | **numerōs** | **puerōs** | **fabrōs** | **virōs** | **membră** |
| Gen. | **numerōrum** | **puerōrum** | **fabrōrum** | **virōrum** | **membrōrum** |
| Loc. Dat. Abl. | **numerīs** | **puerīs** | **fabrīs** | **virīs** | **membrīs** |

**110** Like **numerus** are declined **ŭmĕrus**, *a shoulder;* **ŭtĕrus**, *the womb;* **jūnĭpĕrus** (f.), *a juniper;* and the adjectives **fĕrus**, *wild;* **prŏpĕrus**, *hasty;* **prospĕrus**, *favourable.*

Like **puer** are declined **sŏcĕr**, *father-in-law;* **gĕnĕr**, *son-in-law;* **vespĕr**, *evening star;* **Lĭbĕr**, *the god Bacchus;* **jūgĕrum**, *an acre* (plural **jūgĕra, jugerum, jugerĭbus**); and the adjectives **aspĕr**, *rough;* **lăcĕr**, *wounded;* **lĭbĕr**, *free* (hence **liberi** (pl.), *children*); **mĭsĕr**, *wretched;* **tĕnĕr**, *tender;* and compounds like **mortĭfĕr**, *death-bringing;* **ālĭgĕr**, *winged:* &c. **Dexter** is declined both like **puer** and like **faber.**

Similarly the adjective **sătŭr**, *satiated* (**sătŭra, sătŭrum**, &c.).

Like **faber** are declined **ăgĕr**, *a field;* **ăpĕr**, *a wild boar;* **lĭber**, *bark, book;* and most other substantives and adjectives (m. and f.) with stems in **ĕro**. The neuters are declined like **membrum**.

111 Stems in **-vo** or **-qvo**, in order to avoid a concurrence of **u** with **u**, retained **o** in the nom. and acc. cases singular until after the Augustan age. Hence **ĕquŏs**, not **ĕquŭs**; **aevom**, not **aevum**; **arduos**, **arduom**, not **arduus**, **arduum**. This concurrence was also avoided by writing **ĕqus** or **ĕcus**, **antĭcus**, &c. for **equus**, **antiquus**, &c. (In modern books the forms **equus**, **arduus**, **aevum**, **arduum**, &c. are usually printed.)

112 Substantive stems in **io**, until after the Augustan age, formed the genitive singular in **i** single; e.g. **Virgĭli**, **Claudi**, not **Virgĭlii**, **Claudii**; Ovid and Propertius, however, use **ii**. The vocative sing. of these stems ended in **i** not **ie**; e.g. **Clạudi** not **Claudie**. But the vocative sing. is found only in proper names, and in **fĭlius**, *a son;* **gĕnius**, *natural temper;* **vultŭrius**, *a vulture*. The vocative of **Pompeius** and other words with stem in **aio-**, **eio-**, was either a disyllable **Pompei**, or a trisyllable **Pompēi**.

Adjectives have gen. sing. in **ii**. A voc. sing. is found only in a few adjectives derived from Greek proper names: it is in **ĭĕ**, e.g. **Cynthie**, **Tirynthie**.

113 There are but few **o** stems of the feminine gender. These are chiefly names of trees or Greek words, especially names of jewels and towns, &c. Those most used are the following:

(*a*) **alvus**, *belly;* **carbăsus**, *a sail;* **cŏlus**, *a distaff;* **dŏmus** (stem also in **u**; see § 121), *a house;* **hŭmus**, *the ground;* **vannus**, *a fan*.

(*b*) names of trees;

**aescŭlus**, *chestnut*
**alnus**, *alder*
**arbŭtus**, *strawberry tree*
**buxus**, *box tree*
**cedrus**, *cedar*
**cornus**, *cornel* (cf. § 121)
**cŏrŭlus**, *hazel*
**cŭpressus**, *cypress* (cf. § 121)
**fāgus**, *beech*
**fĭcus** (rarely m.), *fig* (cf. § 121)
**fraxĭnus**, *ash*
**laurus**, *bay* (cf. § 121)
**mālus**, *apple tree*
**myrtus**, *myrtle* (cf. § 121)
**ornus**, *mountain ash*
**pĭnus**, *pine* (cf. § 121)
**plătănus**, *plane*
**pōpŭlus**, *poplar*
**quercus**, *oak* (cf. § 121)
**ulmus**, *elm*

(*c*) Jewels; e.g. **amethystus**, **crystallus**, **sapphīrus**; &c.

(*d*) *Towns and other places;* e.g. **Aegyptus**, **Chersŏnēsus**, **Cyprus**, **Dēlos**, **Lemnos**, **Pēlŏponnēsus**, **Rhŏdus**, &c. But **Canōpus**, **Isthmus**, **Orchŏmĕnus** and **Pontus** are masculine.

(*e*) Other Greek words; e.g. **ătŏmus**, *an atom;* **mĕthŏdus**, *a method*, &c.

114 All neuters have nom. and acc. singular ending in **-um**, except **vīrus**, *poison;* **vulgus**, *common people*, and Greek **pĕlăgŭs**, *sea*, which have in acc. **vīrus**, **vulgus** and **vulgum**, **pĕlăgus**. The plural of this last word is **pĕlăgē**. **Virus** and **vulgus** have no plural.

**115** Peculiar forms of cases occur as follows:

SING. *Abl.* In early times the ablative ended in **d**; e.g. **poplicod, preivatod.** Possibly Plautus used it. It occurs in an inscription, B.C. 186.

PLUR. *Gen.* **-um** instead of **-orum** is found in some masculine names; viz.:

(*a*) in names of weights and measures (chiefly Greek) in combination with numerals. Thus **nummum, sestertium, denarium, talentum, medimnum, stadium** (for **nummorum**, &c.).

(*b*) in **deum, divum, virum** (in poetry), and in the compounds in prose; e.g. **decemvirum**; **līberum**, *children;* **fabrum** (in phrases, as **praefectus fabrum**); **socium** (in prose rarely, except of the Italian allies); **equum** (also written **ecum**).

(*c*) in names of people in poetry; e.g. **Argivum, Teucrum**, &c. Occasionally also in **fluvium, famulum, juvencum.**

(*d*) in adjectives rarely: e.g. **magnanimum** (Verg.), **amicum, aequom**, &c. (Ter.).

In numerals frequently; e.g. **duum, ducentum, quingentum**, &c. So usually in distributives; e.g. **trinum, quaternum, sēnum**, &c.

This genitive is rare in neuters. But the genitives **armum, somnium, oppidum** are found.

The dative and ablative form is sometimes contracted; e.g. **suffragīs, denarīs.**

**116** **Deus**, *God*, had voc. **Deus**; nom. plur. **dī** (sometimes written **dii**); dat. abl. **dīs** (**diis**); but **dei** and **deis** are not infrequent in Ovid, &c.

**117** The following words of this class are defective or redundant in certain cases.

**balneum** (n.), *a bath*, also plur. **balneae** (f.), of the *bath house;* **caelum** (n.), *heaven*, no plur. except **caelos** once in Lucr. where the meaning compels a plural; **carbăsus** (f.), *linen*, plur. **carbăsa** (n.), *sails*, &c.; **ĕpŭlae** (pl.), *dinner*, also sing. **ĕpŭlum** (n.); **frēnum** (n.), *a rein*, plur. **frēni** (m.) and **frēna** (n.); **infĭtias**, *denial*, acc. pl. only with verb **īre** and only in this case; **jŏcus** (m.), *joke*, plur. **jŏci** (m.) and **jŏcă**; **jŭgŭlus** (m.), in sing. also **jŭgŭlum** (n.), *collarbone, throat;* **jus jurandum** (n.), *oath*, both parts of the words are declined; e.g. **juris jurandi, jure jurando**, &c.; **lŏcus** (m.), *a place*, in plur. also **lŏca**, of *places*, properly speaking; **lŏci**, chiefly of places metaphorically, i.e. *matters for argument*, &c.: **nauci**, *trifle*, only loc. or gen. sing.; **nīhil** (n.), *nothing*, only in nom. acc. s. often contracted **nĭl**; (of the fuller form **nīhĭlum** are used **nīhĭli** as gen. or loc. of price; **nīhĭlo** after prepositions, comparatives, and as abl. of price; and **ad nīhĭlum**; in ordinary language **nullius rei**, &c. are used); **pessum**, *bottom*, only acc. s. after verbs of motion, e.g. **īre, dăre**, &c.; **pondo**, properly abl. s., also used as if indeclinable, '*pounds*'; **rastrum** (n.), *a rake*, also in plur. **rastrī** (m.); **rētĭcŭlus** (m.), more frequently **rētĭcŭlum**; **suppĕtias** (acc. pl.), *supply, help*, only in this case; **vēnum** (n.), acc. sing. after **īre, dăre**, &c.: Tacitus alone has a dative **veno**. For **virus, vulgus**, see § 114.

For substantives which have some forms of this first class and some of the second, see § 121.

118 The inflexions of adjective stems in **o** and **a** are usually given together, e.g.:

| SING. | m. | f. | n. | m. | f. | n. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Voc. | **pĭus** | **pĭă** | **pium** | **āter** | **atră** | **atrūm** |
| Acc. | **pium** | **piam** | **pium** | **atrum** | **atram** | **atrum** |
| Gen. | **pĭī** | **piae** | **pĭī** | **atrī** | **atrae** | **atrī** |
| Dat. | **pĭō** | **piae** | **pĭō** | **atrō** | **atrae** | **atrō** |
| Abl. | **pĭō** | **pĭā** | **pĭō** | **atrō** | **atrā** | **atrō** |
| PLURAL. | | | | | | |
| Nom. | **pĭī** | **piae** | **pĭă** | **atrī** | **atrae** | **atră** |
| Acc. | **pĭōs** | **pĭās** | **pĭă** | **atrōs** | **atrās** | **atră** |
| Gen. | **pĭōrum** | **pĭārum** | **pĭōrum** | **atrōrum** | **atrārum** | **atrōrum** |
| Dat. Abl. | **pĭīs** | **pĭīs** | **pĭīs** | **atrīs** | **atrīs** | **atrīs** |

119 Similarly the possessive pronouns **meus**, *mine;* **tuus**, *thine;* **suus**, *his* (*her*, *their*) *own;* **noster**, *our own;* **vester**, *your own.*

In the vocative singular masculine **mi** is used.

## CHAPTER VI.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

120 THE second main class of nouns contains stems ending in the semi-consonantal vowels **u** and **i**, or in a consonant.

#### 1. DECLENSION OF -u STEMS.

Stems in **u**, if masculine or feminine, have the nominative sing. in **-us**; if neuter, have the bare stem for nom. and acc. singular.

The feminine nouns with **u** stem are **cŏlus**, **dŏmus**, **īdūs** (pl.), **mănus**, **portĭcus**, **quinquātrūs** (pl.), **trĭbus**, and names of women (**ănus**, *an old woman;* **nūrus**, *daughter-in-law;* **pronūrus**, **sŏcrus**, *mother-in-law*, **prosocrus**); and of trees (**cornus**, *cornel;* **cŭpressus**, *cypress;* **fĭcus**, *fig;* **myrtus**, *myrtle;* **quercus**, *oak*).

The neuter nouns are **cornu**, *horn;* **gĕnu**, *knee;* **pĕcu**, *cattle;* **vĕru**, *a spit*, and the rare plurals, **artua**, *limbs* and **ossua**, *bones.*

All the rest are masculine. The great mass of them are verbal nouns denoting *action;* e.g. **gĕmĭtus**, *groaning;* **cōnātus**, *effort;* **vīsus**, *sight*, &c.

As examples may be given: **artus** (m.), *a limb* (rare in singular); **ănus** (f.), *an old woman;* **cornu** (n.), *horn.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SINGULAR. | | | |
| Nom. | **artŭ-s** | **ănŭs** | **cornū** |
| Acc. | **artu-m** | **ănum** | **cornū** |
| Gen. | **artūs** | **ănūs** | **cornūs** |
| Dat. | **artu-i** or **artū** | **ănuī** | **cornū** |
| Abl. | **artū** | **ănū** | |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| Nom. Acc. | **artūs** | **ănūs** | **cornuă** |
| Gen. | **artuum** | **ănuum** | **cornuum** |
| Dat. Abl. | **artŭ-bŭs** | **ănĭbŭs** | **cornĭbŭs** |

The dat. abl. plural is in **-ĭbus**, except **ăcŭbus**, **arcŭbus**, **artŭbus**, **lăcŭbŭs**, **portŭbus**, **specŭbus**, **trĭbŭbus**, **vĕrŭbus** (also **vĕrĭbus**).

121 There was apparently some confusion between these inflexions and those of stems in **o**. For many words have some cases as if from **o** stems and others as if from **u** stems.

The most important word of this kind is **dŏmus**, which is thus declined:

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **dŏmus** | **domūs** |
| Acc. | **domum** | **domos**, sometimes **domūs** |
| Gen. | **domūs** and (Plaut.) **domi** | **domorum**, post-Aug. **domuum** |
| Loc. | **domi**, sometimes **domui** | |
| Dat. | **domui**, rarely **domo** | **domĭbus** |
| Abl. | **domo**, sometimes **domu** | |

**arcus** has gen. (besides **arcūs**) **arci** or **arqui**.

**angĭportus** only used in abl. s. and acc. pl.: a neuter with stem in **o** is more common.

**caestus** has abl. pl. **caestĭbus** and **caestis**.

**cŏlus** has dat. **colo** only; abl. **colu** and **colo**; acc. plur. **colūs** and **colos**; no gen. dat. or abl. plural.

**cornus** has dat. **corno**; abl. **cornu** and **corno**; plur. nom. **cornūs**; dat. abl. **cornĭs**. No other cases.

**cupressus** besides nom. has only gen. abl. sing. and nom. acc. plural from both **u** and **o** stems.

**frĕtus** only in nom. acc. gen. and abl. sing. A neuter stem in **o** is more usual.

**gĕlus**, rare, except in abl. sing. A neuter stem in **o** is also used.

**laurus** only in gen. and abl. sing. and nom. acc. plur.: also a stem in **o** declined throughout, but gen. plural not found.

**myrtus**, only nom. acc. plural from **u** stem: all cases, except gen. plural, from **o** stem.

**pĕnus**, also two neuter stems in **-u** and in **-ŏs** (nom. **pĕnŭs**): all are found in singular, but usually **pĕnu** for ablative: in plur. only **pĕnūs**, **pĕnŏră** acc. are found.

**pīnus** has **o** stem also: abl. s. always **pinu**, abl. pl. **pinis**: gen. pl. not found.

**quercus**, gen. pl. **quercōrum**: no dat. sing. or dat. abl. plural.
**rictus**, rarely a nom. **rictum**, pl. **ricta**.
**tonĭtrus**, also a neuter stem in **-uo**.

Many stems in the earlier language had genitive in **ī**. Thus in Plautus and Terence we have **adventi**, **fructi**, **gĕmĭti**, **ornati**, **quaesti**, **senāti**, **sumpti**, **tumulti**, **victi** (besides **domi**, **arci** already mentioned).

122 No adjectives have **u** stems, except compounds of **mănus**, e.g. **anguimanus**, acc. pl. Lucret.

There are three words whose stem ends in **u**, but the **u** is radical and the stem is monosyllabic. Their inflexions really belong mainly to the consonant class of stems: **grūs** (acc. **gruem**, &c.); **sūs** which has two datives **sŭĭbus**, **sŭbus**, also **sūbus**; **bōs**, acc. **bŏvem**, &c. gen. pl. **boum**, dat. abl. plur. **bōbus** or **būbus**. To these may be added **Juppiter** (for **Jovpater**), acc. **Jovem**, &c.

All the other words with **u** stems are of two or more syllables.

## 2. Declension of -i Stems and 3. Consonant Stems.

123 Stems ending in **i** and stems ending in a consonant have very similar, often identical, case-endings and cannot always be clearly distinguished. These case-endings, as here given, in the **i** stems include the final stem-vowel (**i**); in the consonant stems they may be considered as mere suffixes. They are as follows:

| | | *I stems.* | *Consonant stems.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| SING. | Nom. | various | various |
| | Acc. | **-em**, sometimes **-im** (for **i-em**) | **-em** |
| | Gen. | **-ĭs** (for **i-ĭs**) | **-ĭs** |
| | Dat. | **-ī** (for **i-ī**) | **-ī** |
| | Loc. Abl. | **-ĕ** or **-ī** (for **i-ī** loc. / for **i-ed** abl.) | **-ĕ**, rarely **-ī** |
| PLUR. | Nom. | **-ēs** (for **i-es**), neut. **-ĭă** | **-ēs**, neut. **-ă** |
| | Acc. | **-ĭs** or **-ēs** | |
| | Gen. | **-ium** | **-um** |
| | Dat. Loc. Abl. | **-ĭbŭs** (for **i-ĭbus**) | **-ĭbŭs** |

124 The nominative singular of *masculine* and *feminine* nouns in both classes of stems was normally formed by the addition of **s**, but was liable to modification according to the nature of the final consonant.

In the **i** stems we have sometimes **-ĭs**, sometimes **-ēs**, sometimes (the **i** having fallen away) simple **s**: and from stems in **-li** or **-ri** the nominative ended in the final stem consonant.

In the consonant stems a simple **s** was added to stems ending in mutes, except in a very few stems in which **-ĭs**, perhaps also in some few **-ēs**, was added. In stems ending in **n**, **l**, and **r** the nominative and stem are identical, excepting that stems in **ōn** dropped the **n**.

Both in **i** stems and consonant stems **t** or **d**, if coming immediately before the **s**, fell away.

The nom. sing. of *neuter* nouns ended either in the final stem consonant, or sometimes, in **i** stems, the final **i** was changed to **ĕ**. A few adjectives have the form (in **s**) properly belonging to the masculine applied also to neuters. The accusative is always like the nominative.

In **i** stems the accus. sing. has **-em** for masc. and fem. in all adjectives and always or usually in most substantives. A few substantives have also **-im**, very few have **-im** only.

The abl. of **i** stems from adjectives (except participles), when used as adjectives, is in **-i** always or usually. Most substantives, substantivally used adjectives, and participles have **ĕ**. Neuters which have **e**, **l** or **r** final in nom. sing. have **ī** in ablative.

The locative ended in **i**, but its place is often taken by the ablative. Occasionally an abl. in **i** is found from consonant stems.

125 In the *plural* **i** stems have **ēs**, rarely **īs** in the nominative; **ēs** or **īs** or (as sometimes written) **ēis** indifferently in the accusative. In the genitive the **i** of some stems in **-nti**, and a few others, is occasionally omitted in verse for metre's sake.

### 2. I *Stems.*

126 Stems in **-pi**, **-bi**, **-mi**, **-vi**; **-sci**, **-qvi**, **-gi**, **-gvi**, **-hi**; **-sti**, **-di**, **-ni**, **-li**, **-si** retain **i** or **ē** in nom. sing., masc. or fem.

Except **stirps**, **trabs**, **plebs**, **urbs**, **nix**, **frons**, **glans** and compounds of **cor**.

As examples may be given: **nūbes** (f.), stem **nubi-**, *a cloud;* **puppis** (f.), stem **puppi-**, *a ship-stern;* **tristis**, adj., stem **tristi-**, *sad.*

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **nūbē-s** | **puppī-s** | **tristī-s** (m. f.) | **tristĕ** (n.) |
| Acc. | **nube-m** | **puppi-m** or **puppe-m** | **triste-m** | **tristĕ** |
| Gen. | **nubī-s** | **puppī-s** | **tristī-s** | |
| Dat. | **nubī** | **puppī** | **tristī** | |
| Loc. Abl. | **nubĕ** | **puppĕ** | **tristī** | |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **nubē-s** | **puppē-s** | **tristē-s** (m. f.) | **tristi-ă** (n.) |
| Acc. | **nubē-s** or **nubī-s** | **puppē-s** or **puppī-s** | **tristē-s** or **tristī-s** | **tristi-a** |
| Gen. | **nubi-um** | **puppi-um** | **tristi-um** | |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | **nubi-bŭs** | **puppi-bŭs** | **tristi-bŭs** | |

**127** Stems in **-ci**, except those in **-sci**, drop **i** in nom. sing.

As examples: **urbs** (f.), stem **urbi-**, *a city;* **calx** (f. sometimes m.), stem **calci-**, *a heel;* **audax** (adj.), stem **audāci-**, *bold.*

| SINGULAR. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **urbs** | **calx** | **audāx** (m. f. n.) |
| Acc. | **urbe-m** | **calce-m** | **audāce-m**(m.f.) **audax** (n.) |
| Gen. | **urbī-s** | **calcī-s** | **audācī-s** |
| Dat. | **urbī** | **calcī** | **audācī** |
| Loc. Abl. | **urbĕ** | **calcĕ** | **audācĕ** or **audācī** |

| PLURAL. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **urbē-s** | **calcē-s** | **audāçē-s** (m.f.) **audāci-ă** (n.) |
| Acc. | **urbē-s** or **urbī-s** | **calcē-s** or **calcī-s** | **audacē-s** or **audacī-s** **audaci-a** |
| Gen. | **urbi-um** | (no gen. pl.) | **audāci-um** |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | **urbī-bŭs** | **calcī-bŭs** | **audācī-bŭs** |

Most stems in **-ti**, if **-ti** is preceded by a consonant or long vowel, drop **-ti**.

As examples: **ămans** (adj.), stem **ămanti-**, *loving;* **ars** (f.), stem **arti-**, *art;* **rētĕ** (n.), stem **rēti-**, *a net.*

| SINGULAR. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **ămans** (m. f. n.) | **ars** | **rētĕ** |
| Acc. | **amante-m** (m. f.) **amans** (n.) | **arte-m** | **retĕ** |
| Gen. | **amantī-s** | **artī-s** | **retī-s** |
| Dat. | **amantī** | **artī** | **retī** |
| Loc. Abl. | **amantī** or **amantĕ** | **artĕ** | **retī** or **retĕ** |

| PLURAL. | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **amantē-s** (m. f.) | **amanti-ă** (n.) | **artē-s** | **reti-ă** |
| Acc. | **amantē-s** or **amantī-s** | **amanti-a** | **artē-s** or **artī-s** | **reti-ă** |
| Gen. | **amanti-um** | | **arti-um** | **reti-um** |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | **amantī-bŭs** | | **artī-bŭs** | **retī-bŭs** |

**128** Stems ending in **ri** preceded by **e** usually drop the **i** in the nom. sing. masc. and drop the **e** (before **r**) in all other cases as well as in the fem. and neut. nom.: those ending in **āri** as well as **āli** usually, if substantives, drop the final vowel in the nom. acc. sing. neuter. Otherwise stems in **ri**, **li** have usually **is** for nom. s. masc. and fem., **ĕ** for neuter. Except **mĕmor**, **par** and their compounds.

As examples may be given: **ācĕr** (adj.), stem **ācĕri-**, *sharp;* **ănīmāli-s** (adj.), stem **ănīmāli-**, *endued with life.*

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **ācer** (m.) | **ācris** (f.) **ācrĕ** (n.) | **ănĭmāli-s** (m.f.) | **ănĭmālĕ** (n.adj.) **animal** (n. sub.) |
| Acc. | **acre-m** | **acrĕ** | **animale-m** | do. |
| Gen. | | **acrī-s** | **animālī-s** | |
| Dat. | | **acrī** | **animālī** | |
| Loc. | | | | |
| Abl. | | **acrī** | | **animalī** (adj.) **animalĕ** (subst.) |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **ācrē-s** (m. f.) | **ācri-ă** (n.) | **ănĭmālē-s** (m. f.) | **ănĭmāli-ă** (n.) |
| Acc. | **acrē-s** or **acrī-s** | **acri-a** | **animalē-s** or **animalī-s** | **animali-a** |
| Gen. | | **acri-um** | | **animali-um** |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | | **acrī-bus** | | **animālī-bus** |

The form in **-is** (e.g. **acris**) is sometimes used for masculine nom. s. as well as for feminine.

### 3. *Consonant Stems.*

129 Stems ending in mutes (labial, guttural or dental) form the nominative singular by adding **s**, but the dentals **t**, **d**, being assimilated to it, fall away.

A short **e** preceding the final stem consonant is usually changed to **ĭ** in other cases than the nom. sing.

As examples: **princeps** (adj.), stem **princĕp-**, *chief;* **jūdex** (m. f.), stem **judĕc-**, *a judge;* **rex** (m.), stem **rēg-**, *a king;* **cīvĭtas** (f.), stem **cīvĭtāt-**, *citizenship;* **ĕquĕs** (m. f.), stem **ĕquĕt-**, *horseman;* **căpŭt** (n.), stem **căpŭt-**, *head;* **pēs** (m.), stem **pĕd-**, *a foot.*

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **princep-s** (adj.) | | **jūdex** | **rex** |
| Acc. | **princĭp-em** (m.f.) | **princep-s** (n.) | **judĭc-em** | **rēg-em** |
| Gen. | **princip-ĭs** | | **judic-ĭs** | **reg-ĭs** |
| Dat. Loc. | **princip-ī** | | **judic-ī** | **reg-ī** |
| Abl. | **princip-ĕ** | | **judic-ĕ** | **rēg-ĕ** |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Acc. | **princĭp-ēs** (m. f.) no neut. | **jūdic-ēs** | **rēg-ēs** |
| Gen. | **princip-um** | **judic-um** | **reg-um** |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | **princip-ĭbŭs** | **judic-ĭbŭs** | **reg-ĭbŭs** |

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | cīvĭtās | ĕquĕs | căpŭt | pēs |
| Acc. | civităt-em | equĭt-em | caput | pĕd-em |
| Gen. | civitat-ĭs | equit-ĭs | capĭt-ĭs | ped-ĭs |
| Dat. Loc. | civitat-ī | equit-ī | capit-ī | ped-ī |
| Abl. | civitat-ĕ | equit-ĕ | capit-ĕ | ped-ĕ |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Acc. | cīvĭtāt-ēs | ĕquĭt-ēs | căpĭt-ă | pĕd-ēs |
| Gen. | civitat-um | equit-um | capit-um | ped-um |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | civitat-ĭbŭs | equit-ĭbŭs | capit-ĭbŭs | ped-ĭbŭs |

**Civitas**, and a few other nouns with stem in **tāt-** have sometimes **-ium** in gen. plur.

130 Stems ending in **n** form the nominative singular in one of two ways:

Those ending in **-ŏn** and **-ōn** (all masc. or fem.) drop the final **n**; in the cases other than nom. sing. **ŏn** becomes **ĭn**.

Those ending in **ĕn** remain unchanged; in the cases other than nom. sing. **ĕn** becomes **-ĭn**. Most of these are in **-mĕn**, and all these except one are neuter.

As examples: **hŏmo** (m. f.), stem **hŏmŏn-**, *a man;* **ōrātio** (f.), stem **orātiōn-**, *speech;* **tībīcĕn** (m.), stem **tībīcĕn-**, *a flute-player;* **nōmĕn** (n.), stem **nōmĕn-**, *a name.*

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | hŏmo | ōrātio | tībīcĕn | nŏmĕn |
| Acc. | homĭn-em | oratiōn-em | tibicĭn-em | nomen |
| Gen. | homin-ĭs | oration-ĭs | tibicin-ĭs | nomĭn-ĭs |
| Dat. Loc. | homin-ī | oration-ī | tibicin-ī | nomin-ī |
| Abl. | homin-ĕ | oration-ĕ | tibicin-ĕ | nomin-ĕ |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Acc. | hŏmĭn-ēs | ōrātiōn-ēs | tībīcĭn-ēs | nōmĭn-ă |
| Gen. | homin-um | oration-um | tibicin-um | nomin-um |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | homin-ĭbŭs | oration-ĭbŭs | tibicin-ĭbŭs | nomin-ĭbŭs |

131 Stems ending in **l**, **r**, **s** are used as the nomin. sing. without addition or change, except that some neuters change **ŏr** into **ŭr**, others **ŏs** into **ŭs**. Stems in **-s** (except **as**, *penny*, **os**, *bone*, and **mensis**, *month*) change **s** into **r** (also **ŭs** into **ĕr**) before a vowel, i.e. in all cases except nom. sing.

(Thus a nom. neut. in **-ŭs** sometimes goes with a genitive **-ŏris**, sometimes with a gen. **-ĕris**, according as its stem is in **-ŏs** or **-ŭs**.)

As examples: **consŭl** (m.), stem **consŭl-**, *a consul;* **mŭliĕr** (f.), stem **mŭliĕr-**, *a woman;* **pătĕr** (m.), stem **pătĕr-**, *a father;* **ămŏr** (m.), stem **ămŏr-**, *love;* **tempŭs** (n.), stem **tempŏs-**, *time;* **ŏnŭs** (n.), stem **ŏnŭs-**, *a burden;* **mōs** (m.), stem **mōs-**, *a habit;* **crūs** (n.), stem **crūs-**, *a leg.*

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **cōnsŭl** | **mŭliĕr** | **pătĕr** | **ămŏr** (m.) |
| Acc. | **consŭl-em** | **muliĕr-em** | **patr-em** | **amōr-em** |
| Gen. | **consŭl-ĭs** | **muliĕr-ĭs** | **patr-ĭs** | **amōr-ĭs** |
| Dat. Loc. | **consŭl-ī** | **muliĕr-ī** | **patr-ī** | **amōr-ī** |
| Abl. | **consŭl-ĕ** | **muliĕr-ĕ** | **patr-ĕ** | **amōr-ĕ** |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Acc. | **consŭl-ēs** | **muliĕr-ēs** | **patr-ēs** | **amōr-ēs** |
| Gen. | **consŭl-um** | **muliĕr-um** | **patr-um** | **amōr-um** |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | **consŭl-ĭbŭs** | **muliĕr-ĭbŭs** | **patr-ĭbŭs** | **amōr-ĭbŭs** |

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **tĕmpŭs** (n.) | **ŏnŭs** (n.) | **mōs** (m.) | **crūs** (n.) |
| Acc. | **tempŭs** | **onŭs** | **mōr-em** | **crūs** |
| Gen. | **tempŏr-ĭs** | **onĕr-ĭs** | **mōr-ĭs** | **crūr-ĭs** |
| Dat. Loc. | **tempŏr-ī** | **onĕr-ī** | **mōr-ī** | **crur-ī** |
| Abl. | **tempŏr-ĕ** | **onĕr-ĕ** | **mōr-ĕ** | **crur-ĕ** |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Acc. | **tempŏr-ă** | **onĕr-ă** | **mōr-ēs** | **crūr-ă** |
| Gen. | **tempŏr-um** | **onĕr-um** | **mōr-um** | **crūr-um** |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | **tempŏr-ĭbŭs** | **onĕr-ĭbŭs** | **mōr-ĭbŭs** | **crūr-ĭbŭs** |

The principal adjectives with consonant stems are those in **-ōs**, which express the comparative degree of adjectives.

As example: **mĕlior** (adj.), stem **mĕliōs-**, *better.*

SINGULAR.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **mĕliŏr** (m. f.) | **mĕliŭs** (n.) |
| Acc. | **meliōr-em** | **meliŭs** |
| Gen. | **meliōr-ĭs** | |
| Dat. Loc. | **meliōr-ī** | |
| Abl. | **meliōr-ĕ** | |

PLURAL.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. Acc. | **mĕliōrēs** (m. f.) | **mĕliōră** (n.) |
| Gen. | **meliōr-um** | |
| Dat. Loc. Abl. | **meliōr-ĭbŭs** | |

*Contrast of* **-i** *Stems and Consonant Stems.*

**132** The class of **i** stems and the class of consonant stems have, speaking generally, certain marked differences.

1. A very large proportion of the **i** stems have the syllable, which precedes the **i**, long, sometimes from the length of the vowel, more often from the **i** being preceded by two consonants.

In the consonant stems the final stem consonant is always preceded by a vowel, and this preceding vowel is generally short.

2. Further the **i** stems fall mainly into three divisions, thus:

(A) *Substantives and adjectives* of not more than two syllables in the genitive sing.

(B) *Adjectives* with derivative suffixes.

(C) *Adjectives* compounded of *noun* stems.

The consonant stems fall into three divisions, thus:

(A) *Substantives* (few) of not more than two syllables in the genitive singular.

(B) *Substantives* (and one class of *adjectives*) with derivative suffixes.

(C) *Substantives and adjectives* compounded of *verbal* stems.

*Classification of* **-i** *Stems.*

**133** A. The nouns of not more than two syllables in the genitive singular have either

1. Disyllabic nominative in **-ĕs**, or

2. Disyllabic nominative in **-ĭs** (m. f.), neuter in **-ĕ**, or

3. Disyllabic nominative in **-ĕr** (for **ĕrĭs**), or

4. Monosyllabic nominatives.

**134** (1) Stems with disyllabic nominatives in **-ēs**: all feminine, except **verres** (m.), *a boar;* **vātes** (m. f., gen. pl. often **vatum**), *a seer.* Of the feminine, notice **aedes** (also **aedis**), *hearth, temple;* **lues** (also **luem**, no other case), *pestilence;* **prōles** (no plur.), *offspring;* **sēdes**, gen. pl. usually **sedum**), *seat;* **strues** (no plur.), *heap;* **tābes** (no plur., abl. s. **tabe**, **tabo**), *decay.*

(2) Stems with disyllabic nominatives in **-is**:

(α) Adjectives; e.g. **dulcis**, *sweet;* **grăvis**, *heavy;* **lĕvis**, *light;* **omnis**, *all;* **tristis**, *sad;* **turpis**, *foul;* &c.

(β) Substantives: Masculine and Feminine; **anguis** (abl. **-i** rarely), *snake;* **callis**, *path;* **cīvis**, *citizen;* **clūnis**, *haunch;* **corbis** (abl. **-i** sometimes), *basket;* **fīnis** (abl. often **-i**; plur. rarely fem.), *boundary;* **hostis**, *enemy;* **pĕdis**, *louse;* **scrōbis**, *ditch;* **testis**, *witness.*

(γ) Masculine: **amnis** (abl. -ĭ often), *river;* **assis** or **axis**, *pole, axle-tree;* **būris**, *plough-tail* (acc. in -im, no abl.); **casses** (pl., also **casse** abl. s.), *meshes;* **caulis**, *stalk;* **collis**, *hill;* **crīnis**, *hair;* **ensis**, *sword;* **fascis**, *bundle;* **follis**, *leather bag;* **fūnis**, *rope;* **fustis** (abl. often -ĭ), *club;* **ignis** (abl. -ĭ usually), *fire;* **mānes** (pl.), *ghosts;* **orbis** (abl. -ĭ sometimes), *a round;* **pānis** (no gen. pl.), *loaf;* **piscis**, *fish;* **postis** (abl. -ĭ often), *door-post;* **rēnes** (pl., gen. **renum** sometimes), *kidneys;* **sentes** (pl.), *thorns;* **torquis**, *collar;* **torris**, *brand;* **vectis**, *crowbar;* **vermis**, *worm;* **unguis** (abl. -ĭ sometimes), *nail, claw.*

Feminine: **ăpis** (gen. pl. **apum** sometimes), *bee;* **ăvis** (abl. -ĭ sometimes), *bird;* **classis** (abl. -ĭ often), *fleet, class;* **clāvis** (acc. -im sometimes), *key;* **crātis** (acc. -im and -em), *hurdle;* **messis** (acc. -im sometimes), *reaping;* **nāvis** (acc. -im, abl. -ĭ often), *ship;* **pelvis** (acc. -im sometimes, abl. -ĭ usually), *basin;* **puppis** (acc. -im or -em, abl. -ĭ or -ē), *stern* of ship; **rāvis** (acc. -im, abl. -ĭ always), *hoarseness;* **restis** (acc. -im usually), *rope;* **sītis** (acc. -im, abl. -ĭ, no plur.), *thirst;* **tigris** (also with stem **tigrīd-**), *tiger;* **turris** (acc. -im usually, abl. -ĭ often), *tower;* **tussis** (acc. -im, abl. -ĭ always), *cough;* and others.

Neuter: **māre** (abl. s. sometimes in -e in poetry: plural only nom. acc. except **mărĭbus** once), *sea;* **mille** (indeclinable in sing.), *thousand;* **rēte** (abl. s. sometimes **rētē**; acc. s. also **retem** (m.)), *a net.*

135 (3) Stems with disyllabic nominatives in **-ĕr**:

**imber** (m., abl. -ĭ often), *shower of rain;* **linter** or **lunter** (f. rarely m.), *boat;* **venter** (m.), *belly;* **ūter** (m.), *skin bag.*

136 (4) Stems with monosyllabic nominatives.

All (except **mās**, gen. **măris**, *male;* **nix**, gen. **nĭvis**, *snow;* **trabs**, gen. **trăbis**, *a beam*) have a long syllable, usually formed by two consonants, preceding the **i**; e.g. **urbs**, *a city;* **arx**, *a citadel;* **plebs**, *the common people;* **lux**, *light.*

All are feminine, except the following masculines: **dens**, *tooth;* **fons**, *fount;* **glans** (gen. **glandis**), *acorn;* **glīs** (gen. **glīris**), *dormouse;* **mās** (gen. pl. **mārum** sometimes), *male;* **mūs** (gen. **mūris**), *mouse;* **pons** (gen. **pontis**), *bridge;* and the neuters **lac**, sometimes **lactĕ** (gen. **lactis**, no plur.), *milk;* **plūs** (gen. **plūris**), *more*, plural **plūres** (m. f.), **plūra** (n.).

Notice also **nix** (f.) (gen. **nĭvis**, stem **nigvi-**), *snow* (no gen. pl.); **vis** (f.), *force*, acc. **vim**; abl. **vī**; gen. and dat. rare: plur. **vīres**, *strength;* gen. **virium**; dat. abl. **viribus.**

137 B. Adjectives with derivative suffixes:

| | |
|---|---|
| **-ācĭ** | e.g. **audax**, *bold;* **lŏquax**, *talkative;* **vīvax**, *longlived.* |
| **-ōcĭ** | e.g. **atrox**, *cruel;* **fĕrox**, *fierce;* **vēlox**, *swift.* |
| **-trīcĭ** | e.g. **victrix**, *conquering;* **corruptrix**, *corrupting.* |
| **-ātĭ** | e.g. **nostrās**, *of our country;* **Arpīnās**, *of Arpinum*, &c.; so **pĕnātes** (pl.), *gods of our hearth;* **summātes** (pl.), *men at the top.* |
| **-ītĭ** | e.g. **Quĭrīs**, *a Roman citizen;* **Samnīs**, *a man of Samnium.* |
| **-antĭ** } **-entĭ** } | present participles; e.g. **ămans**, *loving;* **mŏnens**, *warning;* hence **ănĭmans**, *living creature;* **pārens**, *a parent;* **torrens**, *a raging flood;* **serpens**, *serpent*, &c. |
| 138 **-ilĭ** | e.g. **ăgĭlis**, *active;* **făcĭlis**, *easy;* **fossĭlis**, *dug up;* **dēlēbĭlis**, *destroyable;* **sīmĭlis**, *like.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| **-ālī** | e.g. **aequālis,** *equal;* **mortālis,** *mortal;* **rīvālis,** *rival;* **quālis,** *of what kind.* Some of these in the masculine and neuter are used as substantives; e.g.<br>Masc. **cānālis,** *a conduit;* **fetiālis,** *an ambassador;* **sŏdālis,** *a companion.*<br>Neut. (most drop the final **-e** in the nom. acc. sing.), **ănĭmal,** *animal;* **trĭbūnal,** *a judgment-seat;* **vectīgal,** *ground-rent.* |
| **-ūlī** | e.g. **ēdūlis,** *eatable;* **trĭbūlis,** *of a tribe.* |
| **-ēlī** | **crūdēlis,** *cruel;* **fīdēlis,** *faithful;* **pātruēlis,** *of an uncle.* |
| **-ĭlī** | e.g. **hostĭlis,** *of an enemy;* **vīrĭlis,** *manly.* As substantives: **Aedĭlis,** *a public officer;* **Quintĭlis,** *the fifth month.* Neuter: e.g. **ancĭle,** *sacred shield;* **ŏvĭle,** *sheepfold.* |
| **-brī** | e.g. **cĕlĕber,** *crowded;* **Dĕcember** (sc. **mensis**), *the tenth month;* **lūgubris,** *mournful;* **mŭliebris,** *womanly.* |
| **-crī** | e.g. **ălăcer,** *alert;* **mĕdiocris,** *moderate;* **vŏlŭcer,** *swift.* |
| **-strī** | e.g. **illustris,** *brilliant;* **ĕquester,** *on horseback;* **pĕdester,** *on foot;* **terrestris,** *on land.* |
| **-ārī** | e.g. **fămĭlĭāris,** *intimate;* **mīlĭtāris,** *of soldiers;* **singŭlāris,** *unique.* Neuters used as substantives often drop final **e**: e.g. **calcar,** *a spur;* **lăquear,** *a ceiling;* but **cochleāre,** *a spoon.* |
| **-ensī** | e.g. **castrensis,** *of the camp;* **fōrensis,** *of the forum;* **Cannensis,** *of Cannae.* |

139 C. Adjectives compounded of noun stems:

e.g. **exănĭmis,** *lifeless;* **biennis,** *for two years;* **inermis,** *unarmed;* **iners,** *inactive;* **praeceps,** *head foremost* (gen. **praecĭpĭtis**); so also **anceps, biceps,** &c.; **dēclīvis,** *sloping;* **concŏlor,** *of one colour;* **incŏlūmis,** *safe; not speaking;* **affīnis,** *related by marriage;* **effrēnis,** *bit-less;* **trĭformis,** *of three shapes;* **bĭlinguis,** *two-tongued;* **dēlumbis,** *weak in loins;* **immānis,** *wild;* **bimestris,** *for two months;* **enervis,** *sinewless;* **ēnormis,** *huge;* **expers,** *without share;* **lŏcŭples,** *rich;* **complūres** (pl.), neut. **complura,** *several;* **implūmis,** *featherless;* **impūbis,** *not grown up;* **simplex,** *simple;* **trīrēmis,** *triply oared;* **insignis,** *distinguished;* **insomnis,** *sleepless;* **consors,** *with common lot;* **quincunx,** *with five ounces,* hence (generally) *with five divisions.*

So also (probably compounds) **ĭnānis,** *empty;* **sublīmis,** *lofty.*

140 D. A few other words with **-i** stems do not clearly belong to any of the above classes; viz.:

Substantives: **ambāgēs** (f. pl., also **ambage,** abl. s.), *windings;* **compāges** (f.), *fastening;* **indŏlēs** (f.), *native disposition;* **sŭbŏlēs,** *upgrowth,* i.e. *offspring;* **pālumbēs** (m. f.), *a dove.*

**cŭcŭmis** (m.) (also with stem **cŭcŭmis-**, gen. **cucumĕris**), *cucumber;* **sēmentis** (f.) (acc. sometimes in **-im**), *seedtime;* **strīgĭlis** (f., abl. usually in **-ī**), *a scraper.*

**praesēpē** (n.), *a fold;* **tăpētē** (n., plur. **tapetia, tapeta**; dat. abl. **tăpētĭbus, tăpētīs**), *carpet;* **Praeneste, Soracte, Reāte** and other proper names.

**cōhors** (f.), *a troop;* **Māvors** (m.), *the god Mars.*

Adjectives: **ăgrestis,** *rural;* **caelestis,** *heavenly;* **hĭlărīs,** *cheerful;* **fēlix,** *happy;* **pernix,** *active;* **hĕbĕs,** *blunt;* **tĕrĕs,** *round;* **cĕlĕr,** *swift;* **mĕmŏr,** *mindful;* **vīrĭdis,** *green.*

## Consonant Stems.

141 A. Substantives of not more than two syllables in the genitive singular:

(*a*) with disyllabic nominative:

**cănis** (m. f.), *dog;* **sĕnex** (m.), gen. **sĕnĭs**, *old man;* **mensis** (m.), gen. pl. usually **mensum**, *month.*

**frāter** (m.), *brother;* **māter** (f.), *mother;* **păter** (m.), *father.*

142 (*b*) with monosyllabic nominative:

Masculine: **dux** (gen. **dŭcis**), *leader;* **grex** (gen. **grĕgis**), *flock;* rex (gen. **rēgis**), *king;* **pēs** (gen. **pĕdis**), *foot;* **praes** (gen. **praedis**), *surety;* **vās** (m. f., gen. **vădis**), *bail;* **lar** (gen. **lăris**), *household god;* **fūr** (gen. **fūris**), *thief;* **flōs** (gen. **flōris**), *flower;* **mōs** (gen. **mōris**), *manner;* **rōs** (gen. **rōris**), *dew.*

Also **sōl** (gen. **sōlis**), *sun;* **sāl** (gen. **sălis**, m. n.), *salt;* which have no gen. plur.

Feminine: **ops** (in nom. s. only as name of goddess), *help;* **nux** (gen. **nŭcis**), *nut;* **prĕcem** (no nom. s.), *prayer;* **vox** (gen. **vōcis**), *voice;* **frūgem** (no nom. s.), *fruit;* **lex** (gen. **lēgis**), *a law;* **laus** (gen. **laudis**), *praise.*

Also **daps** (gen. **dăpis**), *feast;* **stīp-em** (no nom.), *piece of money;* **fax** (gen. **făcis**), *torch;* **crux** (gen. **crŭcis**), *cross;* **nex** (gen. **nĕcis**), *murder;* **pix** (gen. **pĭcis**), *pitch;* **vĭcem** (no nom. s.), *change;* **strix** (gen. **strĭgis**), *owl;* which have no genitive plural.

**Par** (m. f. gen. **paris**), *an equal*, as subst. has consonant stem; but as adj. has **i** stem (neut. pl. **paria**).

Neuter: **aes** (gen. **aeris**), *bronze;* **ŏs** (gen. **ossis**), *bone;* **ōs** (gen. **ōris**), *mouth;* **crūs** (gen. **crūris**), *leg;* **jūs** (gen. **jūris**), *right;* also *broth.*

Also **cor** (gen. **cordis**), *heart;* **fĕl** (gen. **fellis**), *gall;* **mĕl** (gen. **mellis**), *honey;* **făr** (gen. **farris**), *spelt;* **vēr** (gen. **vēris**), *spring;* **rūs** (gen. **rūris**), *country;* **tūs** (gen. **tūris**), *incense;* which have no gen. plur. Also **vās** (gen. **vāsis**), *vessel*, which has **vāsōrum** in gen. plur. **Fās**, *divine right;* **nĕfās**, *wrong;* are indeclinable.

143 B. Substantives (and a few adjectives) with derivative affixes:

**-ĕc** (gen. **ĭcis**), chiefly masculine; e.g. **ăpex**, *point;* **pollex**, *thumb;* **vortex** or **vertex**, *a whirl, a head;* **ilex** (f.), *holm oak;* **pellex** (f.), *a concubine.*

**-ĭc** chiefly feminine: e.g. **călix**, *cup;* **fornix** (m.), *vault.*

**-ĭc** all feminine: e.g. **cervix**, *neck;* **mĕrĕtrix** (subst.), *a prostitute;* **nūtrix** (subst.), *nurse;* **rādix**, *root.*

**-ĕt** (gen. **ĕtis**), with nom. sing. in **-ēs**; viz. **ăbiēs** (f.), *fir;* **ăriēs** (m.), *ram;* **pāriēs** (m.), *party-wall.*

with nom. sing. in **-ēs**; viz. **sĕgĕs** (f.), *standing corn;* **tĕges** (f.), *a mat.*

**-ĕt** (gen. **ĭtis**); e.g. **caespĕs** (m.), *turf;* **gurgĕs** (m.), *whirlpool;* **līmĕs** (m.), *boundary.*

**dīves** (adj.), *rich;* **āles**, *winged;* hence *a bird* (gen. pl. usually in verse **ālītuum**).

-tās abstract substantives, very numerous, all feminine: e.g. **aetas**, *age;* **aestās**, *summer;* **cīvītās**, *citizenship;* **bĕnignĭtās**, *kindness;* **hērēdĭtās**, *inheritance;* **lĭbertas**, *liberty;* **mājestās**, *dignity;* **societās**, *partnership;* **vŏluptas**, *pleasure;* &c.

-tūt all feminine: viz. **jŭventūs**, *youth;* **sĕnectūs**, *old age;* **servĭtūs**, *bondage;* **virtūs**, *manliness.*

-ūt **sălūs**, *safety.*

-ĭd (gen. **ĭdis**), all feminine: e.g. **cassĭs**, *a helmet;* **cuspĭs**, *point of spear;* **lăpis**, *pebble.*

144 -ŏn (gen. **ĭnis**); e.g. **hŏmo** (m. f.), *man;* **nēmo**, *no man;* **turbo** (m.), *a whirl;* also **căro** (f.) gen. **carnis** for **cărĭnis**, *flesh.*

-gŏn numerous, all feminine, (except **margo** (usually m.), *a brink;*) **virgo**, *girl;* **ĭmāgo**, *image;* **lānūgo**, *downy hair;* **cālīgo**, *mist;* **ŏrīgo**, *a source;* **rōbīgo**, *rust.*

-dŏn (gen. **dĭnis**) numerous, substantives chiefly in **-tūdŏn**, all feminine, except those otherwise marked.

**cardo** (m.), *hinge;* **hărundo** (f.), *a reed;* **ordo** (m.), *a row.*

**aegrĭtūdo**, *sickness;* **fortĭtūdo**, *courage;* **multĭtūdo**, *great number*, &c.; **lĭbīdo**, *lust.*

-ĕn (gen. **ĭnis**); **flāmen** (m.), *a priest;* **pecten** (m.), *comb;* **sanguen**, usually **sanguĭs** (m.), *blood.*

Numerous verbals in **-mĕn** (gen. **mĭnis**), all neuter: e.g. **agmen**, *a train of people*, &c.; **carmen**, *song;* **certamen**, *contest;* **crīmen**, *charge;* **lēnīmen**, *alleviation;* **nōmen**, *name;* **stāmen**, *warp thread.*

-ōn (gen. **ōnis**), all masculine, except **Jūno** and abstract substantives in **-iōn** which are numerous and all feminine.

e. g. masculine: **aquĭlo**, *north wind;* **carbo**, *coal;* **leo**, *lion;* **centŭrio**, *a captain;* **mulio**, *muleteer;* **sēnio** (of dice), *a seize;* **scīpio**, *a staff;* &c.

Feminine: e.g. **accusātio** (f.), *an accusation;* **concessio**, *grant;* **quaestio**, *inquiry;* **sēdĭtio**, *a sedition;* **rătio**, *a reckoning, reason;* and many others.

**lĕgio** (lit. *a picking*), *a body of soldiers;* **rĕgio** (lit. *a ruling*) *a district;* **rellĭgio**, *a religious obligation.*

145 -ŏr all neuter: some have nom. **-ŏr**, gen. **ŏrĭs**: e.g. **aequŏr**, *a level;* **marmŏr**, *marble.*

Others have nom. **-ŭr**, gen. **ŏrĭs**: **ĕbŭr**, *ivory;* **fĕmŭr**, *thigh;* **jĕcŭr**, *liver* (also gen. **jŏcĭnĕris**, dat. **jocineri**, &c.); **rōbur**, *heart of oak, strength.*

-ŭr e.g. **augur** (m.), *an augur;* **vultur** (m.), *vulture;* **fulgur** (n.), *lightning;* **guttur** (n.), *throat;* **murmur** (n.), *murmur.*

-ĕr **agger** (m.), *a mound;* **anser** (m.), *a gander;* **carcer** (m.), *prison;* **mūlier** (f.), *woman;* **passer** (m.), *sparrow.*

**cădāver** (n.), *a corpse;* **iter** (n.), *a journey* (so nom. acc. sing., other cases as if from **itĭner**: e.g. **itineris, itinera**, &c.); **verbĕra** (n. pl.), *strokes* (also abl. s. **verbere**).

-ŏr all masculine, except two, viz. **sŏrŏr** (f.), *a sister;* **uxŏr** (f.), *wife.*

**ămŏr** (m.), *love;* **dŏlŏr**, *pain;* **fulgŏr**, *glitter;* and other verbals from present stem.

**actŏr**, *pleader;* **ămātŏr**, *lover;* **audītor**, *listener;* **censor**, *assessor.*

**-ōr** or **-ōs** Some nouns have both **-ōr** and **-ōs** in nom. s., **ōris** in gen.

**honōs** (less often **hŏnŏr**), *honour;* **lăbōs** (more often **lăbŏr**), *toil;* **cŏlōs**, also **colŏr**, *colour;* **ŏdōs** (or **ŏdŏr**), *scent.*

Adjectives of the comparative degree have nom. s. m. and f. **-ŏr**; neut. **-ŭs**; gen. s. all genders **-ōrĭs.**

e.g. **mĕliŏr** (m. f.), **mĕliŭs** (n.), *better;* **dūriŏr** (m. f.), **dūriŭs** (n.), *harder.*

**-ŏs** making nom. s. **-ŭs**, gen. **-ŏrĭs.** All neuter, except **lĕpŭs** (m.), *hare;* **arbŏr** (also nom. **arbōs**) (f.), *tree.*

Neuter: **corpus**, *body;* **dĕcus**, *distinction;* **făcĭnus**, *a deed* (usually *bad deed*); **frīgus**, *cold;* **lĭtus**, *shore;* **nĕmus**, *grove;* **pectus**, *breast;* **tempus**, *time;* and a few others.

**-ŭs** making nom. s. **-ŭs**, gen. **ĕrĭs.** All neuter, except **Vĕnus** (f.), *grace;* **vĕtus** (adj.), *old.*

Neuter: **foedus**, *treaty;* **fūnus**, *death;* **gĕnus**, *a kind;* **mūnus**, *gift;* **ŏnus**, *burden;* **ŏpus**, *work;* **pondus**, *weight;* **scĕlus**, *wickedness;* **sīdus**, *constellation;* **vellus**, *fleece;* **vulnus**, *wound;* and a few others.

146 C. Substantives and adjectives compounded of verb-stems:

e.g. **redux** (adj.), *bringing back;* **faenisex** (m.), gen. **faenĭsĕcis**, *mower.* Also **auceps** (m.), gen. **aucŭpis**, *bird-catcher;* **rēmex** (m.), gen. **rēmĭgis**, *a rower;* **compos** (adj.), gen. **compŏtis**, *having power;* **praepĕs** (adj.), gen. **praepĕtis**, *swift;* **incūs** (f.), gen. **incūdis**, *anvil.*

with gen. in **ĭpis**: **municeps** (m.), *burgess;* **princeps** (adj.), *chief.*

with gen. in **ĭcis**: **index** (m. f.), *teller;* **judex** (m. f.), *judge;* **vindex** (m. f.), *avenger;* **artĭfex** (m. f.), *skilled maker;* **carnĭfex** (m. f.), *butcher;* **pontĭfex** (m. f.), *priest;* **auspex** (m. f.), *bird-diviner;* **supplex** (adj.), *suppliant.*

with gen. in **-ĭdis**: **obsĕs** (m. f.), *hostage;* **praesĕs** (m. f.), *president;* **dēsĕs** (adj.), *indolent.*

with gen. in **-ĭtis**: **cŏmĕs** (m. f.), *companion;* **mīlĕs** (m.), *soldier;* **ālĕs** (adj.), *winged;* **ĕquĕs** (m.), *on horseback;* **pĕdĕs**, *on foot;* **superstes** (adj.), *surviving.*

147 D. A few other words do not clearly belong to the above classes, e.g.:

(1) Compounds of noun stems: **bivertex** (gen. **-ĭcis**), *with two tops;* **exlex** (gen. **exlēgis**), *outlaw;* **occĭput** (n.), gen. **occĭpĭtis**, *back of head;* **trĭpes**, gen. **trĭpĕdis**, *with three feet;* **cornīpes**, *horn-footed;* **dēgĕner**, *degenerate;* **sŭpellex** (f.), gen. **supellectĭlis**, *couch coverings.*

(2) **custōs** (m. f.), gen. **custōdis**, *a keeper;* **hēres** (m. f.), gen. **hērēdis**, *an heir;* **mercēs** (f.), gen. **mercēdis**, *wages;* **pălūs** (f.), gen. **pălūdis**, *a marsh;* **săcerdōs** (m.), gen. **săcerdōtis**, *a priest;* **quiēs, rĕquiēs** (f.), gen. **quiētis**, &c. *rest;* **Cĕrĕs** (f.), gen. **Cĕrĕris**, *the goddess Ceres;* **pūbĕs** (adj.), gen. **pūbĕris**, *grown up;* **cīnis** (m.), gen. **cīnĕris**, *ashes;* **pulvis** (m.), gen. **pulvĕris**, *dust;* **tellus** (f.), gen. **tellūris**, *the earth.*

## CHAPTER VII.

### GREEK NOUNS. (esp. CLASS I.)

143 GREEK nouns generally, at least in the prae-Augustan period, received slight changes, especially of vowels, to adjust them to the Latin usage. Thus in inflexions Greek ŏ became in Latin not **ŏ** but **ŭ**; ĕ becomes not **ĕ** but **ĭ**; final ν becomes not **n** but **m**; final ων (nom. s.) becomes not **ōn** but **o**. In and after Augustus' time a tendency grew up to preserve more strictly the Greek forms. In some words and classes of words the Romans appear to have been misled by a superficial resemblance and thus to have given Greek words the inflexions properly suitable to stems of a different character.

Plautus, Terence and Cicero for the most part Latinize the inflexions. Propertius, Ovid, and the post-Augustan poets very frequently retain the Greek vowels and **n** (for **m**) of the acc. sing. Intermediate between these two parties stand Vergil and Horace, who with Corn. Nepos, Pliny and other post-Augustan prose writers have the same tendency as Ovid, but use many of the Latin forms. In all writers the Greek forms are much more frequent in proper names than in appellatives, and in rarely used words than in those which had become part of the ordinary language.

#### CLASS I.

##### i. Stems in -a.

149 Typical examples: Προυσίας, Ἀτρείδης, Κίρκη.

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **Prūsiă** or **Prusiās** | **Atrīdă** or **Atrīdēs** | **Circă** or **Circē** |
| Voc. | **Prusiă** or **Prusiā** | **Atrīdă** or **Atridē** | **Circă** or **Circē** |
| Acc. | **Prusiam** or **Prusiān** | **Atrīdam** or **Atrīdēn** | **Circam** or **Circēn** |
| Gen. | **Prusiae** | **Atrīdae** | **Circae** or **Circēs** |
| Dat. | **Prusiae** | **Atridae** | **Circae** |
| Abl. | **Prusiā** | **Atridā** | **Circā** or **Circē** |

150 The Greek nouns corresponding to the Latin **-a** stems, ended in the nom. sing. as follows: masc. **-ās** (**-ās**), fem. **-ā** (**-ā**), after a vowel or **r**: otherwise, masc. **-ης** (**-ēs**), fem. **-η** (**-ē**). If Latinized all become simply **-ă**.

In *oblique* cases the Greek declension has (usually) **-ā, -ē** in the vocative, **-ān, ēn** in the accusative singular.

But the Latin vocative in **-ă** and acc. in **-am** (or **-em**, from Greek gentile names) are often found even when the nominative retains the Greek form.

Stems in **-tes** had vocative (Greek, as well as Latin) **-tă**, e.g. **Thyesta**; also **-tē**, e.g. **Boōtē.**

Patronymics in **-des** had vocative **-dē**, e.g. **Tȳdīdē, Aeăcīdē, Alcīdē**; sometimes **-dā**, e.g. **Aeăcīdā, Cecrŏpīdā** (Ovid), **Anchīsiādā** (Verg.); accusative always **-dēn**, e.g. **Laertiadēn, Pēlīden.**

So also feminine nouns with nom. s. in **-ē**; e.g. **Circēn, Priēnēn.**

The genitive, dative, and locative almost always take the Latin form **-ae.** But Propertius, Ovid and later poets usually make the genitive in **-ēs** from nominatives in **-ē.** So also Quintilian in names like **musicē.**

The ablative of stems in **-ēs** and **-ē** is usually **-ē.**

The plural is almost always in the Latin form. (Names of peoples &c. often have **-um** for **-arum.** See § 104.)

151 The following examples will serve to show the variety in the *nominative* case singular.

1. Greek nouns in **-ας** (**-ās**), or **-ης** (**-ēs**). *Masculine.*

(*a*) *Appellatives.* **Sȳcŏphanta, pŏēta, nauta, pīrāta** always. Similarly **athlēta, bibliopōla, propōla, cĭtharista,** and in Plaut. **trapessīta** (*τραπεζίτης*); **danista** (*δανειστής*). In Cicero, **anagnostes, geōmetres, sophistes.** So **satrăpes** (acc. usually **satrăpam**).

(*b*) *Gentile names.* **Persa** (Plaut.), **Perses** (Cic.); **Scythes** (Cic. Hor.), **Scytha** (Lucan). In Cicero **Abdērītes, Crotoniātes, Epīrōtes, Stagīrītes.**

(*c*) *Names of men.* **Hermia** (Cic.), **Mīda** (Ter.), **Marsya** (Hor. Ov.), **Pausānia** (Cic.), **Phaedria** (Ter.), **Perdicca** (Curt.), **Aeēta** (Ov.), **Prusia** (Cic. Liv.). On the other hand **Archias, Amyntas** (Cic.); **Prusias** (Liv.); **Aeneas,** &c.

**Anchīses, Achātes, Thyestes.**

Patronymics rarely have **-ă.** Thus **Hēraclīdes, Alcīdes, Asclēpiādes, Pelīdes.** But **Atrīdā** is found (Hor. Ov.). Lucretius has two patronymics from Latin names: **Memmiādae** (dat. sing.), *son of Memmius;* **Scīpiādas** (nom. s.; **Scipiadam** acc. s., Hor.; **Scipiadae** gen. s., Prop. Hor.; **Scipiadas** acc. pl., Verg.), *son of Scipio.*

152 2. Greek nouns in **-ā** (**-ă**) or **-η** (**-ē**). *Feminine.*

(*a*) *Appellatives.* **Apŏthēcă, aulă, bibliothēcă, tragoedia, comoedia, prōră, măchaeră, purpŭră** (*πορφύρα*), **ancŏră** (*ἀγκῦρα*), **nauseă** (*ναυσία*), **epistŭla** (*ἐπιστολή*), **scaenă** (*σκήνη*), always. In Cicero, **grammatĭcă, dialectĭcă, rhetŏrĭcă, mūsică**: in Quintilian **grammaticē,** &c.

(*b*) *Names of places.* **Aetnă, Cretă, Libyă, Spartă, Idă, Ĭthăcă,** &c., but in Ovid usually **Aetnē, Cretē,** &c. **Thessălonīca** (Cic.); **Thessalonice** (Liv. Plin.). Always **Cyrēnē, Meroē.**

(*c*) *Names of women.* For 'Αλκμήνη **Alcumēna** (Plaut.), **Alcmēna** (Cic.), **Alcmēnē** (Ovid). In Cicero, Varro, &c., **Andrŏmăcha, Antiŏpa, Eurōpa, Hĕcăta, Hĕlĕna, Sĕmĕla,** &c. In poets usually **Andromăchē, Antiopē,** &c. But **nympha** (Cat. Verg. Ov.), **nymphē** (Ov.). Always **Bĕrĕnīce, Hēbe, Daphne, Persĕphŏne, Phoebe, Rhŏdŏpe, Thūle, Tisīphŏne,** &c.

### ii. Stems in -o.

153 Typical examples: Ἤπειρος, Μαίανδρος, Ἄθως.

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **Epīrŭs** or **Epīrŏs** | **Maeandĕr** or **Maeandrŏs** | **Athōs** or **Athō** |
| Voc. | **Epīrĕ** | **Maeandĕr** or **Maeandrĕ** | |
| Acc. | **Epīrum** or **Epīrŏn** | **Maeandrum** or **Maeandron** | **Athon** or **Athōnem** |
| Gen. | **Epīrī** | **Maeandrī** | **Atho**? |
| Dat.) Abl.( | **Epīrō** | **Maeandrō** | **Atho** (**Athōni**? (**Athōne** |

The **-o** stems in Greek had *-os* (**-ŏs**) in nom., *-ον* (**-ŏn**) in accus. (and neuter nominative) singular. The Latin form (**-um**) for the accus. is often found, even when a Latinized nominative (**-ŭs**, sometimes **-er** for **-ĕrus**) is not found. The other cases rarely received any other than a Latin form.

154 The following are instances of the usage:

SINGULAR. 1. *Appellatives* (feminine), e.g. **methŏdus**, **atŏmus**, **antidŏtus**, always. So **trimĕtrus**, or **trimĕter**; **tetramĕtrus**, or **tetramĕter**; on the other hand **diamĕtros** (also **diamĕtrus**), **barbĭtos** (m. and f.), **phasēlos**, or **fasēlus**, *a bean*, *a boat*.

2. *Names of plants*, &c., e.g. **acanthus** (m.), **aspărăgus** (m.), **asphŏdĕlus** (m.), **hyacinthus** (m.), **hellĕbŏrus** (m. more frequently **hellĕbŏrum**, n.), **papȳrus** (f.), &c. But **lōtŏs** (f.), **aspalăthŏs**, &c.

*Precious stones* (mostly feminine), **ămĕthystus** (f.), **zmăragdus** (m.), **electrum** (n.), **topazos** (f.), &c.

*Animals*. **arctos** (f.); **scorpios** or **scorpius** (m.), **cămēlus** (m. f.), &c.

3. *Names of towns and islands* (feminine), e.g. **Abȳdus**, **Cŏrinthus**, **Lampsăcus**, **Păphus**, **Cȳprus**, **Rhŏdus**, **Tĕnĕdus**, **Epīrus**, &c. The forms in **-os**, **-on** (*os*, *ov*) in the poets chiefly. Always **Aegyptus**, but (nom.) **Imbros**, **Lemnos**, **Dĕlos**, **Sămos**, **Sestos**, **Tyros**, &c.

*Names of rivers and mountains* (masculine), **Pēnēus**, **Caystrus**, **Maeander**, **Parnassus**, &c. Also **Penēos**, &c. Usually **Pelion** (n.) and nom. **Olympus** (m.), **Caucăsus** (m.), acc. **Olympum**, **Caucasum**.

4. *Names of men*. Usually Latinized, especially those in *-ρος* (**-rus**), preceded by a consonant; e.g. **Teucer**, **Mĕleager**, rarely **Meleagros**, **Antĭpăter**, **Alexander**, **Menander**, sometimes **Menandros**, **Evander**, sometimes **Evandrus**. So we have as accusatives **Daidălon**, **Sīsȳphum**, &c.

The genitive is sometimes in **-u**; e.g. **Menandru**, **Apollodoru**.

**Panthūs**, voc. **Panthu** is a contracted form (Πάνθοος, Πάνθοε).

155 Greek words in *-εως* (**-eōs**), are either completely Latinized; e.g. **Tyndarĕŭs**, **Pēnēlĕŭs**, or sometimes have nom. **-ōs**, acc. **-ōn** or **-o**, e.g. **Andrŏgeos** (gen. **Andrŏgeo**, and **Andrŏgei** in Vergil).

So also a few names of places, viz.: **Athos**, **Ceos**, acc. **Athŏn** (Cat. Ov. Verg.), **Atho** (Liv. Plin.), **Ceo** (Cic.). **Coos** (Mela), **Cŏŭs** (Liv.) for Κόως, Κῶς, has acc. **Coum** (Plin. Tac.), abl. **Coo** (Cic. Plin.). Cicero and Livy inflect **Atho**, as if with stem in **-ōn**.

For some stems in *ευ-* (**eu-**) see § 160.

**156** PLURAL. The nominative rarely in **-oe**; e.g. **Adelphoe** (Ter.), **canēphŏroe, arctoe, cosmoe** (Cic.).

The Greek genitive in *-ων* (**-ōn**) is found sometimes with **liber** as the name of a book; e.g. Vergil's **Būcŏlĭcon, Georgĭcon**; Manilius' **Astronŏmĭcon**; rarely otherwise; e.g. **Colonia Theraeon,** for **Theraeorum** (Sall.).

On the genitive in **-um**, e.g. **Pelasgum, Grajum,** see § 115.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### GREEK NOUNS. CLASS II.

**157** GREEK nouns of this class, as of the first class, frequently retain such of their Greek inflexions as are not very dissimilar from the Latin inflexions. Plautus, Terence and Cicero for the most part Latinize the inflexions. Propertius, Ovid and the post-Augustan poets very frequently retain the Greek vowels and **-n** (for **-m**) of the acc. sing. and short pronunciation of the final syllables. Intermediate between these two parties stand Vergil and Horace, who with Corn. Nepos, Pliny and other post-Augustan prose writers share the same tendency as Ovid, but use many of the Latin forms. The Greek forms in all writers are much more frequent in proper names than in appellatives.

#### 1. Stems in **-o, -eu, -y.**

**158** Typical examples: *ἥρως*, *Ἀτρεύς*, *Τηθύς*.

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. | SINGULAR. | SINGULAR. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Voc. | **hērōs** | **hērōēs** | **Atrĕūs** / **Atreu** | **Tēthўs** / **Tēthў** |
| Acc. | **hērōem** or **hērōă** | **hērōăs** | **Atreum** or **Atrĕă** | **Tēthym** or **Tēthўn** |
| Gen. | **hērōĭs** | **hērōum** | **Atreī** or **Atrĕōs** | **Tēthўĭs** or **Tēthўōs** |
| Dat. Abl. | **hērōī** / **hērōĕ** | **hērōĭbŭs** | **Atreō** / **Atreō** | **Tēthўī** or **Tethўĭ** / **Tēthўĕ** |

**159** **-o**

(*a*) Masculine. Nom. in **-ōs**; acc. **-ōem** or (poet.) **-ōă**; gen. **-ōĭs**; dat. **-ōĭ**. Plural nom. **-ōēs**; acc. **-ōăs**; gen. **-ōum**; dat. abl. **-ōĭbus**? (**-ōĭsin** once in Ovid).

e.g. **hēros, Minos.**

(*b*) Feminine. All cases in **-o**, except gen. **-ūs**. Ovid occasionally has accusative in **-on.**

e.g. **Allecto, Argo, Callisto, Călypso, Dido, Echo, Hēro, Io, Ino, Manto, Theāno, Sappho.**

160 **-eu** Masculine. Nom. **-ēus**; voc. **-ēu**; acc. **-eum** or (poet.) **ĕa**; gen. **-ei** or (poet.) **-eŏs**; dat. abl. **-eo**. The poets (e.g. Verg. Ov. Prop.) often treat **-ei**, **-eo** as one syllable.
e.g. **Atreus, Cepheus, Erechtheus, Mnēstheus, Nēreus, Orpheus, Pēleus, Perseus, Prŏmētheus, Pīraeeus, Prōteus, Tēreus, Thēseus, Typhoeeus, Tyndăreus**, &c. For metre's sake we have in acc. **Idŏmĕnēă, Ilĭŏnēa** (Verg.), **Căpănēă** (Stat.).
The plural is rarely found; e.g. accus. **Megarecs** (Quintil.), **Phineăs** or **Phineas** (Mart.).

The name of the Macedonian king Perseus had an **e-** (or **a-**) stem used in Cicero, and a **-eu** stem used in Livy. Other writers generally follow Livy. Thus in Cicero, nom. **Perses**; acc. **Persen**, rarely **Persem**; gen. dat. **Persae**; abl. **Persa**. In Livy, nom. **Perseus**; acc. **Perseum** and **Persea**; gen. **Persei**; dat. abl. **Perseo**.
In Horace are found gen. **Achillēī, Ulixēī.**
The Greek *ἀμφορεύς* (m.), is in Lat. always **amphŏra** (f.).

161 **-y** Nom. **-ys**, voc. **-y** (in poets); acc. **-yn** or **-ym**; gen. **-yis** or **-yos**; dat. **-yi**; abl. **-ye.**
e.g. **chĕlys** (f.), **Cotys** (m.), **Erīnys** (f.), **Hălys** (m.), **Phorcys** (f.), **Tēthys** (f., dat. **Tēthȳī** once Catul.).

## 2. Stems in -e and -i.

162 Typical examples: *Σωκράτης, τίγρις tiger, πέλαγος* (n.).

| | Singular. | Singular. | Plural. | Singular. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Voc. | **Socrătēs** | **tigrĭs** | **tigrēs** | **pĕlăgŭs** |
| Acc. | **Socratem** or **Socraten** | **tigrim** or **tigrin** | **tigrēs** or **tigrīdăs** | **pĕlăgŭs** |
| Gen. | **Socratī** or **Socratīs** | **tigrĭs** or **tigrĭdis** | **tigrium** | **pĕlăgī** |
| Dat. | **Socratī** | **tigrī** or **tigrĭdi**? | **tigrĭbŭs** | **pĕlăgō** |
| Abl. | **Socratĕ** or **Socratĕ** | **tigrĕ** or **tigrĭdĕ** | | **pĕlăgō** |

Plur. N. Ac. **pĕlăgē**

163 **-e** (*a*) Masculine. Nom. s. **-ēs**[1]. Acc. **-em** or more frequently (especially in post-Augustan writers), in **-ēn**. Gen. usually in **-ī**[2], sometimes **-is**. Abl. in **-ĕ**, rarely **-ē**. In plural these stems are often treated as if they ended in **-a**[3].

**-ce** e.g. **Pharnăces.** **-che** e.g. **Lăches.**

**-te** e.g. **Acestes, Achātes, Bŏōtes, Euphrātes, Hippŏcrātes, Iphĭcrātes, Isŏcrātes, Mithridates, Orestes, Phrahātes, Pŏlȳcrātes, Sŏcrātes, Thyestes, Tĭrĭdātes, Tīmŏcrātes, Xĕnŏcrātes**, &c.

[1] These stems properly end in **-os**, or *-ες*; e.g. *Σώκρατες-, γένος-*. The final *ς* (in *γένος-*, &c.), which is changed to **r** in Latin (§ 131), is omitted in Greek.

[2] Forms like *Σωκράτου, Καλλικράτου, Καλλισθένου*, &c. (instead of *Σωκράτους*, &c.), occur, in the Aeolic dialect and in some Attic inscriptions.

[3] Forms like *Σωφάναι, Πραξιτέλαι*, &c. occur in Greek in and after Plutarch.

A genitive in **-ae** is occasionally found in the poets; e.g. **Antĭphătae, Bootae, Orestae, Thyestae.**

**-de** e.g. **Alcĭbĭădes, Aristĭdes, Carneădes, Diŏmēdes, Eurĭpĭdes, Gănўmēdes, Hypĕrĭdes, Miltĭădes, Pălămēdes, Parmĕnĭdes, Simonĭdes, Thūcўdĭdes.** Proper patronymics belong to the first class, §§ 150, 151.

**-ne** e.g. **Artăphernes, Clisthĕnes, Demosthĕnes, Diogĕnes.**

**-le** e.g. **Achilles** (see § 160), **Aristŏteles, Hercŭles, Praxĭtĕles, Thales** (see §§ 166, 168); **Empĕdŏcles, Thĕmistŏcles, Pĕrĭcles.**

**-se (-ze)** e.g. **Gotarzes, Oaxes, Ulixes** (see § 160), **Xerxes, Vologēses** (some cases of a stem in **-o** are found from the last-named).

**164** (*b*) Neuters. Nom. acc. sing. **-ŏs** or **-ŭs.** Nom. acc. pl. **-ē** (no other cases). e.g. **cētŏs, mĕlŏs, pĕlăgŭs; Tempe** (plur. only). **Pelăgus** (n.), and **cetus** (m.), are also used with **-o** stems. So also **ĕrĕbum** (acc.), **erebi** (gen.), **erebo; chao** (dat.), **căcōēthes** (adj. n.).

**165 -i** (*a*) Feminine (chiefly, except names of rivers). Nom. in **-is.** Acc. in **-im** or **-in,** abl. **-i.**

Appellatives: e.g. **băsis** (acc. also in **-em**), **phthīsis, pŏēsis, pristis, tigris** (also with stem in **-id**).

Names of Persons. e.g. **Sesostris** (m.), **Memphītis** (f.), **Alcestis** (f.).

Names of Places. e.g. **Amphipŏlis, Neăpŏlis,** &c.; **Chărybdis, Hispălis, Leptis, Memphis, Sўbaris,** &c., also the plurals **Gadīs, Sardīs, Syrtīs, Trallīs.**

Names of Rivers. Masculine. e.g. **Albis, Bactis** (abl. also in **-ĕ**), **Ligĕris, Līris, Tamĕsis, Tănais, Tigris** (see also § 170), **Tiberis; Vesĕris, Visurgis.**

A gen. pl. in **-ōn** occurs in the word **mĕtămorphoseōn** as part of the title of Ovid's work.

(*b*) Neuter. Nom. in. **-i.** e.g. **sināpi.** Also a feminine form with nom. in **is,** acc. in **-im.**

## 3. Consonant stems.

**166** The Greek forms are: Singular gen. **-ŏs** (Lat. **-is**); acc. **-ă** (Lat. **-em**); Plural nom. **-ēs** (Lat. **-ēs**). Other differences apply only to particular stems.

Typical examples: ἐλέφας, Κρέων, Θάλης.

| | Singular. | Plural. |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **ĕlĕphantus** or **elephans** or **-as** | **ĕlĕphanti** (or **elephantēs**?) |
| Acc. | **ĕlĕphantum** or **ĕlephantă** or **-em** | **elephantōs** (or **elephantăs**?) |
| Gen. | **elephantī** | **elephantōrum** |
| Dat. | **elephanto** | **elephantīs** (or **elephantībus**?) |
| Abl. | **elephanto** or **elephantĕ** | |

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **Creo** or **Creon** | | **Ancōnă** or **Ancōn** |
| Acc. | **Creōnem** or **Creontem** or **-tă** | | **Ancōnam** or **Ancōnem** |
| Gen. | **Creonīs** or **Creontīs** | | **Anconae** or **Anconīs?** |
| Dat. | **Creoni** or **Creonti** | | **Anconae** or **Anconi?** |
| Abl. | **Creone** or **Creonte** | | **Anconă** or **Anconē** |
| Nom. Voc. | **Thalēs** | **Phyllīs** / **Phyllĭ** | **Thētis** / **Thētĭ** |
| Acc. | **Thalētem** or **Thalem** or **-en** | **Phyllĭdă** | **Thētim** or **Thetĭn** |
| Gen. | **Thalētīs** or **Thalis?** | **Phyllĭdĭs** or **Phyllĭdŏs** | **Thetĭdĭs** |
| Dat. | **Thalētī** or **Thalī?** | **Phyllĭdī** or **Phyllĭdĭ?** | **Thetĭdi** |
| Abl. | **Thalētē** or **Thalē** | **Phyllidē** | **Thetidē** and **Theti** |

167 (*a*) *Labial stems:*

-ăp e.g. **Laelaps** (m.).

-ŏp e.g. **Aethiops** (m.), **Pĕlops** (m.).

-ōp e.g. **Cȳclops** (m.).

-ȳph e.g. **gryps** (m. In plur. also **gryphi, gryphorum, gryphis**).

-ăb e.g. **Arabs** (m., also nom. **Arăbus**; abl. **Arăbō**).

-ȳb e.g. **Chălybs** (m.).

(*b*) *Guttural stems:*

-ăc e.g. **Cŏrax** (m.).

-ŏc e.g. **Cappădox** (some cases from stems in **-o** in post-Augustan writers).

-ȳc e.g. **Eryx** (m. acc. **Erycum**; abl. **Eryco** Cic. Tac.).

-ĭc e.g. **Cĭlix** (adj.).

-āc e.g. **thōrax** (m.), **Ajax** (m.), **Thrax** (m.), **Phaeax** (m.).

-ȳc e.g. **Ceyx** (m.), **bombyx** (m.).

-ȳch e.g. **ŏnyx** (m. f.), **sardŏnyx** (f.).

-nc e.g. **lynx** (f. rarely m.).

-ȳg e.g. **Phryx** (m.), **Styx** (f.), **Iāpyx** (m.).

-ng e.g. **Sphinx** (f.), **syrinx** (f.), **phălanx** (f.).

163 (*c*) *Dental stems:* (*a*) *stems in* **-t.**

-ăt (1) Neuter. Nom. s. in **-ă**; Plural nom. in **-tă**; gen. in **-tōrum**; dat. abl. in **-tīs**, sometimes in **-tĭbus**.
e.g. **dĭplōma, emblēma, plasma, pōēma, prŏblēma, tŏreuma.**
(2) Neuter. Nom. s. in **-ăs**; e.g. **artŏcreas.**

-ĭt Nom. s. in **-ĭs**; e.g. **Chāris** (f.).

-ōt Nom. s. in **-ōs**; e.g. **Aegŏcĕros** (m.), **rhīnŏcĕros** (m.), **Eros** (m.).

-ēt Nom. s. in **-ēs**; e.g. **lĕbes** (m.), **magnes** (m.); **Crēs, Dăres, Thăles, Chrĕmes, Phĭlŏlăches,** &c. The last three have also forms as from **-i** stems; e.g. **Thălem, Thăli, Thăle** (§ 163. It has vowel, not dental, stem in Herodotus and Attic Greek).

-ēth Nom. s. in **-ēs**; e.g. **Parnes.**

**-ant** Nom. s. in **-as**, rarely in **-ans**; acc. in **-anta**, often in poets; vocative sometimes in **-ā**; e.g. **Calchā, Pallā.**

e.g. **ădămas** (m.), **gĭgas** (m.), **ĕlĕphas** (m. the other cases most frequently formed as from a stem in **-anto**); **Atlas** (m.), **Calchas** (m.), **Cŏrȳbantes** (m. plur.), **Pallas** (m.), **Thoas** (m.).

For the Greek forms **Acrăgas** (m.), **Tăras** (m.), used sometimes in verse we have in prose **-o** stems; e.g. **Agrigentum, Tărentum** or **Tarentus.**

**-ont** Nom. s. in **-ōn.** All masculine.

e.g. **Anacreon, Autŏmĕdon, Chăron, Phăēthon, drăco, chămaeleon, Creon, Antĭphon, Xĕnŏphon.**

The last three words, and others ending in **-phont**, have, in Plautus and Terence and sometimes in Cicero, stems in **-phōn**, nom. **-phō**, only; e.g. **Ctēsĭpho**, acc. **Ctesiphōnem**, &c. (§ 171).

**-unt** Nom. s. in **-us.**

e.g. **Pessĭnus** (m.), **Sēlīnus** (f.), **Trăpezus** (f.). For Σιποῦς Cicero has **Sipontum**; for Ὑδροῦς Livy has **Hydruntum.** **Acheruns** (Plaut., Lucr.), **Acheron** (Cic. &c.).

**-ent** Nom. s. in **-is**; e.g. **Sīmoīs.**

**-ynth** Nom. s. in **-ns**; e.g. **Tīryns.**

169 (β) *Stems in* **-d.**

In nom. sing. **-d** gives place to **-s.**

**-ăd** Nom. s. in **-ās.** All feminine; e.g. **lampas** (acc. s. generally **lampădă**); **Pallas** (dat. s. **Pallădī** once); **Arcas, Cȳclas, Drȳas, Hămădryas, Hȳas, Ilias, Maenas, Orēas, Pleias, Thyas.**

A few instances occur of dat. pl. in **-ăsin**; e.g. **Hămadrȳăsin,** &c. (Prop.); **Trōăsin, Lemniăsin** (Ovid).

**-ŏd** Nom. s. in **-ūs**; e.g. **trĭpūs** (m.); **Melampus,** m. (voc. **Melampu,** once in Stat.). From **Oedĭpus** (m.) the following forms are found, chiefly in Seneca (*Trag.*) and Statius: nom. **-ūs, -ōdes**; voc. **-ĕ**; acc. **-um** (Cic.), **-ōda**? **-ōdem, -ōden**; gen. **-ōdis** (Cic., Stat.), **-ōdae** (Sen., Stat.); dat. **-ōdae**; abl. **-ōde** (Cic.), **-ōdā.**

**-ȳd** Nom. s. in **-ȳs**; voc. in **-ȳ** in poets; e.g. **chlămys** (f.), **Iāpys.**

170 **-īd** Nom. s. in **-īs**; voc. in poets (not Plaut. or Ter.), frequently in **-ī.** Other Greek forms are frequent; dat. sing. in **-ī** occurs once, viz. **Mīnōidī** (Catul.).

As regards the acc. s. these stems fall into two classes:

(1) Acc. s. in **-īdem** in prose and prae-Augustan poets; in **-īdă** in post-Augustan poets. All feminine.

Appellatives: e.g. **aegis, aspis, ĕphēmĕris, hērōis, pĕrīscĕlis, pȳrămis, pyxis, tȳrannis** (acc. s. in **-īdă** once in Cicero).

Names of persons: e.g. **Amăryllis, Bacchis, Chrȳsis, Dōris, Lāis, Lȳcōris, Phyllis, Thāis.**

Patronymics, &c.: e.g. **Brīsēis, Cadmēis, Colchis, Gnōsis, Mīnōis, Prīămēis, Salmōnis, Titānis.**

Names of countries: e.g. **Aulis, Chalcis, Locris, Persis, Phōcis.**

(2) Acc. s. in **-im** or, sometimes, esp. in Augustan and post-Augustan poets, **-in.** So all masculines and some feminines.

An abl. or dat. s. in **-ī** is found in some; e.g. **Eupŏli, Osīri, Phălări, Thēti, Sēmīrămi.**

Appellatives: e.g. **Ibis** (f., also in plur. **ibes, ibium**), **Iris** (f.), **tigris** (both river and animal, also declined as if with stem in **-i**. Dat. abl. plur. only **tigrĭbus**).

Names of persons. Masculine; e.g. **Alexis, Adōnis, Daphnis, Eupŏlis, Nabis, Păris** (the last three have acc. also in **-īdem**), **Moeris, Thyrsis, Zeuxis, Anūbis, Busīris, Osīris, Serāpis.**

Feminine; e.g. **Isis, Sēmīrāmis, Procris, Thētis.**

Names of countries: e.g. **Phāsis** (f.), **Phthiōtis** (f.) have also acc. in **-ĭdem** or **-ĭdă.**

**-ĭd** Nom. s. in **-ĭs**; e.g. **apsis** (f.). (From *κρηπῖδ-* we have only an **-a** stem, **crĕpīda.**)

171 (*d*) *Stems in* **-n.**

These retain **-n** in nominative (except some stems in **-ŏn**, more in **-ōn**); acc. s. frequently in **-ă**; plur. in **-ās.**

**-ŏn** Nom. s. usually in **-ŏn**; gen. s. sometimes in **-ŏnŏs**; e.g. **sindon** (f.), **Arĭon** (m.), **Gorgon** (f.), **Memnon** (m.), **Ixĭon** (m.).

Some have also nom. s. in **-o**; e.g. **Agămemno** (m.), **Amphĭo** (m.), **Lăcĕdaemo** (f.), **Măcĕdo** (m.), **Strymo** (m.).

**-ĕn** e.g. **Phĭlŏpoemen.**

**-ān** Masculine; e.g. **paean, Alcman, Acarnan, Tītan** (rarely declined as with **-o** stem), **Pan** (acc. s. always **Pāna**).

**-ōn** Mostly masculine.

Names of persons and things. Nom. s. usually in **-o**; e.g. **arrhăbo** (sometimes f.), **myŏpăro, sipho, Apollo** (also like **homo**, e.g. acc. s. **Apollĭnem**), **Lăco, Amphĭtruo, Drŏmo, Phormio, Simo, Trānio, Dio, Hiĕro, Milo, Parmenio, Plato, Pyrrho, Zeno.** So also stems in **-phōn**, see § 168. But **Trĭton, Tĕlămon, Chiron.**

Names of places. Nom. s. usually in **-on**; e.g. **Cŏlŏphon** (m.), **Mărăthon** (f.), **Sĭcyon** (f.), **Băbylon** (f.), **Călydon** (f.), **Hĕlĭcon** (m.), **Cithaeron** (m.). For **Ancon, Crōto** (m.), we have often an **-a** stem, viz. **Ancōna, Crōtōna.**

**-ōn** e.g. **attăgen** (m. but also a stem in **-a**, **attagena**); **sīren** (f.), **splen** (m.), **Troezen** (f.).

**-ĭn** e.g. **delphin** (m. usual nom. **delphīnus**); **Eleusĭn** (f.), **Trāchĭn** (f.). Rarely nom. s. in **-s**; e.g. **Sălămis** (f.).

172 (*e*) *Stems in* **-s** *or* **r**: exhibit simple stem in nominative.

**-ăr** e.g. **nectar** (n.).

**-ŏr** all masculine, e.g. **rhētor** (m.), **Amyntor, Antēnor, Castor, Hector, Mentor, Nestor.**

**-ŭs (ŭr)** Nom. s. in **-us**; e.g. **Ligus.**

**-ĕr** Nom. s. in **-ĕr**; e.g. **āer**; (m. acc. s. usually **āĕră**; **aether** (m. acc. always **aethĕră**).

**-ēr** e.g. **crāter** (m.) acc. **crātēra** (Cic.). Also with stem in **-a**; nom. s. **cratēra** and **creterra.** For **panther, stater,** we have always **panthēra, statēra.**

# CHAPTER IX.

## Degrees of Nouns Adjective.

173 From many adjectives two derivative adjectives are formed in order to denote the degree of the quality exprest by them. The simple form is called the *positive*. The *comparative* expresses a higher degree of the quality in a comparison of two things or persons. The *superlative* expresses a higher degree in a comparison of more than two things or persons; as, **dūrus**, *hard*, **dūrior**, *harder*, **dūrissĭmus**, *hardest*.

The comparative is sometimes used to express that the quality is possessed in *too high* a degree.

The superlative is sometimes used to express that the quality is possessed in a *very high* degree.

### Ordinary formation of Comparative and Superlative.

174 These derivative adjectives are formed from the positive as follows.

1. The stem of the comparative is formed by adding **iōs** to the last consonant of the stem. The **s** is changed into **r** before vowels and in the nom. sing. masc. and fem. (see § 28). In the neuter nom. and acc. sing. **iōs** becomes **iŭs**.

2. The stem of the superlative always ends in **-īmo** (before Augustus, **ŭmo**). Usually this is suffixed to the stem of the comparative, and we thus get a termination **-issŭmo** for **iōs-ŭmo** appended to the last consonant of the stem; i.e. by changing the inflexion **ī** or **is** of the genitive into **issŭmus** or **issĭmus** for the nom. sing. masc. Thus,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **dūr-us**, | gen. **dur-ī**, | comp. **dur-ĭor**, | superl. **dur-issimus.** |
| **trist-is**, | gen. **trist-is**, | comp. **trist-ĭor**, | superl. **trist-issimus.** |
| **felix (felic-s)**, | gen. **felīc-is**, | comp. **felīc-ĭor**, | superl. **felīc-issimus.** |

Some adjectives form their superlative by doubling the last consonant of the stem and adding **ĭmus**. These are

(*a*) Adjectives with stems ending in **ĕro** or **ĕri**, the **e** being omitted or retained, as in the positive, §§ 109, 110.

**pulcher**, comp. **pulchr-ĭor**, superl. **pulcher-rĭmus.**
So **nĭger, pĭger, rŭber, taeter, văfer : ācer, celĕber, sălŭber.**
**asper**, **aspĕrior**, **asperrĭmus.**

So **cĕler, dexter** (also rarely superl. **dextimus**), **lĭber, mĭser, pauper, tĕner, ūber.** Also

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **vĕtus** | no comp. | **vĕterrimus** |
| **prospĕrus** | | **prosperrimus** |
| **sinister** | **sinisterior** | (**sinistimus** only in augurial language) |
| no positive | **dētĕrior** | **deterrimus** |
| **nūpĕrum** (acc. Plaut. once) | **nūpĕrior** | no superl. |

**mātūrus** has **mātur-rimus**, as well as the more common form **mātur-issimus.** (**sincērus, austērus, procērus, sevērus** have superl. in **issimus.**)

(*b*) The following adjectives whose last stem consonant is **l**; **făcĭlis,** *easy;* **sīmĭlis,** *like;* **difficĭlis,** *difficult;* **dissīmĭlis,** *unlike;* **grăcĭlis,** *thin, slender;* **hŭmĭlis,** *low;* as, **facil-is, făcil-limus.**

175 Irregular or defective adjectives (besides those named above 2. *a*).

1. The following are either deficient in the positive degree or form their comparative and superlative irregularly or from a different stem:

| Positive. | Comp. | Superl. |
|---|---|---|
| **bŏnus,** *good* | **mĕlior** | **optĭmus** |
| **mălus,** *bad* | **pējor** | **pessĭmus** |
| **magnus,** *great* | **mājor** | **maxĭmus** |
| **parvus,** *small* | **mĭnor** | **mĭnĭmus** (**parvissimus,** Var., Lucr.) |
| **multus,** *much* | **plūs** (neut. cf. § 136) | **plūrĭmus** |
| **nēqvam** (indecl.), *wicked* | **nēqvior** | **nēqvissĭmus** |
| **dīves** / **dīs** *rich* | **dīvĭtior** / **dĭtior** | **dīvĭtissĭmus** (Cic.) / **dĭtissĭmus** (Aug. and post-Aug.) |
| **sĕnex,** *old* | **sĕnior** | (**nātu maximus**) |
| **jŭvĕnis,** *young* | **jūnior** (sometimes post-Aug. **jŭvĕnior**) | (**nātu mĭnĭmus**) |
| **pŏtis, pŏtĕ,** (indecl.), *able, possible* | **pŏtior,** *better* | **pŏtissĭmus,** *best* |
| (no positive, cf. ὠκύς) | **ōcĭor,** *swifter* | **ōcissĭmus** |
| **frūgi** (indecl.) | **frūgālior** | **frūgālissĭmus** |
| **ĕgēnus** / **ĕgĕnus** | **egentior** | **egentissĭmus** |
| **bĕnĕvŏlus** / **bĕnĕvŏlens** (Plaut. Ter.) | **benevolentior** | **benevolentissĭmus** |
| **mălĕvŏlus** / **mălĕvŏlens** (Plaut.) | **malevolentior** | **malevolentissĭmus** |
| **mălĕdĭcus** / **mălĕdĭcens** (Plaut.) | **maledīcentior** | **maledīcentissĭmus** |
| **bĕnĕfĭcus** | **benefĭcentior** | **benefĭcentissĭmus** |
| **mălĕfĭcus** | | **malefĭcentissĭmus** |

| Positive. | Comp. | Superl. |
|---|---|---|
| **magnĭfĭcus** | **magnificentĭor** | **magnĭfĭcentissimus** |
| **mūnĭfĭcus** | | **munĭfĭcentissimus** |
| **mīrĭfĭcus** | | **mirificissimus** (Ter. once) |
| **hŏnōrĭficus** | **honorificentĭor** | **honorificentissimus** |
| **cĭtra** (adv.), *on this side* | **cĭtĕrior** | **cĭtĭmus** |
| (**dē**, prep. *down from*) | **dētĕrior**, *worse* | **dēterrĭmus** |
| **extra** (adv.), **extĕr** (adj.) *outside* (very rare in sing.), **externus** | **extĕrior** | **extrēmus**, **extĭmus** |
| **infra** (adv.), **infĕr** (adj.), *low* (chiefly used in plur. *the beings, places*, &c. *below*) | **infĕrior** | **infĭmus**, **īmus** |
| **intra** (adv.), *within* | **intĕrior** | **intĭmus** |
| **post, postĕrus**, *next* (in time) | **postĕrior**, *hinder*, *later* | **postrēmus**, *last*; **postŭmus**, *last-born* |
| **prae** (prep.) *before* | **prĭor** | **prīmus** |
| **prŏpe** (adv.), *near* | **prŏpĭor** | **proxĭmus** |
| **supra** (adv.), **sŭpĕr** (adj.), *high* (chiefly used in plur. *the beings, places*, &c. *above*) | **supĕrior** | **suprēmus**, *highest*, *last* (in time); **summus** |
| **ultra** (adv.), *beyond* | **ultĕrior** | **ultĭmus**, *farthest* |

**2.** The following have superlative, but not comparative: **bellus, caesius, falsus, inclŭtus, invictus, invītus, nŏvus, săcer, văfer.**

**3.** The following have comparative, but not superlative:

Verbals in **-īlis** (except **amābilissimus, mōbilissimus, fertilissimus, utilissimus, nobilissimus**).

**ălăcer, agrestis, arcānus, diuturnus, exĭlis, jējūnus, jŭvĕnis, longinqvus, obliqvus, opīmus, proclivis, prōnus, sătur, segnis, sĕnex, sērus, supīnus, surdus, taciturnus, tempestivus, vīcīnus.**

**176** Adjectives used only in the positive:

Many adjectives, which express an absolute state or quality, e.g. *material* (e.g. **aureus**), *time* (e.g. **nocturnus**), *special relationship* (e.g. **paternus**), which does not readily admit the idea of a higher or lower degree, have no comparative or superlative. In some others they are wanting without any such apparent reason.

If a comparison is required in such adjectives the defect is supplied by adding **măgis** and **maxime**. Thus, **magis mīrus**, *more wonderful*, **maxime mirus**, *most wonderful*.

Adjectives used only in the positive are chiefly of the following classes:

**1.** *Derivatives* ending in **-ĭcus, -īnus, -īvus, -ōrus, -tīmus, -ŭlus, -ālis** or **-āris, -īlis**, and (from substantives) in **-ātus** and **-ītus**, as **cīvĭcus, natūrālis**, &c., **barbātus, crīnītus.**

Exceptions: **aeqvalior**; **capitalior**; **civilior** (Ov.); **familiarior, familiarissimus**; **frugalior, frugalissimus**; **hospitalissimus** (Cic.); **juvenilior** (Ov.); **liberalior, liberalissimus**; **popularior**; **puerilior** (Hor.); **salutarior.**

2. *Compounds;* as **inops, magnanimus**, &c.

Except those named above from **dico, facio, volo** (§ 175).

Except also **amentior, amentissimus**; **concordior, concordissimus**; **deformior**; **dementior, dementissimus**; **immānior, immanissimus**; **inertior, inertissimus**; **ingentior**; **insignior**; **misericordior**; **perennior**; **sollertior, sollertissimus.**

3. Adjectives *ending in* **-us**, *preceded by a vowel.*

(*a*) But **u** often is, or becomes, consonantal, and thus allows a comparative or superlative without difficulty; e.g. in **-qvus** and **-gvis**; e.g. **antiqvior, antiqvissimus**; **pingvior, pingvissimus**; **tenvis, tenvior, tenvissimus.**

(*b*) **industrior** (Plaut.); **piisimus** (condemned by Cic. *Phil.* 13. 19, but used by Antony, Sen., Curt., Tac.).

4. The following: **albus, almus, calvus, cānus, curvus, fērus, gnārus, mĕdiocris, mirus, gnāvus, rŭdis, trux.**

177 Many *participles* present and past have comparatives and superlatives, e.g.

1. Present Participle:

**amans, appetens, ardens, continens, egens, fervens, flagrans, florens, indulgens, negligens, patiens, temperans, tuens, valens**, &c.

2. Past Participle:

**acceptus, accuratus, adstrictus, apertus, aversus, concitatus, conjunctus, contemptus, dissolutus, doctus, effusus, eruditus, exoptatus, expeditus, instructus, intentus, munitus, obstinatus, paratus, perditus, perfectus, promptus, refertus, remotus**, &c.

# CHAPTER X. NUMERALS.

## i. List of Numerals.

| ARABIC SIGNS. | ROMAN SIGNS. | CARDINAL: (adjectives). | ORDINAL: (all declinable adjectives). | DISTRIBUTIVE: (all declinable adjectives plural). | NUMERAL ADVERBS: |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | I. | ūn*us*, *a*, *um* | prīm*us*, *a*, *um*<br>prior, *first of two* | singŭl*i*, *ae*, *a* | sĕmĕl |
| 2 | II. | du*o*, *ae*, *o* | sĕcund*us*<br>alter | bīn*i* (for duīni) | bĭs (for duis) |
| 3 | III. | tr*es*, tr*ia* | tertī*us* | tern*i* (or trīn*i*, § 188) | tĕr |
| 4 | IIII. or IV. | quattuor | quart*us* | quăterni | quătĕr |
| 5 | V. | quinque | quint*us* | quīn*i* | quinquiens |
| 6 | VI. | sex | sext*us* | sēn*i* | sexiens |
| 7 | VII. | septem | septĭm*us* | septēn*i* | septiens |
| 8 | VIII. or IIX. | octo | octāv*us* | octōn*i* | octiens |
| 9 | VIIII. or IX. | nŏvem | nōn*us* | nŏvēn*i* | nŏviens |
| 10 | X. | dĕcem | dĕcĭm*us* | dēn*i* | dĕciens |
| 11 | XI. | undĕcim | undĕcĭm*us* | undēn*i* | undĕciens |
| 12 | XII. | duodĕcim | duodĕcĭm*us* | dŭŏdēn*i* | duodĕciens |
| 13 | XIII. | tredĕcim | tertī*us* decim*us* | tern*i* den*i* | terdĕciens |
| 14 | XIIII. or XIV. | quattuordĕcim | quart*us* decim*us* | quăterni dēn*i* | quătĕrdĕciens |
| 15 | XV. | quindĕcim | quint*us* decim*us* | quīn*i* dēn*i* | quindĕciens |
| 16 | XVI. | sēdĕcim | sext*us* decim*us* | sēn*i* dēn*i* | sēdĕciens |
| 17 | XVII. | septemdĕcim | septĭmus decim*us* | septēn*i* den*i* | septiens dĕciens |
| 18 | XVIII. or XIIX. | duŏdēvīgintī | duodēvīcēnsĭm*us* | dŭŏdēvīcēn*i* | duodēvīciens (?) |
| 19 | XVIIII. or XIX. | undēvīgintī | undēvīcēnsĭm*us* | undēvīcēn*i* | undēvīciens (?) |
| 20 | XX. | vīgintī | vīcēnsĭm*us* | vīcēn*i* | vīciens |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 21 | XXI. | ūn*us* et vīgintī | un*us* (more rarely prīm*us*) et vīcensīm*us* | vīcēn*i* singul*i* | semel et viciens |
| 22 | XXII. | duo et vīgintī | alter et vicensīm*us* | viceni bin*i* | bis et viciens |
| 28 | XXVIII. or XXIIX. | duodētrīginta | duodetricensīm*us* | duodetrīcēn*i* | duodetriciens |
| 29 | XXVIIII. or XXIX. | undetrīginta | undetricensīm*us* | undetrīcēn*i* | undetriciens (?) |
| 30 | XXX. | trīgintā | trīcēnsīm*us* | trīcēn*i* | trīciens |
| 40 | XXXX. or XL. | quadrāginta | quadrāgēnsīm*us* | quadrāgēn*i* | quadragiens |
| 50 | L. | quinquāginta | quinquagensim*us* | quinquāgen*i* | quinquagiens (also quinquagēsiens, Plaut.) |
| 60 | LX. | sexāginta | sexagēnsim*us* | sexāgen*i* | sexagiens |
| 70 | LXX. | septuāginta | septuagēnsīm*us* | septuāgen*i* | septuagiens |
| 80 | LXXX. or XXC. | octōginta | octogensim*us* | octogen*i* | octogiens |
| 90 | LXXXX. or XC. | nōnāginta | nonagensim*us* | nonāgen*i* | nonagiens |
| 98 | XCVIII. or IIC. | octo et nonaginta | duodecentensim*us* | duodecenten*i* | duodecentiens |
| 99 | XCIX. or IC. | undecentum | undecentensim*us* | undecenten*i* | undecentiens |
| 100 | C. | centum | centēnsim*us* | centen*i* | centiens |
| 101 | CI. | centum et un*us* | centensim*us* prim*us* | centen*i* singul*i* | centiens semel |
| 124 | CXXIIII. or CXXIV. | centum viginti quattuor | centensim*us* vicensim*us* quart*us* | centen*i* viceni quaterni | centiens viciens quater |
| 200 | CC. | dŭcenti, *ae*, *a* | ducentensim*us* | duceni | dŭcentiens |
| 230 | CCXXX. | ducenti (*ae*, *a*) triginta | ducentensim*us* tricensim*us* | duceni triceni | ducentiens triciens |
| 300 | CCC. | trĕcenti, *ae*, *a* | trecentensim*us* | trĕceni | trĕcentiens |
| 400 | CCCC. | quadringenti, *ae*, *a* | quadringentensim*us* | quadringeni | quadringentiens |
| 500 | IↃ. | quingenti, *ae*, *a* | quingentensim*us* | quingeni | quingentiens |
| 600 | IↃC. | sescenti, *ae*, *a* | sescentensim*us* | sesceni | sescentiens |
| 700 | IↃCC. | septingenti, *ae*, *a* | septingentensim*us* | septingeni | septingentiens |
| 800 | IↃCCC. | octingenti, *ae*, *a* | octingentensim*us* | octingeni | octingentiens |
| 900 | IↃCCCC. | nongenti, *ae*, *a* | nongentensim*us* | nongeni | nongentiens |
| 1000 | CIↃ. | mille | millensim*us* | singul*a* milli*a* | milliens |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1235 | CIↃCCXXXV. | mille ducenti (*ae*, *a*) triginta quinque | millensim*us* ducentensim*us* tricensim*us* quint*us* | singul*a* milli*a* ducen*a* tricen*a* quin*a* | milliens ducentiens triciens quinquiens |
| 2000 | CIↃCIↃ. | duo milli*a* | bis millensim*us* | bina milli*a* | bis milliens |
| 4000 | CIↃCIↃCIↃCIↃ. | quattuor milli*a* | quater millensim*us* | quatern*a* milli*a* | quater milliens |
| 5000 | IↃↃ. | quinque milli*a* | quinquiens millensim*us* | quin*a* milli*a* | quinquiens milliens |
| 6000 | IↃↃCIↃ. | sex milli*a* | sexiens millensim*us* | sen*a* milli*a* | sexiens milliens |
| 10,000 | CCIↃↃ. | decem milli*a* | deciens millensim*us* | den*a* milli*a* | deciens milliens |
| 20,000 | CCIↃↃCCIↃↃ. | viginti milli*a* | viciens millensim*us* | vicen*a* milli*a* | viciens milliens |
| 50,000 | IↃↃↃ. | quinquāginta milli*a* | quinquagiens millensim*us* | quinquagen*a* milli*a* | quinquagiens milliens |
| 100,000 | CCCIↃↃↃ. | centum milli*a* | centiens millensim*us* | centen*a* milli*a* | centiens milliens |
| 500,000 | IↃↃↃↃ. | quingentă milli*a* | quingentiens millensim*us* | quingen*a* milli*a* | quingentiens milliens |
| 1,000,000 | CCCCIↃↃↃↃ. | deciēns centum milli*a* | deciens centiens millensim*us* | deciens centen*a* milli*a* | deciens centiens milliens |

In spelling, in the above table, the terminations of the ordinals **-ensimus** (instead of the older **-ensumus**, and later **-esimus**), and of the adverbs **-ens** (instead of the later **-es**), and of **millia** (not **milia**), the *Monumentum Ancyranum* (representing the spelling of Augustus' time) has been followed.

179 *Multiplicative* adjectives are formed with the suffix **-plex**, *-fold*, viz. **simplex, sescuplex** (*one and a half fold*), **duplex, triplex, quadruplex, quincuplex, septemplex, decemplex, centuplex.**

Others in **-plus** are generally used in neuter only, to denote a magnitude *twice*, &c. *as great* as another. These are **simplus, sescuplus, duplus, triplus, quadruplus, octuplus.**

180 For derivatives like **primānus**, *of the first* (legion); **primārius**, *of the first* (rank); and the names of the numbers, e.g. **binio**, *a two*, see Book III.

Another series is **bīnārius**, *containing two*, **ternarius, quăternarius, quīnarius, sēnarius, septenarius, octonarius, nŏvenarius, denarius, duodenarius, vicenarius** ("lex quina vicenaria," Plaut.), **tricenarius, quadragenarius, quinquagenarius, sexagenarius, septuagenarius, octogenarius, nonagenarius, centenarius, ducenarius, trecenarius, quadringenarius, quingenarius, septingenarius, octingenarius, millenarius.**

5—2

### ii. Signs for Numerals.

131 In writing numbers a stroke over the (Roman) letters indicates thousands, and top as well as side strokes indicate hundred thousands; e.g. $\overline{\text{XVIII}}$. is **duodeviginti millia**, $\overline{\text{X}}\overline{\text{X}}\overline{\text{CCCC}}$. is **viginti millia quadringenti**, $\overline{\text{X}}|\overline{\text{CLXXX}}\text{DC}$ is **deciens (centum millia) centum octoginta millia sescenti**, i.e. 1,180,600.

The origin of the signs for numerals is uncertain. According to Mommsen, an outstretched finger, the open hand, and the double hand, were taken, viz. I, V, X for 1, 5, 10; and another position of V (viz. L) for 50.

### iii. Inflexions of Numerals.

132 **Unus.** For mode of declension see § 195. In the plural it is used only with substantives whose plural *denotes* a singular, e.g. **unae litterae**, *one epistle;* **unae aedes**, *one house* (*set of rooms*, or *of hearths?*); **uni mores**, *one and the same conduct;* **uni Suevi**, *the single tribe of the Suevi* (or *the Suevi alone*).

133 **Duo.** The masc. and neut. are: nom. acc. **duo**, gen. **duōrum** or **duum**, dat. abl. **duōbus**. For the m. acc. **duos** is also used. The fem. is: nom. **duae**, acc. **duas**, gen. **duārum** or **duum**, dat. abl. **duābus**. In expressions like **duodēcim**, **duodeviginti**, **duoetvicesimus**, **duo** is not varied. **Ambo**, *both*, is similarly declined.

Nom. and acc. **trēs**, n. **tria**, gen. **trium**, dat. **tribus**.

134 All the other cardinal numbers up to **centum** are undeclined: so also is **mille** when used as an adjective. As a substantive it has a declinable plural **millia, millium, millibus**: but in the singular is only used in nom. or acc. In expressions like **caesi sunt tria millia trecenti milites**, we must supply **militum** after **millia**. If the name of the thing, &c. numbered precede, it is usually put in the genitive, e.g. **militum** (not **milites**) **tria millia trecenti caesi sunt.**

135 The other cardinal, and all the ordinal and distributive numbers, are declinable adjectives with **-o** stems. The genitive plural of the cardinals and distributives is usually in **-um** for **-orum** (cf. § 115); e.g. **multa praesens quingentum nummum aeris** (for **quingentorum nummorum**), *an immediate fine of* 500000 *pounds of copper;* **pueri senum septenumque denum annorum** (§ 188, 1).

### iv. Order in compounding Numerals.

136 In compound numbers, from *thirteen* to *nineteen* inclusive, the smaller is usually prefixed to the larger without **et**, e.g. **septem decem** (or **septemdecim**), **septimus decimus, septeni deni, septiens deciens**; but in cardinals and ordinals the order is sometimes reversed, and in cardinals **et** is sometimes inserted, especially if the larger come first, e.g. **decem septem, decem et septem, septem et decem: decimus septimus** (Sen.).

From *twenty-one* to *ninety-nine*, the rule is that, either the larger should precede the smaller number without **et**, or the smaller precede the larger with **et**, e.g. either **viginti quattuor** or **quattuor et viginti**; **vicesimus quartus** or **quartus et vicesimus**, &c.; but exceptions to both usages occur.

From a *hundred and one* upwards, the larger number is usually put first, either without or (except distributives) with a conjunction, e.g. **ducentos (et) quadraginta (et) quattuor, quingentesimum (et) quinquagesimum (et) octavum, duceni septuageni, centiens (et) quadragiens**; but with a conjunction the smaller (cardinal or ordinal) number sometimes is found preceding, e.g. **quinquagintā et ducentā, septimum et quinquagesimum ac centesimum.** So also **ducentos et mille, mille et ducentos.**

For *eighteen*, *nineteen*, *twenty-eight*, *twenty-nine*, &c., the subtractive forms (e.g. **duodeviginti, undeviginti, undetrigesimus**, &c.) are most common, but compound forms are also found, e.g. **decem octo, decem et octo.**

## v. Use of classes of Numerals.

187 The *ordinal*, not the *cardinal*, is used in giving the date, e.g. *In the year* 1879 is **anno millesimo octingentesimo septuagesimo nono.**

188 The *distributives* are used

(1) to denote that the number belongs to each of several persons or things, e.g. **Caesar et Ariovistus denos comites ad colloquium adduxerunt**, *took ten companions each*; **pueri senum septenumve denum annorum**, *boys of sixteen or seventeen years old*, i.e. *each was* 16 or 17; **ambulare bina millia passuum**, *to walk two miles each time*; **tritici modius erat sestertiis ternis**, *corn was at three sesterces the* (i.e. *each*) *bushel*. If **singuli** is expressed with the persons, &c., the cardinal number may be used with the things numbered, e.g. **singulis denarii trecenti imperabantur**, *each was required to pay three hundred pence*. In this use **terni**, not **trini**, is used.

(2) in expressions of multiplication, e.g. **bis bina**, *twice two*; **ter novenae virgines**, *thrice nine girls*; **dēciens centena millia**, *ten times a hundred thousand*. In these expressions the distributive numerals, e.g. **deciens centena millia**, do not mean *a million to each person*, but *a hundred thousand taken each of ten times*.

(3) with nouns which have no singular, e.g. **bina castra**, *the two camps*; **trinis hostium spoliis**, *with three sets of spoils from the enemy*. (In this use **uni** not **singuli**, **trini** not **terni** is used.)

(4) Poets use distributives as merely equivalent to cardinals, e.g. **centum quoi brachia dicunt centenasque manus** (Verg. *A.* x. 565), i.e. *a hundred hands in all*, not a hundred in each arm. So also post-Augustan writers use **trinus** (not **ternus**).

(5) In the singular the distributives are sometimes used, chiefly by poets, e.g. **centauri corpore bino**, *a double body*; **centenāque arbore fluctum verberat assurgens** (Verg.), *with a hundred-fold shaft*, i.e. *a hundred oars*; **novenā lampade**, *with nine torches* (*a torch repeated nine times*).

*Every other* is expressed by **alterni**; e.g. **alternis diebus**, *every second day*.

## vi. Expression of Fractions.

189 Fractions are expressed in words in several ways:

1. All fractions, with 1 for numerator, are denoted by ordinal numbers, with or without **pars**, e.g. $\frac{1}{2}$, **dimidium** (not **dimidia**) or **dimidia pars**; $\frac{1}{3}$, **tertia** or **tertia pars**; $\frac{1}{4}$, **quarta**, &c.

2. All fractions with a numerator less by one than the denominator are denoted by the cardinal with **partes** simply, e.g. $\frac{2}{3}$, **duae partes**; $\frac{3}{4}$, **tres partes**; $\frac{4}{5}$, **quattuor partes**; $\frac{5}{6}$, **quinque partes.**

3. All fractions with 12 or its multiples for a denominator, are denoted by the parts of an **as.** The **as** consisted originally of 12 **unciae**, and there were distinct names and signs for each multiple of the **uncia** and for some fractions of it.

| unciae. | | value. | sign. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | **assis** or **as**, *a pound* | 1 as. | I |
| 11 | **deunx** (**de-uncia**), *an ounce-off* | $\frac{11}{12}$ | S = = = − |
| 10 | **dextans** (**desextans**), *a sixth-off* | $\frac{10}{12}$ | S = = = |
| 9 | **dodrans** (**dequadrans**), *a fourth-off* | $\frac{9}{12}$ | S = = − |
| 8 | **bessis** or **bes** (**dui-assis**), *a two-as*[1] | $\frac{8}{12}$ | S = = |
| 7 | **septunx** (**septem unciae**), *a seven-ounce* | $\frac{7}{12}$ | S = − |
| 6 | **semissis** or **semis** (**semi-assis**), *a half-as* | $\frac{6}{12}$ | S |
| 5 | **quincunx** (**quinque unciae**), *a five-ounce* | $\frac{5}{12}$ | = = = − |
| 4 | **triens** (**tri-**), *a third* | $\frac{4}{12}$ | = = = |
| 3 | **quadrans** (**quattuor-**) or **teruncius**, *a fourth* | $\frac{3}{12}$ | = = − |
| 2 | **sextans** (**sexto-**), *a sixth* | $\frac{2}{12}$ | = = |
| $1\frac{1}{2}$ | **sescuncia** (**sesqui-uncia**), *one and a half ounce* | $\frac{1}{8}$ | Σ − |
| 1 | **uncia**, *an ounce* | $\frac{1}{12}$ | − or ~ |
| $\frac{1}{2}$ | **semuncia**, *a half-ounce* | $\frac{1}{24}$ | Σ or ℒ |
| $\frac{1}{4}$ | **sicilicus**, *a Sicilian* farthing | $\frac{1}{48}$ | Ↄ |
| $\frac{1}{6}$ | **sextula**, *a little sixth* | $\frac{1}{72}$ | ɾ |

Of the above the **sicilicus** was not used till imperial times. The **scriptulum** or **scripulum** (γράμμα) was also used for $\frac{1}{24}$ of the **uncia**, $= \frac{1}{288}$ **as**. The fraction $\frac{1}{300}$ **as** was denoted by **binae sextulae**, or **duella**; $\frac{1}{144}$ **as** by **dimidia sextula**, or **duo scripula.**

The above-named parts of the **as** were used (as has been said) as mere duodecimal fractions, applicable without any specific concrete meaning to any unit. Hence **heres ex asse**, *heir to the whole inheritance:* **ex triente**, *to a third;* **ex dimidia et sextante**, *to two thirds* (*a half and a sixth*).

4. Other fractions, not expressible by one of the above methods, are denoted by the cardinal for a numerator, and the ordinal (as in subsection 1) for the denominator, e.g. $\frac{4}{7}$, **quattuor septimae**; $\frac{7}{9}$, **septem nonae.**

5. Some fractions are denoted by resolution into their components, e.g. $\frac{3}{4}$, **dimidia et quarta**; $\frac{2}{3}$, **pars dimidia et sexta**; $\frac{4}{9}$, **pars tertia et nona**; $\frac{10}{24}$, **pars tertia et septima.**

6. Sometimes further division is resorted to, e.g. $\frac{1}{10}$, **dimidia quinta.** And **dimidia tertia** is used for **sexta**; **dimidia quarta** for **octava.**

7. **Sesqui**, $1\frac{1}{2}$, is used only in compounds, e.g. **sesquilibra**, $1\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.

[1] This term must either have been formed when the **as** was equal to 4 **unciae**; or be short for *two-thirds* of an **as.**

# CHAPTER XI.

## PECULIAR INFLEXIONS OF CERTAIN PRONOUNS.

### *Personal pronouns.*

190 THE substantives called *personal pronouns* are very peculiar in their inflexions, nor are all the cases formed from the same stem.

| | 1st Person. | 2nd Person. | 3rd Person (reflexive). |
|---|---|---|---|
| | SINGULAR. | | SING. and PLUR. |
| Nom. | **ĕgo** | **tū** | no nom. |
| Acc. | **mē** | **tē** | **sē** |
| Gen. | See below. | | |
| Dat. | **mīhi** or **mī** | **tĭbi** | **sĭbi** |
| Abl. | **mē** | **tē** | **sē** |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| Nom. Acc. | **nōs** | **vōs** | |
| Gen. | **nostrum** | **vostrum** or **vestrum** | |
| Dat. Abl. | **nōbīs** | **vōbīs** | |

191 SINGULAR. *Accusative and Ablative.* **Sēsē** was frequently used for **sē**; **tētē** rarely for **tē**.

The forms **med** and **ted** occur as accusatives and ablatives in Plautus. The **d** is probably the ablatival **d** (§ 19) incorrectly transferred to the accusative as well.

*Genitive.* The old genitive of the 1st and 2nd persons was **mis**, **tis**; the latter is found in Plautus. This was replaced as possessive genitive by the adjectives **meus**, **tuus**; and as objective genitive by the gen. sing. neut. of the same, viz., **mei** (*of my being*), **tui**. So **suus** (adj.), **sui** for the genitive, both singular and plural of the reflexive.

*Dative.* **Mi** is used both by Cicero and the poets.

192 PLURAL. *Genitive.* As *possessive* genitives the adjectives **noster** and **vester** (**voster**) were used:

as *objective* genitives **nostri**, **vestri** and rarely **nostrum**, **vestrum**.

as *partitive* genitives **nostrum**, **vestrum** and in the comic poets **nostrorum**, **nostrarum**, **vostrorum**, **vostrarum**.

193 To all cases (except **tu** nom.) of these substantive pronouns the particle **-mĕt** is sometimes added. For **tu**, **tutĕ** or **tutĭmet** is found.

The adjectives often have in the ablative case **-met** or **-pte** appended; e.g. **meŏpte**, **suāmet**; rarely in the gen. sing., e.g. **tuipte**; and acc. plur., e.g. **suosmet**, **suămet**.

*Adjective pronouns*, &c.

194 Some nouns adjective, and all pronouns adjective (except possessive pronouns, **meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester**), have for all genders the genitive singular ending in **-ius**, the dative in **-i**. In the other cases the inflexions are the same as ordinary stems in **-o** and **-a**.

The words belonging to this class are **ūnus, ullus, nullus, sōlus, tōtus, alter, ŭter** (and its compounds **uterque**, &c.), **alius, ille, iste, ipse, hic, is, idem, qui** and its compounds (**quivis**, &c.).

Of these **alius, ille, iste, is, qui** have neuter nom. and acc. ending in **-d** instead of **-m**. Other irregularities are named below.

195 **tōtus**, *whole*.

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | m. | f. | n. | m. | f. | n. |
| Nom. | **tōtŭs** | **tōtă** | **tōtŭm** | **tōti** | **tōtae** | **tōtă** |
| Acc. | **tōtum** | **tōtam** | **tōtum** | **tōtōs** | **tōtās** | |
| Gen. | **tōtiŭs** in all genders | | | **tōtōrum** | **tōtārum** | **tōtōrum** |
| Loc. Dat. | **tōtī** in all genders | | | **tōtīs** in all genders | | |
| Abl. | **tōtō** | **tōtā** | **tōtō** | | | |

In the same way are declined **sōlus**, *alone;* **ūnus**, *one*; **ullus** (i.e. **ūnŭlus**), *any at all;* **nullus**, *none*.

Also **altĕr** (*the other*), **altĕra, alterum**, gen. **alterius**, dat. **altĕrī**.

**ŭtĕr, utră, utrum**, *whether*, i.e. *which of two*, gen. **utrius**, dat. **utrī**.

**altĕrŭter, alterutra**, or **altĕra utra, altĕrutrum**, or **alterum utrum**, *one or other;* gen. **alterius utrius** (post-Aug. **alterutrius**), dat. **alterī utrī** or **alterutrī**.

**ŭterque, utrăque, utrumque**, *each;* **ŭtercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque**, *which so ever* (*of two*).

**ŭtervīs, utrăvīs, utrumvīs**, *which* (*of two*) *you please;* **ŭterlĭbet, utrălĭbet, utrumlĭbet**, *which* (*of two*) *you like*.

**neuter, neutră, neutrum**, *neither*.

**ipsĕ** (in early writers frequently **ipsus**), *he himself*, **ipsă, ipsum**.

196 The genitive has usually a long penultimate; but all (except **sōlius, utrius**, and **neutrius**) are frequent in poetry with **-ĭus**: so **utrĭusque** always: **sōlĭus** once in Terence.

**nullī** is once or twice used for the masc. and neut. genitive; and **nullo** for the dative.

The feminine datives **unae, nullae, solae, totae, alterae**, are (rarely) found in early writers to the time of, and including, Cicero and Nepos.

**toto** for dat. masc. is used once by Propertius.

The genitive **nullius** and abl. **nullo** are rarely used substantively of things, but frequently of persons; **neminis** being only found in prae-Ciceronian writers, and **nemine** being only used by Tacitus and Suetonius, except once in Plautus.

197 **ille**, *that;* **iste**, *that near you* (declined like **ille**); **ălĭŭs**, *another.*

| | SINGULAR. | | | SINGULAR. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | m. | f. | n. | m. | f. | n. |
| Nom. | **illĕ** | **illā** | **illŭd** | **ălĭŭs** | **ălĭă** | **ălĭŭd** |
| Acc. | **illum** | **illam** | | **ălĭum** | **ălĭam** | |
| Gen. | **illīus** in all genders | | | **ălĭŭs** in all genders (rare) | | |
| Loc. Dat. | **illī** in all genders | | | **ălĭī** in all genders | | |
| Abl. | **illō** | **illā** | **illō** | **ălĭō** | **ălĭā** | **ălĭō** |

The plural is regular in both.

198 Old forms of **ille** found in Ennius, Lucretius, and Vergil, are **olli** for dat. sing. and nom. pl. masc.; **ollis**, dat. and abl. plural; and in Lucretius **ollas, olla**, acc. plural.

In the prae-Ciceronian phrases **alii modi, illi modi, isti modi**, we have genitives (or possibly locatives); as also in **alii dei, alii generis** in Varro, **alii rei** in Caelius.

**Illae, istae, aliae** are found in early writers rarely for dat. fem. sing.; **aliae** as genitive in Cicero, Livy, and Lucretius (once each).

Collateral forms, viz. **allis**, masc. nom. (Catull.), **alid**, neut. nom. acc. (Lucretius), **ali**, dat. sing. (Cat., Lucr.) are also found. The adverb **ălĭbi** appears to be an old locative.

199 The demonstrative particle **cĕ** was sometimes appended to the cases of **ille** and **iste** which end in **-s**, and frequently in an abridged form to the others (except genitive plural), especially in Plautus and the early writers: e.g.

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | **illīc** | **illaec** | **illūc** | **illic** | **illaec** | **illaec** |
| Acc. | **illunc** | **illanc** | | **illosce** | **illasce** | |
| Gen. | **illiusce** in all genders | | | | | |
| Loc. Dat. | **illīc** in all genders | | | **illisce** in all genders | | |
| Abl. | **illōc** | **illāc** | **illōc** | | | |

So also **istīc.**

In nom. sing. **illăce, istăce** for fem., and **illōc, istōc** for neut. are also found.

200 **Hic** (stem **ho-**), *this near me*, is declined as follows.

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | m. | f. | n. | m. | f. | n. |
| Nom. | **hīc** | **haec** | **hōc** | **hī** | **hae** | **haec** |
| Acc. | **hunc** | **hanc** | | **hōs** | **hās** | |
| Gen. | **hūjus** or **hujusce** in all genders | | | **hōrum** | **hārum** | **hōrum** |
| Loc. | **hīc** (adverb) | | | **hīs** in all genders | | |
| Dat. | **huic** in all genders | | | | | |
| Abl. | **hōc** | **hāc** | **hōc** | | | |

The fuller forms **hosce, hasce, hujusce** are found in Cicero: **haec** for nom. fem. plur. is found in Varro, Lucretius, and Vergil. Plautus had other of the fuller forms, e.g. **hice** (nom. m. sing.), **hoce** (neut. nom.), **hisce** (nom. plur. m.), **hībus** (dat. abl. plur.).

201 **Is**, *that* (stem **i-** and **eo-**), is thus declined.

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | m. | f. | n. | m. | f. | n. |
| Nom. | **ĭs** | **ĕă** | **ĭd** | **ēi** or **ii** | **eae** | **eă** |
| Acc. | **eum** | **eam** | | **eōs** | **eās** | |
| Gen. | **ējus** (in all genders) | | | **eōrum** | **eārum** | **eōrum** |
| Loc. | **ībi** (adverb) | | | | | |
| Dat. | **ēī** or **ēi** (in all genders) | | | **ĕīs**, **ēis** or **iis** | | |
| Abl. | **eō** | **eā** | **eō** | | | |

**ĭbus** dat. abl. plur. occurs sometimes in comic poets and Lucretius; **ĕābus** in Cato for abl. plur. fem.; **i** and **ĭs** in Plautus (for **ii** and **iis**). Of poets only the prae-Augustan used any of the cases, except that Horace has the genitive and accusative in his non-lyrical writings.

The dat. sing. **ei** has rarely a short penultimate (**ĕi**): as **ēī** it is frequent in Plautus and Terence and (in the last foot of the hexameter) in Lucretius. As a monosyllable it is also common.

202 The suffix **-pse** is sometimes found in Plautus appended; e.g. **eapse**, **eumpse**, **eampse**, **eōpse**, **eāpse**; and in Cicero several times in the phrase **reapse** (for **re eâpse**), *in reality*. In **ipse** (see above, § 195) the suffix is made the vehicle of the case-endings.

203 **Idem** (for **is-dem**) is thus declined:

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | m. | f. | n. | m. | f. | n. |
| Nom. | **īdem** | **eădem** | **ĭdem** | **ĭdem** or **eīdem** | **eaedem** | **eădem** |
| Acc. | **eundem** | **eandem** | **ĭdem** | **eosdem** | **easdem** | **eădem** |
| Gen. | **ejusdem** in all genders | | | **eōrundem** | **eārundem** | **eōrundem** |
| Dat. | **eīdem** in all genders | | | **ĭsdem** or **eisdem** in all genders | | |
| Abl. | **eōdem** | **eādem** | **eōdem** | | | |

204 **Qui** (stem **quŏ-**), *which*, *what? any*, an (adjective) relative, interrogative, and indefinite pronoun, is thus declined.

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | m. | f. | n. | m. | f. | n. |
| Nom. | **quī** | **quae** | **quŏd** | **quī** | **quae** | **quae** |
| Acc. | **quem** | **quam** | | **quōs** | **quās** | |
| Gen. | **cūjus** in all genders | | | **quōrum** | **quārum** | **quōrum** |
| Dat. | **cui** in all genders | | | **quĭbus** | | |
| Abl. | **quō** | **quā** | **quō** | | | |

As an *indefinite* pronoun **quă**, *any*, is more common than **quae** in fem. nom. sing. and neut. plur.

205 **Cūjus** was treated (in prae-Augustan writers and once in Vergil) as a declinable genitive, i.e. an adjective with **-o** stem (e.g. **is cuja res, cujum periculum est. Cujum pecus ?**). The following forms are found so used: nom. s. **cuja** (f.), **cujum** (n.); acc. **cujum** (m. n.), **cujam** (f.); abl. **cujā** (f.); plur. nom. **cujae** (f.). (Never used instead of **quorum** or **quarum.**)

In Plautus **cuius** (also written **quoius**) is often a monosyllable.

206 **Quī** is used (1) as an ablative (of all genders, and, occasionally in early writers, of the plural) with the preposition **cum** appended (**quicum**); (2) as a substantive relative and interrogative (e.g. **habeo qui utar**); (3) as an adverbial interrogative, *how?* and (4) occasionally as indefinite, e.g. **neuqui, siqui** (Plaut.). As a locative **ŭbi** (for **quŏbi**) is used.

As ablat. plur. **quīs** is found often in Varro, Sallust, and Tacitus, rarely in Cicero.

207 **Qui** like any other adjective can be used substantively, but, in the nom. singular and neuter acc. sing., it is rarely so used as an interrogative: as an indefinite pronoun, whether substantively or adjectively, it is used only after **si, nisi, nē, num.**

In the cases just named, an allied form **quīs**, with neut. **quĭd**, takes its place. **Quis** (1) as an interrogative is generally a substantive, but sometimes a masculine adjective: (2) as an indefinite pronoun, it is used both as substantive and as masculine and feminine adjective. **Quid** and its compounds are always substantives.

208 The compounds of **qui, quis** are mainly declined like them, but all have **-quid** (not **-quod**), when used as substantives. Other peculiarities are here named.

**Alĭqui, ălĭquă, ălĭquod**, *some.* **Aliquis** is a subst. and masc. adj.; and is more common than **aliqui. Aliquae** as nom. fem. sing. occurs in Lucretius once, and not at all as neut. plur. Abl. **ălĭquī** is sometimes used in Plautus.

**Ecqui, ecqua** or **ecquae, ecquod**, *any?* **Ecquis** is subst. and masc. adj.

The only cases besides the nom. in use are dat. **eccui**; acc. **ecquem, ecquam**; abl. m. and n. **ecquo.** The plural is rare, but the forms **ecqui, ecquos, ecquas,** are found.

**Quīnam, quaenam, quodnam**, *what? which?* (**numquinam**, &c., **ecquinam**, &c., *any?*). **Quisnam** is also used.

**Quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**, *a certain one*, &c.

**Quīcunque, quaecunque, quodcunque**, *whatsoever.* The **-cunque** is sometimes separated from **qui**, &c.; e.g. **quā re cunque possum.**

**Quīlĭbet, quaelĭbet, quodlĭbet**, *which you like.*

**Quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs**, *which you will.* Sometimes with **cunque** attached; e.g. **quiviscunque**, *whatsoever.*

209 The following have **quis** instead of **qui** for the nom. sing. masc.

**Quisquis**, *whosoever* or *whatsoever;* **quidquid** or **quicquid**, *whatever*, also a substantive.

**Quiqui** (nom. sing.) only in Plautus once. **Quisquis** as adjective is not applied to females. Of the other cases we have only the locative **quiqui** in Plaut. and possibly in **cuicuimodi** : the abl. masc. and neut. **quoquo** ; acc. in comic poets **quemquem** ; **quīquī** nom. plur. masc. ; in Livy **quibusquĭbus** (dat. pl., perhaps in quotation from ancient document) : and **quaqua**, in Tacitus as abl. fem. sing. ; elsewhere only as adverb.

**Quisquam**, n. **quicquam**, *any at all.* Generally used as substantive, but **quisquam** is also used adjectively of females (as well as of males). **Quiquam** as ablative in Plautus. The plural and the feminine singular are not used. **Quodquam** also not used.

**Quispiam**, **quaepiam**, **quodpiam**, *some.* Plaut. has an abl. **quipiam.**

**Quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *each.* **Quicque** or **quidque** is subst. **Quisque** used of a woman in Plautus.

Its compound **unusquisque** (**unaquaeque**, **unumquodque**) is similarly declined.

210 **Quis** appears to have stem **qui-**, and to belong to the **-i** stems. Probably the forms (now partly assumed by **quo-**) were, Nom. **quis**, neut. **quid** (so also **is**, **id**) ; Gen. **quis** ; Acc. **quem** (the proper accus. of **quo-** being **quom** now used as conjunction), neut. **quid** ; Abl. **qui.** Plural Nom. and Acc. **ques** (old form used by Cato and Pacuvius), neut. **quia** (used as conjunction) ; Gen. **cuium** (found in Plautus) ; Dat. Abl. **quĭbus.**

## CHAPTER XII.

## ADVERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

211 ADVERBS and Conjunctions are indeclinable words, some of them cases of existing words, others cases of lost words, others words with case-suffixes, different from those in common use in Latin, others mutilated remnants of fuller expressions.

They are here arranged according to the final letter of the ending, which sometimes is a suffix, sometimes part of the stem or some modification thereof.

212 **-ā** Abl. sing. fem. from **-o**, or rather, **-a** stems.

**ea**, *in that direction;* **hac**, **illac**, and (Plaut., Ter.) **illā**; **alia** ;

**qua**, **quaque**, **quanam**, **qualĭbet** ; **nequaquam**, *by no means;* **usquĕquaque**, *everywhere;* **utralĭbet**, *in whichever direction you please.*

These ablatives are often used with **tĕnus** (§ 230) ; e. g. **eatenus**, *thus far*, **hactenus**, **quatenus**, **quadamtenus**, **aliquatenus.**

So perhaps **circa**, *about;* **juxta**, *close;* **erga**, *towards.*

**supra** (**supera** Lucr. often), *above;* **infra**, *below;* **extra**, *outside;* **intra**, *within;* **ultra**, *beyond;* **citra**, *on this side;* **contra**, *against.*

So **frustra**, *in vain* (in Plaut. sometimes **frustrā**; **ne frustra sis**, *not to deceive you*).

Apparently a similar ablative is used with prepositions, which in the ordinary language take an accusative; e. g. **antea** (**antidea** old), **antehac** (**antidhac** old), *before;* **postea** (**postidea** old), **posthac**, *afterwards;* **interea**, *meanwhile;* **praeterea**, **praeterhac**, *besides;* **propterea**, *therefore;* **quapropter**, *wherefore.*

-ă Apparently accusatives plur. neut.

**ĭtă**, *thus* (comp. **ĭtĭ-dem**); **quiă**, *whereas, because.*

-ae **prae**, *in front* (old locative?).

213 -ō Adverbs chiefly denoting *manner* (e. g. **certo** for **certod**, cf. § 19; comp. *οὕτως, οὕτω*).

(1) from substantives.

**ergo**, *on account of, therefore* (*ἔργῳ*); **extemplo**, *at once;* **illĭco**, *on the spot, instantly* (**in loco**); **mŏdo**, *only, just now* (lit. *in measured terms*); **nŭmĕro** (prae-Ciceron.), *just, quickly;* usually *too soon* (lit. *by number*?); **oppĭdo** (prae-August.), *very* (lit. *on the plain*, cf. *ἐπιπέδως*); **postmodo**, *afterwards* (cf. § 224); **prŏfecto**, *really* (for **pro facto**?); **propemodo** (Plaut.), *almost* (cf. § 224). **Praesto** (always used as predicate, chiefly with **esse**), *at hand*, is of uncertain origin.

(2) From noun adjectives and participles.

**certo**, *for a certainty;* **cĭto**, *quickly;* **contĭnuo**, *straightway;* **crebro**, *frequently;* **denuo**, *afresh* (**de novo**); **directo**, *directly, straight;* **falso**, *falsely;* **fortuito**, *accidentally;* **gratuito**, *gratuitously;* **liquĭdo**, *clearly;* **manĭfesto**, *palpably;* **merĭto**, *deservedly;* **mutuo**, *mutually;* **necessario**, *necessarily;* **omnīno**, *entirely, in all* (as if from an adj. **omnīnus**); **perpetuo**, *perpetually;* **precārio**, *on sufferance;* **rāro**, *seldom;* **secrēto**, *secretly;* **sedŭlo**, *actively;* **sērio**, *seriously;* **sēro**, *late;* **subĭto**, *suddenly;* **tūto**, *safely;* **vēro**, *indeed, no doubt.*

**bipertīto**, **tripertito**, **quadripertito**, *divided into two, three, four;* **improvīso**, *unforeseen;* **inaugurāto**, *without taking auspices;* **inopīnato**, **necopīnato**, *unexpectedly*, &c.

(3) *Ablatives of order.*

**prīmo**, *in the first place;* **secundo**, **tertio**, &c.; **postrēmo**, **ultĭmo**, *in the last place;* **immo** (**imo**, *at the bottom*?), *at the least, nay rather.*

(4) *Direction towards a place.*

**eō**, *thither;* **eōdem**, *to the same place;* **eousque**, **adeo**, *so far;* **quo-ad**, *as long as;* **hūc** (for **hoc**), *hither;* **adhūc**, *hitherto;* **illo**, **illūc** (**illoc** Plaut.), *thither;* **isto**, **istūc** (**istoc** Plaut.); **alio**, *elsewhither;* **quo**, *whither;* **quonam**, **quovis**, **quocumque**, **quoquo**, **quousque** (§ 236); **aliquo**, *somewhither.*

**citro**, *to this side;* **ultro**, *further;* **intro**, *inwards;* **retro**, *backwards;* **utro** (rare), *to which of the two sides;* **utroque**, *in either direction;* **neutro**, *in neither direction.*

**porro**, *further* (*πόρρω*); **ideo**, **idcirco**, *therefore;* **quo-circā**, *wherefore.*

214 **-o-vorsus** or **o-vorsum**, lit. *turned towards;* but **vorsus** and **vorsum** were used indifferently and not inflected.

**horsum**, *hitherwards* (**ho-vorsum**); **quorsus, quorsum**, *whitherwards?* **istorsum, aliorsum, aliquovorsum, utroquevorsum, altrovorsum** (Plaut., &c.), **quoquoversus** (Cic.), **quoqueversum** (Caes.).

**controversus** (adj.), *in dispute* (lit. *turned against*); **introrsus, introrsum**; **retrorsum, dextrorsum, sinistrorsum.**

**deorsum**, *downwards;* **seorsum**, *separately* (**se-vorsum**, *turned to itself*, or *turned aside*); **sursum**, *upwards;* **prorsum, prorsus**, *forwards;* **rursum, rursus**, *backwards, again;* **transvorsus**, *across.* (**Susum, prosum, rusum** (**russum**), are forms also found in Plaut., Lucret., &c.)

215 **-do** **quando**, *when* (**quam-do**); **aliquando**, *sometimes;* **quandōque**, *whenever, some time or other;* **quandōcumque**, *whensoever;* **quandŏquĭdem**, *since;* **endo**, also **indu**, old forms of **in** (comp. **indŭperator** for **imperator**, Enn., Lucr.; **ind-ĭgeo, ind-ĭpiscor**, &c.).

**-ū** **diu**, *for long;* **interdiu** (**interdius** Cato, Plaut.), *in the daytime;* **noctu**, *by night;* **sīmītu** (Plaut.), *at the same time;* **dūdum**, *lately* (for **diu-dum**).

216 **-ē** Apparently old forms of ablative. (Comp. **facilumed** in *S. C. de Bacc.*) From adjectives with **-o** stems both positive and superlative this is the most usual adverbial ending.

e.g. **aegre**, *hardly* (**aegro-**); **blande**, *soothingly* (**blando-**); **certe**, *surely* (**certo-**); **considerate**, *with consideration* (**considerato-**); **docte**, *skilfully* (**docto-**); **plane**, *quite* (**plano-**); **ornate**, *in ornate manner* (**ornato-**); **recte**, *rightly* (**recto-**); **sane**, *of course* (**sāno-**); **valde**, *very* (**valido-**); **vere**, *truly, actually* (**vero-**); &c.

**ardentissime**, *most eagerly;* **audacissime**, *most boldly;* **creberrĭme**, *very frequently;* **doctissime**, *very skilfully;* **maxime**, *especially;* **mīnīme**, *least of all;* **paenissume** (Plaut.), *very nearly;* &c.

**apprīme** (prae-Ciceronian), *exceedingly* (**ad-primo**); **fĕre, ferme** (superlative of **fere**), *almost.*

**hŏdiē** (=**hōc die**), *to-day.*

217 **-ĕ** (1) From **-o** stems; **bĕne**, *well* (**bono-**); **male**, *badly* (**malo-**); **inferne**, *below* (**inferno-**); **superne**, *above* (**superno-**). Perhaps here belong **tĕmĕre**, *at haphazard;* **macte**, *blest.* (Some take **macte** for a vocative.)

(2) From other stems; especially abl. or neut. acc. of **-i** stems; **abunde**, *abundantly;* **ante** (for **antid**), *before;* **forte**, *by chance* (abl. of **fors**); **facile**, *easily* (acc. neut. of **facilis**; comp. **dulce ridens**, &c.); **impūne**, *with impunity* (as if from adj. **impunis**); **măge** (cf. **măgĭs**, § 232), *more;* **paene**, *almost;* **rĕpente**, *suddenly* (**repenti-**); **rīte**, *duly;* **saepe**, *often;* **sponte**, *of its own accord* (abl. of a nom. **spons**); **sublime**, *aloft* (**sublimi-**); **vŏlŭpe** or better **volup** (Plaut.), *with pleasure* (almost always with **est**).

So the ablatives **mānе**, *in the morning;* **lūce**, *by daylight;* **nocte**, *by night;* **magnŏpere**, *greatly* (**magno opere**), &c.

**herculĕ, hercle**, *'pon honour* (for **hercules**. See Syntax).

218 **-pĕ** A form of **que** (compare **quispiam, quisquam**); **nem-pe**, *indeed* (**nam-pe**, comp. **namque**); **quippe**, *indeed* (for **qui pe**? comp. **utique**); **prŏpe**, *near* (comp. **proximus**, as if from **proque**).

**-vĕ** Perhaps for **vel. sīve** (old **seve**, hence **seu**), *or if, whether;* **nēve** (**neu**), *or not.*

**ceu**, *as* (for **ceve, ce** being of pronominal origin ?).

**-cĕ** **hīc, illīc**, &c., see § 221, 3; **ecce**, *behold* (for **ence**); **sīc**, *thus* (cf. § 221); **ac**, § 219.

219 **-quĕ** Appended to pronouns (a kind of reduplication); e. g. **quisque** (adj.), *each;* **quandoque**, *whenever;* **quicumque** (**quiquomque**) (adj.), *whosoever;* **quŏque**, *also;* **ubīque**, *everywhere;* **undīque**, *from all sides;* **utīque**, *anyhow;* **usque**, *ever;* **uterque** (adj.), *each.* Also **absque**, *without* (**abs**); **atque** (**ac**), *and also* (for **ad-que**); **nĕque** (**nec**), *not;* **namque**, *for;* **hodieque** (Vell.) = **hodie**; **dēnīque**, *finally.*

220 **-ptĕ** e. g. **suopte**; see § 193.

**-dĕ** i. e. possibly the preposition **de** shortened by losing the accent?; e. g. **inde**, *thence* (**im-de**); **indĭdem**, *from the same place;* **deinde, exinde**, *thereupon;* **proinde, perinde**, *just so;* **subinde**, *immediately afterwards.*

**unde**, *whence* (**quom-** or **cum-de**); **undīque**, *from all sides;* **undĕcumque**, *whencesoever;* **quamde** (Enn. Lucr.), *than.*

**-ne** **sīnĕ**, *without;* **pōnĕ**, *behind.*

**nĕ**, *not, lest;* **nē** (wrongly written **nae**), *verily* (comp. *ναὶ, νὴ*); **nĕ** interrogative particle, perhaps the same as **nē**. Comp. **nĕ-fas, nĕ-quis, nĕ-vis** (= **non vis**).

221 **-ī** (rarely **ĭ**) (1) Ablative cases of manner.

**quī** (interrogative and relative, like **ut**), *how, in which case;* **quīn**, *why not? but* (**qui-ne**); **aliōquī**, **alioquin**, **ceteroqui**, **ceteroquin**, *in other respects* (the final **n** is of obscure origin); **nequīquam**, *by no means;* **atquī**, *but.*

**sī**, *if* (abl. or loc. of pronoun, *in which case*); **nīsī**, *unless* (for **ne si**); **sīquĭdem**, *if indeed, since;* **quāsī**, *as if* (**quam si**); **sīc**, *thus* (**si-ce**, *in which*, or *in this, way*).

**nī**, *not* (for **ne, nei**), also used as = **nisi**; **quidnī**, *why not?*

**ŭtī** (**ut**), *how* (for **quo-ti**); **ŭtīque**, *any how;* **ŭtīnam**, *O that!* **ne utīquam** (**nŭtiquam**), *by no means.*

(2) **praefiscīni** (also **praefiscine**), *without offence* (**prae fascino-**, *for*, i. e. *to avert, bewitchments*); **proclīvi** (or **proclivĕ**), *downhill* (**proclivi-**, old stem **proclivo-**); **brĕvī**, *in few words* (**brĕvi-**).

(3) Locative cases; **illī, istī** (Plaut. Ter.); **illīc, istīc**, *there* (**illo-, isto-**); **hīc**, *here* (**ho-**); **prīdem**, *some time ago:*

**hĕrī** (in Quintilian's time **herĕ**), *yesterday;* **peregrī**, more commonly **peregre**, *abroad, from abroad;* **tempĕrī**, *in good time* (**tempos-**); and others.

222 -bi **ĭbi**, *there* (**is**); **inĭbi**, *therein;* **postĭbi** (Plaut.), *thereupon;* **interĭbi** (Plaut.), *in the meantime;* **ibīdem**, *in the same place;* **ŭbi**, *where* (for **quobi**, **cubi**); **ubīque**, *everywhere;* **ubĭcumque**, *wheresoever;* **sī-cŭbi**, *if anywhere;* **ălĭ-cŭbi**, *somewhere;* **ălĭbi**, *elsewhere* (**ali-**); **utrŭbi**, *at which of two places* (**utro-**); **utrŭbīque**, *at both places.*

-b **ăb** (**abs**), *from;* **ŏb** (**obs**), *opposite to;* **sŭb** (**subs**), *under.*

223 -am **jam**, *now;* **etiam**, *also* (**et jam**); **quŏniam**, *since* (**quom jam**); **nunciam** (Plaut.), *now* (**nunc jam**); **nam**, *for* (originally *now*); **quam**, *how, as;* **quamquam**, *however, although;* **aliquam**, *somehow;* **ălĭquan-do**, *sometimes;* **aliquamdiu**, *for some time;* **nŭtiquam** (§ 221), *not at all;* **uspiam**, **usquam**, *any where;* **nusquam**, *no where;* **praequam**, *compared with;* **tam**, *so;* **tamquam**, *as if;* **tandem**, *at length.*

**nēquam**, *good for nothing*, is used as indecl. adjective.

**cōram**, *face to face* (**com**, **os-**); **clam**, *secretly* (comp. **oc-cŭl-o**, *conceal*); **obviam**, *opposite* (**obvio-**; or **ob viam**, comp. **obiter**); **pălam**, **prōpalam**, *openly;* **perpĕram**, *badly;* **protĭnam** (Plaut.), *immediately* (cf. **protenus**, § 230).

So the compounds with **fāriam**; e.g. **bifariam**, *divided in two* (**bi-**); **trifariam**, **quadrifariam**; **multifariam**, *in many places;* **plurifariam**, *in several places.*

-dam **quondam**, *sometime.* (Comp. **quĭdam**, *a certain one.*)

224 -om (um) Probably accusative cases.

**dōnĭcum** (Plaut., **dōnĭque** Lucr., **dōnĕc** commonly), *until;* **dum**, *while;* **dŭ-dum**, *lately* (**diu dum**); **interdum**, *for a time;* **quidum**, *how so?* **primumdum**, *first of all;* appended to imperatives, e.g. **ăgĕdum**, *come now;* **mănĕdum**, *stop pray;* **tangĕdum**, *just touch me;* &c.

**num** (in questions), *now?* **nunc** (i.e. **num-ce**), *now;* **etiamnum**, *even now.*

**quom**, **cum**, *when* (**quo-**); **com** (in composition), **cum** (prep.), *with* (comp. *ξύν*); **quon-dam**, *sometime* (**quom-dam**); **quandŏ-cumque**, *whensoever;* **tum**, **tunc**, *then;* **umquam**, *ever* (**um** for **quom**); **numquam**, *never* (**ne umquam**); **nonnunquam**, *at times.*

**actūtum**, *instantly;* **circum**, *round* (**circo-**); **clancŭlum**, *secretly* (**clam**, with suffix **-cŭlo-**); **commŏdum**, *suitably, just now* (**commodo-**); **dēmum**, *at length* (lit. *downmost;* superl. of **de**); **extrēmum**, *for the utmost* (i.e. *last*) *time* (**extremo-**); **incassum**, *to no purpose* (**in cassum**); **mīnīmum**, in phrase **quam minimum**, *as little as possible* (**minimo-**); **nĭmium**, *too much;* **noenum** (generally contracted to **nōn**), *not* (**ne ūnum**); **părum**, *little;* **plērumque**, *for the most part* (**plero-**, **que**); **postrēmum**, *for the hindmost* (i.e. *last*) *time* (**postremo-**); **potissimum**, *especially* (**potissimo-**); **prīmum**, *for the first time* (**prīmo-**); **propemodum**, *almost* (cf. § 213); **ĭtĕrum**, *for the second time;* **tertium**, **quartum**, &c.; **ultimum**, *for the furthest* (i.e. *last*) *time;* **secundum** (prep.), *following, along* (**sequondo-**). For **rursum**, **adversum**, &c. see § 214.

225 **impraesentiārum**, *at the present time* (for **in praesentia rerum**?).

-em **prŏpĕdiem**, *very shortly* (possibly a corruption for **propĕ diē**, *on a near day*).

-tem **autem**, *however;* **ĭtem**, *likewise* (comp. **ita, itidem**); **saltem**, *at least*.

-dem **quĭdem, ĕquĭdem**, *indeed;* **prīdem**, *some time ago;* **tandem**, *at length* (**tamdem**); **ĭtĭdem**, *likewise* (**ita**); **ĭdentĭdem**, *repeatedly* (for **ĭdem ĭtĭdem**? or **ĭdem et ĭdem**?). (Comp. **ĭdem**, *the same*, for **is-dem**; **tŏtĭdem** (indec. adj.), *just so many;* **tantus-dem**.)

226 -im denotes *at* or *from a place;* **hin-c**, *hence* (**him ce**); **illim, istim, illinc, istinc**, *thence;* **im** in **inde** (§ 220), *thereupon;* **exim, exin, exinde**, *therefrom;* **dein, deinde**, *thereupon;* **intĕr-im**, *meanwhile*, also *at times* (Quintil.); **ōlim**, *in those times*, i.e. *formerly* or *hereafter* (**ollo** = **illo**); **ĕnim**, *for;* **utrinque**, *on both sides* (**utro-**).

**altrinsecus** (for **altrimsecus**; Plaut.), *on the other side;* **extrinsecus**, *from outside;* **intrinsecus**, *from within*.

227 **t-im (sim)** Formed from, or similarly to, past participles; e.g. **carptim**, *by pieces, separately* (lit. *plucking at it*, **carpere**); **confertim**, *compactly* (**confercīre**); **confestim**, *immediately;* **cursim**, *swiftly* (**currere**); **efflictim**, *desperately* (**efflīgere**, *to kill*, hence **efflictim amāre**, *to love to death*); **furtim**, *thief-wise*, i.e. *by stealth;* **partim**, *partly* (**parti-**); **passim**, *here and there* (*in a scattered way*, **pandere**); **pĕdĕtentim**, *feeling the way* (**pede tendĕre**); **praesertim**, *especially* (*putting in front*, **praesĕrĕre**); **raptim**, *hurriedly* (**rapĕre**); **sensim**, *gradually* (lit. *perceptibly;* **sentīre**); **stătim**, *immediately* (lit. *as you stand*, **stā-, stāre**); **strictim**, *slightly* (lit. *grazing*, **stringere**); **vĭcissim**, *in turns* (**vĭci-**). In **affātim** (**ad fatim**, *to yawning*), *in abundance*, we have an accus. of an extinct noun **fātis**, *a yawn* (comp. **fātisci, fātigare**).

-āt-im (1) From verbs with **-a** stems; e.g. **acervatim**, *in heaps, summarily* (**acervā-re**); **certatim**, *vying with one another* (**certare**); **dătatim** (**datatim ludere**, *to play at ball*), *giving and regiving* (**dătā-re** frequentative of **dăre**); **grăvatim**, *with difficulty* (**gravāri**); **nōminatim**, *by name* (**nominăre**), &c.

(2) From nouns (compare the adjective forms, e.g. **barbatus, cord-atus**, &c.); e.g. **gĕnĕratim**, *taking classes* (**genus**); **grădatim**, *step by step* (**gradu-**); **grĕgatim**, *in flocks, herding together* (**grĕg-**); **membratim**, *limb by limb* (**membro-**); **ostiatim**, *from house to house* (**ostio-**); **paullatim**, *little by little* (**paullo-**); **singillatim**, *one by one* (comp. **singulo-**); **summatim**, *slightly, summarily* (*taking the tops*, **summo-**); &c.

-ūt-im **tolūtim**, *full trot* (*raising* the feet, **tollĕre**); **trĭbūtim**, *tribe by tribe* (**tribu-**).

-ĭt-im **vĭrĭtim**, *man by man* (**vĭro-**).

223 **-t** **ast**, *but;* **at**, *but* (also **atque**, **atqui**); **aut**, *or* (comp. αὖτε); **ĕt**, *and* (comp. ἔτι); **ŭt** (for **uti**), *as* (**prout**, **praeut**, **sicut**, **velut**); **post**, *after* (also **pos**, **poste**, **postidea**; comp. **ante**, **antidea**). **Săt** is shortened for **satis** (§ 232). For **-met** see § 193.

**-d** Old ablative suffix? cf. §§ 19, 115; **ăd**, *to;* **ăpŭd**, *at;* **haud** (or **hau**), *not;* **sed**, *but* (properly *by itself?*). **Quŏd**, *because*, is neut. acc. (comp. ὅτι), but in **quod si**, **quod quia**, **quod utinam** is by some taken to be an old ablative.

**-n** **quīn**, *why not?* (**qui ne**); **sīn**, *but if;* **ăn**, *whether;* **forsăn**, **forsĭtăn** (**fors sit an**), *perhaps;* **tămĕn**, *yet;* **ēn**, *lo!* **ĭn**, *in.*

**-l** **prŏcŭl**, *off, afar;* **sĭmŭl**, older **semol** (for **sĭmĭlĕ**), *together;* **sĕmĕl**, *once;* **vĕl**, *or* (probably imperative of **volo**, hence *choose*).

**-ur** **ĭgĭtur**, *therefore;* **quōr** or **cūr**, *wherefore?*

**-ĕr** Suffix of comparative degree: **sŭper**, *above* (*higher;* **sub**, *up*); **desuper**, **insuper**.

**per**, *through;* **ter** (for **tris**, cf. § 128), *thrice;* **quăter**, *four times.*

**-pĕr** **nūper**, *lately* (**novumper**); **părumper**, *for but little time* (**parum**); **paullisper**, *for a little while* (**paullo-**); **tantisper**, *for so long* (**tanto-**); **semper**, *always* (**sim-**, *whole?* comp. **simplex**, **simul**).

229 **-tĕr** (1) From adjectives with **-o** stems: **duriter** (also **dure**), *hardly* (**dūro-**); **hūmānĭter**, **inhumaniter** (also **humane**, **inhumane**), *politely*, *impolitely* (**humano-**); **largĭter** (also **large**), *lavishly* (**largo-**); **nāvĭter**, **ignāviter** (also **nāvō**, **ignāvē**), *skilfully*, *unskilfully* (**gnavo-**); **luculenter** (also **luculente**), *brilliantly* (for **lūcŭlentĭter** from **luculento-**); **turbulenter** (also **turbulentē**), *confusedly* (for **turbulentiter** from **turbulento-**), and others in early writers.

(2) From adjectives with **i-** stems, and one (**supplex**) with consonant stem: **acrĭ-ter**, *eagerly* (**acri-**); **ălĭ-ter**, *otherwise* (**ali-**, § 198); **aman-ter**, *lovingly* (for **amantiter**); **atrōci-ter**, **audac-ter**, **brĕvi-ter**, **clemen-ter** (for **clementi-ter**), **concordi-ter**, **constan-ter** (for **constanti-ter**), **decen-ter**, **dilĭgen-ter**, **elĕgan-ter**, **felīci-ter**, **frequen-ter**, **grăvi-ter**, **lēni-ter**, **lĕvi-ter**, **mediocri-ter**, **memŏri-ter**, *with good memory;* **misericordi-ter**, **pări-ter**, **salūbri-ter**, **scien-ter**, **simĭli-ter**, **simplĭci-ter**, **sollemni-ter**, **soller-ter** (for **sollerti-ter**), **supplĭci-ter**, **tenvi-ter**, **vehemen-ter** or **vemen-ter**, **vernĭli-ter**, **vigilan-ter**, **utĭli-ter**, and others from stems in **-nti**, of which **-ti** is dropped before the suffix (cf. § 20).

(3) From other words: **circī-ter**, *about* (**circo-**); **inter**, *between* (**in**); **praeter**, *beside* (**prae**); **prop-ter**, *near* (**prŏpe**); **sub-ter**, *beneath* (**sub**).

**nēquĭ-ter**, *badly* (**nequam**). **Obĭter** (not ante-Augustan), *on the way*, is apparently **ob iter** (comp. **obviam**).

230 -s **abs** (**ăb, ā**), *from;* **bĭs**, *twice* (for **duis**); **cĭs**, *on this side* (comp. **ci-tĭmus**); **ex**, *out* (**ec** in some compounds, and **ē**); **mox**, *presently;* **obs** (**ob**), *on, opposite;* **subs** (**sub**), *under* (in **subs-traho**, &c.); **trans**, *across;* **uls**, *beyond* (comp. **ul-timus**); **us-quam**, **us-piam**, *anywhere;* **us-que**, *ever;* **vix**, *scarcely.*

**deinceps** (**dein, căp-ĕre**), *next*, is a compound like **particeps**, but indeclinable.

-ās **alias**, *at other times;* **cras**, *to-morrow;* **fŏras**, (*to*) *out of doors.*

-ŭs **mordĭ-c-us**, *with the teeth* (**mordĕ-**, **mordēre**); **sĕc-us**, *otherwise;* **tĕnus**, *as far as* (subst. acc. s. *extent?*); **prōtĕnus** (or **protĭnus**), *immediately.*

**ēmĭnus**, *from a distance;* **commĭnus**, *hand to hand*, are probably compounds of **mănus**, *hand* (meaning "hands off," "hands together").

231 -tŭs *from;* same as Greek *-θεν* (comp. *γράφ-ομεν*, **scrīb*imus*).

**antīquĭ-tus**, *from of old* (**antiquo-**); **divīnĭ-tus**, *from the Gods* (**divino-**); **fundĭ-tus**, *from the bottom* (**fundo-**); **hūmānĭ-tus**, *after the manner of men* (**humano-**); **in-tus**, *from within* (**in**); **pĕnĭ-tus**, *from the interior, deeply* (**pĕno-**); **publĭcĭ-tus** (Plaut., Ter. &c.), *on the public account* (**publĭco-**); **rādĭcĭ-tus**, *from the root* (**radĭci-**); **sub-tus**, *underneath* (**sub**).

-ĕs **pĕnes**, *in the possession of* (comp. **pĕnītus**).

232 -ĭs for **-iōs**, the stem, or for **-iŭs** the neuter acc., of the comparative suffix; e.g. **nīmĭs**, *too much*; **măgĭs** (sometimes **măgĕ**), *more;* **sătis** (also **săt**), *enough.*

**fortassĭs**, **fortassĕ**, *perhaps.*

-ĭs **fŏris**, *out of doors;* **imprīmis**, *in the first place;* **gratiīs**, **gratīs**, *for thanks, gratuitously;* **ingrātīs**, *thanklessly;* **multimodis**, *manywise;* **quŏtannis**, *yearly*, are locatives or ablatives.

233 -iens post-Augustan **-iēs**; the regular suffix for numeral adverbs: **tŏtiens**, *so often* (**tot**); **quŏtiens**, *how often* (**quot**); **aliquŏtiens**, *sometimes;* **plūriens**, *often* (**plūs-**); **quinquiens**, *five times* (**quinque**); **sexiens**, *six times* (**sex**); **dĕciens**, *ten times* (**decem**); **vīciens**, *twenty times* (for **vicintiens**, cf. § 20; from **viginti**); **centiens**, *a hundred times* (**centum**), and others. See Chap. X.

# APPENDIX TO CHAPTERS XI. AND XII.

The following is a tabular arrangement of certain pronominal adjectives and adverbs:

**234** Correlative (pronominal) adjectives.

| *Demonstrative.* | *Relative and Interrogative.* | *Indefinite Relative.* | *Indefinite.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| **is**, *that.* | **qui**, *which.* | **quisquis**, **quicunque** { *whosoever.* | **ălĭquis**, *some.*<br>**quis**, *any.* |
| | **ŭter**, *which of two.* | **alteruter**, *one or other of two.*<br>**uterquisque**, *whichever of the two.* | **quīlĭbet**, **quīvīs**, **utervis**, **uterlibet** { *any you please, any whatever, whichever (of two) you please.* |
| **tālis**, *such.* | **quālis** { *of which quality, as, of what quality?* | **quāliscunque**, *of what quality soever.* | **quālislĭbet**, *of any quality you please.* |
| **tantus**, *so great.* | **quantus** { *as great, how great?* | **quantuscunque**, *how great soever.* | **ălĭquantus**, *of some considerable size.*<br>**quantuslibet**, **quantusvis** { *of any size you please.* |
| **tantŭlus**, *so small.* | **quantŭlus**, *as small.* | **quantŭluscunque**, *how small soever.* | **aliquantŭlum**, *a little* (subst.). |
| **tot** (indecl.), *so many.*<br>**tŏtĭdem** (indecl.), *just so many.*<br>**tŏtus** (rare), *such in numerical order.* | **quŏt** (indecl.) { *as many, how many?*<br>**quŏtus** { *what in numerical order?* *which*, &c. (rare). | **quotcunque**, **quotquot** (indecl.) { *how many soever.* | **ălĭquot** (indecl.), *some.* |

**Qualiscunque** and **quantuscunque** are also used as simply indefinite (non-relative) pronouns; **aliquantus** is commonly only used in the neuter (**aliquantum**, **aliquanto**), and then as *substantive* or *adverb.*

**235** Correlative (pronominal) adverbs.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **tam**, *so.* | **quam**, *how? as.* | **quamquam**, **quamcunque** { *however.* | **quamvis**, **quamlibet** { *however much you please.* |
| **tŏtiēs**, *so often.* | **quŏtiēs** { *how often? as often.* | **quotiescunque**, *however often.* | **quotieslibet**, *however often you please.* |

**ita, sic** } *thus, so.* **ut**, *how, as.* **utcunque**, *however.* **aliquŏties**, *sometimes.*

236 The following are the chief (pronominal) adverbs *of place.* (Fuller lists will be found in Chap. XI.)

| **ō** (=**om**, accus.?) | **de**=*θεν*, gen. (or abl.) | **bĭ** or **i**, dat. or loc. | **ā**, abl. fem. |
|---|---|---|---|
| **quō** { *whither?* *whither.* | **undĕ** { *whence?* *whence.* | **ŭbĭ** { *where?* *where.* | **quā** { *by what way?* *by which way.* |
| **hūc**, *hither.* | **hinc**, *hence.* | **hīc**, *here.* | **hāc**, *by this way.* |
| **eō**, *thither.* | **indĕ**, *thence.* | **ībī**, *there.* | **eā**, *by that way.* |
| **isto, istūc**, *to your place.* | **istim, istinc**, *from your place.* | **istīc**, *there (where you are).* | **istāc**, *by your way.* |
| **illo, illūc**, *to that place.* | **illim, illinc**, *from that place.* | **illīc**, *there (where he is).* | **illāc**, *by that way (near him).* |
| **eōdem**, *to the same place.* | **indĭdem**, *from the same place.* | **ībĭdem**, *in the same place.* | **eādem**, *by the same way.* |
| **utrōque**, *to both places.* | **utrinque**, *from both sides.* | **utrŭbīque**, *in both places.* | |
| | **undĭque**, *from all sides.* | **ŭbīque**, *everywhere.* | |
| **ălĭquō**, *to some place or other.* | **ălĭcunde**, *from some place or other.* | **ălĭcŭbī**, *somewhere or other.* | **ălĭquā**, *by some way.* |
| **quōvīs, quōlĭbet** } *to any place you please.* | **undĕvīs, undĕlĭbet** } *whence you please.* | **ŭbĭvīs, ŭbĭlĭbet** } *where you please, anywhere whatever.* | **quāvīs, quālĭbet** } *by any way you please, by any way whatever.* |
| **utrōlĭbet**, *whithersoever* (of two places) *you choose.* | | | |
| **quōquam**, *anywhither* (in negative, &c. sentences). | | **usquam**, *anywhere* (in negative, &c. sentences). | |
| **sĭquō**, *if anywhither.* | **sĭcunde**, *if from any place.* | **sĭcŭbī**, *if anywhere.* | **siquā**, *if by any way.* |
| **nequō**, *lest anywhither.* | **nēcunde**, *lest from anywhere.* | **nēcŭbī**, *lest anywhere.* | **nequā**, *lest by any way.* |
| **ălĭō**, *to another place.* | **ălĭunde**, *from another place.* | **ălĭbī**, *elsewhere.* | **ălĭā**, *by another way.* |
| **quōcunque, quōquō** } *whithersoever.* | **undĕcunque**, *whencesoever.* | **ŭbĭcunque**, *wheresoever.* | **quācunque, quāquā** } *by whatsoever way.* |
| | | **nusquam**, *nowhere.* | **usquequaque**, *everywhere.* |
| **quonam**, *whither?* | | | **quanam**, *where?* |
| **adeo**, *so far.* | | | |
| **quorsum (i. e. quōversum)** } *whitherwards? whitherwards.* | | | |

237 The following are the chief (pronominal) adverbs *of time.*

**quando** { *when?* *when.*
**quom**, *when.*
**nunc**, *now.*
**tunc**, **tum** } *then.*
**antehāc**, *before this.*
**posthāc**, *after this.*
**sŭbinde**, *immediately afterwards.*
**nondum**, *not yet.*
**ālĭās**, *at another time.*
**intērim**, **intĕrea** } *meanwhile.*
**quondam**, **ōlim** } *sometime*, i.e. *formerly*, or *hereafter.*

**quamdiū** { *how long?* *as long as.*
**ălĭquamdiū**, *for some length of time.*
**quousque**, *till when?*
**adhuc**, *hitherto.*

**quŏtiēs** { *how often?* *as often as.*
**tŏtiēs**, *so often.*
**ălĭquŏties**, *several times.*
**ĭdentĭdem**, *repeatedly.*
**nonnunquam**, **ălĭquando**, **quandōque** } *sometimes* (i.e. *not unfrequently*).
**interdum**, *sometimes* (i.e. *occasionally*).
**unquam**, *ever* (after negatives, &c.).
**usque**, *ever* (of progressive continuance).

## CHAPTER XIII.

### INFLEXIONS OF VERBS. *Introduction.*

238 LATIN verbs have inflexions to denote differences of voice, person, number, mood, and tense.

1. There are two *voices*, the Active and the Passive.

(The Passive voice is sometimes called Reflexive or Middle.)

Some verbs have both voices, some have only the active, except in the third person; others, called Deponents, have only the passive, but with the signification (apparently) of the active.

2. Two *numbers*, the Singular and Plural.

In a few verbs no plural is found.

3. There are three *persons* (First, Second, Third) in each number. In the Imperative mood there is no form for the first person singular.

A few verbs are used only in the third person.

4. Three *moods*, Indicative, Subjunctive (often called Conjunctive), Imperative.

5. Six *tenses*, in the Indicative mood, active voice:

(*a*) Three, denoting incomplete action; the Present, Future, and Imperfect.

(More precise terms for these tenses are (as used by some writers) present imperfect, future imperfect, past imperfect.)

(*b*) Three denoting completed action; the Perfect, Completed Future, and Pluperfect.

(More precise terms: present perfect, future perfect, and past perfect.)

In the Subjunctive mood, active voice, there are only four distinct tense-forms, called Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. In the Imperative there are only two, the present and future.

Some verbs in the active voice and all verbs in the passive voice have in the Indicative only three simple tense-forms, those of incomplete action, and in the Subjunctive only the present and imperfect.

The deficiency of the tenses of complete action in the Passive voice is supplied by participles in combination with certain tenses of the verb of *being*.

**239** Certain *verbal nouns* are (partly from their mode of formation, partly from their use) usually treated in connexion with the verb. These are

(*a*) Two indeclinable substantives, called *Infinitives* (or the Infinitive Mood). They are the Present infinitive, denoting incomplete action, and the Perfect, denoting completed action.

(*b*) Three verbal adjectives, called *Participles*, the Present and Future belonging to the active voice; the Past participle belonging to the passive voice.

(*c*) A verbal substantive and adjective, called the *Gerund* and *Gerundive*, usually classed, the first with the active, the second with the passive voice.

(*d*) Two *Supines*, i.e. the accusative and ablative (or dative) of a verbal noun.

The forms of the verb proper are often called collectively the *Finite Verb*; the verbal nouns above named are sometimes called the *Infinite Verb*.

**240** Every single word in the Latin (finite) verb is a complete sentence, the verbal stem being used not by itself, but in combination with abbreviated forms of pronouns of the first, second, and third persons.

The principles on which all verbs are inflected are the same. The differences in detail which are found are due partly to the nature or ending of the stem of the particular verb. But there are other differ-

ences, of which the reason must apparently be sought elsewhere. Possibly in early stages of the language there may have been a fuller system of forms applicable to all verbs, and in the language as we have it some verbs exhibit some of these forms and other verbs exhibit other forms.

241 The inflexions are attached to the stem in the following order: inflexions of *tense*, of *mood*, of *person*, of *number*, of *voice*. The forms of the present tense, indicative mood, singular number, active voice are the simplest, and arise from the union of the stem with personal pronouns. All other parts of the verb (usually) contain modifications for tense, mood, number and voice. Of these the modifications for tense and mood are made between the stem and personal pronoun, and the inflexions for number and voice are appended after them.

Thus **dăt** is the 3rd person, singular number, present tense, indicative mood, active voice of a verbal stem meaning *give*. It is composed of **dă-** verbal stem, and **t** abbreviated pronoun of 3rd person: and thus is strictly *give-he* (*she*, *it*), for which originally *give-s* is the English equivalent, but English, having lost its sense of the meaning of the final *s*, now prefixes in addition the pronoun *he* (*she*, *it*), as a separate word for the like purpose.

**dă-r-ē-m-us** is the 1st person plural, active voice, imperfect subjunctive of the same stem, **dă-**, *give*. The sound **r** denotes past time, **ē** the mood of *thought* (instead of *fact*), **m** the speaker himself, **us** the action of others with the speaker. Thus **daremus** analysed is *give-did-in-thought-I-they*. If for **-us** we have **-ur** (**dărēmur**), the speaker and others are passive instead of active.

242 The inflexions of tense are divisible into two classes: viz. those which are common to several tenses or forms, and those which are peculiar to the particular tense.

The inflexions common to several tenses or forms may be referred to three forms of the verbal stem called the Present stem, the Perfect stem and the Supine stem.

1. The *Present stem* is very often identical with the verbal stem, but not unfrequently is more or less modified. From this present stem are formed all the tenses and verbal forms which express incomplete action: viz. both in Active and Passive voices—

Indicative Present, Future, Imperfect;
Imperative Present, Future;
Subjunctive Present, Imperfect;

also the following verbal forms:

Present Infinitive; Active and Passive;
Present Participle; Active (none in Passive);
Gerunds and Gerundive.

2. The *Perfect stem* is sometimes identical with the verb stem and with the present stem, but usually is considerably modified. From this perfect stem are formed all the tenses denoting completed action: viz. in the Active voice—

Indicative Perfect, Completed Future, Pluperfect;

Subjunctive Perfect, Pluperfect;

also the Perfect Infinitive.

3. The *Supine stem* is always a modification of the verbal stem, and from it are formed certain verbal nouns, of which the forms called the supines, the past participle passive, and future participle active are generally treated in connexion with the verb.

The past participle passive is used with certain tenses of the verb of *being* to form the perfect, pluperfect and future indicative, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, of the passive voice.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### EXAMPLES OF THE SYSTEM OF INFLEXIONS OF VERBS.

**243** VERBS are as regards their inflexions divided into two principal classes; those whose stem ends in a consonant and those whose stem ends in a vowel. The former may be called for shortness *consonant-verbs*, the latter *vowel-verbs*.

Vowel-verbs may have a stem ending in **a** or **u**, or **e** or **i**. Of these by far the most numerous are those with stems ending in **ā**, and this class differs most in its inflexions from consonant verbs. It is in the inflexions of tenses formed from the present stem that these differences are mainly found.

First will be given on opposite pages the whole system of inflected forms of a consonant stem, **rĕg-**, *rule*, and of a vowel stem, **ămā-**, *love*.

The English corresponding generally to the Latin forms of the Indicative and Imperative moods is added. The English corresponding to the Subjunctive mood varies so much with the character of the sentence in which it is used, that none can properly be given here. On the whole in the greater number of sentences the English used for the Indicative would also fit the Subjunctive. The proper translation according to the class of the Subjunctive is given in the Syntax.

The quantity of the final syllables is marked as actually used by Latin poets. (See also § 53 foll.) Doubtless in some forms here marked short the quantity was originally long, and some traces of the earlier quantity are occasionally found. See §§ 32, 68, 69.

## CONSONANT CONJUGATION.

### PRESENT STEM.

#### Active Voice.

##### Present.

| | Indicative. | Subjunctive. |
|---|---|---|
| 244 Sing. 1. | **rĕg-o**, *I am ruling* or *I rule* | **rĕg-am** |
| 2. | **rĕg-ĭs**, *Thou art ruling* or *Thou rulest* | **rĕg-ās** |
| 3. | **rĕg-ĭt**, *He is ruling* or *He rules* | **rĕg-ăt** |
| Plur. 1. | **rĕg-ĭm-ŭs**, *We are ruling* or *We rule* | **rĕg-ām-ŭs** |
| 2. | **rĕg-ĭt-ĭs**, *Ye are ruling* or *Ye rule* | **rĕg-ăt-ĭs** |
| 3. | **rĕg-unt**, *They are ruling* or *They rule* | **rĕg-ant** |

##### Future.

| | |
|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **rĕg-am**, *I shall* or *will rule* |
| 2. | **rĕg-ēs**, *Thou wilt rule* |
| 3. | **rĕg-ĕt**, *He will rule* |
| Plur. 1. | **rĕg-ēm-ŭs**, *We shall* or *will rule* |
| 2. | **rĕg-ēt-ĭs**, *Ye will rule* |
| 3. | **rĕg-ent**, *They will rule* |

##### Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **rĕg-ēb-am**, *I was ruling* or *I ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-em** |
| 2. | **rĕg-ēb-ās**, *Thou wast ruling* or *Thou ruledst* | **rĕg-ĕr-ēs** |
| 3. | **rĕg-ēb-ăt**, *He was ruling* or *He ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ĕt** |
| Plur. 1. | **rĕg-ēb-ām-ŭs**, *We were ruling* or *We ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ēm-ŭs** |
| 2. | **rĕg-ēb-āt-ĭs**, *Ye were ruling* or *Ye ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ēt-ĭs** |
| 3. | **rĕg-ēb-ant**, *They were ruling* or *They ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ent** |

##### Imperative Mood.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present. | Sing. 2. | **rĕg-ĕ**, *Rule (thou)* | |
| | Plur. 3. | **rĕg-ĭt-ĕ**, *Rule (ye)* | |
| Future. | Sing. 2, 3 | **rĕg-ĭt-o** | *Thou shalt rule*; *He shall rule* |
| | Plur. 2. | **rĕg-ĭt-ōt-ĕ**, *Ye shall rule* | |
| | 3. | **rĕg-unt-o**, *They shall rule* | |

##### Verbal Noun-Forms.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Infinitive Present. | | **rĕg-ĕr-ĕ**, *to rule* |
| Participle Present S. Nom. | | **rĕg-ens**, *ruling* |
| | Acc. | **rĕg-ent-em** (m. f.), **rĕg-ens** (n.) |
| Gerund. | Nom. Acc. | **rĕg-end-um**, *ruling* |

## Vowel Conjugation.

### Present Stem.

#### Active Voice.

##### Present.

| | Indicative. | Subjunctive. |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **ăm-o**, *I am loving* or *I love* | **ăm-ēm** |
| 2. | **ăm-ās**, *Thou art loving* or *Thou lovest* | **ăm-ēs** |
| 3. | **ăm-ăt**, *He is loving* or *He loves* | **ăm-ēt** |
| Plur. 1. | **ám-ām-ŭs**, *We are loving* or *We love* | **ăm-ēm-ŭs** |
| 2. | **ăm-āt-ĭs**, *Ye are loving* or *Ye love* | **ăm-ēt-ĭs** |
| 3. | **ăm-ant**, *They are loving* or *They love* | **ăm-ent** |

##### Future.

Sing. 1. **ăm-āb-o**, *I shall* or *will love*
2. **ăm-āb-ĭs**, *Thou wilt love*
3. **ăm-āb-ĭt**, *He will love*
Plur. 1. **ăm-āb-ĭm-ŭs**, *We shall* or *will love*
2. **ăm-āb-ĭt-ĭs**, *Ye will love*
3. **ăm-āb-unt**, *They will love*

##### Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **ăm-āb-ām**, *I was loving* or *I loved* | **ăm-ār-em** |
| 2. | **ăm-āb-ās**, *Thou wast loving* or *Thou lovedst* | **ăm-ār-ēs** |
| 3. | **ăm-āb-ăt**, *He was loving* or *He loved* | **ăm-ār-ĕt** |
| Plur. 1. | **ăm-āb-ām-ŭs**, *We were loving* or *We loved* | **ăm-ār-ēm-ŭs** |
| 2. | **ăm-āb-āt-ĭs**, *Ye were loving* or *Ye loved* | **ăm-ār-ēt-ĭs** |
| 3. | **ăm-āb-ant**, *They were loving* or *They loved* | **ăm-ār-ent** |

##### Imperative Mood.

Present. Sing. 2. **ăm-ā**, *Love (thou)*
Plur. 2. **ăm-āt-ĕ**, *Love (ye)*
Future. Sing. 2. 3. **ăm-āt-o** *Thou shalt love*, *He shall love*
Plur. 2. **ăm-āt-ōt-ĕ**, *Ye shall love*
3. **ăm-ant-o**, *They shall love*

##### Verbal Noun-Forms.

Infinitive Present. **ăm-ār-ĕ**, *to love*
Participle Present S. Nom. **ăm-ans**, *loving*
Acc. **ăm-ant-em** (m. f.), **ăm-ans** (n.)
Gerund. Nom. Acc. **ăm-and-um**, *loving*

## CONSONANT CONJUGATION.

### PRESENT STEM.

### Passive Voice.

#### Present.

| | Indicative. | Subjunctive. |
|---|---|---|
| 246 Sing. 1. | **rĕg-ŏr**, *I am being ruled* or *I am ruled* | **rĕg-ăr** |
| 2. | **rĕg-ĕr-ĭs**, *Thou art being ruled* or *Thou art ruled* | **rĕg-ār-ĭs** or **rĕg-ār-ĕ** |
| 3. | **rĕg-ĭt-ŭr**, *He is being ruled* or *He is ruled* | **rĕg-āt-ŭr** |
| Plur. 1. | **rĕg-ĭm-ŭr**, *We are being ruled* or *We are ruled* | **rĕg-ām-ŭr** |
| 2. | **rĕg-ĭm-ĭn-ī**, *Ye are being ruled* or *Ye are ruled* | **rĕg-ām-ĭn-ī** |
| 3. | **rĕg-unt-ŭr**, *They are being ruled* or *They are ruled* | **rĕg-ant-ŭr** |

#### Future.

Sing. 1. **rĕg-ar**, *I shall* or *will be ruled*
2. **rĕg-ēr-ĭs** or **rĕg-ēr-ĕ**, *Thou wilt be ruled*
3. **rĕg-ēt-ŭr**, *He will be ruled*
Plur. 1. **rĕg-ēm-ŭr**, *We shall be ruled*
2. **rĕg-ēm-ĭn-ī**, *Ye will be ruled*
3. **rĕg-ent-ŭr**, *They will be ruled*

#### Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **rĕg-ēb-ăr**, *I was being ruled* or *I was ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ĕr** |
| 2. | **rĕg-ēb-ār-ĭs**, *Thou wast being ruled* or *Thou* or **rĕg-ēb-ār-ĕ** *wast ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ēr-ĭs** or **rĕg-ĕr-ĕr-ĕ** |
| 3. | **rĕg-ēb-āt-ŭr**, *He was being ruled* or *He was ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ēt-ŭr** |
| Plur. 1. | **rĕg-ēb-ām-ŭr**, *We were being ruled* or *We were ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ēm-ŭr** |
| 2. | **rĕg-ēb-ām-ĭn-ī**, *Ye were being ruled* or *Ye were ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ēm-ĭn-ī** |
| 3. | **rĕg-ēb-ant-ŭr**, *They were being ruled* or *They were ruled* | **rĕg-ĕr-ent-ŭr** |

#### Imperative.

Present. Sing. 2. **rĕg-ĕr-ĕ**, *Be ruled*
Plur. 2. **rĕg-ĭm-ĭn-ī**, *Be ye ruled*
Future. Sing. 2), 3) **rĕg-ĭt-ŏr** (*Thou shalt be ruled*, *He shall be ruled*)
Plur. 3. **rĕg-unt-ŏr**, *They shall be ruled*

#### Verbal Noun-Forms.

Infinitive Present. **rĕg-ī**, *to be ruled*
Gerundive Sing. Nom. m. **rĕg-end-ŭs**, f. **rĕg-end-ă**, n. **rĕg-end-um** } *to rule* or *to be ruled* (used adjectively)

## Vowel Conjugation.

### Present Stem.

### Passive Voice.

### Present.

| | Indicative. | Subjunctive. |
|---|---|---|
| 247 Sing. 1. | **ăm-ŏr**, *I am being loved* or *I am loved* | **ăm-ĕr** |
| 2. | **ăm-ār-ĭs**, *Thou art being loved* or *Thou art loved* | **ăm-ēr-ĭs** or **ăm-ēr-ĕ** |
| 3. | **ăm-āt-ŭr**, *He is being loved* or *He is loved* | **ăm-ēt-ŭr** |
| Plur. 1. | **ăm-ām-ŭr**, *We are being loved* or *We are loved* | **ăm-ēm-ŭr** |
| 2. | **ăm-ām-ĭn-ī**, *Ye are being loved* or *Ye are loved* | **ăm-ēm-ĭn-ī** |
| 3. | **ăm-ant-ŭr**, *They are being loved* or *They are loved* | **ăm-ent-ŭr** |

### Future.

Sing. 1. **ăm-āb-ŏr**, *I shall* or *will be loved*
2. **ăm-āb-ĕr-ĭs** or **ăm-āb-ĕr-ĕ**, *Thou wilt be loved*
3. **ăm-āb-ĭt-ŭr**, *He will be loved*
Plur. 1. **ăm-āb-ĭm-ŭr**, *We shall* or *will be loved*
2. **ăm-āb-ĭm-ĭn-ī**, *Ye will be loved*
3. **ăm-āb-unt-ŭr**, *They will be loved*

### Imperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **ăm-āb-ăr**, *I was being loved* or *I was loved* | **ăm-ār-ĕr** |
| 2. | **ăm-āb-ār-ĭs**, *Thou wast being loved* or *Thou* or **ăm-āb-ār-ĕ** *wast loved* | **ăm-ār-ēr-ĭs** or **ăm-ār-ēr-ĕ** |
| 3. | **ăm-āb-āt-ŭr**, *He was being loved* or *He was loved* | **ăm-ār-ēt-ŭr** |
| Plur. 1. | **ăm-āb-ām-ŭr**, *We were being loved* or *We were loved* | **ăm-ār-ēm-ŭr** |
| 2. | **ăm-āb-ām-ĭn-ī**, *Ye were being loved* or *Ye were loved* | **ăm-ār-ēm-ĭn-ī** |
| 3. | **ăm-āb-ant-ŭr**, *They were being loved* or *They were loved* | **ăm-ār-ent-ŭr** |

### Imperative.

Present. Sing. 2. **ăm-ār-ĕ**, *Be (thou) loved*
Plur. 2. **ăm-ām-ĭn-ī**, *Be (ye) loved*
Future. Sing. 2, 3. **ăm-āt-ŏr** *Thou shalt be loved*, *He shall be loved*
Plur. 3. **ăm-ant-ŏr**, *They shall be loved*

### Verbal Noun-Forms.

Infinitive Present. **ăm-ār-ī**, *to be loved*
Gerundive. Sing. Nom. m. **ăm-and-ŭs**, f. **ăm-and-ă**, n. **ăm-and-um**, &c. — *to love* or *to be loved* (used adjectivally)

## CONSONANT CONJUGATION.

### PERFECT STEM.

### Active Voice.

#### Perfect.

| | Indicative. | Subjunctive. |
|---|---|---|
| 243 Sing. 1. | **rex-ī**, *I ruled* or *I have ruled* | **rex-ĕr-im** |
| 2. | **rex-is-tī**, *Thou ruledst* or *Thou hast ruled* | **rex-ĕr-īs** |
| 3. | **rex-ĭt**, *He ruled* or *He has ruled* | **rex-ĕr-ĭt** |
| Plur. 1. | **rex-ĭm-ŭs**, *We ruled* or *We have ruled* | **rex-ĕr-īm-ŭs** |
| 2. | **rex-ĭs-tĭ-s**, *Ye ruled* or *Ye have ruled* | **rex-ĕr-ĭt-ĭs** |
| 3. | **rex-er-unt**, *They ruled* or *They have ruled* or **rex-ēr-ĕ** | **rex-ĕr-int** |

#### Completed Future.

| | |
|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **rex-ĕr-o**, *I shall have ruled* |
| 2. | **rex-ĕr-ĭs**, *Thou wilt have ruled* |
| 3. | **rex-ĕr-ĭt**, *He will have ruled* |
| Plur. 1. | **rex-ĕr-ĭm-ŭs**, *We shall have ruled* |
| 2. | **rex-ĕr-ĭt-ĭs**, *Ye will have ruled* |
| 3. | **rex-ĕr-int**, *They will have ruled* |

[For the quantity of **-is, -imus**, &c. in perf. subj. and comp. fut. ind. see § 281. For **rexerunt** see § 274.]

#### Pluperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **rex-ĕr-am**, *I had ruled* | **rex-is-sem** |
| 2. | **rex-ĕr-ās**, *Thou hadst ruled* | **rex-is-sēs** |
| 3. | **rex-ĕr-ăt**, *He had ruled* | **rex-is-sĕt** |
| Plur. 1. | **rex-ĕr-ām-ŭs**, *We had ruled* | **rex-is-sēm-ŭs** |
| 2. | **rex-ĕr-āt-ĭs**, *Ye had ruled* | **rex-is-sēt-ĭs** |
| 3. | **rex-ĕr-ant**, *They had ruled* | **rex-is-sent** |

Infinitive. **rex-is-sĕ**, *to have ruled*

### SUPINE STEM.

### Active Voice.

**rect-um**, *to rule*, i.e. acc. case of verbal noun with **u-** stem
**rect-ū**, *in the ruling*, i.e. ablat. case of verbal noun with **u-** stem

Part. Fut. (Sing. Nom.) **rect-ūr-ŭs** (m.), **rect-ūr-ă** (f.), **rect-ūr-um** (n.) } *about to rule*

Infin. Fut. (Sing. Nom.) **rect-ūr-ŭs, -ă, -um esse**, *to be about to rule*
„ „ **fuisse**, *to have been about to rule*

## Vowel Conjugation.

### Perfect Stem.

#### Active Voice.

#### Perfect.

| | Indicative. | Subjunctive. |
|---|---|---|
| 249 Sing. 1. | **ămāv-ī**, *I loved* or *have loved* | **ămāv-ĕr-im** |
| 2. | **ămāv-istī**, *Thou lovedst* or *hast loved* | **ămāv-ĕr-īs** |
| 3. | **ămāv-it**, *He loved* or *has loved* | **ămāv-ĕr-it** |
| Plur. 1. | **ămāv-im-ŭs**, *We loved* or *have loved* | **ămāv-ĕr-im-ŭs** |
| 2. | **ămāv-is-tī-s**, *Ye loved* or *have loved* | **ămāv-ĕr-īt-is** |
| 3. | **ămāv-er-unt**, *They loved* or *have loved* or **ămāv-ēr-ĕ** | **ămāv-ĕr-int** |

#### Completed Future.

| | |
|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **ămāv-ĕr-o**, *I shall have loved* |
| 2. | **ămāv-ĕr-is**, *Thou wilt have loved* |
| 3. | **ămāv-ĕr-it**, *He will have loved* |
| Plur. 1. | **ămāv-ĕr-im-ŭs**, *We shall have loved* |
| 2. | **ămāv-ĕr-it-is**, *Ye will have loved* |
| 3. | **ămāv-ĕr-int**, *They will have loved* |

#### Pluperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **ămāv-ĕr-am**, *I had loved* | **ămāv-is-sem** |
| 2. | **ămāv-ĕr-ās**, *Thou hadst loved* | **ămāv-is-sēs** |
| 3. | **ămāv-ĕr-at**, *He had loved* | **ămāv-is-sĕt** |
| Plur. 1. | **ămāv-ĕr-ām-ŭs**, *We had loved* | **ămāv-is-sēm-ŭs** |
| 2. | **ămāv-ĕr-āt-is**, *Ye had loved* | **ămāv-is-sēt-is** |
| 3. | **ămāv-ĕr-ant**, *They had loved* | **ămāv-is-sent** |

Infinitive. **ămāv-is-sĕ**, *to have loved.*

### Supine Stem.

#### Active Voice.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Supine. | **ămāt-um**, *to love*<br>**ămāt-ū**, *in the loving* | |
| Part. Fut. (Sing. Nom.) | **ămāt-ūr-ŭs** (m.)<br>**ămāt-ūr-ă** (f.)<br>**ămāt-ūr-um** (n.) | *about to love* |
| Infin. Fut. (Sing. Nom.) | **ămāt-ūr-ŭs, -a, -um esse**, *to be about to love* | |
| | ,, ,, **fuisse**, *to have been about to love* | |

## SUPINE STEM.

### Passive Voice.

#### Perfect.

| | | Indicative. (m.) (f.) (n.) | Subjunctive. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 250 Sing. | 1. | **rect-ŭs rect-ă rect-um sum,** *I have been* or *am ruled* | **rectŭs, rectă, rectum sim** |
| | 2. | **rect-ŭs rect-ă rect-um ĕs,** *Thou hast been* or *art ruled* | ,, ,, ,, **sīs** |
| | 3. | **rect-ŭs rect-ă rect-um est,** *He has been* or *is ruled* | ,, ,, ,, **sīt** |
| Plur. | 1. | **rect-ī rect-ae rect-ă sŭmŭs,** *We have been* or *are ruled* | **rect-ī, rect-ae, rect-ă sīm-ŭs** |
| | 2. | **rect-ī rect-ae rect-ă estĭs,** *Ye have been* or *are ruled* | ,, ,, ,, **sītĭs** |
| | 3. | **rect-ī rect-ae rect-ă sunt,** *They have been* or *are ruled* | ,, ,, ,, **sint** |

#### Completed Future.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | 1. | **rect-ŭs** | **rect-a** | **rect-um** | **ĕro**, *I shall have been ruled* |
| | 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrĭs**, *Thou wilt have been ruled* |
| | 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrĭt**, *He will have been ruled* |
| Plur. | 1. | **rect-ī** | **rect-ae** | **rect-ă** | **ĕrĭmus**, *We shall have been ruled* |
| | 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrĭtĭs**, *Ye will have been ruled* |
| | 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrunt**, *They will have been ruled* |

#### Pluperfect.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | 1. | **rect-ŭs** | **rect-a** | **rect-um ĕram,** *I had been ruled* | **rect-ŭs, -ă, -um essem** |
| | 2. | **rect-ŭs** | **rect-a** | **rect-um ĕrās,** *Thou hadst been ruled* | ,, ,, ,, **essĕs** |
| | 3. | **rect-ŭs** | **rect-a** | **rect-um ĕrăt,** *He had been ruled* | ,, ,, ,, **essĕt** |
| Plur. | 1. | **rect-ī** | **rect-ae** | **rect-a ĕrāmŭs,** *We had been ruled* | **rect-ī, -ae, -ă essēmŭs** |
| | 2. | **rect-ī** | **rect-ae** | **rect-a ĕrātĭs** *Ye had been ruled* | ,, ,, ,, **essētĭs** |
| | 3. | **rect-ī** | **rect-ae** | **rect-a ĕrant** *They had been ruled* | ,, ,, ,, **essent** |

Participle Perfect. **rect-ŭs, -ă, -um,** *ruled.*

Infinitive Perfect (sing. nom.). **rect-ŭs, -ă, -um esse,** *to have been*, or *to be, ruled.*

SUPINE STEM.

Passive Voice.

Perfect.

| | Indicative. | Subjunctive. |
|---|---|---|
| 251 Sing. 1. | **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um sum,** *I have been* or *am loved* | **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um sim** |
| 2. | **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um es,** *Thou hast been* or *art loved* | ,, ,, **sīs** |
| 3. | **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um est,** *He has been* or *is loved* | ,, ,, **sĭt** |
| Plur. 1. | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă sŭmŭs,** *We have been* or *are loved* | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă sīmŭs** |
| 2. | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă estĭs,** *Ye have been* or *are loved* | ,, ,, **sītĭs** |
| 3. | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă sunt,** *They have been* or *are loved* | ,, ,, **sint** |

Completed Future.

| | |
|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **ămāt-us, -ă, -um ĕro,** *I shall have been loved* |
| 2. | ,, ,, **ĕrīs,** *Thou wilt have been loved* |
| 3. | ,, ,, **ĕrĭt,** *He will have been loved* |
| Plur. 1. | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă ĕrĭmŭs,** *We shall have been loved* |
| 2. | ,, ,, **ĕrĭtĭs,** *Ye will have been loved* |
| 3. | ,, ,, **ĕrunt,** *They will have been loved* |

Pluperfect.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um ĕram,** *I had been loved* | **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um essem** |
| 2. | **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um ĕrās,** *Thou hadst been loved* | ,, ,, **essēs** |
| 3. | **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um ĕrăt,** *He had been loved* | ,, ,, **essĕt** |
| Plur. 1. | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă ĕrāmŭs,** *We had been loved* | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă essēmŭs** |
| 2. | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă ĕrātĭs,** *Ye had been loved* | ,, ,, **essētĭs** |
| 3. | **ămāt-ī, -ae, -ă ĕrant,** *They had been loved* | ,, ,, **essent** |

Participle Perfect (sing. nom.). **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um,** *loved.*

Infinitive Perfect (sing. nom.). **ămāt-ŭs, -ă, -um esse,** *to have been,* or *to be, loved.*

252 PRESENT STEM. *Other Vowel Conjugations.* ACTIVE VOICE.

## Indicative Mood.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singular. | Present. | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-o | căp-i-o | aud-i-o | mŏn-e-o |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĭs | căp-ĭs | aud-ĭs | mŏn-ēs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ĭt | căp-ĭt | aud-ĭt | mŏn-ĕt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ĭm-ŭs | căp-ĭm-ŭs | aud-ĭm-ŭs | mŏn-ēm-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĭt-ĭs | căp-ĭt-ĭs | aud-ĭt-ĭs | mŏn-ĕt-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-unt | căp-i-unt | aud-i-unt | mŏn-ent |
| Singular. | Future. | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-am | căp-i-am | aud-i-am | mŏn-ēb-o |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ēs | căp-i-ēs | aud-i-ēs | mŏn-ēb-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ĕt | căp-i-ĕt | aud-i-ĕt | mŏn-ēb-ĭt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ēm-ŭs | căp-i-ēm-ŭs | aud-i-ēm-ŭs | mŏn-ēb-ĭm-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ēt-ĭs | căp-i-ēt-ĭs | aud-i-ēt-ĭs | mŏn-ēb-ĭt-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ent | căp-i-ent | aud-i-ent | mŏn-ēb-unt |
| Singular. | Imperfect. | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ēb-am | căp-i-ēb-am | aud-i-ēb-am | mŏn-ēb-am |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ēb-ās | căp-i-ēb-ās | aud-i-ēb-ās | mŏn-ēb-ās |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ēb-ăt | căp-i-ēb-ăt | aud-i-ēb-ăt | mŏn-ēb-ăt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ēb-ām-ŭs | căp-i-ēb-ām-ŭs | aud-i-ēb-ām-ŭs | mŏn-ēb-ām-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ēb-āt-ĭs | căp-i-ēb-āt-ĭs | aud-i-ēb-āt-ĭs | mŏn-ēb-āt-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ēb-ant | căp-i-ēb-ant | aud-i-ēb-ant | mŏn-ēb-ant |

## Imperative Mood.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Singular. | Present. | | | |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĕ | căp-ĕ | aud-ī | mŏn-ē |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĭt-ĕ | căp-ĭt-ĕ | aud-īt-ĕ | mŏn-ēt-ĕ |
| Singular. | Future. | | | |
| 2. 3. | trĭb-u-ĭt-o | căp-ĭt-o | aud-īt-o | mŏn-ēt-o |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĭt-ōt-ĕ | căp-ĭt-ōt-ĕ | aud-īt-ōt-ĕ | mŏn-ēt-ōt-ĕ |
| 3. | trĭb-u-unt-o | căp-i-unt-o | aud-i-unt-o | mŏn-ent-o |

## Verbal Noun-Forms.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Infin. Pres. | | | |
| | trĭb-u-ĕr-ĕ | căp-ĕr-ĕ | aud-īr-ĕ | mŏn-ēr-ĕ |
| Part. Pres. (sing. nom.). | | | | |
| | trĭb-u-ens | căp-i-ens | aud-i-ens | mŏn-ens |
| Gerund (sing. nom.). | | | | |
| | trĭb-u-end-um | căp-i-end-um | aud-i-end-um | mŏn-end-um |

253 PRESENT STEM. *Other Vowel Conjugations.* PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

| Singular. | Present. | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | trĭb-u-ŏr | căp-i-ŏr | aud-i-ŏr | mŏn-e-ŏr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ĭs | căp-ĕr-ĭs | aud-īr-ĭs | mŏn-ēr-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ĭt-ŭr | căp-ĭt-ŭr | aud-ĭt-ŭr | mŏn-ēt-ŭr |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ĭm-ŭr | căp-ĭm-ŭr | aud-ĭm-ŭr | mŏn-ēm-ŭr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĭmĭn-ī | căp-ĭmĭn-ī | aud-ĭmĭn-ī | mŏn-ēmĭn-ī |
| 3. | trĭb-u-unt-ŭr | căp-i-unt-ŭr | aud-i-unt-ŭr | mŏn-ent-ŭr |

| Singular. | Future. | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | trĭb-u-ăr | căp-i-ăr | aud-i-ăr | mŏn-ēb-ŏr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ĭs | căp-i-ĕr-ĭs | aud-i-ĕr-ĭs | mŏn-ēb-ĕr-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ēt-ŭr | căp-i-ēt-ŭr | aud-i-ēt-ŭr | mŏn-ēb-ĭt-ŭr |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ēm-ŭr | căp-i-ēm-ŭr | aud-i-ēm-ŭr | mŏn-ēb-ĭm-ŭr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ēmĭn-ī | căp-i-ēmĭn-ī | aud-i-ēmĭn-ī | mŏn-ēb-ĭmĭn-ī |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ent-ŭr | căp-i-ent-ŭr | aud-i-ent-ŭr | mŏn-ēb-unt-ŭr |

| Singular. | Imperfect. | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | trĭb-u-ēb-ăr | căp-i-ēb-ăr | aud-i-ēb-ăr | mŏn-ēb-ăr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ēb-ār-ĭs | căp-i-ēb-ār-ĭs | aud-i-ēb-ār-ĭs | mŏn-ēb-ār-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ēb-ăt-ŭr | căp-i-ēb-ăt-ŭr | aud-i-ēb-ăt-ŭr | mŏn-ēb-ăt-ŭr |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ēb-ām-ŭr | căp-i-ēb-ām-ŭr | aud-i-ēb-ām-ŭr | mŏn-ēb-ām-ŭr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ēb-āmĭn-ī | căp-i-ēb-āmĭn-ī | aud-i-ēb-āmĭn-ī | mŏn-ēb-āmĭn-ī |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ēb-ant-ŭr | căp-i-ēb-ant-ŭr | aud-i-ēb-ant-ŭr | mŏn-ēb-ant-ŭr |

Imperative Mood.

| Singular. | Present. | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ĕ | căp-ĕr-ĕ | aud-īr-ĕ | mŏn-ēr-ĕ |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĭmĭn-ī | căp-ĭmĭn-ī | aud-ĭmĭn-ī | mŏn-ēmĭn-ī |

| Singular. | Future. | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2. 3. | trĭb-u-ĭt-ŏr | căp-ĭt-ŏr | aud-ĭt-ŏr | mŏn-ēt-ŏr |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 3. | trĭb-u-unt-ŏr | căp-i-unt-ŏr | aud-i-unt-ŏr | mŏn-ent-ŏr |

Verbal Noun-Forms.

| Infin. Pres. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | trĭb-u-ī | căp-ī | aud-īr-ī | mŏn-ēr-ī |
| Gerundive (sing. nom.). | | | | |
| | trĭb-u-end-us | căp-i-end-us | aud-i-end-ŭs | mŏn-end-ŭs |

254 PRESENT STEM. *Other Vowel Conjugations.* ACTIVE VOICE.

Subjunctive Mood.

| Singular. | Present. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | trĭb-u-am | căp-i-am | aud-i-am | mŏn-e-am |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ās | căp-i-ās | aud-i-ās | mŏn-e-ās |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ăt | căp-i-ăt | aud-i-ăt | mŏn-e-ăt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ām-ŭs | căp-i-ām-ŭs | aud-i-ām-ŭs | mŏn-e-ām-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭb-u-āt-ĭs | căp-i-āt-ĭs | aud-i-āt-ĭs | mŏn-e-āt-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ant | căp-i-ant | aud-i-ant | mŏn-e-ant |
| Singular. | Imperfect. | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ĕr-em | căp-ĕr-em | aud-īr-em | mŏn-ēr-em |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ēs | căp-ĕr-ēs | aud-īr-ēs | mŏn-ēr-ēs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ĕt | căp-ĕr-ĕt | aud-īr-ĕt | mŏn-ēr-ĕt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ēm-ŭs | căp-ĕr-ēm-ŭs | aud-īr-ēm-ŭs | mŏn-ēr-ēm-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ēt-ĭs | căp-ĕr-ēt-ĭs | aud-īr-ēt-ĭs | mŏn-ēr-ēt-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ent | căp-ĕr-ent | aud-īr-ent | mŏn-ēr-ent |

PASSIVE VOICE.

255 Subjunctive Mood.

| Singular. | Present. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | trĭb-u-ăr | căp-i-ăr | aud-i-ăr | mŏn-e-ăr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ār-ĭs | căp-i-ār-ĭs | aud-i-ār-ĭs | mŏn-e-ār-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-āt-ŭr | căp-i-āt-ŭr | aud-i-āt-ŭr | mŏn-e-āt-ŭr |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ām-ŭr | căp-i-ām-ŭr | aud-i-ām-ŭr | mŏn-e-ām-ŭr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-āmĭn-ī | căp-i-āmĭn-ī | aud-i-āmĭn-ī | mŏn-e-āmĭn-ī |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ant-ŭr | căp-i-ant-ŭr | aud-i-ant-ŭr | mŏn-e-ant-ŭr |
| Singular. | Imperfect. | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ĕr | căp-ĕr-ĕr | aud-īr-ĕr | mŏn-ēr-ĕr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ēr-ĭs | căp-ĕr-ēr-ĭs | aud-īr-ēr-ĭs | mŏn-ēr-ēr-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ēt-ŭr | căp-ĕr-ēt-ŭr | aud-īr-ēt-ŭr | mŏn-ēr-ēt-ŭr |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ēm-ŭr | căp-ĕr-ēm-ŭr | aud-īr-ēm-ŭr | mŏn-ēr-ēm-ŭr |
| 2. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ēmĭn-ī | căp-ĕr-ēmĭn-ī | aud-īr-ēmĭn-ī | mŏn-ēr-ēmĭn-ī |
| 3. | trĭb-u-ĕr-ent-ŭr | căp-ĕr-ent-ŭr | aud-īr-ent-ŭr | mŏn-ēr-ent-ŭr |

256 PERFECT STEM. *Other Vowel Conjugations.* ACTIVE VOICE.

## Indicative Mood.

| Singular. | Perfect. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | trĭbu-ī | cēp-ī | audīv-ī | mŏnu-ī |
| 2. | trĭbu-is-tī | cēp-is-tī | audīv-is-tī | mŏnu-is-tī |
| 3. | trĭbu-ĭt | cēp-ĭt | audīv-ĭt | mŏnu-ĭt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭbu-ĭm-ŭs | cēp-ĭm-ŭs | audīv-ĭm-ŭs | mŏnu-ĭm-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭbu-is-tĭs | cēp-is-tĭs | audīv-is-tĭs | mŏnu-is-tĭs |
| 3. | trĭbu-er-unt | cēp-er-unt | audīv-er-unt | mŏnu-er-unt |
| Singular. | Completed Future. | | | |
| 1. | trĭbu-ĕr-o | cēp-ĕr-o | audīv-ĕr-o | mŏnu-ĕr-o |
| 2. | trĭbu-ĕr-is | cēp-ĕr-is | audīv-ĕr-is | mŏnu-ĕr-is |
| 3. | trĭbu-ĕr-ĭt | cēp-ĕr-ĭt | audīv-ĕr-ĭt | mŏnu-ĕr-ĭt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭbu-ĕr-im-ŭs | cēp-ĕr-im-ŭs | audīv-ĕr-im-ŭs | mŏnu-ĕr-im-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭbu-ĕr-it-ĭs | cēp-ĕr-it-ĭs | audīv-ĕr-it-ĭs | mŏnu-ĕr-it-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭbu-ĕr-int | cēp-ĕr-int | audīv-ĕr-int | mŏnu-ĕr-int |
| Singular. | Pluperfect. | | | |
| 1. | trĭbu-ĕr-am | cēp-ĕr-am | audīv-ĕr-am | mŏnu-ĕr-am |
| 2. | trĭbu-ĕr-ās | cēp-ĕr-ās | audīv-ĕr-ās | mŏnu-ĕr-ās |
| 3. | trĭbu-ĕr-ăt | cēp-ĕr-ăt | audīv-ĕr-ăt | mŏnu-ĕr-ăt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭbu-ĕr-ām-ŭs | cēp-ĕr-ām-ŭs | audīv-ĕr-ām-ŭs | mŏnu-ĕr-ām-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭbu-ĕr-āt-ĭs | cēp-ĕr-āt-ĭs | audīv-ĕr-āt-ĭs | mŏnu-ĕr-āt-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭbu-ĕr-ant | cēp-ĕr-ant | audīv-ĕr-ant | mŏnu-ĕr-ant |

## Subjunctive Mood.

| Singular. | Perfect. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | trĭbu-ĕr-im | cēp-ĕr-im | audīv-ĕr-im | mŏnu-ĕr-im |
| 2. | trĭbu-ĕr-is | cēp-ĕr-is | audīv-ĕr-is | mŏnu-ĕr-is |
| 3. | trĭbu-ĕr-ĭt | cēp-ĕr-ĭt | audīv-ĕr-ĭt | mŏnu-ĕr-ĭt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭbu-ĕr-im-ŭs | cēp-ĕr-im-ŭs | audīv-ĕr-im-ŭs | mŏnu-ĕr-im-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭbu-ĕr-it-ĭs | cēp-ĕr-it-ĭs | audīv-ĕr-it-ĭs | mŏnu-ĕr-it-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭbu-ĕr-int | cēp-ĕr-int | audīv-ĕr-int | mŏnu-ĕr-int |
| Singular. | Pluperfect. | | | |
| 1. | trĭbu-is-sem | cēp-is-sem | audīv-is-sem | mŏnu-is-sem |
| 2. | trĭbu-is-sēs | cēp-is-sēs | audīv-is-sēs | mŏnu-is-sēs |
| 3. | trĭbu-is-sĕt | cēp-is-sĕt | audīv-is-sĕt | mŏnu-is-sĕt |
| Plural. | | | | |
| 1. | trĭbu-is-sēm-ŭs | cēp-is-sēm-ŭs | audīv-is-sēm-ŭs | mŏnu-is-sēm-ŭs |
| 2. | trĭbu-is-sēt-ĭs | cēp-is-sēt-ĭs | audīv-is-sēt-ĭs | mŏnu-is-sēt-ĭs |
| 3. | trĭbu-is-sent | cēp-is-sent | audīv-is-sent | mŏnu-is-sent |

257 SUPINE STEM. *Other Vowel Conjugations.* PASSIVE VOICE.

## Indicative Mood.

| Singular. | | | Perfect. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ŭs** | **capt-ŭs** | **audīt-ŭs** | **mŏnĭt-ŭs** | **sum** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **es** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **est** |
| Plural. | | | | | |
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ī** | **capt-ī** | **audīt-ī** | **mŏnĭt-ī** | **sŭmus** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **estis** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **sunt** |
| Singular. | | | Completed Future. | | |
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ŭs** | **capt-ŭs** | **audīt-ŭs** | **mŏnĭt-ŭs** | **ĕro** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrĭs** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrĭt** |
| Plural. | | | | | |
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ī** | **capt-ī** | **audīt-ī** | **mŏnĭt-ī** | **ĕrĭmus** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrĭtĭs** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrunt** |
| Singular. | | | Pluperfect. | | |
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ŭs** | **capt-ŭs** | **audīt-ŭs** | **mŏnĭt-ŭs** | **ĕram** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrās** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrăt** |
| Plural. | | | | | |
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ī** | **capt-ī** | **audīt-ī** | **mŏnĭt-ī** | **ĕrāmŭs** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrātĭs** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **ĕrānt** |

## Subjunctive Mood.

| Singular. | | | Perfect. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ŭs** | **capt-ŭs** | **audīt-ŭs** | **mŏnĭt-ŭs** | **sim** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **sĭs** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **sĭt** |
| Plural. | | | | | |
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ī** | **capt-ī** | **audīt-ī** | **mŏnĭt-ī** | **sīmŭs** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **sītĭs** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **sint** |
| Singular. | | | Pluperfect. | | |
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ŭs** | **capt-ŭs** | **audīt-ŭs** | **mŏnĭt-ŭs** | **essem** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **essēs** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **essĕt** |
| Plural. | | | | | |
| 1. | **trĭbūt-ī** | **capt-ī** | **audīt-ī** | **mŏnĭt-ī** | **essēmus** |
| 2. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **essētĭs** |
| 3. | ,, | ,, | ,, | ,, | **essent** |

258 *Deponent* verbs have the inflexions of the passive voice with the active meanings, and have also a present and future participle active and the gerunds and supines.

The following examples are given (for brevity's sake) only in the first person singular, or other leading form: **sĕqu-**, *follow;* **prĕcā-**, *pray;* **vĕre-**, *fear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present. | **sĕquor**, *I follow* or *am following* | **prĕcor** | **vĕreor** |
| Future. | **sĕquar**, *I shall follow* | **prĕcābor** | **vĕrēbor** |
| Imperfect. | **sĕquēbar**, *I was following* or *I followed* | **prĕcābar** | **vĕrēbar** |
| Perfect. | **sĕcūtus sum**, *I followed* or *have followed* | **prĕcātus sum** | **vĕrītus sum** |
| Comp. Fut. | **sĕcūtus ĕro**, *I shall have followed* | **prĕcātus ĕro** | **vĕrītus ĕro** |
| Pluperfect. | **sĕcūtus ĕram**, *I had followed* | **prĕcātus ĕram** | **vĕrītus ĕram** |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present. | **sĕquar**, *I be following* or *I follow* | **prĕcer** | **vĕrear** |
| Imperfect. | **sĕquĕrer**, *I were following* or *I followed* | **prĕcārer** | **vĕrērer** |
| Perfect. | **sĕcūtus sim**, *I followed* | **prĕcātus sim** | **vĕrītus sim** |
| Pluperfect. | **sĕcūtus essem**, *I had followed* | **prĕcātus essem** | **vĕrītus essem** |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present. | **sĕquĕrĕ**, *follow (thou)* | **prĕcārĕ** | **vĕrērĕ** |
| Future. | **sĕcūtor**, *thou shalt follow* | **prĕcātor** | **vĕrētor** |

VERBAL NOUNS.

INFINITIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present. | **sĕqui**, *to follow* | **prĕcāri** | **vĕrēri** |
| Perfect. | **sĕcūtus esse**, *to have followed* | **prĕcātus esse** | **vĕrītus esse** |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present. | **sĕquens**, *following* | **prĕcāns** | **vĕrens** |
| Future. | **sĕcūtūrus**, *going to follow* | **prĕcātūrus** | **vĕrītūrus** |
| Past. | **sĕcūtus**, *having followed* | **prĕcātus** | **vĕrītus** |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| GERUND. | **sĕquendum**, *following* | **prĕcandum** | **vĕrendum** |
| GERUNDIVE. | **sĕquendus**, *to follow* or *to be followed* | **prĕcandus** | **vĕrendus** |

## CHAPTER XV.

### INFLEXIONS OF sum AND OTHER IRREGULAR VERBS.

259 THE tenses of the verb of being are partly from a root **es-** whence **es-um** (Gr. εἰμί for ἐσμί) and partly from the root **fu-** (whence **fio**), Gr. φύω. **Pos-sum**, *I am able* or *I can*, is a compound of **pŏte sum**, and usually retains the **t** before a vowel but assimilates it to a following **-s.**

| | | Indicative. | Subjunctive. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present. | | | | |
| Sing. 1. | **sum**, *I am* | **pos-sum**, *I can* | **sim** | **possim** |
| 2. | **ĕs**, *Thou art* | **pŏtĕs**, *Thou canst* | **sīs** | **possīs** |
| 3. | **est**, *He is* | **pŏtest**, *He can* | **sĭt** | **possĭt** |
| Plur. 1. | **sŭmŭs**, *We are* | **possŭmŭs**, *We can* | **sīmŭs** | **possīmŭs** |
| 2. | **es-tĭs**, *Ye are* | **pŏtestĭs**, *Ye can* | **sītĭs** | **possītĭs** |
| 3. | **sunt**, *They are* | **possunt**, *They can* | **sint** | **possint** |
| Future. | | | | |
| Sing. 1. | **ĕro**, *I shall be* | **pŏtĕro**, *I shall be able* | | |
| 2. | **ĕrĭs**, *Thou wilt be* | **pŏtĕrĭs**, *Thou wilt be able* | | |
| 3. | **ĕrĭt**, *He will be* | **pŏtĕrĭt**, *He will be able* | | |
| Plur. 1. | **ĕrĭmŭs**, *We shall be* | **pŏtĕrĭmŭs**, *We shall be able* | | |
| 2. | **ĕrĭtĭs**, *Ye will be* | **pŏtĕrĭtĭs**, *Ye will be able* | | |
| 3. | **ĕrunt**, *They will be* | **pŏtĕrunt**, *They will be able* | | |
| Imperfect. | | | | |
| Sing. 1. | **ĕram**, *I was* | **pŏtĕram**, *I could* or *might* | **essem** | **possem** |
| 2. | **ĕrās**, *Thou wast* | **pŏtĕrās**, *Thou couldest* or *mightest* | **essēs** | **possēs** |
| 3. | **ĕrăt**, *He was* | **pŏtĕrăt** | **essĕt** | **possĕt** |
| Plur. 1. | **ĕrāmŭs**, *We were* | **pŏtĕrāmŭs** | **essēmŭs** | **possēmŭs** |
| 2. | **ĕrātĭs**, *Ye were* | **pŏtĕrātĭs** | **essētĭs** | **possētĭs** |
| 3. | **ĕrant**, *They were* | **pŏtĕrant** | **essent** | **possent** |
| Perfect. | | | | |
| Sing. 1. | **fŭi**, *I was* or *have been* | **pŏtŭi**, *I could* or *might* | **fŭĕrim** | **pŏtŭĕrim** |
| 2. | **fuisti**, *Thou wast* or *&c.* | **pŏtuisti** | **fŭĕrīs** | **pŏtŭĕrīs** |
| 3. | **fŭĭt**, *He was* | **pŏtŭĭt** | **fŭĕrĭt** | **pŏtŭĕrĭt** |
| Plur. 1. | **fŭĭmŭs**, *We were* | **pŏtŭĭmŭs** | **fŭĕrĭmŭs** | **pŏtŭĕrĭmŭs** |
| 2. | **fuistĭs**, *Ye were* | **pŏtŭistĭs** | **fŭĕrĭtĭs** | **pŏtŭĕrĭtĭs** |
| 3. | **fŭĕrunt**, *They were* | **pŏtŭĕrunt** | **fŭĕrint** | **pŏtŭĕrint** |
| Comp. Future. | | | | |
| Sing. 1. | **fŭĕro**, *I shall have been &c.* | **pŏtŭĕro**, *I shall have been able &c.* | | |
| 2. | **fŭĕrĭs** | **pŏtŭĕrĭs** | | |
| 3. | **fŭĕrĭt** | **pŏtŭĕrĭt** | | |
| Plur. 1. | **fŭĕrĭmus**, *We shall have been* | **pŏtŭĕrĭmus** | | |
| 2. | **fŭĕrĭtis** | **pŏtŭĕrĭtĭs** | | |
| 3. | **fŭĕrint** | **pŏtŭĕrint** | | |

| Pluperfect. | Indicative. | | Subjunctive. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. 1. | **fuĕram**, *I had been &c.* | **pŏtuĕram**, *I had been able &c.* | **fuissem** | **pŏtuissem** |
| 2. | **fuĕrās** | **pŏtuĕrās** | **fuissēs** | **pŏtuissēs** |
| 3. | **fuĕrăt** | **pŏtuĕrăt** | **fuissĕt** | **pŏtuissĕt** |
| Plur. 1. | **fuĕrāmŭs** | **pŏtuĕrāmŭs** | **fuissēmŭs** | **pŏtuissēmŭs** |
| 2. | **fuĕrātĭs** | **pŏtuĕrātĭs** | **fuissētĭs** | **pŏtuissētĭs** |
| 3. | **fuĕrant** | **pŏtuĕrant** | **fuissent** | **pŏtuissent** |

Imperative.

Present Sing. 2. **ĕs**, *be* — Future Sing. 2 and 3. **esto**
Plur. 2. **estĕ**, *be ye* — Plur. 2. **estōtĕ**
3. **sunto**

Verbal Nouns.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Infinitive. | Present. | **essĕ** | **posse** |
| | Perfect. | **fuisse** | **pŏtuisse** |
| | Future. | **fŏre** or **fūtūrus esse** | |
| Participles. | Present. | (**s-ens** or **ens**) only in compounds. | **pŏtens**, *powerful*, only adj. |
| | Future. | **fūtūrus** | |

260 **Es** in pres. ind. is always long in Plautus and Terence.

When **est** came after a vowel or **m**, the **e** was omitted in speaking and sometimes in writing (**nata st, natum st, oratio st**). So e. g. in Cicero, and (according to L. Müller) always both in scenic and dactylic verse. The same was not unfrequently the case with **es** after a vowel, and perhaps after **m** also; e.g. **nacta's, lignum's.** In the comic writers a short final syllable in **s** also coalesces with **est**; e.g. **factust, opust, similist,** for **factus est, opus est, similis est**; occasionally with **es**; e.g. **nactu's, simili's,** for **nactus es, similis es.** (Ritschl.)

A form for the pres. subj. **siem, sies, siet, sient,** is frequent in Plautus and Terence. Cicero speaks of it as used in his time. Another form for the same tense **fuam, fuas, fuat, fuant** is also frequent in Plautus and other scenic poets, except Terence, who like Vergil uses it once only. The compounds occasionally have **-sies, -siet, -sient.** For the imperfect subj. **fŏrem, fŏres, fŏrētis, fŏrent** are frequently used in most writers.

The perfect &c. are in Plautus occasionally **fūvit, fūverit,** &c.

261 Like **sum** are inflected its compounds, viz. **absum** (perf. **abfui** or **āfui**), **adsum** or **assum** (perf. **adfui** or **affui**), **dēsum** (**de-est, de-eram,** &c. pronounced **dēst, dēram,** &c.), **insum, intersum, obsum, praesum** (3rd pers. sing. **praest,** often written **praeest**), **prōsum** (**prōd-** before a vowel; e.g. **prod-es, prod-ero**), **subsum, supersum.** Of these **absum** and **praesum** alone have a present participle **absens, praesens.**

For inf. **posse** early writers have sometimes **potesse**; and for **possim, possis** we find sometimes in Plaut. and Ter. **possiem, possiēs.**

The full forms, **potis sum, es, est, eram, ero, sim,** &c. are found in prae-Augustan poets; especially **potis est** in Terence, Lucretius, and once in Vergil; **pote fuisset** once in Ter. **Potis** and **pote** are also used as direct predicates without the verb.

**Potestur, possitur, poteratur,** are quoted as used occasionally with passive infinitive in early writers (not now extant). **Potestur** once in Lucr.

262

| | Do, *give.* | Volo, *be willing.* | Nōlo (Ne-volo), *be unwilling.* | Mālo (Ma-volo for mag-volo), *prefer.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Indicative Mood.* Present Tense. | | | | |
| Sing. 1. | **do** | **vŏlo** | **nōlo** | **mālo** |
| 2. | **dās** | **vīs** | **non vīs** | **māvīs** |
| 3. | **dăt** | **vult** | **non vult** | **māvult** |
| Plur. 1. | **dămus** | **vŏlŭmus** | **nōlŭmus** | **mālŭmus** |
| 2. | **dătis** | **vultis** | **non vultis** | **māvultis** |
| 3. | **dant** | **vŏlunt** | **nōlunt** | **mālunt** |
| Future Sing. 1. | **dăbo** | **vŏlam** | (not used) | (not used) |
| 2. | **dăbis** | **vŏles** | **nōles** | **māles** |
| Imperf. Sing. 1. | **dăbam** | **vŏlēbam** | **nōlēbam** | **mālēbam** |
| Perf. Sing. 1. | **dĕdi** | **vŏlui** | **nōlui** | **mālui** |
| *Subjunctive Mood.* | | | | |
| Pres. Sing. 1. | **dem** | **vĕlim** | **nōlim** | **mālim** |
| Plur. 1. | **dēmus** | **vĕlīmus** | **nōlīmus** | **mālīmus** |
| Imperf. Sing. 1. | **dărem** | **vellem** | **nollem** | **mallem** |
| *Imperative.* | | | | |
| Pres. Sing. 2. | **dā** | | **nōlī** | |
| Plur. 2. | **dăte** | | **nōlīte** | |
| Future Sing. 2. | **dăto** | | **nōlīto** | |
| Plur. 2. | **dătōte** | | **nōlītōte** | |
| 3. | **danto** | | **nōlunto** | |
| *Infinitive.* | | | | |
| Present. | **dăre** | **velle** | **nolle** | **malle** |
| Future. | **dătūrus esse** | | | |
| *Participle.* | | | | |
| Present. | **dans** | **vŏlens** | **nōlens** | (not used) |
| Future. | **dătūrus** | | | |
| Perfect. | **dătus** | | | |
| *Gerund.* | **dandum** | **volendum** | | |
| *Gerundive.* | **dandus** | | | |

263 **do** has a passive voice. The forms **der** and **demur** (1st pers. sing. and plur. pres. subj.) are not actually found anywhere. For **duim**, &c. see § 280.

In prae-Augustan language the 3rd pers. sing. and 2nd pers. plural were **volt, voltis.** In conversational language **si vis, si vultis** became **sīs, sultis.**

For **non vis, non vult** Plautus has frequently **nĕvis, nĕvult**; on the other hand, for **nolis, nolit, nolint, nollem** he has sometimes the full forms **non velis,** &c.

Also in Plautus frequently **māvŏlo** (once also in Terence), **māvŏlet, mavĕlim, mavelis, mavelit, mavellem.**

264

| Eo (stem i-), *go.* | Fio (used as passive of facio), *become.* | Edo, *eat.* | Fero, *bear.* | Feror, *be borne.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ĕo | fīo | ĕdo | fĕro | fĕrŏr |
| īs | fīs | ĕdīs or ēs | fers | ferrīs |
| īt | fīt | ĕdīt or est | fert | fertŭr |
| īmus | | ĕdīmus | fĕrīmus | fĕrīmŭr |
| ītis | | ĕdītis or estis | fertis | fĕrīmĭni |
| ĕunt | fīunt | ĕdunt | fĕrunt | fĕruntŭr |
| ībo | fīam | ĕdam | fĕram | fĕrăr |
| ībis | fīēs | ĕdēs | fĕrēs | fĕrēris |
| ībam | fīēbam | ĕdēbam | fĕrēbam | fĕrēbăr |
| īvi | factus sum | ēdi | tŭli | lātus sum |
| | | | | |
| ĕam | fīam | ĕdam or ĕdim | fĕram | fĕrăr |
| ĕāmus | fīāmus | ĕdāmus or ĕdīmus | fĕrāmus | fĕrāmur |
| īrem | fĭĕrem | ĕdĕrem or essem | ferrem | ferrer |
| ī | fī | ĕde or ēs | fĕr | ferre |
| īte | fīte | ĕdīte or este | ferte | fĕrīmĭni |
| īto | | ĕdīto or esto | ferto | fertor |
| ītōte | | ĕdītōte or estōte | fertōte | |
| ĕunto | | ĕdunto | fĕrunto | fĕruntor |
| | | | | |
| īre | fĭĕri | ĕdĕre or esse | ferre | ferri |
| ītūrus esse | factum īri | ēsūrus esse | lātūrus esse | lātum iri |
| | | | | |
| ĭens | | ĕdens | fĕrens | |
| G. ĕuntis | | | | |
| | | ēsūrus | lātūrus | |
| | factus | | | lātus |
| ĕundum | făcĭendum | ĕdendum | fĕrendum | |
| -eundus (in comp.) | făcĭendus | ĕdendus | fĕrendus | |

265 **Ambio** is the only compound of **eo**, which is inflected regularly like a verb with **ĭ** stem.

**Futurus sim, fore, futurus esse**, are frequently used for parts of **fio**.

**Fierem, fieri**, in Plautus and Terence often have the stem **ī** long.

Of the compounds with prepositions the following forms occur: **confit, confieret, confierent, confieri; defit, defiet, defiat, defieri; ecfieri; infit; interfiat, interfieri; superfit, superfiat, superfieri.**

In the passive we find **estur** for **editur** (3 pres. ind.), and **essētur** (once in Varr.) for **ĕdērētur** (3 pers. imperf. subj.). The contracted forms are also found from **comĕdo**, and some (**exest, exesse, exesset**) from **exĕdo**.

266 **Quĕo, nĕquĕo**, resemble **eo**, but have no imperative, participle, or gerund. Only the present indic. and subj. are at all frequent. **Quis** and **quit** (pres. act.) are only used after **non**, as **non quis, nonquit** (for **nequis**, &c.). There are a few instances in early writers of passive forms, **quītus sum, quītur, queatur; nequita est, nequītur. Queatur** once in Lucr. But they are used only with a pass. infin. (e.g. **nequītur comprimi**).

# CHAPTER XVI.

## INFLEXIONS OF PERSON, NUMBER AND VOICE.

267 THE suffixes, which denote person and number in the active voice, are the same in all tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except in some persons of the perfect, and in the first person singular of the present and completed future of the indicative mood.

In the passive voice the inflexions for this purpose are the same in all those tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, which are expressed by simple forms. (The tenses denoting completed action are expressed by compound forms, e.g. **amatus sum**.)

These suffixes are as follows, the initial vowel being given in the oldest form in which, apart from early inscriptions, it appears in any verbs.

| | | Active. | Passive. | Perfect Active. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Singular. | 1st person | **-om** | **-or** | **-ī** |
| | 2nd ,, | **-ĭs** | **-ĕr-ĭs** | **-istī** |
| | 3rd ,, | **-ĭt** | **-ĭt-ŭr** | **-ĭt** |
| Plural. | 1st ,, | **-ŭm-us** | **-ĭm-ŭr** | **-ĭm-ŭs** |
| | 2nd ,, | **-ĭt-ĭs** | **-ĭmĭnĭ** | **-ist-ĭs** |
| | 3rd ,, | **-ont** | **-ont-ŭr** | **-erunt** |

The short initial vowel of the suffix (**ŏ, ŭ, ĕ, ĭ**) is absorbed by an immediately preceding **a, e**, or **ī**;

except (1) in the 1st pers. sing., if the **m** is not retained;

(2) in the 3rd pers. pl. present, if **-unt** (**-ont**) follow **-ī**.

In a few other verbs (**sum, do, fero, volo, edo**) some of these suffixes drop the initial vowel in the present tense.

### FIRST PERSON.

268 The **-m** in the 1st person singular and plural is the same as is seen in the oblique cases of the pronoun **me**.

*Singular.* **-m** is dropped in the singular of the present indicative of all verbs (e. g. **reg-o**);

(except two; viz. **sum** (for **ĕs-om**), *I am*, and **inqua-m**, *quoth I*;)

also in the completed future of all verbs; e.g. **amavero**;

and in the future indicative of all verbs with stems ending in **-a** or **-e**, and of some with stems ending in **-ī**; e.g. **ămābo, mŏnēbo, ībo**.

In **a-** verbs the final **a** is contracted with the initial of the suffix; e.g. **am-o** for **ama-om**; **do** for **da-om**. Other vowel verbs retain their characteristic vowel; e.g. **trīb-u-o, mŏn-e-o, aud-ī-o, căp-ĭ-o**. But three **ī** verbs change **ī** to **e**; viz. **ĕo** (stem **ī-**), **queo** (stem **quī-**), and its compound **nĕqueo**. **Inquam** has apparently a stem in **ă**, which except in 1st sing. pres. passes into **ī**.

The perfect indicative always ends in **ī**. The proper personal suffix (**m**) has dropped off altogether.

In the passive voice the only change from the active is the addition of **r**, if the **m** has dropped away, or the substitution of it for **m** if the **m** has been retained in the active; e.g. act. **ămo, ămābo**; pass. **ămor, ămābor**; but act. **amabam, amem**; pass. **amabar, amer.**

This **r** is generally considered to be a substitute for **s**, the proper passive inflexion being, as is supposed, the reflexive pronoun[1] **se.**

269 *Plural.* The vowel before **m** is weakened to **ĭ** in all verbs with stems ending in **u**, or in **ī**, or in a consonant,

except in the present indicatives of three verbs; viz. **sŭmus**, *we are*, **vŏlŭmus**, and their compounds, and the old form **quaesŭmus** (stem **quaes-**), *we pray*, where we have the older vowel **u**. **dă-mus** retains the radical **ă.**

With these exceptions the suffix is the same in all tenses of all verbs, except when the initial vowel is absorbed by a preceding **a**, **e**, or **ī.**

The final **-us** is the part of the suffix which distinguishes the plural number. Its origin is uncertain.

In the passive the final **s** is changed to **r**; e.g. **ămāmŭs, ămāmŭr.**

## Second Person.

270 The consonant contained in the suffix of the second person is **s** in the singular (changed before another vowel to **r** in the passive), and **t** in the plural. The perfect indicative has **t** in the singular also. The personal pronoun of the second person sing. in Latin (**tu**) and the Doric dialect of Greek (*τύ*) exhibits this **t**; in the Attic dialect of Greek it exhibits **s** (*σύ*).

*Singular.* In the present tense of **fĕro**, *I bear;* **vŏlo**, *I will;* **ĕdo**, *I eat;* the short vowel (**ĭ**) is omitted or absorbed; hence **fers** (for **fĕrĭs**), **vīs** (generally taken to be for **vŏlis, vĭlis, vils**), and **ēs** (for **ĕdĭs, eds**). **es** (**ēs** Plautus and Terence, **ĕs** in subsequent poets) is also the 2nd pers. sing. present indicative of **sum**, *I am.*

All **a-**, **e-**, and **ī-** verbs have the final syllable long; viz. **ās, ēs, īs.** Not so the verbs with **ĭ**; e.g. **capio, capĭs.**

In the perfect indicative the suffix for the second pers. sing. ends in **-isti**, of which ending **-ti** is the proper personal suffix.

In the passive **-ĕris** (at first sight) appears to be formed by placing the characteristic passive **r** before the personal suffix; the true theory however is no doubt that the passive suffix, with a short preceding vowel, being placed after the personal suffix caused the **s** between two vowels to change to **r**, necessitating also the change of the vowel **i** to **e** before **r.** Thus **rĕgĕrĭs** is for **rĕg-ĭs-is.** The passive suffix itself (i.e. **s** for **se**, § 268) was allowed to remain **s**, instead of being changed to **r**, as usually, in order to avoid having two **r**'s close together.

271 **-re** (e.g. **amabare**) is more common than **-ris** (e.g. **amabaris**) in Plautus, and, except in present tense, in Cicero and Vergil. It is frequent in Horace, rare in Livy; and is usually avoided by all writers where the

[1] A passive formed by a reflexive pronoun is seen in Germ. *Das versteht sich von selbst;* French *Le corps se trouva;* Ital. *Si loda l'uomo modesto* ('The modest man is praised'); Span. *Las aguas se secaron* ('The waters were dried up'). Key, *Lat. Gr.* § 379.

form would then be the same as the present infinitive active. Hence **-ris** is retained in pres. indic. (with rare exceptions) in verbs which have an active voice; but in deponents (where there is no risk of confusion, as the infinitive ends in **i**) **-re** is frequent in Plautus, sometimes found in Cicero; **-ris** is usual in Vergil and Horace.

272 *Plural.* The plural suffix **-ītĭs** contains the personal pronoun of the second person (**t**), and the syllable **-ĭs**, which is either a pronoun of the second person in its other form, or a suffix of plurality.

In the present tense of the four verbs named above (§ 270) the initial **i** of the suffix is again omitted: **fertis** for **fĕrītis**, **voltis** or **vultis** for **vŏlītis**, **estis** for **ēdītis** (§ 264), *ye eat*, and for (originally) **ĕsĭtis**, *ye are*. So also in **dă-tis**.

In the perfect **s** is simply suffixed to the singular form.

In the passive voice the suffix **-ĭmĭni** is probably a masculine plural participial form. The Greek present passive participle is of the same form; viz. **-ŏmĕnŏs**, plur. **ŏmĕnoi**. Originally, perhaps, **estis** was used with it, as it is used with a past participle to form the perfect passive.

### THIRD PERSON.

273 The **-t** in the suffix of the 3rd person, both singular and plural in all tenses, is a demonstrative pronoun, found in the Greek (so-called) article, and in **iste**, **tot**, **talis**, **tantus**, &c.

*Singular.* In the present tense of **sum**, **ēdo**, **fĕro**, **vŏlo**, the short vowel before **-t** is not found; viz. **est** (both from **sum** and from **ēdo**), **fert**, **volt**, or (later) **vult**.

The third person sing. active of **a-**, **e-**, and **i-** verbs was originally long, as may be inferred from the passive voice (**amāt-ur**, **monēt-ur**, **audīt-ur**), and is actually found long not unfrequently in Plautus, and sometimes in Augustan poets.

In the perfect active the suffix is the same as in the present (**-ĭt**). Plautus sometimes, and more rarely Augustan poets, have this **-it** long.

To form the passive, **-ur** is suffixed to the active form.

274 *Plural.* The plural suffix is usually **-unt**, but in prae-Augustan inscriptions, in Plautus, and Varro, the older **-ont** was retained after **v** (or **u**); e.g. **vivont**, **confluont**, **loquontur**. Of this suffix the **t** is probably the same as in the singular; the origin of the **n** is uncertain.

The passive is formed (as in the singular) by suffixing **-ur** to the active form.

The perfect suffix is the same as the present, the ending being **er-unt**, of which the **-er** is the same as the **-is** (before **t**) of the second person. The penult (**-er**) is usually long (e.g. **rexērunt**, **amavērunt**), but the dactylic poets, beginning with Lucretius (not Ennius) often, and others occasionally, shorten it; e.g. **dormiĕrunt**, **locāvĕrunt**, **subēgĕrunt**, &c. (Plaut.), **ēmĕrunt** (Ter.); **dedĕrunt**. **fuĕrunt**, **exiĕrunt**, &c. (Lucr.).

**-ēre** (for **-ērunt**) is not uncommon in Plautus and Terence, rare in Cicero and Caesar, but frequent in dactylic poets and Livy.

In the Completed future indic. the suffix-vowel is **i** instead of **u** (**-ĕrint** for **-ĕrunt**); probably in order to avoid confusion with the perfect.

# CHAPTER XVII.

## INFLEXIONS OF MOOD.

### 1. *Indicative Mood.*

275 THE indicative mood contains no special inflexions to distinguish it. The imperative and subjunctive moods are distinguished from it by certain modifications.

### 2. *Imperative Mood.*

(*a*) *Present.* The imperative present appears to consist of shortened forms of the indicative present. The final **s** is thrown off, and **-ĭ** is changed to **ĕ** (or rather, as the form probably originally ended in **-es**, the **s** is simply thrown off; cf. § 19). Hence the active **rĕgĭs** becomes **rĕgĕ**; **rĕgĭtĭs**, **regĭtĕ**; the passive **rĕgĕrĭs**, **rĕgĕrĕ**; the 2nd pers. plural **rĕgĭmĭnī** is the same as in the indicative. But from verbs with vowel stems in **a-**, **e-**, **ī-** (not **ĭ-**) the **s** is thrown off in the singular without further change; e.g. **amā**, **monē**, **audī**. The exceptional form **nolī** is formed from the 2nd pers. sing. of the *subjunctive* present.

276 In the verbs **dūco**, **fĕro** (and their compounds), **făcio** (with compounds which retain the radical **a**), and **dīco**, the final **e** of the singular was always dropped after Terence's time; e.g. **dūc**, **fĕr**, **făc**, **călefac**, **dīc**. In Plautus and other poets the imperatives often occur before words beginning with a vowel, in which case it is difficult to decide whether the text should be **duc** or **duce**; &c.

**ēs** or **ĕs** (from **sum**, cf. § 270), **ēs** from **ĕdo** were used for the imperative 2nd pers. sing. as well as for the indicative.

In verbs which have short penult, and vowel stems in **a**, **e**, **i**, and also in the compounds of **eo**, the imperative-forms in Plautus and Terence often shortened the final vowel; e.g. **commŏdă**, **mŏnĕ**, **jŭbĕ**, **ădī**, **ăbī**; especially in colloquial forms; e.g. **mănĕdum**, **tăcĕdum**, **mŏnĕsis**, **vīdĕsis**.

277 (*b*) *Future.* The future imperative active is distinguished by a suffix, originally **-ōd**. In the form which is common to the second and third persons, e.g. **reg-ĭt-ō**, and the form for the third person plural, e.g. **regunto**, the **-d** has fallen off, as in the ablative case of nouns (cf. § 19).

The suffix appears to have been simply added to the present indicative forms of the third person singular and plural. (The use of this form for the second person singular was probably due to **-t** being a characteristic of the second personal pronoun.) The plural second person is formed by appending **-e** (for **-es**, later **-is**) as the sign of plurality in this person to a modified form of the singular; e.g. **rĕg-ĭt-ōt-e** (for **rĕg-ĭt-ōd-e**).

The passive forms substitute **-r** for the final **-d**; e.g. **rĕgĭt-or** for **rĕgĭt-od**; **rĕgunt-or** for **rĕgunt-od**.

273 In Plautus, Cato, and old inscriptions, a form in **-mĭno** is (rarely) found for the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. of the imperative of deponents; e.g. **profitēmĭno**, **praefā-mĭno**, **progredī-mĭno**, **fru-ĭ-mĭno**. One instance of a passive verb **denuntiamino** is found. This old form is of the same origin as the 2nd pers. plur. indicative in **-mĭnī**.

### 3. *Subjunctive Mood.*

279 The subjunctive is characterised by a lengthened vowel immediately before the consonant of the personal suffix.

*Present.* This vowel is **ā** in the present tense of all verbs, except verbs with **ā-** stems, in which it is **ē**; e.g. **reg-ā-mus, regāmur; moneāmus, moneāmur; audiāmus, audiāmur; tribuāmus, tribuāmur**; but **amēmus, amēmur.**

Except also some in which it is **ī**; viz. **sim, sīs**, &c. from **sum**; **velim, velis**, &c. from **vŏlo**; and the compounds of both; e.g. **possim, absim**, &c., **nolim, malim.**

280 So also (besides the more usual forms) **ĕdim, edīs, edit, edīmus, edītis, edint** (Plaut. esp. in phrase **habeo quod edim,** Cat., Hor.); **cŏmĕdim, comedis, comedint** (Plaut.), **exedint** (Plaut.).

Also from **duo** (an old form of **do**?[1]), **duim, duis, duit, duint** (Plaut., Ter., and old law language); **interduim** (Plaut.); **perduim, perduis, perduit, perduint** (Plaut., Ter., chiefly in phrase **Di te perduint,** which is also used by Cicero); **creduis, creduit** (Plaut., who has also forms from this verb with the more regular **ā**; e.g. **duas, creduas, creduant, accreduas.** Cf. **fuat,** § 260).

**Sum** and its compounds had an older form **siem, sies** (see § 260), from which **sim, sis**, &c. are contracted. The **-es, -et** is perhaps only the older form of the personal suffix **-īs, -īt.** But more probably it corresponds to the long final syllable in Gr. *εἴην*, Sansk. *syâm.*

281 *Imperfect and Pluperfect.* The long vowel in these tenses is **ē** in all verbs; e.g. **rexissēmus, amavissēmus**, &c.

*Perfect.* The vowel (assumed to have been originally long) is **ī**, which however, probably from confusion with the completed future, is in dactylic poets as often short as long. The pertinent instances are as follows:

Perf. subj. **-ĕrī-: dederītis** (Enn.); **fuerīs** (Hor. in hexam.); **respuerīs** (Tib.); **dederīs, crediderīs, contulerīs** (Ovid).

**-ĕrĭ-: ēgerĭmus, respexerīs** (Verg.), **dixerīs** (Hor. in hexam.).

Comp. fut. ind. **-ĕrī-: dederītis, transierītis, contigerītis** (Ovid), **fecerīmus** (Catull. in a hendecasyllable), **dederīs, occiderīs, miscuerīs, audierīs** (Hor. in hexam.), **dederīs** (Prop., Ov. several times).

**-ĕrĭ-: viderĭmus** (Lucr.); **viderītis, dixerītis** (Ovid); **suspexerīs, revocaverīs** (Verg.); **vitaverīs, detorserīs, acceperīs, coeperīs** (Hor. in hexam.).

In Plautus and Terence there appears to be no instance incompatible with the rule of **ĭ** for perf. subj., **ī** for compl. fut. indic.

282 The forms for the subjunctive appear best explicable by assuming the proper suffix to be **ĭ** (seen in the Greek optative), which was contracted with a preceding **ā** to **ē**. Thus **amas, ama-ī-s, amēs; amāra-s** (an assumed indicative, see below, § 285), **amāra-i-s, amarēs; amāvissa-s** (an assumed indic.), **amāvissa-i-s, amāvissēs** (or **esses** for **esa-i-s** may be supposed to

[1] The forms **interduo,** Plaut. *Capt.* 694, **concreduo,** Id. *Aul.* 577, are used apparently as completed futures ind.

have been suffixed at once). But as **ī** suffixed to the present indicative of vowel verbs other than those with **a** stems would have given still the same form when contracted, an **ā** (seen in the Greek subjunctive) was substituted in all such cases. The consonant verbs eventually followed this analogy, the forms in **i** (see § 280) being either sporadically used or (if originally usual) only sporadically retained. **Sis** and **velis**, &c. retain the **ī**, because they have other points of difference from the indicative.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### TENSES FORMED FROM THE PRESENT STEM.

283 *Present.* The present indicative is formed simply by suffixing the inflexions of number and person. The present subjunctive has a mood inflexion in addition.

*Future.* The future indicative is in consonant, in **i-** verbs, and in **u-** verbs a modified form of the present subjunctive. The first person singular is the same: the other persons have long **ē** where the present subjunctive has **ā**; e.g. fut. **regēs, regēmus**, &c.; pres. subj. **regās, regāmus**, &c. In the 3rd pers. sing. act. the final syllable was short in the ordinary language.

This **ē** probably arises from suffixing **ī** (compare the Greek optative) to the present subjunctive of these verbs; e.g. **reg-ā-mus, reg-ā-ī-mus, regē-mus**; just as **amēmus**, pres. subj. was formed (§ 282). But this formation would not do for **a-** and **e-** verbs; because in **a-** verbs such a form (e.g. **amēmus**) is already used for the pres. subj.; and in **e-** verbs, it (e.g. **monēmus**) would be identical with the present indicative. Accordingly

284 In **a-** and **e-** verbs there is a different mode of forming the future indicative; viz. by suffixing **ĭb-** to the present stem, with the final vowel of which it is contracted; e.g. **ama-, ama-ĭb-, amāb-**; 1st pers. plu. **amab-imus, mon-e-, mone-ĭb-, monēb-**; 1st pers. plur. **monēbimus.**

A similar future (besides the ordinary form in **-am, -es, -et**), is not unfrequently formed from **ī-** stems in early writers (Plautus, Terence, &c.); e.g. **aperībo, adgredībor** (comp. **adgredīri** for **adgredi**), **largībere, opperībor, scībo**, &c. But of these forms none are found so late as the first century B.C., except **ībo, quībo, nequībo**, which are the only forms in use at any time. **Lenibo** is also found in Propertius.

The verb **do** has a short penultimate **dăbo.**

The verb **sum** and compounds have apparently merely a different form of the present for the future; viz. **ĕr-o** (for **esom**), 1st pers. plur. **ĕr-ĭmus** (compare pres. **sŭmus** for **ĕs-ŭm-us**). Most philologers however consider **ero**, &c. to be for **esio**, the **i** being similar to that of the present subj.

285 *Imperfect.* The imperfect indicative has in all stems a long **a** preceding the personal inflexions. Thus **ĕs-** with **ā** suffixed becomes **ĕsā-** which with the personal **m** and the usual change of **s** to **r** becomes **ĕrām**, *I was*. In all stems except **ĕs-**, **b** is prefixed to this long **a**. Moreover in all stems but **dă-** the vowel preceding **bā** is long.

The long **a**, which is always found, serves to distinguish the imperfect from the future where the forms are otherwise similar; e.g. **amābāmus** (for **amabaimus**), **amabĭmus**; **monebāmus**, **monebĭmus**; **ībāmus**, **ībĭmus**; **dăbāmus**, **dăbĭmus**; **ĕrāmus**, **ĕrĭmus**. It is apparently a sign of past time, and as such is found in the pluperfect also.

In consonant stems the suffix is **-ēbā-**, and this is usually found also in verbs with **ĭ** stems; e.g. **reg-ēbā-mus**, **audi-ēbā-mus**. But this long **e** is not found in **eo**, **queo**, and their compounds, and is not unfrequently absent in the earlier language (Plautus, Ter., Varr., &c.); e.g. **scībam**, **nescībam**, **āībam**, &c., **gestībat**, **grundībat**, **insanībat**, **mollībat**, **praesagībat**, **servības**, **stabilībat**, **venībat**. So also, apparently for metrical reasons, in the dactylic poets; e.g. **audībant**, **lenībat**, **saevībat**, **redimībat**, **molībar**, **ferībant**, &c.

Probably the suffix was originally the same as the future suffix of **a-** and **e-** verbs with **ā** added, i.e. **-īb-a-**. The form **-ēbā**, seen in consonant and most **ĭ-** verbs, is difficult to explain. It is generally supposed to have been borrowed under a misapprehension from the **e-** stems.

286 *Imperfect subjunctive.* This tense had the suffix **-ĕr** (for **ĕs**), which with the modal suffix **ē** made **-ĕrē**. The first vowel coalesced with a preceding **a**, **e**, or **ī**; e.g. **reg-ĕr-ēmus**, **tribu-ĕr-ēmus**, **am-ār-ēmus** (for **amā-ĕr-ēmus**), **mon-ēr-ēm-us**, **aud-īr-ēmus** and caused the omission of a preceding **ĭ**; e.g. **capĭ-**, **capĕrem**.

In **ĕdo**, **vŏlo**, **fĕro**, and their compounds, the vowel **ĕ** was dropped out; e.g. 1st pers. plur. **es-sem-us** (for **ĕd-ĕs-ēmus**); **vel-lēm-us** (for **vŏl-ĕr-em-us**); **fer-rem-us** (for **fĕr-ĕr-ēm-us**). **Do** has **dărēmus**. **Sum** (as well as **ĕdo**) has **essēmus**.

**essem** (from **sum**) is formed from the imperfect indicative with the subjunctival suffix **ĭ** (§ 282). Thus **ĕsā-ĭ-m** becomes **esēm**, the first syllable being lengthened by a double **s** as a compensatory result of the contraction. The imperfect of **sum** in a somewhat different form appears to have been used to form the imperfect of regular verbs, e.g. **reg-** with the imperfect indic. of **sum**, is **reg-eram** : hence **reg-era-ĭ-m**, **regerem**.

The *imperative* tense suffixes have been already discussed (§§ 275, 276).

287 The *present infinitive active* has the suffix **-ĕrĕ** (for **-ĕsĕ**, § 28) in which the first **e** coalesces with a preceding **ā**, **e**, or **ī**; e.g. **reg-ĕre**, **tribu-ĕre**; **amāre**, **mon-ēre**, **aud-īre**. **Căpĕre** is formed analogously to **căpĕrem**, § 286.

In **sum**, **ĕdo**, **vŏlo**, **fĕro**, and their compounds, the first vowel **e** was dropped out, as in the imperfect subj. Hence the infinitives are **esse** (for **esese** and for **edese**), **velle** (for **vŏlere**), **ferre** (for **ferere**).

The infinitive is generally considered to be the dative or locative case of a verbal noun with stem ending in **s-** or **si-**; e.g. **dicer-e** for **daikas-ai**, **viver-e** compared with Sanskrit **jīvas-ai**. The final **e** (= **ai**) would be originally long.

283 The *present infinitive passive* has the suffix **ī** appended to the stem in verbs, whose stem ends in a consonant or in **ĭ** or in **u**; e.g. **reg-ī**, **tribu-ī**, **cap-ī** (but **fieri** from stem **fī-**; **ferrī** from **fĕr-**). In other vowel verbs **ī** takes the place of the final **e** of the active infinitive; e.g. **aud-īr-ī**, **mon-ēr-ī**, **am-ār-ī**. So also **dă-rī** from **do**.

A further suffix **-ĕr** is found appended to these forms (e.g. **figier**, **amārier**, &c.), frequently in Plautus, Terence, Lucretius, Cicero (in poetry), and not uncommonly in Vergil and Horace, only occasionally in later poets. But the shorter form is more common even in the first-named poets.

The forms in **-ier** are possibly the original forms, but their origin and development are uncertain.

289 *Present Participle.* The suffix is **-ĕnti**, nom. sing. **-ens**; e.g. **reg-ens**, **tribu-ens**, **audi-ens**. But in the verb **eo** and its compounds, an older form of the suffix, viz. **-unti**, is retained; the nom. sing. is however usually **-iens**.

In **-a** and **-e** verbs the suffix coalesces with the final stem vowel; e.g. **amans**, **monens** (for **amā-ens**, **mone-ens**).

290 *Gerund and Gerundive.* The suffix is **-endo-**, which as a substantive is called a *gerund*, as an adjective, *gerundive;* e.g. **regendum**, **tribuendum**, **audiendum**; **amandum**, **monendum**.

An older form in **-undo** is common in Plautus, Terence, and Sallust; and after **ĭ**, and in the words **gerundus** and **ferundus**, frequently in the MSS. of Caesar, Cicero and Livy. **īre**, *go* and its compounds always have this form; e.g. **eundum**, **adeundus**, &c. Some law phrases also always (or at least usually), retained the form; e.g. **rerum repetundarum**; **familiae erciscundae**, **finibus regundis**, **in jure dicundo**. But after **u** or **v** the suffix is found only in the form **-endo**.

### *Old Futures in* **-so**, **-sim**.

291 In the older language, of Plautus and ancient laws and formularies, a future indicative in **-so** (**-sso**), subjunctive in **-sim** (**-ssim**), infinitive in **-sĕre** (**-ssĕre**), and pass. indic. in **-sĭtur** (**-ssĭtur**) is found. Instances of the indicative and subjunctive active of this formation are very frequent. (In some instances it is not clear to which mood the word belongs.) As examples may be given

1. From verbs *with* **-a** *stems:* **amasso** (ind.), **amassis**, **amassint** (subj.), **appellassis** (subj.), **celassis** (subj.), **coenassit** (ind.).

Passive: **turbassitur** (ap. Cic.).

Infin. Act.: **reconciliassere**, **impetrassere** (four times), **oppugnassere** (Plaut.).

2. From verbs *with* **-e** *stems*, preserving the vowel: **habessit** (subj.), **prohibessis**, **prohibessit** (subj.), **prohibessit**, **prohibessint** (ind.), **cohibessit** (subj.), **licessit** (subj.).

3. In verbs *with consonant* or **-i** *stems*, and *some with* **-e** *stems*, the **-so, -sim** is attached immediately to the final stem consonant:

(*a*) **-e** *stems:* **ausim** (subj.), **noxit** (subj.), **sponsis** (subj.), **auxitis** (subj.), **jusso, jussis, jussit** (ind.), **jussim** (subj.).
Also passive **jussitur** (Cat.).

(*b*) **-i** *stems:* **faxo** (ind.), **faxis, faxit** (ind. subj.), **faxim, faximus** (subj.), **faxitis** (ind. subj.) frequently, **faxint** (subj.), **effexis, defexis** (ind.), **capsis** (ind.), **capsit** (subj.), **capsimus** (ind.); &c.
Passive: **faxitur** (ap. Liv.).

(*c*) *Consonant stems:* **axim, adaxint** (subj.), **clepsit** (ind.); **occisit** (ind.); **dixis** (subj.), **induxis, adduxit** (subj.); &c.

Of all these forms **faxo, faxis, ausim, ausis**, almost alone are found after the time of Terence, who himself has only **excessis, appellassis** besides. But the following other instances occur: **cohibessit** (Lucr.); the phrase, **di faxint** (Cic.); **recepso** (Catull.); a few infinitives in Lucil.; **jusso** (Verg., Sil.). Other instances are found in laws and other antique documents and formulae in Livy and Cicero, but these do not of course belong to the age of their (real or feigned) recorders.

292 These forms are apparently to be explained as a future indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, formed by **s**, as in the Greek future, being suffixed to the stem, a short **i** or sometimes **e** of the stem being omitted; e.g. **leva-, levaso; prohibe-, prohibeso; sponde-, spond-so, sponso; faci, fac-so; dic-, dixo.** The double **s** in the forms from **a-** and (a few) **e-** verbs is either a mode of marking the place of the accent, or due to a mistaken etymology, as if the form were analogous to **amasse** from **amavisse**, &c. Possibly both causes may have combined. Moreover a single **s** between two vowels, except in compounds where the simple word began with **s**, was in the prae-Augustan language rare (cf. § 28). The subjunctive is formed by the regular suffix **i**; the infinitive by **-ĕre**, as in the present infinitive.

(The ordinary explanation of these forms, viz. that e.g. **levasso** is for **leva-ve-so** (=**levavero**), has much in its favour; but it meets with great difficulties in such forms as **cap-so, rap-so, prohibesso**, &c.; and it does not really account for the double **s**. For **levaveso** would become **leva-eso, levaso, levāro**; or if it became **levav-so**, as is assumed, it would be contracted into **levauso** or **levuso** (**levauro, levuro**) not **levasso.** Comp. §§ 43, 47.)

293 The use of these forms is analogous to that of the forms in **-ero, -erim**, but is confined to those classes of sentences in which those forms differ least from a future indicative, or present subjunctive; viz. (1) the indicative in the protasis (not the apodosis) of a sentence; (except **faxo**, which might be either a simple or completed future): (2) the subjunctive in modest affirmations, wishes, prohibitions, purpose, and in dependent sentences for the future, never for the perfect indicative (as the form in **-erim** frequently is). In all these classes the English language ordinarily uses an incomplete tense (present or future). The infinitives in **-sere** might be taken as either simple or completed futures.

# CHAPTER XIX.

## OF VERB STEMS, especially THE PRESENT STEM.

294 A VERB often exhibits a different stem in the present tense from that which appears to be presumed in the perfect or in the supine.

Verbs may be divided into consonant verbs and vowel verbs according as the present stem ends in a consonant or in a vowel.

(In the following enumeration the different instances will be classified according to the last letter of the verb stem; and sometimes the perfect and supine added in illustration.)

### i. Consonant verbs.

295 Most consonant verbs exhibit in the present stem no alteration of the regular stem of the verb; e.g. **rĕg-, rĕg-ĕre; caed-, caed-ĕre,** &c.

Other consonant verbs exhibit such alteration; e.g.

1. The stem is *reduplicated* to form the present tense; e.g.

**gĕn-** (**gĕn-ĕre** old form), **gignĕre** for **gĭ-gĕnĕre (gĕn-ui, gĕn-ĭtum);**
**stă-, sistĕre (stĕti, stātum);**
**să-, sĕrĕre** for **sĕsĕre (sēvi, sātum).**

2. The radical *vowel* is *lengthened;* e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **dŭc-, dūcĕre;** | **dĭc-, dīcĕre** (cf. **dĭc-āre, causĭdĭc-us**); |
| **fĭd-, fīdĕre;** | **nŭb-, nūbere** (cf. **pronŭbus**). |

3. **n** is *suffixed* to the stem of the verb; e.g.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **tem-, tem-n-ĕre;** | **cer-, cer-n-ĕre;** | **sper-, sper-n-ĕre;** |
| **ster-, ster-n-ere;** | **lĭ-, lĭ-n-ĕre;** | **sĭ-, sĭ-n-ĕre.** |

4. A nasal is *inserted before* the final stem consonant.

(*a*) Labial stems:

| | |
|---|---|
| **cŭb-, cu-m-bĕre;** | **rŭp-, ru-m-pĕre;** |

(*b*) Guttural stems:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **lĭqv-, li-n-qvĕre;** | **vĭc-, vi-n-cĕre;** | **nac-, na-n-cisci;** |
| **frăg-, fra-n-gĕre;** | **păg-, pa-n-gĕre;** | **pŭg-, pu-n-gĕre;** |
| **tăg-, ta-n-gĕre.** | | |

In some verbs the nasal is retained in the perfect and dropped in the supine stem:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **fĭg-, fĭn-gĕre;** | **pĭg-, pi-n-gĕre;** | **strĭg-, stri-n-gĕre.** |

In other verbs the nasal is constant in the verb stem; e.g.

**jŭg-** (cf. **jŭg-um**), **ju-n-gĕre (junxi, junctum).**

(*c*) Dental stems:

| | |
|---|---|
| **fĭd-, fi-n-dĕre;** | **scĭd-, sci-n-dĕre;** |
| **fŭd-, fu-n-dĕre;** | **tŭd-, tu-n-dĕre.** |

296 5. **sc** or **isc** is suffixed to verbal stems, especially to vowel stems in **e**, and gives often the special meaning of *beginning* or *becoming*. This *inchoative* form sometimes exists alone, sometimes is used besides the ordinary stem, sometimes is found in a compound, but not in the simple verb. The perfect and supine, if any, are the same as those of the ordinary stem (real or assumed). A very few stems carry the suffix **-sc** throughout all the tenses.

**sc** is suffixed:—

(*a*) To consonant stems; e.g.

**al-** (**alĕre**), **ale-sc-ĕre**: **dīc-, di-sc-ere** (for **dic-sc-ĕre**);
**păc-, păc-isc-i**; **trĕm-** (**trĕmĕre**), **contrĕm-isc-ĕre**;
**perg-** (**pergĕre**), **experg-isc-i**; **vigv-** (**vīvĕre**), **reviv-isc-ĕre.**

(*b*) To vowel stems; e.g.

A. **īrā-, ira-sc-i**; **lābā-** (**labāre**), **lăba-sc-ĕre**;
**nā-, na-sc-i**; **vĕtĕrā-** (**invetĕrāre** trans.), **vĕtĕra-sc-ĕre** intrans.

O. **no-, no-sc-ĕre**;

E. **crē-, cre-sc-ĕre**; **quiē-, quie-sc-ĕre**; **suē-, sue-sc-ĕre**;
**arde-** (**ardēre**), **arde-sc-ĕre**;
**auge-**, **augēre** (trans.), **auge-sc-ĕre** (intrans.).
**haere-** (**haerēre**), **haere-sc-ĕre**;
**splende-** (**splendēre**), **splende-sc-ĕre**, &c.;
**ăce-** (**ăcēre**), **ace-sc-ĕre** and many others from **e** stems, with perf. in **-ui.**

I. **dormī-** (**dormīre**), **ob-dormi-sc-ĕre**;
**oblīv-, obliv-isc-i**; **scī-, sci-sc-ĕre**;
**ăpī-, ăpi-sc-i**; **cŭpī-** (**cupĕre**), **concupi-sc-ĕre**;
**făcī-** (**facĕre**), **profĭci-sc-i**; **hi-** (comp. **hiāre**), **hi-sc-ĕre**;
**săpī-** (**sapĕre**), **resīpi-sc-ĕre**, &c.

297 6. The guttural is omitted in some stems which probably ended in **gv-** (i.e. **g** with a slight labial action after it; cf. § 17), e.g.

**flugv-, flu-ĕre**; **frugv-, frui**;
**strugv-, stru-ĕre**; **vigv-, vīv-ĕre**;

also the vowel stem **conigv-, conīvēre.**

Other stems vary between **gv** and **g**; e.g.

**stingvĕre, stingĕre**; **tingvĕre, tingĕre**; **ungvĕre, ungĕre**; **ningvit, ningit** (comp. **nix, nĭv-is**), and the vowel stems **urgvēre, urgēre.**

7. **s** is changed between vowels to **r**; e.g.

**gĕs-, gĕrĕre** (**gessi, gestum**); **quaes-, quaerĕre** (comp. **quaeso, quaesīvi**, &c.)
**quĕs-, quĕri** (**ques-tus**); **ūs-, ūrĕre** (**ussi, ustum**).

Also the vowel stem **hausi-, haurīre** (**hausi, haus-tum**).

8. A few verbs have **ll** in present stem, but not in other parts (cf. § 41).

**col-, percellĕre** (**per-cŭl-i, per-cul-sum**);
**pol-, pellĕre** (**pe-pŭl-i, pul-sum**); **tol-, tollĕre** (**tŭl-i**);
**vellĕre** retains **ll** in perfect **velli**, but supine **vul-sum.**

## ii. Vowel verbs.

298 *Verbs with stems ending in* **a**:

(*a*) Most of these verbs have the stem ending in **ā-**, and preserve it in all tenses; e.g.

**Flā-, flāre (flāvi, flātum)**; **fā-, fārī (fātus)**; in which **a** is radical.

In **nā-, nāre (nāvi, nātum)**, the **ā** is constant, but the derivative **nāto** shows that **ă** is radical.

In **strā-** (cf. § 31 *d*), **ster-n-ĕre (strāvi, strātum)**;
**tlā-, toll-ĕre (tĕtŭli, lātum** for **tlātum)**; the present-stem is consonantal.

Derivative verbs with **a-** stems are very numerous; e.g. **amā-, āmāre**; **creā-, creāre**; **nuntiā-, nuntiāre**; **lĕva-, levāre**, &c.; all have perfects in **-āvi, ātum**.

299 (*b*) *Verbs with stems ending in* **ă-**; e.g.

**dă-, dăre (dĕdi, dătum)**, but **das** has **ā**.

In all other verbs which may be considered to have a stem ending in **ă-**, the final **a-** combines with the initial vowel of the suffixes in tenses formed from the present stem, so as to exhibit **ā**; e.g.

**Stă-, stāre (stĕti, stătum**, but sometimes **stātum)** where **ă** is radical,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **crĕpă-, crĕpāre**; | **ēnĕcă-, ēnĕcāre**, but | **secă-, sĕcāre**; |
| **cŭbă-, cŭbāre**; | **nĕcā-** usually in sim- | **sŏnă-, sonāre** (also |
| **dŏmă-, dŏmāre**; | ple verb; | **soněre**); |
| **frĭcă-, frĭcāre**; | **-plĭcă-** } **plicāre**; | **tŏnă-, tonāre**; |
| **mĭcă-, mĭcāre**; | **-plicā-** } | **vĕtă-, vetāre**; |

all which have perfects in **-ui**, and most of them usually supines in **-ĭtum**.

Also **lăvă-, lavāre** (and **lavĕre**); **jŭvă-, juvāre**;

which vocalise and contract the radical **v** with **-ui** of the perfect; and contract or omit it in the supine.

300 Of *verbs with stems ending in* **o**, the only traces are

**nō-**, which has the inchoative suffix in the present tense, **noscĕre, (nōvi, nōtum)**; the root has **ŏ**, comp. **nŏta** (subst.), **nŏtāre, cognĭtum**, &c.;

**pō-** (**pōtum**), the frequentative **potā-re** being otherwise alone in use.

301 *Verbs with stems ending in* **u**:

(*a*) Most have stems in **ū**, which however becomes short before the initial vowel of the suffixes; e.g.

**acū-, acŭere, acŭis, acŭisti, acŭas, acŭēbam, acŭĕrem**, &c.;
the supine has **ū**.

**Plu-, pluĕre** (perf. **plŭvi** and **plui**) is apparently contracted for **plŭv-** or **plŏv-**, (cf. **plŭvia**). And the same may be the case with all: comp. **fluo, flŭv-ius**.

(*b*) **ruo** has **rŭ-** in supine of compounds, but **rūta** (n. pl.) according to Varro.

**pŭ-** is found only in adj. **pŭtus** and frequentative **pŭtāre**.

(*c*) A few verbs have **u** vocal in supine, but consonantal usually in present and perfect.

| | |
|---|---|
| **loqv-, lŏqvi (locūtum)**; | **solv-, solvere (solvi, sŏlūtum)**; |
| **seqv-, sĕqvi (secūtum)**; | **volv-, volvĕre (volvi, vŏlūtum)**. |

302 *Verbs with stems ending in* **e**:

(*a*) Few verbs have the stem ending in **ē**, and these are monosyllables, where **e** is radical; e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **delē-** (compound), **delēre**; | **nē-, nēre**; |
| **flē-, flēre**; | **-plē, -plēre.** |

All these have perfect and supine in **-ēvi, -ētum.**

Other verbs with **ē** (**-ēvi, -ētum**) have consonantal present stems;

| | |
|---|---|
| **crē-, crescĕre**; also | **qviē-, qviescĕre**; |
| **crē-, cernĕre**; | **svē-, svescĕre**; |
| **ŏlē-, -olescĕre** (also **aboleo, abolēvi, abolĭtum**; and **adŏlesco, adultum**); | **sprē-, spernĕre.** |

(*b*) In most verbs with stems in **-e**, the **e** was probably short, as may be inferred from the perfect being in **-ui** (for **-eui**), and supine in **-ĭtum**, which in some verbs was reduced to **-tum.**

**mŏnĕ-, monēre (monui, monĭtum)**, and many others.

**căvĕ-, căvēre (căvi** for **căvui, căvĭtum** contracted to **cautum**), and others.

Contraction with the initial vowel of suffixes gives **ē** in most forms of the present stem; e.g. **monēre, monēs, monēmus, monēbam, monēbo, monērem, monētur (monĕt,** as **amăt, audĭt).**

(*c*) Many verbs have **e** (probably **ĕ**) in present stem, but drop it entirely and show consonantal stems in other parts of the verb.

**morde-, mordēre (momordi, morsum)**, and others.
**vĭde-, vidēre (vīdi, vīsum)**;
**sĕde-, sedēre (sēdi, sessum)**;
**prande-, prandēre (prandi, pransum)**;
**arde-, ardēre (arsi, arsum)**; and many others.

(*d*) Some have a present stem in **-e**, besides another (older or poetic) consonantal stem; e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **fervēre, fervĕre**; | **strīdēre, strīdĕre**; |
| **fulgēre, fulgĕre**; | **tergēre, tergĕre**; |
| **ŏlēre,** *emit scent*, **ŏlĕre**; | **tuēri,** in compounds **-tui**; |
| **scătēre, scătĕre**; | **cīēre,** in compounds **-cīre.** |

(Among other forms the 1st persons **fervo, fulgo, olo, scato, strido, tergo, fervīmus,** &c. appear not to occur.)

303 *Verbs with stems ending in* **i**;

(*a*) Some verbs with radical **i**, and many derivatives, have **ī**, and retain it through all the tenses;

| | |
|---|---|
| **scī-, scīre**; | **cī-, -cīre (also cīēre)**; |
| **ī-, īre**; | **qui-, quīre.** |

In these the **i** is radical.

**audī-, audīre**; **dormī-, dormīre**;

and many other derivatives.

In all these the perfect is in **-īvi**, and in the derivative verbs and **scio**, the supine is in **-ītum.** But **ītum, cītum, quĭtum.**

(*b*) Some verbs have **ī** in present stem, but drop it and show a consonantal stem in other parts; e. g.

**amīcī-, amīcīre (amīcui, amictum);**
**farcī-, farcīre (farsi, fartum);**
**fulcī-, fulcīre (fulsi, fultum);**
**hausī-, haurīre (hausi, haustum);**
**mētī-** (for **mentī-**); **mētiri (mensum);**
**sancī-, sancīre (sanxi, sanctum,** rarely **sancītum);**
**sarcī-, sarcīre (sarsi, sartum);**
**sentī-, sentīre (sensi, sensum);**
**ordī-, ordīri (orsum);**
**-pĕrī-**, e.g. **ăperīre (ăpĕrui, ăpertum);**
**rĕperīre (rĕppĕri, rĕpertum),** and other compounds;
**saepī-, saepīre (saepsi, saeptum);**
**vĕnī-, vĕnīre (vēni, ventum);**
**vincī-, vincīre (vinxi, vinctum).**
**sĕpĕli-, sepelīre** has perfect **sepelīvi,** supine **sepultum.**

**ŏri-, ŏrīri (orsum)** } show in some tenses a present stem either in **ī** or conso-
**pŏti-, pŏtiri** } nantal.

(*c*) Some verbs have the stem ending in **ĭ**, which fell away before **ī** or **ĕr**; and as final in imperative, was changed to **ĕ**. The **ĭ** is generally dropped in the supine stem.

**căpĭ-, căpĕre (cēpi, captum);**
**coepĭ-, coepĕre (coepi, coeptum);**
**făcĭ-, făcĕre (fēci, factum);**
**fŏdĭ-, fŏdĕre (fōdi, fossum);**
**fŭgĭ-, fŭgĕre (fūgi,** fut. part. **fŭgĭtūrus);**
**grădĭ-,** inf. **grădī (gressum);**
**jăcĭ-, jăcĕre (jēci, jactum);**
**-lĭcĭ-, -lĭcĕre (-lexi, -lectum);**
**mŏrĭ-,** inf. **mŏrī** (also **mŏrīrī,** fut. part. **mŏrĭturus);**
**părĭ-, părĕre (pĕpĕri, partum,** old pres. part. **părens);**
**pătĭ-,** inf. **pătī (passum);**
**quătĭ-, quătĕre (-quassi, quassum);**
**răpĭ-, răpĕre (răpui, raptum);**
**-spĭcĭ-, -spĭcĕre (-spexi, spectum);**

Two have **ĭ** in other tenses than those derived from the present;
**cŭpĭ-, cŭpĕre (cŭpīvi, cŭpītum;** in Lucr. also **cŭpīret);**
**săpĭ-, săpĕre (sapīvi,** in compound **rĕsīpui** and **rĕsīpīvi).**

(*d*) A few verbs have consonant stems in present, but **ĭ** stems in other parts;

**pĕt-, pĕtĕre (pĕtīvi, pĕtītum);**
**rŭd-, rŭdĕre (rŭdīvi);**
**quaes-, quaerĕre (quaesīvi, quaesītum);**
**arcesso, capesso, lacesso,** have inf. **-ĕre,** perf. **-īvi** (or **-ii**), sup. **-ītum;**
**trī-, tĕrĕre (trīvi, trītum).**

So **ēvĕno** is found for **ēvĕnio.**

## CHAPTER XX.

### TENSES FORMED FROM THE PERFECT STEM.

304 THE suffixes for the tenses formed from the perfect stem; i.e. for the perfect, completed future, and pluperfect in indicative, and perfect and pluperfect in subjunctive, are the same in all verbs; viz.

| | |
|---|---|
| Comp. Future **-ĕr-**; | Pluperf. Ind. **-ĕr-ā**; |
| Perf. subj. **-ĕr-ī**, | Pluperf. subj. **-iss-ē**. |

The perfect indicative has a suffix **-is** which however is not found in the third pers. sing. and the first pers. plural; in which the same personal suffixes as in the present indicative are used. This suffix **-is** in the first pers. sing. loses its **s**; in the third pers. plural, being followed by a vowel, changes to **-er**.

The perfect infinitive is formed by the suffix **is-se**. This is apparently composed of the suffix **is-** just mentioned, and **-se** for **-ĕse** as in the present infinitive.

305 The great resemblance of these suffixes to the parts of the verb **sum**, which are used to form the same tenses in the passive voice, suggests (and the suggestion has been generally adopted) that they are identical in origin.

This theory would give a complete explanation of the pluperfect and the completed future indicative, with the exception that the 3rd pers. plural of the latter has **ĕrint** instead of **ĕrunt**, perhaps in order to avoid confusion with the 3rd pers. plur. perfect indicative.

The perfect subjunctive would be explained by assuming as the suffix an older form of **sim**; viz. **-ĕsim**, or with the usual change, **-ĕrim**.

The perfect indicative and infinitive and pluperfect subjunctive seem to require the assumption of a long **I** being suffixed to the perfect stem before the respective parts of the verb **sum** were added. Thus **audivissem, audivisse** would stand for **aud-Iv-I-essem, audIv-I-esse, rexissem**, &c. for **rex-I-ssem**, &c.

In the perfect indicative the 2nd pers. sing. e.g. **audivisti** would stand for **aud-Iv-I-esti** (the personal suffix **-ti** being lost in the **es**, *thou art*), 2nd pers. plu. e.g. **audivistis** for **aud-Iv-I-estis**; 3rd pers. plur. e.g. **audiverunt** for **aud-Iv-I-ĕsunt**. The 3rd pers. sing. may have the simple personal suffixes, or may have been reduced from a fuller form; e.g. **audivi-est, audivist, audivit**. The **-It** is sometimes found long. The first person singular, e.g. **audivi**, may then be for **aud-Iv-I-esum, audIvism, audivim**. And the 1st person plural may have had a similar pedigree.

It must however be observed that the resemblance to the parts of the stem **es**, on which this theory rests, is in some degree deceptive, for it consists largely in personal and modal suffixes, which even on another hypothesis might be expected to be the same. And the rest of the suffixes is, as has been seen, in some tenses but poorly eked out by the simple stem **ĕs**.

306 The perfect stem when formed by a suffixed **v**, is frequently modified by the omission of the **v** in all tenses and persons and both numbers, except in the 1st pers. sing. and plu., and 3rd pers. sing. of the

perfect indicative. The vowels thus brought together are contracted, (excepting -iē, and sometimes -ii); e.g. ind. perf. **amāsti, amāstis, amārunt**; pluperf. **amāram**, &c.; comp. fut. **amāro**, &c.; subj. perf. **amārim**, &c.; Plup. **amāssem**, &c.; infin. **amāsse**; so **flesti, fleram**, &c.; and (though here the **v** omitted is radical) **mosti, commosti**, &c. (from **moveo**), and derived tenses.

But we have some instances of uncontracted forms; e.g. **audieram**, &c.; **audiero**, &c.; **audiisti** as well as **audisti**, &c. And such forms occur not unfrequently from **peto, eo**, and their compounds.

**Nōvero** (1st pers. sing. ind.) always retains the **v**. (But **cognōro, nōrim, nōris**, &c.). And so does the shortened form of the 3rd pers. plu. perf. ind. of verbs with **ā** stems; e.g. **amāvēre**. (The infinitive being **amāre**, the perfect, if contracted, would be liable to confusion with it.)

In **dēsĭno, pĕto, eo**, and their compounds the omission of **v** usually (in the compounds of **eo** almost always, e.g. **abii, abiisti**, &c.) takes place even in the 1st pers. sing. and plural, and third pers. sing. of the perf. indicative; e.g. **desii, desiit, desiimus**. In other verbs with **-i** stems, **-iit** is sometimes found; **-ii** hardly ever; **-iimus** never.

The contracted forms are sometimes found from the above-mentioned three verbs; **pĕtīt** (Verg., Ov.); **ĭt** (Ter., Verg., Ov., &c.); **ăbīt, pĕrīt, ădīt, ŏbīt, rĕdīt**, &c.

307 In the older poets, and occasionally in Vergil and Horace, in tenses formed from perfect stems in **-s**, an **i** between two **ss** is omitted and the sibilant written once or twice, instead of thrice; e.g. **despexe** (Plaut.) for **despexisse**; **surrexe** (Hor.) for **surrexisse**: **consumpsti** (Prop.) for **consumpsisti**; **dixti** (Plaut., and twice or thrice in Cic.) for **dixisti**; **erepsēmus** (Hor.) for **erepsissemus**; **extinxem** (Verg.) for **extinxissem**.

## CHAPTER XXI.

### FORMATION OF THE PERFECT STEM.

308 The perfect stem is formed in one of five different ways, some of which are peculiar to, or invariably found in particular classes of verbs. All are used without any distinction of meaning. Some verbs have two or even more forms of the perfect stem.

The five ways of forming the perfect stem are:

(i) Reduplication;
(ii) Lengthening the stem vowel;
(iii) Suffixing **-s**;
(iv) Suffixing either **-u** or **-v**;
(v) Using the stem of the verb without change.

In the following enumeration the present stem is added where it differs from the verbal stem. All the verbs named, whether consonant or vowel stems, are arranged under the class to which their final *consonant* belongs: except monosyllabic vowel stems, and **u** stems, which are arranged separately.

### i. Perfect stem formed by reduplication.

309 The first consonant of the stem is prefixed with a short vowel, which is **e**, if the stem vowel is **a** or **e**, and, if the stem vowel is **o**, **u** or **i**, is the same as the stem vowel. In the prae-Ciceronian language the vowel of the prefixed syllable appears to have been (always?) **e**, whatever the stem vowel might be. And Cicero and Caesar are said to have used **memordi, spepondi, pepugi.**

If the stem vowel is **a**, it is changed to **e** before two consonants, to **i** before one; **ae** is changed to **ī**. Before single **l** ĕ and ŏ become ŭ.

If the stem begins with **sp, sc, st**, the second consonant is reduplicated, and the **s** prefixed to the reduplication syllable.

*Gutturals.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| dĭc- (Pr. disc- for dic-sc-), dĭ-dĭc-i; | | parc-, pĕ-perc-i; |
| păg- (Pr. pang-; comp. păc-iscor), pĕ-pĭg-i; | | posc-, pŏ-posc-i; |
| pŭg- (Pr. pung-), pŭ-pŭg-i; | | tăg- (Pr. tang-), tĕ-tĭg-i; |

*Dentals.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| căd-, cĕ-cĭd-i; | | caed-, cĕ-cīd-i; |
| pend-, trans. / pende-, intrans. | pĕ-pend-i; | tend-, tĕ-tend-i; |
| tŭd- (Pr. tund-), tŭ-tŭd-i; | | |
| morde-, mŏ-mord-i; | sponde-, spŏ-pond-i; | tonde-, tŏ-tond-i; |

*Nasals.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| căn-, cĕ-cĭn-i; | | -mĕn-, mĕ-mĭn-i; |

*Liquids.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| fall-, fĕ-fell-i; | | pŏl- (Pr. pell-), pĕ-pŭl-i; |
| tŏl- (Pr. toll-), tĕ-tŭl-i in prae-Augustan poets; usually tŭl-i; | | |
| curr-, cŭ-curr-i; | | păr-i, pĕ-pĕr-i; |

*Vowels.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| dă-, dĕ-di; | stă- (Pr. stā-), stĕ-ti; | stĭ- (Pr. si-st), stĭ-ti; |

310 ii. Perfect stem formed by lengthening the stem vowel.

If the stem vowel be **ă**, it is changed to **ē** (except in **scăbĕre**).

*Labials.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| rŭp- (Pr. rump-), rūp-i; | | scăb-, scāb-i; |
| ĕm-, ēm-i; | | căpĭ-, cēp-i; |

*Gutturals.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| lĭqv- (Pr. linqv-), līqv-i; | | vĭc- (Pr. vinc-), vīc-i; |
| ăg-, ēg-i; | | frăg- (Pr. frang-), frēg-i; |
| lĕg-, lēg-i; | | păg- (Pr. pang-), pēg-i; |
| făcĭ-, fēc-i; | jăcĭ-, jēc-i; | fŭgĭ-, fūg-i; |

*Dentals.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ĕd-, ēd-i; | fŭd- (Pr. fund-), fūd-i; | ŏd- (Pr. obsolete), ōd-i; |
| sĕde, sēd-i, | vĭde-, vīd-i; | fŏdĭ-, fōd-i. |

*Nasals.*

vĕnĭ-, vēn-i.

*Semivowels.*

jŭva-, jūv-i; lăva- (old lăv-), lāv-i;
căve-, cāv-i; făve-, fāv-i; fŏve-, fōv-i;
mŏve-, mōv-i; păve-, pāv-i; vŏve-, vōv-i.

The lengthening of the root-vowel in the verbs which have **v** for their final consonant is probably due to the absorption of a suffixed **v** (§ 316), e.g. **cāvi** is for **cav-vi** or **căvui**. In a similar way **vīci, vīdi, vēni** may have arisen from an absorption of a reduplicated **v**; e.g. for **vĕ-vīci, vĕvīdi, vĕvĕni.**

311 iii. Perfect stem formed by suffixing **s**.

If the present stem ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the suffixed **s**. None of the verbs whose present stem ends in **a** have their perfect formed by **s** suffixed.

This suffix is supposed to be the same as that of the first aorist in Greek.

*Labials.*

P. B. carp-, carp-s-i; nūb-, nup-s-i; rēp-, rep-s-i;
scalp-, scalp-s-i; scrib-, scrip-s-i; sculp-, sculp-s-i;
serp-, serp-s-i; saepi-, saep-s-i;
jŭbe-, jussi (jou-s-i old form: probably jŭb-eo is for jŏv-eo).

**M.** A euphonic **p** is generally inserted before **s**: **m** is once assimilated.
cōm-, comp-s-i; dēm-, demp-s-i; prōm-, promp-s-i; sūm-, sump-s-i;
prĕm-, pres-si (for pren-s-i); tem- (Pr. temn-), temp-s-i.

*Gutturals.*

**lc, rc, lg, rg** drop the guttural before **s**.

C. QV. cŏqv-, cox-i; dīc (Pr. dīc-), dix-i; dŭc- (Pr. dūc-), dux-i;
parc-, par-s-i (also peperci, § 309);
lūce-, lux-i; mulce-, mul-s-i; torqve-, tor-s-i;
farcī-, far-s-i; fulcī-, ful-s-i; sanci-, sanx-i;
sarcī-, sar-s-i; vincī-, vinx-ī;
-lĭcī- (e.g. allĭcio), -lex-i; -spĭcī- (e.g. aspĭcio), -spex-i.

C. GV. cing-, cinx-i; fīg-, fix-i; fing-, finx-i;
-flīg-, flix-i; flŭgv-(Pr.flu-),flux-i; jung-, junx-i;
-lĕg- (in dīlĕg-, intellĕg-, neglĕg-), -lex-i; merg-, mer-s-i;
ēmung-, ēmunx-i; pang- (or păg-), panx-i (usually pēg-i or pĕpĭg-i);
ping-, pinx-i; plang-, planx-i; -pung-, -punx-i;
rĕg-, rex-i; sparg-, spar-s-i; stingv-, stinx-i;
string-, strinx-i; strŭgv- (Pr. stru-), strux-i; sūg-, sux-i;
tĕg-, tex-i; tingv-, tinx-i; vigv- (Pr. vīv-), vix-i;
ungv-, unx-i;
alge-, al-s-i; auge-, aux-i; frīge-, frix-i;
fulge-, ful-s-i; indulge-, indul-s-i; lūge-, lux-i;
mulge-, mul-s-i; conigve- (Pr. cōnīve-), conix-i; terge-, ter-s-i.
turge-, tur-s-i; urge-, ur-s-i;

H. trăh-, trax-i; vĕh-, vex-i.

*Dentals.*

The dental falls away before **s**, or is assimilated to it; the preceding vowel is lengthened.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| T. | flect-, flex-i; | mitt-, mī-s-i; | nect-, nex-i; |
| | pect-, pex-i; | sentī-, sēn-s-i; | quăti-, quas-si; |
| D. | cēd-, ces-s-i; | claud-, clau-s-i; | dīvīd-, dīvī-s-i; |
| | laed-, lae-s-i; | lūd-, lū-s-i; | plaud-, plaū-s-i; |
| | răd-, rā-s-i; | rōd-, rō-s-i; | trūd-, trū-s-i; |
| | văd-, vā-s-i; | | |
| | arde-, ar-s-i; | rīde-, rī-s-i; | suāde-, suā-s-i. |

*Nasals.*

mănc-, man-s-i;

*Liquids, &c.*

vell-, vul-s-i; gĕs- (Pr. gĕr-), ges-s-i; ūs- (Pr. ūr), us-s-i;
haerē-, hae-s-i; hausī- (Pr. haurī-), hausi.

312 iv. (*a*) Perfect stem formed by suffixing **u** (vowel).

*Labials.* strēp-, strep-u-i; frĕm-, frĕm-u-i; gĕm-, gĕm-u-i;
trĕm-, trĕm-u-i; vŏm-, vŏm-ŭ-i.

crĕpă-, crĕp-u-i; cŭbă-, (Pr. also cumb-), cŭb-u-i;
dŏmă-, dom-u-i; tĭmĕ-, tĭm-u-i.

hăbĕ-, hăb-u-i; lŭbĕ-, lŭb-u-it;
rŭbĕ-, (Pr. also rŭbesc-), rŭb-u-i; sĕnĕ-, (Pr. sĕnesc-), sĕn-u-i;
sorbĕ-, sorb-u-i; stŭpĕ-, (Pr. also stŭpesc-), stŭp-u-i;
tĕpĕ-, (Pr. also tĕpesc-), tĕp-u-i; torpĕ-, (Pr. also torpesc-), torp-u-i.
răpī-, răp-u-i.

313 *Gutturals.* frĭcă-, fric-u-i; mĭcă-, mĭc-u-i, (but dimicāvi);
ēnĕcă-, ēnĕc-u-i, (also ēnĕc-ā-vi); -plĭcă-, -plĭc-u-i, (also -plĭc-ā-vi);
sĕcă-, sĕc-u-i.

arcĕ-, arc-ui; dĕcĕ-, dĕc-u-i; dŏcĕ-, dŏc-u-i;
jăcĕ-, jac-u-i; lĭcĕ-, lĭc-u-it; nŏcĕ-, nŏc-u-i;
plăcĕ-, plăc-u-i; tăcĕ-, tăc-u-i.

ĕgĕ-, ĕg-u-i; pĭgĕ-, pĭg-u-it;
rĭgĕ-, (Pr. also rĭgesc-), rĭg-u-i; vĭgĕ-, (Pr. also vĭgesc-), vĭg-u-i.

314 *Dentals.* stert-, stert-u-i. vĕtă-, vĕt-u-i (once vĕt-ā-vi).
lătĕ-, (Pr. also lătesc-), lăt-u-i; nĭtĕ-, (Pr. also nĭtesc-), nĭt-u-i;
innōtĕ-, (Pr. innōtesc-), innōt-u-i; ŏportĕ-, ŏport-u-it;
paenĭtĕ-, paenĭt-u-it; pătĕ-, (Pr. also pătesc-), păt-u-i.
mădĕ-, (Pr. also mădesc-), măd-u-i; pŭdĕ-, pud-u-it;
sordĕ-, (Pr. also sordesc-), sord-u-i; obsurdĕ-, (Pr. obsurdesc-), obsurd-u-i.

315 *Nasals, Liquids,* &c.

N. gĕn-, (Pr. gign-), gĕn-u-i.
sŏnă-, sŏn-u-i; tŏnă-, tŏn-u-i.
ēmĭnĕ-, ēmĭn-u-i; mŏnĕ-, mŏn-u-i;
sĕnĕ- (Pr. sĕnesc-), sĕn-u-i; tĕnĕ-, tĕn-u-i.

L. ăl-, ăl-u-i; cŏl-, col-u-i; consŭl-, consŭl-u-i;
mŏl-, mŏl-u-i; ŏl-, (also ŏlē-), ŏl-u-i; vŏl-, vŏl-u-i.
călĕ-, (Pr. also călesc-), cal-u-i; callĕ-, (Pr. also callesc-), call-u-i;
coalĕ-, (Pr. coalesc- intrans.; comp. ălo trans.), coăl-u-i;
dŏlĕ-, dŏl-u-i; pallĕ-, (Pr. also pallesc-), pall-u-i;
sĭlĕ-, (Pr. also sĭlesc-), sĭl-u-i; stŭdĕ-, stŭd-u-i;
vălĕ-, (Pr. also vălesc-), văl-u-i.
ēvīlĕ, (Pr. ēvīlesc-), ēvīl-u-i.
săllī-, săl-u-i (rarely săllii).

R. sĕr-, sĕr-u-i.
ārĕ, (Pr. also āresc-), ār-u-i; carĕ-, căr-u-i;
dūrĕ-, (Pr. dūresc-), dūr-u-i; flōrĕ-, (Pr. also flōresc-), flōr-u-i;
horrĕ-, (Pr. also horresc-), horr-u-i; mĕrĕ-, mĕr-u-i;
pārĕ-, pār-u-i; terrĕ-, terr-u-i.
ăpĕrī-, ăpĕr-u-i; ŏpĕrī-, ŏpĕr-u-i.

S. nex-, nex-u-i; pŏs-, (Pr. pōn-), pŏs-u-i; tex-, tex-u-i.
censĕ-, cens-u-i; tors-, (Pr. torrĕ-), torr-u-i.

*Semivowels.* ferv- (also fervĕ- and ferve-sc-), ferb-u-i (also fervi).

316 iv. (*b*) Perfect stem formed by suffixing v (consonant).

The consonantal v is suffixed to vowel stems only (except pasco?), and the preceding vowel is always long.

Almost all verbs with stems in ā- or ī- have their perfect stem formed in this way. So also

*Labials.* cŭpi, (Pr. cŭpī-), cupī-v-i; săpi-, (Pr. săpī-), sapī-v-i.

*Dentals.* pĕtī-, (Pr. pĕt-), petī-v-i; rŭdī-, (Pr. rŭd-), rudī-v-i.

*Sibilant.*
arcessī-, (Pr. arcess-), arcessī-v-i; căpessī-, (Pr. capess-), capessī-v-i;
pŏsi-, (Pr. pōn-), posī-v-i (always in Plaut., Ter.; for posui see § 315);
quaesī-, (Pr. quaer-), quaesī-v-i.
păs-, (Pr. pasc-, for pas-sc-), pā-v-i.

317 *Monosyllabic vowel verbs:* (also oleo, quiesco).

A. să-, (Pr. sĕr-), sē-v-i; strā-, (Pr. stern-), strā-v-i.

O. nŏ-, (Pr. nosc-), nō-v-i.

U. fu-, fū-v-i (Plaut. but usually fui); comp. plu-, plūvi (also plui).

E. crē-, (Pr. cer-n-), crē-v-i; crē-, (Pr. cre-sc-), crē-v-i;
flē-, flē-v-i; dē-lē-, delē-v-i;
nē-, nē-v-i; -ŏlē- (e.g. abole-sc-o, adole-sc-o, obsole-sc-o), -ŏlē-v-i;
-plē-, plē-v-i; quiē-, (Pr. quiesc-), quiē-v-i;
sprē-, (Pr. sper-n-), sprē-v-i; suē, (Pr. sue-sc-), suē-v-i.

I. cī-, (Pr. ciē-, also cī-), cī-v-i; ī-, (Pr. ind. 1st pers. eo), ī-v-i:
lī-, (Pr. līn-), lī-v-i and lē-v-i; quī-, (Pr. ind. 1st pers. queo), quī-v-i;
scī-, (Pr. sci-sc-; besides the regular I verb scio), scī-v-i;
sī-, (Pr. sīn-), sī-v-; trī-, (Pr. tĕr-), trī-v-i (cf. § 31 *d*).

318 v. Perfect stem, same as present stem.

This is frequent (1) in the compounds of verbs of which the simple has a reduplicated perfect (see § 309); (2) by the dropping of **v**, in perfects, in **-īvi**, **-ēvi**, **-āvi** (see § 306); (3) regularly in verbs with **u** stems, which with other, chiefly consonantal, stems are here named:—

*Labials.* **bīb-**, **bĭbi**; **lamb-**, **lambi**.

*Gutturals.* **ĭc-**, **ĭci**. **conigvĕ-**, (Pr. **cōnīve-**), **conīvi** (also **conīxi**).

*Dentals.* **vert-**, **vert-i**.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **-cand-**, **-cand-i**; | **cūd-**, **cūd-i**; | **-fend-**, **-fend-i**; |
| **fīd-**, (Pr. **find-**), **fīd-i** (probably for **fēfīd-i**); | | **mand-**, **mand-i**; |
| **pand-**, **pand-i**; | **prĕhend-**, **prehend-i**; | **scand-**, **scand-i**; |
| **scĭd-**, (Pr. **scind-**), **scĭd-i** (**sci-cĭd-i** old); | | **sīd-**, **sīdi-**; |
| **prande-**, **prand-i**; | **retund-**, **retundi**; | **strīde-**, **strīd-i**. |

*Liquids and Sibilants.*

**L.** **psall-**, **psall-i**; **vŏl-**, (Pr. **vell-**), **vell-i** (rarely **vulsi**).

**R.** **verr-**, **verr-i**. **compĕrī-**, **compĕr-i**;
**repĕrī-**, **rĕppĕr-i** (both probably compounds of a perfect **pĕpĕri**).

**S.** **pins-**, (also **pīs-**), **pins-i**; **vīs-**, **vīs-i**.
**facessi-**, (Pr. **facess-**), **facess-i**; **incessi-**, (Pr. **incess-**), **incess-i**;
**lacessi-**, (Pr. **laces-**), **lacess-i**.

319 *Vowels.* **U**, vowel and consonant.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **ăcū-**, **acu-i**; | **argū-**, **argu-i**; | **exū-**, **exu-i**; |
| **fu-**, **fu-i** (in Plautus sometimes **fū-vi**); | | **-grū-**, **-gru-i**; |
| **imbū-**, **imbu-i**; | **indū-**, **indu-i**; | **lū-**, **lu-i**; |
| **mĕtū-**, **mĕtu-i**; | **mĭnū-**, **mĭnu-i**; | **plū-**, **plu-i**, also **plūvi**; |
| **nū-**, **nu-i**; | **spū-**, **spu-i**; | **stătū-**, **stătu-i**; |
| **sternū-**, **sternu-i**; | **sū-**, **sui**; | **trĭbū-**, **trĭbu-i**; |
| **solv-**, **solv-i**; | **volv-**, **volv-i**; | **ferve-**, **ferv-i** (also **ferbui**). |

I. **ădi-**, (Pr. ind. 1st pers. sing. **adeo**), **ădi-i**; so usually the compounds of **eo**; **inqui-**, (Pr. ind. **inquam**), **inquii**; **sălī-**, **sal-i-i** (rare, usually **sălui**).

## CHAPTER XXII.

### FORMATION OF THE SUPINE STEM.

320 THE supine stem has a common base with the stem of the past and the future participles, and with that of some verbal substantives, to which class the supines themselves belong; e.g. supine, **amā-t-u-**; past part. **amā-t-o-**; fut. part. **amā-t-ūro-**; subst. denoting *agent*, **āmā-t-ōr-**; denoting *action* **amā-t-iōn-**. This common base, which will be here spoken of as the supine stem, is **-t-** suffixed to the stem of the verb.

When the verb-stem ends in a vowel, the vowel is, if long, generally retained; if short, almost always changed, except in monosyllables, to **ĭ** (§ 38), or omitted altogether. A few of the verbs which have a consonant stem, have **-ĭt-** (instead of **-t** in the supine), as if from a vowel stem. When the verb-stem ends in a consonant, or loses its final vowel, **t** is, when following certain consonants, changed to **s**. A few other instances of this softening admit of special explanation.

The verbs here will be classified according as they do or do not exhibit a vowel before the supine suffix, and, subordinately to that, according to the final vowel or consonant of the verb-stem.

N.B. The supine itself will be here named when either supine, past participle, or verbal substantive in **-tu-** exists: otherwise such other form from the same base, as does exist.

321 i. Verbs with a vowel preceding the supine suffix.

**A.** 1. Verbs having **ā** in supine stem;
**na-** (for **gĕnă-**? Pr. inf. **nasci**), **nātum**;
**strā-**, (Pr. **stern-**), **strā-tum**; **tlā-**, (Pr. **toll-**), **lā-tum**;
**ămā-**, **ămā-tum**; and all other verbs with derivative **ā** stems.
**frĭca-**, **frĭcā-tum** (also **fric-tum**); **mĭca-**, **-mĭcā-tum**;
**nĕca-**, **nĕcā-tum** (but cf. § 326); **sĕca-**, **secāturus** (once).

2. Verbs having **-ă** in supine stem;
**dă-**, **dă-tum**; **ră-**, (Pr. inf. **rēri**) : **rătum**; **să-**, (Pr. **sĕr-**), **să-tum**;
**stă-**, (Pr. inf. **stāre**; also **si-stĕre**), **stă-tum** (but in some compounds **stā-turus**).

3. Verbs having **-ĭ** (for **-ă**) in supine stem;
**crĕpă-**. **crepĭ-tum**; **cŭbă-**, (Pr. also **cumb-**), **cŭbĭ-tum**;
**dŏmă-**, **dŏmĭ-tum**; **-plĭcă-**, **-plĭcĭ-tum** (also **plĭcā-tum**);
**sŏnă-**, **sŏnĭ-tum** (**sonā-turus**, once);
**tŏnă-**, **tŏnĭ-tum** (**intonā-tus**, once); **vĕtă-**, **vĕtĭ-tum**.

In **jŭvă-**, **jŭ-tum** (rarely **juvā-turus**);
**lăvă-** (also **lăv-**), **lau-tum**; the **ĭ** is absorbed by the **v** preceding.

322 **O.** **no-**, (Pr. **nosc-**), **nō-tum**; **po-**, (**pōtare** frequentative) **pō-tus**,
**cognŏ-** (cf. § 300), (so also **agnŏ-**), **cognĭ-tum**.

323 **U.** 1. Verbs having **ū** in supine stem;
**ăcū-**, **ăcū-tum**; **argū-**, **argū-tum**; **dilū-**, **dilū-tum**;
**exū-**, **exū-tum**; **imbū-**, **imbū-tum**; **indū-**, **indū-tum**;
**minū-**, **minū-tum**; **-nū-**, **nū-tum** (**abnuĭturus** in Sall.);
**spū-**, **spū-tum**; **stătū-**, **stătu-tum**; **sū-**, **sū-tum**;
**tribū-**, **tribū-tum**; **tū-** (Pr. **tue-** usually), **tū-tum**.
**lŏqv-**, **locū-tum**; **seqv-**, **sĕcū-tum**;
**solv-**, **solū-tum**; **volv-**, **volū-tum**.
**fru-** (for **frugv-**) has rarely **fruĭtūrus** (usually, **fruc-tum**).

2. Verbs having **-ŭ** in supine stem;
**rŭ-**, **rŭ-tum**, (but **rūtum** according to Varr.; fut. part. is **rui-tūrus**);
**pŭ-**, (whence **pūtāre** frequentative), **pŭ-tus** (adj.);
**clŭ-**, (almost always **clue-**), **-clūtum** (**inclūtus**).

324 E- 1. Verbs having **-ē** in supine stem:

**crē-**, (Pr. **cern-**, also Pr. **cresc-**), **crētum**; **delē-**, **delē-tum**;
**flē-**, **flē-tum**; **nē-**, **nē-tum** (Ulp.);
**-olē-** (Pr. **obs-**, **ex-olesc-**), **-ōlē-tum**; **-plē-**, **plē-tum**;
**quiē-**, **quiē-tum**; **suē-**, (Pr. **suesc-**), **suētum**;
**sprē-**, (Pr. **spern-**), **sprē-tum**.
**viē-**, **viētum** Ter., Lucr. (but **viētum** Hor. apparently).

2. Verbs having **ĭ** (for **-ĕ**) in supine stem;

**ăbŏlĕ-**, **ăbŏlĭ-tum**; **călĕ-**, **călĭ-turus**; **cărĕ-**, **cărĕ-turus**;
**dŏlĕ-**, **dŏlĭ-turus**; **exercĕ-**, **exercĭtum**;
**hăbĕ-** (and compounds **dēbe-**, **praebĕ-**), **hăbĭ-tum**;
**jăcĕ-**, **jăcĭturus**; **licĕ-**, **licĭ-tum**; **lŭbĕ-**, **lŭbĭ-tum**;
**mĕrĕ-**, **mĕrĭ-tum**; **misĕrĕ-**, **mĭsĕrĭ-tum** (rarely **misertum**);
**mŏnĕ-**, **monĭ-tum**; **nŏcĕ-**, **nŏcĭ-tum**; **pārĕ-**, **parĭ-turus**;
**pĭgĕ-**, **pĭgĭ-tum**; **plăcĕ-**, **plăcĭ-tum**; **pŭdĕ-**, **pŭdĭ-tum**;
**sŏlĕ-**, **solĭ-tum**; **tăcĕ-**, **tacĭtus** (adj.); **terrĕ-**, **terrĭ-tum**;
**vălĕ-**, **valĭ-turus**; **vĕrĕ-**, **vĕrĭ-tum**.
**căvĕ**, **căvĭ-tum** (old: usually **cau-tum**);
**făvĕ-**, **fau-tum** (for **favĭ-tum**; cf. **fāvĭtor** Plaut.). So also
**fŏvĕ-**, **fō-tum**; **mŏvĕ-**, **mō-tum**; **vŏvĕ-**, **vōtum**.

325 I. 1. Verbs having **-ī** in supine stem; **audī-**, **audī-tum**; and others which have **-īvī** in perfect, except those in § 303 *b*.

**blandī-**, **blandī-tum**; **largī-**, **largī-tum**; **mentī-**, **mentī-tum**;
**mōlī-**, **mōlī-tum**; **partī-**, **partī-tum**; **pŏtī-**, **potī-tum**.
**sortī-**, **sortītum**.
**sancī-**, **sancī-tum** (**sanctum** more frequently);
**pĕri-**, **pĕr-ītus**, adj. (but in comp. **-per-tum**);
**opperī-**, **opperītum** (also **oppertum**);
**oblīvi-**, **oblītum** (for **oblīvītum**) probably has stem in **ī**.
**cŭpī-**, **cŭpī-tum**; **pētī-**, (Pr. **pĕt-**), **pētī-tum**;
**quaesī-**, (Pr. **quaer-**), **quaesī-tum**;
**rŭdī-**, (Pr. **rŭd-**), **rŭdī-tum**; **trī-**, (Pr. **tĕr-**), **trītum**;
**arcessī-**, (Pr. **arcess-**), **arcessī-tum**; so also **lacessī-tum**, **capessī-tum**, **facessī-tum**.

2. Verbs having **-ĭ** in supine stem;

**cī-**, (Pr. **cie-**), **cĭ-tum** (sometimes **-cī-tum**);
**ĭ-**, (Pr. ind. **eo**), **ĭ-tum**); **lĭ-**, (Pr. **lĭn-**), **lĭ-tum**;
**quĭ-**, (Pr. ind. **queo**), **quĭ-tum**; **sĭ-**, (Pr. **sĭn-**), **sĭ-tum**.
**fŭgĭ-**, **fŭgĭ-tum**; **ēlĭcĭ-**, **elĭcĭ-tum** (but **illicĭ-**, **illec-tum**, &c.),
**mŏrĭ-**, **mŏrĭ-turus**; **ŏrĭ-**, **ŏrĭ-tūrus** (sup. **or-tum**);
**părĭ-**, **parĭ-tūrus** (sup. **par-tum**); **pŏsĭ-**, (Pr. **pōn-**), **pŏsĭ-tum**.

326 *Consonant Stems.* **ăl-**, **ălĭ-tum** (more usually **al-tum**);
**frĕm-**, **frĕm-ĭ-tum**; **gĕm-**, **gĕm-ĭ-tum**; **gĕn-**, (Pr. **gign-**), **gĕnĭ-tum**;
**mŏl-**, **mŏl-ĭ-tum**; **strĕp-**, **strĕp-ĭ-tum**; **vŏm-**, **vŏm-ĭ-tum**.

ii. Verbs with a consonant preceding the supine suffix.

327 1. Verbs which retain **-t-**.

*Labials.*

P. **carp-**, **carp-tum**; **clĕp-**, **clep-tum**; **rēp-**, **rep-tum**;
**rŭp-**, (Pr. **rump-**), **rup-tum**; **scalp-**, **scalp-tum**;
**sculp-**, **sculp-tum**; **sarp-**, **sarp-tum**; **serp-**, **serp-tum**.

ăpĭ-, (Pr. api-sc-), ap-tum; căpĭ-, cap-tum;
răpĭ-, rap-tum; saepĭ-, saep-tum.

B. nŭb- (Pr. nūb-), nup-tum; scrīb-, scrip-tum.

M. ĕm-, em-p-tum; tem-, (Pr. temn-), tem-p-tum.

328 *Gutturals.* After a preceding consonant (except n), the guttural usually falls away.

C. Qv. Cŏqv-, coctum; dĭc-, (Pr. dīc-), dĭc-tum;
dŭc-, (Pr. dūc-), duc-tum; ic-, ic-tum;
lĭqv-, (Pr. linqv-), -lic-tum; vic-, (Pr. vinc-), vic-tum.
frĭcă-, fric-tum (also frĭcā-tum); ēnĕcă-, ēnĕc-tum;
sĕcă-, sectum (also sĕcāturus).
arcĕ-, arc-tum or ar-tum; dŏcĕ-, doc-tum;
miscĕ-, mix-tum (in MSS. often mis-tum);
torqvĕ-, tor-tum.
ămĭcĭ-, amic-tum; farcī-, far-tum; fulcī-, ful-tum;
sancī-, sanctum (also sancī-tum); sarcī-, sar-tum;
vincī-, vinc-tum.
făcĭ-, fac-tum; jăcĭ-, jactum;
nanci-, (Pr. nanci-sc-), nanc-tum or nac-tum; -spĭci-, -spec-tum.

329 G. GV. (For stems ending in -lg-, -rg, see § 333);
ăg-, actum; cing-, cinc-tum;
fĭg-, (Pr. and Perf. fing-), fic-tum; -flīg-, -flic-tum;
flugv-, (Pr. flu-), fluc-tus subst., also fluxus adj.;
frăg-, (Pr. frang-), frac-tum; frīg-, fric-tum;
frugv-, (Pr. fru-), fructum; fung-, func-tum;
jung-, junc-tum; lĕg-, lec-tum;
-mung-, -munc-tum; păg-, (Pr. pang-), pactum;
pĭg-, (Pr. and Perf. ping-), pic-tum; plang-, planc-tum;
pung-, punc-tum; rĕg-, rec-tum;
rig-, (Pr. ring-), ric-tus subst.; stingv-, stinc-tum;
strĭg-, (Pr. and Perf. string-), stric-tum;
strugv-, (Pr. stru-), struc-tum; sūg-, suc-tum;
tăg-, (Pr. tang-), tac-tum; tĕg-, tec-tum;
tingv-, tinc-tum; ungv-, unc-tum; vigv-, (Pr. vīv-), vic-tum;
augĕ-, auc-tum; lūgĕ-, luc-tus subst.
-lĭcĭ-, -lectum (except elĭcĭ-tum).

H. trăh-, trac-tum; vĕh-, vec-tum.

330 *Dentals.* See § 334.
tend-, ten-tum (also tensum; probably the supines of tendo and tenco are mixed);
cŏmĕd-, comes-tum (rarely).

*Nasals, Liquids, &c.*

N. Căn-, can-tus subst.; men-, e.g. commĭn-isc-, commentum
tĕnĕ-, tentum; vĕnĭ-, ven-tum.

331 L. ăl-, al-tum; cŏl-, cul-tum;
consŭl-, consul-tum; occŭl-, occul-tum;
vŏl- (Pr. inf. velle), vultus, subst. *expression.*
ădŏle- (Pr. adolesc-), adul-tum.
săl-, sal-tum; sĕpĕlĭ-, sĕpul-tum.

R. **cĕr-**, (Pr. **cern-**), **cer-tus** adj. (also **crē-**, **crē-tus**);
**sĕr-**, **-ser-tum** (also **serta**, n. pl. *garlands*).
**ŏrĭ-**, **or-tum** (cf. § 325. 2); **ăpĕrĭ-**, **aper-tum**; **părĭ-**, **par-tum.**

S. **fĕs-**, (Pr. **fĕrī-** ?), **fes-tum** (e.g. **infes-tus, manĭfes-tus**);
**gĕs-**, (Pr. **gĕr-**), **ges-tum**; **păs-**, (Pr. **pasc-**), **pas-tum**;
**pĭs-**, **pis-tum**; **quĕs-**, (Pr. **quĕr-**), **ques-tum**;
**tex-**, **tex-tum**; **ūs-**, (Pr. **ūr-**), **us-tum**;
**tors-**, (Pr. **torre-**), **tos-tum.**
**hausĭ-**, (Pr. **hauri-**), **haus-tum**;
**pŏsĭ-**, (Pr. **pōn-**), **pos-tum** (usually **pŏsĭtum**).

332 2. Verbs with **t** suffixed: but softened to **s** by the influence usually either of a preceding dental, or of two consonants of which the first is a liquid. A vowel preceding **-sum** is always long. (Other cases are but few; and the **sum** may be partly due to the active perfect (if any) having **-si**, as it has in all these exceptional cases, except **censui.**)

333 *Labials.* **lāb-**, **lap-sum**; **jŭbĕ-**, **jus-sum** (for **jŏvĕ-**, **jousum** ?);
**prem-**, **pres-sum** (for **pren-sum**).

*Gutturals.* The guttural usually drops out.

C. **parc-**, **par-sum.** **mulcĕ-**, **mul-sum.**

G. **fig-**, **fixum**; **fiugv-**, (Pr. **flu-**), **fluxus** adj. (**fluc-tus** subst.);
**merg-**, **mer-sum**; **sparg-**, **spar-sum.**
**mulgĕ-**, **mul-sum**; **tergĕ-**, **ter-sum.**

334 *Dentals.* The dental either drops out, the preceding vowel being therefore lengthened, or is assimilated. N.B. All dental stems have **-sum.**

T. **flect-**, **flexum**; **mĕt-**, **mes-sum**;
**mitt-**, **mis-sum**; **nect-**, **nexum**;
**nict-**, (Pr. **nĭt-**), **nixum** or **nĭ-sum**; **pĕct-**, **pexum**;
**-plect-**, **-plexum**; **vert-**, **ver-sum**; **ūt-**, **ū-sum.**
**fătĕ-**, **fas-sum.**
**mētĭ-**, **mensum**; **sentĭ-**, **sen-sum**;
**fătĭ-**, (Pr. **fatisc-**), **fes-sus** adj.; **pătĭ-**, **pas-sum**; **quătĭ-**, **quas-sum.**

D. **căd-**, **cā-sum**; **caed-**, **cae-sum**;
**cēd-**, **ces-sum**; **claud-**, **clau-sum**;
**cūd-**, **cū-sum**; **dīvĭd-**, **dīvĭ-sum**;
**ĕd-**, **ē-sum** (rarely **comes-tum**, from **comĕd-**);
**-fend-**, **-fen-sum**; **fĭd-**, **fĭ-sum**;
**fĭd-**, **fissum**; **frend-**, **fres-sum** or **frē-sum**;
**fud-**, (Pr. **fund-**), **fū-sum**; **laed-**, **laesum**;
**lūd-**, **lū-sum**; **mand-**, **man-sum**;
**ŏd-**, **-ōsum** (e.g. **per-ōsus**, **exōsus**); **pand-**, **pan-sum** or **pas-sum**;
**pend-**, **pen-sum**; **plaud-**, **plau-sum**;
**prehend-**, **prehen-sum**; **rād-**, **rā-sum**;
**rōd-**, **ro-sum**; **scand-**, **scan-sum**;
**scīd-**, (Pr. **scind-**), **scis-sum**; **tend-**, **ten-sum** (also **ten-tum**);
**trūd-**, **trū-sum**; **tŭd-**, (Pr. **tund-**), **tū-sum** or **tun-sum.**

**arde-**, **ar-sūrus**; **aude-**, **au-sum**;
**gavīd-e-**, (Pr. **gaude-**), **gāvī-sum**; **morde-**, **mor-sum**;
**pende-**, **pen-sum**; **prande-**, **pran-sum**;
**rīde-**, **rī-sum**; **sĕde-**, **ses-sum**;

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **sponde-, spon-sum ;** | **suāde-, suā-sum ;** | |
| **taede-, tae-sum ;** | **tonde-, ton-sum ;** | **vīde-, vī-sum.** |
| **ordī-, or-sum ;** | **fŏdī-, fos-sum ;** | **grădī-, gres-sum.** |

335 *Nasals, Liquids,* &c.

N. **măne-, man-sum.**

L. **-cell-, -cul-sum ;** **fall-, fal-sum ;** **pell-, pul-sum ;**
**sall-, sal-sum ;** **vell-, vul-sum.**

R. **curr-, cur-sum ;** **haere-, hae-sum.** **verr-, ver-sum.**

S. **cense-, cen-sum ;** **hausī-** (Pr. **hauri-**), **haus-tum** (also **hau-sūrus**).

Many verbs have no forms from a supine stem in use.

---

336 The supines are respectively the accusative and ablative (or in some uses apparently the dative), of a verbal noun in **-u**. They are called respectively active supine, or supine in **-um**, and passive supine or supine in **-u**.

From this so-called supine stem are formed, as has been said, the future participle active by suffixing **-ūro-**, sing. nom. **-ūrus** (m.); **-ūra** (f.), **-ūrum** (n.); and the past participle passive, by suffixing the ordinary case-endings of the second class; e.g. sing. nom. **-us** (m.), **ă** (f.), **-um** (n.).

These participles, in the appropriate gender and number, are used in the nominative case with the finite tenses of the verb **sum**, and in the accusative as well as the nominative with the infinitive of the same verb to supply the place of certain tenses for which there is no special form. The future participle thus supplies additional future tenses in the active voice especially in the subjunctive: the past participle supplies the perfect tenses of the passive voice, whether the passive voice have a strictly passive meaning, or, as in deponents, an active or reflexive meaning.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

## OF THE TRADITIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.

337 As the ordinary classification of verbs is often referred to, it may be convenient here to give a brief account of it. It is as old at least, as the fourth century after Christ.

Verbs are generally divided according to their form into four classes, called *Conjugations*.

The four conjugations are distinguished by the vowel which immediately precedes **re** in the infinitive mood; which in the 1st conjugation is **ā**: in the second **ē**[1]: in the third **ĕ**, not usually belonging to the stem: in the fourth **ī**.

The distribution of the verbs among these conjugations is as follows.

[1] i.e. **ē** according to the ordinary doctrine: but see § 302 *b*.

I. First conjugation contains all vowel verbs, whose stem ends in **ā**; as **ām-o**, *I love*, infin. **āmā-re.**

II. Second conjugation contains all vowel verbs whose stem ends in **e**; as **mone-o**, *I advise*, infin. **mŏnē-re.**

III. Third conjugation contains all verbs whose stem ends in a consonant, or in **u**, or a variable **i** (called **ĭ** above, § 303 *c*); as

**rĕg-o**, *I rule*, infin. **rĕg-ĕre.**
**tribu-o**, *I assign*, infin. **tribu-ĕre.**
**căpi-o**, *I take*, perf. **cēp-i**, infin. **căpĕ-re.**

IV. Fourth conjugation contains all vowel verbs whose stem ends in **ī**, as **audi-o**, *I hear*, infin. **audī-re.**

338 The following are the regular forms of the perfect and supine in the several conjugations according to the ordinary description.

In the 1st conjugation the regular perfect is formed by the addition of **vi** to the stem, the regular supine by the addition of **tum**, e.g. **āmā-vi, āmā-tum.**

The exceptions are few: two verbs **do, sto** have a reduplicated perfect **dĕdi, stĕti**: two others, **jŭvo, lăvo**, lengthen the stem vowel, e.g. (**jūvi, lāvi**): the others add **ui** to the stem, the final **a** being omitted; e.g. **crĕpa-, crĕp-ui.** None form the perfect in **si** or **i** simple. None form the supine in **sum.**

In the 2nd conjugation the regular perfect is formed by the addition of **ui** to the stem, the regular supine by the addition of **ĭtum**, the final stem vowel **e** being omitted, as **mone-, mon-ui.** The exceptions are numerous, and of all kinds: the larger number adding **si.** Many have the supine in **sum.**

In the 3rd conjugation all the forms are much used, some having even the long characteristic vowel of the other three conjugations, e.g. **sterno, strāvi**; **sperno, sprēvi**; **tero, trīvi.** These are clearly instances of a vowel stem in the perfect and supine superseding a consonant stem. Many have the supine in **sum.**

In the 4th conjugation, the regular perfect is formed by the addition of **vi** and the regular supine by the addition of **tum** to the stem; e.g. **audī-vi, audī-tum.** The exceptions are few: one lengthens the stem vowel (**vĕni-o, vēni**): one simply adds the personal inflexions (**compĕri-o, compĕr-i**). Three have perfect in **ui**; viz. **aperio, operio**, and **salio**, nine have perfect in **si.** Two, viz. **eo** and **cio**, have short **i** in supine. None form the perfect by reduplication, except perhaps **repĕri-o, reppĕr-i.** Several have supine in **sum.**

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## LIST OF VERBS, WITH THEIR PERFECTS, SUPINES, &c.

339 THE following list contains almost all the verbs of the Latin language, with certain exceptions, which exceptions are—

1. All verbs with **a-** or **i-** stems, which have their pres. infinitive in **-āre, -īre (-āri, -īri)**, perf. in **-āvi, -īvi (-ātus, -ītus, sum)**, and supine in **-ātum, -ītum.**

2. All verbs with **e-** stems, which have perfect in **-ui**, but no supine. They are generally intransitive.

3. Most inchoatives, which either have no perfect or supine, or one of the same form as the simple verb.

4. Verbs compounded with prepositions. But such are named as differ from the form of the simple verb in perfect or supine, or which agree with it in having a reduplication in the perfect.

5. A few verbs, with **e-** or **i-** stems, which have no perfect or supine.

The supine is not much used, but is here mentioned wherever it or a perfect participle is known, as this is similarly formed.

N.B. Where the English translation as given here, whether with or without a preposition, allows of the immediate addition of an object, the verb is transitive (though it may perhaps also be intransitive), e.g. **arcesso**, *send for;* **laedo**, *hurt*, are transitive. Where it requires the addition of an English preposition, the verb is intransitive, e.g. **nŏceo**, *be hurtful*.

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **accerso.** See **arcesso.** | | | | |
| **ăcŭo**, *sharpen* | **ăcŭi** | **ăcūtum** | **ăcŭĕre** | **ăcū-** |
| **ăgo**, *do, drive* | **ēgī** | **actum** | **ăgĕre** | **ăg-** |
| **ădĭgo, ădēgi, ădactum, adĭgĕre.** So the other compounds, | | | | |
| Except: **cōgo** (**cŏēgi, cŏactum, cōgĕre**), **dēgo**, which has no perf. or supine, **prōdĭgo** which has perf. only, and **circumăgo, perăgo**, which retain **a** in pres., &c. **sătăgo** is really two words: perf. **ēgi satis.** | | | | |
| **aio**, *say* | | | | **aj-** |
| The following forms only are preserved, pres. **ajo, ăis, ăit** (**aīs, aīt** in Plaut.), **ajunt.** Imp. **ajēbam**, &c. complete. In Plaut. and Ter. **aībam.** Pres. subj. **ajas, ajat.** The part. **aiens** is used only as adj. | | | | |
| **algeo**, *be cold* | **alsi** | | **algēre** | **alg-e-** |
| **ălo**, *nourish, raise* | **ălui** | **altum** | **ălĕre** | **ăl-** |
| **ălĭtum** is found in post-Augustan writers. | | | | |
| **ămĭcio**, *clothe* | | **ămictum** | **ămĭcīre** | **ămĭc-i** |
| **amĭcui** and **amixi** are both said to have been used for perf. | | | | |
| **ango**, *throttle, vex* | | | **angĕre** | **ang-** |
| **ăpiscor**, *fasten to oneself, get* | **aptus sum** | **aptum** | **ăpisci** | **ăp-ī-** |
| More usual in compound **ădĭpiscor, ădeptus sum, ădĭpisci.** See also **coepio.** | | | | |
| **arceo**, *inclose, keep off* | **arcui** | (**artus**) | **arcēre** | **arc-e-** |
| **artus**, only used as adj. *confined, narrow:* **exerceo**, *exercise*, **exercui, exercĭtum, exercēre.** So also **coerceo.** | | | | |
| **arcesso**, *fetch, send for* | **arcessīvi** | **arcessītum** | **arcessĕre** | **{arcess- {arcess-ī-** |
| Another form (perhaps of different origin) is **accerso.** In pass. inf. **arcessīri** (**accersīri**) sometimes occurs. | | | | |
| **ardeo**, *be on fire* | **arsi** | (**arsūrus**) | **ardēre** | **ard-e-** |
| **argŭo**, *charge (with crime*, &c.) | **argŭi** | **argūtum** | **argŭĕre** | **argū-** |
| **argūtus** rare, except as adj. *sharp.* Fut. part. **arguiturus** (once in Sall.). | | | | |

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **audeo**, *dare* | **ausus sum**, | **ausum** | **audēre** | **aud-e-** |

**ausus sum**, *I have dared*; **ausus** also (rarely) passive part.

**āve**, imperat. *hail* (in Quintilian's time **hāvē**) also **āvēto**, plur. **āvēte**: inf. **āvēre**. Martial has **āvē**.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **āveo**, *long* | no perf. or sup. | | **āvēre** | **āv-e-** |
| **augeo**, *increase* (trans.) *endow* | **auxi** | **auctum** | **augēre** | **aug-e-** |
| **bātŭo**, *beat, fence* (with a weapon) | **bātui** | | **bātŭēre** | **bātū-** |
| **bĭbo**, *drink* | **bĭbi** | | **bĭbēre** | **bĭb-** |

For supine and fut. part. **pōtum, pōtūrus** are used.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **bĭto**, *go* | no perf. or sup. | | **bĭtēre** | **bĭt-** |

Only in early dramatists. Plautus has compounds **abito, adbito, interbito, perbito, rebito.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cădo**, *fall* | **cĕcĭdi** | **cāsum** | **cădēre** | **cād-** |

**occĭdo, occĭdi, occāsum, occĭdēre.** The other compounds, except **rĕcĭdo** and (rarely) **incĭdo**, have no supine.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **caedo**, *fell, cut, slay*, | **cĕcĭdi** | **caesum** | **caedĕre** | **caed-** |

**occīdo, occīdi, occīsum, occīdĕre.** So all the compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **călĕo**, *be hot* | **călui** | (**călĭtūrus**) | **călēre** | **căl-ē-** |
| **calvor**, *play tricks* (also as passive) | | | **calvi** | **calv-** |

Only in early writers for later **calumniāri.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **-cando**, *light*, only in compounds. | | | | **cand-** |

e.g. **accendo, accendi, accensum, accendĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **căno**, *sing, play* (on a harp, &c.) | **cĕcĭni** | (**cantus** subst.) | **cănĕre** | **căn-** |

**concĭno, concĭnŭi, concentum, concĭnĕre.** So **occĭno** (also once **occecini**), **incino** and **praecĭno.** No perf. found of other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **căpesso**, *undertake* | **căpessīvi** | **căpessītum** | **căpessĕre** | **căpess-** / **capess-ī-** |
| **căpio**, *take* | **cēpi** | **captum** | **căpĕre** | **căp-ĭ-** |

**concĭpio, concēpi, conceptum, concĭpĕre.** So the other compounds, except **antecăpio, antecēpi, anteceptum, antecăpĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cărĕo**, *be in want* | **cărui** | (**cărĭtūrus**) | **cărēre** | **căr-ē-** |
| **cāro**, *card* (wool), very rare | | | **cārĕre** | **cār-** |
| **carpo**, *nibble, pluck* | **carpsi** | **carptum** | **carpĕre** | **carp-** |

**decerpo, decerpsi, decerptum, decerpĕre.** So the other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **căveo**, *be ware, be ware of* | **cāvi** | **cautum** | **căvēre** | **căv-ē-** |
| **cēdo**, *give way, yield up* | **cessi** | **cessum** | **cēdĕre** | **cēd-** |
| **cēdo**, *give*, said to be old imperative 2nd per. sing. | | | The plural **cette** (for **cēdĭte**) only in early scenic poets. | |
| **-cello**, *strike?* only in compounds: **celsus** adj. *high* | | | | **cell-** |

**percello** (*strike down*), **percŭli, perculsus, percellĕre.**

**excello** (*distinguish myself*) has (in Gellius) a perf. **excellui.** Of **antecello** and **praecello** no perf. or sup. are found. **excelsus praecelsus**, *lofty*, are used as adj.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **censeo**, *count, estimate, give opinion* | **censui** | **censum** | **censēre** | **cens-ē-** |

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cerno**, *sift, distinguish, decide, see* | **crēvi** | **crētum**<br>**certus**, adj. *sure* | **cernĕre** | **cĕr-**<br>**crē-** |

The meaning *see* is confined to pres., fut. and imp. tenses. **decerno, decrēvi, decrētum, decernĕre.** So the other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cieo**<br>**-cio** | *stir up* | **cīvi** | **cītum** | **cīēre**<br>**-cīre** | **cī-ĕ-**<br>**cī-** |

The -ī stem is rare in the simple verb: the -e stem rare in the compounds. **accio** makes (once) **accītus**; **excio, excītus** and **excĭtus**; **concio, concītus,** and (once) **concĭtus**; **percio, percītus.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cingo**, *gird* | **cinxi** | **cinctum** | **cingĕre** | **cing-** |
| **clango** (rare) *clang* | | | **clangĕre** | **clang-** |
| **claudo**, *shut* | **clausi** | **clausum** | **claudĕre** | **claud-** |

**conclūdo, conclūsi, conclūsum, conclūdere.** So the other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **clĕpo** (old), *steal* | **clepsi** | **cleptum** | **clĕpĕre** | **clĕp-** |
| **clueo**, *be spoken of* | | **-clŭtum** | **cluēre** | **clu-e** |

In Seneca (once) **cluo.** Past part. only in compound **inclŭtus.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cŏlo**, *till, pay attention to* | **cŏlui** | **cultum** | **cŏlĕre** | **cŏl-** |

So the compounds **excŏlo, excŏlui, excultum, excŏlĕre,** but **accŏlo, incŏlo** have no supine. **Occŭlo** has probably a different stem.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **coepio**, *begin* | **coepi** | **coeptum** | **coepĕre** | **coep-ĭ-** |

Pres. ind. and subj. only in Plaut. Fut. **coepiam** in Cato. Imperf. subj. **coepĕrem** once in Ter. Otherwise only perfect stem in use. But **coeptus** and **coepturus** are also used. (**Coeptus sum** often with a pass. infin.; but also **coepi.**) The verb is apparently from **co-ăpio (apiscor).**

**compesco.** See **pasco.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **conquĭnisco**, *crouch* | **conquexi**, old and rare | | **conquĭniscĕre** | |
| **consŭlo**, *consult* | **consŭlŭi** | **consultum** | **consŭlĕre** | **consŭl-** |
| **cŏquo**, *cook* | **coxi** | **coctum** | **cŏquĕre** | **cŏqv-** |

**crēdo.** See **do.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **crĕpo**, *rattle* | **crĕpui** | **crĕpĭtum** | **crĕpāre** | **crĕp-ă-** |
| **cresco**, *grow* | **crēvi** | **crētum** | **crescĕre** | **crē-** |

Though **cresco** is intransitive, it has a part. **crētus**, *sprung from.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cŭbo**, *lie, lie ill* | **cŭbŭi** | **cŭbĭtum** | **cŭbāre** | **cŭb-ă-** |

**cubāvi** is occasionally found.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cūdo**, *hammer* | **cūdi** | **cūsum** | **cūdĕre** | **cūd-** |
| **-cumbo**, *lie*, only in compounds, as strengthened form of **cŭbo.** | | | | |

**accumbo, accŭbui, accŭbĭtum, accumbĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **cŭpio**, *desire* | **cŭpīvi** | **cŭpītum** | **cŭpĕre** | **cŭp-ĭ-** |

**cupīret** once in Lucr.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **curro**, *run* | **cŭcurri** | **cursum** | **currĕre** | **curr-** |

The compounds frequently retain the reduplication, e.g. **accŭcurri, dēcŭcurri, excŭcurri**; more usually (in Cicero and Livy) drop it, e.g. **accurri.**

**dēleo.** See **lino.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **depso**, *knead* | **depsui** | **depstum** | **depsĕre** | **deps-** |
| **dīco**, *say* | **dixi** | **dictum** | **dīcĕre** | **dīc-** |
| **disco**, *learn* | **dĭdĭci** | | **discĕre** | **dĭc-** |

Compounds retain reduplication, e.g. **ēdisco**, *learn by heart*, **ēdĭdĭci.**

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|

**dispesco.** See **pasco.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **dīvĭdo**, *divide* | **dīvīsi** | **dīvīsum** | **dīvĭdĕre** | **di-vĭd-** |
| **do**, *give* (see p. 106) | **dĕdi** | **dătum** | **dăre** | **dă-** |

The half-compounds **circumdo**, *surround*, **pessumdo**, *ruin*, **sătisdo**, *satisfy*, **venumdo**, *expose to sale*, follow **do** precisely.

**crēdo**, *entrust*, *believe*, **vendo**, *sell*, **reddo**, *give back*, and the compounds with monosyllabic prepositions, have consonant stems: e. g. **crēdo, crēdĭdi, crēdĭtum, crēdĕre.** So also **accredo, accrēdĭdi.**

The compound with **prae** exists only in **praedĭtus**, *endued*.

The reduplication is retained in the compounds, except usually in **abscondo.**

For the passives of **vendo, perdo,** (except past part. and gerundive) **veneo** and (usually) **pereo** are used.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **dŏceo**, *teach* | **dŏcŭi** | **doctum** | **dŏcēre** | **dŏc-ĕ-** |
| **dŏleo**, *be in pain* | **dŏlui** | **(dŏlĭtūrus)** | **dŏlēre** | **dŏl-ĕ-** |
| **dŏmo**, *tame* | **dŏmui** | **dŏmĭtum** | **dŏmāre** | **dŏm-ă-** |
| **dūco**, *draw, lead, account* | **duxi** | **ductum** | **dūcĕre** | **dŭc-** |
| **ĕdo**, *eat* | **ēdi** | **ēsum** | **ĕdĕre** | **ĕd-** |

Supine sometimes **essum. Cŏmĕdo** has also (rarely) **comestum.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ĕmo**, *buy* (orig. *take*) | **ēmi** | **emptum** | **ĕmĕre** | **ĕm-** |

**ădĭmo, ădēmi, ademptum, ădĭmĕre.** So other compounds, except

(1) **cŏĕmo** (**cŏēmi, coemptum**), **perĕmo, interĕmo,** which retain **e**:

(2) the earlier compounds **cōmo, dēmo, prōmo, sūmo,** which make **compsi, comptum,** &c.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ĕo**, *go* (see p. 107) | **īvi** | **ĭtum** | **īre** | **ī-** |

Compounds always omit **v** (e. g. **ădii**), in 1st pers. perf., and usually in other persons of perfect and thence derived tenses.

**vēneo**, *be for sale*, perf. **vēnii**, is a compound of **eo.** It has no supine.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **exuo**, *strip off* (clothes, &c.) | **exui** | **exūtum** | **exuĕre** | **exū-** |
| **făcesso**, *cause*, *make off* | **făcessī** | **făcessĭtum** | **făcessĕre** | **facess-** / **facess-ī-** |
| **făcio**, *make*, *do* | **fēci** | **factum** | **făcĕre** | **făc-ĭ-** |

For the passive, in tenses formed from present stem, **fio** is used.

**prōfĭcio**, *make progress*, **prōfēci, prōfectum, prōfĭcĕre.** So the other compounds with prepositions. But **calĕfacio, tremĕfacio,** &c. being only half compounds retain **a** (§ 74).

**profĭciscor**, *set out* (*on a journey*), *travel*, **prōfectum, prōfĭcisci.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fallo**, *deceive*, *elude* | **fĕfelli** | **falsum** | **fallĕre** | **fall-** |

**refello**, *refute*, **refelli, refellĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **farcio**, *stuff* | **farsi** | **fartum** | **farcīre** | **farc-ī-** |

**rĕfercio, rĕfersi, rĕfertum, rĕfercīre.** So also **differtus.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fătĕor**, *acknowledge* | | **fassum** | **fătēri** | **făt-ĕ-** |

**confĭteor, confessum, confĭtēri.** So **prŏfĭteor. diffĭteor** has no part. perf.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fătisco** / **fătiscor** (old) | *yawn*, *droop* | **(fessus** adj. *weary*) | **fătiscĕre** / **fătisci** | **făt-ĭ-** ? |

**dēfētiscor, defessum, defetisci.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **făveo**, *be favourable* | **fāvi** | **fautum** | **făvēre** | **făv-e-** |

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| -**fendo**, *strike*, only in compounds. | | | | **fend-** |

**defendo**, *ward off, guard*, **defendi, defensum, defendĕre.** So also **offendo**, *strike against.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fĕrio**, *strike* (see **ico**) | | | **fĕrīre** | **fĕr-I-** |

(**percussi, percussum** are often used as perfect and supine.)

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fĕro**, *bear* (see p. 107) | **(tŭli)** | **(lātum)** | **ferre** | **fĕr-** |

Perfect and supine are borrowed from **tollo.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **affĕro,** | **attŭli,** | **allātum,** | **afferre ;** |
| **aufĕro,** | **abstŭli,** | **ablātum,** | **auferre ;** |
| **differo,** | **distŭli,** | **dīlātum,** | **differre ;** |
| **offĕro,** | **obtŭli,** | **oblātum,** | **offerre ;** |
| **rĕfĕro,** | **rĕttuli,** | **rĕlātum** (rarely **rellatum**) | **rĕferre ;** |

**rĕfert**, *it is of importance* (probably for **rei fert**) is used as impersonal.

**suffĕro** has for perf. rarely **sustŭli**, usually **sustinui.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ferveo**, *boil, glow* | **fervi** / **ferbui** | | **fervēre** | **ferv-ĕ-** |

A consonantal stem (e.g. **fervit, fervĕre**) frequent in prae-Aug. and Aug. poets.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fīdo**, *trust* | | **fīsum** | **fīdĕre** | **fīd-** |

**fisus sum** is used for perf., *I have trusted.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fīgo**, *fix* | **fixi** | **fixum** | **fīgĕre** | **fīg-** |

**fictus** as past participle in Varro, *R. R.* and Lucr.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fio**, *become* (see p. 107) | | | **fiĕri** | **fi-** |

The compound **infit**, *he begins*, only in this one form (poetical).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **findo**, *cleave* | **fīdi** | **fissum** | **findĕre** | **fīd-** |
| **fingo**, *form, invent* | **finxi** | **fictum** | **fingĕre** | **fīg-** |
| **fleo**, *weep* | **flēvi** | **flētum** | **flēre** | **flē-** |
| **flecto**, *bend* | **flexi** | **flexum** | **flectĕre** | **flect-** |
| -**flīgo**, *strike*, only in compounds. | | | | |

**afflīgo**, *strike against, knock down*, **afflixi, afflictum, afflīgĕre.**

So the other compounds, except **profligo**, *put to rout*, **prōflīgāvi, prōflīgātum, prōflīgāre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **flŭo**, *flow* | **fluxi** | (**fluxus**, adj. *loose*, **fluctus**, sub. *a wave.*) | **fluĕre** | **flŭgv-** |
| **fŏdio**, *dig* | **fōdi** | **fossum** | **fŏdĕre** | **fŏd-I-** |

Inf. **fodiri, effodiri** are found in the older language.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fātur**, *he speaks* | | **fātum** | **fāri** | **fā-** |

The following only found: pres. ind. **fātur** ; fut. **fābor, fabitur** : perf. **fatus est** ; pluperf. **fatus eram, erat** ; imper. **fāre** ; inf. **fari** : part. **fantem**, &c. (no nominative, except in phrase **fans atque infans**, Plaut.), **fatus, fandus**, and **fatu.**

In compounds we have also -**famur, -famini** : -**fābar, fārer**, &c., and in imperat. &c., **praefato, praefamino.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fŏveo**, *keep warm, cherish* | **fōvi** | **fōtum** | **fŏvēre** | **fŏv-ĕ-** |
| **frango**, *break in pieces* | **frēgi** | **fractum** | **frangĕre** | **frăg-** |

Compounds as **confringo, confrēgi, confractum, confringĕre.**

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **frĕmo**, *roar, snort* | **frĕmui** | **frĕmĭtum** | **frĕmĕre** | **frĕm-** |
| **frendo**, *gnash* (with the teeth) | | **fressum** / **frēsum** | **frendĕre** | **frend-** |
| **frĭco**, *rub* | **frĭcŭi** | **frictum** / **frĭcātum** | **frĭcāre** | **frĭc-ā-** |
| **frĭgeo**, *be cold* | **frixi** | | **frĭgēre** | **frĭg-e-** |
| **frĭgo**, *roast*, (corn, &c.) | | **frictum** | **frĭgĕre** | **frĭg-** |
| **fruor**, *enjoy myself* | | **fructum** | **frui** | **frugv-** |

**fruitum** once (Ulpian). Fut. part. **fruĭtūrus**. An old form **fruiscor**, **frunitum** is quoted from early writers.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fŭgio**, *flee, fly from* | **fūgi** | (**fŭgĭtūrus**) | **fŭgĕre** | **fŭg-ĭ-** |
| **fulcio**, *prop* | **fulsi** | **fultum** | **fulcīre** | **fulc-ĭ-** |
| **fulgeo**, *flash* | **fulsi** | | **fulgēre** | **fulg-e-** |

A consonantal stem e.g. **fulgit**, **fulgĕre** is found in prae-Aug. poets; twice in Vergil.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **fundo**, *pour, rout* (an enemy) | **fūdi** | **fūsum** | **fundĕre** | **fūd-** |
| **fungor**, *get quit, discharge myself*, (an office, &c.) | | **functum** | **fungi** | **fung-** |
| **fuo**, *grow?* see **sum** (§§ 259, 260) | | | | |
| **fŭris**, *thou ragest* | | | **fŭrĕre** | **fŭr-** |

Only **furis**, **furit**, **furunt**, **furebas**, **furebat**, **furĕre**, **furens** are found.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **gaudeo**, *be glad* | | **gāvīsum** | **gaudēre** | **gavīd-e** |

**gavisus sum**, *I rejoiced.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **gĕmo**, *sigh, groan* | **gĕmui** | **gĕmĭtum** | **gĕmĕre** | **gĕm-** |
| **gĕro**, *carry, perform* | **gessi** | **gestum** | **gĕrĕre** | **gĕs-** |
| **gigno**, *beget, produce* | **gĕnui** | **gĕnĭtum** | **gignĕre** | **gĕn-** |

In old language (Lucr. Varr.), sometimes **gĕno** is found.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **glisco**, *swell, kindle* | | | **gliscĕre** | **gli-** |
| **glūbo**, *peel* | | **gluptum** | **glūbĕre** | **glūb-** |
| **grădior**, *step* | | **gressum** | **grădi** | **grăd-ĭ-** |

Compounds as **aggrĕdior**, *attack*, **aggressum**, **aggrĕdi**. Inf. **aggredīri**, **progredīri**, ind. pres. **aggredĭmur** are found in Plaut.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **-gruo** only in compounds. | | | | **grŭ-** |

**congruo**, *agree*, **congrui**, **congruĕre**. So also **ingruo**, *impend.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **hăbeo**, *have* | **hăbui** | **hăbĭtum** | **hăbēre** | **hăb-ē-** |

So the compounds **dēbeo**, *owe*, **debui**, **dēbĭtum**, **dēbēre**; **praebeo**, *afford*, **praebui**, **praebitum**, **praebēre** (in Plautus **dehibeo**, **praehibeo**): **prōbeo** (Lucr.) for **prohibeo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **haereo**, *stick*, intr. | **haesi** | **haesum** | **haerēre** | **haer-e-** |
| **haurio**, *drain, draw* (water) | **hausi** | **haustum** | **haurīre** | **haus-ĭ-** |

In Varr. once **haurierint**. Fut. part. **haustūrus** (Cic. once) and **hausūrus**, Verg. once, Stat. once, Sil. twice. The subst. is **haustus** (not **hausus**).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **hisco**, *gape, open the mouth, to speak* | | | **hiscĕre** | **hi-** |
| **jăceo**, *lie* | **jăcui** | (**jăcĭturus**) | **jăcēre** | **jăc-ē-** |
| **jăcio**, *cast* | **jēci** | **jactum** | **jăcĕre** | **jăc-ĭ-** |

**abĭcio**, **ăbjēci**, **abjectum**, **abĭcĕre**. So the other compounds. **Dissĭcio** for **dis-jacio.**

**porrĭcio**, *offer* (*sacrifices*), &c. **porrectum**, **porrĭcĕre** (without perf.).

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Ico** (or **Icio**?), *strike* | **Ici** | **ictum** | **Icĕre** | **Ic-** |

Of the present (rare), only **icit, icitur, icimur** occur: (**fĕrio** is generally used instead). The perfect is often in MSS. written **iecit.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **imbuo**, *steep, imbue* | **imbui** | **imbūtum** | **imbuĕre** | **imbū-** |
| **incesso**, *attack* | **incessī** | | **incessĕre** | **incess-** |
| **indulgeo**, *yield*, intr. (**Indultum**, &c. is only a late form.) | **indulsi** | | **indulgēre** | **indulg-e-** |
| **induo**, *put on* (clothes, &c.) | **indui** | **indūtum** | **induĕre** | **indū-** |
| **inquam**, *quoth* | **inquii** | | | **inqvă-** or **inqvī-** |

The following forms only occur. Pres. ind. **inquam, inquĭs, inquit, inquĭmus, inquiunt.** Fut. **inquies, inquiet.** Imperf. **inquiebat.** Perf. **inquii, inquisti, inquit.** Imperat. 2nd sing. **inque, inquĭto,** plur. **inquĭte.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **īrascor**, *grow angry* | | **īrātum** | **īrasci** | **īrā-** |

**īrātus sum**, *I am angry;* **succensui**, *I* (*fired up*, i.e.) *was angry.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **jŭbeo**, *bid* | **jussi** | **jussum** | **jŭbēre** | **jŭb-e-** |
| **jungo**, *yoke, join* | **junxi** | **junctum** | **jungĕre** | **jung-** |
| **jŭvo**, *help, delight* | **jūvi** | **jūtum** | **jūvāre** | **jŭv-a-** |

fut. part. **jŭvātūrus.** **Adjŭvo** has **adjūtūrus.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **lābor**, *slip, glide* | | **lapsum** | **lābi** | **lāb-** |
| **lăcesso**, *provoke* | **lăcessīvi** | **lăcessītum** | **lăcessĕre** | **lăcess-** or **lacessī-** |
| **-lăcio**, *entice.* Only in compounds. | | | | **laci-** |

**allĭcio, allexi, allectum, allĭcĕre.** So **illĭcio, pellĭcio.**

**ēlĭcio, ēlĭcui, ēlĭcĭtum, ēlĭcĕre.** **Prōlĭcio** has no perfect or supine.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **laedo**, *strike* (rare), *hurt* | **laesi** | **laesum** | **laedĕre** | **laed-** |

**collīdo**, *dash together*, **collīsi, collīsum, collīdĕre.** So **allīdo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **lambo**, *lick* | **lambi** (once) | | **lambĕre** | **lamb-** |
| **langveo**, *be faint* | **langvi** | | **langvēre** | **langv-e-** |
| **lăvo**, *wash* | **lāvi** | **lāvātum** or **lautum** or **lōtum** | **lăvāre** | **lăv-a-** |

A consonantal stem (e.g. **lăvit, lăvĕre,** &c.) is frequent in prae-Augustan and Augustan poets.

For compounds see **luo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **lĕgo**, *pick up, choose, read* | **lēgi** | **lectum** | **lĕgĕre** | **lĕg-** |

**collĭgo**, *collect*, **collēgi, collectum, collĭgĕre.** So compounds generally:

Except that (1) **allĕgo**, *choose besides;* **perlĕgo**, *read through;* **praelĕgo**, *read to others;* **rĕlĕgo**, *read again;* **sublĕgo**, *pick up, substitute*, retain **e.**

(2) **dilĕgo** (or **dĭlĭgo**), *love;* **intellĕgo**, *understand;* **neglĕgo**, *neglect*, retain **e** and have perf. in **-xi**, e.g. **neglexi.** (Rarely **intellēgi, neglēgi.**)

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **lĭbet**, *it pleases* | **lĭbuit** / **lĭbĭtum est** | | | **lĭb-ĕ-** |

Only used in 3rd pers. Rarely in plural. Also participle **lĭbens.** (The stem vowel was in early times **u**; e.g. **lŭbet.**)

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **lĭceo**, *be on sale* | **lĭcui** | **lĭcĭtum** | **lĭcēre** | **lĭc-ĕ-** |
| **lĭceor**, *bid for* | **lĭcĭtus sum** | | **lĭcēri** | **lĭc-ĕ-** |
| **lĭcet**, *it is permitted* | **lĭcuit** / **lĭcĭtum est** | | **lĭcēre** | **lĭc-ĕ-** |

Only used in 3rd pers. Rarely in plural. **Licēto, licens, licĭtus,** also found.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **lingo**, *lick* | | **linctum** | **lingĕre** | **ling-** |
| **lĭno**, *besmear* | **lēvi** | **lĭtum** | **lĭnĕre** | **lĭ-** |

**lĭvi** is also found.

In post-Augustan writers, we have **lĭnio, lĭnīvi, lĭnītum, lĭnīre.**

**dēleo**, *blot out*, **delēvi, delētum, delēre,** either belongs to this stem, or to **-oleo**, *grow.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **linqvo**, *leave* | **lĭqvi** | | **linqvĕre** | **lĭqv-** |

The compound, **rĕlinqvo, rĕlĭqvi, rĕlictum, rĕlinqvĕre,** is more usual.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **lĭqveo**, *be clear, fluid* | **lĭcui** | | **lĭqvēre** | **lĭqv-ĕ-** |
| **lĭqvor**, *melt*, intr. | | | **lĭqvi** | **lĭqv-** |
| **lŏqvor**, *speak* | | **lŏcūtum** | **lŏqvi** | **lŏqv-** |
| **lūceo**, *be light, beam* | **luxi** | | **lūcēre** | **lūc-e-** |
| **lūdo**, *sport* | **lūsi** | **lūsum** | **lūdĕre** | **lūd-** |
| **lūgeo**, *mourn*, trans. | **luxi** | **(luctus** subs.) | **lūgēre** | **lūg-e-** |
| **luo**, *pay, expiate* | **lui** | | **luĕre** | **lū-** |

Compounds retain the original meaning, *wash* (**luo**=**lăvo**), and have past part. e.g. **dĭluo, dĭlŭi, dĭlūtum, dĭluĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mando**, *chew* | **mandi** (once) | **mansum** | **mandĕre** | **mand-** |
| **măneo**, *remain, await* | **mansi** | **mansum** | **mănēre** | **măn-e-** |

**ēmĭneo**, *project*, **ēmĭnui, ēmĭnēre** (no supine).

**immĭneo**, *impend*, **promĭneo,** no perf. or supine. **Permăneo** is like **măneo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mĕdeor**, *be a remedy* | | | **mĕdēri** | **mĕd-ĕ-** |
| **-mĕniscor**, only in compounds | | | | **mĕn-** |

Only perfect stem (with present meaning) in use. **Mĕmĭni**, *I remember.* Imperative **memento, mementote.**

**comminiscor**, *devise*, **commentum, comminisci.** So also **rĕminiscor**, *call to mind.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mĕreo**, *earn* | **mĕrui** | **mĕrĭtum** | **mĕrēre** | **mĕr-ĕ-** |
| **mergo**, *sink*, trans. | **mersi** | **mersum** | **mergĕre** | **merg-** |

**ēmĕrgo**, *emerge*, is intrans., but has part. perf. **emersus**, *having emerged.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mētior**, *measure* | | **mensum** | **mētīri** | **mēt-ī-** |
| **mĕto**, *mow* | **(messem feci)** | **messum** | **mĕtĕre** | **mĕt-** |
| **mĕtuo**, *fear* | **mĕtui** | | **mĕtuĕre** | **mĕtū-** |

**mĕtūtus**, once in Lucret.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mĭco**, *quiver, flash* | **mĭcui** | | **mĭcāre** | **mĭc-ă-** |

**ēmĭco, ēmĭcŭi**, fut. part. **emĭcāturus.**

**dĭmico, dĭmicavi (dĭmicui** twice in Ovid), **dĭmicātum.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mingo** | **minxi** | **mictum** | **mingĕre** | **mĭg-** |

Another form of the present is **mejo.**

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mĭnuo**, *lessen* | **mĭnui** | **mĭnūtum** | **mĭnuĕre** | **mĭnŭ-** |
| **misceo**, *mix* | **miscui** | **mixtum** | **miscēre** | **misc-ĕ-** |

The supine is sometimes written **mistum.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mĭsĕreor**, *feel pity* | | **mĭsĕrĭtum** / **misertum** rare | **mĭsĕrēri** | **mĭsĕr-ĕ-** |

**mĭsĕreo** is very rare: **miseret** and (in early writers) **miserētur, miserescit** are used impersonally.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mitto**, *let go, send* | **mīsi** | **missum** | **mittĕre** | **mitt-** |
| **mŏlo**, *grind* | **mŏlui** | **mŏlĭtum** | **mŏlĕre** | **mŏl-** |
| **mŏneo**, *warn* | **mŏnui** | **mŏnĭtum** | **mŏnēre** | **mŏn-ĕ-** |
| **mordeo**, *bite* | **mŏmordi** | **morsum** | **mordēre** | **mord-e-** |
| **mŏrior**, *die* | **mortŭus sum** | **(mŏrĭtūrus)** | **mŏri** | **mŏr-ĭ-** |

Inf. **morīri, emorīri** several times in Plaut. once in Ter. once in Ovid.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mŏveo**, *move*, trans. | **mōvi** | **mōtum** | **mŏvēre** | **mŏv-ĕ-** |
| **mulceo**, *stroke* | **mulsi** | **mulsum** | **mulcēre** | **mulc-e-** |

**Permulctus** is also found besides the more usual **permulsus.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **mulgeo**, *milk* | **mulsi** | | **mulgēre** | **mulg-e** |
| **-mungo** only in compound | | | | **mung-** |

**ēmungo**, *wipe* (nose), **ēmunxi, ēmunctum, ēmungĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **nanciscor**, *gain* | | **nanctum** / **nactum** | **nancisci** | **nanc-ĭ-** / **năc-** |
| **nascor**, *be born* | | **nātum** | **nasci** | **gnā-** |

Originally **gnascor**, whence **agnātus, cognātus, prognātus.** But **ēnascor, ēnātus.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **nĕco**, *kill* | **nĕcāvi** | **nĕcātum** | **nĕcāre** | **nĕc-a** |

**necui** once in Phaedrus and Ennius: **ēnĕco**, *stifle completely*, **ēnĕcui** and **ēnĕcavi** (both rare), **ēnectum, ēnĕcāre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **necto**, *link together* | **nexi** | **nexum** | **nectĕre** | **nect-** |

**nexui** is probably from **nexo, nexĕre** which is an early form.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **neo**, *spin* | **nēvi** | **nētum** (Ulp.) | **nēre** | **nē-** |

**nĕqueo.** See **queo**; and § 266.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ningit** / **ningvit** | *it snows* | **ninxit** | **ningĕre** | **ning-** / **nĭngv-** |
| **nītor**, *lean, strive* | | **nixum** / **nīsum** | **nīti** | **gnict-** |

fut. part. **nīsūrus**: so also compounds.

Originally **gnītor**, *kneel*, from **gĕnu**, *knee.* **Nixus** generally in sense of *leaning*, **nisus**, *striving.* **Conitor, adnitor, enitor**, have both forms frequently (in sense of *bearing children* always **enixa**). **Innisus, obnisus, subnisus** are infrequent: and in poetry all the compounds of **nisus** are rare.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **-nīveo** only in compound | | | | **nigv-** |
| **cōnīveo**, *shut eyes, wink*, | **conīvi** / **conixi** | (both rare) | (no supine) | **cōnīvēre** |
| **nŏceo**, *be hurtful* | **nŏcui** | **(nŏcĭturus)** | **nocēre** | **nŏc-ĕ-** |
| **nosco**, *get to know* | **nōvi**, *I know* | **nōtum** | **noscĕre** | **gno-** |

**nōtus** only as adj. *known:* fut. part. is not used.

**agnosco, cognosco**, have supines **agnĭtum** (fut. part. **agnōturus** once, Sall.), **cognĭtum:**

**ignosco, ignōtum**, fut. part. **ignoturus** (quoted from Cato and Cic.; **ignosciturus** from Piso): **dignosco, internosco**, have no supine.

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **nūbo**, *put on a veil* (as a bride), *marry* | **nupsi** | **nuptum** Part. **nupta**, *married.* | **nūbĕre** | **nūb-** |
| **-nuo**, *nod*, only in compounds : but **nūtus** is used as subst. **annuo, annui, annuĕre. abnuo** has fut. part. **abnuĭturus.** | | | | **nū-** |
| **oblīviscor** (orig. *cover with black*), *forget* | | **oblītum** | **oblīvisci** | **ob-līv-i-** |
| **occŭlo**, *conceal* | **occŭlui** | **occultum** | **occŭlĕre** | **ob-cŭl-** |
| **ŏdi**, perf., *I hate* | | (**ōsūrus**) | | **ŏd-** |

A perf. form **odivi**, once (used by M. Antony). **Exōsus, perōsus** are used with an active meaning as participles and with **sum**, &c. as perfect.

**-ŏleo**, *grow*, is only used in compounds, and is a different word from **ŏleo**, *smell* (intrans.).

**ăbŏleo**, *destroy*, **ăbŏlēvi, ăbŏlĭtum, ăbŏlēre.**

**ăbŏlesco**, *decay*, **ăbŏlēvi**, no supine, **ăbolescĕre.** So also **ĭnŏlesco.**

**ădŏlesco**, *grow up*, **ădŏlēvi, ădolescĕre, adultus**, adj. *grown up.*

**ădŏleo**, (*increase?*), *offer* (*in sacrifice*), *burn* — **adolēvi** / **ădŏlui** — **ădultum** / **ădŏlēre**

For **deleo** see under **lĭno.**

**obsŏlesco**, *wear out*, intr. **obsŏlēvi, obsolescĕre, obsŏlētus**, adj. *worn out.* So also **exŏlesco.**

**ŏleo**, *smell* (intrans.) **ŏlui** — **ŏlēre** — **ŏl-ĕ-**

A consonantal stem (**olat, olant, subolat, praeolat, olĕre**) is found rarely in the comic poets.

**ŏportet**, *it behoves* **ŏportuit** — **ŏportēre** — **ŏport-ĕ-**

Only used in 3rd pers. sing.

**oppĕrior.** See **-pĕrio.**

**ordior**, *commence*, trans. **orsum** — **ordīri** — **ord-ī-**

**ŏrior**, *rise* **ortum** — **ŏrīri** — **ŏr-ī-**

fut. part. **ŏrītūrus** : gerundive **ŏriundus** used as adj. *sprung from.* Pres. ind. **ŏrĭris, ŏrĭtur, ŏrĭmur**, imperf. subj. **orīrer, orĕrer.** The compound **adorior** has in pres. ind. **adŏrĭris, adŏrĭtur.**

**ŏvo**, *triumph* — **ŏv-ā-**

The only forms found are **ovet, ovāret, ovans, ovātus, ovandi.**

**păciscor.** See **pango.**

**paenĭtet**, *it repents* **paenĭtuit** — **paenĭtēre** — **paenĭt-ĕ-**

Rarely personal. **paenitendum** is also found. **paenitens** as adj. *penitent.*

**pando**, *spread out*, *open* **pandi** — **passum** — **panděre** — **pand-** / **păd-**

**Dispando** has **dispansum, dispessum. Expando, expansum.**

**pango**, *fasten* **pĕgi** — **pactum** / **panctum** — **pangĕre** — **păg-** / **pang-**

**compingo, compēgi, compactum, compingĕre.** So **impingo.**

**oppango, oppĕgi, oppactum, oppangĕre. Depango, repango** also retain **a.**

**păc-isc-or**, *bargain* **pĕpĭgi** — **pactum** — **păcisci** — **păc-**

**Compăciscor** or **compĕciscor** has **compactum** or **compectum.**

**parco**, *be sparing* **pĕperci** (**parsurus**) — **parcĕre** — **parc-**

Plautus always, and Terence sometimes, have **parsi.**

**comperco, compersi, compercĕre. Imperco, reperco,** (or **reparco**) found in present only.

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pāreo**, *appear, be obedient* | **pārui** | **(pārĭturus)** | **pārēre** | **pār-ĕ-** |
| **părio**, *get, bring forth* | **pĕpĕri** | **partum** | **părĕre** | **păr-ĭ-** |

Fut. part. **părĭturus.**

**Părens**, *a parent*, is an old participle of this verb.

**compĕrio** / **compĕrior** (rare), *ascertain*, **compĕri, compertum, compĕrīre.**

**rĕpĕrio**, *find*, **reppĕri, rĕpertum, rĕpĕrīre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pasco**, *pasture, feed* | **pāvi** | **pastum** | **pascĕre** | **păs-** |

The active is rarely used of the animals *feeding* except in pres. participle.

**Dēpasco** follows **pasco.**

**Compesco** (lit. *pasture together*?), *confine*, **compescui, compescĕre** (no supine). So **dispesco** (rare), *separate.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pătior**, *suffer* | | **passum** | **păti** | **păt-ĭ-** |

**perpĕtior, perpessus sum, perpĕti.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **păveo**, *quake with fear* | **pāvi** | | **păvēre** | **păv-e-** |
| **pecto**, *comb* | **pexi** (once) | **pexum** | **pectĕre** | **pect-** |
| **pĕdo** | **pĕpēdi** | | **pēdĕre** | **pēd-** |
| **pello**, *push, drive back* | **pĕpŭli** | **pulsum** | **pellĕre** | **pell-** |

**appello** (esp. of a ship, *put in*), **appŭli, appulsum, appellĕre.** So the other compounds. **Rĕpello** always has **reppŭli** or **rĕpŭli.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pendeo**, *hang*, intr. | **pĕpendi** | **pensum** | **pendēre** | **pend-e-** |
| **pendo**, *weigh, pay, value* | **pĕpendi** | **pensum** | **pendĕre** | **pend-** |

originally *hang*, trans. So **suspendo**, *hang up.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **-pĕrio** only in compounds, except **perītus**, *skilled.* | | | | **pĕr-ĭ-** |

**ăpĕrio (ab perio?)**, *uncover, open*, **ăpĕrŭi, ăpertum, ăpĕrīre.**

**expĕrior**, *try*, **expertum, expĕrīri.**

**ŏpĕrio (ob perio?)**, *cover*, **ŏpĕrŭi, ŏpertum, ŏpĕrīre.**

**oppĕrior**, *wait for*, **oppertum** and **opperītum, oppĕrīri.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pĕto**, *seek, aim at* | **pĕtivi** / **pĕtii** | **pĕtītum** | **pĕtĕre** | **pĕt-** / **pĕt-ĭ-** |
| **pĭget**, *it vexes* | **pĭguit** / **pĭgĭtum est** | | **pĭgĕre** | **pĭg-ĕ-** |

Only used in 3rd pers. sing. The gerund and gerundive are also found.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pingo**, *paint* | **pinxi** | **pictum** | **pingĕre** | **pĭg-** / **ping-** |
| **pinso**, **pīso**, *pound* | **pinsui** / **pinsi** | **pinsitum** / **pistum** | **pinsĕre** / **pīsĕre** | **pins-** / **pīs-** |

**Pinsĭbant** once in Ennius. Hence **pinsitus**, often in Columella's prose, has perhaps **ĭ**. **Pinsui, pinsi** occur once each.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **plăceo**, *be pleasing* | **plăcui** | **plăcĭtum** | **plăcēre** | **plăc-ē-** |
| **plango**, *beat* (esp. the breast in grief) | **planxi** | **planctum** | **plangĕre** | **plang-** |
| **plaudo**, *clap* (the hands, &c.) | **plausi** | **plausum** | **plaudĕre** | **plaud-** |

**explōdo** (*hiss off*, i.e. *drive away by hissing*), **explōsi, explōsum, explōdĕre.** So the other compounds. **applaudo** does not change the vowel.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **plecto**, *strike, punish* (rare except in passive) | | | **plectĕre** | **plect-** |

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **-plecto**, *twine* | | **plexum** | **-plectĕre** | **plect-** |

Only in part. perf. and compounds, which are always of deponent form, except in one or two instances of imperatives in prae-Ciceronian writers.

**amplector**, *twine oneself round, embrace*, **amplexum, amplecti.** So **complector.** Of other compounds only participles **implexus**, *entwined*, **perplexus**, *entangled*, are found.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **-pleo**, *fill*, only in compounds | | | | **plē-** |

Compounds as **compleo, complēvi, complētum, complēre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **plĭco**, *fold* | | **plĭcātum** | **plĭcāre** | **plĭc-ā-** |
| **applĭco**, *apply, put in (to shore)* | **applĭcāvi, applĭcātum, applĭcui, applĭcĭtum,** | | **applĭcāre** | |

So the other compounds : the prae-Augustan writers used almost always **-āvi, -ātum.** The simple verb is rarely used.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pluo**, *rain* | **pluit** / **plūvit** (frequent in Livy) | | **pluĕre** | **plŭv-** |
| **pollŭceo**, *offer in sacrifice* | | **polluctum** | **pollucēre** | **pollŭc-ĕ-** |
| **pōno**, *place* | **pŏsui** | **pŏsĭtum** | **pōnĕre** | **pŏ-sĭ-** |

**Posīvi** frequent in Plautus; also in Cato. **Postum** (simple and compound) is frequently found in poetry.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **posco**, *demand* | **pŏposci** | | **poscĕre** | **posc-** |

Compounds retain reduplication, as **dēpŏposci, expŏposci.**

**possĭdeo.** See **sĕdeo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **possum**, *be able* | **pŏtui** (see pp. 104, 105) | | **posse** | **pŏtes-** |
| **pōtior**, *be master* | | **pōtĭtum** | **pōtīri** | **pōt-i** |

In pres. ind. almost always **pōtĭtur, potĭmur** ; imp. subj. **potĕrer** or **potīrer.** In Plaut. act. perf. **potīvi**, whence probably **potui.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pōto**, *drink* | **pōtāvi** | **pōtum** | **pōtāre** | **pōt-ā-** |

**Pōtātum** is rare ; fut. part. **pōtāturus** and **pōturus.**

**pōtus**, *having drunk.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **prandeo**, *dine* | **prandi** | **pransum** | **prandēre** | **prand-e-** |

**pransus**, *having dined.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **prĕhendo**, *lay hold of* | **prĕhendi** | **prĕhensum** | **prĕhendĕre** | **prehend-** |

Often contracted into **prendo**, &c.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **prĕmo**, *press* | **pressi** | **pressum** | **prĕmĕre** | **prĕm-** |

**comprĭmo, compressi, compressum, comprĭmĕre.** So the other compounds.

**prŏfĭciscor.** See **facio.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **psallo**, *play on a stringed instrument* | **psalli** | | **psallĕre** | **psall-** |
| **pŭdet**, *it shames* | **pŭduit** / **pŭdĭtum est** | | **pŭdēre** | **pŭd-ĕ** |

**puditurum** and gerund and gerundive are also found. **Pudens** as adj. *modest.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **pungo**, *prick* | **pŭpŭgi** | **punctum** | **pungĕre** | **pŭg-** / **pung-** |

Compounds have for perfect **-punxi.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **qvaero**, *seek, inquire* | **qvaesīvi** | **qvaesītum** | **qvaerĕre** | **qvaes-** / **qvaes-ī-** |

**conqvīro, conquīsivi, conquīsītum, conquīrĕre.** So the other compounds.

**quaeso, quaesŭmus**, *prythee*, are old colloquial forms of 1st pers.

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **qvătio**, *shake*, trans. | | **qvassum** | **qvătĕre** | **qvăt-ĭ-** |

**concŭtio, concussi, concussum, concŭtĕre.** So the other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **qveo**, *be able* (§ 266) | **qvīvi** | **qvītum** | **qvīre** | **qvī-** |
| **qvĕror**, *complain* | | **qvestum** | **qvĕri** | **qvĕr-** |
| **qviesco**, *rest* | **qviēvi** | **qviētum** | **qviescĕre** | **qvi-ē-** |
| **răbo**, *rave* (rare) | | | **răbĕre** | **răb-** |
| **rādo**, *scrape* | **rāsi** | **rāsum** | **rādĕre** | **rād-** |
| **răpio**, *snatch, hurry away*, trans. | **răpui** | **raptum** | **răpĕre** | **răp-ĭ-** |

**arrīpio, arrīpui, arreptum, arrīpĕre.** So the other compounds.

**ravio**, *be hoarse*, once in Plaut. **rāv-ĭ-**

**ir-rauserit** Cic.; **rausurus** Lucil. come either from this stem or from a stem **rauci-**.

**rĕfert.** See **fĕro.**

**rĕgo**, *keep straight, rule* **rexi** **rectum** **rĕgĕre** **rĕg-**

Compounds as **arrīgo**, *raise*, **arrexi, arrectum, arrigĕre.**

Except **pergo**, *continue*, **perrexi, perrectum, pergĕre,** whence **expergiscor**, (*begin to stretch myself out*), *awake myself*, **experrectum** (**expergītum** in Lucil. Lucr.).

**surgo** (**sub-rego**) *rise*, **surrexi, surrectum, surgĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **reor**, *think* | | **rătum** | **rēri** | **rā-** |

**reor** has no present part.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **rēpo**, *creep* | **repsi** | **reptum** | **rēpĕre** | **rēp-** |
| **rīdeo**, *smile, laugh* | **rīsi** | **rīsum** | **rīdēre** | **rīd-e-** |
| **ringor**, *shew the teeth, snarl* | | (**rictus** subs.) | **ringi** | **rĭg-** |
| **rōdo**, *gnaw* | **rōsi** | **rōsum** | **rōdĕre** | **rōd-** |
| **rŭdo**, *roar, bray* | **rŭdīvi** (rare) | | **rŭdĕre** | **rŭd-** / **rŭd-ĭ-** |

Persius has **rūdere.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **rumpo**, *break* | **rūpi** | **ruptum** | **rumpĕre** | **rŭp-** |

In Plautus the **m** is sometimes retained, e.g. **dirrumptum, corrumptor** (subs.).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ruo**, *tumble, dash* | **rui** | **-rŭtum** | **ruĕre** | **rŭ-** |

Generally intrans. The past part. found only in phrase **rūta caesa** (has **ū** long, according to Varro, but in compounds it is always short; e.g. **dirŭtum**). Fut. part. (post-Augustan) **ruĭturus.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **saepio**, *hedge in* | **saepsi** | **saeptum** | **saepīre** | **saep-ĭ-** |
| **salio** / **sallo**, *salt* | | **salitum** / **salsum** | **sallĕre** | **sal-ĭ-** / **sall-** |

An inf. **salire** is not certain. Nor is the quantity of the first two syllables in **salītum.** The verb is found in MSS. with **l** and **ll.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sălio**, *leap* | **sălŭi** | (**saltus** subst.) | **sălīre** | **săl-ĭ-** |

**Desĭlio, desilui, desīlire.** So the other compounds.

The forms **sallvi, salii** are rare both in simple and compounds.

**sālve**, *hail!* also **salvēte** inf. **salvēre** and fut. **salvēbis.** (The present **salveo** once in Plautus, perhaps in joke, **salve** being probably originally an adverb.)

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sancio**, *hallow, ordain* | **sanxi** | **sanctum** | **sancīre** | **sanc-ĭ-** |

**sancītum** (rarely).

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **săpio,** *have a savour of, be wise* | **săpīvi** | | **săpĕre** | **săp-ī-** |

**desīpio,** *be foolish*, no perf. or sup., **desīpĕre.**

**rĕsīpisco,** *recover senses*, **rĕsīpŭi** and **rĕsīpīvi, rĕsīpiscĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sarcio,** *patch* | **sarsi** | **sartum** | **sarcīre** | **sarc-i-** |
| **sārio,** *hoe* | **sarui** (once) | **sarītum** | **sarīre** | **sar-ī-** |

Also written **sarrio.** Perf. also **sarrīvi.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sarpo,** *trim* | | **sarptum** | **sarpĕre** | **sarp-** |
| **scăbo,** *scratch* | **scābi** (rare) | | **scăbĕre** | **scăb-** |
| **scalpo,** *scrape* | **scalpsi** | **scalptum** | **scalpĕre** | **scalp-** |

Compounds follow **sculpo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **scando,** *climb* | **scandi** | **scansum** | **scandĕre** | **scand-** |

**ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, ascendĕre.** So the other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **scindo,** *tear, cut* | **scĭdi** | **scissum** | **scindĕre** | **scĭd-** |

**Exscindo** has no perfect. The other compounds follow **scindo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **scisco,** *enact* | **scīvi** | **scītum** | **sciscĕre** | **scī-** |

A strengthened form of **scio.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **scrībo,** *write* | **scripsi** | **scriptum** | **scrībĕre** | **scrīb-** |
| **sculpo,** *carve* in stone, &c. | **sculpsi** | **sculptum** | **sculpĕre** | **sculp-** |

Another form of **scalpo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sĕco,** *cut* | **sĕcui** | **sectum** | **sĕcāre** | **sĕc-ā-** |

fut. part. **sĕcātūrus** (once in Colum.).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sĕdeo,** *sit* | **sēdi** | **sessum** | **sēdēre** | **sēd-ē-** |

**Possĭdeo,** *occupy*, **possēdi, possessum, possīdēre.** So the other compounds, except **sŭpersedeo,** *refrain*, **circumsĕdeo,** which do not change the **e.** **Dissĭdeo, praesĭdeo** have no supine.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sentio,** *feel, think* | **sensi** | **sensum** | **sentīre** | **sent-ī-** |

**assentior, assensus sum,** is used as deponent (besides **assentio**).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sĕpĕlio,** *bury* | **sĕpĕlīvi** | **sĕpultum** | **sĕpĕlīre** | **sĕpĕl-ī-** |
| **sĕqvor,** *follow* | | **sĕcutum** | **sĕqvi** | **sĕqv-** |
| **sĕro,** *sow, plant* | **sēvi** | **sătum** | **sĕrĕre** | **să-** |
| **sĕro,** *put in rows* | | (**serta,** *garlands*) | **sĕrĕre** | **sĕr-** |

Compounds as **consĕro, consĕrŭi, consertum, consĕrĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **serpo,** *crawl* | **serpsi** | **serptum** | **serpĕre** | **serp-** |

Another form of **rēpo.** Cf. Greek ἕρπω.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sīdo,** *settle*, intr. | **sīdi** | | **sīdĕre** | **sīd-** |

**sēdi** and **sessum** from **sĕdeo** are the usual perfect and supine, and so the compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sĭno,** *put, leave, suffer* | **sīvi** | **sītum** | **sĭnĕre** | **sĭ-** |

In subj. perf. **sīrim, sīris, sīrit, sīrint.**

**Dēsĭno, dēsii** in post-Augustan writers (**desisti, desiit,** pluperf. **desiĕram,** perf. subj. **dēsiĕrim**), **dēsītum, dēsĭnĕre.** (Cicero and Caesar generally use **destiti** for perf.)

**Dēsītus sum** used before a passive infin. *I ceased.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sisto,** *set, stay*, trans. | **stĭti** (rare) | **stătum** | **sistĕre** | **stă-** |

**desisto, destĭti, destĭtum, desistere.** So the compounds all intransitive. The reduplication is retained. **Sisto** is rarely intrans. and then has perf. **stĕti** (from **sto**). So also **circumstĕti.**

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sŏleo**, *be wont* | | **sŏlĭtum** | **sŏlēre** | **sŏl-ĕ-** |

Perf. **sŏlĭtus sum**, *I was accustomed.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **solvo**, *loose, pay* | **solvi** | **sŏlūtum** | **solvĕre** | **solv-** |

Sometimes in Augustan poets **sŏlui** (trisyllabic).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sŏno**, *sound* | **sŏnui** | **sŏnĭtum** | **sŏnāre** | **sŏn-ā-** |

fut. part. **sŏnātūrus** (once in Hor.). In prae-Augustan poets sometimes **sonĕre, sonĭt, sonunt.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sorbeo**, *sup up, suck in* | **sorbui** | (**sorbĭtio**,subst.) | **sorbēre** | **sorb-ē-** |

**absorbeo, absorbui, absorbēre.** So other compounds. Rarely a perfect (post-Augustan) in **si**; **absorpsi, exsorpsi.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **spargo**, *scatter, besprinkle* | **sparsi** | **sparsum** | **spargĕre** | **sparg-** |

Compounds as **conspergo, conspersi, conspersum, conspergĕre.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **spĕcio**, (or **spicio**?) *look*, only in Plautus. | | | | **spĕc-i-** |

**aspĭcio, aspexi, aspectum, aspĭcere.** So the other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sperno**, *reject, despise* | **sprēvi** | **sprētum** | **sperněre** | **spĕr-** / **sprē-** |
| **spondeo**, *pledge oneself* | **spŏpondi** | **sponsum** | **spondēre** | **spond-e-** |
| **spuo**, *spit* | **spui** | **spūtum** | **spuĕre** | **spū-** |
| **stătuo**, *set up, settle (with oneself)* | **stătui** | **stătūtum** | **stătuĕre** | **statū-** |
| **sterno**, *throw on the ground, cover* | **strāvi** | **strātum** | **sterněre** | **stăr-** / **strā-** |
| **sternuo**, *sneeze* | **sternui** | | **sternuĕre** | **sternū-** |
| **sterto**, *snore* | **stertui** | | **stertĕre** | **stert-** |
| **stingvo** (rare), *stamp, extinguish* | | | **stingvĕre** | **stingv-** |

**Exstingvo, exstinxi, exstinctum, exstingvĕre.** So the other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sto**, *stand* | **stĕti** | **stătum** | **stāre** | **stā-** |

Fut. part. **stātūrus** in Lucan.

**Praesto**, *be superior, warrant, render*, **praestĭti, praestatum** (also **praestĭtum**), **praestāre.** The other compounds have fut. part. **-staturus** (**constāturus** Luc. Mart., **perstāturus** Stat.) but no supine: **disto** has no perf. or supine: those with disyllabic prepositions retain **e** in the perf. (e.g. **circumstĕti**).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **strĕpo**, *make a din* | **strĕpui** | **strĕpĭtum** | **strĕpĕre** | **strĕp-** |
| **strĭdeo**, *hiss, screech* | **strĭdi** | | **strĭdēre** | **strĭd-e-** |

A consonantal form (e.g. **stridunt, striděre**) is found in Augustan poets.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **stringo**, *strip, graze, draw tight* | **strinxi** | **strictum** | **stringĕre** | **strĭg-** / **string-** |
| **struo**, *heap up, build* | **struxi** | **structum** | **struere** | **strugv-** |
| **svādeo**, *recommend* | **svāsi** | **svāsum** | **svādēre** | **svād-e-** |
| **svesco**, *accustom oneself* | **svēvi** | **svētum** | **svescĕre** | **svē-** |

An old form is found of pres. indic. 1st plur. **suēmus** (as from **sueo**).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **sūgo**, *suck* | **suxi** | **suctum** | **sūgĕre** | **sūg-** |
| **sum**, *be* (see pp. 104, 105) | | | **esse** | **ĕs-** |
| **suo**, *sow, stitch* | **sui** | **sūtum** | **suĕre** | **sū-** |

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **tăceo,** *be silent* | **tăcui** | **tăcĭtum** | **tăcēre** | **tăc-e-** |
| **taedet,** *it wearieth* | **taesum est** | | | **taed-e-** |

For perf. the compound **pertaesum est** is more common. **Taedescit, obtaedescit, distaedet** are also used impersonally.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **tango,** *touch* | **tĕtĭgi** | **tactum** | **tangere** | **tăg-** |

**Attingo, attĭgi, attactum, attingĕre.** So the other compounds. In Plautus rarely **tago, attigo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **tĕgo,** *cover* | **texi** | **tectum** | **tĕgĕre** | **tĕg-** |
| **temno,** *despise* | **tempsi** | **temptum** | **temnĕre** | **tem-** |
| **tendo,** *stretch, tend* | **tĕtendi** | **tentum** | **tendĕre** | **tend-** |

In post-Augustan writers sometimes **tēnsum.** Compounds have **-tensum** occasionally.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **tĕneo,** *hold* | **tĕnui** | **tentum** (rare) | **tenēre** | **tĕn-ĕ-** |

Supine and cognate forms are little used, except in the compounds, **detinĕo, obtĭneo,** and **rĕtĭneo. Contentus** only as adj. *content.* **dētĭneo, dētĭnui, dētentum, dētĭnēre.** So the other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **terreo,** *frighten* | **terrui** | **terrĭtum** | **terrēre** | **tĕrr-ĕ-** |
| **tergeo,** *wipe* | **tersi** | **tersum** | **tergĕre** | **terg-e-** |

A consonantal stem (e.g. **tergit, terguntur**) is also found sometimes.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **tĕro,** *rub* | **trīvi** | **trītum** | **tĕrĕre** | **tĕr-** / **trī-** |

**attĕruisse** in Tibull. (once).

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **texo,** *weave* | **texŭi** | **textum** | **texĕre** | **tex-** |
| **tingo,** / **tingvo,** *dip, dye* | **tinxi** | **tinctum** | **tingĕre** / **tingvĕre** | **tingv-** |
| **tollo,** *lift up, remove* | **(sustŭli)** | **(sublatum)** | **tollĕre** | **toll-** |

**tŭli** (in prae-August. poets **tĕtŭli**) and **latum** (for **tlatum**) are the proper perf. and supine: but as these are taken by **fĕro, tollo** takes the perf. and supine of its compound **sustollo.**

The compounds have no perf. or supine.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **tondeo,** *shear* | **tŏtondi** | **tonsum** | **tondēre** | **tond-e-** |
| **tŏno,** *thunder* | **tŏnui** | **tŏnĭtum** | **tŏnāre** | **tŏn-ā-** |

**intŏno** has part. **intŏnātus** (once Hor.). The other compounds follow **tŏno.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **torqveo,** *twist, whirl* | **torsi** | **tortum** | **torqvēre** | **torqv-e-** |
| **torreo,** *roast* | **torrui** | **tostum** | **torrēre** | **tors-e-** |
| **trăho,** *drag* | **traxi** | **tractum** | **trăhĕre** | **trăh-** |
| **trĕmo,** *tremble* | **trĕmui** | | **trĕmĕre** | **trĕm-** |
| **trĭbuo,** *assign, grant* | **trĭbui** | **trĭbūtum** | **trĭbuĕre** | **trĭbū-** |
| **trūdo,** *thrust* | **trūsi** | **trūsum** | **trūdĕre** | **trūd-** |
| **tŭeor,** *look at, protect* | | **tūtum** / **tuĭtum** | **tuēri** | **tu-ĕ-** |

**tūtus,** adj. *safe.*

**Tūtātus sum** (from **tutor**) is generally used as perfect; **tūtus** or (post-Augustan) **tuitus sum** are rare. **Contueor, intueor** have (post-Augustan) **contŭĭtus, intŭĭtus sum.** A present with stem in **-u** (e.g. **tuĭmur, contuor,** &c.), is frequent in prae-August. poets and Seneca's tragedies.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **tundo,** *thump* | **tŭtŭdi** | **tūsum** / **tunsum** | **tundĕre** | **tŭd-** |

**Contundo, contŭdi, contūsum, contundĕre.** So **pertundo. Obtundo, retundo** have both **-tunsum** and **-tūsum.** Perf of **retundo** always **retundi.**

| Present. | Perfect. | Supine. | Pres. Infinitive. | Stem. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **turgeo**, *swell* | **tursi** (very rare) | | **turgēre** | **turg-e-** |
| **vādo**, *go* | | | **vādĕre** | **vād-** |

**Invādo, invāsi, invāsum, invādĕre.** So other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **vāleo**, *be strong* | **vălui** | **(vălĭtūrus)** | **vălēre** | **văl-ĕ-** |
| **vĕgeo**, *stir up* (old word) | | **(vĕgĕtus** adj.) | **vĕgēre** | **vĕg-ĕ-** |
| **vĕho**, *carry* | **vexi** | **vectum** | **vĕhĕre** | **vĕh-** |

Pres. part. and gerund also used intransitively, *riding.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **vello**, *pull, pluck* | **velli** | **vulsum** | **vellĕre** | **vell-** |

**Vulsi** both in simple and compounds is sometimes found in post-Augustan writers.

**vendo**, *sell.* See **do.**

**vĕneo**, *be sold.* See **eo.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **vĕnio**, *come* | **vēni** | **ventum** | **vĕnīre** | **vĕn-ī-** |
| **vĕreor**, *be awed at* | | **vĕrĭtum** | **vĕrēri** | **vĕr-e-** |
| **vergo**, *incline* | | | **vergĕre** | **verg-** |
| **verro**, *brush* | **verri** (rare) | **versum** | **verrĕre** | **verr-** |
| **verto**, *turn* | **verti** | **versum** | **vertĕre** | **vert-** |

So the compounds generally, but

**dīvertor**, *put up* (at an inn), **diverti** (perf.), **diversum, diverti** (inf.).

**rĕvertor**, *return*, perf. **reverti, reversum, reverti** (inf.), **reversus**, *having returned.*

**praevertor**, *attend to first*, is entirely deponent: **praeverto**, *be beforehand with*, is very rare.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **vescor**, *feed oneself* | | | **vesci** | **vesc-** |
| **vĕto**, *forbid* | **vĕtŭi** | **vĕtĭtum** | **vĕtāre** | **vĕt-ă-** |

Persius has a perfect **vetāvi.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **vīdeo**, *see* | **vīdi** | **vīsum** | **vīdēre** | **vīd-e-** |

**vīdeor, vīsum, vīdēri**, very common in sense of *seem.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **vieo**, *plait* (twigs, &c.) | | **vietum** | **viĕre** | **vi-e-** |

part. **viĕtus** (Ter. Lucr., but **viĕtus.** Hor.), *shrivelled.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **vincio**, *bind* | **vinxi** | **vinctum** | **vincīre** | **vinc-ī-** |
| **vinco**, *conquer* | **vīci** | **victum** | **vincĕre** | **vīc-** |
| **vīso**, *visit* | **vīsi** | | **vīsĕre** | **vīs-** |
| **vīvo**, *live* | **vixi** | **victum** | **vīvĕre** | **vigv-** |
| **ulciscor**, *avenge oneself on, avenge* | | **ultum** | **ulcisci** | **ulc-** |
| **ungo**, **ungvo**, *grease* | **unxi** | **unctum** | **ungĕre** / **ungvĕre** | **ungv-** |
| **vŏlo**, *will* | **vŏlui** | | **velle** | **vŏl-** |

So its compounds **nōlo, mālo** ; see p. 106.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **volvo**, *roll* | **volvi** | **vŏlūtum** | **volvĕre** | **volv-** |

Sometimes **volui** in Augustan poets.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **vŏmo**, *vomit* | **vŏmui** | **vŏmĭtum** | **vŏmĕre** | **vŏm-** |
| **vŏveo**, *vow* | **vŏvi** | **vōtum** | **vŏvēre** | **vŏv-e-** |
| **urgeo**, *push, press* | **ursi** | | **urgēre** | **urg-e-** |
| **ūro**, *burn* | **ussi** | **ustum** | **ūrĕre** | **ūs-** |

**Combūro, combussi, combustum, combūrĕre**, is a compound of **com** with an older form **buro**, seen in **bustum**, *tomb.*

Other compounds (**exūro**, &c.) follow the usual form.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ūtor**, *avail oneself, make use* | | **ūsum** | **ūti** | **ūt-** |

310 The following verbs (with many others) are used as deponents; but some of them are also used, especially in the past participle, as passive. In some again both the active and deponent forms are in use either generally or in some others. Some past participles are given which are used as if deponents, though the usual form of the verb is active:

**abōminari**, *detest;* **abōminatus** also pass.
**adsentiri**, *assent;* also passive; **adsentire** frequent.
**ădūlari**, *wheedle, flatter;* also **adūlare** (Lucr.).
**adultus**, *grown up;* from **ădŏlescĕrĕ**.
**altercari**, *dispute;* also **altercare** (Ter.).
**ăpisci**, *get;* once passive (Plaut.). Of compound **adĭpiscor**, **adeptus** is rarely passive.
**arbĭtrāri**, *judge;* **arbitrare** act., **arbitrari** pass. in Plaut.
**aucŭpari**, *catch at;* also **aucŭpare** (Plaut.).
**augŭrari**, *take omens;* also rarely **augŭrare**; **auguratus** also pass. (Cic. Liv. rarely).
**auspĭcari**, *take omens;* also **auspĭcare** (Plaut.), **auspicatus** also pass.
**blandiri**, *play the coax.*
**cenātus**, *having supped;* from **cēnāre.**
**cŏmĭtari**, *accompany;* also pass.
**commentari**, *think over, practise;* **commentatus** also pass.
**comminisci**, *devise;* **commentus** also pass. (Ov.).
**compĕriri** (Ter. Sall.), *find out;* usually pass.
**concrētus**, *grown together;* from **concrescĕre.**
**conspĭratus**, *having conspired;* from **conspĭrare.**
**contemplari**, *contemplate;* also **contemplare** (Plaut.).
**crīmĭnari**, *accuse;* once in Cic. passively; also **crīmĭnare** (Plaut.).
**cunctari**, *delay.*
**dignari**, *think worthy;* **dignatus** also pass.
**dŏmĭnari**, *play the lord.*
**eventum** subst., *an event;* from **evĕnīre.**
**execrari**, *curse;* **execratus** also pass.
**exordiri**, *commence speaking;* **exorsus** also pass.
**expĕriri**, *try;* **expertus** also pass.
**fabrĭcari**, *manufacture;* also **fabricare.**
**fatĕri**, *confess;* so **confiteri**; **confessus** also pass.
**fēnĕrari**, *lend money;* also **fenerare.**
**fluctuari** (Liv.), *fluctuate;* usually **fluctuare.**
**fāri**, *speak;* **effatus** also pass.
**frustrari**, *disappoint;* also pass. (Sall.).
**gloriari**, *boast.*
**grăvari**, *be annoyed.*
**hortari**, *exhort.*
**ĭmĭtari**, *imitate;* **imitatus** also pass. (Ov. Quint.).
**interprĕtari**, *interpret;* **interpretatus** also pass.
**jurātus**, *having sworn;* **conjūratus**, *having conspired;* from **jūrare**, **conjurare.**
**largiri**, *make gifts.*
**lūcrari**, *make gain.*
**luctari**, *struggle;* also **luctare** (Plaut. Ter.).
**lūdĭfĭcari**, *make sport of;* also **ludificare** (esp. Plaut.).
**luxŭriari**, *be luxuriant;* usually **luxuriare.**
**mĕdĭcari**, *apply remedies;* usually **medicare.**
**mĕditari** *meditate*; **meditatus** also pass.

**mendīcari** (Plaut.), *be a beggar;* usually **mendīcare.**
**mentiri,** *tell a lie;* **mentītus** also pass.
**mĕrēri,** *deserve,* sometimes *earn;* **mĕrēre,** *earn,* sometimes *deserve.*
**mētari,** **mētiri,** *measure;* **mētātus, mētītus** also pass.
**mŏdĕrari,** *rule;* **mŏdĕrātus** also pass.
**mŏdŭlari,** *modulate;* **modulatus** also pass. (Ov.).
**mūnĕrari,** *reward;* also **mūnĕrare.**
**nupta,** *married;* from **nūbĕre.**
**nūtriri** (Verg. once), *nurse;* usually **nūtrīre.**
**oblīvisci,** *forget;* **oblītus,** also pass. (Verg.).
**occāsus,** *of the sun, having sunk;* from **occĭdĕre.**
**opīnari,** *be of opinion;* also **opīnare** (Plaut.); **opinatus** also pass. (Cic.).
**opsōnari** (Plaut.), *purchase meat,* &c.; usually **opsonare.**
**oscĭtari,** *yawn;* also **oscitare.**
**ōsus, exosus, perosus,** *having hated,* see p. 144.
**păcisci,** *bargain;* **pactus** also pass.
**palpari,** *coax;* also **palpare.**
**partiri,** *divide;* also **partire.** So usually **dispertire, impertire.**
**plăcĭtus,** *having pleased;* from **placēre.**
**popŭlari,** *lay waste;* also **pŏpŭlare.**
**pōtus,** *having drunk;* see **potare,** p. 146.
**praetĕrītus** (of time, &c.), *having gone by;* from **praeterīre.**
**pransus,** *having dined;* from **prandēre.**
**pūnīri,** *punish;* usually **pūnīre.**
**quiētus,** *at rest;* from **quiescĕre.**
**ructari** (Hor.), *belch;* usually **ructare.**
**sectari,** *follow;* rarely passive; **insectare** in Plaut.
**sortīri,** *cast lots for;* also **sortire** (Plaut.); **sortītus** also pass.
**suētus,** *accustomed;* from **suescĕre.**
**tăcĭtus,** *silent;* from **tăcēre.**
**testĭfĭcari,** **testari,** *declare, call to witness;* **testĭficatus, testatus,** also pass.
**trĭcari,** *trifle;* compounds not usually deponent **extricare, intricare.**
**tūtari,** *defend;* rarely pass.
**ulcisci,** *avenge;* once pass. (Sall.); **ultus** also pass. (Liv.).
**vĕnĕrari,** *worship;* also **venerare** (Plaut.), **veneratus** also pass. (Verg. Hor.).

# BOOK III.

## *WORD-FORMATION.*

## CHAPTER I.

### ELEMENTS OF WORD-FORMATION.

341 WORDS are formed either directly from roots or from other words. The elements of formation are four:

(a) *reduplication*,
(b) *internal change*,
(c) *addition of suffixes*,
(d) *combination of two or more words into one.*

Two or more of these modes of formation may be called into use in forming a word; and especially, almost all words, whatever other change the root may have undergone, exhibit some suffix or other.

342 *Reduplication* is the repetition of the root syllable, either to express repeated action or simply to give additional emphasis to the root. In Latin there appear but few instances of reduplication. The following among others are probably such:

1. Reduplication of a closed syllable:

**bar-băr-us**, *foreign* (from *βάρβαρος*); **cin-cin-nus**, *a curl* (comp. *κίκιννος*); **gur-gŭl-io**, *the windpipe;* **mur-mur** (n.), *a murmur* (comp. *μορμύρειν*); **quisquis**, *whosoever;* **tin-tin-āre**, *to tinkle;* **tur-tur** (m. f.), *a dove;* **ŭl-ŭl-a**, *a screech-owl;* **ŭl-ŭl-are**, *to howl, wail* (comp. *ὀλ-ολ-ύζειν*).

2. Reduplication of an open syllable; or rather, of the initial consonant, with a vowel appended:

**bĭ-bĕre**, *to drink;* **cĭ-cāda**, *a grasshopper;* **cŭ-cūlus**, *a cuckoo* (comp. *κόκκυξ*); **cŭ-cŭmis** (m.), *a cucumber;* **pī-pīre**, *to chirp;* **sŭ-surrus**, *a whisper* (comp. *σῡρίζειν*); **tĭ-tillare**, *to tickle;* **tĭ-tŭbāre**, *to stumble.*

For the use of reduplication to form the *present* stem of verbs see § 295. 1; and to form the *perfect* stem, § 309 sqq.

343 *Internal change* is frequently found accompanying the addition of suffixes, or accompanying composition, but is then due mainly to the shifting of the accent (which is often brought about by lengthening the word), or to the influence of neighbouring consonants. The usual changes have been set forth in Book I. There appear to be but few instances in Latin, in which there is clear evidence of internal change being employed as the main element in the formation of a word. Compare however, e.g. **tŏga** with **tĕg-ĕre**; **sĕd-es** with **sĕd-ēre**; **fĭdes** with **fīdĕre**; **prŏc-us** with **prĕc-ari**; **dŭc-ere** with **dŭc- (dux)**; **dīcere** with **malĕdĭcus**, &c.; **vōc.**, nom. **vox**, with **vŏcare**. For the change of vowel in forming the perfect tense see § 310.

But if, as is probable, the primary form of roots admitted of short vowels only, then all instances of (apparent) roots with long vowels fall under this head (unless the long vowel is a compensation for omitted consonants); e.g. **lux, pax**, &c., **scrīb-ere, lūd-ere**, &c.

344 *Suffixes* are of three kinds:

(1) suffixes of inflexion,

(2) stem-suffixes (included under *inflexions* in Book II.),

(3) derivative suffixes.

(1) *Suffixes of inflexion* are those which are employed to form the several cases and numbers of nouns, and the persons, moods, tenses, voice, &c. of verbs.

(2) *Stem-suffixes* are those which form the distinguishing marks of the several declensions of nouns, and of the several conjugations (or classes) of verbs. In nouns of the first class they are **a, e, o**; in nouns of the second class **u, i** or **e**; in verbs **a, u, e, i**. A large class of nouns, and the most primitive verbs, have no stem-suffix.

The application of the stem-suffixes in Latin nouns coincides to a large extent with the distinction of gender: in verbs it coincides, at least as regards the **a** and **e** stems, to a noticeable degree, with the distinction of transitive and intransitive action, the **a** stems being frequently transitive, e.g. **amāre**, *to love;* the **e** stems being frequently intransitive, e.g. **nŏcēre**, *to be hurtful;* **splendēre**, *to shine.* The absence of a stem-suffix in many nouns is the result of the shifting of the accent, and consequent slurring of the end of the word, the consonant stem being thus reduced by one syllable from what was, or would otherwise have been, their full form (with a stem-suffix); e.g. **praeceps** for **praecĭpĭts**, &c. In other nouns of the same class (consonant stems) there appears to be no clear ground for assuming the previous existence of a stem-suffix.

Many noun-stems and many verb-stems are apparently formed directly from the root by the addition of these stem-suffixes. In some a reduplication or an internal change, especially of the vowel, occurs also. The formation of one word, compound or simple, from another is often effected by the substitution of the stem-suffix appropriate to one part of speech for that appropriate to another.

345 The following are *examples* of the formation of nouns from roots or from other words by the addition or substitution of no other than a stem-suffix. The majority of verbs are so formed.

**A.** **advĕna**, *a stranger* (**advenī-re**); **convīva**, *a guest* (**convīv-ĕre**); **funda**, *a sling* (**fund-ĕre**); **mŏla**, *a mill* (**mŏl-ĕre**); **scrība**, *a clerk* (**scrīb-ĕre**); **tŏga**, *a cloak* (**tĕg-ĕre**); **trăha**, *a sledge* (**trăh-ĕre**).

**O.** **ahēnobarbus**, *bronze-beard* (**barba-**); **condus**, *a store-keeper* (**cond-ĕre**); **cŏqvus**, *a cook* (**cŏqv-ĕre**); **fīdus**, *trusty* (**fīd-ĕre, fīde-s**); **jŭgum**, *a yoke* (comp. **jungĕre**); **mergus**, *a diver* (**merg-ĕre**); **nescius**, *ignorant* (**nescī-re**); **prōfŭgus**, *deserting* (**prōfŭgĕ-re**); **prōmus**, *a butler* (**prōm-ĕrĕ**); **rŏgus**, *a funeral pile* (**rĕg-ĕre**, comp. **erĭgĕre**, *to erect*); **sŏnus**, *a sound* (**sŏn-ĕre** and **sŏnāre**).

**U.** **ăcus**, *a needle* (**ăc-**, comp. **ăc-u-ĕre**); **currus**, *a chariot* (**curr-ĕre**); **dŏmus**, *a house* (comp. **δέμ-ειν**, *to build*, **dŏmāre**, *to tame*).

**I** (or **E**). **abnormis**, *abnormal* (**norma-**); **bilinguis**, *two-tongued* (**lingua**); **nūbes**, *a cloud* (**nūb-ĕre**, *to cover*, comp. **νέφ-ος**); **rūpes**, *a rock* (**rump-ĕre**, *to break*); **sēdes**, *a seat* (**sĕd-ēre**); **vĕhes**, *a cartload* (**vĕh-ĕre**).

[The following are without stem-suffix. **dux**, *a leader* (**dūc-**, comp. **dūc-ĕre**); **incus**, *an anvil* (**incūd-ĕre**); **ŏbex**, *a bolt* (**obicĕ-re**); **plānipes**, *flatfooted* (**pĕd-**).]

(3) *Derivative suffixes* are those additions (not being recognisable roots) which are interposed between the root and the stem-suffix; or, when there is no stem-suffix, between the root and the suffix of inflexion. If they are themselves recognisable as roots, the formation of the word belongs to the sphere of

*Composition*, which is treated of in a separate Chapter.

*Interjections*, some of which are words, some mere natural sounds, will be enumerated in the last Chapter.

## CHAPTER II.

### DERIVATIVE SUFFIXES.

346 DERIVATIVE suffixes may originally have been words, but are now merely sounds or combinations of sounds which have no separate use or separate meaning, but modify the meaning of the word to which they are suffixed. The same suffix does not usually express precisely the same modifications, and different suffixes often seem to have the same effect: compare e.g. **-tūdŏn-**, **-tia**, **-tāt**, all forming abstract substantives of quality, e.g. **amaritudo** (Plin.); **amarities** (Catull.), *bitterness*; **acerbĭtas**, *harshness*. Frequently indeed the use of a suffix may have proceeded from a fancied or imperfectly apprehended analogy;

and the ending of a word, which is partly composed of stem-consonants or stem-vowels, and partly of a suffix, has apparently been taken for an entire suffix, and as such applied to other stems. Sometimes the sense of the suffix has been obscured, and a further suffix is added to realize what the former suffix once expressed; e.g. **puella** is diminutive of **puĕra**, but afterwards supplanted **puera** as the ordinary term for a girl, and thus **puellula** was formed for a *little* or *very young girl*.

347 A light vowel, **ŏ**, **ŭ**, **ĕ**, more frequently **ĭ**, is often found between the last consonant of the stem and the suffix.

Its origin is not clear. Sometimes it appears to be part of the suffix; e.g. **-ĕc** (**-ĭc**) in **sĕnex**, **pūmex**, &c.; more frequently it appears to be the stem-suffix weakened; e.g. **candidus** from **cande-**; **altitūdo** from **alto-**, &c.; sometimes it appears to owe its birth to analogy with other words; sometimes to a desire to ease the pronunciation, or avoid the destructive effect of contiguous consonants; or even to render possible the use of the word in verse. It is indeed possible that it may be an expression of the slight sound occasioned by opening the organs, in order fully to articulate the final consonant.

It has most frequently been treated in the following lists as the weakened stem-suffix; but its occurrence in words formed from consonant stems is by no means unusual, and seems to conflict with this theory of its origin. If these consonant stems are the stunted remnants of forms which originally were vowel stems, this weakened vowel may be the relic of the fuller form. (So in French the final **t** of the Latin 3rd pers. sing. is preserved only before a vowel; e.g. **a-t-il**, and its meaning lost to the popular consciousness). If otherwise, one of the other explanations must be resorted to.

348 The long vowel, found not uncommonly in the same part of a derivative, is sometimes part of the suffix; e.g. **dum-ētum** for **dum-ec-tum**; sometimes due to contraction of the stem-suffix with a short initial vowel of the suffix; e.g. the suffix **-īno** appended to the stems **Romā-**, **divo-**, **tribu-**, **mari-**, **ege-** gives **Rōmānus**, **divīnus**, **tribūnus**, **marīnus**, **egēnus**: the suffix **-īli** appended to **ancŏra-**, **tribu-**, **fide-**, **civi-** gives **ancorālis**, **tribūlis**, **fidēlis**, **civīlis**. Sometimes it is due to following a false analogy; e.g. **mont-ānus**, **anser-ī-nus**, &c., **virgin-ālis**, **rēg-ālis**, &c.

In other respects the ordinary laws of consonant and vowel changes (given in Book I.) are observed.

349 These suffixes are sometimes simple, i.e. consisting of a single vowel, or a single consonant with a vowel; sometimes compound, i.e. consisting of two consonants with one or two vowels. Compound suffixes are usually the result of adding a suffix to a stem which is itself a derivative; but sometimes the suffix, though originally compound, has come to be treated as if it were a simple suffix; e.g. **-uncŭlo**: sometimes it may be really a word which has ceased to be used separately, and only appears now to be suffixal; e.g. **-ginta**, and perhaps **-gno**, **-mōnio**, **-cīnio**, &c.

350 In the following lists the principal suffixes only are given. The primary arrangement of noun-endings is according to the consonant or vowel which immediately precedes either the stem-suffix, or, in consonant nouns, the suffix of inflexions. (For instance, the suffixes **-mōnio**, **-cīnio** are given under the head of **-io**, not under **mōn-** or **cīn-**; **-trīci**

under **-ci**, not under **t** or **r**; &c.) Subordinately to this, first come all word-endings which have the stem-suffix of nouns of the first class (**o** being used, for convenience sake, as inclusive of **a**); secondly, word-endings of the second class. The simplest endings, among which are those beginning with short vowels, are put first; then such compound endings as have a consonant before the same short vowel; then simple endings with long vowels; lastly, compound endings with the same long vowel. The order of the consonants and vowels is the same as in Books I. and II.: the order of the words is generally alphabetical. Only a few instances of each suffix are given.

## CHAPTER III.

## LABIAL AND GUTTURAL NOUN-STEMS.

### Labial Noun-Stems.

i. *Stems ending in* **-mo.**

351 **-mo** 1. Adjectives: e.g. **al-mus**, *nourishing* (**ăl-ĕre**):
2. Substantives: e.g. **ar-mus** (m.), *shoulder-joint* (comp. ἄρ-, ἀραρίσκειν); **fā-ma** (f.), *fame* (**fā-ri**); **spū-ma**, *foam* (**spuĕre**).

**-ŭmo** or **-ĭmo** used to form adjectives in the superlative degree and ordinal numbers; e.g. **post-ŭmus**, *last-born* (**post-**); **īmus** (for **in-īmus**), *inmost, lowest.*

**-iss-ŭmo** or **-iss-ĭmo** probably composed of **-ŭmo** appended to the stem of the comparative; so that **-iss-umo = iōs-ŭmo.** Very frequent; e.g. **alt-issŭmus**, *highest* (**alto-**, *high*, **alt-iōs-**, *higher*); **aud-ac-issŭmus**, *boldest* (**audāci-**, **audac-iōs-**); **antiquissĭmus**, *most ancient* (**antiquo-**, **antiqu-iōs-**). Cf. § 174.

**-l-ŭmo** or **-l-ĭmo** } i.e. the same suffix appended to the final consonant of
**-r-ŭmo** or **-r-ĭmo** } adjectives in **-li** and **-ro** or **-ri**. The **l** or **r** is doubled: e.g. **facil-lŭmus**, *easiest* (**facili-**); **celer-rĭmus**, *swiftest* (**cĕlĕri-**); **miser-rimus**, *most wretched* (**mĭsĕro-**).

352 **-t-ŭmo** or **-t-ĭmo** e.g.
(*a*) **fīnī-tŭmus**, *on the borders* (**fīni-**); **leg-ĭtŭmus**, *legal.*
(*b*) Superlatives: **ex-tĭmus**, *outmost* (**ex**); **in-tĭmus**, *inmost* (**in**).
(*c*) Ordinal numbers from the 20th to 90th inclusive. The initial **t** of the suffix joined to the final **t** of the cardinal forms **ss**, of which one **s** was omitted, and in post-Augustan times the preceding **n** was sometimes omitted also; e.g. **vīcens-ŭmus** (afterwards **vīcēs-ĭmus**), *twentieth*, is for **vigint-tŭmus** (**viginti**); **tricens-ŭmus**, *thirtieth* (**trīgintā**). Cf. § 178.

**-ens-ŭmo**
**-ēs-ŭmo** } Ordinal numbers from 200 to 1000 inclusive, probably by false analogy from the preceding: e.g. **ducent-ēns-ŭmus** (later **ducent-ēs-ĭmus**), *two-hundredth* (**ducenti-**); **millens-ŭmus** (**mil-lēsĭmus**), *thousandth* (**mille**).

ii. *Stems ending in* **-vo, -uo.**

353 **-vo** is found after vowels, or **l** or **r**; **-uo** after other consonants (including **tr**).

**-vo** 1. Adjectives: e. g. **cur-vus**, *curved* (comp. **cir-cus**, *κυρ-τός*, *κυλ-λός*); **gnā-vus**, *knowing* (comp. **gnā-vus**, **gno-scĕre**).
2. Substantives: e.g. **cor-vus**, *a raven* (comp. **cor-nix**); **nae-vus**, *a mole on the body*, literally *a birth-mark* (**gi-gĕn-o**).

**-uo** 1. Adjectives, from verb stems: e.g. **ambĭg-uus**, *on both sides*, *ambiguous* (**amb-igere**, *to drive round*); **mūt-uus**, *by way of change* (**mūt-āre**); **rēlĭc-uus**, *remaining* (**relinqv-ĕre**).
2. Substantives: e.g. **patr-uus**, *a father's brother* (**patr-**); **jān-ua**, *a gate* (**jāno-**).

**-i-vo** Adjectives: e.g. **nŏc-ĭvus** (also **nŏcuus**), *hurtful* (**nŏcēre**); **subsĭc-ĭvus**, *cut off*, *spare* (**subsĕcāre**); **vŏc-ĭvus**, early form for **văcuus**, *empty* (**văcāre**).

**-t-īvo** i.e. **-īvo** added to the participial forms in **-to**;
Adjectives: e.g. **cap-t-īvus**, *captive* (**căpĕ-re**); **fŭgĭ-t-īvus**, *run-away* (**fŭgĕ-re**); **praerŏgā-t-īvus**, *first-asked* (**praerogāre**). So the grammatical terms **ablātīvus**, **dătīvus**, **demonstrāt-īvus**, **rēlātīvus**, &c.

## Guttural Noun-Stems.

i. *Stems ending in* **-co, -qvo.**

354 **-co** 1. Adjectives: e.g. **pris-cus**, *of aforetime* (**prius**); **raucus** (for **rāuicus**), *hoarse* (**rāvis**, *hoarseness*).
2. Substantives: e. g. **juven-cus**, *a bullock* (**jŭvĕn-**); **es-ca**, *food* (**ēdĕre** or **esse**, *to eat*).

**-ĭco** i.e. (usually) **-co** suffixed to vowel stems.
1. Adjectives: e.g. **Afr-ĭcus**, *of the Afri* (**Afro-**); **cīv-ĭcus**, *of a citizen* (**cīvi-**); **mĕd-ĭcus**, *of healing* (**medēri**, *to heal*).
2. Substantives: **vīl-ĭcus**, *a farm-steward* (**villa-**); **fabr-ĭca**, *a workshop*, *handi-work* (**fabro-**); **pĕd-ĭca**, *a snare* (**pĕd-**, *foot*).

**-tĭco** which suffixed to an **a** stem makes **-ātĭ-co-**
Adjectives: **rus-tĭcus**, *of the country* (**rūs-**); **errā-tĭcus**, *wandering* (**errāre**); **silvā-ticus**, *of a wood* (**silva-**); hence subst. **viāticum**, *journey supplies* (**via-** comp. **viātor**).

355 **-ūco** e.g. **căd-ūcus**, *falling* (**căd-ĕre**); usually substantives: e.g. **aerūca**, *verdigris* (**aes**).

**-īco** Adjectives: e.g. **ămīcus**, *friendly* (**ămāre**); **postīcus**, *behind* (**post**).
Substantives: e.g. **lectīca**, *a sedan* (**lecto-**, *couch*); **lōrīca**, *a breast-guard* of leathern *thongs* (from **lōrum**).

-Iqvo- }
-Inqvo- } **antIqvus**, *preferable, ancient* (**ante**); **longin-qvus**, *distant* (**longo-**); **prŏpinqvus**, *near* (**prŏpĕ**).

ii. *Stems ending in* **-ci, -c.**

356 **-ĕc (-Ic)** Substantives: e.g. **sĕn-ex**, *old* (gen. **sĕn-is**); **vort-ex**, *a whirl* (**vort-ĕre**).

**-āci** }
**-ōci** } Adjectives chiefly from verb-stems: e.g. **aud-ax**, *daring* (**aud-ēre**); **fall-ax**, *deceptive* (**fall-ĕre**); **mĭn-ax**, *threatening* (**minā-rī**); **vēr-ax**, *truthful* (**vēro-**).

**atr-ox**, *cruel* (**atro-**); **fĕr-ox**, *high-spirited, fierce* (**fĕro-**, *wild*).

**-trīci** }
**-trīc-** } Semi-adjectival feminine substantives corresponding to masculine nouns in **-tor**. They are formed from participles in **-to**. When used as adjectives they have **-i** stems; e.g. **victrīcia arma**; e.g. **adjū-trix**, *helper* (**adjŭv-āre**); **effec-trix**, *producing* (**effĭc-ĕre**); **venā-trix**, *huntress* (**vēnārī**); **vic-trix**, *conquering* (**vincĕre**).

## CHAPTER IV.

## DENTAL NOUN-STEMS.

357 *Stems ending in* **-to**, *or* **-so** (*when* **-so** *has presumably arisen from a dental*).

**-to** Adjectives of *quantity:* e.g. **quan-tus**, *how great* (**quam**); **quar-tus**, *fourth* (for **qvatvor-tus** from **qvattvor**); **quinc-tus** or **quin-tus**, *fifth* (**qvinqve**).

**-to (-so)** 1. Adjectives, very numerous, derived from verbs; express *completed action;* i.e. the past participle, passive or deponent: e.g. **rec-tus**, *ruled* (**rĕgĕre**); **par-tus**, *gained* (**părĕre**); **ămā-tus**, *loved* (**ămāre**); **conātus**, *having attempted* (**cōnārī**). Many such participles, or words similarly formed, are used as adjectives of *quality;* e.g. **al-tus**, *high* (**ăl-ĕre**, *to nourish*); **fal-sus**, *false* (**fallĕre**); **jus-tus**, *lawful* (**jūs-**); **lau-tus**, *splendid* (**lăvāre**); **sŭbĭ-tus**, *sudden* (**sŭbīre**).
2. Substantives: e.g. **lĭber-tus**, *a freedman* (**lĭbĕro-**); **fossa**, *a ditch* (**fŏdĕ-re**); **exta** (n. pl.), *heart, liver*, &c. (probably for **ex-sec-ta**); **furtum**, *theft* (**fūr-**, *thief*); **pas-sum**, *raisin-wine* (**pand-ĕre**, *spread out*).

**-ec-to** }
**-ic-to** } i.e. **-to** appended to nouns with suffix **-ĕc** or **-Ic**: e.g. **cār-ec-tum**, *reed beds* (**car-ex-**); **săl-ic-tum**, *willow bed* (**salix**).

**-us-to** }
**-es-to** } i.e. **-to** appended to a suffix in **-os, -us (-or, -ur)**: e.g. adjectives, e.g. **aug-ustus**, *consecrated* (**aug-ŭr-**); **vĕn-ustus**, *pretty* (**vĕnŭs**); **fūn-estus**, *deadly* (**funŭs**); **hŏn-estus**, *honourable* (**honōs**).

358 **-men-to** i. e. **to** appended to suffix **-men** (for which see § 372) forms neuter nouns chiefly derived from verbs: e. g. **docŭ-mentum**, *a lesson* (**dŏcēre**); **incrē-mentum**, *an increase, germ* (**increscĕre**); **impedī-mentum**, *a hindrance* (**impĕdīre**); **pig-mentum**, *a paint* (**pingĕre**); **testā-mentum**, *a will* (**testāri**).

**-ŏl-en-to**
**-ŭl-en-to** Adjectives: e. g. **fraudu-lentus**, *cheating* (**fraudi-**); **ŏpu-lentus**, *wealthy* (**ŏp-**); **sanguĭn-olentus**, *bloody* (**sanguen-**); **vi-olentus**, *violent* (**vīs**).

**-gin-tā**
**-gin-ti** Indeclinable adjectives of number, denoting multiples of ten (**dĕcem**, of which the first syllable is omitted): e. g. **vīginti**, *twenty* (= **dvi-decem-ti**, *two-ten-ty*); **trī-ginta**, *thirty* (**tri-**).

**-cen-to**
**-gen-to** Declinable adjectives of number, denoting multiples of a *hundred* (**centum**). Only used in plural: e. g. **dŭcenti**, *two hundred* (**duo-centum**); **quin-genti**, *five hundred* (**qvinqve-cent-**).

359 **-āto**
**-ōto**
**-ūto**
**-īto** Adjectives, formed as if participles, but often from nouns; e. g. **barb-ātus**, *bearded* (**barba-**); **cord-ātus**, *having good sense* (**cord-**, nom. **cor**); **falc-ātus**, *sickle-shaped* (**falci-**); **pīl-ātus**, *armed with pike* (**pīlo-**).
**aegr-ōtus**, *sick* (**aegro-**); **ast-ūtus**, *crafty* (**astu-**); **nāsūtus**, *sharp-nosed* (**nāso-**). **aur-ītus**, *with ears* (**auri-**); **Cerr-ītus** (for **Cĕrĕrītus**), *frenzied by Ceres*.

**-ēto** Neuter nouns, expressing a place where a plant, &c. grows; e. g. **dūm-ētum**, *a thicket* (**dūmo-**); **myrt-ētum**, *a myrtle bed* (**myrto-**); **querc-ētum**, *oak grove* (**quercu-**); **vīn-ētum**, *vineyard* (**vīno-**).

*Stems ending in* **-tu**, **-ti**, **-t** (*or* **-su**, **-si**, **-s**, *when* **-su**, &c. *have presumably arisen from a dental*).

360 **-tu**
**-su** Substantives numerous, derived mostly from verbs, and generally denoting an *action*. (The accusative and ablative cases are the so-called *supines*.) e. g. **adven-tus**, *arrival* (**advĕn-īre**); **audī-tus**, *hearing* (**aud-īre**); **cen-sus**, *reckoning, reviewing* (**cens-ēre**); **crĕpī-tus**, *a rattling* (**crĕpāre**); **fluctus**, *a wave* (**flugv-**, **fluĕ-re**); **mercā-tus**, *trading, market* (**mercā-rī**); **pas-sus**, *a step* (**pand-ĕre**, *stretch*); **ū-sus**, *use* (**ūt-i**).

**-ātu** Substantives formed as if from verbs with **-a** stems, but really directly from substantives, denote (1) a holding of office, &c., (2) the office itself, (3) body of officers: e. g. **consul-ātus**, *consulship* (**consŭl**); **eqvit-atus**, *cavalry* (**ĕqvĕs**); **magistr-ātus**, *magistracy* (**magistro-**); **sĕn-ātus**, *senate* (**senex**, *old man*).

**-tĭ** Substantives: e. g. **gens**, *a class* (**gen-**, **gignĕre**); **mens**, *a mind* (comp. **mĕ-mĭn-ī**); **sēmen-tis**, *seed-time* (**semĕn-**).

**-ĕt** e. g. **āl-ĕs**, *winged* (**āla-**); **ĕqv-es**, *a horseman* (**ĕqvo-**); **superstes**, *present* (**superstāre**).

361 **-enti**
**-anti** 1. (*a*) Participles present active; e. g. **rĕg-ens**, *ruling* (**rĕgĕre**); **audi-ens**, *hearing* (**aud-īre**); **ama-ns**, *loving* (**amā-re**); &c.

(*b*) Adjectives, originally present participles, or formed as such; e.g. **abundans**, *overflowing* (**abundāre**); **frĕquens**, *crowded;* **prūdens**, *prudent* (**pro vidēre**); **sapiens**, *wise* (**sapĕre**).

(*c*) Substantives of like origin: e.g. **părens**, *a parent* (**părĕre**); **torrens**, *a torrent* (**torrēre**, *to burn*).

2. Numerals: **dextans**, *five-sixths* (**de sexto-**, *sixth off* twelve); **dōdrans**, *three-fourths* (**de quadro-**, *fourth off* twelve); **triens**, *a trithing*, i.e. *a third* (**tri-**).

362 **-āti** Adjectives: e.g. **nostrās**, *of our country* (**nostro-**); **pĕn-ātes** (m. pl.), *household gods* (**pĕno-**, *store*); **Antias**, *a man of Antium;* **Sarsinas**, *a man of Sarsina.*

**-tāt** Abstract substantives, very frequent, derived chiefly from adjectives, all feminine: e.g. **aeqvī-tas**, *fairness* (**aeqvo-**); **ebrĭē-tas**, *drunkenness* (**ebrio-**); **hŏnestas**, *honourableness* (**hŏnōs**); **vŏlup-tas**, *pleasure* (**vŏlŭp-**).

**-tūt** **jŭven-tus**, *youth* (**jŭvĕn-**); **vir-tus**, *manliness* (**vīro-**).

*Stems ending in* **-so**, **-si** (for **-to**, **-ti**).

363 **-ōso** For **-onso**, and this again perhaps for **-ontio.**

Adjectives, very numerous, expressing *fullness:* e.g. **ann-ōsus**, *full of years, aged* (**anno-**); **form-ōsus** (also written **form-onsus**), *shapely* (**forma-**); **morb-ōsus**, *diseased* (**morbo-**); **sumptu-ōsus**, *costly* (**sumptu-**).

Some, perhaps from false analogy, have additional letters or syllables preceding this suffix: e.g. **bellĭ-c-ōsus**, *war-loving* (**bello-**, comp. **bellĭcus**); **formīdŏ-l-ōsus**, *fearful* (**formīdŏn-**); **somn-īc-ŭl-ōsus**, *sleep-loving* (**somno-**); **cūr-i-ōsus**, *careful* (**cura-**).

364 **-ensi** Adjectives formed from names of places: e.g. **atri-ensis** (sc. **servus**), *a house steward* (**atrio-**); **fŏr-ensis**, *of the forum* (**fōro-**); **Cann-ensis**, *of Cannae;* **Sicili-ensis**, *of Sicily;* **Utic-ensis**, *of Utica.*

**-i-ensi** **Athen-iensis**, *of Athens* (**Athenae**); **Carthagin-iensis**, *of Carthage* (**Carthāgŏn-**).

*Stems ending in* **-do.**

365 **-do** | **-ĭ-do** | Adjectives, chiefly from verbs with **-e** stems, the final **e** being changed to **ĭ**: e.g. **ăvī-dus**, *greedy* (**ăvēre**); **marcī-dus**, *fading* (**marcēre**); **tĭmĭ-dus**, *timid* (**timēre**); **ŭvī-dus**, **ūdus**, *wet* (**ūve-scĕre**). **cŭpĭ-dus**, *desirous* (**cŭpĕ-re**); **vīv-ĭdus**, *lively* (**vīv-ĕre**).

**fūmĭ-dus**, *smoky* (**fūmo-**); **sŏlĭ-dus**, *firm* (**sŏlo-**, *ground*).

**-undo** | **-endo** | Verbal adjectives, commonly used as gerundives; formed from the present stem: e.g. **rĕg-endus**, **audi-endus**, **fŭgi-endus**, **ăma-ndus**, **gign-endus**, **nasc-endus**; **blandus**, *soothing* (comp. **flāre**); **sĕcundus**, *following*, hence *second* (**sĕqv-**).

-ĕb-undo
-īb-undo
-āb-undo
Adjectives derived from verbs: e.g. **frĕm-ĕbundus**, *roaring* (**frĕm-ĕre**); **mŏr-ībundus**, *dying* (**mŏri**); **pŭd-ībundus**, *ashamed* (**pŭd-ēre**).
**err-ābundus**, *wandering* (**errāre**); **vīt-ābundus**, *avoiding* (**vītāre**).

-cundo
Adjectives, probably gerundives from inchoative stems: e.g. **fā-cundus**, *eloquent* (**fāri**); **īrā-cundus**, *angry* (**irasci**); **vĕrē-cundus**, *bashful* (**vĕrēri**).

*Stems ending in* **-no.**

356 -no
1. (*a*) Distributive numeral adjectives: e.g. **bī-nus**, *two-fold, two each* (**bis** for **dvis**); **ter-nus** or **trī-nus** (**ter-** or **trī-**); **sē-nus**, *six* (**sex**); **vīcē-nus**, *twenty each* (for **vicent-nus** from **viginti**); **dūcē-nus**, *two hundred each* (for **ducent-nus**).
(*b*) Adjectives from names of trees, &c.: e.g. **ăcer-nus**, *of maple* (**ăcĕr-**); **cōlur-nus** (for **cōrŭlī-nus**), *of hazel* (**cōrŭlo-**); **ĕbur-nus**, *of ivory* (**ĕbŏr-**).
2. Substantives: e.g. **dŏmĭ-nus**, *a lord* (**dŏmāre**); **som-nus**, *sleep* (comp. **sŏp-ōr-**); **sarcĭna**, *a bundle* (**sarcīre**, *to close*); **reg-num**, *a kingdom* (**rĕg-ĕre**).

-mĭno
-mno
This suffix in Greek forms participles, middle and passive: e.g. *τυπτ-όμενος*, *τυψ-άμενος*, *τετυμ-μένος*. **alu-mnus**, *a nursling* (**ăl-ĕre**); **Vertu-mnus**, *God of changing seasons* (**vert-ĕre**). See also § 272 for use of this suffix to form 2nd pers. plural of verbs.

367 -gĭno
-gno
Perhaps compounds of **gĕn-**, **gi-gnĕre**, or formed on this analogy: **bĕni-gnus** (*well born*), *liberal* (**bene**, **gĕn-**); **īli-gnus**, *of holm oak* (**īlĕc-**); **mali-gnus**, *stingy* (**male**, **gĕn-**); **prīvi-gnus**, *born from one parent only*, i.e. *a stepson* (**prīvo-**, **gĕn-**).

-tĭno
Adjectives: e.g. **cras-tĭnus**, *of to-morrow*; **diu-tĭnus**, *long continued* (**diu**).

-urno
-erno
e.g. **diur-nus**, *by day* (**dius-**, **dies-**; probably for **diŏv-ĕrĭnus**); **tacĭt-urnus**, *silent* (**tacĭto-**); **hīb-ernus**, *in winter* (for **hiem-rĭnus**); **sŭp-ernus**, *above* (**supĕro-**).

-ter-no
i.e. **-no** suffixed to stems in **-tĕro** or **-tri**, or to adverbs in **-ter**, &c.: e.g. **ae-ter-nus**, *for ever* (**aevo-**, **aeviter**); **frāter-nus**, *of a brother* (**frater-**); **in-ternus**, *inside* (**inter-**); **vĕ-ternus**, *lethargy* (**vetŭs**).

368 -ānо
Adjectives: e.g. **dĕcŭm-ānus**, *of the tenth*, e.g. a *tithe*-farmer: a soldier of the *tenth* legion, &c. (**dĕcŭma-**); **font-ānus**, *of a spring* (**fonti-**); **oppĭd-ānus**, *of the town* (**oppĭdo-**).
**Afrĭcanus**, *of the province among the Afri* (**Afr-īca-**); **Rom-ānus**, *Roman* (**Rōma-**); **Tuscŭl-ānus**, *of Tusculum* (**Tusc�ŭlo-**); **Sullānus**, *of Sulla* (**Sulla-**).
**antesign-ānus**, *in front of the standards* (**ante signa**); **sŭburb-ānus**, *near the city* (**sub urbem**).

-i-ānо
i.e. **ānо** suffixed to nouns with stems in **-io**. Adjectives: e.g. **Aemil-i-ānus**, *belonging to the Aemilian houses* (**Aemĭlia-**); **Pompeianus**, *of Pompey* (**Pompeio-**); **Sējānus** (**Seio-**).

-**īt-ano** Probably -**āno** suffixed to Greek suffix -*ῑτης*, or in analogy therewith; e.g. **Gādī-tanus**, *of Gades* (**Gādi-**); **Tŏmī-tānus**, *of Tomi* (**Tŏmo-**).

369 -**ōno** **cŏl-ōnus**, *a farmer* (**cŏl-ĕre**); **patr-ōnus**, *a patron* (**patr-**); **ann-ōna**, *the year's supply of corn* (**anno-**); **mātr-ōna**, *a matron* (**mater-**); **Pōm-ōna**, *fruit Goddess* (**pōmo-**).

-**ūno** **opport-ūnus**, *in front of the port*, i.e. *ready at hand* (**ob portum**); **trīb-ūnus**, *a tribe's chief* (**trību-**).

-**ēno** **ăli-ēnus**, *of another* (**alio-**); **ĕg-ēnus**, *needy* (**ĕgēre**); **hăb-ēna**, *a rein* (**hăbēre**).

370 -**īno** (*a*) Adjectives: e.g. **căn-īnus**, *of a dog* (**căn-**); **dīv-īnus**, *of a god* (**dīvo-**); **lībert-īnus**, *of the class of freedmen* (**līberto-**); **pĕrĕgr-īnus**, *from abroad* (**perĕgre-**); **verr-īnus**, *of a boar* (**verrēs**). **Caudīnus**, *of Caudium*; **Lătīnus**, *of Lătium*; **Reātīnus**, *of Reāte*.
(*b*) Similar formations from names of persons are used as substantives, being surnames: e.g. **Antōninus** (from **Antōnius**); **Censorīnus** (from **Censor**); **Justīnus** (from **Justus**); **Messallīna** (f.) (from **Messalla** (m.)); **Plancīna** (f.) (from **Plancus**).
(*c*) Appellative substantives: e.g. **carnĭfĭc-īna**, *place of torture* (**carnĭfex**); **mĕdĭc-īna**, *healing art* (**med-ĭco-**); **pisc-īna**, *fish-pond* (**pisci-**); **rēg-īna**, *queen* (**rēg-**); **ru-īna**, *a fall* (**ru-ĕre**).

-**tīno** Adjectives: **intes-tīnus**, *internal* (**intus**); **vesper-tīnus**, *of evening* (**vespĕr-**).

-**trīno** From stems in -**tōr**. For the omission of **ō** compare suffix -**trīci**. Substantives: e.g. **doc-trīna**, *teaching* (**dŏctor**); **pis-trīna**, *a bakehouse* (**pistor-**); **tex-trīnum**, *weaver's plan* (**textōr-**); **tonstrīna**, *barber's shop* (**tonsōr-** for **tonstōr-**).

*Stems ending in* -**n** (cf. § 130).

371 -**āgŏn**) -**ūgŏn**) -**īgŏn**) Feminine substantives, numerous: e.g. **ĭm-āgo**, *a likeness* (comp. **ĭm-ĭtari**); **vŏr-āgo**, *a gulf* (**vŏrāre**). **aer-ūgo**, *bronze rust* (**aes-**); **lān-ūgo**, *downy hair* (**lāna-**, *wool*). **cāl-īgo**, *mist*; **ŏr-īgo**, *a source* (**orīri-**); **rōb-īgo**, *rust* (**rub-ro**, *red*).

-**ĭtūdŏn** Feminine abstract substantives, formed chiefly from adjectives: e.g. **aegri-tūdo**, *sickness* (**aegro-**); **magni-tūdo**, *greatness* (**magno-**); **turpi-tūdo**, *foulness* (**turpi-**); **vălē-tūdo**, *health* (**valēre**).

-**ēdŏn**) -**ĭdŏn**) Feminine substantives, few: e.g. **dulc-ēdo**, *sweetness* (**dulci-**); **ūr-ēdo**, *blight* (**ūr-ĕre**); **cŭp-ĭdo**, *desire* (**cŭpĕre**); **līb-ĭdo**, *lust* (**lībēre**).

372 -**ĕn** e.g. **pect-en** (m.), *a comb* (**pect-ĕre**); **ungv-ĕn**, *ointment* (**ungĕre**).

-**mĕn** Neuter substantives, very numerous, chiefly derived from verbs: e.g. **certā-men**, *a contest* (**certāre**); **crī-men**, *a charge* (comp. **crē-**, **cernĕre**, *κρίνειν*); **flū-men**, *a stream* (**flu-ĕre**); **frag-men**, *broken bit* (**frang-ĕre**); **lēnī-men**, *a*

*solace* (**lēnīre**); **nōmen**, *a name* (**nosc-ĕre**); **rĕgĭ-men**, *guidance* (**rĕg-ĕre**).

373 **-ōn** Masculine substantives; many are personal names: e.g. **commīlĭt-o**, *fellow-soldier* (**com, mīles**); **erro**, *a runaway* (**errāre**); **praed-o**, *a robber* (**praeda-**); **serm-o**, *conversation* (**sĕr-ĕre**, *to join;* the **m** being probably of similar origin to the **m** in the suffix **-mĕn**).

Many are used chiefly as proper names, from some bodily characteristics: e.g. **Căpĭto**, *bighead* (**căpŭt**); **Fronto** (**fronti-**); **Lăbeo** (**lăbium**); **Năso** (**năsus**); **Străbo**, *squint-eyed.*

374 **-iōn** 1. Masculine substantives: e.g. **centŭr-io**, *a captain* (**centŭria-**); **mŭl-io**, *a muleteer* (**mūlo-**); **sēn-io**, *a seize* at dice (**sex, sēno-**); **Glabr-io** (**glabro-**, *smooth, hairless*).

2. Feminine abstract substantives; chiefly from verbs: e.g. **contāg-io**, *contagion* (**com, tangĕre**); **lĕg-io**, *body of soldiers* (**lĕgĕre**, *to pick*); **ŏpīn-io**, *an opinion* (**ŏpīnāri**); **consortio**, *fellowship* (**com, sorti-**).

**-tiōn** Feminine abstract substantives (very numerous), from supine stems. Some are used in a concrete sense: **actio**, *action* (**ăgĕre**); **cautio**, *a legal security* (**căv-ēre**); **cognĭtio**, *knowledge* (**cognoscĕre**); **dŭbĭtatio**, *doubt* (**dŭbĭtāre**); **largītio**, *bribery* (**largīri**); **sŏlūtio**, *a discharge* (**solv-ĕre**); **sponsio**, *a wager* (**spondēre**); **stătio**, *a post* (**stāre, sistĕre**); **vēnātio**, *hunting*, also *caught game* (**venāri**).

## CHAPTER V.

## LINGUAL NOUN-STEMS.

*Stems ending in* **-lo.**

375 **-ŏ-lo** / **-ŭ-lo** Numerous nouns, chiefly diminutival: e.g.

1. Adjectives: **aure-ŏlus**, *golden* (**aureo-**); **parv-ŏlus**, *very small* (**parvo-**); **horrĭd-ŭlus**, *roughish* (**horrĭdo-**); **tant-ŭlus**, *so little* (**tanto-**); **garr-ŭlus**, *prattling* (**garrīre**); **trĕm-ŭlus**, *quivering* (**trĕmĕre**).

2. Substantives; (*a*) Masculine: **serv-ŏlus**, *a little slave;* **calc-ŭlus**, *a pebble* (**calci-**, *chalk*); **fig-ŭlus**, *a potter* (**fingĕre**); **lŏc-ŭlus**, *a compartment* (**lŏco-**); **tŭm-ŭlus**, *a hillock* (**tŭmēre**).

(*b*) Feminine: **besti-ŏla**, *an insect* (**bestia**); **nause-ŏla**, *slight squeamishness* (**nausea-**); **herb-ŭla**, *a small herb* (**herba-**); **sport-ŭla**, *a small basket* (**sporta-**); **nĕb-ŭla**, *a cloud* (comp. **nūbes**, *νέφος*); **ung-ŭla**, *a hoof* (**ungvi-**).

(*c*) Neuter: **atri-ōlum**, *a small entrance hall* (**atrio-**); **negōti-ōlum**, *a bit of business* (**nĕgōtio-**); **oppĭd-ŭlum**, *a small town* (**oppĭdo-**); **cing-ŭlum**, *a belt* (**cingĕre**); **jăc-ŭlum**, *a dart* (**jăcĕre**).

**-plo** Adjectives: generally used in neuter, as substantives: e.g. **simplus**, *single* (comp. **sim-plex**); **du-plus**, *double* (**du-**), &c.

376 **-bŭlo** Substantives, chiefly neuter: **fā-bŭla**, *a narrative* (**fāri**); **sū-bŭla**, *an awl* (**su-ĕre**).
**latī-bŭlum**, *a hiding-place* (**lātēre**); **pā-bŭlum**, *fodder* (**pa-sc-ĕre**); **stă-bŭlum**, *a stall* (**stāre**); **tintinnā-bŭlum**, *a bell* (**tintinnāre**).

**-cŭlo** Numerous nouns, chiefly diminutival:
1. Adjectives: e.g. **annī-cŭlus**, *a year old* (**anno-**); **pauper-cŭlus**, *poor* (**pauper-**); **turpī-culus**, *ugly* (**turpi-**); **rīdī-cŭlus**, *laughable* (**rīdēre**).
2. Substantives; (*a*) Masculine: e.g. **flos-cŭlus**, *a flowret* (**flōs-**); **quaestī-cŭlus**, *a small profit* (**quaestu-**); **versī-cŭlus**, *a short verse* (**versu-**).
(*b*) Feminine: **febrī-cŭla**, *a feverish attack* (**febri-**); **mŭlier-cŭla**, *a girl* (**mŭlĭĕr-**); **plēbē-cŭla**, *the populace* (**plebē-**).
(*c*) Neuter, often from verbs: e.g. **corpus-cŭlum**, *a particle* (**corpŏs-**); **rētī-cŭlum**, *a small net*; **cēnā-cŭlum**, *a dining room* (**cēnāre**); **ōrā-cŭlum**, *a* (divine) *utterance* (**ōrāre**); **pĕrī-cŭlum**, *a trial, risk* (comp. **pĕrī-tus**, **expĕrīri**); **vehī-cŭlum**, *a carriage* (**vĕhĕre**); **vin-cŭlum**, *a bond* (**vincīre**).

**-uncŭlo** i.e. **-cŭlo** affixed to stems (real or presumed) in **-ōn**: e.g.
Masculine: **ăv-uncŭlus**, *a mother's brother* (**ăvo-**, *grandfather*); **carb-uncŭlus**, *a small coal* (**carbōn-**); **hŏmuncŭlus**, *a poor fellow* (**hŏmŏn-**).
Feminine: chiefly diminutives of substantives in **-tiōn**; frequent in Cicero: **aedĭfĭcāti-uncŭla**, *a small building*; **capti-uncŭla**, *a quibble*; **orāti-uncŭla**, *a short speech*; **virg-uncŭla**, *a little girl*.

**-us-cŭlo** i.e. **-cŭlo** suffixed to the stem of adjectives of the comparative degree: e.g. **longi-uscŭlus**, *rather long* (**longo-**); **mĕli-uscŭlus**, *somewhat better*; **mĭn-us-cŭlus**, *rather less*; **uncti-us-cŭlus**, *somewhat greasy* (**uncto-**).

377 **-ell-ŭlo**, **-ill-ŭlo** i.e. **-ŭlo** suffixed to diminutives in **-ello**, **-illo**: e.g. **ăg-ellŭlus**, *a little field* (**agro-**); **anc-illŭla**, *a little handmaid* (**ancilla-**); **pu-ellŭla**, *a little girl* (**puĕro-**).

**-allo**, **-aullo**, **-ollo**, **-ullo** i.e. **-ŭlo** fused with a preceding consonant: e.g. **Hisp-allus** (for **Hispān-ŭlus**); **paullus** (for **pauc-ŭlus**), *few* (**pauco-**). **cŏr-olla** for **c�ōrōnŭla**, *a garland* (**cōrōna-**). **ămp-ulla** (for **ampŏr-ŭla**), *a flask* (**ampŏra-**); **hŏm-ullus** (for **hŏmŏnŭlus**), *a mannikin* (**hŏmŏn-**); **ullus** (for **ūnŭlus**) *any* (**ūno-**). **Căt-ŭllus** (for **Catōnŭlus**); **S-ulla** (for **sūrŭla**), *little calf* of leg.

**-ello** for **-ĕrŭlo**, **-ĕnŭlo**, or the doubly diminutival **-ŭlŭlo** (cf. § 41); frequent.

1. Adjectives: **bellus** (for **bĕnŭlus**), *pretty* (**bŏno-**, comp. **bĕne**); **gĕm-ellus** (for **gĕmĭnŭlus**), *twin* (**gĕmĭno-**).
2. Substantives; (*a*) Masculine: **ăg-ellus** (for **ăgĕrŭlus**), *a small field* (**ăgĕro-**); **ŏc-ellus** (for **ŏcŭlŭlus**), *a dear little eye* (**ŏcŭlo-**).
(*b*) Feminine: **cŏlŭm-ella** (for **cŏlŭmĭnŭla**), *a small pillar* (**cŏlŭmĕna**); **ŏf-ella** (for **offŭlŭla**), *a small bit* (**offŭla-**); **sella** (for **sēdŭla**), *a chair* (**sēdi-**).
(*c*) Neuter: **flăgellum** (for **flăgĕrŭlum**), *a small scourge* (**flagro-**); **săcellum** (for **săcĕrŭlum**), *a shrine* (**săcĕro-**).

**-illo** for **-ĭnŭlo**, or directly from simple stems:
1. Adjectives: **ŏvillus**, *of sheep* (**ŏvi-**); **tantillus** (as if for **tantŭlŭlus**), *so very little* (**tanto-**).
2. Substantives: (*a*) Masculine; **haedillus**, *a little kid* (**haedo-**); **lăpillus**, *a little pebble* (**lăpĭd-**); **Rēgillus** from **Rēgŭlus**; **Rūfillus** from **Rufīnus** or **Rūfŭlus**.
(*b*) Feminine: **anguilla**, *an eel* (**angvi-**); **armillae** (pl.), *bracelets* (**armo-**, *shoulder*); **Drusilla** (from **Drusus**); **Priscilla** from **Priscus**.
(*c*) Neuter: **sĭgillum**, *a seal* (**sĭgĭno-**); **vexillum**, *a banner* (**vĕh-ĕre**).

378 **-ēla** or **-ella** Appended to a verb-stem, or to a supine stem, or otherwise (according to Lachmann if the syllable preceding **e** be short **-ella** (not **ēla**) is used). Feminine substantives: e.g. **cand-ēla**, *a candle* (**candēre**, *to glitter*); **client-ēla**, *protection* (**clienti-**); **corrupt-ēla**, *a corruption* (**corrupto-**); **loqv-ella**, *speech* (**lŏqvi-**); **quĕr-ella**, *a complaint* (**qvĕri**); **tūt-ēla**, *guardianship* (**tūto-**).

*Stems ending in* **-li.**

379 **-ĭlĭ** Adjectives from both verbal and noun-stems: e.g. **ăg-ĭlis**, *nimble* (**ăgĕre**); **hăb-ĭlis**, *manageable* (**hăbēre**); **hŭm-ĭlis**, *lowly* (**hŭmo-**, *ground*); **păr-ĭlis**, *like* (**pari-**); **ūt-ĭlis**, *useful* (**ūti**).

**-bĭlĭ** / **-ĭbĭlĭ** Adjectives from verbs or verbal forms; usually but not necessarily with a passive meaning: e.g. **admirā-bĭlis**, *wonderful* (**admīrāri**); **crēdĭ-bĭlis**, *credible* (**crēd-ĕre**); **flē-bĭlis**, *lamentable*, *weeping* (**flēre**); **illăcrĭmā-bĭlis**, *pitiless*, *unwept* (**in-lacrimāre**); **nōbĭlis**, *famous* (**no-sc-ĕrĕ**); **stă-bĭlis**, *steady* (**stāre**); **vŏlŭ-bĭlis**, *rolling* (**volvĕre**).

**-sĭbĭlĭ** (for **-tĭbĭli-**) i.e. **-bĭlĭ** suffixed to supine stem; rare: e.g. **flex-ĭbĭlis**, *pliant* (**flectĕre**); **plau-sĭbĭlis**, *praiseworthy* (**plaudĕre**).

**-tĭlĭ** / **-sĭlĭ** i.e. **-lĭ** suffixed to supine stem. It denotes *quality*, possible or actual, but not *action:* e.g. **al-tĭlis**, *fattened* (**ălĕre**); **fos-sĭlis**, *dug up* (**fŏdĕre**); **pen-sĭlis**, *hanging* (**pendere**); **versā-tĭlis**, *revolving*, *versatile* (**versāre**).

**-ā-tĭlĭ** Adjectives from nouns: e.g. **ăqv-ātĭlis**, *living in water* (**ăqva-**); **flŭvi-ātĭlis**, *of the river* (**flŭvio-**); **umbr-ātĭlis**, *in the shade* (**umbra-**).

380 **-ālī** 1. Adjectives; very frequent: e.g. **aeqv-ālis**, *level* (**aeqvo-**); **centumvīr-ālis**, *of the court of the Hundred men* (**centumvīro-**); **dōt-ālis**, *of a dowry* (**dōti-**); **mort-ālis**, *subject to death* (**morti-**); **qv-ālis**, *of what kind?* (**qvo-**); **rēg-ālis**, *kingly* (**rēg-**).

2. Substantives; (*a*) Masculine: e.g. **contŭbern-alis**, *a mate* (**com, tăberna-**); **nāt-ālis** (sc. **dies**), *birthday* (**nāto-**); **jŭvĕn-alis** (**jŭvĕn-**).

(*b*) Neuter: **ănīm-al**, *a breathing thing* (**ănīma-**); **cervīc-al**, *a bolster* (**cervīc-**); **pŭte-al**, a stone curb *round a well* (**pŭteo-**). Hence many names of feasts, in the plural neuter: e.g. **Baccān-ālia, Lŭperc-alia, Satŭrn-alia**, &c.

**-ūlī**, **-ēlī** e.g. **trīb-ūlis**, *a tribesman* (**tribu-**); **fīd-ēlis**, *faithful* (**fīdē-**); **patru-ēlis**, *of* (or *descended from*) *a father's brother* (**patruo-**).

381 **-īlī** 1. Adjectives from personal nouns: **ăn-īlis**, *of an old woman* (**ănu-**); **cīv-īlis**, *of a citizen* (**cīvi-**); **host-īlis**, *of an enemy* (**hosti-**); **scurr-īlis**, *buffoon-like* (**scurra-**); **vīr-īlis**, *of a man* (**vīro-**).

2. Substantives; (*a*) Masculine: **Aed-īlis**, commissioner *of* public *buildings* (**aedi-**); **Sext-īlis**, *the sixth month*, i.e. August (**sexto-**).

(*b*) Neuters: **bŏv-īle** or **būb-īle**, *an ox stall* (**bŏv-**); **hast-īle**, *a spear shaft* (**hasta-**); **suovetaur-ilia** (pl.), *a swine-sheep-and-bull sacrifice* (**su-, ŏvi-, tauro-**).

*Stems ending in* **-ro.**

382 **-ĕro** **intĕgĕr**, *untouched, whole* (**in tang-ĕre**); **ŏp-ĕra**, *work, a workman* (**ŏpi-**); **scalp-rum**, *a chisel* (**scalp-ĕre**); **ŭm-ĕrus**, *a shoulder* (comp. ὦμος).

**-bĕro**, **-bro** Feminine: **illĕcĕ-bra**, *an allurement* (**illĭcĕ-re**); **lătĕ-bra**, *a hiding-place* (**lătēre**); **vertĕ-bra**, *a joint* (**vertĕre**).
Neuter: **candēlā-brum**, *a candlestick* (**candēla-**); **crī-brum**, *a sieve* (**cre-, cern-ĕre**, comp. κρίνειν).

**-c-ĕro**, **-cro** **lūdĭcer**, *sportive* (**lūdo-**); **sĕpul-crum**, *a tomb* (**sĕpĕlīre**); **sīmŭlā-crum**, *a likeness* (**sīmŭlāre**).

383 **-tĕro**, **-tro** 1. Adjectives: **al-ter**, *other* (**ăli-, alio-**); **ex-tĕro-**, *outside* (**ex-**); **nos-ter**, *our* (**nos**); **ŭter**, *whether?* (**quo-**); compare also **con-trā, ul-trā**, &c.; **ĭt-ĕrum** (adv.), *a second time* (cf. ἕτερον).

2. Substantives; (*a*) Masculine and Feminine: **măgis-ter** (also **măgis-tra**, f.), *a master* (**măgis**); **mīnis-ter** (also **mīnistra**, f.), *a servant* (**mīnŭs**); **sĕqves-ter**, *a stakeholder, mediator* (**sĕcŭs**).

(*b*) Neuter: **ărā-trum**, *a plough* (**ărā-re**); **claus-trum** (usually pl.), *a fastening* (**claud-ĕre**); **ros-trum**, *a beak* (**rōd-ĕre**); **trans-trum**, *a cross bench* (**trans**).

-as-tĕro — **Fulvi-aster** (Cic. *Att.* 12. 44), *a little Fulvius;* **ŏle-aster**, *a wild olive* (**olea-**); **surd-aster**, *rather deaf* (**surdo-**).

384 **-ōro** — i.e. stem suffix in **-o** suffixed to suffix in **-ōs, -ōr**: e.g. **ŏdŏr-us**, *scented* (**ŏdōs-**); **sŏp-ōrus**, *sleep-bringing* (**sŏpōr-**).

**-tūro**
**-sūro**

1. Adjectives; i.e. the future participle active: e.g. **ămā-tūrŭs**, *about to love* (**ămā-re**); **dă-tūrus**, *about to give* (**dăre**); **ō-sūrus**, *about to hate* (**ōd-**); **pas-sūrus**, *about to suffer* (**păti-**).

2. Substantives (numerous), feminine, similarly formed to the above. These nouns denote the *employment* or *result*, and are probably really formed from the substantive stems denoting agents and ending in **-tōr, -sōr**: **cen-sūra**, *the censorship* (**censēre, censor**); **jac-tūra**, *a throwing over, a loss* (**jăcĕre**); **men-sūra**, *a measure* (**mētīri, mensor**); **nā-tūra**, *nature* (**nā-sc-i**); **prae-tura**, *the praetorship* (**praeire, praetor**); **scrip-tūra**, *a writing, a tax on registered* use of public pastures (**scrī-bĕre**); **ū-sūra**, *use*, esp. of money (**ūti**).

*Stems in* **-ri, -r.**

385 **-bĕri**
**-bri**

Adjectives: **Dĕcem-ber**, *tenth* month (**dĕcem-**); **fūne-bris**, *funereal* (**fūnŭs-**); **sălū-ber**, *healthy* (**salvo-, sălūt-**).

**-cĕri**
**-cri**

Adjectives (few): **mĕdio-cris**, *middling* (**mĕdio-**); **vŏlŭ-cer**, *swift* (**vŏlare**).

**-teri**
**-tri**

Adjectives: **ĕqves-ter**, *of horsemen* (**ĕqvĕs-**); **sēmes-tris**, *for six months* (**sex mensi-**); similarly **campester**, *of the field* (**campo-**); **terres-tris**, *of the earth* (**terra-**).

386 **-āri** — Used, when a stem contains **l**, in place of **-āli**. Numerous adjectives and thence-derived substantives: e.g. **ancill-āris**, *of a maid-servant* (**ancilla-**); **consŭl-āris**, *of a consul* (**consŭl-**); **līne-āris**, *of lines* (**līnea-**); **mīlĭt-āris**, *of soldiers* (**mīlĕt-**); **pŏpŭl-āris**, *of the people* (**pŏpŭlo-**); **sălūt-āris**, *healthful* (**sălūt-**); **vulg-āris**, *of the common people* (**vulgo-**); **calc-ar**, *a spur* (**calci-**, *heel*); **exemplar**, *a pattern* (**exemplo-**).

387 **-ōr** — Masculine substantives, denoting chiefly a *quality:* e.g. **ămor**, *love* (**ămāre**); **ard-or**, *glow* (**ardēre**); **clām-or**, *a shout* (**clāmāre**); **fŭr-or**, *rage* (**fŭrĕre**); **pŭd-or**, *shame* (**pŭdēre**); **ŭm-or**, *moisture* (**ūmēre**).

**-tōr**
**-sōr**

i.e. **-ōr** appended to the supine stem. All masculine substantives (denoting *persons*), very numerous: **accusā-tor**, *an accuser;* **ac-tor**, *an actor, a plaintiff;* **adjū-tor**, *a helper;* **audī-tor**, *a hearer*, esp. *a pupil;* **cen-sor**, *a valuer, a critic;* **credī-tor**, *a lender;* **divī-sor**, *a distributer;* **emp-tor**, *a purchaser;* **orā-tor**, *a speaker, a spokesman;* **posses-sor**, *an occupier;* **sā-tor**, *a sower;* **vic-tor**, *a conqueror.*

Similarly **lictor**, *a magistrate's attendant;* **portī-tor**, *a toll-taker* (**portu-**); **sĕnā-tor**, *a senator* (**sĕn-**, *old*); **vīnī-tor**, *a vine-dresser* (**vīno-**).

*Stems ending in* **-s.**

388 **-nos (-nor)** **făcĭ-nus**, *a deed*, esp. *ill deed* (**făcĕre**); **fē-nus**, *breed* (i.e. *interest*) of money (comp. **fē-tus**, **fē-mĭna**); **pig-nus**, *a pledge* (**pa*n*-gĕre**).

**-iōs (-iōr)** Adjectives in comparative degree. The original **s** of the suffix is seen only in the neuter gender and in derivatives, especially the superlatives (§ 351), and **us-culo** (§ 376). **acr-ior**, *sharper* (**ācĕri-**); **alt-ior**, *higher* (**alto-**); **ămant-ior**, *more loving* (**ămanti-**); **dūr-ior**, *harder* (**dūro-**); **mā-jor** (for **măg-ior**), *greater* (comp. **mag-nus**, **magis**); **pē-jor** (for **pĕd-ior**), *worse* (comp. **pes-sĭmus**); **sălūbr-ior**, *more healthy* (**sălūbri-**); **vĕtust-ior**, *older* (**vĕtusto-**).

## CHAPTER VI.

### VOWEL NOUN-STEMS.

*Stems ending in* **-eo.**

389 **-eo** 1. Adjectives: e.g. **aur-eus**, *golden* (**auro-**); **corpŏr-eus**, *of* or *having a body* (**corpŏs-**); **fēmĭn-eus**, *of a woman* (**fēmĭna-**); **ign-eus**, *fiery* (**igni-**); **sanguĭn-eus**, *bloody* (**sanguĭn-**); **pĭc-eus**, *pitchy* (**pĭc-**).

2. Substantives: **calc-eus**, *a shoe* (**calci-**, *heel*); **flamm-eum**, *a yellow bridal veil* (**flamma-**); **līn-ea**, *a flaxen line* (**līno-**).

**-āc-eo** **crēt-āceus**, *of chalk* (**crēta-**); **rŏs-āceus**, *of roses* (**rŏsa-**).

**-neo** **ĕbur-neus**, *of ivory* (**ĕbŏr-**); **quer-neus** (for **quercneus**), *of oak* (**quercu-**).

**-āneo** Adjectives: **consent-āneus**, *united* (**consentire**); **miscell-āneus**, *miscellaneous* (**miscello-**). **circumfŏr-āneus**, *around the forum* (**circum fōro-**); **mĕdĭterr-āneus**, *inland* (**medio-**, **terra-**); **sŭpervăc-āneus**, *superfluous* (**sŭper vācāre**).

**-leo** Diminutival suffix: **ăcŭ-leus**, *a sting*, *prickle* (**ăcu-**): **ĕcu-leus** (or **ĕquu-leus**), *a colt* (**ĕqvo-**); **nuc-leus** (**nŭcŭ-leus** Plaut.), *a kernel* (**nŭc-**).

*Stems ending in* **-io.**

390 **-io** 1. Adjectives, chiefly from nouns: e.g. **āĕr-ius**, *in the air* (**āĕr-**); **ēgrĕg-ius**, *select* (**e grĕgĕ**); **nox-ius**, *hurtful* (**noxa-**); **patr-ius**, *of a father*.

A great number of Roman clan-names end in **-io**. They are properly adjectives: e.g. **Făb-ia gens**, *the clan of the Fabii;* **Q. Fab-ius**, *Quintus of the Fabians*. A few are used as praenomina.

**Aqvill-ius** (**ăqvĭla-**, *eagle*); **Claud-ius** (**claudo-**, *lame*); **Făb-ius** (**fāba-**, *bean*); **Flāmĭn-ius** (**flamen-**, *priest*); **Jūn-ius**

(**jŭvĕn-**, *young*); **Mān-ius**, praen. (**māne-**, *morning*); **Rubr-ius** (**rubro-**, *red*); **Serv-ius**, praen. (**servo-**, *slave*); **Vitell-ius** (**vitello-**, *egg-yolk* or *little calf;* cf. **vītŭlo-**).

2. Substantives; (*a*) Masculine: e.g. **flŭv-ius**, *a river* (**fluĕre**); **gĕn-ius**, *native temper* (**gi-gn-ĕre**).

(*b*) Feminine: numerous, both from verbal and noun stems: e.g. **ăv-ia**, *a grandmother* (**ăvo-**); **cōlōn-ia**, *a farmer settlement* (**cōlōno-**); **exĕqu-iae** (pl.), *funeral* (**exsequi-**); **infĭt-iae**, *non-confession* (**in, fătēri-**); **inert-ia**, *inactivity* (**in, arti-**); **īrācund-ia**, *wrath* (**iracundo-**); **mīlĭt-ia**, *service in war* (**mīlĕs**); **sŭperb-ia**, *haughtiness* (**superbo-**).

Stems in **-iē** (**-iēs** for **ĭa-ĭs**?); e.g. **ăc-ies**, *an edge* (**ăcu-**); **allŭv-ies**, *overflow* (**allăvare**); **effĭg-ies**, *a form* (**effingĕre**); **fac-iēs**, *a face* (**făcĕre**); **sĕr-ies**, *a row* (**sĕrĕre**).

(*c*) Neuter: very numerous, both derivatives from verbs and nouns, and also compounds formed immediately from the simple parts: e.g. **bĕnĕfĭc-ium**, *a kindness* (**benefăcĕre**); **collēg-ium**, *a board* or *committee* (**collēga-**); **exĭl-ium**, *exile* (**exŭl-**); **gaud-ium**, *joy* (**gaudēre**); **hŏmĭcīd-ium**, *manslaughter* (**homĭn-, caedĕre**); **hospĭt-ium**, *hospitality* (**hospĕs**); **incend-ium**, *a conflagration* (**incendĕre**); **praecord-ia**, *the diaphragm* (**prae, cordi-**); **prīvīlēg-ium**, *an enactment against an individual* (**prīvo-, lēg-**); **suspīr-ium**, *a sigh* (**suspīrare**); **somn-ium**, *dream* (**somno-**).

391 **-ĭcio**, **-cio** Chiefly adjectives: e.g. **aedĭlĭ-cius**, *of an aedile* (**aedĭlĭ-**); **nātālĭcius**, *of a birthday* (**nātāli-**); **sōlā-cium**, *comfort* (**sōlāri**); **un-cia**, *unit of measure* (**ūno-**).

**-tĭcio**, **-sĭcio** i.e. **-ĭcio** used with stem (**-to**) of past participles; Adjectives: **conduc-tĭcius**, *hired* (**condūc-ĕre**); **dēdĭ-tĭcius**, *surrendered* (**dedĕre**); **rĕcep-tĭcius**, *of things received* or *reserved* (**rĕcĭpĕre**); **trālātĭcius**, *transferred, traditional* (**transferre**).

392 **-tio** i.e. **-io** appended to past participles or to similar formations.

(*a*) Feminine substantives: e.g. **angus-tiae** (pl.), *straits* (**angusto-**); **contrōver-sia**, *a dispute* (**contro, vertĕre**); **nup-tiae** (pl.), *marriage* (**nūbĕre**); **puĕrī-tia**, *childhood* (**puĕro-**); **saevī-tia**, *cruelty* (**saevo-**).

Stems in **-ītiē-**, usually with collateral stem in **-ītiă**: e.g. **cānī-tiēs**, *grayness* (**cāno-**); **mollī-tia** (also **-ē** stem), *softness* (**molli-**); **nēquī-tia** (also **-ē** stem), *roguishness* (**nēquam**); **plānī-tiēs** (also **-a** stem), *a level* (**plāno-**).

(*b*) Neuter substantives: e.g. **cŏmĭ-tium**, *assembly, place of assembly* (**com, -īre**); **servī-tium**, *slavery* (**servo-**).

**-en-t-io** i.e. **-io**, or more frequently **-ia**, appended to stem (in **-enti-**) of present participle, or of adjectives of like form: **benevolentia**, *goodwill* (**bĕnĕ, velle**); **ĕlĕg-antia**, *neatness* (**ĕlĕganti-**); **pŏt-entia**, *power* (**posse**); **săpī-entia**, *wisdom* (**săpĕre**); **viŏl-entia**, *violence* (**viŏlento-**).

So the neuter **sīl-entium**, *silence* (**sīlēre**).

393 **-mōnio** Substantives: (*a*) Feminine; e.g. **ācri-mōnia**, *sharpness* (**ācri-**); **quĕrī-monia**, *complaint* (**qvĕri**).

(*b*) Neuter; **mātrī-monium**, *marriage* (**matr-**); **pătrī-mōnium**, *hereditary estate* (**patr-**); **testī-monium**, *evidence* (**testi-**).

**-cĭn-io** Neuter substantives chiefly from verbs in **-cĭnāri**: e.g. **lātrō-cĭnium**, *brigandage* (**latrō-cĭnāri** from **latrōn-**); **pătrō-cĭnium**, *patronage* (**patro-cĭnāri** from **patrono-**); **tīrō-cĭnium**, *pupillage* (**tīrōn-**); **vātī-cĭnium**, *prophecy* (**vāticĭnāri**), from **vātī-**.

394 **-ārio** Very numerous, often with collateral stems in **-āri** (§ 386).

1. Adjectives: e.g. **advers-arius**, *opposed* (**adverso-**); **ăgr-ārius**, *of land* (**agro-**); **nĕcess-arius**, *necessary* (**nĕcesse**); **sēn-arius**, *containing six* (**sēno-**); **sumptu-arius**, *of expense* (**sumptu-**); **volupt-arius**, *of pleasure* (for **voluptat-arius** from **vŏluptāt-**).

2. Substantives; (*a*) Masculine: e.g. **comment-arius** (sc. **lĭber**), *a note book* (**commento-**); **febru-ārius** (sc. **mensis**), *the month of purifications* (**februo-**); **lĭbr-arius**, *a transcriber* (**lĭbro-**); **sext-arius**, *a pint*, i.e. *sixth* of a congius (**sexto-**).

(*b*) Feminine: **argent-aria** (sc. **fodīna**), *a silver mine*, (sc. **tabula**) *a bank* (**argenti-**); **ăsin-aria** (sc. **fabula**), *of an ass;* name of a play of Plautus (**ăsĭno-**); **mostell-aria**, a play *of a ghost* (**mostello-**, diminutive of **monstro-**).

(*c*) Neuter: **aer-arium**, *the treasury* (**aes-**); **congi-arium**, *a quart-largess* (**congius** = 5·76 pints); **emiss-arium**, *an outlet* (**emisso-**); **pōm-ārium**, *an orchard* (**pōmo-**); **vīv-arium**, a preserve *of live* animals, e.g. *a fish pond* (**vīvo-**).

**-tōrio**, **-sōrio** i.e. **-io** appended to personal names in **-tōr** (**-sōr**). Some appear to be formed immediately from the past participle or the supine stem.

1. Adjectives: **cen-sōr-ius**, *of a censor;* **gladiā-tor-ius**, *of a gladiator;* **mes-sōr-ius**, *of a reaper;* **mĕrī-tōr-ius**, *for hire* (**mĕrīto-**); **sua-sōr-ius**, *of the persuasive.*

2. Substantives, chiefly neuter: e.g. **audī-tōr-ium**, *a lecture room;* **cēnā-tōria** (pl.), *dinner dress;* **prae-tōrium**, *the general's quarters;* **tec-tōrium**, *plaster of walls* (**tecto-**); **vic-tōria**, *victory.*

# CHAPTER VII.

## VERB-STEMS.

395 SIMPLE verbs are formed in four ways:

i. A verb may be formed by union of a root directly with the suffixes of inflexion. In this case the root does duty as the verb-stem. Verbs so formed are probably the oldest in the language. They are all (or almost all) given in the list in Book II. chap. XXIII.

e.g. **rĕg-**, **regĕre**, *rule;* **fĕr-**, **ferre**, *bear;* **ru-**, **ruĕre**, *dash;* **su-**, **suĕre**, *sow;* **ūs-**, **ūrĕre**, *burn* (where the change of **s** to **r** is merely phonetic).

In some of these verbs the root (or what we suppose to be the root) is somewhat disguised either (*a*) by internal change, or by (*b*) the addition or modification of the final consonant in order to adapt the root to a slight turn of the meaning.

(*a*) By internal change: e.g. **dŭc-**, **dūco**; **jŭg-**, **jungo**. It is possible that such change may have originally belonged to the present stem only and have gradually been carried through all the parts of the verb. In **scalpĕre**, *to scratch*, **sculpĕre**, *carve*, we have slight modifications of the same root.

(*b*) By altering the final stem-consonant: e.g. **verr-ĕre**, *brush*, and **vert-ĕre**, *turn*, are probably one root differently modified. So **mulc-ēre**, *stroke*, is modified to **mulg-ēre**, *milk*.

396 ii. A verb-stem may be formed by the addition of a verbal stem-suffix to the root: e.g.

| root | | stem | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **ăm-** | | **ăm-ā-** | **ămāre**, | *to love* |
| **cŭb-** | | **cŭb-ă-** | **cŭbāre**, | *to lie down* |
| **tĕn-** | | **tĕn-ĕ-** | **tĕnēre**, | *to hold* |
| **nŏc-** | | **nŏc-ē-** | **nŏcēre**, | *to be hurtful* |
| **tŭ-** | | **tu-ē-** | **tuēri**, | *to defend* |
| **fŭg-** | | **fŭg-ĭ-** | **fŭgĕre**, | *to flee* |
| **fĕr-** | | **fĕr-ī-** | **fĕrīre**, | *to strike* |
| **vĕn-** | | **vĕn-ī-** | **vĕnīre**, | *to come* |

In some cases it is doubtful whether the stem-vowel belongs to the present tense only, or belongs properly to the verb-stem and has given way only through phonetic changes: e.g.

**cŭb-u-i**, **cŭb-ĭ-tum** probably stand for **cŭb-au-i**, **cŭb-ă-tum**;

**fŭgĕre** exhibits **ĭ** in present and supine stem, though in the present it takes the form of **ĕ** before **r** (e.g. **fŭgĕ-re**);

**vĕn-īre** exhibits the **ī** only in the present stem.

A good many verbs in **-i** are expressive of animal sounds and may probably be formed directly from the sound: e.g. **crōcīre**, *croak;* **garrīre**, *chatter;* **glōcīre**, *cluck;* **grunnīre**, *grunt;* **hinnīre**, *neigh;* **mugīre**, *low;* **tinnīre**, *jingle, tinkle*, &c.

397 iii. A verb-stem may be formed from a noun-stem either by the retention of the stem-suffix of the noun, or by the modification of it so as to get the appropriate verbal stem-suffix. In this way are formed the great majority of the very numerous verb-stems in **-a**, a considerable number of the **-e** stems and of the **-i** stems, and some of the **-u** stems.

1. Verbs with **-a** stems are formed (without special derivative suffix):

(*a*) from substantives with **-a** stems: e.g. **ăquari**, *to fetch water;* **cūrare**, *take charge of;* **lăcrīmare**, *weep;* **rōtare**, *wheel.*

(*b*) from substantives with **-e** stems (very few): e.g. **glăciāre**, *turn to ice;* **mĕrīdiare** (also dep.), *take a lunch* (or *noon-day meal*).

(*c*) from nouns with **-o** stems, viz.:

from substantives: e.g. **cŭmŭlare**, *pile up* (**cŭmŭlus**); **damnare**, *condemn* (**damnum**, *loss*); **jŏcari**, *joke* (**jŏcus**); **laniare**, *butcher* (**lanius**); **regnare**, *reign* (**regnum**).

from adjectives: **aequāre**, *level;* **dignāri**, *think worthy;* **laxare**, *loosen;* **săcrare**, *consecrate* (**săcer**); **văgari**, *stroll about.*

(*d*) from substantives with **-u** stems (few): e.g. **aestuare**, *be hot, surge;* **fluctuare** (also dep.), *undulate, waver.*

(*e*) from nouns with **-i** stems, viz.:

from substantives: e.g. **calcare**, *trample* (**calx**, *heel*); **piscari**, *to fish* (**piscis**); **sēdare**, *settle* (**sēdes**).

from adjectives: e.g. **cĕlĕbrare**, *frequent* (**cĕlĕbĕr**); **dītare**, *enrich* (**dīs**); **tĕnuare**, *make thin* (**tenuis**).

(*f*) from nouns with consonant-stems, viz.:

from substantives: e.g. **dĕcŏrare**, *decorate* (**dĕcŭs**); **hiĕmare**, *spend winter* (**hiems**); **interprĕtari**, *act interpreter* (**interpres**); **jūdicare**, *judge* (**jūdex**); **laudare**, *praise* (**laus**); **omĭnari**, *forebode* (**ōmĕn**); **sălūtare**, *greet* (**sălūs**).

from adjectives (very few): e.g. **degĕnĕrare**, *degenerate* (**dēgĕnĕr**); **paupĕrare**, *make poor* (**pauper**).

2. Verbs with **-u** stems (few) are formed:

from substantives in **-u**: e.g. **mĕtu-ĕre**, *fear* (**mĕtus**); **stătuere**, *place* (**stătus**); **trĭbuere**, *divide* (**tribus**).

3. Verbs with **-e** stems are formed:

(*a*) from substantives with **-o** stems; e.g. **callēre**, *have a thick skin* (**callum**); **mūcēre**, *be mouldy* (**mūcus**).

(*b*) from adjectives with **-o** stems: e.g. **cānēre**, *be hoary* (**cānus**); **densēri**, *thicken* (intr.), *be crowded* (**densus**); **flāvēre**, *be yellow* (**flāvus**); **mĭsĕrēri**, *have pity* (**mĭsĕr**).

(*c*) from nouns with **-i** stems; e.g. **frondēre**, *be leafy* (**frons**); **sordēre**, *be dirty* (**sordēs** pl.): **tābēre**, *waste away* (**tābēs**).

(*d*) from nouns with consonant-stems: e.g. **flōrēre**, *be in flower* (**flōs**); **lūcēre**, *be light* (**lux**).

4. Verbs with **-i** stems are formed:

(*a*) from substantives with **-a** stems: e.g. **mētīri**, *measure* (**mēta**); **pūnīre**, *punish* (**poena**).

(*b*) from nouns with **-o** stems, viz.:

from substantives: e.g. **servīre,** *be a slave* (**servus**).

from adjectives: e.g. **blandīri,** *coax* (**blandus**); **ineptīre,** *be silly* (**ineptus**); **insānīre,** *be insane* (**insānus**); **saevīre,** *rage* (**saevus**).

(*c*) from substantives with **-u** stems; e.g. **gestīre,** *exult* (**gestus,** *a gesture*); **singultīre,** *sob* (**singultus**).

(*d*) from nouns with **-i** stems, viz.:

from substantives: e.g. **audīre,** *hear* (**auris**); **fīnīre,** *put an end to* (**fīnis**); **mūnīre,** *fortify* (**moenia,** pl.); **sortīri,** *cast lots* (**sors**); **vestīre,** *clothe* (**vestis**).

(*e*) from adjectives: e.g. **insignīre,** *mark* (**insignis**); **mollīre,** *soften* (**mollis**); **stābilīre,** *establish* (**stābilis**).

(*f*) from substantives with consonant-stems: e.g. **custōdīre,** *keep watch on* (**custos**); **expēdīre,** *free one's foot* (**ex pes**).

5. Inchoative verbs with suffix **-sc** are often formed directly from noun-stems, and on this account may claim a place here. Others have both the simple and the inchoative form in the present stem, see § 296.

(*a*) from noun-stems in **-a** and **-o**: e.g. **gemmascĕre,** *bud* (**gemma**); **rārescĕre,** *grow sparse* (**rārus**); **silvescere,** *become woody* (**silva**).

(*b*) from noun-stems (especially adjectives) in **-i**: e.g. **dītescere,** *grow rich* (**dīs**); **dulcescere,** *grow sweet* (**dulcis**); **fatiscere,** *yawn* (**fătis** in **adfatim**); **grăvescere,** *grow heavy* (**grăvis**); **ignescere** (or **igniscĕre**), *burst into flame* (**ignis**); **pinguescere,** *grow fat* (**pinguis**).

(*c*) from consonant noun-stems: e.g. **juvenescere,** *grow young* (**jŭvĕn-**); **lăpidescere** (Plin.), *turn to stone* (**lăpis**); **rorescere** (Ov.), *dissolve to dew* (**rōs**).

398 iv. A verb-stem may be formed by the addition of a special derivative suffix, besides a verbal stem-suffix, to a root.

The following derivative suffixes are found in use (mostly with **-a** stems), but it is possible that some or all of them may have been at least originally noun-suffixes. In that case this mode of formation (iv) would be resolved into the preceding (iii).

**-ĭc-ā** (Infrequent.) As if from adjective-stems in **-ĭco**: e.g. **claud-ĭcare,** *limp* (**claudus, claudēre**); **praevār-ĭcari,** *act in collusion* (**vārus,** *crooked*); **vell-ĭcare,** *pluck at* (**vellĕre**).

**-ĭgā** e.g. **cast-ĭgare,** *chastise* (**castus**); **fat-ĭgare,** *tire* (*make to yawn,* **fătis**).

399 **-tā**, **-sā** As if from same stem as past participles, usually expressing *repeated action* or *attempt* (Frequentative Verbs). (None are from participles in **-ātus**.) e.g. **adven-tare,** *come frequently* (**advĕnīre**); **dictare,** *say frequently* (**dīcĕre**); **hăbĭ-tare,** *dwell in* (**hăbēre**); **nŏ-tare,** *note* (**noscĕre,** comp. **cognĭtus**); **osten-tare,** *show off* (**ostendĕre**); **trac-tare,** *handle* (**trăhĕre**); **ver-sare,** *turn about* (**vertĕre**).

**-ĭtā** Usually affixed to the last consonant of the present stem of another verb. Sometimes the **i** may be part of the stem-root of the suffix: e.g. **ăg-ĭtare,** *shake* (**ăgĕre**); **cōg-ĭtare,** *think* (**cōgĕre**); **dŭb-ĭtare,** *doubt* (**dŭbio-**); **pericl-ĭtari,** *make trial*

*of* (**pĕrĭculo-**); **rŏg-ĭtāre**, *ask frequently* (**rŏgāre**); **vend-ĭtare**, *offer for sale* (**vendĕre**).

-tĭtā
-sĭtā } i.e. **-ĭtā** suffixed to the same stem as past participles or ordinary frequentatives: e.g. **dictĭ-tare**, *say repeatedly* (**dīc-ĕre, dict-āre**); **haesĭ-tare**, *hesitate* (**haerēre**); **pensĭtare**, *pay habitually*, Cic.; *ponder*, Liv. (**pendĕre, pensāre**); **ventĭ-tare**, *come often* (**vĕnīre**).

400 **-ūtĭ-** From noun-stems: e.g. **balb-ūtīre**, *stammer* (**balbus**); **caec-ūtire**, *be blind* (**caecus**).

**-cĭnā** **latrō-cĭnari**, *be a brigand* (**latrōn-**); **patrō-cĭnari**, *be a patron* (**patrōno-**); **rătiō-cĭnari**, *calculate* (**rătiōn-**); **vātĭ-cĭnari**, *utter prophecies* (**vāti-**).

-ĕlā
-ŭlā } As if from diminutival nouns: e.g. **grăt-ŭlāri**, *congratulate* (**grato-**); **vi-ŏlare**, *use force to* (**vi-**); **ust-ŭlare**, *singe* (**usto-**, *burnt*).

**-illā-** **conscrib-illāre**, *scribble on* (**scrīb-ĕre**); **văc-illare** (**vaccillare** Lucr. once), *waddle*, *hesitate* (**vacca**, *a cow*).

**-trā** **calci-trāre**, *kick* (**calci-**); **pĕnĕ-trare**, *penetrate* (**pĕnŭs-**, *store*).

**-ŭrĭ** Usually expressive of *desire;* formed as from the supine-stem: **cēnāt-ūrire**, *be eager for dinner* (**cēnāre**); **ēs-ūrīre**, *be hungry* (**ĕdĕre**); **proscript-ūrire**, *be eager for a proscription* (**proscrībĕre**).

**-urri** **lig-urrire**, *lick;* **scat-urrire**, *gush forth* (**scătĕre**).

401 Some verbs with **-a** stems are formed from, or parallel to, verbs with other stems: e.g. **aspernāri**, *scorn*, *spurn* (**ab, sperněre**); **consternāre**, *dismay* (**consternĕre**); **creāre**, *make to grow* (**cre-sc-ĕre**, *grow*); **dīcāre**, *dedicate* (**dīcĕre**); **ēdūcāre**, *bring up*, *train* (**ēdūcĕre**); **hiāre**, *gape* (**hi-sc-ĕre**, *open the mouth to speak*); **lăbāre**, *slip* (**lābi**); **mandāre**, *commit*, *entrust* (**mānu-, dăre**); **mulcāre**, *beat* (**mulcēre**, *stroke*); **sēdāre**, *settle* (**sēdēre**, *sit*).

## CHAPTER VIII.

### COMPOSITION.

402 NEW words may be formed not merely by the addition of a derivative suffix, but by the junction of two or more separately intelligible words into one. This is called *composition*. The distinctive features of two words being compounded are the loss of their separate accents, and the possession of but one set of inflexions.

Any two words in syntactical connexion may, if the meaning be suitable, be the base of a new compound word. So long as the two words each retain their own proper inflexion or use, however frequently they may be used together, they are not a proper compound; e.g. **rem gerere, res gestae**, &c.

Such habitual combinations are called *spurious compounds*, and are often marked by the fixing of a particular order for the words, though such order is not absolutely prescribed by general principles; e.g. **pater familias, jus jurandum, respublica, accepti ratio**, &c.

403 Compounds are distinguishable from a mere juxtaposition of the simple words of which they are or might appear to be composed,

either (*a*) by the two words being used together in a way in which they would not be used as simple words, e.g. **ēdūrus, subsimilis, cisrhēnānus, proăvus, qvinqvevir;**

or (*b*) by one or both not being used at all independently, e.g. **dissimilis, vēsanus;**

or (*c*) by one or both losing their proper inflexions or terminations, e.g. **arcitenens, malevolus, tridens, caprĭfĭcus;**

or (*d*) by a vowel being changed or omitted owing to the two words being brought under one accent, e.g. **Diespiter, duodecim; auceps, usurpo.**

or (*e*) by the meaning of the compound being different or more than the meaning of the two words, e.g. **supercilium**, *the eyebrow;* (but **super cilium**, *above the eyelid*); **conclāve**, *a chamber.*

404 The precise form which the compound word assumes is not determined by the previous connexion, but mainly by the class (verb, adjective, substantive, &c.) to which it is to belong; and, subordinately to that, by the same causes (known or unknown) which occasion the selection of particular suffixes of declension or derivation. To us the particular form thus appears to be frequently a matter of caprice. There is, however, a tendency for the compound word to take a similar form to the second of the component words.

The combination is always a combination of *stems* or *roots* (sometimes clipt); and the resulting compound, even where it exhibits similar inflexional or derivative suffixes to those of one of the simple words, may most truly be supposed not to have retained such suffixes but to have reproduced them; e.g. **palmi-pes** is a compound from the stems **palma-**, **ped-**, and has received the simple inflexions (i.e. nominative suffix) of the second class of nouns, just as the stem **ped-** itself has.

But a verb or adjective, compounded with a preposition used absolutely (§ 408), retains the form of the simple stem: a verb compounded of two words in proper syntactical relation with each other (§ 409—415) takes an **a** stem.

So far as the inflexional or derivative suffix is concerned, compound words have been sometimes already included in the examples given in this and the previous book. Here they will be classified and selections made according to the variety of the elements of which they are composed, and the nature of the connexion.

405 i. Spurious Compounds. The following are the combinations which, from the fixity of their use, appear most nearly to approach proper compounds.

1. Verbs: (*a*) **animum advertere** (or **animadvertere**), *to take notice;* **fīdei committere**, *to entrust;* **fīdeicommissa**, *trusts;* **fīdejūbēre**, *to bid a person do a thing on your guaranty;* **fidejussor**, *a guarantor;* **pessum dăre**, *to send to the bottom* (comp. **pessum īre**, **abīre**, **premĕre**); **vēnum īre**, *to be sold*, **vēnum dare**, *to sell* (but **vēnīre**, **vendĕre** as compounds proper); **usucapĕre**, *acquire by use.*

**ilĭcet**, *off! at once* (**īre licet**); **scīlĭcet**, *let me tell you* (**scire licet**); **vidēlĭcet**, *you may see=that is to say* (**videre licet**), where the **re** has dropt off by its similarity to **li.**

(*b*) The disyllabic prepositions appear often to form with verbs only improper compounds; e.g. **circum dăre**, *to throw around*, appears to be in meaning a proper compound in **urbem circum dare muro**; an improper one in **urbi circum dare murum.**

Similarly **retroagere, retrogradi**, &c.; **bĕnĕfacĕre, mălĕdicĕre, satisfacĕre, palamfacerĕ, palamfieri.**

Compare also **inque pediri, jacere indu, inque gravescunt** (Lucr.), and the use of **per** in such expressions as **per mihi gratum est**; &c.

2. Nouns:

406 (*a*) Doubled adjective:

**altĕrŭter**, *one of two;* **quisquis**, *whosoever;* **quŏtusquisque**, *how many.* (Comp. the adverbs: **quamquam, utut**, *although*, *however.*)

**tertius decimus, quartus decimus**, and other compound numerals. So **lex quina vicenaria**, *law relating to age of twenty-five.*

(*b*) Adjective + substantive: **jusjurandum**, *an oath* (lit. *a swearing one's right*, being a nominative formed to correspond with the gerundival use **jurisjurandi**, &c.); **res gestae**, *exploits;* **res publica**, *the common weal;* **ros marinus** (**ros maris** Ov.), *rosemary* (*sea-dew*).

(*c*) Genitive + substantive: **accepti latio, expensi latio**, *crediting* or *debiting* (lit. *entering in book as received* or *expended*); **agricultura**, *farming;* **aquaeductus**, *a water-course;* **argentifodinae**, *silver mines;* **ludimagister**, *a school-master;* **paterfamilias, materfamilias, filiusfamilias**, &c. *a father*, &c. *of a household;* **plēbiscītum**, *a commons' resolution;* **senatusconsultum**, *a senate's decree.* So **jurisconsultus**, *one skilled in the law.*

(*d*) Genitive + adjective: e.g. **verisimilis**, *likely* (*like the truth*).

(*e*) Oblique case and participle; e.g. **dicto audiens esse**, *to be obedient.*

(*f*) Two parallel substantives: e.g. **ususfructus**, *the use and enjoyment.* So perhaps **pactum conventum**, *a bargain and covenant.*

(*g*) Adverb (or adverbial accusative) + participle: e.g. **grăveŏlens**, *strong smelling;* **suaveolens**, *sweet-smelling.*

Similarly **paeninsula**, *an almost-island* (comp. **duos prope Hannibales in Italia esse** (Liv.); **ex non sensibus**, *from what are not senses* (Lucr.).

407 3. Adverbs: e.g. **saepenumero**, *often in number;* **tantummodo**, *only* (lit. *so much in measure*); **hactĕnus**, *thus far;* **quamlĭbet**, **quamvis**, *however much, although*, &c.

**ităqve**, *therefore;* **etĕnim**, *in fact*, &c. have each but one accent: **magnopere**, *greatly;* **prorsus** (§ 214), *utterly*, &c. have been contracted: **sĭqvidem**, **nĭsi** (§ 221), &c. have had the first vowel modified. So **nudius tertius** (**quartus**, &c.), *the day* (*two days*) *before yesterday*, is a contracted sentence (**nunc dies tertius est**). **Multimodis**, **mirimodis** = **multismodis**, &c. Lucr. has also **omnimodis**.

408 ii. Compounds of prepositions used absolutely, or of inseparable particles.

Such compounds are some verbs and some nouns.

1. Verbs:

(*a*) Common with prepositions; e.g. **abīre**, *go away;* **advenīre**, *come to;* **collĭgĕre**, *collect;* **demittĕre**, *let down;* **expellĕre**, *drive out;* **inspĭcĕre**, *look in*; **oblŏqui**, *speak against;* **succēdere**, *go under;* &c.

(*b*) With inseparable particles: **amb-**, *round;* **dis-**, *in pieces;* **por-**, *forth;* **red** (**re**), *back;* **sed** (**se**), *apart;* e.g. **ambīre**, *go round;* **dissolvere**, *undo;* **porrĭgere**, *stretch forth;* **rĕmittere**, *send back;* **sēvŏcare**, *call aside.*

(*c*) Rarely with negatives; viz. **in-**, **ne**: e.g. **ignoscere**, *not recognize, pardon;* **nequīre**, *be unable;* **nescire**, *be ignorant;* **nolle**, *be unwilling.* With gerundive: **infandus**, **nefandus**, *unspeakable:* (**in-** is frequent with participles).

2. Nouns: some containing verbal stems, some containing noun stems: e.g.

**concăvus**, *hollow* (**căvo-**); **concors**, *of the same mind* (**cord-**); **collēga**, *a fellow by law* (**lēg-**); **conservus**, *a fellow slave* (**servo-**);

**discŏlor**, *of various colours* (**cŏlōr-**); **exhēres**, *disinherited* (**hērēd-**); **exsomnis**, *sleepless* (**somno-**);

**ignārus**, *ignorant* (**gnaro-**); **immĕrĭtus**, *undeserved* (**mĕrĭto-**); **inēdia**, *fasting* (**ēdĕre**, *eat*); **inīqvus**, *unfair* (**aequo-**); **inops**, *helpless* (**ŏpi-**); and many others with **in-**, *not.*

**nĕfas**, *wickedness* (**fas-**); **nēgōtium**, *business* (**nec**, **ōtium**);

**perăcūtus**, *very sharp;* **pergrātus**, *very pleasing;* **permagnus**, *very great;* **praeclārus**, *very illustrious;* **praevălĭdus**, *very strong;* and many others with **per** and **prae**, *very;*

**praemātūrus**, *ripe before the time;* **praeposterus**, *behind before, reversed;* **proăvus**, *a great grandfather;* **prōclīvis**, *sloping forwards;* **prōfŭgus**, *flying* (**fŭgĕre**);

**recurvus**, *curved back;* **rĕfluus**, *flowing back* (**fluĕre**).

**subabsurdus**, *slightly absurd;* **subobscūrus**, *rather dark;* **subtūrpis**, *somewhat disgraceful;* and many others with **sub**, *slightly:* also **subcentūrio**, *a lieutenant.*

vēcors, *foolish* (cord-); vegrandis, *small* (grandi-); vēmens, *violent* (menti-).

409 iii. Compounds formed by giving an appropriate suffix to words conceived as in regular syntactical relation to each other.

A. Attribute + noun (usually substantive):

(*a*) Numeral + noun (usually substantive): e.g. bīdens, *with two teeth* (denti-); bīvius, *with two roads* (via-); centīmānus, *hundred-handed* (mānu-); duplex, *two-fold* (plicāre); quadrīga (for quadrijuga), *a four-horse chariot* (quatuor, jūgo-); sēmībarbārus, *half foreign* (barbāro-); sēmīrūtus, *half fallen* (rŭto-); sesqui-pēdālis, *a foot and half* in measure (pēd-); teruncius, *a three-ounce*, i.e. $\frac{1}{4}$ of an as (uncia-); ūnānĭmus, *of one mind* (ănĭmo-).

(*b*) Ordinary adjective + substantive; e.g. aequaevus, *contemporary* (aequo-, aevo-); lāticlāvius, *with a broad border* to the toga (lāto-, clāvo-); mēditerraneus, *midland* (mēdio-, terra-); mīsĕrīcors, *pitiful* (misero-, cord-); multīformis, *multiform* (multa-, forma-); plēnilūnium, *time of full moon* (plena-, luna-); versĭcōlor, *with changed colour* (verso-, cōlōr-).

(*c*) Substantive + substantive. The first is used as attributive: e.g. aerīpes, *bronze-footed* (aes-, pēd-); cornīpes, *horn-footed* (cornu-, pēd-); capricornus, *goat-horned* (capro-, cornu-); mānŭpretium, *cost of hand-work* (manu-, prētio-).

410 B. Preposition + substantive: e.g. abnormis, *irregular* (ab normā); adumbrāre, *sketch in outline* (ad umbram, *draw by the shadow*); antēlūcanus, *before daybreak* (ante lūcem); circumfŏrāneus, *round the forum* (circum forum); dēgĕnĕr, *degenerate* (dē gĕnĕrĕ); ēgrēgius, *select* (e grĕgĕ); extemporālis, *on the moment* (ex tempŏrĕ); extraordinārius, *out of the usual order* (extra ordĭnem); inaures (pl.), *eardrops* (in aure); intervallum, *space between palisades, an interval* (inter vallă); obnoxius, *liable for a wrong* (ob noxam); perennis, *all through the year* (per annum); proconsul, *a deputy consul* (pro consŭlĕ); suburbānus, *near the city* (sub urbem); suffŏcare, *strangle* (sub faucibus, *under throat*); trans-Alpinus, *beyond the Alps* (trans Alpēs).

411 C. Nouns collateral to one another (rare):

duodĕcim, *twelve* (duo + decem; octodĕcim, *eighteen* (octo + decem); undĕcim, *eleven* (uno + decem).

suovetaurilia, (pl.), a sacrifice of *a sheep, pig and bull* (su- + ŏvi- + tauro-).

412 D. Object + verb (frequent):

aedĭfĭcāre, *to build*, aedĭfĭcium, *a building* (aedem făcĕre); agrĭcŏla, *a farmer* (ăgrum cŏlĕre); agrīpĕta, *a squatter* (agrum pĕtĕre); armĭgĕr, *a warrior* (armă gĕrĕre); auceps, *a birdcatcher*, hence aucŭpium, aucŭ-

**pāre** (**āvem căpĕre**); **auspex**, *a bird-viewer* (**avem spĕcĕre**); **carnĭvŏrus**, *flesh-eating* (**carnem vŏrāre**); **causīdĭcus**, *a pleader* (**causam dĭcĕre**); **faenĭsex**, *hay-cutter* (**faenum sĕcāre**); **fātĭfĕr**, *death-bringing* (**fātum ferre**); **frātrĭcīda**, *a brother-slayer* (**fratrem caedĕre**); **grandĭlŏquus**, *talking big* (**grandĕ lŏqui**; **lectisternium**, *couch-covering;* a religious ceremony (**lectum sternĕre**): **naufrăgus**, *shipwrecked* (**nāvem frangĕre**); **nāvĭgare**, *to voyage*, **nāvĭgium**, *voyage*, *ship* (**nāvem ăgĕre**); **mōrĭgĕrus**, *complaisant* (**mōrem gĕrĕre**); **puerpĕra**, **puerpĕrium**, *childbearing* (**puĕrum pārĕre**); **sortĭlĕgus**, *lot-picker*, hence *soothsayer* (**sortes lĕgĕre**): **stīpendium** (for **stĭpĭpendium**), *pay* (**stĭpem pendĕre**); **vĕnēnĭfer**, *poison-bearing* (**vĕnēnum ferre**); **vītĭsātor**, *vineplanter* (**vītem sĕrĕre**).

413 E. Oblique predicate + verb:

e.g. **aequĭpĕrare**, *make equal* (**aequum** (**aliquod**) **pārāre**); **lūdĭfĭcare**, *make game of* (**ludos** (**aliquem**) **făcĕre**); **purgare**, *cleanse* (**purum** (**aliquem**) **ăgĕre**).

Here may be put the half-compounds of (usually) verbal stems with **făcĕre** and **fĭĕri**. The quantity of the **e** is doubtful: it is here marked only when proof exists, in which case the author's name is added.

**călĕfăcĕre** (Plaut., Lucr.) also **calfăcĕre**, *make warm;* **lăbĕfacere** (Ter., Ov.), *make to fall;* **lĭqvĕfacere** (Verg., Ov.), **lĭquēfacere** (Lucr., Catull., Ov.), *melt;* **pătĕfăcere** (Plaut., Verg., Ov.), **pătēfăcere** (Lucr.), *display;* **pūtrēfăcere** or **pūtēfacere** (Plaut., Lucr.), **pŭtrĕfacĕre** (Ov.), *make rotten;* **desuētfacere**, *disuse;* **mansuēfacere**, *tame;* &c.

414 F. Subject + verb (rare):

**gallĭcĭnium**, *time of cockcrowing* (**gallus cănit**); **rēgĭfugium**, *king's flight* (**rex fugit** or **reges fugiunt**); **stillĭcĭdium**, *a dripping* (**stilla cădit**).

415 G. Oblique case or adjective used adverbially + verb. The construction presumed is often very loose.

**artĭfex**, *a handicraftsman*, **artĭfĭcium**, *skilled work* (**arte făcio**); **bĕnĕvŏlus**, *well-wisher* (**bĕnĕ vŏlo**); **bĕnignus**, *well-born*, *liberal* (**benĕ gen-ĭtus**); **bĭfĭdus**, *cleft in two* (**bis findor**); **largĭfluus**, *copious* (**large fluo**); **manceps**, *a purchaser*, **mancĭpium**, *a chattel* (**mānu căpio**); **mandāre**, *hand over to a person* (**mānu do**); **montĭvăgus**, *wandering on the mountains* (**montibus vāgor**); **noctĭvăgus**, *night-wandering* (**nocte vagor**); **omnĭpotens**, *all-powerful* (**omnia possum**); **raucisŏnus**, *hoarse-sounding* (**raucum sŏno**); **tībĭcen**, **tībĭcĭna**, *a flute-player* m. or f. (**tībiā cano**); **tŭbĭcen**, *a trumpeter* (**tŭbā cāno**); **vendĕre**, *to sell* (**vēnum dăre**).

So adverb (or oblique case) + participle, e.g.:
**alticinctus**, *girt high;* **bipartītus**, *divided into two* (**bis partīri**).

## CHAPTER IX.

## INTERJECTIONS.

416 INTERJECTIONS may be divided into two classes, according as they are (1) imitations of sounds; (2) abbreviated sentences or mutilated words.

1. Imitations of sounds. (The probable Greek and English modes of representing the same or similar sounds are here added.)

**a** or **ah** / **ha** — in warning or sorrow. Comp. ἆ; Engl. *ah!* Germ. *ach!*

**eja** / **heia** — in encouragement. Comp. εἶα, Engl. *hey.*

**vah** — in surprise or indignation. Comp. ὀᾶ.

**o** — various. Comp. ὦ, ὤ, Engl. *oh!*

**iō** — a shout in excitement. Comp. ἰου or ἰοὺ, Engl. *yoho!*

**ĕhŏ** or **oho** — a cry of distress. Comp. Engl. *Ho!* In Terence sometimes with **dum** appended.

**pro** or **proh** in surprise or indignation; especially in phrases, **pro Di immortales**, &c. Perhaps this is not imitative of a natural sound, but is a word.

**euoe** — for εὐοῖ: a cry in Bacchic rites.

**au** — in fear and warning.

**fu** or **fui** — expression of disgust. Plaut. *Most.* 39, *Pseud.* 1294. Comp. φεῦ (?), Engl. *fie! faw! foh!* Germ. *pfui.*

**phy** — in impatience at unnecessary explanation. Ter. *Ad.* 412. Probably same as last. Comp. Engl. *pooh.*

**hui** — various. Perhaps a whistle, which is written in Engl. *whew.*

**babae** / **papae** — in wonder and delight: a quivering of the lips. Perhaps imitative. Comp. Greek βαβαί, πόποι, παπαῖ.

**hahahae** — *Laughing.* Comp. ἁ, ἁ, Engl. *Haha.*

**vae** — in grief and anger. Represents a wail. Comp. οὐαί, in Alexandrine and later writers, perhaps imitation of the Latin; Germ. *weh*, Engl. *woe.* Compare also **vah** and the verb **vāgīre.**

**ŏhē** — in annoyance, especially when a person is *sated;* probably between a groan and a grunt. Comp. Engl. *ugh.*

**hei** or **ei** — in grief. It represents a sigh, Comp. ἒ ἔ or ἐ ἔ or ἐή, and perhaps αἰαῖ, Engl. *heigh.*

**ehem** or **hem** or **em** — the sound of clearing the throat? Comp. Engl. *hem, ahem,* In Plautus **em** is often found in MSS. for **en.**

**st** to command silence. The corresponding sound in English, *hist*, is used to attract attention; and *sh*, *hush* to command silence.

**attat** or **atat** or rarely **attatae** } in surprise, vexation, fear, &c.: smacking of the tongue against the teeth. Comp. ἀτταταῖ ἀτταταταῖ, ὀτοτοτοῖ, Engl. *tut*, *tut*.

**heus** a noise to attract attention: a combined whistle and hiss. Comp. Engl. *whisht!* and perhaps Germ. *heisa* (= Engl. *huzza*).

**bombax** apparently from βομβάξ: expression of wonder.

**euax** a cry of joy. Comp. εὖα, εὐάζειν, and perhaps Germ. *juchhe*.

**taxtax** the sound of blows. Comp. Engl. *thwack*.

**tărătantără** (Ennius), the sound of a trumpet.

417 2. Abbreviated sentences or mutilated words. The following are probably such:

(*a*) Latin:

**en** in Plaut. usually **em**, *lo!*

**ecce** *lo here!* The **ce** is perhaps the demonstrative particle, cf. §§ 119, 218. In the comic poets it is frequently combined with the accusative (as if it were equivalent to *see*) of the pronouns **is** and **ille**; **eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas, ecca; eccillum, eccillam, eccillut**; once also **eccistam.**

**eccere** used similarly to English *there!*

**mehercules, mehercule, mehercle, hercules, hercle** } abbreviations of **me Hercules juvet.**

**medius fidius** for **me deus Fidius juvet,** *so help me* the God of Faith.

**ecastor** perhaps for **en Castor.**

**pol** for **Pollux.**

**ĕdĕpol** said by Roman grammarians to be for **per aedem Pollucis.**

**sōdes** *prythee.* Said by Cicero (*Or.* 45) to be for **si audes.**

(*b*) Borrowed from the Greek:

**age** *come!* for ἄγε. It is sometimes followed by **dum.**

**ăpăge** *off!* for ἄπαγε.

**euge** for εὖγε.

**eugipae** originally for εὖγε παῖ?

# BOOK IV.

## *SYNTAX, OR USE OF INFLEXIONAL FORMS.*

418 SYNTAX is an account of the way in which the different parts of speech (*i.e.* classes of words), and their different inflexional forms are employed in the formation of sentences.

## CHAPTER I.

### CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

419 WORDS in Latin may be divided into four classes, according as they denote,

(I) a complete thought;

(II) a person, thing, or abstract notion;

(III) a relation or quality;

(IV) a mere connexion of words or sentences.

Words of the first two classes are, with some special exceptions, inflected; the last two are not inflected.

420 I. Words which express a complete thought (called in logic a judgment) are *finite verbs* (*i.e.* verbs in indicative, subjunctive and imperative moods); *e.g.* **dico, dicis, dicit,** *I say, thou sayest, he says;* **dicat,** *he should say;* **dicito,** *thou shalt say.*

421 II. Words which denote persons and things and abstract notions are called *nouns* (*i.e.* names), and are divided into two classes, *substantives* and *adjectives.*

1. *Substantives* are such names of things, &c. as are representative, not of their possessing one particular quality, but of the sum of all the qualities and relations which we conceive them to have.

(*a*) *Pronoun Substantives.*

*Personal Pronouns* (in Latin) are names to denote the person speaking and the person spoken to; *e.g.* **ego**, *I;* **tu**, *thou.*

(*b*) *Noun Substantives.*

*Proper* nouns are names of individual persons or places; *e.g.* **Lucius**, *Lucius;* **Roma**, *Rome.*

*Common* nouns, or *appellatives*, are names of classes of persons or things; *e.g.* **victor**, *conqueror;* **aurum**, *gold;* **flos**, *a flower.*

*Abstract* nouns are names of qualities, actions, and states, considered apart from the persons or things possessing or performing them; *e.g.* **magnitudo**, *greatness;* **salus**, *health;* **discessus**, *departure.*

(*c*) *Infinitive* mood of verbs and *gerunds* are names of actions or states conceived in connexion with the persons or things performing or possessing them; *e.g.* **videre**, *to see;* **videndi**, *of seeing.*

(*d*) Any word or phrase which is spoken of as a word or phrase only, is the name of itself; *e.g.* **vidit**, *the word* **vidit.** Such words are necessarily indeclinable.

422 2. *Adjectives* (in Latin are not names of qualities, but) are such names of persons or things as are expressive simply of their possessing this or that quality, or being placed in this or that relation. (See § 442.)

(*a*) *Pronominal* adjectives describe by means of certain relations, chiefly those of local nearness to the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of. They are often used instead of nouns; *e.g.* **meus**, *mine;* **hic**, *this;* **ille**, *that;* **qui**, *which.*

(*b*) *Numeral* adjectives describe by means of number or rank; *e.g.* **septem**, *seven;* **septimus**, *seventh.* Some are indeclinable.

(*c*) *Nominal* (or *noun*) adjectives describe by means of qualities; *e.g.* **magnus**, *great;* **salutaris**, *healthy.*

(*d*) *Participles* (including *gerundive* in some uses) are verbal adjectives used to describe persons or things by means of actions done by or to them; *e.g.* **amans**, *loving;* **amātus**, *loved;* **amandus**, *that should be loved.*

423 III. Words (besides oblique cases of nouns), which denote relations or qualities of qualities or of actions, are called *adverbs*, and are indeclinable.

(*a*) *Connective* adverbs; *i.e.* those which besides qualifying a word in their own sentence, also connect that sentence with another sentence. These are all pronominal; *e.g.* **quum**, *when;* **dum**, *whilst;* **ubi**, *where;* **ut**, *how, as;* **si**, *in whatever case, if;* **quia**, *whereas, because*, &c.

(*b*) Other *pronominal* adverbs; *e.g.* **hic**, *here;* **tum**, *then.*

(*c*) *Numeral* adverbs; *e.g.* **septies**, *seven times.*

(*d*) *Nominal* adverbs (of *quality, manner*, &c.); *e.g.* **bĕne**, *well;* **clārē**, *brightly.*

(*e*) *Prepositions* either express modes of actions or qualities, and in this usage are generally compounded with the verb or adjective, or give precision to the relations denoted by the case-suffixes of nouns; *e.g.* **in**, *in*; **ex**, *out*; **per**, *through*.

424 IV. Words which denote a mere connexion (not of things, but) of names with names, sentences with sentences, or parts of sentences with like parts, are called *conjunctions*; *e.g.* **et**, **nec**, **sed**, in the following sentences, **Caesar et Cicero eunt et colloquuntur**, *Caesar and Cicero go and talk together*; **Non eros nec dominos appellat eos, sed patriae custodes, sed patres, sed deos** (Cic.), *He calls them not masters nor lords but guardians of their country, fathers, aye gods.*

425 To these four classes may be added

*Interjections*; which are either natural vocal sounds, expressive of sudden emotions, or abbreviated sentences; *e.g.* **O! heu! ehem! st! medius fidius**, *upon my word.*

## CHAPTER II.

## PARTS OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE, AND USE OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

### i. Elements of a Sentence.

426 WHEN we speak we either *name* a person or thing, or we *declare* something of a person or thing.

The name of a person or thing is expressed by a *substantive*.

A complete thought always contains more than the name, for it declares something of the person or thing named. Every complete thought (called in Grammar a *sentence*) contains at least two ideas, viz.

1. The person or thing of which we speak, called the *Subject*.
2. Our declaration respecting it, called the *Predicate*.

427 A complete thought may be expressed most simply in Latin either (*a*) by a finite verb, or (*b*) by two nouns.

(*a*) A finite verb contains in its personal suffixes the subject, in its stem the predicate; *e.g.* **curr-it**, *he* (*she*, *it*) *runs*; **plu-it**, *it rains*; **ama-mus**, *we love*; etc.

(*b*) When the thought is expressed by two nouns only, the sentence will contain a substantive (or substantivally-used adjective), in the nominative case, for the subject, and either a substantive or an adjective for the predicate. Of two substantives it is, apart from the context, indifferent which is considered as the subject, but usually the

least general name will be the subject: *e.g.* **Julius fortis**, *Julius is brave*; **Julius consul**, *Julius is the Consul*, or, *the Consul is Julius*.

The junction of the two ideas, *i.e.* the predication itself (called in logic the *copula*), is not expressed by any separate word, but (*a*) is implied in the indissoluble junction of the stem and personal suffixes in the finite verb; or (*b*) is inferred from the close sequence of the two names.

428 Both these simple forms of sentences are liable to be ambiguous: viz.:

(*a*) The personal suffixes of a finite verb are often insufficient to define the subject, especially when the subject is of the third person. For the purpose of further definition, a substantive in the nominative case is often expressed with it, and the verb may then be regarded as containing only the predicate; *e.g.* **Equus currit**, *the horse runs* (properly *horse run-he*[1]).

(*b*) The relation of two nouns to each other is also ambiguous. The adjective or second substantive may be used, not to assert a connexion (i.e. as a *predicate*), but to denote an already known or assumed connexion (i.e. as an *attribute*), of the person or thing named by the first substantive with the quality named by the second substantive or the adjective. To remedy this ambiguity, some part of the verb **sum** is generally used (except in animated language) to mark the fact of a predication, and then (usually but not necessarily) means little more than the logical copula, *e.g.* **Julius est consul**, *Julius* (*he*) *is consul*.

*General rules.*

429 1. A finite verb, when its subject is expressed by a separate word, is put in the same person, and as a rule, in the same number, as its subject.

2. Any substantive may be used as a subject. The subject of a sentence is, if declinable, in the nominative case; but the relation of subject and predicate may exist also between words in oblique cases.

3. A noun, whether used as an attribute or predicate, is put in the same case, if it denote the same person or thing, as the substantive to which it is attributed, or the subject of which it is predicated.

(Pronouns and participles follow the same rule as nouns, and will therefore, unless separately mentioned, be included here under the term *noun*. Adjectives used otherwise than as attributes or predicates of a substantive will be included under the term *substantive*.)

## ii. Of Attributes.

430 If a substantive by itself does not express the full name or definition which we wish to give of a person or thing, a word or expression is added, called an *attribute*[2] of the substantive. The simplest forms of

[1] More strictly perhaps (if we may regard the **o** stems as properly masculine, and notice the nominative suffix) *horse-he run-he*.

[2] Whether in any given sentence a word or expression is an attribute and intended merely to aid in identifying the subject, or is a predicate and in-

attributes are nouns, denoting the same person or thing, as the substantive of which they are attributes. An attribute may be

(*a*) A substantive (often said to be in *apposition*); e.g. **Gaius Julius Caesar**; **Julio consuli credidi**, *I believed the consul Julius.*

(*b*) An adjective; e.g. **haec res**, *this thing*; **fortem consulem vidi**, *I saw the brave consul.* This is the normal use of the adjective, the adjectival suffixes, like the personal suffixes of the finite verb, acquiring further definition by the accompaniment of a substantive.

(*c*) For the use of other words or expressions as attributes, see below (§ 438).

### iii. Of Predicates.

431 A predicate[1] is either *primary* or *secondary*, and each of these is either *direct* or *oblique*. A predicate is *direct*, if its subject is in the nominative case; *oblique*, if its subject is in an oblique case. It is *primary*, if predicated immediately of the subject; *secondary*, if predicated only through, or in connexion with, a primary predicate.

A finite verb always contains a primary direct predication; and is never used otherwise (except as mentioned in § 421 *d*).

A noun or infinitive mood may be a primary or secondary, direct or oblique, predicate.

432 As *primary* predicate some form of the verb is usual, and chiefly the finite verb; but a past participle or gerundive is not uncommon: a noun or pronoun is comparatively rare. An infinitive is also found in animated narrative; e.g.

**Invadunt hostes: Romani fugĕre: occisus Marcellus. Haec nuntianda**, *The enemy rush on: the Romans (proceed to) fly: Marcellus is killed. This must be told.*

The distinction of the use of a noun as a primary predicate from its use as a secondary predicate with the verb of *being* (see next paragraph) is practically so unimportant, that the term *secondary predicate* will often be used to cover both.

433 (*a*) A *secondary* predicate is often added to a verb of indeterminate meaning (e.g. a verb of *being*, *becoming*, *naming*, &c.) to complete, as it were, the predication: e.g.

**Dux fuit Julius. Occisus est Marcellus. Haec sunt nuntianda. Liberati videbamur**, *We seemed (to be) freed.*

tended to give fresh information about it, may be sometimes doubtful. Latin has no mark to distinguish these uses. In Greek an attribute has the article prefixed, a secondary predicate has not.

[1] It is convenient sometimes to regard the whole of the sentence as divisible into two parts only: in this view the grammatical subject with all its attributes, &c. is the (logical) subject; the rest of the sentence is the (logical) predicate.

**Gaius dicitur advenire**, *Gaius is said to be coming.*
**Caesar imperator appellatur** (or **appellatus**, or **appellari**), *Caesar is being called* (or *is called*, or *begins to be called*) *Emperor.*

(*b*) A secondary predicate is often employed to denote the character in which, or circumstances under which, a person or thing acts, or is acted on[1].

**Hannibal peto pacem**, *It is I, Hannibal, who now ask for peace.*
**Primus Marcum vidisti**, *You are the first that has seen Marcus.*
**Senex scribere institui**, *I was an old man when I began to write.*
**Neque loquens es, neque tacens, umquam bonus**, *Neither when talking, nor when keeping silence, are you ever good.*
**Caesar legatus mittitur** (or **missus** or **mitti**). *Caesar is being sent* (or *is sent*, or *begins to be sent*) *as ambassador.*

434 Oblique predicates are usually in sentences containing a finite verb. The following contain *primary oblique* predicates.

**Dicit Romanos fugĕre**, *He says the Romans are fleeing* (*speaks of the Romans as fleeing*).
**Fama est Romanos fugĕre**, *There is a rumour that the Romans are fleeing.*
**Minabar me abiturum**, *I threatened I would go away.* **Minantur puellae se abituras**, *The girls threaten they will go away.*
**Te heredem fecit**, *He made you heir.*
**Quem te appellem?** *Whom am I to call you?*
**Marcum primum vidisti**, *Marcus was the first you saw.*
**Advenienti sorori librum dedit**, *He gave the book to his sister as she was coming up.*
**Ante Ciceronem consulem interiit**, *He died before Cicero was consul.*
**Capta urbe rediit**, *On the city being taken he returned.*

435 An infinitive, when used either as (1) predicate or (2) object, &c., is often accompanied by a noun or other predicate; e.g.

(1) **Caesarem dico appellari** (or **appellatum esse**) **imperatorem**, *I say that Caesar is being called* (or *is* or *was called*) *Emperor.*
**Caesar dicitur appellari** (or **appellatus esse**) **imperator**, *Caesar is said to be called* (*to have been called*) *Emperor.*
**Fertur ille consules reliquisse, invitus invitos**, *He is said to have left the consuls, to his and their regret.*
**Spero vos in urbem triumphantes ingressuros esse**, *I hope that you will march into the city in triumph.*

(2) **Caesar bonus esse** (or **haberi**) **cupit**, *Caesar desires to be* (or *to be considered*) *good.*
**Cogito iter facere armatus**, *I am thinking of making the journey armed.*
**Licuit esse otioso Themistocli**, *Themistocles was allowed to be idle.*
**Movit me vir, cujus fugientis comes, rempublicam recuperantis socius, videor esse debere**, *I was moved by the man whose companion I feel I ought to be in his flight and ally in restoring the commonwealth.* (Cic.)

[1] Such a secondary predicate might, if it needed distinction from the preceding class, be called a *subpredicate.* It is often called an *apposition*, or *adverbial apposition.*

436 Participles are (sometimes attributes, but) usually predicates to some substantive in the sentence, and are thus the means of combining into one sentence several subordinate predications: e.g.

**Venit iste cum sago, gladio succinctus, tenens jaculum; illi, nescio quid incipienti dicere, gladium in latere defixit,** *The fellow came wearing his cloak, girt with a sword, a javelin in his hand, and as the other was beginning to say something, plunged his sword in his side.* (Corn.)

In this sentence all the participles are predicates.

### iv. Of the use of oblique cases and adverbs.

437 1. If a verb by itself, or with a secondary predicate, does not express all that we wish to declare of a person or thing by that sentence, additions may be made of various kinds; viz.

(*a*) If the verb express an action conceived as in immediate connexion with some person or thing upon which it is exercised, or to which it gives rise, a substantive in the accusative case may be added to denote such a person or thing. This is called the *object* (or *direct* or *immediate object*); e.g. **amicos fugiunt,** *They flee from their friends;* **Caesar librum teneat,** *Caesar should hold the book;* **carmina fingo,** *I am making poetry.* If the object be itself an action of the same subject, it is usually expressed by an infinitive mood; e.g. **cupio discere,** *I desire to learn.*

(*b*) If the verb express an action or fact indirectly affecting a person (or thing), who is not the subject or direct object, a substantive, in the dative case, may be added to express such an *indirect* (or *remoter*) *object.* Some (i.e. intransitive) verbs admit this indirect object only: many verbs admit of both a direct and indirect object: e.g. **Placet oratio tibi,** *The speech is pleasing to you;* **hoc fratri tradite,** *Hand this to your brother;* **liber Caesari datur,** *The book is given to Caesar.*

(*c*) Some verbs have what may be called a *secondary* object in the genitive case: if transitive, they have also usually a direct (frequently personal) object: e.g. **Accuso te furti,** *I accuse thee of theft;* **cadum vini implet,** *He fills the cask with* (*makes it full of*) *wine;* **miserescite patris,** *Have pity on your father.*

(*d*) A verb may be further qualified by adding oblique cases of substantives (with or without prepositions), or adverbs, to denote the *place, time, value, means, manner, cause,* &c. at, in, by, from, &c. which the action is done or state exists: e.g. **Fui annum Capuae,** *I was a year at Capua;* **litteras abs te Balbus ad me attulit vesperi,** *Balbus brought me in the evening a letter from you;* **magni hoc aestimo,** *I value this at a large sum;* **ardet dolore,** *He is in a fever with pain.*

The infinitive mood and the participles admit the same qualifications as finite verbs.

438 2. Oblique cases of substantives (with or without prepositions), and adverbs, when they qualify (*a*) the verb of *being* and other verbs of similarly colourless meaning, have often the same effect as a secondary

predicate[1]. They are rarely used predicatively without a verb. But they are also used to qualify (*b*) substantives attributively, and (*c*) adjectives, and sometimes (*d*) adverbs: e.g.

(*a*) **Caesaris est** (or **vocatur**) **gladius**, *The sword* (*is called*) *Caesar's.*
**Scio hoc laudi esse mihi**, *I know that this is an honour to me.*
**Praestanti prudentia est**, *He is of remarkable prudence.*
**In me odium est tuum**, *Your hatred is against me.*
**Sic est vita hominum**, *Such is the life of men.*

(*b*) **Caesaris gladius**, *Caesar's sword.* **Cupiditate triumphi ardebam**, *I was in a glow with the desire for a triumph.* **Aliquid laeti**, *something* (*of*) *pleasant.*

(This use as attribute is the most common use of the genitive.)

**Decemviri legibus scribendis**, *A commission of ten for drawing up laws.* **Vir praestanti prudentia.** **In me odium.**
**Omnes circa civitates**, *All the states round about.*

(*c*) **Maximus regum**, *The greatest of kings.* **Cupidus triumphi**, *Desirous of a triumph.*
**Arti cuilibet idoneus**, *Fit for any art whatever.*
**Tanto major**, (*by*) *so much greater;* **splendidior vitro**, *Brighter than glass.* **Ex composito hilaris**, *Cheerful by arrangement.* **Valde utilis**, *Very useful.* **Aliquando laetus**, *Sometimes cheerful.*

(*d*) **Convenienter naturae**, *Agreeably to nature.* **Tanto magis**, *so much the more.* **In dies magis**, *more day by day.* **Paene pedetemptim**, *almost step by step.*

439 v. Of coordination by conjunctions and otherwise.

(*a*) Conjunctions and connective adverbs of manner (e.g. **quam**, **ut**), when used to unite words or phrases, unite those only which are *coordinate* to one another, i.e. which fulfil the same function in the sentence; e.g. two objects, two attributes, two adverbial qualifications: &c. e.g.

**Romani ac socii veniunt**, *The Romans and allies come.* **Nec regem nec reginam vidi**, *I saw neither king nor queen.*
**Illine credam an tibi?** *Am I to believe him or you?*
**Bella fortius quam felicius geris**, *You are more brave than fortunate in waging wars.*
**Tibi cum meam salutem, tum omnium horum debeo**, *I owe to you as well my own safety as that of all these.*
**Cum omnibus potius quam soli perire voluerunt**, *They wished rather to perish with all the world than by themselves.*
**Tu mihi videris Epicharmi, acuti nec insulsi hominis, ut Siculi, sententiam sequi**, (Cic.) *You seem to me to be following the view of Epicharmus, a sharp man and, as a Sicilian, not without wit.*

[1] Such words do not (like those in § 430) denote the same person or thing as the word of which they are predicates or attributes; and the maintenance of their own special case is necessary to give them the requisite meaning.

(*b*) Coordinate words are often put simply side by side, without any conjunction: sometimes another word is repeated with each: e.g.

**Veios, Fidenas, Collatiam, Aricíam, Tusculum cum Calibus, Teano, Neapoli, Puteolis, Nuceria, comparabunt.** (C. *Agr.* 2. 35.)

**Nihil vos civibus, nihil sociis, nihil regibus respondistis; nihil judices sententia, nihil populus suffragiis, nihil hic ordo auctoritate declaravit; mutum forum, elinguem curiam, tacitam et fractam civitatem videbatis.** (Cic.)

(*c*) An answer, when not framed as an independent sentence, is often made in words coordinate to the pertinent part of the question: e.g. **Quis librum dedit? Cicero. Cui? Bruto. Quem? Tusculanas Disputationes. Ubi? In Tusculano.**

### vi. Of fragmentary or interjectional expressions.

440 A noun or infinitive mood is sometimes used (*a*) as subject without a predicate expressed, or (*b*) as predicate without a subject expressed; or (*c*) as a mere address. Similarly (*d*) adverbs and interjections.

(*a*) **Quid, si adeo?** *What if I go to him?* **Agendum; eundum,** (*We must*) *act, go.* **Malum,** *the plague!* **Tantum laborem capere ob talem filium!** *To take so much trouble for such a son!* (Ter.)

(*b*) **Mirum ni hic miles est,** *Strange if this is not the soldier.* **Factum,** *Done* (in answers).

(*c*) **Audi, Caesar,** *Hear, Caesar.* **Tibi, Marce, loquor.**

(*d*) **Bene mihi, bene amicae meae,** *A health to me, a health to my mistress.* (Plaut.) **Hei mihi,** *Woe's me.*

## CHAPTER III.

## USE OF NOUN INFLEXIONS; ESPECIALLY THOSE OF GENDER AND NUMBER.

441 1. A substantive when used as attribute or secondary predicate is put in the same case as the substantive which it qualifies. Usually also the sense will require that it be put in the same number, and, if it have more than one form, in the appropriate gender.

(*a*) As attribute, i.e. in apposition.

**Caius Julius Caesar; Cai Juli Caesaris;** &c.
**Urbs Roma; Urbem Romam;** &c.

**Duas filias juvenibus regiis, Lucio atque Arrunti Tarquiniis, jungit.** (Liv.)
**P. et Ser. Sullae.** (Sall.) Rarely **Ti. et C. Gracchus.** (Sall.)
**Tulliola, deliciolae nostrae, tuum munusculum flagitat.** (Cic.)
**O vitae philosophia dux, O virtutis indagatrix expultrixque vitiorum.** (Cic.)
**Hoc tibi, Porsinna, juventus Romana indicimus bellum.** (Liv.)
**Ei morbo nomen est avaritia.** (Cic.)

(*b*) As secondary predicate, either direct or oblique.

**Haec urbs est Roma. Caesar creatus est consul.**
**Licet Caesari esse,** (**creari, legem ferre,**) **consuli.**
**C. Junius aedem Salutis, quam consul voverat, censor locaverat, dictator dedicavit.** (Liv.)
**Dolabella hesterno die hoste decreto, bellum gerendum est.** (Cic.)
**Num potui Ciliciam Aetoliam aut Macedoniam reddere?** (Cic.)
**Nequam et cessator Davus: at ipse subtilis veterum judex et callidus audis.** (Hor.)
**Adventus Philotimi—at cujus hominis, quam insulsi et quam saepe pro Pompeio mentientis—exanimavit omnes.** (Cic.)
**Huic item Menaechmo nomen est.** (Pl. *Men.* 1096.) So usually in Plautus. For the name put in the *nominative* see last paragraph.
**Puero ab inopia Egerio inditum nomen.** (Liv.)
**Tuum**[1], **hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus.** (Cic.)

442 The above rules for substantives apply equally to adjectives; that is to say, adjectives, whether used as attributes or secondary predicates, are put in the case in which a substantive similarly used would be put. The gender and number will vary with the meaning. For adjectives should be regarded as substantives of wide general application (e.g. **bonus**, '*a good he*,' **bona**, '*a good she*,' **bonum**, '*a good thing*').

443 2. An adjective is sufficient by its inflexions of gender and number to denote, if in the masculine, males, or persons generally; if in the feminine, females; if in the neuter, things in general.

An ordinary adjective is not commonly so used in the masculine singular nominative as *subject*. But demonstrative and relative pronouns are frequently so used in all cases.

**Docti censent. Suavia delectant. Quid est hoc?**
**Cui pretium dedit? unde aut quantum dedit?**
**Sum timidus. Sum timida. Sunt timidae.**
**Est miserum igitur mors, quoniam malum.** (Cic.)
**Ita prorsus existimo, bonos beatos, improbos miseros.** (Cic.)
**Absentatio non modo amico, sed ne libero quidem, digna est.** (Cic.)
**Labor voluptasque, dissimillima natura, societate quadam inter se naturali juncta sunt.** (Liv.)
**Otium atque divitiae, quae prima mortales putant.** (Sall.)

[1] **Tuum** may be considered as a genitive case (of **tu**) with adjectival inflexions (§ 191).

**Capita conjurationis ejus virgis caesi ac securibus percussi sunt.** (Liv.)
**Triste lupus stabulis.** (Verg.)
**Varium et mutabile semper femina.** (Verg.)

444 Hence many adjectives of special meaning are constantly used in the appropriate gender as substantives: e.g.

**Adulescens, agnatus, amicus, animans, infans, juvenis, maritus, necessarius, rusticus, serpens, socius,** &c.
**Commodum, decretum, dictum, factum, fatum, ostensum, pactum, peccatum, responsum, secretum, verum, votum,** &c.

445 3. An adjective when used as attribute to a substantive is put in the same case, gender, and number as that substantive.

**Vana illa res verae mox cladis causa fuit.** (Liv.)
**Ego tibi illam Aciliam legem restituo, qua lege multi, semel dicta causa, condemnati sunt.** (Cic.)

446 4. An adjective intended as attribute to more than one substantive is, unless for emphasis' sake, expressed only once, and is put in the case and number of the substantive nearest to itself in the sentence.

**Omnes agri et maria. Agri et maria omnia.**
**Hominis utilitati agros omnis et maria parentia videmus.** (Cic.)

447 5. The substantive to which the adjective is an attribute, is frequently, in certain constructions almost always, omitted: viz.

(*a*) Many adjectives being specially applicable, or frequently applied, to particular substantives are used without them, and pass as ordinary substantives.

e.g. **Africus (ventus); cani (capilli); circenses (ludi); natalis (dies); occidens (sol); September (mensis); sestertius (nummus);**
**Africa (terra); agnina (caro); Appia (via); arithmetica (ars); calda (aqua); decuma (pars); dextra (manus); fera (bestia); Latinae (feriae); patria (terra); praetexta (toga); summa (res); triremis (navis);**
**Cumanum (praedium); Falernum, merum (vinum); hiberna, stativa (castra).**

Some are only so used in particular phrases.

**Primas (partes) agere, frigidam (aquam) potare.**

448 (*b*) When the same substantive is used both as subject and predicate, it is expressed once only, the adjective thus often appearing by itself as secondary predicate.

**Verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt.** (Cic.)
**Equidem ego vobis regnum trado firmum, si boni eritis, sin mali, imbecillum.** (Sall.)

449 (*c*) A substantive is often omitted in one sentence, if it is expressed in the neighbouring clause or sentence.

So usually (1) where two attributes referring to different things of the same class require the same substantive.

**Ipsorum lingua Keltae, nostra Galli appellantur.** (Caes.)
**Diversa cornua, dextrum ad castra Samnitium, laevum ad urbem tendit.** (Liv.)

450 (2) With relative and demonstrative pronouns, the substantive (often called the antecedent) is usually expressed in the former of the two clauses only.

**Legati ad Caesarem venerunt. Hos / Quos ille statim remisit.**

**Caritate ea praestat patria, pro qua mori et cui nos totos dedere et in qua nostra omnia ponere debemus.** (Cic.)
**Me tuae litterae nunquam in tantam spem induxerunt, quantam aliorum.** (Cic.)
**Severitatem in senectute probo, sed eam, sicut alia, modicam.** (Cic.)
**In quem primum Eneti Trojanique egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur.** (Liv.)

451 6. A demonstrative or relative pronoun, used substantively as the subject of a definition, is usually attracted into the gender and number of the defining substantive.

**Eas divitias, eam bonam famam magnamque nobilitatem, putabant.** (Sall.)
**Quae apud alios iracundia dicitur, ea in imperio superbia atque crudelitas appellatur.** (Sall.)
**Haud erat dubium quin Lucerinis opem Romanus ferret: ea modo, qua irent, consultatio fuit.** (Liv.)
**Pompeio patre, quod imperio populi Romani lumen fuit, extincto, interfectus est patris simillimus filius.** (Cic.)

452 7. An adjective is frequently found as secondary predicate, where in English we use an adverb or prepositional clause.

**Soli hoc contingit sapienti, ut nihil faciat invitus, nihil dolens, nihil coactus.** (Cic.)
**Marius antea jam infestus nobilitati, tum vero multus atque ferox instare.** (Sall.)
**Gnavus mane forum et vespertinus pete tectum.** (Hor.)
**Appius jam inde antiquitus insitam familiae pertinaciam, gerendo solus censuram, obtinuit.** (Liv.)

## CHAPTER IV.

## USE OF CASES.

453 Of the six cases in Latin five have each more than one use: the locative has one only.

The *nominative* is quite distinct from the others, which have all some points of resemblance among themselves.

The nominative is used both of the subject of the sentence and of the person addressed.

Of the *oblique* cases the accusative, dative, locative, and ablative are mainly used in connexion with verbs; the genitive with nouns.

The accusative and ablative have a great variety of applications, which, however, may be ultimately reduced to three main uses each; and there is considerable analogy between them.

(1) The accusative denotes the area over which an action prevails; the ablative (as also the locative) denotes the point at which it is done.

(2) The accusative denotes the goal; the ablative the place of departure.

(3) The accusative denotes the object of a verbal action; the ablative denotes the attendant influences and circumstances.

The dative and the genitive resemble one another in so far that they both have an adjectival use, and both have also a use with verbs: but the adjectival use is the principal use of the genitive and the less important use of the dative; the use with verbs is much the commonest with the dative, and is occasional and isolated with the genitive.

454 In their relation to verbs the accusative, dative, and genitive may all denote objects of action; the accusative the direct object, the dative the indirect object; the genitive a secondary object; the usual combinations being that the accusative denotes a thing and the dative a person; or the accusative a person and the genitive a thing.

Outside this sphere of immediate action the accusative (in its other uses) and the ablative denote the numberless qualifications of place, time, extent, degree, manner, cause, and circumstances generally.

In their relation to nouns, whether as attributes or predicates, the genitive has the largest use, but the predicative dative, and the ablative of description, also play some part.

## CHAPTER V.

### USE OF NOMINATIVE CASE.

455 THE NOMINATIVE case expresses the

(A) Name of the person or thing spoken of;

(B) Name of the person (or thing) spoken to.

(A) Name of person or thing spoken of; i.e. the subject of a sentence; e.g.

**Milo adfuit. Dixit Pompeius. Panduntur portae.**
**Tu nescis? At tu sume pedum.**
**Nocens precatur, innocens irascitur.** (Pub. Syr.)

**Res, tempus, pericula, egestas, belli spolia magnifica magis, quam oratio mea, vos hortantur.** (Sall.)
**Unde et quo Catius?** (sc. venit). (Hor.)

453 The nominative is used with **en, ecce,** as subject to an unexpressed predicate; e.g.

**En, Priamus. Ecce, iterum Crispinus.** (Cic.)
**Ecce tuae litterae de Varrone.** (Cic.)
**En crimen, en causa, cur regem fugitivus accuset.** (Juv.)

457 (B) Name of the person (or thing) spoken to.

(This is often called the Vocative case. It is distinct in form from the nominative only in some stems in **-o.** See §§ 108, 112.)

**Salve, anime mi. O mi Clinia, salve.** (Ter.)
**Mater, te appello.**
**Ne saevi, magna sacerdos: I, decus, i, nostrum.** (Verg.)
**O Corydon, Corydon, quae te dementia cepit?** (Verg.)
**Vos, Albani tumuli atque luci, vos, inquam, imploro.** (Cic.)
**Pollio, te, Messalla, tuo cum fratre simulque**
**vos Bibule et Servi, simul his te, candide Furni,**
**prudens praetereo.** (Hor.)

## CHAPTER VI.

## USE OF ACCUSATIVE CASE.

458 The Accusative is used in three principal senses, each of which admits of several applications. It expresses

(A) The compass of an action or quality; e.g.

1. Space over which; e.g. **duo millia progredior,** *I step forward two miles.*

2. Time throughout which; e.g. **dies noctisque crucior,** *I am tortured whole days and nights.*

3. Extent of action of verb; e.g. **multum unus poterat,** *He alone had much power.*

4. Part concerned (poetic usage); e.g. **tremit artus,** *He trembles all over his limbs.*

5. Extent; further defined by numerous prepositions.

(B) The goal to which motion is directed; i.e.

1. Place towards which; e.g. **Romam venit,** *He comes to Rome.*

2. An action as the goal of motion; e.g. **Salutatum venit,** *He comes to greet.*

3. Goal, further defined by numerous prepositions.

(C) The direct object of an action; e.g.

1. Direct object of transitive verb; e.g. **Cave canem**, *Ware dog.*

2. (Certain special usages; viz.)

(*a*) Two direct objects; e.g. **Me sententiam rogavit**, *He asked me an opinion.*

(*b*) Object of passive or reflexive verb; e.g. **Suffusus oculos**, *Having his eyes suffused.*

(*c*) Object of verb understood. In exclamations; e.g. **Me miserum**, *Unhappy me.*

These uses may be set forth more in detail as follows:

459 (A) Compass or measure of action, state, or quality; used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and nominal adverbs.

1. Space over, along, about which; i.e. distance, length, &c. Usually with adjective or attributive genitive.

**Caesar tridui iter processit. Murus decem pedes altus.**
**Abest ab Utica mille passus.**
**A recta conscientia transversum unguem non oportet discedere.** (Cic.)

Sometimes this accusative denoting the distance is used to define the place reached; e.g. **Caesar milia passuum tria ab Helvetiorum castris castra ponit.** (Caes.)

460 2. Time throughout which.

**Noctes vigilabat ad ipsum mane, diem totum stertebat.** (Hor.)
**Annum jam audis Cratippum.** (Cic.)
**Neque ille hoc animo erit aetatem.** (Ter.)
**Sex. Roscius annos natus quadraginta.**

**Id temporis**, *at that time*, **istuc aetatis**, *at that age*, are not uncommonly used. (For the genitives **temporis, aetatis,** see § 522 *b*.)

461 3. The extent of action of the verb expressed, either (*a*) by a neuter adjective of quantity or pronoun;

**Nos aliquid Rutulos juvimus.** (Verg.)
**Quid me ista laedunt?**
**Unum sentitis omnes, unum studetis.** (Cic.)

So commonly **tantum, quantum, multum, plus, postremum,** &c.

Other adjectives are used in poetry.

**Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo, dulce loquentem.** (Hor.)
**Asper, acerba tuens, retro redit.** (Verg.)

(*b*) or by a substantive of the same meaning as the verb, accompanied usually by an oblique adjectival predicate. (Cognate accusative).

**Iamne tibi diu videor vitam vivere?** (Plaut.)
**Hunc, oro, sine me furere ante furorem.** (Verg.)
**Tuis servivi servitutem imperiis, pater.** (Plaut.)

462 4. Part concerned; in poetry chiefly of parts of the body; in prose rare, and only in a few expressions. (The Ablative is more used, § 497.)

**Os humerosque deo similis.** (Verg.)
**Statque latus praefixa veru, stat saucia pectus.** (Tib.)
**Feminae lineis amictibus velantur, nudae brachia et lacertos.** (Tac.)

**Sollicitus vicem imperatoris.** (Liv.)
**Maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt.** (Caes.)

Phrases like **id genus**, *of that kind*; **capita virile secus** (Liv.), *persons of the male sex*, are most like to accusatives of *extent*.

463 5. The accusative of compass or extent is often used with prepositions which define it more exactly; e.g.
**Trans Tiberim longe cubat is, prope Caesaris hortos.** (Hor.)

Some prepositions, especially **trans**, even in composition, retain their ordinary use with the accusative; e.g.
**Hannibal Hiberum copias trajecit.** (Liv.)
**Belgae Rhenum antiquitus traducti sunt.** (Caes.)

Analogous to the use with prepositions is the accusative after the adverbs **propius, proxime** (Cic., Liv.) and the adjectives **propior, proximus** (Caes., Sall.).
**Exercitum habet quam proxime hostem.** (Cic.)
**Ipse propior montem suos collocat.** (Sall.)

464 (B) Goal to which motion is directed.

1. Proper names of towns and of islands (small enough to be considered as one place) are used in the accusative in this sense without a preposition. So also **domum** (*home*, not *house*), **rus, foras.**

In poetry names of countries and appellatives as well as proper names are so used.
**In Siciliam Syracusas abiit.**
**Leucadem venimus: inde Corcyram bellissime navigavimus.** (Cic.)
**Domum ad te scribas. Senex rus se abdidit.**
**Italiam fato profugus Lavinaque venit littora.** (Verg.)
**Exercitus Aquiloniam est indictus.** (Liv.)
**Matronam domum accepit.** (Liv.)

465 A preposition **ad, in,** &c. is usually required when the place towards which

(*a*) is expressed by common noun; e.g. **ad caput, ad te veniet.**

(*b*) is interior of country, &c.; e.g. **in Siciliam, in urbem venit**; or neighbourhood, e.g. **ad urbem venit.**

(*c*) has **urbem,** &c. in apposition; these require **ad** or **in,** e.g. **ivit Tarquinios in urbem Etruriae magnam; venit in oppidum Cirtam.**

466 2. An action as the goal of motion or the like.

This use is almost confined to the so-called supine in **-um**, really the accusative singular of a verbal substantive with stem ending in **u.**
**Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae.** (Ov.)
**Lusum it Maecenas, dormitum ego Vergiliusque.** (Hor.)
**Coctum ego, non vapulatum dudum conductus fui.** (Plaut.)
**Daturne illa Pamphilo hodie nuptum?** (Ter.)

Similarly **infitias ire**, *to go to deny*.

467 3. The accusative expressive of the goal is often used with prepositions, which define it more exactly.
**In Siciliam ad regem militatum abiit.** (Ter.)

Occasionally a preposition retains this use in composition.
**Rostra advolat. Arbitrum illum adegit.**

468 (C) Direct object of a transitive verb or participle:

**Non silvas illa nec amnes; rus amat et ramos felicia poma ferentis.** (Ov.)

**Cervius iratus leges minitatur et urnam.** (Hor.)

**Cave canem. Egi gratias. Dat mihi verba.**

469 Many verbs not originally transitive become such either (*a*) by composition, or (*b*) by a stretch of the conception especially in poetry or animated language.

(*a*) **Venio**, *I come*, **convenio**, *I visit;* **loquor**, *I speak*, **adloquor**, *I address;* **sto**, *I stand*, **praesto**, *I guarantee* or *perform.*

(*b*) **Horreo**, *I shudder*, hence *I fear;* **ardeo**, *I am on fire*, hence *I love;* **resono**, *I resound*, hence *I re-echo;* **erubesco**, *I blush*, hence *I blush at.*

**Jura fidemque supplicis erubuit.** (Verg.)

**Formosam resonant Amaryllida silvae.** (Verg.)

**Pastorem saltaret uti Cyclopa, rogabat.** (Hor.)

**Tribunatum etiam nunc spirans, locum seditionis quaerit.** (Liv.)

470 This same objective accusative is used in certain special ways:

(*a*) Some verbs have two direct objects, one a person, the other a thing. These are **doceo**, *teach;* **celo**, *keep in ignorance of;* **posco, oro, flagito, rogo** and compounds.

**Non te celavi sermonem T. Ampii.** (Cic.)

**Tribunus me primum sententiam rogavit.** (Cic.)

The accusative of the thing remains even when the verb is put in passive voice.

**Latinae legiones longa societate militiam Romanam edoctae.** (Liv.)

471 (*b*) In the poets many passive verbs, especially in the past participle, retain in the accusative the direct object, expressing either

(1) A part of the body, &c. (frequent).

**Consurgit senior, tunicaque inducitur artus.** (Verg.)

**Hic juvenis, casta redimitus tempora lauro.** (Tib.)

**Jam satiata animos, jam duros ulta dolores.** (Cic.)

or (2) A thing worn, &c. (less frequent).

**Pueri laevo suspensi loculos tabulamque lacerto.** (Hor.)

**Vestes induta recinctas, nuda pedem, nudos humeris infusa capillos.** (Ov.)

472 (*c*) The accusative is also used in exclamations, really object to some verb understood. (The particular verb is often quite unimportant, and probably not distinctly conceived.) The object has usually an oblique predicate.

**O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona norint, agricolas.** (Verg.)

**O excubias tuas, Cn. Planci, miseras! o flebiles vigilias! o noctīs acerbas! o custodiam etiam mei capitis infelicem.** (Cic.)

**Di vostram fidem! hominem perditum miserumque.** (Ter.)

**En quattuor aras! ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duas altaria Phoebo.** (Verg.)

Similarly **Di meliora** (sc. **dent**). **Me hercules** (sc. **juvet**).

**Unde mihi lapidem?** (sc. **capiam**).

**Sed quo divitias haec per tormenta coactas?** (sc. **habes**).

# CHAPTER VII.

## USE OF DATIVE CASE.

473 THE DATIVE case is used in two principal senses only.

(A) It expresses the indirect object, which is usually a person; e.g. **Hoc tibi facio,** *I do this for you.*

Besides the general use, there are several special uses of the indirect object.

(*a*) Where a local relation is implied; e.g. **Labuntur flumina ponto,** *The streams glide on to the sea*, i.e. *for the sea to receive them.*

(*b*) Agent; e.g. **Haec mihi dicta sunt,** *These things I have said* (lit. *are for me said things*).

(*c*) Person judging; e.g. **Formosa est multis,** *She is fair in the eyes of many.*

(*d*) Person interested in a statement; e.g. **Quid mihi Celsus agit?** *What, pray, is Celsus doing?*

(*e*) Person possessing; e.g. **Sunt mihi divitiae,** *I have riches.*

(*f*) Where a genitive might have been expected; e.g. **Heres est fratri,** *He is heir to his brother.*

(*g*) Work contemplated; e.g. **Signum receptui,** *The signal for retreat.*

(B) It is used predicatively in a quasi-adjectival sense (Dative of the thing, also called Dative of the purpose); e.g. **Haec res curae est mihi,** *This thing is an object of care to me*, i.e. *I am attending to the matter.*

These uses may be set forth more in detail as follows:

474 (A) 1. The indirect object is the person (or thing) affected by the occurrence of an action or by the exercise of a quality, although not directly or primarily acted on.

The indirect word put in the dative belongs properly to the whole predicate of the clause, though there is often some word in the sentence whose meaning is naturally supplemented by such an indirect object.

The indirect object may be used with or without a direct object. A transitive verb will often have both: an intransitive verb has only the indirect object.

(*a*) With simple verbs:

**Tibi aras, tibi occas, tibi seris, tibi etiam metes.** (Plaut.)
**Quo licuit libris, non licet ire mihi.** (Ov.)
**Dicit Cleomeni: Tibi uni parcam.** (Cic.)
**Cum tibi nubebam, nulli mea taeda nocebat.** (Ov.)
**Quid volui misero mihi?** (Verg.) **Tuas res tibi habeto.**
**Quae munera Niso digna dabis? Risit pater optimus olli.** (Verg.)

(*b*) With compound verbs:
**Applicor ignotis, fratrique elapsa fretoque.** (Ov.)
**Vitam adulescentibus vis aufert, senibus maturitas.** (Cic.)
**Cassius incendiis, Cethegus caedi praeponebatur.** (Cic.)
**Tu, mihi qui imperitas, aliis servis miser.** (Hor.)
**Solstitium pecori defendite.** (Verg.)

(*c*) With adjectives;
**Fiunt omnia castris quam urbi similiora.** (Liv.)
**Triste lupus stabulis, maturis frugibus imbres.** (Verg.)

475 2. The indirect object is especially noticeable in the following usages:

(*a*) Where a local relation literal or figurative is implied. Cicero and Caesar would generally use a preposition with its case, but Livy and the poets often put a dative.
**A te principium: tibi desinam.** (Verg.)
**Incumbens tereti Damon sic coepit olivae.** (Verg.)
**Nos onera quibusdam bestiis, nos juga inponimus.** (Cic.)
**Adequitabant Samnites vallo.** (Liv.)

476 (*b*) *Agent* (regarded not strictly as agent, but as person affected). Regularly with gerundive and sometimes with passive participle or adjective in **-bili**. Otherwise rare.
**Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.** (Caes.)
**Suo cuique judicio utendum st.** (Cic.)
**Cui non sunt auditae Demosthenis vigiliae?** (Cic.)
**Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit, nulli flebilior quam tibi.** (Hor.)
**Terra tibi, nobis aspiciuntur aquae.** (Ov.)

In prose **aspiciuntur a nobis**; sometimes **a nobis aspiciundae sunt.**

477 (*c*) *Person judging.*
**Fortunatus sibi Damocles videbatur.** (Cic.)
**In qua tu nata es, terra beata mihi est.** (Ov.)
**Animo cupienti nihil satis festinatur.** (Sall.)
**Verum confitentibus latifundia perdidere Italiam.** (Plin.)

478 (*d*) *Person interested in a statement:* only personal pronouns in lively, often in ironical expressions. (Called **Dativus ethicus.**)
**Haec vobis illorum per biduum militia fuit.** (Liv.)
**At tibi repente venit ad me Caninius mane.** (Cic.)
**En vobis juvenem effigiem atque imaginem mei.** (Liv.)

479 (*e*) *Person possessing:* generally with verb of being.
**An nescis longas regibus esse manus.** (Ov.)
**Semper in civitate, quibus opes nullae sunt, bonis invident.** (Sall.)
**Quo mihi fortunam, si non conceditur uti?** (Hor.)
**Res est omnis in hac causa nobis cum Clodia.** (Cic.)
**Malum quidem militibus meis, nisi quieverint.** (Liv.)
**Em tibi** (Plaut.). **Vae capiti tuo.**

(N.B. The dative is used when the gist of the question relates to the thing possessed; the genitive when it relates to the possessor.)

480 (*f*) The dative is often so closely connected with a noun in the sentence, that a genitive might have been expected. Chiefly in poets and Livy.

**(Cato) urbi pater est urbique maritus.** (Luc.)
**Olli dura quies oculos et ferreus urguet somnus.** (Verg.)
**Puero dormienti, cui Servio Tullio fuit nomen, caput arsisse ferunt.** (Liv.)

481 (*g*) *Work contemplated:* chiefly verbal substantives and gerundival expressions, dependent mainly on substantives, or **esse.**

**Decemviri legibus scribendis. Lex operi faciundo.**
**Diem concilio constituerunt.** (Caes.)
**Solvendo non erat Magius.** (Cic.)
**Aquam pōtui nullam reperiebamus.**

482 (B) Predicative dative: expressing that which a thing (or person) serves as, or occasions.

This dative is usually a semi-abstract substantive, always in the singular number, and without any attribute, except sometimes simple quantitative adjectives: e.g. **magnus, major, minor, nullus, tantus, quantus.**

A personal dative is generally added (as indirect object):

(*a*) With the verb **esse** (so most frequently).

**Exitio est avidis mare nautis.** (Hor.)
**Cogor vobis prius oneri quam usui esse.** (Sall.)
**Vitis ut arboribus decori est, ut vitibus uvae, tu decus omne tuis.** (Verg.)

**Odi odioque sum Romanis.** (Liv.)
**Ea res nemini unquam fraudi fuit.** (Cic.)
**Evenit facile quod dis cordi est.** (Liv.)
**Haec non operae**[1] **est referre.** (Liv.)

(*b*) With **habere, ducere, dare, vertere,** &c.

**Medium ex tribus sedere apud Numidas honori ducitur.** (Sall.)
**Curae, quid tibi desit, habet.** (Ov.)
**Quis erit, vitio qui id vortat tibi?** (Plaut.)
**Tu id in me reprehendis, quod Q. Metello laudi datum est, hodieque est et semper erit maximae gloriae.** (Cic.)

(*c*) With other verbs, especially verbs of motion, &c.: only **auxilio, praesidio, subsidio.**

**Equitatum auxilio Caesari miserant.** (Caes.)
**Quinque cohortes castris praesidio relinquit.** (Caes.)
**Romanis post proelium demum factum Samnites venerunt subsidio.** (Liv.)

[1] Most grammarians take **operae** as a genitive.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### USE OF LOCATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES.

483 THE LOCATIVE and ABLATIVE cases express adverbial qualifications referable to the general types of

(A) Place where,

(B) Instrument,

(C) Place whence.

The locative expressed *place where*, and was applied also by analogy to *time* and *amount*.

The uses of the ablative appear to arise from three sources: (1) a case expressing an *instrument;* (2) a confusion of the form of this case with that of the locative; (3) a case expressing *place whence*. The result is that the ablative in some of its uses coincides with the locative, but this is chiefly where the notion of *instrument* could be conceived as present.

A preposition (*at, in, by, with, from*) is generally required in English translation.

These uses may be summarily stated as follows:

484 (A) PLACE WHERE. (B) INSTRUMENT.

1. Place at which.

Locative: e.g. **Romae fuit,** *He was at Rome.*

Ablative: e.g. **Campo jacet,** *He lies in the plain.*

2. Time when or within which.

Locative: (*a, b*) **Die quinti venit,** *He came on the fifth day.*

Ablative: (*a*) e.g. **Eorum adventu haec dixit,** *On their arrival he said this.*

(*b*) e.g. **Tribus horis iter confecit,** *He accomplished the journey in three hours.*

3. Amount at which.

Locative: e.g. **Quanti hoc emitur?** *What is the price of this?* (lit. *At how much is this purchased?*).

Ablative: (*a*) e.g. **Parvo emitur,** *The price is small* (lit. *It is purchased for a small sum*).

(*b*) e.g. **Quanto ille major est?** *How much greater is he?*

The remaining usages have ablative only, viz.

4. (*a*) Part concerned; e.g. **Tam re quam dictu mirabile**, *Strange as much in fact as in words.*

(*b*) Means; e.g. **Cornibus tauri se tutantur**, *Bulls defend themselves with horns.*

(*c*) Efficient cause; e.g. **Maerore consenescit**, *He is getting old with sorrow.*

5. (*a*) Description; e.g. **Vir mediocri ingenio**, *A man of moderate ability.*

(*b*) Manner;

(1) with attribute; e.g. **Bona fide hoc polliceor**, *I promise you this in good faith.*

(2) without attribute; e.g. **Nec via nec arte dicebant**, *They were speaking neither methodically nor skilfully.*

(*c*) Attendant circumstances; e.g. **Quid hoc populo obtineri potest?** *What can be maintained with a people like this?* (or, *when a people is like this?*).

6. Use with prepositions; e.g. **in primis**, *among the first.*

(C) PLACE WHENCE (Ablative).

1. Place from which movement is made; e.g. **Romā cedit**, *He departs from Rome.*

2. Thing from which separation takes place; e.g. **Pellit homines loco**, *He drives men from the place.*

3. Origin; e.g. **Jove natus**, *Sprung from Jove.*

4. Standard of comparison; e.g. **Quis melior Cicerone?** *Who is better than Cicero?*

5. Use with prepositions; e.g. **A principio**, *From the commencement.*

These uses may be set forth more in detail as follows:

485 (A) PLACE WHERE. (B) INSTRUMENT.

1. Place at which. ((*a*) Locative and (*b*) Ablative.)

(*a*) The Locative is used for names of towns and of islands small enough to be considered as one place: Also **humi**, *on the ground;* **domi**, *at home;* (and in connexion with **domi**) **belli**, **militiae**, *in war;* **viciniae** (Plaut. Ter.) and **animi** (plur. **animis**) in certain phrases expressing doubt or anxiety.

Here also belong the so-called adverbs **hīc**, **illīc**, **istīc** (more rarely **illī**, **istī**); also (perhaps) **ubi**, **ibi**, &c.

**Negotiari libet: cur non Pergami? Smyrnae? Trallibus?** (Cic.)
**Ex acie fugientes, non prius quam Venusiae aut Canusii constiterunt.** (Liv.)

**Plebem Romanam militiae domique colui.** (Liv.)
**Discrucior animi.** (Ter.) **Pendemus animis.** (Cic.)

If a relative follows the locative, the adverb **ubi, quo,** &c. is used, not the adjective; e.g. **mortuus Cumis quo se contulerat,** not **in quas se contulerat;** but **in quam urbem** &c. is right.

426 (*b*) The Ablative in ordinary prose is used for names of towns or small islands if they have consonant or **-i** stems (the locative is also used, but more rarely). Also **rure, parte, regione** (all with attribute), **loco, locis, dextrā, laevā, medio, terrā, marique,** and expressions with **totus** or **medius** as attribute. The poets use this ablative more freely.

**Romae Tibur amem ventosus, Tibure Romam.** (Hor.)
**Bellum terra et mari comparat.** (Cic.)
**Totis trepidatur castris.** (Caes.)
**Hasta prior terra, medio stetit altera tergo.** (Ov.)

427 A preposition is in prose usually required when the *place at which*

(*a*) is expressed by common noun; e.g. **in foro.**

(*b*) is interior, or neighbourhood of town or country; e.g. **in Hispania.**

(*c*) has **urbe, oppido** in apposition; e.g. **in oppido Antiochiae erat,** *He was at Antioch in the town.*

428 The simple ablative is used in some metaphorical expressions; especially **loco (locis), numero, principio, initio.**

**Senatori jussa tria sunt; ut adsit; ut loco dicat, id est, rogatus; ut modo, ne sit infinitus.** (Cic.)
**Principio nobis in cunctas undique partis nulla est finis.** (Lucr.)

429 So also where the place is also the means:

**Conjurant, qui victus acie excessisset, eum ne quis urbe, tecto, mensa, lare reciperet.** (Liv.)
**Hospitio me invitabit propter familiaritatem notissimam.** (Cic.)

430 With verbs of motion the simple ablative often expresses the road by which.

**Lupus Esquilina porta ingressus, Tusco vico per portam Capenam evaserat.** (Liv.)
**Tendimus hinc recta Beneventum** (sc. **via**). (Hor.)

431 2. (*a*) Time when.

*Locative:* chiefly **pridie, postridie, quotidie,** &c. and **vesperi, heri, temperi, luci**[1].

**Cum Canīnius ad me pervesperi venisset et se postridie mane ad te iturum esse dixisset, conscripsi epistolam noctu.** (Cic.)
**Advorsum veniri mihi ad Philolachem volo temperi.** (Plaut.)

*Ablative;* generally with adjective.

**Castoris aedes eodem anno Idibus Quintilibus dedicata est. Vota erat Latino bello.** (Liv.)
**Arabes campos et montes hieme et aestate peragrant.** (Cic.)
**Livius fabulam dedit C. Claudio, M. Tuditano consulibus.** (Cic.)

[1] It is possible that **luci** &c. may really be *ablatives.* Cf. § 124.

492 (*b*) Time in the course of which (only ablative).

**Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis.** (Caes.)
**Si debuisset, Sexte, petisses statim; si non statim, paulo quidem post; si non paulo, at aliquanto; sex quidem illis mensibus profecto; anno vertente sine controversia.** (Cic.)
**Ergo his annis quadringentis Romae rex erat.** (Cic.)

493 (*c*) Time throughout which; rarely except in post-Augustan writers.

**Maestitia est caruisse anno Circensibus uno.** (Juv.)
**Octoginta annis vixit. Quid quaeris quamdiu vixerit?** (Sen.).

494 3. Amount at which.

*Locative.* In expressions of *value*, qualifying verbs.

The genitives **pluris, minoris, assis,** are also used in the same sense, probably by mistaken analogy.

**Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris** also express *price* with verbs of *selling*, &c.

**Sume hoc tisanarium oryzae. Quanti emptae? Parvo. Quanti ergo? Octussibus.** (Hor.)
**Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.** (Cic.)
**Pater id nili pendit.** (Ter.)
**Majores nostri in legibus posiverunt furem dupli condemnari, faeneratorem quadrupli.** (Cato.)
**Tanti est,** *It is worth while.*

495 *Ablative.* (*a*) Price, cost, penalty.

**Vendidit hic auro patriam: fixit leges pretio atque refixit.** (Verg.)
**In Sicilia summum ternis HS tritici modius erat.** (Cic.)
**Magno illi ea cunctatio stetit.** (Liv.)
**Plurimi animos, quasi capite damnatos, morte multant.**

Perhaps here belongs the ablative regularly used with **dignus, dignari.**

**Idem fecit L. Philippus vir patre avo majoribusque dignissimus.** (Cic.)
**Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.** (Verg.)

496 (*b*) Amount of difference: with adjectives in comparative or superlative degree; **ante, post,** &c. Also with **distare, abesse.**

**Nonnunquam uno die longiorem mensem faciunt aut biduo.** (Cic.)
**Dente si nigro fieres vel uno turpior ungui, crederem.** (Hor.)
**Quo plures erant Veientes, eo major caedes fuit.** (Liv.)
**Voverat aedem decem annis ante Punicum bellum.** (Liv.)
**Aesculapi templum quinque milibus passuum ab urbe distat.** (Liv.)

497 4. Part concerned, means, cause: without or with an oblique predicate.

(*a*) Part concerned or thing in point of which a term is applied or an assertion made: qualifying chiefly intransitive verbs and nouns. (In English the preposition *in*, or phrases *in point of*, *as regards*, are generally used.)

**Non tu quidem tota re, sed quod maximum est, temporibus errasti.** (Cic.)

**Capti auribus et oculis metu omnes torpere.** (Liv.)

**Quantus erat Calchas extis, Telamonius armis, Automedon curru, tantus amator ego.** (Ov.)

**Herbas edunt formidulosas dictu, non essu modo.** (Plaut.)

498 So also after expressions of *plenty* and *want*, and verbs of *deprivation*.

**Dives agris, dives positis in faenore nummis.** (Hor.)

**Villa abundat porco, haedo, agno, gallina, lacte, caseo, melle.** (Cic.)

**Huic tradita urbs est, nuda praesidio, referta copiis.** (Cic.)

**Ariovistus omni Gallia interdixit Romanos.** (Caes.)

**Med illo auro tanto circumduxit.** (Plaut.)

499 (*b*) Means, i.e. instrument or stuff with, or by which, a thing is done. Chiefly with transitive verbs. (In English the prepositions *by*, *with*, or such phrases as *by means of*, are generally used.)

**Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones, aliae bestiae fuga se, aliae occultatione tutantur.** (Cic.)

**His ego rebus pascor, his delector, his perfruor.** (Cic.)

**Amicos neque armis cogere neque auro parare queas: officio et fide pariuntur.** (Sall.)

**Odio premitur omnium generum, maxime testibus caeditur.** (Cic.)

**Quid hoc homine faciatis?** (Cic.)

500 So **fungor** (lit. *I busy myself*), *discharge;* **fruor** (lit. *I enjoy myself*), *enjoy;* **nītor** (lit. *I support myself*), *lean on;* **potior** (lit. *make myself powerful*), *am master of;* **vescor** (lit. *I feed myself*), *feed on;* **utor** (lit. *I employ myself*), *use;* **opus est** (lit. *there is a work to be done*), *there is need of;* **usus est**, *there is employment for;* have an ablative of this class.

**Possunt aliquando oculi non fungi suo munere.** (Cic.)

**Commoda quibus utimur, lucemque qua fruimur, spiritumque quem ducimus, a Jove nobis dari videmus.** (Cic.)

**Nunc animis opus, Aenea, nunc pectore firmo.** (Verg.)

In the early language (e.g. Plautus) these verbs were used in the same meanings with a direct object in accusative; e.g. **Omnia perfunctus vitai munera marces.** (Lucr.)

501 (*c*) Efficient cause, or ground or influence. (In English the prepositions '*for*,' '*from*,' or expressions '*in consequence of*,' '*under the influence of*,' are generally used.)

**Paene ille timore, ego risu conrui.** (Cic.)

**Tam longo spatio multa hereditatibus, multa emptionibus, multa dotibus tenebantur sine injuria.** (Cic.)

**Maerore et lacrimis consenescebat.** (Cic.)

**Censetur Apona Livio suo tellus.** (Mart.)

502 5. Description, manner, circumstances; usually with noun, participle, or genitive case: as oblique predicate.

(*a*) Description or characteristic quality: qualifying the verb **essé** or substantives.

**Qua facie fuit? Rufus quidam, ventriosus, crassis suris, subniger, magno capite, acutis oculis, ore rubicundo, admodum magnis pedibus.** (Plaut.)

**Affirmabat se omnino nomine illo servum habere neminem.** (Cic.)

**Sunt solidā primordia simplicitate.** (Lucr.)

**L. Catilina nobili genere natus fuit, magna vi et animi et corporis, sed ingenio malo pravoque.** (Sall.)

**Tribuni militum consulari potestate.**

503 (*b*) Way or manner: usually with adjectival predicate, except in certain words and occasional expressions.

1. With predicate: either adjective or genitive case.

**Primo, si placet, Stoicorum more agamus, deinde nostro instituto vagabimur.** (Cic.)

**Marius quadrato agmine incedit.** (Sall.)

So **aequo animo**, *with equanimity;* **bonā fide**, *in good faith;* **dolo malo**, *maliciously;* **eādem operā** (Plaut.), *at the same time;* **unā operā** (Plaut.), *just as well;* **magno (tanto**, &c.) **opere**, *greatly;* **meo jure**, *of my own right;* **paucis** (sc. **verbis**), *in a few words.*

2. Without predicate: mostly in old phrases, or where the thing may be regarded loosely as an instrument or cause.

**Existima modo et ratione omnia Romae Naevium fecisse, si hoc recte atque ordine factum videtur.** (Cic.)

**Caesar ad opus consuetudine excubabat.** (Caes.)

**Vix ea fatus eram, gemitu cum talia reddit.** (Verg.)

**Ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur.** (Caes.)

So also **acie**, *in line of battle;* **agmine**, *in marching order;* **clamore**, *with a shout;* **condicionibus**, *on conditions;* **curriculo** (Plaut.) **cursu**, *running;* **dolo**, *craftily, maliciously;* **forte**, *by chance;* **gratiis**, *for thanks*, (i.e. *without payment*); **jure**, *rightfully;* **injuria**, *wrongfully;* **joco**, *in joke;* **moribus**, *in customary fashion;* **natura**, *by nature;* **occidione occidere**, *to annihilate;* **silentio**, *in silence;* **sponte**, *voluntarily;* **vi**, *by force;* **vitio**, *faultily;* **voluntate**, *of free-will;* **vulgo**, *commonly;* **usu**, *in practice;* and others.

504 (*c*) Attendant circumstances under which an action takes place or an assertion is made. (This is commonly called, at least in some uses, *ablative absolute.*)

This ablative may often be translated into English by 'when,' 'if,' 'although,' &c. with finite verb. It is indeed, especially when the oblique predicate is a participle, equivalent to an adverbial sentence.

1. With noun (adjective or genitive case) as (oblique) predicate.

**Quid hoc populo obtineri potest?** (Cic.)

**Nil desperandum Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.** (Hor.)

**Me nomine negligentiae suspectum tibi esse doleo.** (Cic.)
**Tabulas in foro summa hominum frequentia exscribo.** (Cic.)

So **meā sententiā**, *in my opinion;* **meā causā**, *for my sake;* **meo periculo**, *at my risk;* **tuo commodo**, *if convenient to you;* **hujus arbitratu**, *at this man's choice;* **salvis legibus**, *without breach of the statutes*, &c.

505 2. With present or perfect passive participle as (oblique) predicate. (N.B. The future active participle and, of deponents, the perfect participle are rarely so used.)

**Haec dicente consule, equites circumfunduntur.** (Liv.)
**Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit.** (Caes.)
**Senatus haberi mense Februario toto non potest, nisi perfectis aut rejectis legationibus.** (Cic.)

The perfect participle sometimes and occasionally other adjectives have a sentence for subject.

**Haec tibi dictabam, excepto quod non simul esses, cetera laetus.** (Hor.)
**Inde ad Pluinnam est progressus, nondum comperto quam regionem hostes petissent.** (Liv.)

506 Sometimes the perfect participle stands alone; and this adverbial use is frequent in many adjectives.

**Eos sortito in provincias mitti placet.**
**Vix tandem, magnis Ithaci clamoribus actus, composito rumpit vocem.** (Verg.)
**Tranquillo, ut aiunt, quilibet gubernator est.** (Sen.)

So **necopinato**, *unexpectedly;* **consulto**, *deliberately;* **augurato**, *after taking the auspices;* **merito**, *deservedly;* **falso**, *falsely;* **assiduo**, *frequently;* **liquido**, *clearly.*

507 Ablatives of this class are frequent with **opus** and occasional with **usus.**

**Opus fuit Hirtio convento.** (Cic.)
**Priusquam incipias, consulto, et, ubi consulueris, mature facto opus est.** (Sall.)

The phrase **quid opust facto?** &c. is very common in Plautus, &c. (Perhaps it is a combination of **quid est opus?** and **quo facto est opus?**)

508 6. The ablative of '*place where*' is frequently used with prepositions which define it more exactly: e.g.
**Coram judice. In manu. Pro muris. Sub terra jacet.**

509 C. PLACE WHENCE (Ablative).

1. Place from which movement is made.

This use of the ablative without a preposition is in prose usually confined to the names of towns; small islands; and to the words **domo, rure, humo.**

**Damaratus fugit Tarquinios Corintho.** (Cic.)
**Nos adhuc Brundisio nihil** (sc. **audivimus**). **Romā scripsit Brutus.** (Cic.)
**Crebri cecidere caelo lapides.** (Liv.)

510 A preposition (**ab, de, ex**) is in prose usually required when the '*place from which*'

(*a*) is expressed by a common noun or name of person; e.g. **ex saxo cadere; a Pollione venire.**

(*b*) is interior or neighbourhood of town or country; e.g. **ex Hispania venit: a Gergovia discessit.**

(*c*) has **urbe, oppido** prefixed in apposition; these require **ex** or **ab**, e.g. **expellitur ex oppido Gergoviā; Tusculo ex clarissimo municipio profectus.**

(*d*) in expressions of mere distance; e.g. **tria millia passuum a Roma abest.**

511 2. Thing from which separation takes place or exists.

This is chiefly dependent on verbs of *motion, abstinence*, &c. especially compounds of **ab, de, ex**; also on a few adjectives.

**P. Varium pellere possessionibus conatus est.** (Cic.)
**Caesar re frumentaria adversarios intercluserat.** (Caes.)
**Cedit Italiā. Causā cadit. Muraenis me abstinebam.**
**Solutus opere. Vacuus curā ac labore. Cave malo.** (Plaut.)

512 3. Origin.

**Apollo Jove natus et Latona.** (Cic.)
**Latino Alba ortus, Alba Atys, Atye Capys, Capye Capetus, Capeto Tiberinus.** (Liv.)
**L. Domitius Cn. F. Fabiā Ahenobarbus**; i.e. **Fabiā tribu.**

513 4. Standard of comparison; qualifying adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree.

(*a*) Qualifying adjectives.

The adjective must be attribute or predicate of the noun which is compared with the standard.

**Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undā?** (Ov.)
**Non tulit haec civitas aut gloriā clariores aut humanitate politiores P. Africano, C. Laelio, L. Furio.** (Cic.)
**Pane egeo, jam mellitis potiore placentis.** (Hor.)

Occasionally such an ablative is dependent on **alius.**

**Vereor ne putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum.** (Hor.)

(*b*) Qualifying adverbs.

**Serius spe omnium Romam venit.** (Liv.)
**Longius assueto lumina nostra vident.** (Ov.)
**Nullam, Vare, sacra vite prius severis arborem.** (Hor.)

514 5. The ablative of '*place whence*' is frequently used with prepositions which define it more exactly.

e.g. **a muro**, *away from the wall*; **de muro**, *down from the wall*; **e muro**, *out of* or *off the wall*; **sine muro**, *without a wall.*

## CHAPTER IX.

### USE OF GENITIVE CASE.

515 THE Genitive has two principal uses.

A. Adjectival use; i.e. attribute or predicate of a substantive.

1. Person or thing possessing or causing; e.g. **Caesaris horti**, *Caesar's gardens.*

2. Divided whole; e.g. **Fortissimus Graecorum**, *Bravest he of the Greeks.*

3. Particular kind or contents; e.g. **Familia Scipionum**, *The family of Scipios.*

4. Quality or description; e.g. **Res magni laboris**, *A matter of great toil.*

5. Object of action implied in substantives and adjectives; e.g. **Fuga periculi**, *Flight from danger;* **Patiens laboris**, *Patient of toil.*

6. Thing in point of which a term is applied (Poetic); e.g. **Aevi maturus**, *Ripe of* (i.e. *in*) *age.*

B. (*a*) Secondary object to verbs: also dependent on adjectives.

1. Matter charged; e.g. **Furti eum accusas**, *You accuse him of theft.* **Reus avaritiae**, *Accused of avarice.*

2. Object of mental emotion; e.g. **Taedet me tui**, *I am wearied of you.*

3. Thing remembered; e.g. **Caesaris memini**, *I remember Caesar.*

4. Thing lacking or supplied; e.g. **Cadum imples vini**, *You fill a cask with wine.* **Plenus vini**, *Full of wine.*

(*b*) Usages properly referable to locative; e.g. **Pluris te facio.** *I count you of more value.* See § 494.

These uses may be set forth more in detail as follows:

516 A. Adjectival use: hence either dependent on nouns, or as secondary predicate.

1. Person or thing possessing or causing, or to whom something belongs, or whose acting or condition is named.

(*a*) Dependent on nouns.

**Ciceronis domus. Crassi filius. Hectoris Andromache.**
**Solis ortus. Cornua lunae. Aequoris Deae. Labor discendi.**
**Illius amicissimi. Inimicus otii, bonorum hostis.**
**Est operae pretium diligentiam majorum recordari.** (Cic.)

**Quae tum frequentia senatus, quae expectatio populi, qui concursus legatorum, quae virtus, actio, gravitas P. Lentuli consulis fuit!** (Cic.)
**Numinis instar eris mihi.** (Ov.)

517 (*b*) As an invariable secondary predicate.

**Tempori cedere semper sapientis habitum est.** (Cic.)
**Omnia quae mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt, dotis nomine.** (Cic.)
**Jam me Pompeii totum esse scio.** (Cic.)
**Carthaginienses tutelae nostrae duximus.** (Cic.)
**Interest omnium recte facere.** (Cic.)

518 Of the personal pronouns the adjectives **meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester** are used (as adjectives) in this sense. But in conjunction with **omnium**, the genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** (gen. pl.) are used.

**Mea domus. Amici tui. Accusator meus.**
**Mea unius opera respublica salva est.** (Cic.)
**Meum est libere loqui. Communis omnium nostrum parens.**
**Neque gloriam meam, laborem illorum, faciam.** (Sall.)

519 With **interest, rĕfert** the abl. sing. fem. is used in lieu of the genitive of the personal pronouns. (The origin of this construction is uncertain.)

**Hoc meā refert. Dixit hoc illorum magis quam suā rĕtulisse.** (Sall.)
**Magni interest Ciceronis vel meā potius vel mehercule utriusque me intervenire discenti.** (Cic.)

520 2. Divided whole.

(*a*) *Definite whole.*

Of the personal pronouns, the genitives (sing. neut.) **mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum** and **vestrum** are used in this sense.

**Solus omnium. Multi vestrum. Tertius regum Romanorum.**
**Provinciarum Macedonia a barbaris; Cilicia a piratis vexatur.**
**Uterque eorum. Medium viae. Plana urbis. Pars melior mei.**

521 N.B. The Romans often used an adjective and substantive agreeing, where in English we use '*of*.' So always when the whole is really not divided. Adjectives thus used are **adversus, aversus, extremus, medius, multus, nullus, omnis, plerique, summus, totus**, &c.

**Nos omnes. In media urbe. Extremo anno. Tota Asia.**
**Reliqua turba. Adversa basis. Aversa charta. Uterque frater.**
**Trecenti conjuravimus. Amici, quos multos habebat, aderant.**

522 (*b*) *Indefinite whole.* Dependent on neuter adjective nominative or accusative: also on **nihil, quo, eo**, &c.

**Hoc praemii. Parum prudentiae. Aliquid pulchri.**
**Eo miseriarum venturus eram.** (Sall.) **Habetis affatim lignorum.** (Liv.)
**Navium quod ubique fuerat in unum locum coegerant.** (Caes.)
**Demonstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui.** (Caes.)

523 3. Particular kind or contents; that in, or of, which a thing consists.

(*a*) *Definite* (sometimes called Genitive *of definition*).

This genitive generally corresponds to an apposition in English.

**Honos consulatus. Numerus trecentorum. Virtus justitiae.**
**Celsa Buthroti urbs. Nymphae lactis alimenta dedere.** (Ov.)
**Ala trecentorum equitum. Auxilia peditatūs equitatūsque.** (Caes.)
**Duo sunt genera liberalitatis; unum dandi beneficii, alterum reddendi.** (Cic.)

(*b*) *Indefinite.* (Genitive *of sort, material*, &c.)

This genitive corresponds in English (not to an apposition, but) to a part of a compound, or to a phrase; e.g. 'a corn-heap,' 'money-rewards,' 'a thousand in coins.'

**Acervus frumenti. Praemia pecuniae. Magnus numerus equorum.**
**Magna vis seminum. Sex dies spatii. Mille nummum.**
**Noluit ex decumis nimium lucri dare.** (Cic.) **Scelus viri, Palaestrio.**

So **compendi facere**, *make of saving=a saving of;* e.g. **operam fac compendi** (Plaut.); **lucri facere, dare**, &c., *to get, give, by way of profit*, or *extra;* e.g. **cccc modios lucri faciunt** (Cic.); **numerare Valentio coguntur lucri HS xxx milia** (Cic.).

524 4. Quality or description: always with adjective.

**Fossa centum pedum. Puer sedecim annorum.**
**Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci.** (Cic.)
**Tuae litterae maximi sunt apud me ponderis.** (Cic.)

525 5. Object of action implied in substantives and adjectives.

(*a*) *Direct object;* corresponding to an accusative or infinitive after the corresponding verb.

For the personal pronouns in this sense are used the genitive singular neuter **mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri.** Occasionally **meus, tuus, suus**, &c. are used as attributes (as in § 518).

**Accusatio sceleratorum. Possessio gratiae. Cura rerum alienarum.**
**Emptor fundi. Scientia juris. Actor partium optimarum.**
**Pigritia singulos sepeliendi. Cunctatio invadendi. Avidus laudis.**
**Fugiens laboris. Vir tenax propositi. Tempus edax rerum.**
**Similes parentium. Conscii facinoris. Juris dictio.**

**Similis** often has dative, but a *person* is generally in genitive.

(*b*) *Remoter object;* corresponding to a dative (rare) or ablative or prepositional phrases after the corresponding verb.

(**Meus, tuus**, &c. are rarely used in this sense as attributes.)

**Vacatio muneris. Contentio honorum.** (Cic.)
**Di, quibus imperium est animarum.** (Verg.)
**Inimicitiae ex reipublicae dissensione susceptae.** (Cic.)
**Studiosus litterarum. Mens interrita leti.** (Ov.)
**Incertus sententiae.** (Liv.) **Ambiguus futuri.** (Tac.)

526 6. Thing in point of which a term is applied to a person: used after adjectives in poets and Tacitus.

**Aevi maturus.** (Verg.) **Seri studiorum.** (Hor.) **Capitis minor** (Hor.)
**Judicii rectus.** (Sen.) **Occultus odii.** (Tac.) **Linguae ferox.** (Tac.)

For **animi** with **discruciari, fallere,** &c. **anxius, aeger, victus,** &c., see § 485.

527 B. Dependent on verbs and adjectives.

1. Secondary object of the thing, after certain verbs, which if transitive, have also a direct object of the person: also after adjectives.

(*a*) The matter charged; after verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, &c.; also after certain adjectives of like meaning.

**Ambitūs alterum accusavit. Majestatis absolvuntur.**
**C. Verrem insimulat avaritiae et audaciae.** (Cic.)
**Furti recte agis. Damnatus voti. Manufestus rerum capitalium.**
**Reus parricidii. Suspectus jam nimiae spei.**

528 (*b*) The object exciting mental emotion; after **misereor** and the impersonals **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet**; rarely after other words.

**Aliquando miseremini sociorum.** (Cic.)
**Me quidem miseret parietum ipsorum atque tectorum.** (Cic.)
**Paenitet te fortunae. Me civitatis morum piget taedetque.** (Sall.)

**Justitiae mirari** (Verg.), **sepositi ciceris invidere** (Hor.), appear to be mere imitations of Greek.

529 (*c*) The thing remembered, or forgotten, &c.; after **memini, reminiscor, obliviscor, admoneo,** &c.

**Vivorum memini, nec tamen Epicuri licet oblivisci.** (Cic.)
**Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suae.** (Sall.)

A similar genitive is found in the phrases **certiorem facere, certior fieri, venire in mentem.**

**Certiorem me consilii fecit. Venit mihi Platonis in mentem.**

The thing remembered is often in the accusative after **memini, reminiscor, obliviscor,** and in the ablat. with **de** after **admoneo, certiorem facere,** &c.

530 (*d*) Thing lacking, or supplied; after **impleo, compleo, egeo, indigeo, potior, plenus, egenus, refertus,** and other like words occasionally. (All are also used with the ablative, § 498.)

**Tullia adolescentem temeritatis suae replet.** (Liv.)
**Exercitationis indiget. Adherbalis potitur.**
**Domus erat aleatoribus referta, plena ebriorum.** (Cic.)
**Omnium rerum satur. Italia referta Pythagoreorum fuit.** (Cic.)
**Ager frugum fertilis.** (Sall.) **Operum vacuus.** (Hor.)

**Abstinere irarum, decipi laborum** (Hor.), **fessus rerum** (Verg.) and the like seem to be Graecisms.

531 2. For **pluris, minoris, assis** and other genitives used in expressions of value, see § 494.

## CHAPTER X.

### USE OF INFINITIVE.

532 THE infinitive (usually called the infinitive mood of a verb) is an indeclinable verbal substantive of peculiar character. It denotes an action or fact or event not (usually) in an abstract manner, but in connexion with the person or thing of which it is predicated.

It is a substantive, because it is used as object and as subject to verbs, and as an oblique and direct predicate.

It has however also a verbal character. It contains the notion of time; it has its object in the accusative or (indirect object) in the dative case; it is qualified by adverbs, not adjectives; and it readily admits, as a finite verb admits, of enlargements or qualifications by means of phrases or subordinate sentences.

Its ordinary, and what we may call its normal, use is as direct object to a verb, or as oblique predicate of a substantive in the accusative case. Its other usages are developed from these.

It has only an occasional and irregular use as a genitive, dative, or ablative case, or as an accusative after a preposition. The gerund and gerundive are used instead.

533 The infinitive is used as

A. (Ordinary usages).

1. Direct object to a verb; e.g. **Debeo venire**, *I ought to come* (*I owe coming*). **Scis loqui**, *You understand speaking.*

2. Oblique predicate, the infinitive with its subject forming the object to a verb; e.g. **Dico te venire**, *I say that you are coming.* **Video te sapientem esse**, *I see that you are wise.*

3. Direct secondary predicate; **Dicĕris venire**, *You are said to be coming.* **Videtur sapiens esse**, *He seems to be wise.*

4. Subject of a sentence:

(*a*) Absolutely; e.g. **Placet disputare**, *Disputation is agreed on.* **Turpe est fugere**, *To fly is disgraceful.*

(*b*) With its own subject; e.g. **Placet exercitum dimitti**, *The disbanding of the army is agreed on* (*It is agreed that the army should be disbanded*).

5. In exclamations; **At te Romae non fore**, *Then to think of your not going to be at Rome!*

B. Primary predicate to a subject in the nominative case; **Clamare omnes; ego instare**, *A shout from every one; I press on.* (Historic infinitive.)

C. As genitive or ablative, or accusative other than objective; e.g. **dignus amari**, *Worthy to be loved.* **Ibat videre** (poetic for regular **visum**, § 466), *He was going to see.*

534 A. Ordinary usages.

1. (*a*) Direct object to a verb: especially to such as involve a reference to another action of the same subject; e.g. verbs expressing *will*, *power*, *duty*, *purpose*, *custom*, *commencement*, *continuance*, &c.

**Possum (soleo, debeo, volo, audeo, &c.) hanc rem facere.**
**Vincere scis, Hannibal: victoria uti nescis.** (Liv.)
**Non destitit monere. Institit sequi. Maturat proficisci.**
**Mitte orare. Odi peccare. Amat laudari.**
**Speras ascendere. Funem contingere gaudent.**
**Haec dicere habui.** (Cic.) **Da flammam evadere classi.** (Verg.)

Similarly **dat operam** (=**conatur**) **id scire.**

(*b*) Object of the thing to a verb which has also a direct personal object.

Such verbs are chiefly **doceo, assuefacio, jubeo, veto, sino, arguo.**

**Docebo Rullum posthac tacere.** (Cic.)
**Jussit Helvetios abire. Assuefecit equos remanere.**

This infinitive remains when the verb is put in the passive or gerundive; e.g. **Rullus docetur (docendus est) tacere. Helvetii jubentur (prohibentur) abire. Assuefacti sunt equi remanere.**

535 2. Oblique predicate, with its subject in the accusative case, the whole expression forming the object after a verb.

Such verbs are those which have naturally a fact or event for their object; e.g. verbs expressing *declaration*, *opinion*, *knowledge*, *order*, *wish*, *sorrow*, *surprise*, &c.

**Dico (puto, scio, doleo, admoneo, &c.) Caesarem abisse victorem.**
**Sapientem civem me et esse et numerari volo.** (Cic.)
**Nullos honores mihi decerni sino.** (Cic.)
**Fore se in discrimine videt.** (Cic.) **Te tua victoria frui cupimus.** (Cic.)

Similarly after phrases equivalent to verbs:

**Caesar certior factus est hostes sub monte consedisse.** (Caes.)
**Caelius auctor est Magonem flumen tranasse.** (Liv.)
**Magna me spes tenet hunc locum perfugium fore.** (Cic.)

536 3. Direct secondary predicate.

(*a*) When the finite verb which has an oblique sentence for object is put in its passive voice, and the subject of the infinitive becomes the subject of this passive verb, the infinitive and other oblique predicates become direct secondary predicates. (Cf. § 435.)

**Caesar dicitur (putatur, auditur, reperitur, &c.) abisse victor.**
**Videntur haec esse faciliora. Jussus es renuntiari consul.** (Cic.)
**In lautumias Syracusanas custodiendi deduci imperantur.** (Cic.)

(*b*) With another infinitive, or a pronoun, for subject.

**Erudito homini vivere est cogitare.** (Cic.)
**Ostentare hoc est, Romani, non gerere bellum.** (Liv.)

537 4. Subject of a sentence or in apposition to the subject, either (*a*) absolutely, or (*b*) with its own subject in the accusative case.

The predicate of such a sentence is usually either **est** with a secondary predicate, or an impersonal verb.

(*a*) Absolutely.

**Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, prope parricidium necare: quid dicam in crucem tollere?** (Cic.)

**Haec ipsa sunt honorabilia, salutari, appeti, decedi, assurgi, deduci, reduci, consuli.** (Cic.)

**Licet lascivire. Didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores.** (Ov.)

(*b*) With its own subject in the accusative case.

**Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est.** (Cic.)

**Te hilari animo esse valde me juvat.** (Cic.)

**Mihi nuntiatum est Parthos transisse Euphratem.** (Cic.)

(*c*) With its own subject omitted, but with secondary oblique predicate expressed.

The secondary predicate is usually in the accusative, but if the person or thing which is the subject of the infinitive is expressed in the dative with the principal verb, the predicate usually conforms.

**Non esse cupidum pecunia est; non esse emacem vectigal est.** (Cic.)

**Licet esse Gaditanum.** (Also **Licet civi Romano esse Gaditano**; rarely **Licet civi Romano esse Gaditanum.**)

**Vobis immunibus hujus esse mali dabitur.** (Ov.)

538 5. In exclamations: object or subject of verb understood.

**Ah! tantamne rem tam neglegenter agere!** (Ter.)

**Ergo me potius in Hispania fuisse tum quam Formiis!** (Cael.)

539 B. As primary predicate to a subject in the nominative case: or sometimes without any subject. It is thus used to express the occurrence of actions without marking the order of time. (Historic infinitive.) Frequent in animated language describing a scene. Only present infinitive (besides **odisse, meminisse**).

This usage is analogous to the predication of one noun of another without expressing **est**, &c. §§ 427 *b*, 584.

**Haec cum dixisset Catulus, me omnes intueri.** (Cic.)

**Tum spectaculum horribile in campis patentibus: sequi, fugere, occīdi, capi: equi atque viri adflicti, ac multi volneribus acceptis neque fugere posse neque quietem pati, niti modo ac statim concidere.** (Sall.)

540 C. As genitive, or ablative, or accusative (other than objective; cf. § 458).

(1) Dependent on substantives; only in a few phrases. (In place of genitive or gerund.)

**Nulla est ratio amittere ejusmodi occasionem.** (Cic.)

**Tempus est jam majora conari.** (Liv.)

(2) Dependent on adjectives; in poetry and post-Augustan prose. In place of genitive of gerund or supine in **-u**.

**Soli cantare periti Arcades.** (Verg.) **Mens erat apta capi.** (Ov.)
**Niveus videri.** (Hor.) **Dignus erat, alter eligi, alter eligere.** (Plin.)

(3) Dependent on verbs; chiefly to express purpose after verbs of *motion*, &c.; in early and Augustan poets. (In place of supine in **-um**.)

**Misit orare.** (Ter.) **Eximus visere.** (Plaut.)
**Mittit me quaerere.** (Prop.) **Pecus egit altos visere montes.** (Hor.)

Sometimes other expressions, in imitation of Greek, occur; e.g.

**Loricam donat habere viro.** (Verg.)
**Nos numerus sumus et fruges consumere nati.** (Hor.)

(4) Dependent on prepositions (rare).

**Superest praeter amare nihil.** (Ov.)
**Multum interest inter dare et accipere.** (Sen.)

## CHAPTER XI.

### TENSES OF INFINITIVE.

**541** The Infinitive is put in the present, past, or future tense, according as the action or event denoted by it is contemporaneous with, or antecedent, or subsequent to, that of the verb on which it depends.

1. Infinitive as object.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Cupio** | **videre,** | *I long* | *to see.* |
| **Cupiam** | | *I shall long* | |
| **Cupiero** | | *I shall have longed* | |
| **Cupiebam** | | *I was longing* | |
| **Cupivi** | | *I longed* | |
| **Cupieram** | | *I had longed* | |

In this use the present infinitive is common: and even where in English the past infinitive is used. So especially with **possum, debeo**, &c.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Possum** | **videre,** | *I may see.* |
| **Potui** | | *I might have seen* (lit. *I was able to see*). |
| **Poteram** | | *I might have seen at the time.* |
| **Debeo** | **videre,** | *I ought to see.* |
| **Debui** | | *I ought to have seen* (*It was my duty to see*). |
| **Debebam** | | *I ought then to have seen*, or, *to have been seeing.* |

The perfect infinitive is not often used as object, except

(*a*) when it is important to speak of the action or event as already done or ready:

**Non potest non optasse,** *She cannot revoke the wish* (*already made*), but **Non potuit non optare,** *She could not help wishing.*
**Malui dicere,** *I preferred speaking.*
**Malui dixisse,** *I preferred to have done with speaking* (*to say no more*).
**Debeo vincere,** *I ought to win.*
**Debeo vicisse,** *I ought to be pronounced winner.*

(*b*) after **volo** in prohibitions. An old usage imitated by Livy and Augustan poets. It is also used after **possum** and some other verbs.

**Ne quis humasse velit Aiacem, Atrida, vetas.** (Hor.)
**Consules edixerunt, ne quis quid fugae causa vendidisse neve emisse vellet.** (Liv.)
**Commisisse cavet, quod mox mutare laboret.** (Hor.)
**Bacchatur vates, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum.** (Verg.)

542 2. Infinitive as oblique predicate.

(*a*) In sentences dependent on principal tenses.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Dico**<br>**Dicam**<br>**Dixero**<br>**Dixi** (perf.) | **te scribere,** | *I say*<br>*I shall say*<br>*I shall have said*<br>*I have said* | *that you are writing.* |
| ..... | **te scripsisse,** ..... | | *that you have written*, or *wrote.* |
| ..... | **te scripturum esse,** ..... | | *that you will write*, or *are going to write.* |
| ..... | **te scripturum fuisse,** ..... | | *that you were going to write*, or *would have written.* |
| ..... | **illud scribi,** ..... | | *that that is being written.* |
| ..... | **illud scriptum esse,** ..... | | *that that was written.* |
| ..... | **illud scriptum fuisse,** ..... | | *that that was* (*for some time*) *written*, or *had been written.* |
| ..... | **illud scriptum iri,** ..... | | *that that will be written*, or *is going to be written.* |

(*b*) In sentences dependent on secondary tenses.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Dicebam**<br>**Dixit** (aor.)<br>**Dixeram** | **te scribere,** | *I was saying*<br>*I said*<br>*I had said* | *that you were writing.* |
| ..... | **te scripsisse,** ..... | | *that you had written.* |
| ..... | **te scripturum esse,** ..... | | *that you would write*, or *were going to write.* |
| ..... | **te scripturum fuisse,** ..... | | *that you had been going to write*, or *would have written.* |
| ..... | **illud scribi,** ..... | | *that that was being written.* |
| ..... | **illud scriptum esse,** ..... | | *that that was* (*already*) *written.* |
| ..... | **illud scriptum fuisse,** ..... | | *that that was* (*for some time*) *written*, or *had been written.* |
| ..... | **illud scriptum iri,** ..... | | *that would be written*, or *was going to be written.* |

The same use applies if instead of **dico, dixi,** &c. the impersonal passive **dicitur, dictum est,** &c. be used.

**543** We may specially note

(1) The infinitives **esse, fuisse,** as used with participles, are often omitted. See §§ 584, 585.

(2) For the future infinitive both active and passive, a periphrasis with **fore** or **futurum esse** is often made use of.

**Dico fore ut amem, amer,** *I say that I shall love, shall be loved.*
**Dixi fore ut amarem, amarer,** *I said that I should love, should be loved.*

(3) **Fore** with the past participle both in deponent and passive verbs, corresponds to the completed future:

**Dico (dixi) me adeptum fore,** *that I shall have gained;* **missum fore,** *shall have been sent.*

(4) **Memini** is used with the present (and sometimes the perfect) infinitive of events of which the subject himself was witness; with the perfect infinitive of events of which the subject was not witness.

**Memini eum dicere,** *I remember his saying;* **memini eum dixisse,** *I remember he said.*

**544** 3. Infinitive as secondary predicate.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Dicor** | **scribere,** | *I am being said* | *to be writing.* |
| **Dicar** | | *I shall be said* | |
| **Dictus ero** | | *I shall have been said* | |
| **Dictus sum** | | *I was* (or *have been said*) | |
| **Dicebar** | | *I was being said* | |
| **Dictus eram** | | *I had been said* | |
| ..... | **scripsisse,** | ..... | *to have written.* |
| ..... | **scripturus esse,** | ..... | *to be going to write.* |
| ..... | **vulnerari,** | ..... | *to be in the act of being wounded.* |
| ..... | **vulneratus esse,** | ..... | *to have been wounded.* |

**545** 4. Infinitive as subject.

The present is most usual, but the perfect is used where the meaning requires it.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Licet** | **mihi dicere,** | *I am allowed* | *to speak.* |
| **Licebit** | | *I shall be allowed* | |
| **Licuerit** | | *I shall have been allowed* | |
| **Licuit** | | *I was* (or *have been*) *allowed* | |
| **Licebat** | | *I was* (*being*) *allowed* | |
| **Licuerat** | | *I had been allowed* | |

The perfect is found in some expressions where in English the present would be used.

**Proinde quiesse erit melius** (Liv.), *It will be for your advantage to keep quiet.*
**Illud non paenitebit curasse.** (Quint.)
**Tunc decuit flesse quum adempta sunt nobis arma.** (Liv.)

## CHAPTER XII.

### USE OF VERBAL NOUNS.

546 BESIDES the infinitive other verbal nouns are found with the verbal characteristic (when formed from transitive verbs) of having a direct object in the accusative case.

A. Gerund: e.g. **agendum** (subst.), *doing;* with which is closely connected

B. Gerundive: e.g. **res agenda**, *a thing to do.*

C. Supine: e.g. **ibis actum**, *You will go to do.*

D. Participles: (*a*) Present: Active; e.g. **agens**, *doing* (adj.).

(*b*) Past: Active (only from deponents); **adeptus**, *having gained.*

Passive; **actus**, *done.*

(*c*) Future: Active; e.g. **acturus**, *about to do.*

A. B. The gerund and gerundive are nouns with **-o** stems, the gerund being in form a neuter substantive, the gerundive an adjective. They are used in all cases, but the gerund is used in the singular number only.

The gerund, like the infinitive, shews its verbal nature in having its object in the accusative or in the dative, not in the genitive, case; and in being qualified by adverbs, not by adjectives: it shews its substantival nature in its own construction. As compared with the gerundive, it is chiefly found when the verb from which it is formed is intransitive, or, though transitive, is used without the object being expressed with it.

The gerundive is confined to transitive verbs, and is usually substituted for the gerund of such verbs, when the object is expressed. The object is then attracted into the case of the gerund, and the gerund, taking adjectival inflexions (then called the gerundive), is made to agree with it in number and gender. But the gerundive is not used where indistinctness would arise from the change of the object's case.

The oblique cases of the gerund and gerundive are used to supplement the infinitive: i.e. they are used where the infinitive if it had case inflexions would be used in oblique cases. The nominative (and in oblique language the accusative) of the gerund and gerundive has a special use.

Thus: Subject / Object } **regere**, *to rule*, or *ruling*. (§§ 534, 537.)

Accusative with prep.: **ad regendum**, *to rule.*

**ad regendos populos**, *to rule peoples.*

Dative: **regendo**, *for ruling.*
**regendis populis**, *for ruling peoples.*
Ablative: **regendo**, *by ruling;* **in regendo**, *in ruling.*
**regendis populis**, *by ruling peoples;* **in regendis populis**, *in ruling peoples.*
Genitive: **regendi**, *of ruling.*
**regendorum populorum**, *of ruling peoples.*

**547** The accusative gerund (except as the substitute for the nominative in infinitive sentences) is used only after prepositions, usually **ad**, sometimes **in**, **inter** and **ob**; rarely any others.

Instead of the gerund with a direct object dependent on it, the gerundival expression is always used.

**Haec ad judicandum sunt facillima.** (Cic.)
**Missus est ad animos regum perspiciendos.** (Liv.)
**Magna jam summa erogata est in servos ad militiam emendos armandosque.** (Liv.)

**548** The dative gerund expresses the indirect object, especially work contemplated.

Instead of the gerund with a direct object dependent on it, the gerundival expression is always used.

**Consul placandis Romae dis habendoque dilectu dat operam.** (Liv.)
**His audiendis credendisque opportuna multitudo confluebat.** (Liv.)
**Hi scribendo affuerunt. Decemviri litibus judicandis.**
**Civitates non sunt solvendo.** (Cic.)

**549** The ablative gerund is used both without and with a preposition.

(*a*) The gerund used without a preposition chiefly expresses the *means*, sometimes the *manner* and *circumstances.*

Instead of the gerund with a direct object being used, the gerundive is generally substituted, unless some obscurity would result.

**Caesar dando, sublevando, ignoscundo, Cato nihil largiundo, gloriam adeptus est.** (Sall.)
**Herdonius hostem se fatendo prope denuntiavit ut arma caperetis, hic negando bella esse, arma vobis ademit.** (Liv.)
**Hodie stat Asia Luculli institutis servandis et quasi vestigiis persequendis.** (Cic.)

(*b*) With prepositions **ab**, **de**, **ex**, **in**; rarely **pro**, very rarely **super**. (Never with **cum** or **sine.**)

The gerund is rarely used with a direct object depending on it, unless it be a neuter pronoun.

**Nomen legis Graece a suum cuique tribuendo ductum est.**
**Primus liber est de contemnenda morte.** (Cic.)
**In accusando atque in explicandis criminibus operam consumpsi.** (Cic.)
**Pro ope ferenda sociis pergit ire ipse ad urbem oppugnandam.** (Liv.)

550 The genitive gerund and gerundive are always dependent on a noun, never on a verb (except as secondary predicate with **esse**). They are used indifferently, except where the one form or the other affords less ambiguity.

**Ita nati factique sumus ut et agendi aliquid et diligendi aliquos et referendae gratiae principia in nobis contineremus.** (Cic.)
**Inita sunt in hac civitate consilia urbis delendae, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani exstinguendi.** (Cic.)

551 The gerund is used in the nominative as subject to the verb **est, erat,** &c. predicating existence, with a dative of the agent, the whole expression thus conveying the idea of obligation[1].

The gerund is rarely used in this way with a direct object dependent on it, except in Lucretius and Varro. Instead of this, what would have been the direct object after the gerund becomes the subject, and the gerundive is used as a secondary predicate. Hence it may often be translated in English by the passive voice.

In oblique language the accusative with **esse,** &c. is used.

**Eundum est mihi,** *There is for me a going*, i.e. *I must go.*
**Haec mihi sunt agenda,** *These things are for me to do*, or *must be done by me.* **Scio haec mihi esse agenda.**
**Hac tempestate serviundum aut imperitandum, habendus metus est aut faciundus, Quirites.** (Sall.)
**Suo cuique judicio utendum est.** (Cic.)
**Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda; vexillum proponendum, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, acies instruenda.** (Caes.)
**Discessi ab eo bello in quo aut in acie cadendum fuit, aut in aliquas insidias incidendum, aut deveniundum in victoris manus, aut ad Jubam confugiendum, aut capiendus tamquam exsilio locus aut consciscenda mors voluntaria.** (Cic.)
**Aeternas poenas in morte timendumst.** (Lucr.)

552 The gerundive is also used:

(*a*) As oblique predicate to the direct object of certain transitive verbs (**habeo, do, curo, loco, conduco,** &c.) to express an action purposed to be done upon such object. If the verb is put in the passive, the gerundive becomes a direct predicate.

**Agrum de nostro patre colendum habebat.** (Ter.)
**Demus nos philosophiae excolendos.** (Cic.)
**Caesar pontem in Arare faciundum curat.** (Caes.)
**Pars inde bibenda servatur.** (Ov.) **Detergendas cloacas locat.** (Liv.)

[1] In Plautus verbal stems in **-tion** are occasionally so used and even with an accusative object; e. g. **Quid tibi hanc aditiost?** *Why is there for you an approaching this woman?* i.e. *What do you mean by approaching?* **Quid tibi istum tactiost?**

(*b*) As a mere attribute, with the meaning of (1) *obligation* or *destiny* or *desert;* and this in negative and quasi-negative sentences approaches the meaning of (2) *possibility.*

(1) **O facinus animadvortendum.** (Ter.)
**Cognoscite aliud genus imperatoris, sane diligenter retinendum et conservandum.** (Cic.)
**Quies inter labores aut jam exhaustos aut mox exhauriendos renovavit corpora animosque ad omnia de integro patienda.** (Liv.)
**Omnia sibi et empta et emenda esse clamavit.** (Cic.)
**Vix erat credendum.** (Caes.)
**Labores non fugiendos aerumnas nominaverunt.** (Cic.)

553 C. The accusative of verbal substantives with stem in **-tu** (i.e. the supine in **-um**) often has a direct, less often, an indirect object.

**Quamprimum haec risum věni.** (Cic.)
**Legati in castra Aequorum venerunt questum injurias et ex foedere res repetitum.** (Liv.)
**Non ego Graiis servitum matribus ibo.** (Verg.)

This supine, with **iri** used impersonally, supplies a form for the passive future infinitive.

**Audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo** (Ter.), *He had heard that there is not a going to give a wife to his son;* i.e. *that a wife will not be given to his son.*
**Putat omnia aut pleraque ambigua visum iri.** (Cic.)

554 [The so-called supine in **-u** is the ablative of the same stem, and is used as other ablatives; e.g.

**Turpe dictu. Terribiles visu formae.** See § 497.

The dative is occasionally found in somewhat similar use; e.g.

**Alter collis usui opportunus.** (Sall.) **Aqua potui jucunda.** (Plin.)]

555 D. The participles are verbal adjectives used either to predicate some action or state of a person or thing, or to describe a person or thing by some action or state. They are of three different times, past, present, and future, in reference to the time of the principal actions.

The present and future participles, and in deponent and a few other verbs the perfect participle also, have an active meaning.

The perfect participle has in verbs other than deponents usually a passive meaning.

556 1. As primary predicate, or, more commonly, as secondary predicate with the verb **esse**, the future and perfect participles are used to supply the place of deficient tenses in the active and passive voice. The present participle is hardly ever so used.

**Amatus sum, amaturus sum,** &c. **Amatum te esse dico.**
**Nihil dignum dictu actum his consulibus.** (Liv.)
**Senectus est operosa et semper agens aliquid et moliens.** (Cic.)

557 2. As secondary predicate they denote the circumstances in which some person or thing is placed when the principal action occurs. In prae-Augustan prose the future participle is rarely so used.

(A participle thus stands in place of an adverbial expression or sentence and often is best so translated, or sometimes by a finite verb coordinate with the principal verb.)

**Haec locutus sublimis abiit.** (Liv.)

**Omne malum nascens facile opprimitur, inveteratum fit plerumque robustius.** (Cic.)

**Non hercule mihi nisi admonito venisset in mentem.** (Cic.)

**Nec vixit male qui natus moriensque fefellit.** (Hor.)

**Inde Graeciae praesidebis, et speciem Romanis trajecturum te praebens, et, si res poposcerit, trajecturus.** (Liv.)

558 Some stems in **-bundo,** originally gerundives, are (rarely) used as participles present, and even with object in accusative; e. g.

**Haec prope contionabundus circumibat homines.** (Liv.)

559 The passive participle is specially used as oblique predicate with **habeo, do, reddo, facio, curo, volo, cupio.** (Compare the gerundive § 552.)

**Excusatum habeas me rogo: ceno domi.** (Mart.)

**Missos facio mathematicos, grammaticos, musicos.** (Cic.)

**Sic stratas legiones Latinorum dabo, quemadmodum legatum jacentem vidistis.** (Liv.)

560 The passive participle is, chiefly in Livy and other historians, used with a substantive so as to express not so much a thing or person acted on, as the action itself. But the action is regarded as completed, and thus differs from expressions with the gerundive.

**Dubitabat nemo quin violati hospites, legati necati, fana vexata hanc tantam efficerent vastitatem.** (Cic.)

**Regnatum Romae ab condita urbe ad liberatam annos ducentos quadraginta quattuor.** (Liv.)

**Tum Danai gemitu atque ereptae virginis ira undique collecti invadunt.** (Verg.)

The neuter singular of the participle is so used without a substantive but chiefly in the nominative and ablative cases (cf. § 506).

**Diu non perlitatum tenuerat dictatorem.** (Liv.)

**Inventum est carmen in libris Sibyllinis propter crebrius eo anno de caelo lapidatum.** (Liv.)

**Erat nihil cur properato opus esset.** (Cic.)

561 The participles are sometimes used as ordinary adjectives, sometimes as substantives.

(*a*) Participles used as ordinary adjectives.

**Vir sapiens. Certa poena. Vox acuta. Tempus futurum.**

**Quid? istae imagines ita nobis dicto audientes sunt?** (Cic.)

**Medicus plane confirmat propediem te valentem fore.** (Cic.)

Many become so completely adjectives that they are inflected for the comparative and superlative degrees, and take an object in the genitive instead of the accusative.

(*b*) Participles used as substantives. This use is, except in certain words, chiefly found in the neuter singular of the perfect participle, and the plural of the masculine.

**amans**, *a lover;* **adulescens**, *a young man;* **candidatus**, *a candidate;* **praefectus**, *a chief magistrate;* **factum**, *a deed;* **pactum**, *a bargain;* **senatūs consultum**, *a resolution of the Senate;* **plebiscitum**, *a commons' decree;* **jurisprudentes**, *lawyers;* **senatūs diurna acta**, *Senate's journal.*

## CHAPTER XIII.

### USE OF VERB INFLEXIONS. INFLEXIONS OF VOICE.

**562** VERBS with active inflexions are of two classes, transitive and intransitive. Some verbs belong to both.

Transitive verbs express an action conceived in connection with an object upon which it is exercised; e.g. **amo**, *I love;* **moneo**, *I warn;* **audio**, *I hear;* **ĕdo**, *I eat;* **pello**, *I push;* **rego**, *I guide;* **tolero**, *I bear;* **uro**, *I burn;* **laedo**, *I wound.*

But it is not necessary that the object should be actually expressed. e.g. **edo**, *I eat*, does not cease to be a transitive verb because no food is specified.

**563** Some verbs being specially applicable to, or frequently used with, a particular object are not unfrequently found in this special sense without the object being expressed.

**appellere**, sc. **navem**, *put in* to shore; **conturbare**, sc. **rationes**, *become bankrupt;* **facere**, sc. **sacra**, *sacrifice;* **facere mecum**, sc. **rem**, *make with me, on my side;* **inhibere**, sc. **navem**, *back water;* **mittere**, sc. **nuntium**, *send* a message; **obire**, sc. **mortem**, *meet death, die;* **tendere**, sc. **pelles**, *pitch* tents.

**564** Intransitive (or neuter) verbs express a state of being, or an action not conceived in connection with any object, as thereby affected; e.g. **curro**, *I run;* **horreo**, *I shiver;* **gaudeo**, *I rejoice;* **praesum**, *I am at the head;* **ardeo**, *I am on fire;* **noceo**, *I am hurtful.*

Such a state or action may affect other persons or things indirectly, and this indirect object may be expressed in an oblique case, just as a similarly indirect object may be expressed with a transitive verb; e.g. **mihi gaudeo, non tibi**, *I rejoice for myself, not for you;* **praesum exercitui**, *I am in command of the army* (cf. § 474).

Some neuter verbs often correspond to passive verbs in English: e.g. **audio male**, *I am ill spoken of;* **jaceo**, *I am prostrated;* compare **perdo**, *I destroy;* **pereo**, *I am destroyed;* **vendo**, *I sell;* **veneo**, *I am sold.*

565 Verbs with passive inflexions are of two classes; viz. verbs which have also an active voice, and verbs which have no (corresponding) active voice. The latter are called deponents. (See list in § 340.)

In verbs which have also an active voice, passive inflexions are used principally to bring into prominence either the object of the action by making it the subject of the sentence, or the occurrence of the action, without specifying the agent.

If the object of the action be a person or thing, i.e. if the verb be transitive, the passive may be used in both numbers and all three persons. Thus, **laedo**, *I wound*, may have for object **me**, **te**, **eum** (**eam**, **id**), **nos**, **vos**, **eos** (**eas**, **ea**). Consequently in the passive we may have (**ego**) **laedor**, (**tu**) **laederis**, (**is**, **ea**, **id**) **laeditur**, (**nos**) **laedimur**, (**vos**) **laedimini**, (**ii**, **eae**, **ea**) **laeduntur**, *I am* (*being*) *wounded*, *thou art wounded*, *&c.*

If the verb be intransitive, and therefore express merely the existence or occurrence of an action, the passive is used in the third person singular only (as if the action itself were the real object of such a verb). Thus **noceo**, *I am hurtful*, *I do hurt*; **nocetur**, *hurtfulness exists*, *hurt is* (*being*) *done*; **eo**, *I go*; **itur**, *going takes place*, *is* (*being*) *done*; **suadebo**, *I will give advice*; **suadebitur**, *advice will be given.*

566 Besides the more usual case, in which the subject is acted on by others, passive inflexions are sometimes used in speaking: (1) of an action done by the subject to himself; and more frequently (2) of an action experienced without any specified external agency; e.g.

(1) **cingor**, **accingor**, *I gird myself*; **dedor**, *give myself up*; **erigor**, *raise myself*; **exerceor**, *exercise myself*; **exuor**, *take off from myself*; **feror**, *bear myself*; **fingor**, *train myself*; **induor**, *put on myself*; **ponor**, *place myself*; **praecipitor**, *throw myself headlong*; **sternor**, *throw myself on the ground*; **vertor** (and compounds), *turn myself*; **ungor**, *anoint myself*; **volvor** (and compounds), *roll myself*; and others.

(2) Corresponding in English to verbs used intransitively: **alor**, *I feed*; **circumagor**, *move round*; **corrumpor**, *spoil*; **delector**, *delight*; **exstinguor** (of a light), *go out*; **findor**, *split*; **lavor**, *bathe*; **mergor**, *plunge*; **moveor**, *move*; **mutor**, *change*; **ornor**, *dress*; **pascor**, *feed*; **rumpor**, *burst*; **tondeor**, *shave*; **devortor**, *turn aside* (*to lodge*); and many others, where sometimes it is difficult to say that there is any precise notion of *action* either by oneself or by others.

Sometimes also (3) the action is one which the subject gets done or lets be done to him: e.g. **cogor**, *I find myself compelled*; **non defatigabor**, *I will not permit myself to be tired out*, *&c.*

The simple import of the passive inflexions is the same in all these cases, viz. that the subject is also the object of the action.

567 Deponents have passive inflexions, but the meaning and construction of verbs with active inflexions. Some deponents are transitive, e.g. **fateor**, *I confess*; some intransitive, e.g. **epulor**, *I banquet.*

In a few verbs this deponent use of the passive inflexions coexists with a properly passive one. The past participle is not unfrequently subject to vacillation. (See § 340.)

The precise import of the passive inflexions in the case of each deponent is not easy to tell, because we do not know the precise conception attached originally to the verbal stem. The ordinary meaning which we attach to the verb in its deponent form is that original meaning as modified by the effect of the passive inflections.

The following appear to be some of the shades of meaning which suggested the use of the passive (originally reflective) inflexions.

1. Action upon oneself; e.g. **fungor**, *I free myself;* **proficiscor**, *I set myself forward* (i.e. *travel*); **potior**, *I make myself master;* **apiscor**, *I fasten to myself;* **amplector**, *I fold myself round* (i.e. *embrace*); **nitor**, *I make myself kneel.*

2. Action within oneself; e.g. **morior**, *I die;* **patior**, *I suffer;* **irascor**, *I get angry;* **reor**, *I think;* **spatior**, *I walk about.*

3. Action for oneself; e.g. **obliviscor**, *I blot out for myself;* **mereor**, *I earn for myself* (**mereo**, simply *I earn*); **epulor**, *I make a feast for myself;* **piscor**, *I provide myself with fish.* So **metior**, **partior**, **sortior**, all convey the idea of the subject's share in the result.

4. Becoming (e.g. playing a part); e.g. **blandior**, *I play the coax;* **furor**, *I play the thief*, hence *steal;* **dominor**, *I act the lord;* **interpretor**, *I act interpreter.*

5. Engagement in a mutual action. The effect is seen chiefly in plural number; e.g. **osculamur**, *we kiss;* **praelior**, *I wage war;* **comitor**, *I accompany* (or *make myself an attendant*); **rixor**, *I wrangle.*

---

**568** In the construction of passive verbs several points require notice.

If a transitive verb be changed from the active to the passive voice, the following additional changes are required, if the sentence is to express the same fact, as it expressed with the active form.

(*a*) The object of the active verb becomes subject to the passive verb.

(*b*) A secondary predicate of the object changes from the accusative to the nominative.

(*c*) The agent (subject of the active verb) is put in the ablative with the prep. **ab**.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| e.g. **Lucius Marcum** | **laedit** | *wounds Marcus.* |
| | **Druso adjutorem dedit** | *gave Marcus to Drusus as a helper.* |
| | **consulem esse dicit** | *says Marcus is consul.* |
| **Marcus a Lucio** | **laeditur** | *is being wounded by Lucius.* |
| | **Druso adjutor datus est** | *was given to Drusus as a helper.* |
| | **consul esse dicitur** | *is being said by Lucius to be consul.* |

569 An intransitive verb is not used in the passive except impersonally, and no further change is required, except usually the omission of the agent. (If the agent is expressed, it will be usually in the ablative with **ab** as above.)

(An indirect object to an intransitive passive verb in Latin will sometimes appear in English translation as the subject of a transitive passive verb.)

**Persuasumst homini; factumst; ventumst; vincimur; duxit.** (Ter.)
**Invidetur commodis hominum ipsorum, studiis autem eorum ceteris commodandi favetur.** (Cic.)
**Sed tamen satis fiet a nobis, neque parcetur labori.** (Cic.)
**Vult sibi quisque credi.** (Liv.)
**A Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resistebatur.** (Caes.)

570 A neuter pronoun in the singular number (which is in the accusative as denoting the extent of an action after an active verb, cf. § 461) is found with the passive construction. (It may be considered as an accusative still, or perhaps as a nominative qualifying the impersonal subject.)

**Hoc a Lucio** { **Marcus laeditur,** *Marcus receives this wound from Lucius.*
{ **Marco nocetur,** *This hurt is being done Marcus by Lucius.*
**Mihi quidem ipsi nihil ab istis jam noceri potest.** (Cic.)
**Hoc solum pugnatur.** (Cic.)

## CHAPTER XIV.

### USE OF VERBAL INFLEXIONS OF PERSON AND NUMBER.

571 i. Subject and predicate contained in the verb.

The finite verb contains both subject and predicate in itself, the personal inflexions expressing the subject, and the stem expressing the predicate.

Hence, whenever in English an unemphatic pronoun is sufficient to denote the subject without risk of mistake, the finite verb in Latin requires no addition for this purpose. This is so with the verb

572 1. in the first or second person.

Thus **curro, currimus**, refer to the person or persons speaking; **curris, curritis, curre, currite**, to the person or persons spoken to.

But the pronouns may be added for the sake of emphasis or contrast.

**Quod ego fui ad Trasumennum, ad Cannas, id tu hodie es.** (Liv.)
**Negat cuncta Italia, negat senatus, negatis vos.** (Cic.)

573 2. in the third person, when it is the same as the subject of the last preceding verb of the same number and person, and which is suited to the sense. (Very frequent.)

**Venit Verres in aedem Castoris: considerat templum: versat se, quaerit, quid agat.** (Cic.)

574 3. sometimes in the third person plural, when the subject is 'persons in general.'

**Deorum inmortalium judicia solent in scholis proferre de morte.** (Cic.)
**Vulgo ex oppidis publice gratulabantur Pompejo.** (Cic.)

Hence we find sentences in which **partim,** *partly*, appears to perform the functions of a subject, as if it were **pars** or **alii.** (Comp. **vulgo** above.)

**Partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut omnem populi Romani beneficiorum memoriam abjecerint, partim ita a republica aversi, ut se hosti favere prae se ferant.** (Cic.)

More correctly **Amici partim deseruerunt me, partim etiam prodiderunt.** (Cic.)

575 4. in certain verbs in the 3rd person singular, where the fact of the action, state, or feeling is the prominent point and the doer is left indefinite. Such verbs are called impersonals, and may be classified as follows:

(*a*) The verbs **miseret, piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet.**
e.g. **Ipsius facti pudet. Miseret me aliorum.**

(Other examples in § 528. Many other verbs, e.g. **decet, oportet, accidit,** &c. are called impersonals: but these have always a neuter pronoun, or infinitive, or sentence for subject.)

(*b*) Expressions concerning the weather or sky.

**Fulminat; tonat; pluit; gelat; advesperascit.**
**Reate imbri lapidavit.** (Liv.) **Luciscit hoc jam.** (Ter.) For **hoc,** comp. § 570.

(*c*) Intransitive verbs are sometimes so used, generally in the passive voice (see § 569).

**Dicto paretur. Cui parci potuit?**
**Lites severe aestimatae: cui placet, obliviscitur: cui dolet, meminit.** (Cic.)

576 ii. Subject expressed by a separate word or words.

As the finite verb always contains its own subject in its personal inflexions, the separate word, usually called its subject, is, strictly speaking, in apposition to these inflexions for the purpose of closer definition.

1. When the subject is expressed by a separate word, the finite verb is in the same number and person as its subject.

**Te aerumnae premunt omnes, qui te florentem putas; te lubidines torquent; tu dies noctesque cruciaris, cui non sat est, quod est.** (Cic.)

**Omnes enim patres familiae falce et aratro relictis intra murum correpsimus.** (Col.)

Exceptions:

577 (*a*) If the subject be a substantive in the singular number, but denotes more than one person, the verb is sometimes in the plural.

**Diffugiunt alii ad naves; pars scandunt rursus equum.** (Verg.)
**Uterque eorum ex castris stativis a flumine Apso exercitum educunt.** (Caes.)

(*b*) The verb, if it closely follow a secondary predicate, sometimes conforms to it in number. (This is rare, except where it is indifferent which substantive be considered the subject.)

**Amantium irae amoris integratiost.** (Ter.)
**Contentum rebus suis esse maximae sunt certissimaeque divitiae.** (Cic.)

578 2. When the subject is composed of two or more substantives, denoting different persons or things, but regarded as in connexion with each other, the verb is put in the plural: in the first person plural, if the subject contain the first person; and in the second person plural, if the subject contain the second person and not the first.

**Paulus et Marcellus privato consilio praetereuntur.** (Caes.)
**Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero valemus.** (Cic.)
**Ego et vos scimus inurbanum lepido seponere dicto.** (Hor.)

579 Occasionally the plural is found when a singular substantive has another joined to it by **cum**; rarely when the connexion is by a disjunctive.

**Ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur.** (Liv.)
**Haec neque ego neque tu fecimus.** (Ter.)

580 If the two or more substantives composing the subject really form but one notion, the verb is frequently put in the singular.

**Senatus populusque Romanus intellegit.** (Cic.)
**Cum tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est.** (Cic.)

### iii. Omission of the verbal predicate.

581 1. When two or more subjects require the same predicate, but joint action &c. is not to be expressed, the predicate is usually expressed only once, and is put in the number and person required by the subject nearest to it in the sentence.

**Hoc mihi et Peripatetici et vetus Academia concedit.** (Cic.)
**Vir bonus et sapiens dici delector ego ac tu.** (Hor.)
**In qua sententia Democritus, Heraclitus, Empedocles, Aristoteles fuit.** (Cic.)
**Quaesturam nos, consulatum Cotta, aedilitatem petebat Hortensius.** (Cic.)

But also, for rhetorical effect, **Dixit juratus P. Titius tutor pupilli Junii; dixit M. Junius tutor et patruus: Mustius dixisset si viveret: dixit L. Domitius.** (Cic.)

532 2. When a plural subject is distributed by an apposition of **alius, quisque, pars,** &c., either the general plural predicate is omitted, or more usually the special singular predicate.

**Ambo exercitus, Vejens Tarquiniensisque, suas quisque abeunt domos.** (Liv.)
**Quisque suos patimur manis.** (Verg.)
**Inertia et mollitia animi, alius alium expectantes, cunctamini.** (Sall.)
**Consules ejus anni, alter morbo, alter ferro perierat.** (Liv.)

533 3. The verb is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied by consideration of the context. So especially **dico** and **facio**; and in answers, the verb used in the question &c.

**Quid tu, inquit, tam mane, Tubero? Tum ille.** (Cic.)
**Sapienter haec reliquisti, si consilio; feliciter, si casu.** (Cic.)
**Galli per biduum nihil aliud, quam steterunt parati.** (Liv.)
**A me C. Caesar pecuniam? Cur potius, quam ego ab illo?** (Cic.)
**Magis ac magis anxia Agrippina, quod nemo a filio.** (Tac.)
**Quo mihi fortunam, si non conceditur uti?** (Hor.)
**Sed hoc nihil ad me. Quorsum haec? Quid multa?**

534 A predication without **est,** &c. (besides its occurrence where the **est** is expressed in an adjoining clause) is common in descriptions of a scene or the like (comp. § 539); and with past participle.

**Ante diem tertium Idus Novembris, cum sacra via descenderem, insecutus est me cum suis: clamor, lapides, fustes, gladii; haec improvisa omnia.** (Cic.)
**Mare saevom, inportuosum, ager frugum fertilis, bonus pecori, arbori infecundus; caelo terraque penuria aquarum.** (Sall.)
**Interea cum meis omnibus copiis vexavi Amaniensis, hostis sempiternos: multi occisi, capti; reliqui dissipati; castella munita inproviso adventu capta et incensa.** (Cic.)

535 Similarly the infinitive **esse** is usually omitted with the future participle, and frequently with the past participle, (esp. after **volo, oportet,** &c.); sometimes in other cases.

**Respondit se id neminem facturum putasse.** (Cic.)
**Senatus censuit frequens coloniam Lavicos deducendam.** (Liv.)
**Quid dubitatis? jam sublimem raptum oportuit.** (Plaut.)
**Quid refert utrum voluerim fieri an gaudeam factum?** (Cic.)

## CHAPTER XV.

### Of the INDICATIVE and IMPERATIVE MOODS and THEIR TENSES.

583 (A) TENSES OF INDICATIVE MOOD.

The Indicative mood is the primary and ordinary form of the finite verb, and is therefore used wherever there is no special reason for employing the imperative or subjunctive. Not only facts but suppositions and commands can be put in the indicative mood, but only when the writer or speaker relies on the tenor of the context, or turn of the rhetoric, to guard against misapprehension, and does not care to mark the supposition or the command by the form of the expression.

The tenses of the Latin verb in the indicative mood may be divided either (i) according to the time to which they relate, or (ii) according to the completeness or incompleteness of the action spoken of.

#### i. Time to which the tenses relate.

587 According to the time to which they relate, the tenses are either primary or secondary.

The *primary* tenses denote time contemporaneous with, antecedent, or subsequent to, the time *at* which we are speaking, or to some time at which we feign ourselves to be present and watching events.

The *secondary* tenses denote time contemporaneous with, antecedent, or subsequent to, some other time *of* which we are speaking, and which we affirm (by the use of secondary tenses) to be past.

ACTIVE VOICE.

| | PRIMARY. | SECONDARY. |
|---|---|---|
| Contemporary. | Present; **dico**, *I am saying.* | Imperfect; **dicebam**, *I was saying.* |
| Subsequent. | Future; **dicam**, *I shall (you, he will) say.* | Aorist; **dixi**, *I said* (i.e. after something had happened). |
| Subsequent to present time but antecedent to some future event. | Completed Future; **dixero**, *I shall (you, he will) have said.* | |
| Antecedent. | Perfect; **dixi**, *I have said.* | Pluperfect; **dixeram**, *I had said.* |

PASSIVE VOICE.

| | PRIMARY. | | SECONDARY. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Contemporary. | Pres. | **amor**, *I am being loved.* | Impf. | **amabar**, *I was being loved.* |
| Subsequent. | Fut. | **amabor**, *I shall (you, he will) be loved.* | Aor. | **amatus sum**, *I was loved.* |
| Subsequent to present time but antecedent to some future event. | Completed Future; **amatus ero** (or **fuero**), *I shall (you, he will) have been loved.* | | | |
| Antecedent. | Perf. | **amatus sum**, *I am* (or *have been*) *loved.* | Plup. | **amatus eram** (or **fueram**), *I had been loved.* |

ii. Completeness or incompleteness of the action.

588 The present, future, and imperfect tenses express incomplete action (and hence are sometimes called respectively present imperfect, future imperfect, past imperfect).

e.g. **laedo**, **laedor**, *I am wounding, am being wounded;* **laedam**, **laedar**, *I shall wound, shall be wounded;* **laedebam**, **laedebar**, *I was wounding, was being wounded.*

The perfect, completed future, and pluperfect express completed action (and hence are sometimes called respectively present perfect, future perfect, past perfect).

e.g. **laesi**, **laesus sum**, *I have wounded, have been wounded;* **laesero**, **laesus ero**, *I shall have wounded, shall have been wounded;* **laeseram**, **laesus eram**, *I had wounded, had been wounded.*

The shade of meaning, which the incomplete or complete tenses imply, varies somewhat with the meaning of the verb itself (as denoting an act, or as denoting a state), and is more clearly seen in some tenses or uses than in others. A periphrasis is often the only mode of expressing in English the meaning implied, but, it must be remembered, such a periphrasis often errs on the other side by giving too hard and precise an expression.

589 Especially noticeable is the correspondence of a single tense, the perfect, in Latin to two tenses (aorist and perfect) in Greek, and two so-called tenses in English: e.g. **feci** expresses *I made*, ἐποίησα, and *I have made*, πεποίηκα; **factus sum**, *I was made*, ἐποιήθην, and *I have been made*, πεποίημαι. In the active voice the Latin form primarily denotes the past act, *I made*, and secondarily the result of that act, *I have made.* In the passive voice it denotes primarily the resulting state, *I am a made person*, and secondarily the act which produced it, *I was made* or *I became.*

590 In the passive voice, since all the tenses in English, but only the completed tenses in Latin, are compounded of a past participle and the

verb of *being*, there is a want of exact correspondence between the two languages. Thus

**Amatus sum** is (1) *I am loved* (present of the state); (2) *I have been loved* (perfect of the state); (3) *I was loved* (aorist of the act).

**Amor** is *I am loved*, i.e. *I am being loved* (present of the act).

**Amatus ero**, *I shall be loved* (future of the state).

**Amatus fuero**, *I shall have been loved* (completed future of the state). But both are used without much or any distinction for futures of the state, or completed futures of the act.

**Amabor**, *I shall be loved*, is the future of the act.

**Amatus eram**, (1) *I was (at the time) loved*, i.e. *a loved person* (a contemporary state in past time); (2) *I had been loved* (an antecedent act in past time).

**Amabar**, *I was loved*, i.e. *I was being loved* (a contemporary act in past time).

**Amatus fui**, *I was (at one time*, or *for some time) loved;* i.e. *a loved person* (aorist of the state). It is not used of the perfect of the state (*I have been loved*, **amatus sum**), nor of a contemporaneous state in past time (**amatus eram**)[1].

**Amatus fueram**, (1) *I had been loved*, i.e. *at one time*, or *for some time* (an antecedent state in past time); (2) *I had been loved* (an antecedent act in past time), synonymous with **amatus eram.**

591 The principal contrasts which may be implied by the use of a tense of incomplete action rather than of complete action, or *vice versa*, are as follows:

1. Continuance of an action contrasted with its conclusion: e.g. **Troja est**, *Troy still exists;* **Troja fuit**, *Troy is no more;* **dico**, *I am speaking*, **dixi**, *I have done my speech;* **pereo**, *I am going to ruin*, **perii**, *it is all over with me;* **habeo**, *I have*, **habui**, *I had once.*

2. Continuance of an action contrasted with a single act. So especially the imperfect compared with the perfect (i.e. aorist); e.g. **videbam**, *I was looking at*, **vidi**, *I caught sight of;* **putabam**, *I was of opinion*, **putavi**, *I formed the opinion*, or, *the thought once occurred to me*, **non putaram**, *it had never occurred to me;* **sciebam**, *I knew*, **scivi**, *I learnt;* **discebam**, *I used to learn*, **didici**, *I (once) learnt;* **si volet**, *if he shall be willing*, **si voluerit**, *if he shall choose;* **poteram**, *I had it in my power*, **potui**, *I proved able, succeeded in doing it.*

3. Purpose or attempt contrasted with actual performance, or the actual fact: e.g. **servabam**, *I tried to save*, **servavi**, *I actually saved*, **servaveram**, *I had actually saved;* **capiam**, *I shall proceed to take*, **cepero**, *I shall succeed in taking;* **illucescit**, *the day is breaking*, **illuxit**, *it is day;* **dormiebat**, *he tried to sleep*, **dormivit**, *he fell asleep;* **dabat**, *he offered*, **dedit**, *he gave.*

[1] In Plautus it appears to be occasionally used of the aorist of the act; e.g. **Achillem orabo, ut aurum mihi det, Hector qui expensus fuit.**

4. The action itself contrasted with the resulting condition: e.g. **venio**, *I am on my road*, **veni**, *I am here;* **deficiebant**, *they were deserting*, **defecerant**, *they were deserters;* **nosco**, *I am getting knowledge of*, **novi**, *I know;* **vincam**, *I shall win*, **vicero**, *I shall be the winner;* **peribo**, *I shall die;* **periero**, *I shall be dead;* **occalesco**, **occalui**, *I grow callous;* **occalui**, *I have become callous;* **reminiscor**, *I call to mind*, **memini**, *I remember, bear in mind.*

The principal usages of the tenses of the indicative mood are as follows. More examples will be given in the chapters which treat of the moods.

## Present.

592 The present time is strictly the transitory moment between past and future. Hence the senses numbered below (1) and (2). As actions are often spread over a longer period, the present is used (3) of actions not wholly past, and (4) of actions not wholly future, the former ending, so far as the account is given, with the present, the latter commencing with the present. Lastly (5) the present is used of what holds good now, although it may hold good also of the past and future.

593 Thus the Present tense expresses

1. An action at the time of speaking.

**Hic ego Servium exspecto.** (Cic.)
**Nunc, quum vos intueor, Romanos esse video.** (Liv.)

594 2. An action in past time, but rhetorically assumed to be present. This is frequent in vivid narrations. (Historic present.)

**Archagatho negotium dedit, ut argentum ad mare deportaretur. Ascendit in oppidum Archagathus: jubet omnis proferre quod haberent. Metus erat summus.** (Cic.)

**Vix ea fatus eram: tremere omnia visa repente; summissi petimus terram et vox fertur ad auris.** (Verg.)

595 So regularly with **dum**, '*whilst*,' of actions taking place at the same time as other actions whether in past, present, or future time.

**Dum obsequor adolescentibus, me senem esse oblitus sum.** (Cic.)
**Dum ea Romani parant consultantque, jam Saguntum summa vi oppugnabatur.** (Liv.)
**Dum elephanti trajiciuntur, interim Hannibal quingentos equites ad castra Romana miserat speculatum.** (Liv.)
**Jam infici debet puer iis artibus, quas si, dum est tener, combiberit, ad majora veniet paratior.** (Cic.)

596 3. An action extending over some time, including the time of speaking.

**Cupio equidem et jampridem cupio Alexandream visere.** (Cic.)
**Quid? tibin' umquam quicquam, postquam tuus sum, verborum dedi?** (Plaut.)

597 4. An action about to be commenced.

**Quid est? Crasse, imusne sessum?** (Cic.)

**Tuemini castra et defendite diligenter, si quid durius acciderit: ego reliquas portas circumeo et castrorum praesidia confirmo.** (Caes.)

598 So especially with **antequam, priusquam,** and, where waiting is spoken of, with **dum.**

**Ante quam de accusatione ipsa dico, de accusatorum spe pauca dicam.** (Cic.)

**Tu hic nos, dum eximus, interea opperibere.** (Ter.)

599 5. An action, without reference to any particular time (especially in stating abstract truths).

**Quod semper movetur aeternum est.** (Cic.)

**Tua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet.** (Hor.)

### Future.

600 The Future denotes an action taking place, or (in verbs signifying a state) a state existing, in future time. The following usages claim notice:

(*a*) Subordinate sentences, qualifying a principal future sentence (whether such future sentence is expressed in indicative or imperative, or subjunctive of command, &c.), and referring to the same time, have regularly and usually the future. (In English the present is generally found.)

**Naturam si sequemur ducem, nunquam aberrabimus.** (Cic.)

**Hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit illi caelesti vitae simile.** (Cic.)

**Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiae fungatur officiis.** (Cic.)

**Ducere me auditum, perges quocunque, memento.** (Hor.)

601 (*b*) It is used to express a logical consequence; or an event, the knowledge or declaration of which, though not the fact itself, is future.

**Sin autem caderet in sapientem aegritudo, caderet etiam iracundia: qua quoniam vacat, aegritudine etiam vacabit.** (Cic.)

**Cognatam comperi esse nobis.** DE. **Quid? deliras.** CH. **Sic erit: non temere dico.** (Ter.)

602 (*c*) As a kind of imperative.

**De aqua si curae est, si quid Philippus aget, animadvertes.** (Cic.)

(Other examples in Chap. XIX.)

### Imperfect.

The Imperfect tense expresses (see § 591)

603 1. A continuous action contemporaneous with past action or time referred to.

**Postremam Romanorum aciem invadunt. Tum Marius apud primos agebat, quod ibi Jugurtha cum plurumis erat.** (Sall.)

**Archias erat temporibus illis jucundus Metello illi Numidico, audiebatur a M. Aemilio, vivebat cum Q. Catulo et patre et filio, a L. Crasso colebatur.** (Cic.)

604 2. In letters, especially Cicero's, it often denotes an action at the time of writing, as being past when the correspondent receives the letter.

This usage occurs where the writer has specially in mind the particular time of his writing, and is describing the feelings and occurrences of the moment; and so most frequently at the beginning or end of letters. But it is not always adopted where it might be, and is not uncommonly in close connexion with primary tenses.

**Ante diem viii. Kal. haec ego scribebam hora noctis nona. Milo campum jam tenebat: Marcellus candidatus ita stertebat, ut ego vicinus audirem.** (Cic.)

**Pridie Idus Febr. haec scripsi ante lucem; eo die apud Pomponium in ejus nuptiis eram cenaturus.** (Cic.)

**Vos quid ageretis in republica, cum has litteras dabam, non sciebam; audiebam quaedam turbulenta, quae scilicet cupio esse falsa, ut aliquando otiosa libertate fruamur.** (Trebon.)

**In his eram curis, cum scriberem ad te; quas si deus aliquis in gaudium verterit, de metu non querar.** (Plin.)

605 3. Habitual or repeated action in past time.

**Quicquid quaesierat, ventri donabat avaro.** (Hor.)

**In Graecia musici floruerunt, discebantque id omnes.** (Cic.)

**Commentabar declamitans cotidie.** (Cic.)

**Dicebat melius quam scripsit Hortensius.** (Cic.)

606 4. An action commenced, or attempted, or proposed in past time.

**Risu omnes, qui aderant, emoriri: denique metuebant omnes jam me.** (Ter.)

**Consistit utrumque agmen, et ad proelium sese expediebant.** (Liv.)

**Consules incerti, quod malum repentinum urbem invasisset, sedabant tumultus, sedando interdum movebant.** (Liv.)

**Hujus deditionis ipse Postumius, qui dedebatur, suasor et auctor fuit.** (Cic.)

So with **postquam**, of the state having commenced:

**Post quam nihil usquam hostile cernebatur, Galli, viam ingressi, ad urbem Romam perveniunt.** (Liv.)

## Perfect.

607 The Perfect tense expresses an action done in past time. As contrasted with the imperfect, it resembles the Greek aorist, and denotes a single act, not a continued state; a fact, not a description. As contrasted with the present, it resembles the Greek perfect, and denotes that the action is then already completed. See § 591.

In the division of the Latin perfect the clue given by the English translation has been chiefly followed; e.g. **scripsi**, *I wrote* (aor.), *I have written* (perf.). But the Latin form is really but one tense, denoting *past* time.

608 1. Aorist or Historical Perfect. An action which took place in past time, either singly or in succession to other actions. So usually in a continued narrative.

(*a*) **Postremo Catilina in senatum venit. Tum M. Tullius consul orationem habuit luculentam atque utilem reipublicae, quam postea scriptam edidit.** (Sall.)

**Veni, vidi, vici.** (Caes.)

**L. Lucullus per multos annos Asiae provinciae praefuit.** (Cic.)

(*b*) So with **paene, prope**, where in English we use the pluperfect.

**Prope oblitus sum, quod maxime fuit scribendum.** (Cael.)

**Brutum non minus amo quam tu, paene dixi, quam te.** (Cic.)

(*c*) Frequently in this sense in temporal sentences, with **postquam, antequam, priusquam**, &c. (In English the pluperfect is frequent.)

**Post quam Cn. Pompeius ad bellum maritumum missus est, paucorum potentia crevit.** (Sall.)

**Hispala non ante adulescentem dimisit, quam fidem dedit ab his sacris se temperaturum.** (Liv.)

2. (Perfect or Present Perfect). An action already completed before present time, so that the result, rather than the action itself, is present to the mind.

(*a*) **Membris utimur prius, quam didicimus, cujus ea utilitatis causa habeamus.** (Cic.)

**Tandem aliquando, Quirites, L. Catilinam ex urbe vel ejecimus vel emisimus vel ipsum egredientem verbis prosecuti sumus. Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit. Nulla jam pernicies moenibus ipsis intra moenia comparabitur.** (Cic.)

(*b*) Sometimes with emphasis, cf. § 591;

**Fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium et ingens gloria Teucrorum.** (Verg.)

**Filium unicum adolescentulum habeo. a, quid dixi, habere me? immo habui, Chremes. Nunc habeam necne, incertumst.** (Ter.)

So of an action quickly completed;

**Terra tremit: fugere ferae.** (Verg.)

(*c*) In subordinate sentences, in speaking of repeated actions, when the principal verb is in the present tense.

**Cum fortuna reflavit, adfligimur.** (Cic.) Other examples in Chap. XX.

(*d*) Similarly in principal sentences, but only in Augustan poets and later writers.

**Rege incolumi, mens omnibus una est: amisso, rupere fidem constructaque mella diripuere ipsae.** (Verg.)

**Non domus et fundus, non aeris acervus et auri aegroto domini deduxit corpore febres.** (Hor.)

### Completed Future.

The Completed future denotes an action in future time completed at some point in future time. Like the other perfect tenses, sometimes it *suggests*, not so much the act itself, as the future resulting state.

609 1. An action already completed at a given future time.

(In a subordinate sentence, the present or perfect is generally used in English; e.g. **Cum (si) venero**, *When (if) I come* or *have come*.)

**Cum tu haec leges, ego illum fortasse convenero.** (Cic.)
**Eum cum videro, Arpinum pergam.** (Cic.)

2. An action completed simultaneously to another action in future time.

**Qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit.** (Cic.)
**An ille non vicerit, si quacunque condicione in hanc urbem cum suis venerit?** (Cic.)

3. Of a definite act contrasted with a previous state. So especially **si potuero, voluero, libuerit, placuerit.**

**Plato, si modo interpretari potuero, his fere verbis utitur.** (Cic.)
**Lege judiciaria neque legetur, quisquis voluerit, nec, quisquis noluerit, non legetur: judices judicabunt ei, quos lex ipsa, non quos hominum libido delegerit.** (Cic.)

4. Future result of an action now past. Comp. § 601.

**Sin plane occidimus, ego omnibus meis exitio fuero.** (Cic.)
**Unus homo tantas strages impune per urbem ediderit? juvenum primos tot miserit orco?** (Verg.)

5. Often in comic poets, and occasionally in later writers, it is used, in principal or simple sentences, with but little if any difference of meaning from the simple future. So **videro** of an action postponed.

**Crede inquam mihi: aut consolando aut consiliis aut re juvero.** (Ter.)
**Tu invita mulieres: ego accivero pueros.** (Cic.)
**Molestus si sum, reddite argentum: abiero.** (Plaut.)
**Sed videro quid efficiat: tantisper hoc ipsum magni aestimo, quod pollicetur.** (Cic.)

### Future in -so.

610 The future in **-so** (e.g. **faxo, levasso**, &c. § 291 sqq.) is used as a completed future in subordinate relative sentences, or with adverbs of time or condition.

**Paterfamilias uti super familia pecuniaque sua legassit, ita jus esto.** (XII. Tab.)
**Agedum, Stiche: uter demutassit, poculo multabitur.** (Plaut.)

### Pluperfect.

611 The Pluperfect denotes an action in past time, done before another past action. Like the other perfect tenses sometimes it *suggests* the resulting state rather than the precedent act. This indeed is the proper meaning of the ordinary passive pluperfect.

(*a*) An action before another action in past time.

**Prius omnia pati decrevit quam bellum sumere, quia temptatum antea secus cesserat.** (Sall.)

**Hanno cum eis, qui postremi jam profligato proelio advenerant, vivus capitur.** (Liv.)

(*b*) In letters and sometimes in other writings, and in speeches, it denotes an action prior to the time of writing, &c. (cf. § 604).

**Nunc iter conficiebamus aestuosa et pulverulenta via. Dederam** (sc. **litteras**) **Epheso pridie; has dedi Trallibus.** (Cic.)

(*c*) A past action which produced a still continuing effect. Pluperfect of act = imperfect of resulting state.

**Centum viginti lictores forum impleverant, et cum fascibus secures illigatas praeferebant.** (Liv.)

**Frumenta non solum a tanta multitudine jumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant.** (Caes.)

So with **postquam, posteaquam, ubi, ut,** &c.

**P. Africanus, posteaquam bis consul et censor fuerat, L. Cottam in judicium vocabat.** (Cic.)

(*d*) Of repeated actions, with principal verbs in imperfect.

**Hostes, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, impeditos adoriebantur.** (Caes.)

(See other examples in Chap. XX.)

### Future participle active with the verb **sum**.

612 In order to denote what a person purposes, or is destined to do in future time, especially if regarded from a point in the past or future, the future participle active is used with the different tenses of the verb **sum**: thus,

| | PRIMARY. | SECONDARY. |
|---|---|---|
| Contemporary. | **dicturus sum**, *I am about to* (or *mean to* or *am to*) *say.* | **dicturus eram** (or, in the poets, **fueram**), *I was at the time about to* (or *I meant* or *was to*) *say.* |
| Subsequent. | **dicturus ero**, *I shall be about to say.* | **dicturus fui**, *I was* (*once*) *about to say.* |
| Antecedent. | | **dicturus fueram**, *I had meant to say.* |

**Facite quod vobis libet; daturus non sum amplius.** (Cic.)
**Quod crediturus tibi fui, omne credidi.** (Plaut.)
**Orator eorum, apud quos aliquid aget aut acturus erit, mentes sensusque degustet oportet.** (Cic.)
**Conclave illud, ubi rex mansurus erat si ire perrexisset, proxima nocte conruit.** (Cic.)

The same form is resorted to for the subjunctive future; e.g. **dicturus sim, dicturus essem,** &c. (Cf. § 617.)

(B) Tenses of Imperative Mood.

613 The imperative mood is used to express a command or request. On its difference from the subjunctive, see § 614, 2.

The present is used of the present time, or without any implied reference to a defined future time.

The future is used with express reference to the time following, or to some particular case that may occur, and therefore is frequent in legal forms.

**Cura ut valeas.** (Cic.) **Cogite oves, pueri.** (Verg.)
**Cum haec confessus eris, negato tum sane, si voles, te pecuniam accepisse.** (Cic.)

Other examples in Chap. XIX.

# CHAPTER XVI.

## Of the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD and ITS TENSES.

### i. Of the Mood.

614 THE Subjunctive mood, as distinguished from the indicative, expresses an action or event, as thought or supposed, rather than as done or narrated. This general distinction is somewhat variously modified in different kinds of sentences.

These different kinds appear reducible to eight main classes, which may again be conveniently combined into four.

1. Hypothetical (A) and conditional (B) sentences (Chap. XVIII.), the former term being given to the apodosis only, the latter to the protasis only of what are often called, as a whole, conditional sentences. As here used therefore the hypothesis is the action treated as contingent on another; the condition is that other action, on which the first is contingent.

In these sentences, which readily admit of either the indicative or subjunctive mood, the subjunctive implies that the action spoken of is *not a fact*. Nothing is implied as to knowledge or want of knowledge, doubt or assurance, probability or improbability, possibility or impossibility, so far as the mood is concerned; but a non-real *past* action is of course impossible, a non-real *future* action is (apart from intrinsic impossibilities) possible.

2. Sentences expressing a *wish*, or *command* (C), or *purpose* (D) (Chap. XIX.). In these the subjective character of the subjunctive is unmistakeable. The imperative mood, which is really an abrupt form of the indicative, speaks of an action commanded, as if it were an assertion of fact. In theory and origin the imperative is the language of an absolute master, the subjunctive is a suggestion to an equal or superior.

A peculiar use of a command is found in *concessive* sentences, where a person rhetorically commands, or supposes, a change of what he knows or believes to be the fact.

These sentences (C, D) are almost all characterised by the use, if a negative is required, of **ne** instead of **non**. Exceptions are comparatively few (see however § 674), and are chiefly due to the negation being intimately connected with some one word, not with the whole predicate.

3. Sentences expressing the *consequence* or *natural result* (E), or *attendant circumstances* (F) of an action (Chap. XX.). In these sentences the subjunctive does not in any way imply the non-reality of the action or event: indeed, the action is, or is assumed to be, a fact. But the subjunctive is still due to the accompanying thought as distinguished from the bare fact; viz. to the *causal connexion* which the sentence is intended to express, but which the particles (**ut, cum**) used in such sentences do not contain. They properly mean *in which way*, *at what time*, respectively, and gain the notion of result (*so that*), or that of modifying circumstances (*since, whereas, notwithstanding*), only by union with the subjunctive mood.

4. The next division (Chap. XXI.) contains sentences expressive of definitions, reasons, questions (G), which are *given not as the speaker's own*, but as some one's else.

With these may be classed (H) all sentences which are dependent on infinitive or subjunctive moods, and are regarded only as part of the action expressed substantivally by the infinitive, or as a thought by the subjunctive. In all these the subjunctive simply prevents the speaker being supposed to be responsible for the statements, &c. reported, or to be giving them as independent assertions.

In only two (A, C) of these eight classes is the subjunctive found in simple or principal sentences. In all the rest it is in subordinate sentences. And these subordinate sentences are mainly such as are introduced by the relative adjective **qui**, or the relative adverbs **si, ut, cum**, or by **dum**. As all of these relatives are also repeatedly found introducing subordinate clauses, which have the indicative mood, it is clear that the use of the subjunctive mood is not due to those relatives.

**615** There are some cautions which should be borne in mind in discussing why the subjunctive mood has or has not been used in any particular sentence.

1. A writer may frequently (especially in relative sentences), if he chooses, express what is really a thought or supposition, as if it were a fact, and therefore use the indicative mood; or, on the other hand, express a fact, as if it were only a thought or supposition, and therefore use the subjunctive mood. If however he *means* to imply *by the form of expression* that it is for him at the moment a supposition or conception (though it may be also a fact), he uses the subjunctive; if he wishes to imply that it is a fact, or to state it simply without any implication, he uses the indicative. Whether the same introductory particle or same turn of sentence can be used, must be determined according to the particular circumstances.

2. As a subjunctive may be used on several different grounds, it is necessary to consider how far any particular occurrence of the subjunctive may be due to the general frame of the sentence or to some collateral motive. The following classes of subjunctives are frequently occurring where the general frame of the sentence is suitable to an indicative: commands (§ 657 *b*), modest assertions expressed as an hypothesis (§ 657 *b*), actions of an indefinite subject in the 2nd person singular (§ 646). On the other hand, in one whole class (H) of subjunctives, viz. those which are de-

pendent on infinitives and subjunctives, the mood is due rather to the frame of the sentence than to the particular meaning.

3. The nature of the verb itself is often an important element. Auxiliary verbs, e.g. **possum, volo**, &c. or **sum** with the future participle or gerundive, are often put in the indicative where other verbs would be in the subjunctive, not from any real inconsistency, but because possibilities, volitions, expectations, duties, are often much more positive than the particular actions to which they relate. It requires consideration therefore whether the writer means to speak of the act only or of the power, &c., itself as a supposition or thought; e.g. **potest solvere si velit**, implies that a man has the money, but does not choose to pay; **possit solvere si velit**, that he could get the money to pay with if he chose.

4. It often appears probable that the choice of the subjunctive mood is due rather to a desire to avoid using the indicative, and *vice versa*, than to the independent strength of its claim. This occurs chiefly where certain particles or phrases or even tenses are so frequently used with the indicative or subjunctive, that the writer fears if he use the habitual mood he should be supposed to intend the habitual meaning. Of course this consideration can come into play only where neither the indicative nor subjunctive is, independently considered, incompatible with the meaning.

### ii. Of the Tenses.

616 The tenses of the subjunctive mood preserve in the main the same character as the tenses called by the same names in the indicative mood, the present and imperfect denoting contemporaneous states or incomplete acts, the perfect and pluperfect denoting completed acts or states; and again, the present and perfect referring in the main to the time of speaking, the imperfect and pluperfect to some past time spoken of.

But there are some special ambiguities, chiefly due to the future tenses of the indicative not having any separate correspondent forms in the subjunctive mood.

617 Thus (1) the present subjunctive corresponds in most cases to the present and to the simple future of the indicative, but, when it is important to distinguish the future from the present, the future participle (with **sim** or **essem**) is resorted to.

(2) The perfect subjunctive corresponds both to the perfect (i.e. both aorist and perfect proper) and to the completed future of the indicative.

i. In *independent sentences* (A, C)

618 The present relates to present or future time, without any distinct determination of either.

The perfect usually relates to some point in the immediate present or future, but in concessive sentences usually, and sometimes in others (cf. § 640 *b*), it relates to the past.

The imperfect relates to any time not future, and therefore may, and frequently does, include the present moment.

The pluperfect relates to some point of time in the past.

ii. In *dependent sentences* (B, D, E, F, G, H)

619 1. The present and perfect are used in sentences dependent on primary tenses.

(*a*) The present subjunctive represents the present of the indicative: but if future time is otherwise indicated it may represent the future of the indicative; e.g. **si naturam sequamur, nego nos aberraturos** corresponds to **si naturam sequemur, non aberrabimus.**

(*b*) The perfect subjunctive

in some final sentences (D) (e.g. **timeo ne venerit**), in consecutive sentences (E), in sentences with **cum** (F), in reported sentences (G), and in such dependent sentences as are classed under H, represents the perfect (and aorist) of the indicative; and in a dependent interrogative it may also represent the imperfect; e.g. **quid dicebas** would become **quaero quid dixeris;**

In all these classes of sentences, if future time be otherwise indicated, the perfect subjunctive may represent the completed future of the indicative, as it does also when used in conditional and most final sentences (B, D).

620 2. The imperfect and pluperfect are used in sentences dependent on secondary tenses (including frequently the perfect as well as the aorist indicative, cf. § 607), even though the statement is applicable as well to the present as to the past time, or generally to all times alike.

(*a*) The imperfect subjunctive represents both the imperfect and perfect of the indicative.

(*b*) The pluperfect subjunctive represents the pluperfect of the indicative.

In final sentences and in sentences classed under (H), the imperfect may represent a future, and the pluperfect may represent a completed future, as seen from a point of view in past time.

621 3. But in some cases the particular sense or context requires or allows a different tense from what these rules should give. Thus

(*a*) The historical present is, in its effect on the verbs directly or indirectly dependent on it, sometimes regarded as a primary, sometimes as a secondary tense.

**Rogat Rubrium ut quos ei commodum sit invitet: locum sibi soli, si videatur, relinquat.** (Cic.)

**Simul servis suis Rubrius ut januam clauderent et ipsi ad foris adsisterent imperat.** (Cic.)

622 When the dependent sentence has another dependent on it, the former is frequently in the present tense; e.g.

**Adversarii postulant ut in eam rem judices dentur ex eis civitatibus, quae in id forum convenirent: electi, qui Verri viderentur.** (Cic.)
**Mago nuntios Carthaginem ad senatum mittit, qui defectionem sociorum in majus verbis extollentes, hortentur, ut auxilia mitterent, quibus traditum a patribus imperium Hispaniae repeti posset.** (Liv.)

623 (*b*) In consecutive sentences, though dependent on a secondary tense, the present is used of such actions as belong to the present time only.

**Siciliam per triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo possit, vix autem per multos annos aliqua ex parte aliquando recreari posse videatur.** (Cic.)

624 And the perfect is used of a result completed at the present time only (corresponding to perfect indic.); and also of an event in past time simply regarded as such, without reference to its being contemporaneous or prior to other past events.

**Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerarium pecuniae invexit, ut unius imperatoris praeda finem attulerit tributorum.** (Cic.)
**Tantum opes creverant, ut ne morte quidem Aeneae movere arma Etrusci aut ulli alii accolae ausi sint.** (Liv.)

625 (*c*) The secondary tenses are rarely found in sentences dependent on a present tense, and when so found admit of a special explanation from the writer's having more than the present time in mind.

**Laudantur oratores veteres, quod copiose reorum causas defendere solerent.** (Cic.)
**'Ut me omnes,' inquit, 'pater, tuo sanguine ortum vere ferrent, provocatus equestria haec spolia capta ex hoste caeso porto.'** (Liv.)

## CHAPTER XVII.

### TYPICAL EXAMPLES OF SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES.

626 THE following examples show the typical uses of the subjunctive mood and its tenses, with their proper English translations.

(A) Hypothetical sentences, i.e. apodosis to a conditional sentence. (For translation of protasis see next section.)

1. **Faciam,** (**si jubeas,** or **jusseris,**) *I should do*, or *be doing*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Fecerim,** | (**si jubeas**, or **jusseris**,) | *I should be found to have*, or *I should have, done* (the fact, or the knowledge of the fact, being in future time). |
| **Facerem,** | (**si juberes**, or **jussisses**,) | *I should have been doing*, or *should have done*, or *I had been doing*, or *I had done.* |
| **Fecissem,** | (**si juberes**, or **jussisses**,) | *I should have done*, or *I had done* (in past time). |

For the second and third persons *would* must be substituted for *should:* e.g.

**Facias** (**si jubeas**, or **jusseris**,) *You* / *He* } *would do* or *be doing.*

2. With condition suppressed.

**Velim**, *I could wish.* **Vellem**, *I could have wished.*
**Quis dicat?** / **Quis dixerit?** } *Who can* or *would say?*
**Ego censuerim**, *I am inclined to think.*
**Ubi invenias?** *Where does* or *can one find?*
**Crederes**, *One would have believed.*

627 (B) Conditional sentences, i.e. protasis to a conditional sentence. (For translation of apodosis see preceding section.)

1. **Si jubeas** (**faciam** or **fecerim**), *If you should bid* or *be bidding.*
**Si jusseris** (**faciam** or **fecerim**), *If you should have bidden* or *should bid.*
**Si juberes** (**facerem** or **fecissem**), *If you had been bidding* or *had bidden.*
**Si jussisses** (**facerem** or **fecissem**), *If you had bidden.*

Sometimes the conditional particle is not expressed. (In the following sentences the ordinary translation of the apodosis as well as of the protasis is given.)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Roges,** / **Rogaveris,** | **dicam,** | *Should you ask*, or *were you to ask*, / *Should you have asked*, or *were you to have asked*, | *I should say.* |
| ..... | **dixerim,** | ..... | *I should have said*, or *should be found to have said.* |
| **Rogares,** / **Rogasses,** | **dicerem,** | *Should you*, or *were you to have been asking*, or *had been asking*, / *Had you asked*, | *I should have*, or *I had been, saying.* |
| ..... | **dixissem,** | ..... | *I should have said*, or *I had said.* |

628 2. Conditional sentences in the subjunctive often have for an apodosis either a future participle or gerundive with the indicative mood of **sum**, or an infinitive with the indicative mood of **possum, licet, oportet, debeo**, &c.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Si adsis** | **facturus sum,** | *I mean to do* | *if you should be there* |
| | **facturus ero,** | *I shall intend to do* | |
| | **faciendum mihi est,** | *I have to do* | |
| | **faciendum mihi erit,** | *I shall have to do* | |
| | **facere possum,** | *I can do* | |
| | **facere licet,** | (*I*) *may do* | |
| | **facere debeo,** | *I ought to do* | |
| **Si jusseris** | **facere audeo,** | *I dare to do* | *if you bid.* |
| | **facere potero,** | *I shall be able to do* | |
| | **facere licebit,** | (*I*) *shall be allowed to do* | |
| | **facere debebo,** | *It will be my duty to do* | |
| | **facere audebo,** | *I shall dare to do* | |
| **Si adesses** | **facturus fui,** | *I meant to do* | *if you were* or *had been there* |
| | **facturus eram,** (sometimes **fueram**) | *I was intending* (*had intended*) *to do* | |
| | **faciendum mihi fuit,** | *I had to do*, or *ought to have done* | |
| | **faciendum mihi erat,** | *I had to do*, or *ought to have done at the time* | |
| | **facere poteram,** | *I could have been doing* (*now* or *formerly*) | |
| | **facere licebat,** | *I might have been doing* (*now* or *formerly*) | |
| | **facere debebam,** | *I ought to have been doing* (*now* or *formerly*) | |
| **Si jussisses** | **facere audebam,** | *I had dared to be doing* (*now* or *formerly*) | *if you bade* or *had bidden.* |
| | **facere potui,** | *I could have done* | |
| | **facere licuit,** | (*I*) *might have done* | |
| | **facere debui,** | *I ought to have done* | |
| | **facere ausus sum,** | *I had dared to have done* | |

The difference in meaning is scarcely perceptible, whether the apodosis to **si jussisses** be constituted by **fecissem** or **facturus fui.** And practically **faciendum mihi fuit**, or **facere potui**, might come to much the same. Hence the usages mentioned in the next two sections.

629 If the apodosis to a conditional sentence of past time is in a dependent interrogative or consecutive sentence, or dependent on **cum**, so that the subjunctive mood would be required on account of the dependency, a periphrasis by means of the future participle with **fuerim** is usually resorted to, instead of the simple pluperfect[1] active.

**Ostendis, (ostendes,) quomodo**
**Non dubium est, (erit,) quin**
**Eo fit, (fiet,) ut**
**Talis es, (eris,) qui**
} **hoc, si jussissem, juberem, facturus fueris,**

*You show, (will show,) how,*
*There is, (will be,) no doubt that,*
*So it results, (will result,) that,*
} *if I had commanded (been commanding), you would have done it.*

*You are, (were,) the sort of person to have done it, if I had commanded (been commanding).*

630 If the hypothetical sentence depend on a secondary tense, **fueris** is still used generally, but in interrogative sentences (except such as **non fuit dubium quin**) **fuisses** is used instead; e.g.

**Ostendisti, quomodo** — **hoc, si jussissem, juberem, facturus fuisses.**

**Non dubium fuit quin**
**Eo factum est ut**
**Talis fuisti qui**
} ..... **fueris.**

For the pluperfect passive a periphrasis (esp. with the gerundive or **possum**) is resorted to; e.g.

**Non dubium est, quin**
**Eo fit ut**
} **hoc si jussissem,** { **oppidum capi potuerit.** / **clades accipienda fuerit.**

**Non dubium fuit quin**
**Nihil jussi, cum**
} ..... **potuerit** or **potuisset.**

If not dependent, **poterat** or **potuit** would have been used in each.

See examples in § 652.

3. The following are types of rhetorical irregularities:

**Satis est si te videam,** — *It is enough if I do but see you.*
**Perieram, ni te vidissem,** — *It was all over with me if I had not caught sight of you.*

[1] An hypothetical imperfect (e.g. **facerem**) is also occasionally found; a pluperfect very rarely. The subjunctive in **facturus fuerim**, &c. is due to the dependency of the sentence: the corresponding independent expression would be in the indicative, the hypothesis being expressed by the future participle.

631 (C) 1. Optative sentences.

**Moriar**, *may I die!* **Ne moriar**, *may I not die!* **Morerer**, *were I but dying!*

**Utinam** { **moriar**, **morerer**, / **mortuus sim**, **mortuus essem**, } *O that* { *I may die!* / *I were (now) dying!* or *had been dying!* / *I may be dead*, or *may have died!* / *I were (now) dead*, or *had died!* }

**Ita me di ament, honestus est**, *I swear he is honourable.*
**Ne sim salvus, si honestus est**, *My life upon it, he is not honourable.*

2. Jussive sentences.

(*a*) **Faciat**, *Let him do, he shall do, he must do.*
**Ne faciat**, *Let him not do, he shall not do, he must not do.*

(*b*) **Ne feceris**, *Do not do, you shall not do, you must not do.*
**Faceres**, *You were* } *to do, you (he) should have been doing* or *have*
**Faceret**, *He was* } *done.*
**Fecisses**, *You were* } *to have done, you (he) should have done*, or
**Fecisset**, *He was* } *ought to have done.*

3. **Dic faciat**, *Tell him to do, bid him do.*
**Censeo (Volo) facias**, *I recommend you to do.*
**Postulat**, **Permittit**, } **ducant**, *He requires them to, says they are to / He permits them to, says they may* } *lead.*
**Postulavit**, **Permisit**, } **ducerent**, *He required, said they were to / He permitted them to, said they might* } *lead.*
**Cave facias**, *Beware of doing, don't do.*
**Nolo facias**, *I don't wish you to do.*

4. **Quid agam?** *What am I to do? What must I do?*
**Quid agerem?** *What was I to do? What should I have done?*

5. Concessive sentences.

**Dicat**, *Suppose him to say, let him say.*
**Dixerit**, *Suppose him to have said, let him have said* (in past or future time).
**Dixisset**, *Suppose that he had said.*

**Quam vis** {
**sit malus**, *Be he as bad as you please, however bad he be.*
**fuerit malus**, *However bad he was*, or *may have been.*
**esset malus**, *Were he as bad as you please, however bad he were.*
**fuisset malus**, *Had he been as bad as you please, however bad he had been.*
}

632 (D) 1. Final sentences (i.e. expressing purpose).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (1) **Mitto**<br>**Mittam**<br>**Misero**<br>**Misi** (perf.) | **qui dicat,** | *I am sending* or *send*<br>*I shall send*<br>*I shall have sent*<br>*I have sent* | *one to say*, or *one who is to say.* |
| (2) ..... | **eum ut dicat,** | ..... | *him to say*, or *that he may say.* |
| (1) **Mittebam**<br>**Misi** (cf. § 620)<br>**Miseram** | **qui diceret,** | *I was sending* or *sent*<br>*I sent* (*have sent*)<br>*I had sent* | *one to say*, or *one who was to say.* |
| (2) ..... | **eum ut diceret,** | ..... | *him to say*, or *that he might say.* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2. **Prohibeo,** &c. | **ne quominus** | **dicat,** | *I prevent his saying,* |
| **Prohibebam,** &c. | ..... | **diceret,** | *I was preventing his saying.* |
| **Non recuso,** &c. | **quominus quin** | **dicat,** | *I do not object to his saying.* |
| **Non recusabam,** &c. | ..... | **diceret,** | *I did not object to his saying.* |
| **Timeo,** &c. | **ne** | **veniat,** | *I fear his coming.* |
| ..... | ... | **venerit,** | *I fear his having come*, or *I fear he came.* |
| **Timebam,** &c. | ... | **veniret,** | *I was in fear of his coming.* |
| ..... | ... | **venisset,** | *I was in fear he had come.* |
| **Timeo,** &c. | **ut** | **veniat,** &c. | *I fear his not coming.* |
| **Non timeo,** &c. | **ne non** | **veniat,** &c. | *I do not fear his not coming.* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3. (*a*) **Exspecto,** &c. | **dum dicat,** | *I am waiting*, or *wait* | *for him to say*, or *until he can say.* |
| **Exspectabam,** &c. | **dum diceret,** | *I was waiting*, or *waited* | *for him to say*, or *until he could have said.* |
| **Abeo,** &c. | **prius quam dicat,** | *I am off, before he can say.* | |
| **Abibam,** &c. | **prius quam diceret,** | *I was going off, before he could say.* | |
| (*b*) **Depugno,** &c. | **potius quam serviam,** | *I fight it out rather than be a slave.* | |
| **Depugnabam,** &c. | **potius quam servirem,** | *I was ready to fight it out rather than be a slave.* | |

633 (E) Consecutive sentences, i.e. expressing a consequence.

1. **Is sum**, &c. **qui nihil timeam**, *I am one who fears nothing.*
..... **timuerim**, .....*feared* or *has feared nothing.*
**Is eram**, &c. ..... **timerem**, *I was one who feared nothing.*
..... **timuissem**, .....*had feared nothing.*
**Quis est**, &c. **quin cernat?** *Who is there but sees?*
**Quis erat**, &c. **quin cerneret?** *Who was there but saw?*
**Tempus erit, cum liceat loqui**, *The time will come for speech to be lawful.*
..... **fuit**, ..... **liceret** ..... *There was a time for speech to be lawful.*

2. (1) **Eo fit** / **Eo fiet** / **Eo factum erit** / **Eo factum est** (perf.) — **ut milites animos demittant,** — *The result is* / *The result will be* / *The result will have been* / *The result has been* — *that the soldiers lose* (or *are losing*) *heart.*
..... **demiserint,** ..... *have* (rarely *will have*) *lost heart.*
..... **demissuri sint,** ..... *will be likely to lose heart.*

**Eo fiebat** / **Eo factum est** / **Eo factum erat** — **ut milites animos demitterent,** — *The result was coming* / *The result was* / *The result had been* — *that the soldiers lost* (or *were losing*) *heart.*

(Sometimes **demiserint** (§ 624), the action being regarded as a distinct historical fact, not as a continuous state, or as a contemporary with the principal action (*imperfect*)).

..... **demisissent,** ..... *had* (rarely *would have*) *lost heart.*
.....**demissuri essent,** ..... *were likely to lose heart.*

(2) **Parum abest, quin Cato moriatur,** *Cato all but dies.*
..... **afuit,** ..... **moreretur,** .....*died.*

(3) **Ut** — **dicas,** *Suppose you to say, although you should say,* or *were to say.*
**dixeris,** *Suppose you to have said, although you should have said.*
**diceres,** *Suppose,* or *although, you had been saying.*
**dixisses,** *Suppose,* or *although, you had said.*

**Ut non dicas,** &c. *Suppose you not to say,* &c.

**634** (F) Sentences expressing attendant circumstances.

1. (*a*) **Marcus, cui / ut cui res placeat, abit,** &c. *Marcus, liking (since he likes) the matter, goes away.*

..... **placuerit, abit,** &c. ... *since he has liked...*

..... **placeret, abibat,** &c. *Marcus since he liked (at the time) the matter was going away.*

..... **placuisset, abibat,** &c. ... *since he had liked...*

(*b*) In Livy and later historians:

**Quod / cum / ubi faceret, dicebat,** *Whenever he was doing this, he used to say.*

..... **fecisset,** ..... *Whenever he had done this, he used to say.*

[N.B. In Cicero and Caesar the indicative is used; e.g.

**Quod / cum / ubi fecerat, dicebat,** *Whenever he had done this, he used to say.*

So also

**Quod / cum / ubi fecit, dicit,** *Whenever he has done this, he says.*

..... **fecerit, dicet,** ..... *he will say.*]

2. (1) **Cum navis adveniret, haec dicebam,** *On the ship approaching, I proceeded to say,* or *was saying, this.*

..... **dixi,** ..... *I said this.*

..... **dixeram,** *As the ship was approaching, I had said this.*

.....**advenisset, haec dicebam,** *When the ship had come up, I proceeded to say this.*

..... **dixi,** ..... *I said this.*

..... **dixeram,** ..... *I had said this.*

(2) **Cum haec sint,** *Whereas, since, although, these things are so,*

..... **essent,** ..... *were so,* or *These things being so,* or *Under these circumstances.*

(3) **Simulat se audire, cum interea aliud agat,** *He pretends to hear, while all the time he is at something else.*

**Simulabat** ..... **ageret,** *He pretended to hear, while all the time he was at something else.*

(4) **Audivi cum diceret,** *I heard him saying.*
**Vidi cum veniret,** *I saw him coming.*

635 (G) Sentences containing reported definition, reason, condition, question.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. 2. Laudat<br>Laudabit<br>Laudaverit<br>Laudavit<br>(perf.) | te, | quod hoc<br>qui hoc | facias | *He praises*<br>*He will praise*<br>*He will have praised*<br>*He has praised* | *you for doing this.* |
| ..... | | | feceris | ..... | *you for having done this.* |
| ..... | | | facturus sis | ..... | *for purposing to do this.* |
| Laudabat<br>Laudavit<br>Laudaverat | te, | qui hoc<br>quod hoc | faceres | *He was praising*<br>*He praised (has praised)*<br>*He had praised* | *you for doing this.* |
| ..... | | | fecisses | ..... | *for having done this.* |
| ..... | | | facturus esses | ..... | *for purposing to do this.* |

These are often translated like the indicative (e.g. *I praise you because you do this*), but a distinction may be made by inserting *as he said, as is thought, &c.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 3. **Minatur**, &c. **ni eant**, | *He threatens them, if they do not go.* |
| **Minabatur**, &c. **ni irent**, | *He threatened them, if they did not go.* |
| **Minatur**, &c. **ni iverint**, | *He threatens them, if they should not have gone.* |
| **Minabatur**, &c. **ni issent**, | *He threatened them, if they should not have gone.* |
| **Tentat**, &c. **si res agi possit**, | *He tries whether the thing can be managed.* |
| **Tentabat**, &c. ..... **posset**, | *He was trying whether the thing could be managed.* |

4. Reported (often called Dependent) question.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Video**, &c. | **quid facias**, | *I see*, &c. | *what you are doing.* |
| ..... | **quid feceris**, ..... | | *what you did* or *have done.* |
| ..... | **quid facturus sis**, ..... | | *what you will do.* |
| **Videbam**, &c. | **quid faceres**, | *I was seeing*, &c. | *what you were doing.* |
| ..... | **quid fecisses**, ..... | | *what you had done.* |
| ..... | **quid facturus esses**, ..... | | *what you were about to do.* |
| **Non est dubium, quin id fiat**, | | | *There is no doubt it is being done.* |
| ..... **quin futurum sit, ut id fiat**, | | | .....*it will be done.* |
| **Non erat dubium, quin id fieret**, | | | *There was no doubt it was being done.* |
| ..... **quin futurum esset, ut id fieret**, | | | .....*it would be done.* |

636 (H) Sentences with verb in subjunctive because dependent on infinitive or subjunctive.

1. Dependent on infinitive.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Dicit / Dicet / Dixerit / Dixit (perf.)** | **se ire (iturum), cum tempus postulet,** | *He says / He will say / He will have said / He has said* | *that he goes whenever the time requires.* |
| ..... | **postulaverit,** | ..... | *when the time requires* or *shall have required.* |
| ..... | **postulaturum sit,** | ..... | *when the time shall be about to require.* |
| **Dicebat / Dixit / Dixerat** | **se ire (iturum), cum tempus postularet,** | *He was saying / He said (has said) / He had said* | *that he was going whenever the time required* or *should require.* |
| ..... | **postulasset,** | ..... | *when the time required* or *should have required.* |
| ..... | **postulaturum esset** | ..... | *when the time should be about to require.* |

So **videor, videbor, visus ero,** &c. **ire (iturus esse), cum tempus postulet, postulaverit, postulaturum sit;**

**videbar, visus sum, visus eram, ire (iturus esse), cum tempus postularet, postulasset, postulaturum esset.**

After the past infinitive the tenses are secondary; e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Dicit / Dicet / Dixerit** | **se ivisse (iturum fuisse), ubi tempus postularet.** |
| **Dixit** | ..... **postulasset.** |
| **Dicebat / Dixerat** | ..... **postulaturum esset.** |

So **videor,** &c., **videbar,** &c., **ivisse (iturus fuisse), ubi tempus postularet,** &c.

2. Dependent on subjunctive.

The other tenses and translations given under (1) will hold good, if we substitute as follows:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Si eat, eat,** | *if he were to go, he would go,* | for **dicit** or **dicet se ire.** |
| **Si ierit, ierit,** | *if he should* (or *shall*) *have gone, he would* (or *will*) *have gone,* | for **dixit** (perf.) or **dixerit se ire.** |
| **Si iret, iret,** | *if he had been going, he would have been going,* | for **dicebat se ire.** |
| **Si isset, isset,** | *if he had gone, he would have gone,* | for **dixit** (aor.) or **dixerat se ire.** |

[From here to end of Chap. XXI. the right-hand pages are not continuous with the left-hand pages, but form a parallel exposition. All the sections on the left-hand pages have even numbers, all those on the right-hand have odd numbers.]

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## USE OF THE MOODS IN (A) HYPOTHETICAL AND (B) CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

### (A) Hypothetical subjunctive.

638 SUCH a subjunctive as appears in the principal clause (i.e. the apodosis) of a conditional sentence may be called a *hypothetical* subjunctive.

*An hypothetical subjunctive expresses an action*[1] *which, while its non-occurrence is implied, is yet supposed to occur, if some other action occur.*

The following rules for the tense apply to the subjunctive in both clauses.

(*a*) The present tense is used of an imaginary action in the immediate present or the future, and therefore still possible, but marked (by the use of the subjunctive) as merely imaginary.

(*b*) The perfect is used of an action similarly marked as merely imaginary, but assumed to be already completed, or to be completed before an action still possible in the present or future.

(*c*) The imperfect is used of an action supposed, contrary to the fact, to be already occurring in the present time, or of a continuous state supposed, contrary to the fact, to have existed in past time.

(*d*) The pluperfect is used of an action supposed, contrary to the fact, to have occurred in past time; or at least to be already completed at the present time.

640 i. Hypothetical subjunctive, with condition expressed in a separate clause.

**Si** is used of a positive, **si non** of a negative condition, **nisi, ni, nisi si** of an exception (which often has the same effect as a negative condition).

(*a*) *Present.* **Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias.** (Ter.)
**Ego si Scipionis desiderio me moveri negem, mentiar.** (Cic.)
**Quid, si pater fana expilet, cuniculos agat ad aerarium? indicetne id magistratibus filius? Nefas id quidem est: quin etiam defendat patrem, si arguatur.** (Cic.)

(*b*) *Perfect* (rare). **Tum vero ego nequiquam hac dextra Capitolium arcemque servaverim, si civem in vincula duci videam.** (Liv.)

[1] *Action* is used throughout as the general term for what a verb denotes.

*Continued on p.* 260

637 [The following instances (Chapp. XVIII.—XXI.) of the indicative and imperative moods are selected, partly for introducing certain idiomatic usages, but chiefly to illustrate, by contrast with these, the effect due to the subjunctive mood. Compared with the sentences on the left-hand pages they all belong to one of two classes; they either express a different meaning in similar sentences (or in sentences introduced by like conjunctions), or express a similar meaning in differently turned sentences. The arrangement of the matter in these chapters is mainly such as is necessary to show the connexion with one another of the uses of the subjunctive; and the uses of the indicative are grouped as connectedly as the primary object of contrast or comparison with the subjunctive allows.]

---

639 The use of the *indicative* in a principal sentence, with a subordinate conditional sentence, is very common in all tenses except the pluperfect.

*The* INDICATIVE *makes a statement without implying that the action does not occur, or (necessarily) that it does occur.*

641 1. Regular conditional sentences with **si, si non, nisi, ni; si modo, si quidem.**

(*a*) *Present.* **Si id facis, hodie postremum me vides.** (Ter.)

**Nos vero, si quidem in voluptate sunt omnia, longe multumque superamur a bestiis.** (Cic.)

**Denique si deus es, tribuere mortalibus beneficia debes, non sua eripere; sin autem homo es, id, quod es, semper esse te cogita.** (Curt.)

*Future.* **Si damnatus eris, atque adeo cum damnatus eris, (nam dubitatio damnationis, illis recuperatoribus, quae poterat esse?) virgis te ad necem caedi necesse erit.** (Cic.)

**Quid? si tyrannidem occupare, si patriam prodere conabitur pater, silebitne filius? Immo vero obsecrabit patrem, ne id faciat: si nihil proficiet, accusabit.** (Cic.)

**Si tot exempla virtutis non movent, nihil unquam movebit: si tanta clades vilem vitam non fecit, nulla faciet.** (Liv.)

(*b*) *Perfect.* **Si veneno te inter cenam tollere volui, quid minus aptum fuit quam iratum te efficere?** (Liv.)

**Dixi me pigrum proficiscenti tibi: quid tum profeci, mecum facientia jura si tamen attemptas?** (Hor.)

*Continued on p.* 261

Injussu tuo, imperator, extra ordinem nunquam pugnaverim, non si certam victoriam videam. (Liv.)

Denique hercle aufugerim potius quam redeam, si eo mihi redeundum sciam. (Ter.)

Hos, ni mea cura resistat, jam flammae tulerint, inimicus et hauserit ensis. (Verg.)

(*c*) *Imperfect.* Haec tibi ridicula videntur, non enim ades: quae si videres, lacrimas non teneres. (Cic.)

Hannibal peto pacem, qui non peterem, nisi utilem crederem. (Liv.)

Num igitur Opimium, si tum esses, temerarium civem aut crudelem putares? (Cic.)

Nunc quemadmodum audiar sentio, at tum si dicerem non audirer. (Cic.)

Tu vero, vel si testamentum defenderes, sic ageres, ut omne omnium testamentorum jus in eo judicio positum videretur, vel si causam ageres militis, patrem ejus dicendo a mortuis excitasses. (Cic.)

(*d*) *Pluperfect.* Si Metelli fidei diffisus essem, judicem eum non retinuissem. (Cic.)

Res neque nunc difficili loco mihi videtur esse, et fuisset facillimo, si culpa a quibusdam afuisset. (Cic.)

Atqui, Vellei, nisi tu aliquid dixisses, nihil sane ex me quidem audire potuisses. (Cic.)

642 ii. With the condition not formally expressed. (This is sometimes called the potential mood.)

1. The condition is sometimes contained in a phrase in the sentence or implied by the context.

Uno proelio victus, Alexander bello victus esset; Romanum quem Caudium, quem Cannae non fregerunt, quae fregisset acies? (Liv.) i.e. si evenisset.

Illius impulsu cum turribus ardua celsis moenia mota forent: serpens sine vulnere mansit. (Ov.) Where illius impulsu = si ab illo impulsae essent.

'Vellem quidem liceret: hoc dixissem.' Dicas licet. 'Hoc fecissem.' Facias licet: nemo prohibet. 'Hoc decrevissem.' Decerne, modo recte: omnes approbabunt. (Cic.)

Nulla profecto alia gens tanta mole cladis non obruta esset. (Liv.)

Hoc spatio plura facinora in se victi ediderunt quam infesti edidissent victores. (Liv.)

Omnia nostra, dum nascuntur, placent: alioqui nec scriberentur. (Quint.)

Illa vel intactae segetis per summa volaret gramina nec teneras cursu laesisset aristas, vel mare per medium fluctu suspensa tumenti ferret iter celeris nec tingueret aequore plantas. (Verg.)

*Continued on p.* 262

Epicurus quamvis comis in amicis tuendis fuerit, tamen si haec vera sunt, nihil enim affirmo, non satis acutus fuit. (Cic.)

*Completed Future.* Si tu argentum attuleris, cum illo perdidero fidem. (Plaut.)

Pergratum mihi feceris, spero etiam Scaevolae, si de amicitia disputaris. (Cic.)

(*c*) *Imperfect.* Si nullum jam ante consilium de morte Sex. Rosci inieras, hic nuntius ad te minime omnium pertinebat. (Cic.)

Metellum si parum pudor ipsius defendebat, debebat familiae nostrae dignitas satis sublevare. (Metell.)

Tum enim magistratum non gerebat is qui ceperat, si patres auctores non erant facti. (Cic.)

(*d*) *Pluperfect.* Cesseram, si alienam a me plebem fuisse voltis, quae non fuit, invidiae; si vis suberat, armis; si periculum civium, rei publicae. (Cic.)

Vivere debuerant et vir meus et tua conjux, si nullum ausuri majus eramus opus. (Ov.)

643 2. *The indicative (of certain verbs) is used where the power, possibility, duty, convenience, &c. of doing certain acts is spoken of, rather than the occurrence of the acts themselves.*

(*a*) The Present and Future are used when the possible, obligatory, &c. action is spoken of as still possible.

(*b*) The Perfect is used of past time generally.

(*c*) The Imperfect is used of present time, or of a continuous state in past time, the action being regarded as no longer possible.

(*d*) The Pluperfect is used of an action no longer possible in past time.

(*a*) *Present.* Possum persequi multa oblectamenta rerum rusticarum, sed ea ipsa, quae dixi, sentio fuisse longiora. (Cic.)

Longum est ea dicere: sed hoc breve dicam. (Cic.)

*Future.* Nihil est quod verearis, ne sit hoc illi molestum, cui orbem terrarum circumire non erit longum mea causa. (Plin.)

(*b*) *Perfect.* Aut non suscipi bellum oportuit, aut geri pro dignitate populi Romani oportet. (Liv.)

Prohiberi melius fuit impedirique ne Cinna tot summos viros interficeret, quam ipsum aliquando poenas dare. (Cic.)

(*c*) *Imperfect.* Perturbationes animorum poteram morbos appellare; sed non conveniret ad omnia. (Cic.)

Itaque Plato eos ne ad rempublicam quidem accessuros putat nisi coactos: aequius autem erat id voluntate fieri. (Cic.)

(*d*) *Pluperfect.* Quanto melius fuerat, in hoc promissum patris non esse servatum. (Cic.)

Catilina erupit e senatu, triumphans gaudio, quem omnino vivum illinc exire non oportuerat. (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 263

644 2. Often the suppressed condition is '*if occasion arose*,' '*if a trial were made*,' and the like. This is most common

(*a*) in the case of **velim, vellem, malim, nolim**, &c., or of the perfect (with sense of present) tense of some verbs of mental action (*thinking, saying*, &c.). In English we use the auxiliaries '*can*,' '*could*,' '*should*,' '*would*,' '*may*,' '*might*.'

**Id velim mihi ignoscas, quod invita socru tua fecerim.** (Cic.)
**Jam mallem Cerberum metueres, quam ista tam inconsiderate diceres.** (Cic.)
**Quis dubitet, quin in virtute divitiae sint?** (Cic.)
**Hoc tantum bellum quis umquam arbitraretur uno anno confici posse?** (Cic.)
**Nec vero reprehenderim 'scripsere alii rem:' 'scripserunt' esse verius sentio.** (Cic.)
**Ubi (Sarmatæ) per turmas advenere, vix ulla acies obstiterit.** (Tac.)

or (*b*) with the adverbs **merito, facile, lubenter, citius**, and the like, with or without a negative. The perfect is also sometimes found, especially in first pers. sing., without such adverb or negative.

**Sed neque verbis aptiorem cito alium dixerim neque sententiis crebriorem.** (Cic.)
**Libenter omnibus omnis opes concesserim, ut mihi liceat vi nulla interpellante isto modo vivere.** (Cic.)
**Ciceronem cuicumque Graecorum fortiter opposuerim.** (Quint.)
**Macte virtute! Ego enim ipse cum eodem isto non invitus erraverim.** (Cic.)
**Sic ego istis censuerim novam istam orationem fugiendam.** (Cic.)

646 3. The subjunctive is used where the *subject is impliedly indefinite*, the verb being in the 2nd pers. singular (i.e. you = one).

(The condition understood is the reality of the subject.) N.B. The subject **tu** is rarely expressed.

**Quem neque gloria neque pericula excitant, nequiquam hortere.** (Sall.)
**Demptum tenet arbore pomum: Hesperidas donasse putes.** (Ov.)
**Injussu signa referunt, maestique, (crederes victos,) redeunt in castra.** (Liv.)
**Neminem totis mox castris quietum videres.** (Liv.)
**Putasses ejus luctus aliquem finem esse debere.** (Sen.)

Such a subjunctive may occur in a conditional or other subordinate clause; e.g.

**Mens quoque et animus, nisi tanquam lumini oleum instilles, exstinguuntur senectute.** (Cic.)
**Bonus tantummodo segnior fit, ubi neglegas, at malus improbior.** (Sall.)

*Continued on p.* 264

645 3. The indicative is found in some sentences similarly framed to those (on opposite page) with subjunctive.

(*a*) **Ducas volo hodie uxorem.** (Ter.)

**At taceas malo multo, quam tacere dicas.** (Plaut.)

**Malo mehercule id quod tu defendis his judicibus populoque Romano, quam id quod ego insimulo, probari.** (Cic.)

**Sunt ea quidem magna: quis negat? sed magnis excitantur praemiis, ac memoria hominum sempiterna.** (Cic.)

**Pro di immortales! Oppianicum quisquam his rebus cognitis circumventum esse dicet?** (Cic.)

**Satis superque me benignitas tua ditavit: haud paravero quod aut avarus ut Chremes terra premam, discinctus aut perdam nepos.** (Hor.)

(*b*) **Libenter tibi, Laeli, ut de eo disseras, equidem concessero.** (Cic.)

**Mediocribus et quis ignoscas vitiis teneor; fortassis et istinc largiter abstulerit longa aetas.** (Hor.)

**Nunc quid dicis? 'Cave ignoscas.' Haec nec hominis nec ad hominem vox est: qua qui apud te, C. Caesar, utitur, suam citius abiciet humanitatem quam extorquebit tuam.** (Cic.)

**Quam scit uterque, libens censebo, exerceat artem.** (Hor.)

647 (*c*) The indicative is (except for some collateral reason) used with a definite, or expressedly indefinite subject; especially the future and completed future of **dico, quaero,** &c. in introducing possible objections.

1. With an expressedly indefinite subject:

**Quaeret fortassis quispiam, displiceatne mihi legum praesidio capitis periculum propulsare. Mihi vero, judices, non displicet.** (Cic.)

**Dicet aliquis, 'quid igitur censes? vindicandum in eos qui hosti prodidere rempublicam?' Non manu, non vi,** &c. (Sall.)

**Tu igitur ipse de te? dixerit quispiam. Equidem invitus, sed injuriae dolor facit me praeter consuetudinem gloriosum.** (Cic.)

2. With a definite subject:

**Quaeres, quanti id aestimem. Si unquam licuerit vivere in otio, experieris.** (Pollio.)

**Ubi eos inveniemus, qui honores amicitiae non anteponant?** (A few lines after comes **Ubi enim istum invenias, qui honorem amici anteponat suo?** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 265

## (B) Conditional subjunctive.

648 Conditional subjunctives are used in subordinate sentences which qualify not positive or absolute assertions, but thoughts, actions in the abstract, qualities; i.e. they are used in sentences qualifying subjunctives, infinitives, gerundives, and future participles.

A conditional clause with **si** frequently qualifies or appears to qualify a principal sentence which has the indicative. These cases are referable to two classes. The first of these is (2) when the indicative verb in the principal clause is an auxiliary verb; e.g. **possum, licet, est, fuit**; and the conditional clause really qualifies not the auxiliary but the infinitive or gerundive, which is connected with it. The other class is (3) when the principal sentence does not state the proper hypothetical assertion to which the conditional clause strictly corresponds, but substitutes for it a statement of similar content but of a positive character.

*A conditional subjunctive expresses an action, whose non-occurrence is implied, but which is supposed to occur as the condition of another supposed action.*

650 1. Conditional sentence with protasis and apodosis in subjunctive.

(*a*) The protasis (or conditional clause) may be without relative or connective adverb (the verb being generally put first in the clause).

**Roges me, qualem naturam deorum esse ducam, nihil fortasse respondeam; quaeras, putemne talem esse, qualis modo a te sit exposita, nihil dicam mihi videri minus.** (Cic.)

**Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes.** (Verg.)

**Dedisses huic animo par corpus, fecisset quod optabat.** (Plin.)

In the comic poets such a protasis has sometimes the preposition **absque** with its case, and **esset** or **foret.**

**Nam absque te esset, hodie numquam ad solem occasum viverem.** (Plaut.)

(*b*) The protasis may be introduced by a relative adjective (**qui** = **siquis**).

**Haec et innumerabilia ex eodem genere qui videat, nonne cogatur confiteri deos esse?** (Cic.)

**Qui videret equum Trojanum introductum, urbem captam diceret.** (Cic.)

(*c*) Ordinary conditional sentences have the protasis introduced by **si.** Instances are given in § 640.

Conditional clauses, with **si, si maxume** (followed by **tamen**), **tametsi, etiamsi**, are often used to *concede*, for argument's sake, a supposition contrary to the fact.

**Si haec non gesta audiretis, sed picta videretis, tamen appareret uter esset insidiator.** (Cic.)

**Etiamsi mors oppetenda esset, domi atque in patria mallem quam in externis atque alienis locis.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 266

## Indicative and Imperative in Conditional clause.

649 Conditional clauses with the verb in the indicative usually qualify principal clauses which contain an indicative or imperative.

The indicative is however found in the conditional clause, when the principal clause has the subjunctive, but this happens only where either the principal clause, properly correspondent, has been suppressed; or where the subjunctive form is due not to its conditional function, but to a wholly independent reason, e.g. to its denoting a wish or command, &c.

*In the indicative or imperative mood, a condition is put simply without its being implied that it does, or does not, occur.*

651 1. Conditional sentence with protasis and apodosis in indicative or imperative.

(*a*) The protasis may be without relative or connective adverb, in indicative; especially the present and completed future.

**Quicquid dicunt laudo: id rursum si negant, laudo id quoque. Negat quis; nego: ait, aio.** (Ter.)

**Clarissimo viro decrevit imperium, privato tamen: in quo maximum nobis onus imposuit. Adsensus ero; ambitionem induxero in curiam: negaro; videbor suffragio meo honorem homini amicissimo denegavisse.** (Cic.) (Juv.)

**Rides; majore cachinno concutitur: flet, si lacrymas conspexit amici.**

**Veneris in patriam mecum, ibi tibi gratiam referam.** (Sen. Rhet.)

Or the protasis may be in imperative.

**Attendite: jam intellegetis.** (Cic.)

**Tolle hanc opinionem: luctum sustuleris.** (Cic.)

(*b*) The protasis may be introduced by a relative adjective.

**Nihil est enim virtute amabilius, quam qui adeptus erit, ubicunque erit gentium, a nobis diligetur.** (Cic.)

**Haec et quae sunt ejus generis facile videbit, qui volet laudare.** (Cic.)

(*c*) Ordinary conditional sentences have the protasis introduced by **si**. Instances are given in § 641.

With **si, si maxume** (followed by **tamen, at**), **etsi, tametsi, etiamsi**, of a simple supposition, especially where the supposition is known to be the fact.

**In Deciis Magiis si moderatio illa, quae in nostris solet esse consulibus, non fuit, at fuit pompa, fuit species.** (Cic.)

**Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt, quia honestum est, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident.** (Cic.)

**Quod crebro quis videt, non miratur, etiamsi cur fiat nescit.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 267

(*d*) The subjunctive appears to be rarely used in stating conflicting possibilities (as with **sive** or **sin**), except in reported narrative or dependent sentence; probably because the writer declines to mark as imaginary any of the possibilities among which he declines to decide.

**Et tamen ego a philosopho, si adferat eloquentiam, non asperner, si non habeat, non admodum flagitem.** (Cic.)

652 2. Conditional sentence with subjunctive in protasis, but with some part of infinite verb, i.e. infinitive, future participle, or gerundive, in the apodosis.

The verb in the apodosis on which the infinitive depends, or the auxiliary verb with the gerundive or participle, is usually put in the indicative (except for some collateral reason), and conveys a positive expression of duty, possibility, right, &c. (Cf. §§ 628, 643.)

(*a*) A condition qualifying an infinitive.

**Omnibus eum contumeliis onerasti, quem patris loco, si ulla in te pietas esset, colere debebas**[1]. (Cic.)

**Deleri totus exercitus potuit**[1], **si fugientes persecuti victores essent.** (Liv.)

**Neque tu hoc dicere audebis, nec, si cupias, licebit.** (Cic.)

But the verb on which the infinitive depends or the auxiliary verb (with genitive, &c.) is sometimes put in the subjunctive either (1) as hypothetical,

**Haec si diceret, tamen ignosci non oporteret.** (Cic.)

or (2) often for a collateral reason: this is especially the case with **potuerit**, rarely **potuisset**. (Cf. §§ 629, 630.)

**Ventum quidem erat eo, ut, si hostem similem antiquis Macedonum regibus habuisset consul, magna clades accipi potuerit.** (Liv.)

**Philippus, si satis diei superesset, non dubius quin Athamanes quoque exui castris potuissent, sub tumulo consedit.** (Liv.)

(*b*) A condition qualifying the future participle, or the gerundive.

**Illi ipsi aratores, qui remanserant, relicturi agros omnis erant, nisi ad eos Metellus Roma litteras misisset.** (Cic.)

**Quid, si hostes urbem veniant, facturi estis?** (Liv.)

**Hos nisi manumisisset, tormentis etiam dedendi fuerunt.** (Cic.)

**Sic flendus Peleus, si moreretur, erat.** (Ov.)

The auxiliary verb in the apodosis may be in the subjunctive for a collateral reason; e.g. if the apodosis is a dependent question, &c. (Cf. §§ 629, 630.)

**Nec dubium erat, quin, si tam pauci simul obire omnia (loca) possent, terga daturi hostes fuerint.** (Liv.)

**Quae res sua sponte tam scelerata et nefaria est, ut, etiamsi lex non esset, magno opere vitanda fuerit.** (Cic.)

[1] This corresponds to the origin of the English idiom, *should*, *could*, *might*, &c.

*Continued on p.* 268

(*d*) When several conflicting possibilities are stated, either the first is expressed by **si**, and the second by **si, sin, si vero,** &c. positively, by **si non, sin minus** negatively.

**Si feceris id quod ostendis, magnam habebo gratiam; si non feceris, ignoscam.** (Cic.)

**Aut si es dura, nega: sin es non dura, venito.** (Prop.)

**Luxuria cum omni aetati turpis, tum senectuti foedissima est: sin autem etiam libidinum intemperantia accessit, duplex malum est.** (Cic.)

**Sive enim ad sapientiam perveniri potest, non paranda nobis solum ea, sed fruenda etiam est: sive hoc difficile est, tamen nullus est modus investigandi veri, nisi inveneris.** (Cic.)

653 (*e*) An exception (in the indicative) is often appended by way of afterthought: **nisi, nisi forte, nisi vero,** *ironical*, **nisi tamen.** Sometimes **nisi** = *only that, only, but, however.*

**Nemo fere saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit.** (Cic.)

**Ridiculum caput, quasi necesse sit, si huic non dat, te illam uxorem ducere: nisi vides, nisi senis amicos oras, ambis.** (Ter.)

**De re non possum judicare, nisi illud mihi persuadeo, te talem virum nihil temere fecisse.** (Cic.)

**Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus.** (Caes.)

655 2. Indicative conditional clause with apodosis in imperative.

The conditional clause may have, or may not have, **si** or **nisi.**

**Quamobrem si me amas tantum, quantum profecto amas, si dormis, expergiscere; si stas, ingredere; si ingrederis, curre; si curris, advola.** (Cic.)

**Vive, vale: siquid novisti rectius istis, candidus imperti; si nil, his utere mecum.** (Hor.)

**Etiamsi alii primam frontem tenebunt, te sors inter triarios posuerit, inde voce, adhortatione, exemplo, animo milita.** (Sen.)

**Verum parcite dignitati Lentuli, si ipse famae suae pepercit: ignoscite Cethegi adolescentiae, nisi iterum patriae bellum fecit.** (Sall.)

**Arguet, arguito: quicquid probat illa, probato; quod dicet, dicas; quod negat illa, neges. Riserit, adride; si flebit, flere memento.** (Ov.)

**Rure erit et dicet venias—amor odit inertes—si rota defuerit, tu pede carpe viam.** (Ov.)

*Continued on p.* 269

654 3. Conditional sentence with subjunctive in protasis but with suppression or contraction of the proper hypothetical apodosis.

(a) An allied fact is sometimes substituted for the proper hypothetical statement. This allied fact is usually either

(1. Present) a general truth (instead of a particular occurrence); or

(2. Future) an unconditional prophecy; or

(3. Perfect with **paene**, **prope**, or Imperfect) an incomplete action or tendency (instead of the completed result); or

(4. Pluperfect) a wilful exaggeration.

1. **Multa me dehortantur a vobis, Quirites, ni studium reipublicae superet.** (Sall.)

**Memini numeros, si verba tenerem.** (Verg.)

2. **At si me jubeas domitos Jovis igne Gigantas dicere, conantem debilitabit onus.** (Ov.)

**Si fractus illabatur orbis, impavidum ferient ruinae.** (Hor.)

3. **Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset.** (Liv.)

**Quin labebar longius, nisi me retinuissem.** (Cic.)

**Si per L. Metellum licitum esset, matres illorum miserorum sororesque veniebant.** (Cic.)

4. **Praeclare viceramus, nisi spoliatum, inermem, fugientem Lepidus recepisset Antonium.** (Cic.)

**Me truncus illapsus cerebro sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum dextra levasset.** (Hor.)

656 (b) An epithet, &c. forms the apodosis, instead of a statement of the epithet's being applicable.

**Hunc exitum habuit vir, nisi in libera civitate natus esset, memorabilis.** (Liv.)

**Vidimus et merulas poni, suavis res, si non causas narraret earum et naturas dominus.** (Hor.)

658 (c) In conversational questions the verb of the apodosis is omitted, perhaps not even distinctly conceived.

**Quid, si hunc comprehendi jusserim? TY. Sapias magis.** (Plaut.)

660 (d) In sentences of comparison; with **quasi**, **velut si**, **ac si**, **tamquam si**, **sicuti**, **ceu**, &c., the verb of the apodosis (being an hypothetical repetition of the verb of the principal sentence) is often omitted. With **tamquam** and **velut** the **si** also is sometimes omitted.

**Verum homines corrupti superbia ita aetatem agunt, quasi vostros honores contemnant; ita hos petunt, quasi honeste vixerint.** (Sall.)

**At accusat C. Cornelii filius, et id aeque valere debet, ac si pater indicaret.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 270

657 3. With apparent apodosis in subjunctive.

(*a*) Sometimes it is not the particular action expressed—this may be in indicative or subjunctive according to circumstances—but the mention of the action, which is qualified by the conditional clause expressed.

**Quam vellem Romae esses, si forte non es.** (Cic.)
**Tua nos virtus ita conciliavit tibi, ut, te salvo atque incolumi amico, ne deos quidem iratos, si fas est dici, timeremus.** (Liv.)
**Tu tamen velim orationem legas, nisi forte jam legisti.** (Cic.)

(*b*) Or the apodosis may express a wish or command or consequence, or modest assertion, &c. and on that account have its verb in the subjunctive, without the mood of the protasis being affected.

**Etenim si nox non adimit vitam beatam, cur dies nocti similis adimat?** (Cic.)
**Peream male, si non optimum erat.** (Hor.)
**Fratrem mecum et te si habebo, per me isti pedibus trahantur.** (Cic.)
**Si piguit portas ultra prōcedere, at illuc jussisses lectum lentius ire meum.** (Propert.)
**Sin erit ille gemitus elamentabilis, si inbecillus, si abjectus, si flebilis, ei qui se dederit, vix eum virum dixerim.** (Cic.)

(*c*) Or the apodosis may contain an hypothetical statement contingent, not on the condition expressed, but on another which is not formally expressed.

**Si unquam tibi visus sum in republica fortis, certe me in illa causa admiratus esses** (sc. si affuisses). (Cic.)
**Quod si in hoc mundo fieri sine deo non potest, ne in sphaera quidem eosdem motus Archimedes sine divino ingenio** (=nisi divinum ingenium haberet) **potuisset imitari.** (Cic.)

659 4. In conversational questions the verb of the apodosis is sometimes omitted.

**Quid, si hic manebo potius ad meridiem?** (Plaut.)

---

661 The indicative is used in sentences of comparison where the occurrence adduced in comparison is a fact; chiefly with **ac, tamquam.**

**Longe alia nobis ac tu scripseras narrantur.** (Cic.)
**Nam et vitast eadem et animus te erga idem ac fuit.** (Ter.)
**Jusserunt simulacrum Jovis facere majus et in excelso conlocare et contra, atque antea fuerat, ad orientem convertere.** (Cic.)
**Fuit olim, quasi nunc ego sum, senex: ei filiae duae erant, quasi nunc meae sunt: eae erant duobus nuptae fratribus, quasi nunc meae sunt vobis,** &c. (Plaut.)

*Continued on p.* 271

**Samnitium exercitus, velut haud ulla mora pugnae futura esset, aciem instruit.** (Liv.)

**Hic vero ingentem pugnam, ceu cetera nusquam bella forent, nulli tota morerentur in urbe, cernimus.** (Verg.)

**Quasi vero mihi difficile sit quam vis multos nominatim proferre.** (Cic.)

662 (e) In wishes.

**Si nunc se nobis ille aureus arbore ramus ostendat nemore in tanto.** (Verg.)

**Quanquam o si solitae quicquam virtutis adesset!** (Verg.)

## CHAPTER XIX.

### USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS DESIRE, with contrasted use of indicative and imperative.

664 (C) Optative and jussive subjunctive.

This use, with the hypothetical subjunctive, exhausts the cases in which the subjunctive stands in a simple sentence, or in an independent principal clause of a compound sentence.

In all these cases, except in questions (§ 674), if the subjunctive verb requires a negative, **ne** is used instead of **non**. **Cave** and **nolim, nollem** are also sometimes used as equivalent to **ne**.

The optative or jussive subjunctive expresses an action supposed and either wished, or deprecated, or commanded, or forbidden.

666 1. Wish.

(*a*) Without connective adverb; (in negative sentences with **ne**).

**Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati.** (Cic.)

**Legati pro contione: Quod bonum felix faustumque sit vobis reique publicae, redite in patriam.** (Liv.)

**Di facerent sine patre forem.** (Ov.)

**Ac venerata Ceres, ita culmo surgeret alto, explicuit vino contractae seria frontis.** (Hor.)

**Phoebe, gravis Trojae semper miserate labores, hac Trojana tenus fuerit Fortuna secuta.** (Verg.)

**Ne sim salvus, si aliter scribo ac sentio.** (Cic.)

So in certain apologetic phrases; (present and perfect).

**Obsecro vos, putate me ex media contione unum civem succlamare: "Bona venia vestra liceat ex his rogationibus legere, quas salubres nobis censemus esse, antiquare alias."** (Liv.)

**Tu, et meo judicio et omnium, vix ullam ceteris oratoribus, pace horum dixerim, laudem reliquisti.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p. 272*

663 If the verb of the subordinate sentence is the same (whether requiring the same or a different mood) as that of the principal sentence, it is usually omitted, and the adverb thus appears to qualify a word only.

**De Fabiano Severus Cassius, antequam ab illo reus ageretur, dixerat: 'quasi dissertus es, quasi formosus es, quasi dives es; unum tantum es non quasi, vappa.'** (Sen. Rhet.)

**M. Porcium, sicut omni vita, tum prensantem premebat nobilitas.** (Liv.)

**Cn. Plancii salutem non secus ac meam tueri debeo.** (Cic.)

## Indicative and Imperative.

665 The uses of the indicative mood in this chapter have not all a close connexion with one another. They have been selected as contrasting, or at least being in some way comparable, with the quoted usages of the subjunctive.

1. A similar meaning to that of this class of subjunctive may be expressed by the indicative.

(*a*) A direct expression of a wish is made by the use of the verbs **volo, cupio,** &c.

**Te ipsum, Naevi, volo audire; volo inauditum facinus ipsius, qui id commisit, voce convinci.** (Cic.)

**Neque ficto in pejus vultu proponi cereus usquam, nec prave factis decorari versibus opto.** (Hor.)

(*b*) The second person of the future indicative, by telling a person what he will do, may imply that he shall do it.

**Interea dedite profanos nos: dedetis deinde et istos sacrosanctos, quum primum magistratu abierint.** (Liv.)

**Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis, meque disjuvantibus ante brumam expectabis.** (Cic.)

**Cum te audirem, accidebat, ut moleste ferrem tantum ingenium—bona venia me audies—in tam ineptas sententias incidisse.** (Cic.)

667 (*c*) The use of all persons of **videro** (see § 609, 5) to put off the consideration of a question is noticeable.

**Quae fuerit causa, mox videro; interea hoc tenebo.** (Cic.)

**Sed de te tu videris: ego de me ipso profitebor.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 273

(*b*) With **utinam**, sometimes with **modo**; or (in poetry) **ut**. In negative sentences usually with **ne**. In execrations **qui** (adv.) is used by the comic poets.

**Utinam ipse Varro incumbat in causam.** (Cic.)
**Utinam populus Romanus unam cervicem haberet.** (Calig. ap. Suet.)
**Juppiter omnipotens, utinam ne tempore primo Gnosia Cecropiae tetigissent litora puppes.** (Catull.)
**O pater et rex Juppiter, ut pereat positum robigine telum, neu quisquam noceat cupido mihi pacis!** (Hor.)
**Qui illum di omnes perduint, qui primus commentust contionem habere.** (Plaut.)

A wish is sometimes expressed by a conditional sentence, with the apodosis omitted; see § 662.

668 2. Simple command. (In prohibitions **ne**, **nemo**, **nihil**, rarely **non**: sometimes (for **et ne**, **vel ne**) **neve**, **neu**; **nec**.)

(*a*) In present and, in prohibitions, perfect tenses.

The use of the subjunctive of the second person, present tense, is not frequent, excepting when the subject is indefinite (§ 646).

**Mihi quidem in vita servanda videtur illa lex, quae in Graecorum conviviis obtinetur: 'aut bibat,' inquit, 'aut abeat.'** (Cic.)
**Ergo detur aliquid aetati: sit adulescentia liberior: non omnia voluptatibus denegentur: non semper superet vera illa et derecta ratio.** (Cic.) Here **non** belongs to **omnia, semper.**
**Amemus patriam, pareamus senatui, consulamus bonis, praesentis fructus neglegamus, posteritatis gloriae serviamus; speremus quae volumus, sed quod acciderit feramus.** (Cic.)
**Isto bono utare, dum adsit: cum absit, ne requiras.** (Cic.)
**Quid bellicosus Cantaber, Hirpine Quinti, cogitet, remittas quaerere, nec trepides in usum poscentis aevi pauca.** (Hor.)
**Ne transieris Iberum; ne quid rei tibi sit cum Saguntinis; nusquam te vestigio moveris.** (Liv.)
**Nihil ignoveris; nihil omnino gratiae concesseris; misericordia commotus ne sis; in sententia permaneto.** (Cic.)

670 (*b*) In imperfect and pluperfect tenses, of advice applicable to circumstances no longer existing.

**Non ego illi argentum redderem? ME. Non redderes, neque de illo quicquam neque emeres neque venderes, nec, qui deterior esset, faceres copiam.** (Plaut.) Here **non** is used in echo of the question.
**Civem Romanum in crucem egisti. Asservasses hominem, clausum habuisses, dum Panhormo Raecius veniret: cognosceret hominem, aliquid de summo supplicio remitteres; si ignoraret, tum, &c.** (Cic.)
**Quid facere debuisti? si ut plerique faciunt, frumentum ne emisses, sumpsisses id nummorum.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 274

**Nunc morere: ast de me divom pater atque hominum rex viderit.** (Verg.)

**Ipsam iracundiam fortitudinis quasi cotem esse dicebant: recte secusne, alias viderimus.** (Cic.)

**'Vos,' inquit (Lucretia), 'videritis quid illi debeatur: ego me, etsi peccato absolvo, supplicio non libero.'** (Liv.)

**Quae quam sit facilis, illi viderint, qui ejus artis arrogantia, quasi difficillima sit, ita subnixi ambulant, deinde etiam tu ipse videris.** (Cic.)

So also the simple future.

**Sed de hoc videbimus: exeamus modo.** (Cic.)

**De nomine tu videbis cum Cispio.** (Cic.)

669 2. The imperative mood is used in commands and entreaties, generally from the nature of its meaning in the second person.

The third person is only found in the future tense, and its use almost confined to legal or quasi-legal phraseology.

In prohibitions, with **ne**, the present is used only in the poets: the future only in legal or antique phraseology. A periphrasis by means of **noli** or **cave** is more common.

(*a*) *Present.* **Patres conscripti, subvenite mihi misero, ite obviam injuriae, nolite pati regnum Numidiae tabescere.** (Sall.)

**Tibi habe sane istam laudationem Mamertinorum.** (Cic.)

**Tu ne cede malis, sed contra audentior ito.** (Verg.)

**Quid tuta times? accingere et omnem pelle moram.** (Ov.)

**Ne lacruma atque istuc, quidquid est, fac me ut sciam: ne retice, ne verere, crede, inquam, mihi.** (Ter.)

**DE. Bene ambulato. LY. Bene vale. DE. Bene sit tibi.** (Plaut.)

(*b*) *Future.* **Quum valetudini tuae diligentissime consulueris, tum, mi Tiro, consulito navigationi.** (Cic.)

**Si te forte meae gravis uret sarcina chartae, abicito potius, quam quo perferre juberis, clitellas ferus impingas.** (Hor.)

**Primus humum fodito, primus devecta cremato sarmenta, et vallos primus sub tecta referto: postremus metito.** (Verg.)

**Hoc pinguem et placitam paci nutritor olivam.** (Verg.)

**Tu quidem macte virtute diligentiaque esto.** (Liv.)

**Heres Titius esto cernitoque in centum diebus proxumis, quibus scies poterisque. Quod ni ita creveris, exheres esto.** (*In a will.* Gai. 2. 165.)

**Borea flante ne arato, frugem ne serito, semen ne jacito.** (Plin.)

*Continued on p. 275*

672 3. In quasi-dependence on another verb.

Primary tenses are used when the principal verb is primary, and secondary, when that is secondary.

**Abi, nuntia publice patribus, urbem Romanam muniant.** (Liv.)
**Jugurtha oppidanos hortatur, moenia defendant.** (Sall.)
**Hesterna tibi nocte dixeramus cenares hodie, Procille, mecum.** (Mart.)
**Omnia fecerit oportet, quae interdicta et denuntiata sunt, priusquam aliquid postulet.** (Cic.)
**Huic vitae tot tantisque gaudiis refertae fortuna ipsa cedat necesse est.** (Cic.)
**Quin etiam Graecis verbis licebit utare, cum voles, si te Latina forte deficient.** (Cic.)
**Quam mallem vinctos mihi traderet.** (Liv.)
**Nolo me in tempore hoc videat senex.** (Ter.)
**Cave putes quicquam homines magis unquam esse miratos.** (See § 664.) (Cic.)

674 4. In interrogative sentences.

Usually a negative answer is expected. In a negative question **non** is used. (These are sometimes called dubitative questions.)

(*a*) In principal sentences.

**Quid faciat? pugnet? vincetur femina pugnans: clamet? at in dextra qui vetet ensis erat.** (Ov.)
**Haec cum viderem, quid agerem, judices? Contenderem contra tribunum plebis privatus armis? Forsitan non nemo dixerit; 'Restitisses, repugnasses, mortem pugnans oppetisses.'** (Cic.)
**Apud exercitum mihi fueris tot annos; forum non attigeris; afueris tam diu; et, cum longo intervallo veneris, cum his, qui in foro habitarint, de dignitate contendas?** (Cic.)
**An mihi cantando victus non redderet ille caprum?** (Verg.)

(*b*) So also in a dependent sentence.

**Non satis Bruto vel tribunis militum constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent.** (Caes.)
**Ubi consistamus, non habemus, praeter Sex. Pompeium.** (D. Brut.)
**Extemplo agitabatur quemadmodum ultro inferendo bello averterent ab Italia hostem.** (Liv.)
**De pueris quid agam, non habeo.** (Cic.)

(*c*) The subjunctive with **quidni**, *why not?* has a similar meaning, and the whole expression is tantamount to a confident affirmative. '*How can I help, &c.*'? '*of course I, &c.*'

**Haben' hominem, amabo? PH. Quid ni habeam?** (Ter.)
**Cum Maximus Tarentum recepisset, rogavit eum Salinator, ut meminisset opera sua se Tarentum recepisse; 'quidni,' inquit, 'meminerim? numquam enim recepissem, nisi tu perdidisses.'** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 276

671 3. In Plautus and Terence **faxo** (§ 293) is frequently used with an indicative future logically, not grammatically, dependent.

**Helleborum potabis faxo aliquos viginti dies.** (Plaut.)
**Ego faxo et operam et vinum perdiderit simul.** (Plaut.)

673 The indicative or imperative is used in combination with some other similar expressions thrown in parenthetically. (Compare § 751.)

**Certumst, antiqua recolam et servibo mihi.** (Plaut.)
**Quaeso, aequo animo patitor.** (Plaut.)
**Credo, impetrabo ut aliquot saltem nuptiis prodat dies: interea fiet aliquid, spero.** (Ter.)
**Credo, aut illos mortis timor terret, aut hos religionis.** (Cic.)

675 4. In the indicative mood a question relates only to a fact. The following classes of questions may here be noted:

(*a*) Relating to the speaker's present or prospective action; in present tense.

**Sed quid ea commemoro, quae tum, quum agebantur, in caelum laudibus efferebantur?** (Cic.)
**Etsi quid mi auctor es? Advolone an maneo? Equidem et in libris haereo, et illum hic excipere nolo.** (Cic.)

(*b*) Expressing surprise or indignation; especially, in comic poets, with **satin'** (ironical), **etiam.**

**An, dum bestiae loquantur, exspectamus, hominum consentiente auctoritate contenti non sumus?** (Cic.)
**Sed ego cesso ad Thaidem hanc deducere?** (Ter.)
**Verresne habebit domi suae candelabrum Jovis?** (Cic.)
**Satin' abiit, neque quod dixi flocci existumat?** (Plaut.)
**Etiam rides? Itan' lepidum tibi visumst, scelus, nos inridere?** (Ter.)

(*c*) Implying an exhortation; especially with **etiam, quin** (=**qui ne**, *how not?*); e.g. **etiam taces?** *will you be silent?* **non taces?** *wont you be silent?* **quin urges?** *why not press?* The present tense is used.

**Quid edemus nosmet postea? LE. Etiam tu taces? Tibi egon' rationem reddam?** (Plaut.)
**Credo, non credet pater. AC. Non taces, stultissume? Credet hercle.** (Plaut.)
**Quin, si vigor juventae inest, conscendimus equos, invisimusque praesentes nostrarum ingenia?** (Liv.)

[Hence the use of **quin** with imperatives, and (in a statement) with indicative.

**Quin sic attendite, judices.** (Cic.)
**Ego vero jam te nec hortor nec rogo ut domum redeas; quin hinc ipse evolare cupio.** (Cic.)]

*Continued on p. 277*

675 5. Rhetorical commands, i.e. an action supposed and assumed, on, or notwithstanding, which assumption another statement is made. (Concessive sentences. Compare § 650.)

In negative sentences the particle is **ne**, not **non**.

(*a*) Frequently with particles **sane, fortasse.**

**Haec si vobis non probamus, sint falsa sane: invidiosa certe non sunt.** (Cic.)

**Ne sint in senectute vires: ne postulantur quidem vires a senectute.** (Cic.)

**'Malus civis, improbus consul, seditiosus homo Cn. Carbo fuit.' Fuerit aliis: tibi quando esse coepit?** (Cic.)

**Nemo is, inquies, unquam fuit. Ne fuerit: ego enim quid desiderem, non quid viderim, disputo.** (Cic.)

**Verum anceps pugnae fuerat fortuna. Fuisset: quem metui moritura? Faces in castra tulissem.** (Verg.)

(*b*) With relative clause[1] like **quam vis, quam volet**, &c.

**Nihil agis, dolor: quam vis sis molestus, nunquam te esse confitebor malum.** (Cic.)

**Quam volent, faceti dicaces diserti sint, alia fori vis est, alia triclinii.** (Cic.)

**Gaius vero Gracchus multis dixit sibi in somnis quaesturam petenti Tiberium fratrem visum esse dicere, Quam vellet cunctaretur, tamen eodem sibi leto, quo ipse interisset, esse pereundum.** (Cic.)

(*c*) With **modo.**

**Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria.** (Cic.)

**Ad vos nunc refero, quem sequar; modo ne quis illud tam ineruditum absurdumque respondeat: 'quem lubet, modo aliquem.'** (Cic.)

## (D) Final subjunctive.

673 The subjunctive of purpose is the same as the subjunctive of command, only that it is dependent on relative adjectives and adverbs.

The sentences classed under this head, like those classed under (C), are distinguished by the use, if a negative is required, of **ne**, not **non**.

The final subjunctive expresses an action stated, as a purpose to be carried into effect.

Present, and (rarely) perfect, tense in sentences dependent on primary tenses. Imperfect, and (rarely) pluperfect, in sentences dependent on secondary tenses.

The perfect and pluperfect are used with relation to the results of past actions: i.e. as completed futures subjunctive.

[1] For the use of the moods with **quamquam**, which is not of itself a relative clause, see § 711 (*b*).

*Continued on p.* 278

677 5. The indicative or imperative makes a concession positively and expressly; the statement however need not be a fact, but may be made ironically or for argument's sake.

(*a*) With particles **sane, quidem, omnino, fortasse.**

**Est istuc quidem honestum, verum hoc expedit.** (Cic.)
**Finge justum te intulisse bellum; cum feminis ergo agere debueras.** (Curt.)

(*b*) In the statement of an opponent's objection: frequently introduced by **at, at enim, at vero, at fortasse.** (The reply, partly concessive, frequently has **et quidem, quidem,** *true but, aye but.*)

**At enim eadem Stoici praecipua dicunt, quae bona isti. Dicunt illi quidem, sed iis vitam beatam compleri negant.** (Cic.)
**Aliud esse censet gaudere, aliud non dolere. Et quidem, inquit, vehementer errat.** (Cic.)

(*c*) The indicatives, **licet, licebit,** often introduce a concession (the verb dependent being in subjunctive by § 672).

**Quamvis licet insectemur istos, metuo ne soli philosophi sint.** (Cic.)

(*d*) In Lucretius and post-Ciceronian writers (rarely in Livy) **quamvis** is found with indicative.

**Erat inter eos dignitate regia, quamvis carebat nomine.** (Nep.)
**Quamvis intercidit alter, pro se proque Remo, qui mihi restat, erit.** (Ov.)

[In some sentences **quamvis** clearly qualifies the adjective only, e.g.
**Nec auctor quamvis audaci facinori deerat.** (Liv.)
**Quod commodum est, exspectate facinus, quam voltis improbum; vincam tamen exspectationem omnium.** (Cic.)]

(*e*) The imperative is used with **modo** in concessions.

**Quem quidem ego actutum, modo vos absistite, cogam fateri.** (Ov.)

## Indicative, especially in comparative sentences, and with dum.

679 Some adjectival sentences with the indicative are given merely to contrast with final adjectival sentences.

The indicative expresses a fact or simple definition, &c. *without any signification of purpose.*

[Such a signification of purpose may be conveyed by the future participle with the indicative (or any other) mood of **sum.** (See 612.)]

*Continued on p.* 279

680 1. With relative adjective (**qui**=**ut is**, *who is to*, *was to*). Such sentences are not commonly negative: in provisoes the negative is **ne.**

**Habeo quem fugiam: quem sequar non habeo.** (Quint.)
**Nisi pro amicitia qui hoc Antonio diceret.** (Cic.)
**Homini natura rationem dedit, qua regerentur animi appetitus.** (Cic.)
**Scribebat Aelius orationes, quas alii dicerent.** (Cic.)
**Par pro pari referto, quod eam mordeat.** (Ter.)
**Plerique rem idoneam, de qua quaeratur, et homines dignos, quibuscum disseratur, putant.** (Cic.)
**In eo vidisti multum, quod praefinisti quo ne pluris emerem.** (Cic.)

682 2. With a connective adverb:

**ut, uti**, *that*, *in order that*, **quo** (usually with a comparative);
in negative sentences, **ut ne, ne**, and
after expressions of hindrance, opposition, &c. **quominus** and **quin**[1], the latter being used when the principal sentence also is negative or quasi-negative.

(*a*) General usage.

**Esse oportet, ut vivas; non vivere, ut edas.** (Cornif.)
**Utroque tempore ita me gessi, ne tibi pudori, ne regno tuo, ne genti Macedonum essem.** (Liv.)
**Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est, ut metu contineatur audacia: verum tamen hoc ita est utile, ut ne plane inludamur ab accusatoribus.** (Cic.)
**Tantum vide ne hoc tempore isti obesse aliquid possit.** (Cic.)
**Adnitar, ne frustra vos hanc spem de me conceperitis.** (Liv.)
**Scriptum erat, ut ad ludos omnia pararet neve committeret ut frustra ipse properasset.** (Cic.)
**Obducuntur libro aut cortice trunci, quo sint a frigoribus et caloribus tutiores.** (Cic.)
**Caesar cognovit per Afranium stare, quo minus proelio dimicaretur.** (Caes.)
**Non recusabo, quominus omnes mea scripta legant.** (Cic.)
**Nil verbi, pereas quin fortiter, addam.** (Hor.)
**Vix milites temperavere animis, quin extemplo impetum facerent.** (Liv.)

(*b*) The subordinate clause is often in place of object or subject to the principal verb.

**Verres rogat et orat Dolabellam, ut ad Neronem proficiscatur.** (Cic.)
**Decrevit senatus, ut L. Opimius videret, nequid respublica detrimenti caperet.** (Cic.)
**Ne quid ferretur ad populum patres tenuere: plebes vicit ut quintum eosdem tribunos crearent.** (Liv.)
**Justitiae primum munus est, ut ne cui quis noceat, nisi lacessitus injuria.** (Cic.)
**Proximum est, ut doceam deorum providentia mundum administrari.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 280

**Misi quendam pro amicitia: qui hoc Antonio dixit.**
**Homini natura rationem dedit; qua reguntur animi appetitus.**
**Scribebat Aelius orationes, quas alii dicebant.**
**Unum id bonum est, quo melior animus efficietur.** (Sen.)
**Expressae sunt ex unius cujusque damno, dolore, incommodo, calamitate, injuria publicae a praetore formulae, ad quas privata lis adcommodatur.** (Cic.)
**Liciti sunt usque adeo, quoad se efficere posse arbitrabantur: supra adjecit Aeschrio.** (Cic.)

---

[1] *Note to* § 682.

681 **Quin**, like **ut**, is also used in consecutive (§§ 704, 706) and dependent interrogative (§ 754) sentences. The following is a summary of the general usage of certain verbs:

Verbs of *forbidding*, *hindering*, *opposing*, with or without a negative or its equivalent, may be followed by **ne** or **quominus**, or an infinitive (with or without an accus.);

verbs of *opposing*, *refraining*, *neglecting*, *doubting*, **abest**, &c. may, if negative or quasi-negative, be followed by **quin**;

**non dubito**, &c. also by an acc. and infinitive;

**dubito** is followed by a dependent interrogative **an**, **an non**. (Madvig.)

---

683 Comparative sentences may here be noticed: they are introduced by correlative adjectives or adverbs; e.g. **tantus...quantus**, **tam ...quam**, **sic...ut**; sometimes the demonstrative is omitted; sometimes the verb of the clause. (Other comparative sentences with **ut** in § 715.)

1. With adjective or adverb in positive or superlative degree.

**Tanta est apud eos, quanta maxima potest esse, morum studiorumque distantia.** (Cic.)
**Locorum nuda nomina et quanta dabitur brevitate ponentur.** (Plin.)
**Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat.** (Sall.)
**Verba quam potes ambiguis callidus abde notis.** (Ov.)
**Tenuit locum tam diu, quam ferre potuit laborem.** (Cic.)
**Praeda inde majore, quam quanta belli fama fuerat, revecta, ludos fecit.** (Liv.)
**Grata ea res, ut quae maxime senatui unquam fuit.** (Liv.)

2. With adjective or adverb in comparative degree, **eo...quod**, **eo ...quo**, *in proportion...as;* **quam**, *than.* (For **priusquam**, see § 699.)

**Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur.** (Caes.)
**Quo quisque est sollertior et ingeniosior, hoc docet iracundius et laboriosius.** (Cic.)
**Quo minus ingenio possum, subsidium mihi diligentiam comparavi.** (Cic.)
**Nec nunc quidem viris desidero adulescentis; non plus quam adulescens tauri aut elephanti desiderabam.** (Cic.)
**Antonio, quam est, volo pejus esse.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 281

684 (*c*) In sentences restrictive of a preceding statement.

**ita...ut, cum eo ut,** *with the precaution that...must, provided that;* **ita ne, ita ut ne.** Compare § 714.

**Accepimus (Caesaris) condiciones sed ita ut removeat praesidia ex iis locis quae occupavit.** (Cic.)

**Atque ita mentitur, sic veris falsa remiscet, primo ne medium, medio ne discrepet imum.** (Hor.)

**Lanuvinis civitas data sacraque sua reddita cum eo ut aedes lucusque Sospitae Junonis communis Lanuvinis municipibus cum populo Romano esset.** (Liv.)

686 (*d*) A thing, about which fear is felt, is expressed by a sentence with **ut**, if it is wished; with **ne**, if it is dreaded. (In English *that not* corresponds to **ut**, *lest* or *that* to **ne**.) **Ne non** is also used for **ut**, especially when the principal sentence is negative.

**O puer, ut sis vitalis, metuo, et majorum ne quis amicus frigore te feriat.** (Hor.)

**Rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere se dicebant.** (Caes.)

**Vereor ne Romam, sic cunctantibus nobis, Hannibali ac Poenis toties servaverint majores nostri.** (Liv.)

**Timeo, ne non impetrem.** (Cic.)

Similarly **vide ne non sit, vide ut sit,** *Perhaps it is not*, **vide ne sit,** *Perhaps it is*. (For another meaning of these expressions see § 682.)

**Multa istius modi dicuntur in scholis, sed credere omnia vide ne non sit necesse.** (Cic.)

**Erat, si cujusquam, certe tuum nihil praeter virtutem in bonis dicere. 'Vide ne magis,' inquam, 'tuum fuerit.'** (Cic.)

688 (*e*) With **ne, nēdum,** *much less*.

This usage arises from the prevention of the occurrence of the greater event being rhetorically regarded as the purpose of the occurrence of the less event.

**Vix in ipsis tectis frigus infirma valetudine vitatur: nedum in mari sit facile abesse ab injuria temporis.** (Cic.)

**Querebantur consules bellicosos ambo viros, qui vel in pace tranquilla bellum excitare possent, nedum in bello respirare civitatem forent passuri.** (Liv.)

**Quippe secundae res sapientium animos fatigant, ne illi corruptis moribus victoriae temperarent.** (Sall.)

690 (*f*) Purpose not of the principal action itself, but of the mention of the action; especially, with **ne dicam,** in suggesting, while declining to make, a stronger statement. The present subjunctive is chiefly used.

**Ne longior sim, vale.** (Cic.)

**Quando quidem est apud te virtuti honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, quod minis nequisti, trecenti conjuravimus principes juventutis Romanae, ut in te hac via grassaremur.** (Liv.)

**Satis inconsiderati fuit, ne dicam audacis, rem ullam ex illis attingere.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p. 282*

685 3. Some colloquial phrases may perhaps belong to the class of comparative sentences.

(*a*) With **quantum**, which is either relative or perhaps interrogative;

**Vino et lucernis Medus acinaces immane quantum discrepat.** (Hor.)
**Mirum quam inimicus ibat, ut ego objurgarem.** (Cic.)
**O Phaedria, incredibilest quantum erum anteeo sapientia.** (Ter.)

(*b*) With **quam** qualified by an adverb prefixed. (This usage, e.g. **mire quam**, is probably the result of attraction for **mirum quam**: the whole expression being adverbial, each member is made adverbial[1].)

**Mire quam illius loci non modo usus, sed etiam cogitatio delectat.** (Cic.)
**Succlamatum est ei frequenter a militibus Ventidianis, nam suos valde quam paucos habet.** (D. Brut.)
**Haud facile fuit ea quae objicerentur memoria complecti, pleraque enim oppido quam parva erant.** (Liv.)

687 4. Similar (to the above-named uses of **quantum, quam, ut**, § 683) is the use, in the early language, of **ut** in phrases which may be either relative or interrogative. (Comp. § 753.)

(*a*) **Satin' ut**, 'tolerably.'

**Satin', ut oblitus fui tibi me narravisse?** (Plaut.)
**Satin' ut meminit libertatis?** (Plaut.)

(*b*) **Vide ut** is used to express surprise. It is preceded by **hoc** or **illud.**

**Hoc sis vide, ut palpatur: nullust, quando occepit, blandior.** (Plaut.)
**O illud vide, os ut sibi distorsit carnufex.** (Ter.)

(For **ut** after **vide** in a reported question, § 750.)

689 A climax or anticlimax may be expressed directly in the indicative; especially by **ne...quidem, non modo...sed etiam**, &c., and in post-Augustan writers **adeo** (**adeo non**, *so much less*).

**Lepido quidem numquam placuit ex Italia exire; Tullo multo minus.** (Cic.)
**Haec igitur sapiens non suscipiet rei publicae causa: ne res publica quidem pro se suscipi volet.** (Cic.)
**Dies autem non modo non levat luctum hunc, sed etiam auget.** (Cic.)
**Apollinis oracula numquam ne mediocri quidem cuiquam, non modo prudenti probata sunt.** (Cic.)
**Hujus totius temporis fortunam nec deflere quidem quisquam satis digne potuit, adeo nemo exprimere verbis potest.** (Vell.)

691 So with **non dico, non dicam**, of a weaker statement, which the speaker rejects in favour of a stronger one.

**Incredibile ac simile portenti est, quonam modo illa tam multa quam paucis, non dico mensibus sed diebus, effuderit.** (Cic.)
**Nihil est in ea urbe contra hanc rem publicam non dico factum, sed nihil omnino excogitatum.** (Cic.)

[1] Comp. *μετὰ ἱδρῶτος θαυμαστοῦ ὅσου, θαυμαστῶς ὡς χαίρω*, &c.

*Continued on p.* 283

692 3. An event expected and purposed.

1. (*a*) With **dum**, *until*, rarely **donec**, **quoad**; in present and imperfect tenses only. (In English the subjunctive is best expressed by using '*shall*,' '*should*,' '*can*,' '*could*;' or by a periphrasis; e. g. **dum veniat, veniret**, '*to allow of his coming*,' '*to enable him to come.*')

**Exspecta, amabo te, dum Atticum conveniam.** (Cic.)

**Dum relicuae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit.** (Caes.)

**Multa bello passus, dum conderet urbem inferretque deos Latio.** (Verg.)

**Actia pugna te duce per pueros hostili more refertur, donec alterutrum velox victoria fronde coronet.** (Hor.)

**Epaminondas exercebatur plurimum currendo et luctando ad eum finem, quoad stans complecti posset atque contendere.** (Nep.)

(*b*) Sometimes the subjunctive implies not strictly that an action is purposed, but that it is expected and counted on (**dum**, '*while*').

**Nihil deinde moratus rex quattuor milia armatorum, dum recens terror esset, Scotussam misit.** (Liv.)

694 (*c*) Sometimes (chiefly in Livy and later historians) with **donec**, '*so long as*,' '*until*,' the subjunctive is used of facts; where the indicative would have been used in earlier writers. Only in present and imperfect and (rarely) pluperfect tenses. (Comp. § 720.)

**Nihil sane trepidabant elephanti, donec continenti velut ponte agerentur; primus erat pavor, quum, soluta ab ceteris rate, in altum raperentur. Ibi urgentes inter se, cedentibus extremis ab aqua, trepidationis aliquantum edebant, donec quietem ipse timor circumspectantibus aquam fecisset.** (Liv.)

696 (*d*) '*So long as*' = '*provided that*,' '*if only*;' **dum, dum modo** (in negative sentences **dum ne, dummodo ne**), with present or imperfect tenses.

**Dum res maneant, verba fingant arbitratu suo.** (Cic.)

**Vox illa dira et abominanda, 'Oderint dum metuant.' Sullano scias saeculo scriptam. Oderint? quid? dum pareant? non. dum probent? non. quid ergo? dum timeant. Sic nec amari quidem vellem.** (Sen.)

**Quicquid vis esto, dummodo nil recites.** (Mart.)

**Multi omnia recta et honesta neglegunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur.** (Cic.)

**Imitamini, patres conscripti, turbam inconsultam, dum ego ne imiter tribunos.** (Liv.)

*Continued on p.* 284

633 The indicative mood is used with **quam diu**, *so long as;* **dum, donec, quoad**, *until*, *whilst*, *so long as*, of a simple expression of fact. The pluperfect appears not to be used in these sentences.

1. (*a*) '*Until:*' **donec (donicum), quoad**; and sometimes **dum.**

**Usque eo timui, donec ad rejiciundos judices venimus.** (Cic.)
**Milo in senatu fuit eo die, quoad senatus dimissus est.** (Cic.)
**Mihi quidem usque curae erit, quid agas, dum, quid egeris, sciero.** (Cic.)

635 (*b*) '*While*' = '*so long as*,' '*all the time that;*' **dum, donec, quamdiu, quoad.** The tense in both clauses is usually the same.

**Neque enim, dum eram vobiscum, animum meum videbatis.** (Cic.)
**Hoc feci, dum licuit; intermisi, quoad non licuit.** (Cic.)
**Ut aegroto, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, sic ego, quoad Pompeius in Italia fuit, sperare non destiti.** (Cic.)
**Donec gratus eram tibi, Persarum vigui rege beatior. Donec non alia magis arsisti, Romana vigui clarior Ilia.** (Hor.)
**Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives.** (Cic.)

637 (*c*) '*While*,' i.e. '*in the time that:*' **dum** with present tense (though qualifying past actions), rarely with other tenses. (The indicative present is usually retained even in clauses dependent on infinitives and subjunctives.)

Of time only, without any notion of purpose.

An event expected is sometimes treated as if it occupied the period of waiting.

**Dum veniunt amici, solus, filio procul stante, multa secum animo volutans, inambulavit.** (Liv.)
**Nullis evidentibus causis obiere, dum calciantur matutino, duo Caesares, Q. Aemilius Lepidus jam egrediens, incusso pollice limini cubiculi; C. Aufustius egressus, cum in senatum iret, offenso pede in comitio; Cn. Baebius Tamphilus, cum a puero quaesisset horas; L. Tuccius medicus, dum mulsi potionem haurit; Appius Saufeius, e balineo reversus, cum mulsum bibisset ovumque sorberet;** &c. (Plin.)
**Dum haec Veiis agebantur, interim arx Romae Capitoliumque in ingenti periculo fuit.** (Liv.)

(*d*) '*While*' = '*in consequence of.*'

**In has cladis incidimus, dum metui quam cari esse et diligi maluimus.** (Cic.)
**Ita mulier, dum pauca mancipia retinere volt, fortunas omnes perdidit.** (Cic.)
**Verum ego liberius altiusque processi, dum me civitatis morum piget taedetque.** (Sall.)

*Continued on p.* 285

698 2. An event expected and its occurrence, or prior occurrence, prevented; with **quam** (**quam non**) after (*a*) **prius, ante,** (*b*) **potius,** and the like. When the principal sentence is negative, the occurrence or prior occurrence of the event is not prevented, but secured (rarely, if ever, in perfect tense).

(*a*) **Haerens in tergo Romanus prius, quam fores portarum obiicerentur, velut agmine uno irrumpit.** (Liv.)

**Is videlicet antequam veniat in Pontum, litteras ad Cn. Pompeium mittet.** (Cic.)

**Sed non ante datam cingetis moenibus urbem quam vos dira fames ambesas subigat malis absumere mensas.** (Verg.)

**Ad fratrem amicosque ejus non prius destitit mittere, quam pacem cum iis confirmaret.** (Liv.)

Sometimes (in Livy, &c.) without any accessory notion of purpose.

**Paucis ante diebus, quam Syracusae caperentur, Otacilius in Africam transmisit.** (Liv.)

700 (*b*) **Zeno Eleates perpessus est omnia potius, quam conscios delendae tyrannidis indicaret.** (Cic.)

**Eripiet quivis oculos citius mihi quam te contemptum cassa nuce pauperet.** (Hor.)

So with **ut** also:

**Multi ex plebe, spe amissa, potius quam ut cruciarentur trahendo animam, capitibus obvolutis se in Tiberim praecipitaverunt.** (Liv.)

## CHAPTER XX.

### USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS *CAUSATION:* with contrasted use of indicative.

#### (E) Consecutive subjunctive.

702 The consecutive subjunctive expresses an action viewed as characteristic of persons or things, or as the natural result of other actions or of qualities.

For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 633.

704 1. With relative adjective, e.g.

**qui** = **ut is,** '*so that he*,' '*such that he*,' '*the kind of person to*,' '*such persons as:*' in negative sentences **qui non**; or, if the principal sentence is negative, or quasi-negative, **quin** (or **qui non**[1]). Also **cum** = **quo tempore.** Especially frequent

(*a*) after demonstratives (**is, talis, tantus,** &c.) or adjectives of quality;

**Ego is sum, qui nihil unquam mea potius quam meorum civium causa fecerim.** (Cic.)

[1] **Quin** is used for **qui (quae, quod)...non,** nom. case, rarely for any other case. In other cases either **quin...eum,** or **quem...non** is used.

*Continued on p.* 286

699 2. With **quam** after **prius, ante, citius,** &c.;

(*a*) Of a simple statement of the subsequent occurrence of one event to another, as a fact. The imperfect is rarely used, the pluperfect never.

**Ante ferit (amor), tuti quam cernimus hostem.** (Propert.)

**Haec bona, is, qui testamentum fecerat, Heraclio, ante aliquanto quam est mortuus, omnia utenda ac possidenda tradiderat.** (Cic.)

**Neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt.** (Caes.)

**Non defatigabor ante, quam illorum ancipitis vias rationesque et pro omnibus et contra omnia disputandi percepero.** (Cic.)

**Membris utimur prius, quam didicimus, cujus ea causa utilitatis habeamus.** (Cic.)

(*b*) Occasionally the indicative is found, even though the occurrence denoted is a matter to be prevented.

**Sed, me dius fidius, multo citius meam salutem pro te abjecero, quam Cn. Plancii salutem tradidero contentioni tuae.** (Cic.)

701 (*c*) The same simple connexion of like expressions is found in the infinitive, participle, &c.

**Addit Pompeius se prius occisum iri a Clodio quam me violatum iri.** (Cic.)

**Dolco te sapientia praeditum prope singulari non tuis bonis delectari potius quam alienis malis laborare.** (Cic.)

**Nonne tibi adfirmavi quidvis me potius perpessurum quam ex Italia ad bellum civile exiturum?** (Cic.)

**Constituunt illo potius utendum consilio quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam condicionem.** (Caes.)

## Indicative with relatives: also with quod, ut.

703 The indicative is used for simple definitions of existing persons or things or classes (**qui**, '*who*,' '*whoever*;' **cum**, '*at which time*').

After such expressions as **sunt qui**, the indicative is unusual (except in the earlier writers and poets), unless an adjective of number or definition be added, as **multi sunt qui.**

705 **Sp. Thorius satis valuit in populari genere dicendi, is, qui agrum publicum vitiosa et inutili lege vectigali levavit.** (Cic.)

**Epicurus non satis politus est iis artibus, quas qui tenent, eruditi appellantur.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 287

Campani majora in defectione deliquerant, quam quibus ignosci posset. (Liv.)
Haec est una contentio, quae adhuc permanserit. (Cic.)
Solus es, C. Caesar, cujus in victoria ceciderit nemo nisi armatus. (Cic.)
O fortunate adulescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris. (Cic.)
Erit illud profecto tempus, cum tu fortissimi viri magnitudinem animi desideres. (Cic.)
In id saeculum Romuli cecidit aetas, cum jam plena Graecia poetarum et musicorum esset. (Cic.)

703 (*b*) after assertions of existence or non-existence (**est qui, est cum, est quod,** &c.);

Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem. (Cic.)
Est quatenus amicitiae dari venia possit. (Cic.)
Fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent. (Caes.)
Quotus igitur est quisque qui somniis pareat, qui intellegat, qui meminerit? (Cic.)
Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante Magorum disciplinam scientiamque perceperit. (Cic.)
Nego in Sicilia tota ullum argenteum vas fuisse, quin Verres conquisierit, inspexerit, quod placitum sit, abstulerit. (Cic.)
In castello nemo fuit omnium militum, quin vulneraretur. (Caes.)

708 (*c*) occasionally without any special introduction.

At ille nescio qui, qui in scholis nominari solet, mille et octoginta stadia quod abesset videbat. (Cic.)
L. Pinarius erat vir acer et qui plus in eo, ne posset decipi, quam in fide Siculorum reponeret. (Cic.)
Et quidem saepe quaerimus verbum Latinum, par Graeco, et quod idem valeat: hic nihil fuit quod quaereremus. (Cic.)
In enodandis nominibus, vos Stoici, quod miserandum sit, laboratis. (Cic.)

710 (*d*) In relative sentences, restricting (e.g. by way of proviso) a general assertion; especially with **qui quidem, qui modo.**

Omnium quidem oratorum, quos quidem ego cognoverim, acutissimum judico Q. Sertorium. (Cic.)
Servus est nemo, qui modo tolerabili condicione sit servitutis, qui non audaciam civium perhorrescat. (Cic.)
Epicurus se unus, quod sciam, sapientem profiteri est ausus. (Cic.)
Peto igitur abs te, ut omnibus rebus, quod sine molestia tua facere possis, ei commodes. (Cic.)
Tu, quod tuo commodo fiat, quam primum velim venias. (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 288

**Utrum tibi commodum est, elige.** (Cic.)
**Virtus est una altissimis defixa radicibus, quae nunquam vi ulla labefactari potest.** (Cic.)
**Heu me miserum, qui tuom animum ex animo spectavi meo.** (Ter.)
**Fortunatus illius exitus, qui ea non vidit, quum fierent, quae praevidit futura.** (Cic.)
**Longum illud tempus cum non ero, magis me movet, quam hoc exiguum.** (Cic.)
**Sententiam meam tu facillime perspicere potuisti jam ab illo tempore, cum in Cumanum mihi obviam venisti.** (Cic.)

707 **Sunt multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur.** (Cic.)
**Est cui cognomen corvus habere dedit.** (Prop.)
**Multi anni sunt, cum M. Fadius in meo aere est, et a me diligitur propter summam suam humanitatem.** (Cic.)
**Sed incidunt saepe tempora, cum ea, quae maxime videntur digna esse justo homine, commutantur fiuntque contraria.** (Cic.)
**Fuit cum hoc dici poterat: 'Patricius enim eras et a liberatoribus patriae ortus:' nunc consulatus non generis, ut ante, sed virtutis praemium.** (Liv.)
**Quicquam bonum est, quod non eum, qui id possidet, meliorem facit?** (Cic.)
**Mihi liber esse non videtur, qui non aliquando nihil agit.** (Cic.)

709 **Necesse est multos timeat, quem multi timent.** (Laber. ap. Sen.)
**Quem per arbitrum circumvenire non posses, cujus de ea re proprium non erat judicium, hunc per judicem condemnabis, cujus de ea re nullum est arbitrium?** (Cic.)
**Ne quo nomine quidem appellare vos debeam, scio. Cives? qui a patria vestra descistis. An milites? qui imperium auspiciumque abnuistis, sacramenti religionem rupistis.** (Liv.)

711 In the indicative a limitation of the principal sentence by a relative clause is stated without assumption, as a description of existing persons, facts, &c.

(*a*) With simple relative; sometimes with **quidem, modo** added.

**Catonem vero quis nostrorum oratorum, qui quidem nunc sunt, legit?** (Cic.)
**Quis ignorat, qui modo umquam mediocriter res istas scire curavit, quin tria Graecorum genera sint?** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 289

712 2. With a connective adverb: **ut**, in negative **ut non**, 'so *that ... is not*;' or, if the principal sentence is negative, or quasi-negative, **quin**.

(*a*) **Non is es, Catilina, ut te pudor umquam a turpitudine revocarit.** (Cic.)

**Relicuos ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent.** (Caes.)

**Hanc orationem habuit tanta constantia vocis atque vultus, ut non ex vita sed ex domo in domum videretur migrare.** (Nep.)

**Nunquam tam male est Siculis, quin aliquid facete et commode dicant.** (Cic.)

**Litteras ad te numquam habui cui darem, quin dederim.** (Cic.)

**Treviri totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent.** (Caes.)

(*b*) The subordinate clause is often in place of subject or object to the principal sentence.

**Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut usque eo difficiles ac morosi simus, ut nobis non satis faciat ipse Demosthenes.** (Cic.)

**Mos est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere.** (Cic.)

**Saepe fit, ut ii, qui debent, non respondeant ad tempus.** (Cic.)

**Ne deus quidem potest facere, ut qui vixit non vixerit, qui honores gessit non gesserit, ut bis dena viginti non sint.** (Plin.)

**Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accedebat etiam ut caecus esset.** (Cic.)

**Ubi Varus restitit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quaesivit, Fabius humerum apertum gladio appetit, paulumque afuit, quin Varum interficeret.** (Caes.)

**Facere non possum, quin cotidie litteras ad te mittam, ut tuas accipiam.** (Cic.)

714 (*c*) In sentences restrictive of a preceding statement: **ut faciam** = '*whilst yet doing*,' **ut non faciam**, &c. '*without doing*,' &c. The principal sentence often has **ita**. (Compare § 684.)

**Cujus ego ingenium ita laudo ut non pertimescam, ita probo ut me ab eo delectari facilius quam decipi putem posse.** (Cic.)

**Non ita pridem spondeos stabiles in jura paterna recepit commodus et patiens, non ut de sede secunda cederet aut quarta socialiter.** (Hor.)

**Quis est qui velit, ut neque diligat quemquam, nec ipse ab ullo diligatur, in omnium rerum abundantia vivere?** (Cic.)

(*d*) In concessive sentences: **ut** (**ut non**), '*supposing that*,' '*even if*.' The subordinate clause is usually put first. (Compare § 676.)

**Ut fueris dignior quam Plancius, (de quo ipso tecum ita contendam paulo post, ut conservem dignitatem tuam,) non competitor, sed populus in culpa est.** (Cic.)

**Quotus quisque juris peritus est, ut eos numeres, qui volunt esse?** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 290

**Censores causas stipendiis missorum cognoscebant, et cujus nondum justa missio visa esset, ita jusjurandum adigebant: 'Ex tui animi sententia, tu ex edicto C. Claudi, T. Semproni censorum in provinciam Macedoniam redibis, quod sine dolo malo facere poteris.'** (Liv.)
**Prodidisti et te et illam miseram, quod quidem in te fuit.** (Ter.)

(*b*) With doubled forms of relative, and those with **cunque** attached, e.g. **quisquis, utut, quamquam, quicunque**; also **uter.**
**Sed quoquo modo illud se habet, haec querella vestra nihil valet.** (Cic.)
**Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentis.** (Verg.)
**Deiotari copias, quantaecunque sunt, nostras esse duco.** (Cic.)
**Quicquid est, ubicunque est, quodcunque agit, renidet Egnatius.** (Catull.)
**Potest omnino hoc esse falsum, potest verum, sed, utrum est, non est mirabile.** (Cic.)
**Utcunque ferent ea facta minores, vincet amor patriae.** (Verg.)
**Romani, quamquam itinere et proelio fessi erant, tamen Metello instructi intentique obviam procedunt.** (Sall.)

713 Subordinate sentences denoting a fact, and themselves forming, or placed in apposition to, the subject or object of a verb (except a verb of *feeling* or *saying*, cf. § 535), are often put in the indicative mood with **quod**. (For other sentences with **quod** see §§ 740—744.)
**Accidit perincommode, quod eum nusquam vidisti.** (Cic.)
**Te nec quod dies exiit censurae, nec quod collega magistratu abiit, nec lex, nec pudor, coercet.** (Liv.)
**Eumeni inter Macedonas viventi multum detraxit, quod alienae erat civitatis.** (Nep.)
**Praetereo quod illam sibi domum sedemque delegit.** (Cic.)
**Fecit humaniter Licinius, quod ad me misso senatu vesperi venit.** (Cic.)
**Super belli Latini metum id quoque accesserat, quod triginta jam jurasse populos satis constabat.** (Liv.)

Often also such sentences are in apposition to an oblique case:
**Hoc uno praestamus vel maxime feris, quod exprimere dicendo sensa possumus.** (Cic.)

715 Facts explaining or defining a statement are often expressed by the indicative with **ut**, '*as*.' Thus a sentence with **ut** is found—

(*a*) Defining the order or degree: **ut** = '*as*,' '*according as*,' '*just as*.' The principal sentence often has **ita, sic, perinde, pro.**
**His, sicut erant nuntiata, expositis, consul de religione patres consuluit.** (Liv.)
**Ut sementem feceris, ita metes.** (Cic.)
**Id, prout cujusque ingenium erat, interpretabantur.** (Liv.)

(*b*) Adducing a fact to be allowed for; **ut, prout, pro eo ut**, '*in proportion to what*,' '*allowing for what*.' In early language also **praeut**, '*compared with*.'
**At hi quidem, ut populi Romani aetas est, senes; ut Atheniensium saecla numerantur, adulescentes debent videri.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 291

**Ut non conferam vitam tuam cum illius, (neque enim est conferenda,) hoc ipsum conferam, quo tu te superiorem fingis.** (Cic.)
**In quibus ut erraverim, legentes tamen non decepi, indicata et diversa opinione.** (Quint.)
**Verum ut hoc non sit, tamen praeclarum spectaculum mihi propono, modo te concessore spectare liceat.** (Cic.)
**Ut enim rationem Plato nullam adferret, (vide quid homini tribuam,) ipsa auctoritate me frangeret.** (Cic.)

(*e*) So of an impossible supposition put interrogatively.

**Hicine ut a nobis hoc tantum argenti auferat tam aperte irridens? emori hercle satius est.** (Ter.)
**Egone ut te interpellem? ne hoc quidem vellem.** (Cic.)
**Quanquam quid loquor? te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut unquam te corrigas? tu ut ullam fugam meditere? utinam tibi istam mentem di immortales duint.** (Cic.)
**Inultus ut tu riseris Cotyttia volgata?** (Hor.)

## (F) Subjunctive of attendant circumstances.

716 The subjunctive with **cum** is in some of its uses very peculiar, but appears to be referable, like the preceding class, to the fact or event being presented to the mind not as a mere definition of the time of the principal action, but as a cause or a possible cause of its occurrence, at least in the form in which it actually occurred.

(F) The subjunctive expresses a real action, viewed as the attendant cause or circumstance, under, or notwithstanding, which other actions or events take place.

718 1. With relative adjective: **qui**, '*inasmuch as he*,' '*although he*' (**qui praesertim**, '*and that though he*,'); often with **ut, ut pote, quippe**, prefixed. So also **ut ubi**, &c.

**Peccasse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim.** (Cic.)
**Me caecum, qui haec ante non viderim!** (Cic.)
**Nosmet ipsi, qui Lycurgei a principio fuissemus, quotidie demitigamur.** (Cic.)
**Religione tactus hospes, qui omnia cuperet rite facta, extemplo descendit ad Tiberim.** (Liv.)

*Continued on p.* 292

**Sed mehercule, ut quidem nunc se causa habet, etsi hesterno sermone labefactata est, mihi tamen videtur esse verissima.** (Cic.)

**Compararat Sthenius argenti bene facti, prout Thermitani hominis facultates ferebant, satis.** (Cic.)

(*c*) Making a concession: **ut**...**ita**, '*although*'...'*yet.*' (For **quamquam, utcunque**, &c. see § 711 (*b*): for **etsi, etiamsi**, § 650 *c*.)

**Verum ut errare, mi Planci, potuisti, (quis enim id effugerit?) sic decipi te non potuisse quis non videt?** (Cic.)

**Saguntini, ut a proeliis quietem habuerant, ita non nocte, non die, unquam cessaverant ab opere.** (Liv.)

(*d*) Admitting the truth of what is put only as a concession or thought; **ut, sicut**, '*as, in fact.*'

**Sit Ennius, ut est certe, perfectior.** (Cic.)

**Terrendi magis hostes erant quam fallendi, sicut territi sunt.** (Liv.)

(*e*) Explaining by reference to a permanent habit, or to a state; **ut, sicut. Ut** is immediately followed by **est, sunt**, &c.

**Venetorum auctoritate finitimi adducti, ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia, eadem de causa Trebium retinent.** (Caes.)

**Permulta alia conligit Chrysippus, ut est in omni historia curiosus.** (Cic.)

(*f*) In asseverations:

**Ita vivam, ut maximos sumptus facio.** (Cic.)

## Indicative in relative and temporal sentences.

717 Sentences with **cum** in the indicative mood are very frequent, but they denote the bare time when a thing occurred, without grammatically implying any sort of connexion between the principal event and that which marks the date of its occurrence. The comic poets, and Cicero in certain sentences (*c*), use **cum** for '*since*,' where later writers, and Cicero as a general rule, use **quoniam**, or resort to the subjunctive.

The indicative expresses merely the fact, without implying any connexion between this and that event, although such connexion may exist.

719 1. (*a*) With relative adjective: **qui**='*for he*,' '*and yet he.*' Sometimes (in Plautus, Sallust, and Livy) **quippe qui.**

**Tu dies noctesque cruciaris, cui nec sat es, quod est, et id ipsum ne non diuturnum sit futurum, times.** (Cic.)

**O fidam dextram Antoni, qua ille plurimos cives trucidavit.** (Cic.)

**Habeo senectuti magnam gratiam, quae mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit, potionis et cibi sustulit.** (Cic.)

**At Jugurtha contra spem nuntio accepto, quippe cui Romae omnia venum ire in animo haeserat, ad senatum legatos mittit.** (Sall.)

*Continued on p.* 293

**Castra repetunt pavoris et tumultus jam plena, ut ubi feminae puerique et alia imbellis turba permixta esset.** (Liv.)

**Solis candor inlustrior est quam ullius ignis, quippe qui inmenso mundo tam longe lateque conluceat.** (Cic.)

**Tribuno plebis quaestor non paruisti, cui tuus praesertim collega pareret.** (Cic.)

720 2. With relative adjectives and adverbs: of cases frequently occurring; with **quicumque, cum, ubi, seu,** &c. in Livy and later writers (rarely, if ever, in Cicero, Caesar, or Sallust) and only in pluperfect and (sometimes) imperfect. **Cum** = *whenever.*

**Cum in jus duci debitorem vidissent, undique convolabant.** (Liv.)

**Neque hereditatem cujusquam adiit, nisi cum amicitia meruisset.** (Tac.)

**Id fetialis ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eorum emittebat.** (Liv.)

**Philopoemen ubi iter quopiam faceret et ad difficilem transitu saltum venisset, contemplatus ab omni parte loci naturam, cum solus iret, secum ipse agitabat animo, quum comites haberet, ab iis quaerebat, si hostis eo loco apparuisset quid capiendum consilii foret.** (Liv.)

**Vescebatur et ante cenam, quocumque tempore et loco stomachus desiderasset.** (Suet.)

**Quocunque se intulisset, victoriam secum haud dubiam trahebat.** (Liv.)

**Quotiens super tali negotio consultaret, edita domus parte ac liberti unius conscientia utebatur.** (Tac.)

**Nec consul Romanus temptandis urbibus, sicunde spes aliqua se ostendisset, deerat.** (Liv.)

722 3. With (**quom**) **cum**, the subjunctive implies that the event, action, &c. exercises, or might exercise, an influence on the event, action, &c. named in the principal sentence. (This use is rare in Plautus.)

The clause with **cum** usually precedes (the whole or at least the verb of) the principal sentence, but sometimes is placed after it by way of explanation or contrast, see §§ 724, 730, 734.

The subjunctive is used as follows:

(*a*) Of actions, events, &c. recounted not as mere marks of time, but as essential parts of the historical narrative; in imperfect and pluperfect tenses.

Though 'when' often serves to translate **cum** into English, the effect in such sentences is best given thus; e.g. **cum rediret,** '*returning,*' '*as he returned;*' **cum redisset,** '*having returned,*' '*on his return.*'

*Continued on p.* 294

(*b*) So especially where the quality displayed by the principal action is the antecedent to the relative. (**Qui**='*such*.')

**Si mihi negotium permisisses, qui meus amor in te est, confecissem.** (Cic.)

**Consurgitur in consilium, cum sententias Oppianicus, quae tunc erat potestas, palam fieri velle dixisset.** (Cic.)

721 2. With relative adjectives and adverbs: of cases frequently occurring, or occurring not more at one time than at another; with **quicumque, cum, ubi, quoties, simul ac, si, ut quisque,** &c., especially the perfect, pluperfect, and completed future tenses, in subordination respectively to the present, imperfect, and future in principal clause. **Cum**='*whenever*.'

**Cum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum nihil agere et plane cessare me delectat.** (Cic.)

**Cum paterfamiliae illustriore loco natus decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt.** (Caes.)

**Quocunque aspexisti, ut furiae, sic tuae tibi occurrunt injuriae.** (Cic.)

**Ubi per socordiam vires tempus ingenium diffluxere, naturae infirmitas accusatur.** (Sall.)

**Quisquis erat qui aliquam partem in meo luctu sceleris Clodiani attigisset, quocumque venerat, quod judicium cumque subierat, damnabatur.** (Cic.)

**Plerumque milites stativis castris habebat, nisi cum odos aut pabuli egestas locum mutare subegerat.** (Sall.)

**Ego, cum a nostro Catone laudabar, vel reprehendi me a ceteris facile patiebar.** (Cic.)

**Si ab persequendo hostis deterrere nequiverant, disjectos ab tergo circumveniebant.** (Sall.)

**Ut cujusque sors exciderat, alacer arma raptim capiebat.** (Liv.)

**Nec hic puer, quotiescunque me viderit, ingemescet ac pestem patris sui se dicet videre.** (Cic.)

723 3. With conjunctions of time, other than **cum**, e.g. **ut, ubi, posteaquam (postquam), simul ac**, and, in Plautus occasionally, **quoniam**, the indicative is used in expressing the event on, or sometimes since, the occurrence of which something else takes place. (For **dum**, &c. see § 693 sqq., for **priusquam**, § 699.)

**Pompeius, ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit.** (Caes.)

**Quae ubi spreta sententia est, iterumque eodem remeante nuntio consulebatur, censuit ad unum omnes interficiendos.** (Liv.)

**Alia subinde spes, postquam haec vana evaserat, excepit.** (Liv.)

**Posteaquam victoria constituta est ab armisque recessimus, cum proscriberentur homines, erat Roscius Romae frequens.** (Cic.)

**Quem simul ac Juturna soror crebescere vidit sermonem, in medias dat sese acies.** (Verg.)

*Continued on p.* 295

**Cum portae appropinquaret, editus ex composito ignis ab Hannibale est...Nota vox Philomeni et familiare jam signum quum excitasset vigilem, portula aperitur.** (Liv.)

**Phocion cum ad mortem duceretur, obvius ei fuit Ephiletus...Is cum lacrimans dixisset 'O quam indigna perpeteris, Phocion!' huic ille 'at non inopinata' inquit.** (Nep.)

**Meridie cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones misisset, repente hostes ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt.** (Caes.)

**Zenonem, cum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter.** (Cic.)

**Cum intempesta nox esset, mansissemque in villa P. Valerii, postridieque apud eundem ventum exspectans manerem, municipes Regini plurimi ad me venerunt.** (Cic.)

724 The following are instances of the clause with **cum** being subsequent:

**Attrahitur a Veneriis Lollius commodum, cum Apronius e palaestra redisset et in triclinio recubuisset.** (Cic.)

**Ingressus urbem est quo comitatu vel potius agmine! cum dextra sinistra, gemente populo Romano, minaretur dominis, notaret domos, divisurum se urbem palam suis polliceretur.** (Cic.)

So especially **cum diceret**, '*saying, as he did*' = '*on the ground that, as he said.*' (Compare **quod diceret**, § 742.)

**Cotidie meam potentiam invidiose criminabatur, cum diceret senatum, non quod sentiret, sed quod ego vellem decernere.** (Cic.)

726 The clause with **cum** is sometimes tantamount to a secondary (often oblique) predicate of a thing seen, heard, &c. (Imperfect tense.) With this use of the subjunctive comp. **fuit cum diceret**, &c. § 706.

**Saepe e socero meo audivi, cum is diceret socerum suum Laelium semper fere cum Scipione solitum rusticari.** (Cic.)

**Adulescentium greges Lacedaemone vidimus ipsi incredibili contentione certantis, cum exanimarentur prius quam victos se faterentur.** (Cic.)

728 (*b*) Of the grounds or reason of an action, &c. **Cum** = '*since*,' '*whereas*.'

**Quae cum ita sint, Catilina, perge quo coepisti.** (Cic.)

**Atqui necesse est, cum sint di, si modo sunt, ut profecto sunt, animantis esse.** (Cic.)

**Dionysius, cum in communibus suggestis consistere non auderet, contionari ex turri alta solebat.** (Cic.)

730 The following are instances of the clause with **cum** being subsequent:

**Venit ad nos Cicero tuus ad cenam, cum Pomponia foras cenaret.** (Cic.)

**Quid facient crines, cum ferro talia cedant?** (Cat.)

**Quid faciat custos, cum sint tot in urbe theatra, quoque sui comites ire velentur, eat?** (Ov.)

*Continued on p.* 296

4. With (**quom**) **cum**, the indicative mood is used in the following meanings and uses (besides those in §§ 705, 707, 721).

725 (*a*) Coincidence in point of time. **Cum** = '*when*,' '*at the time when*.'

The event put in the indicative with **cum** is regarded as one which would not have been mentioned at all, except for the purpose of defining the time.

**Cum haec leges, habebimus consules.** (Cic.)

**Cum haec Romae agebantur, Chalcide Antiochus sollicitabat civitatium animos.** (Liv.)

**Cum primum Romam veni, nihil prius faciendum putavi, quam ut tibi absenti de reditu nostro gratularer.** (Cic.)

**Reliquum est, ut ante, quam proficiscare, scribas ad me omnia, cum profectus eris, cures ut sciam.** (Cic.)

**De nomine tyranni hoc respondere possum, me, qualiscumque sum, eundem esse, qui fui cum tu ipse mecum societatem pepigisti.** (Liv.)

**Cum Placentiam consul venit, jam ex stativis moverat Hannibal.** (Liv.)

**In isto genere fuimus ipsi, cum ambitionis nostrae tempora postulabant.** (Cic.)

**Quae nemora aut qui vos saltus habuere, puellae Naides, indigno cum Gallus amore peribat?** (Verg.)

**Tum cum in Asia res magnas permulti amiserant, scimus Romae solutione impedita fidem concidisse.** (Cic.)

**Eo cum venio, praetor quiescebat; fratres illi Cibyratae inambulabant.** (Cic.)

727 (*b*) So in reckoning the length of time: **cum** = '*to the time that*.'

**Triginta dies erant ipsi, cum has dabam litteras, per quos nullas a vobis acceperam.** (Cic.)

**Nondum centum et decem anni sunt, cum de pecuniis repetundis a L. Pisone lata lex est, nulla antea cum fuisset.** (Cic.)

729 (*c*) Reason; in early writers: in Cicero only where the verb in the principal sentence is **laudo, gratulor**, &c. Not after Cicero. **Quom** = '*because*.'

**Di tibi omnes omnia optata offerant, quom me tanto honore honestas, quomque ex vinclis eximis.** (Plaut.)

**Quom te di amant, voluptatist mihi.** (Plaut.)

**Gratulor tibi, cum tantum vales apud Dolabellam.** (Cic.)

In the following sentences, though similar otherwise to some in § 730, the mood shows that coincidence in time only is marked. (Compare also § 733.)

**Quid domini faciant, audent cum talia fures?** (Verg.)

**Quid sapiens faciet, stultus cum munere gaudet?** (Ov.)

*Continued on p.* 297

732 (*c*) Of events, actions, &c. notwithstanding which other events, &c. take place. Cum = '*although*.'

**Druentia flumen, cum aquae vim vehat ingentem, non tamen navium patiens est.** (Liv.)

**Pylades cum sis, dices te esse Oresten, ut moriare pro amico?** (Cic.)

**Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat.** (Caes.)

**Nunc cum ejus alienum esse animum a me sentiam, quamobrem reducam?** (Ter.)

**Hoc ipso tempore, cum omnia gymnasia philosophi teneant, tamen eorum auditores discum audire quam philosophum malunt.** (Cic.)

734 The following are instances of the clause with cum being subsequent:

Cum = '*and yet*,' '*while all the time*' (cf. § 724), cum praesertim, '*and that too though*.'

**Quomodo igitur hoc in genere accusas Sestium, cum idem laudes Milonem?** (Cic.)

**Simulat se eorum praesidio confidere, cum interea aliud quiddam jam diu machinetur.** (Cic.)

**Fadium abstractum delodit in ludo et vivum conbussit; cum quidem pransus, nudis pedibus, tunica soluta, manibus ad tergum rejectis inambularet, et illi misero quiritanti responderet, Abi nunc, populi fidem inplora.** (Asin. Poll.)

**Thucydides nunquam est numeratus orator; nec vero, si historiam non scripsisset, nomen exstaret, cum praesertim fuisset honoratus et nobilis.** (Cic.)

736 (*d*) Of an action or event, &c. rhetorically contrasted with a later or particular action, &c. of the same sort; especially where the time of the two actions is different.

**Sisennae historia cum facile omnis vincat superiores, tum indicat tamen, quantum absit a summo.** (Cic.)

**Cum te a pueritia tua unice dilexerim, tum hoc vel tuo facto vel populi Romani de te judicio multo acrius diligo.** (Cic.)

## CHAPTER XXI.

### USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS ALIEN OR CONTINGENT ASSERTIONS, &c. with contrasted use of Indicative.

#### (G) Subjunctive of reported statements.

738 THE subjunctive in all the sentences classed here serves to distinguish what is reported from what is uttered at first hand. These sentences are not like those in the next head, dependent on infinitive or subjunctive moods, but (except for some collateral reason) on the indicative.

*Continued on p.* 298

731 (*d*) Identity of action. (Present and perfect tenses.) Usually the tense and person of the verb in both sentences are the same. **Cum** = '*when*,' '*in that*.'

**Qui, cum hunc accusant, Naevium Plautum Ennium accusant.** (Ter.)

**De te autem, Catilina, cum quiescunt, probant; cum patiuntur, decernunt; cum tacent, clamant.** (Cic.)

**Concedo tibi, ut ea praetereas, quae, cum taces, nihil esse concedis.** (Cic.)

**Epicurus ex animis hominum extraxit radicitus religionem, cum in dis inmortalibus opem et gratiam sustulit.** (Cic.)

---

733 In some sentences (from Plautus and Terence) similar to some on the opposite page, § 732, the coincidence in time serves to set off strongly the unreasonableness of the action. (Compare § 729.) **Quom** = '*although*.'

**Quid igitur faciam? non eam? ne nunc quidem, cum accersor ultro?** (Ter.)

**Hei mihi, insanire me aiunt ultro, quom ipsi insaniunt.** (Plaut.)

---

735 (*e*) The coincidence in time is sometimes vividly expressed by an inversion; what would otherwise have been the temporal clause being put first as an independent sentence (often with **jam**), and what would have been the principal sentence being subjoined with **cum**, often **cum repente, cum interim**, &c. **Cum** = **et tum.**

**Milites, postquam in aedis irrupere, divorsi regem quaerere, strepitu et tumultu omnia miscere, cum interim Hiempsal reperitur, occultans se tugurio mulieris ancillae.** (Sall.)

**Castra in hostico incuriose posita, cum subito advenere Samnitium legiones.** (Liv.)

**Hannibal subibat muros, cum repentè in eum, nihil minus quam tale quicquam timentem, patefacta porta erumpunt Romani.** (Liv.)

**Jamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurrerunt.** (Caes.)

737 (*f*) In a simple combination with faint contrast of two actions (subjunctive more usual). **Cum** = *whilst, both* (**tum** = *and*).

**Cum ipsam cognitionem juris augurii consequi cupio, tum mehercule tuis incredibiliter studiis erga me muneribusque delector.** (Cic.)

**Cum te semper maxime dilexi, tum fratrum tuorum singularis pietas nullum me patitur officii erga te munus praetermittere.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 299

The subjunctive expresses a definition or reason or condition or question reported, but not as the speaker's or writer's own at the time of speaking or writing: in a subordinate sentence.

For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 635 sqq.

740 1. Reported definition or reason: with relative adjective.

**Paetus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit.** (Cic.)

**Magna proponit iis, qui regem occiderint, praemia.** (Caes.)

**Interim cotidie Caesar Heduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare.** (Caes.)

2. Reported or assumed reason: with adverb, **quod, quia; non quod, non quia, non quo, non quin.**

**Laudat Panaetius Africanum, quod fuerit abstinens.** (Cic.)

**An paenitet vos quod salvum exercitum traduxerim? quod classem hostium primo impetu adveniens profligaverim? quod bis per biduum equestri proelio superaverim?** &c. (Caes.)

**Caesar sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissima missa.** (Caes.)

**Romani, quia consules, ubi summa rerum esset, ad id locorum prospere rem gererent, minus his cladibus commovebantur.** (Liv.)

**Pugiles in jactandis caestibus ingemescunt, non quod doleant animove succumbant, sed quia profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur venitque plaga vehementior.** (Cic.)

**Mihi quidem laudabiliora videntur, quae sine venditatione et sine populo teste fiunt, non quo fugiendus sit, (omnia enim bene facta in luce se conlocari volunt,) sed tamen nullum theatrum virtuti conscientia majus est.** (Cic.)

**Non tam ut prosim causis elaborare soleo, quam ut ne quid obsim: non quin enitendum sit in utroque, sed tamen multo est turpius oratori nocuisse videri causae, quam non profuisse.** (Cic.)

742 By a carelessness of expression the verb of 'saying' or 'thinking' is sometimes put in the subjunctive instead of the thing said. So especially **diceret, dicerent.** (Compare § 724.)

**Cum enim Hannibalis permissu exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quid diceret.** (Cic.)

**Qui istinc veniunt, superbiam tuam accusant, quod negent te percontantibus respondere.** (Cic.)

744 The clause with **quod** sometimes simply introduces a matter for remark. If this is stated as a supposition only, the subjunctive is used.

**Miles, edico tibi, si te in platea offendero hac post umquam, quod dicas mihi, 'alium quaerebam, iter hac habui,' periisti.** (Ter.)

**Quod enim te liberatum jam existimationis metu, defunctum honoribus, designatum consulem cogites, mihi crede, ornamenta ista et beneficia populi Romani non minore negotio retinentur quam comparantur.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 300

## Indicative: in contrasted usages.

739 The indicative expresses a fact; or a direct statement of opinion of the writer or speaker.

1. With relative adjective.

**Paetus omnes libros, quos frater ejus reliquerat, mihi donavit.**
**Verres mittit rogatum vasa ea, quae pulcherrima apud eum viderat.** (Cic.)
**Negavit se judices ex lege Rupilia sortiturum: quinque judices, quos commodum ipsi fuit, dedit.** (Cic.)

741 2. With causal conjunctions, quod, quia, quoniam, quando, siquidem, quatenus, '*inasmuch as*.' (For quod see also § 713.)

**Neque vero, quid mihi irascare, intellegere possum. Si, quod eum defendo, quem tu accusas, cur tibi ego non succenseo, quod accusas eum, quem ego defendo?** (Cic.)
**Ita fit ut adsint propterea, quod officium sequuntur, taceant autem idcirco, quia periculum vitant.** (Cic.)
**Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur.** (Liv.)
**Tusculanum et Pompejanum valde me delectant, nisi quod me aere alieno obruerunt.** (Cic.)
**Vos, Quirites, quoniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite.** (Cic.)
**Quando igitur virtus est adfectio animi, laudabiles efficiens eos, in quibus est, ex ea proficiscuntur honestae voluntates.** (Cic.)
**Summa utilitas est in iis qui militari laude antecellunt, siquidem eorum consilio et periculo cum republica tum etiam nostris rebus perfrui possumus.** (Cic.)
**Quandoquidem apud te nec auctoritas senatus nec aetas mea valet, tribunos plebis appello.** (Liv.)
**Cur enim non usquequaque Homericis versibus agam tecum, quatenus tu me tuis agere non pateris?** (Plin.)
**Quo quidem etiam magis sum exercitus, non quia multis debeo, sed quia saepe concurrunt aliquorum de me meritorum inter ipsos contentiones.** (Cic.)

743 **Quod** with indicative often expresses a fact, which is not so much the cause of the action of the principal verb, as the cause of the statement, a matter for remark.

**Quod scribis, te si velim ad me venturam, ego vero istic esse volo.** (Cic.)
**Quod Silius te cum Clodio loqui vult, potes id mea voluntate facere.** (Cic.)
**Quae cum ita sint, quod C. Pansa consul verba fecit de litteris, quae a Q. Caepione adlatae sunt, de ea re ita censeo.** (Cic.)

*Continued on p.* 301

746 3. Reported condition: the apodosis not being set out separately, but absorbed into the principal sentence.

(*a*) **Praetor aedem Diovi vovit, si eo die hostes fudisset.** (Liv.)
**Metellus evocat ad se magistratus; nisi restituissent statuas, vehementer minatur**[1]. (Cic.)
**Jugurtha timebat iram senatus, ni paruisset legatis**[2]. (Sall.)
**Nec illos periculum, si animus hosti redisset, cogere potuit gradum accelerare.** (Liv.)
**Hernici pudore etiam, non misericordia solum, moti, si nec obstitissent**[3] **communibus hostibus, nec opem ullam obsessis sociis ferrent, Romam pergunt.** (Liv.)
**Cur M. Brutus, referente te, legibus est solutus, si ab urbe plus quam decem dies afuisset**[4]**?** (Cic.)

(*b*) So especially in legal forms; **si, ni, uti, quicquid,** &c.
**Rubrius Apronium sponsione lacessivit, ni Apronius dictitaret te sibi in decumis esse socium.** (Cic.)
**Affirmabant qui una meruerant, secum Caesonem tum, frequentemque ad signa sine ullo commeatu fuisse. Nisi ita esset, multi privatim ferebant Volscio judicem.** (Liv.)

748 (*c*) Sometimes the apodosis is omitted altogether, perhaps not even distinctly conceived (comp. §§ 658 *c*, 662). The principal sentence states the action taken or feelings excited in contemplation of a particular event, the conditional sentence states the condition on which the event would take place; this contemplated event itself, which is the real apodosis, is not stated. The conditional sentence appears like a dependent question. **Si**='*whether*.' (**Possim, possem,** &c. are frequently found in the conditional clause.)

**Quaesivit iterum, si cum Romanis militare liceret.** (Liv.)
**Hanc paludem si nostri transirent, hostes expectabant.** (Caes.)
**Tentata res est, si primo impetu capi Ardea posset.** (Liv.)
**Ad Gonnum castra movet, si potiri oppido posset.** (Liv.)

750 4. Reported question. (Dependent interrogative.)

(N.B. A rhetorical question in the first or third person, not dependent on a verb of asking, but being part of a continuous report of a speech, is put in the infinitive: see ch. XXII.)

(*a*) **Qui sermo fuerit, et quid actum sit, scribam ad te, quum certum sciam.** (Cic.)
**Sum circumvectus: ita ubi nunc sim nescio.** (Plaut.)

**Nunc has exspectationes habemus duas, unam, quid Caesar acturus sit, alteram, quid Pompeius agat.** (Cic.)

**Lesbonicum hic adulescentem quaero, in his regionibus ubi habitet.** (Plaut.)

*Continued on p.* 302

745 The following is a vow in direct language.

**Si duellum, quod cum rege Antiocho sumi populus jussit, id ex sententia senatus populique Romani confectum erit, tum tibi, Juppiter, populus Romanus ludos magnos dies decem continuos faciet.** (ap. Liv.)

---

[1] i.e. **minatur, nisi restituissent statuas, se iis malum daturum.**
[2] i.e. **timebat, nisi paruisset legatis, ne senatus irasceretur.**
[3] i.e. **Hernici haec secum reputabant: Pudebit nos, si nec obstiterimus,** &c.; or **pudere se, si nec obstitissent,** &c.
[4] i.e. **Referente M. Antonio, senatui placuit ut M. Brutus, si... afuisset, legibus solveretur.**

---

747 A thing to be ascertained is sometimes expressed as the condition, instead of being expressed as the object, of the seeing or knowing.

**Ibo visam, si domist.** (Ter.)

**Nunc redeo: si forte frater redierit, viso.** (Ter.)

**Mirum ni hic me quasi muraenam exossare cogitat.** (Plaut.)

**Tu nisi mirumst, leno, plane perdidisti mulierem.** (Plaut.)

**Miror, illa superbia et importunitate si (Tarquinius) quemquam amicum habere potuit.** (Cic.)

749 3. A direct question (or exclamation) is put in the indicative mood (unless it concerns what some one is to do, not what he is or was doing: see §§ 631. 4; 674).

**Ut valet? ut meminit nostri?** (Hor.)

**Atticus. "Qui sermo fuit? quid actum est?" Cicero. "Scribam ad te, quum certum sciam."**

751 In conversational or animated language a question is often put, logically though not grammatically dependent on another verb or sentence, e.g. on such expletives as **dic mihi, loquere, cedo, responde, expedi, narra, vide; rogo, volo scire, fac sciam; viden, audin, scin;** &c. So frequently in Plautus and Terence, even where later writers would make the question dependent and use the subjunctive. (Compare English '*Tell me, where are you?*' '*Tell me where you are.*') Cf. §§ 671, 673.

*Continued on p.* 303

**Rogitant me ut valeam, quid agam, quid rerum geram.** (Plaut.)

**Vide quam iniquos sis prae studio.** (Ter.)

**Videte, ut hoc iste correxerit.** (Cic.)

**Quid fuit causae, cur in Africam Caesarem non sequerere, cum praesertim belli pars tanta restaret?** (Cic.)

**In curiam compelluntur incerti, quatenus Volero exerceret victoriam.** (Liv.)

**Legatos speculari jusserunt, num sollicitati animi sociorum ab rege Perseo essent.** (Liv.)

752 **'Laeter' ait 'doleamne geri lacrimabile bellum, in dubio est.'** (Ov.)

**Hoc doce, doleam, necne doleam, nihil interesse.** (Cic.)

**Tantum id interest, veneritne eo itinere ad urbem, an ab urbe in Campaniam redierit.** (Liv.)

**Quid quaeris? Perisse omnia aiebat, quod haud scio an ita sit.** (Cic.)

754 (*b*) Sentences with **forsitan** (**fors sit an**), and some with **quin**, fall strictly under the head of dependent questions.

**Concedo: forsitan aliquis aliquando ejusmodi quippiam fecerit.** (Cic.)

**Quid? illa quae forsitan ne sentiamus quidem, quanta sunt!** (Cic.)

**Quid est causae quin coloniam in Janiculum possint deducere?** (Cic.)

**Alterum dici non potest, quin ii qui nihil metuant, nihil angantur, nihil concupiscant, beati sint.** (Cic.)

**Neque Caesarem fefellit quin ab iis cohortibus, quae contra equitatum in quarta acie collocatae essent, initium victoriae oriretur.** (Caes.)

**Orgetorix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.** (Caes.)

756 (*c*) A question simply repeated in astonishment, &c. by the hearer is similarly put in the subjunctive, if dependent on an interrogative pronoun.

**Quid ergo narras? AN. Quid ego narrem? opera tua ad restim mihi quidem res redit planissume.** (Ter.)

**Ehem, Demea, haud aspexeram te: quid agitur? DE. Quid agatur? vostram nequeo mirari satis rationem.** (Ter.)

*Continued on p.* 304

**Dic, ubi ea nunc est, obsecro?** (Plaut.)
**Nimis velim, certum qui id faciat mihi, ubi Ballio hic leno habitat.** (Plaut.)
**Scire volo, quoi reddidisti?** (Plaut.)
**Quis ego sum saltem, si non sum Sosia? te interrogo.** (Plaut.)
**Rogo vos, judices, num si iste disertus est, ideo me damnari oportet?** (Vatin.)
**Vide, num ejus color pudoris signum usquam indicat?** (Ter.)
**At enim scin', quid mi in mentem venit?** (Plaut.)
**Ergo mecastor pulcher est: vide, caesaries quam decet!** (Plaut.)
**Viden, limulis, obsecro, ut contuentur!** (Plaut.)

753 4. Relative definitions are liable to be confused with dependent questions. **Scio quid quaeras,** '*I know your question.*' **Scio quod quaeris,** '*I know the answer to your question.*' **Scio quantum tu scis,** '*I know as much as you.*' **Scio quantum tu scias,** '*I know how much you know.*' **Dico quod sentio,** '*I say what I mean*' = '*I mean what I say.*' **Dico quid sentiam,** '*I give you my opinion.*' **Utrum placet, roga,** '*Put whichever question you like.*' **Utrum placeat, roga,** '*Ask which is approved.*'

**Senes omnia quae curant meminerunt, vadimónia constituta, qui sibi, cui ipsi debeant.** (Cic.)
**Ausculta paucis, et, quid te ego velim et tu quod quaeris, scies.** (Ter.)
**Quid concupiscas, tu videris: quod concupiveris, certe habebis.** (Anton.)

755 5. **Forsitan** is (chiefly in the poets and later writers) sometimes put with indicative, as if it were the same as **fortasse.**

**Forsitan haec aliquis, nam sunt quoque, parva vocabit.** (Ov.)
**Forsitan, infelix, ventos undasque timebas.** (Ov.)

In some expressions, especially with **nescio quis,** &c. the fact of the action is asserted in the indicative, and the verb belonging to the dependent question is omitted. (**Nescio quis** = '*some one or other.*')

**Venit eccum Calidorus: ducit nescioquem secum simul.** (Plaut.)
**Minime assentior iis, qui istam nescio quam indolentiam magno opere laudant, quae nec potest ulla esse, nec debet.** (Cic.)
**Acutae crebraeque sententiae ponentur, et nescio unde ex abdito erutae.** (Cic.)

---

757 6. A reply often puts interrogatively or admiratively some of the words of the other speaker. The mood is not changed (unless the case falls under § 756), but the person or pronoun is changed if necessary. Frequently **autem** accompanies the reply.

**AC. Tuus pater— CH. Quid meus pater? AC. Tuam amicam. CH. Quid eam? AC. Vidit. CH. Vidit? vae misero mihi.** (Plaut.)
**Quaeso edepol te, exsurge: pater advenit. CA. Tuus venit pater? Jube eum abire rursum.** (Plaut.)

*Continued on p. 305*

## (H) Subjunctive because dependent on another subjunctive or infinitive.

758 Subordinate sentences are often found with the verb in the subjunctive, not because of any special meaning (e.g. a non-real condition, a command, purpose, concession, &c.) which the verb has to express, but because they are stated not as a fact but as part of a thought. The principal sentence which they qualify has its verb in the infinitive or subjunctive. (If the subordinate sentence would in any case have had the subjunctive, even though the principal sentence had the indicative or imperative, it is not referred to this head, but to the head suitable to the special meaning.)

The subjunctive expresses an action qualifying another supposed, or abstractly conceived, action, i.e. in sentences forming an essential part of an infinitive or subjunctive sentence, and neither expressing an independent declaration of facts, nor simply definitive of existing persons or things or classes.

N.B. To this head belongs the substitution of the subjunctive for the indicative, when a speech or thoughts are reported.

These sentences are chiefly relative, or introduced by **si, cum, dum,** or **quod.**

760 1. Subjunctive, because dependent on infinitive.

For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 636.

**Jam mihi videor navasse operam, quod huc venerim.** (Cic.) But **navavi operam, quod huc veni.**

**Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de vita.** (Cic.) But **si ita melius est, migro de vita.**

**Hoc video, dum breviter voluerim dicere, dictum esse a me paullo obscurius.** (Cic.) **Hoc dum breviter volui dicere, dictum est,** &c.

**Negant intueri lucem esse fas ei, qui a se hominem occisum esse fateatur.** (Cic.) From **lucem non debet ille intueri, qui...fatetur.**

**Non enim is sum, qui, quicquid videtur, tale dicam esse, quale videatur.** (Cic.) **Tale est, quale videtur.**

**Romulus, ut natus sit, cum Remo fratre dicitur ab Amulio exponi jussus esse.** (Cic.) From **Romulus, ut natus est, expositus est.**

2. Subjunctive, because dependent on subjunctive (usually on one which expresses an hypothesis, condition, purpose, result, or reported speech).

**Si luce quoque canes latrent, quum deos salutatum aliqui venerint, crura, opinor, eis suffringantur, quod acres sint etiam tum, quum suspitio nulla sit.** (Cic.) From **his canibus crura suffringuntur, quod acres sunt, quum suspitio nulla est.**

*Continued on p.* 306

## Indicative although dependent on a subjunctive or infinitive.

759 The use of the subjunctive mood in sentences subordinate to a principal clause which has the subjunctive or infinitive is carefully restricted, so as not to throw an air of unreality about what is intended to be stated as fact. There are indeed many sentences in which it matters not whether the subordinate clause retain the indicative, and thus state a thing as it appears to all, or whether the subjunctive be used so as to state the same fact as part of the thought of the speaker or some one else. But there are other sentences where what is a fact is to be stated as such, and then the indicative must be used. Especially frequent in this way is the indicative with **ut**, '*as*,' and **dum** when simply meaning '*while*.' Obviously in these cases a subjunctive might suggest a wrong meaning, e.g. a purpose or consequence or proviso.

The indicative is regularly found where the sentence, grammatically dependent on a subjunctive or infinitive sentence, contains an independent declaration of fact, and frequently in other sentences, which express simple definitions or qualifications.

761 1. Indicative, although dependent on infinitive.

**Apud Hypanim fluvium, qui ab Europae parte in Pontum influit, Aristoteles ait bestiolas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant.** (Cic.)

**Eloquendi vis efficit, ut et ea, quae ignoramus, discere, et ea, quae scimus, alios docere possimus.** (Cic.)

**Putasne posse facere, ut, quae Verres nefarie fecerit, ea aeque acerba et indigna videantur esse his, qui audient, atque illis visa sunt, qui senserunt?** (Cic.)

**Ita mihi salvam rempublicam sistere liceat, ut moriens feram mecum spem, mansura in vestigio suo fundamenta reipublicae quae jecero.** (Aug.)

**Vos quoque aequum est, quae vestra munia sunt, quo quisque loco positus erit, quod imperabitur, impigre praestare.** (Liv.)

2. Indicative, although dependent on subjunctive.

**Mors si timeretur, non L. Brutus arcens eum reditu tyrannum, quem ipse expulerat, in proelio concidisset.** (Cic.)

**Si haec contra ac dico essent omnia, tamen, &c.** (Cic.)

**Ego omnibus, unde petitur, hoc consilii dederim.** (Cic.)

**Illud quidem statim curatur, ut quicquid caelati argenti fuit in illius bonis, ad istum deferatur.** (Cic.) I.e. the *result* of the orders was that all the plate was taken to Verres' house. The subj. would have implied that this was the order.

*Continued on p.* 307

In Hortensio memoria fuit tanta, quantam in nullo cognovisse me arbitror, ut, quae secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset. (Cic.) From quae secum commentatus erat ea...reddebat, quibus cogitaverat.

Sic enim mihi perspicere videor, ita natos esse nos, ut inter omnes esset societas quaedam, major autem, ut quisque proxime accederet. (Cic.) From inter omnes est societas...ut accedit.

Erant multi, qui quamquam non ita se rem habere arbitrarentur, tamen libenter id, quod dixi, de illis oratoribus praedicarent. (Cic.) From multi quamquam...arbitraretur tamen...praedicabant.

Facturusne operae pretium sim, si a primordio urbis res populi Romani perscripserim nec satis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim. (Liv.) From faciam operae pretium si...perscripsero.

**Orator surripiat oportet imitationem, ut is, qui audiet, cogitet plura quam videat.** (Cic.)

'**Ne nihil remissum dicatis, remitto,**' **inquit Papirius,** '**ne utique dorsum demulceatis, quum ex equis descendetis.**' (Liv.) **Descendatis** might have meant '*since you are dismounting*.'

**Quotus enim quisque philosophorum invenitur, qui sit ita moratus, ut ratio postulat?** (Cic.)

**Servus est nemo, qui non, quantum audet et quantum potest, conferat ad salutem voluntatis.** (Cic.)

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

### OF REPORTED SPEECH.

762 THE use of the infinitive and subjunctive in reports of speeches and thoughts deserves collective notice.

When a statement is directly made, a question directly put, or a supposition directly expressed, the *language* is said to be *direct* (**oratio recta**). So also in a report which preserves the independent form in which the speech, &c. was delivered; as, 'Caesar said: I am about to march,' &c.

When a statement, question, or supposition is reported in a form which makes it dependent in construction on some such words as *said*, the language is said to be oblique or indirect (**oratio obliqua**); thus, 'Caesar said that he was about to march.'

763 (A) The moods used in the **oratio obliqua** are the infinitive and subjunctive, never (unless by an irregularity) the indicative.

1. All statements in principal sentences in the indicative mood in the **oratio recta** become infinitives in the **oratio obliqua** (§ 535). Those relative sentences in which **qui = et is** or **nam is, quum = et tum**, &c. (being not really subordinate sentences) are properly and usually put in the infinitive (§§ 775—777).

764 2. Questions in the indicative mood in **oratio recta**, are, if closely dependent on a verb of asking, put in the subjunctive, being in fact ordinary indirect questions (§ 750);

but, if they are part of the continuous report of a speech, they are put in the infinitive, if of the first or third person; in the subjunctive, if of the second person.

e.g. **Quid facio?** becomes **quid (se) facere?**
**Quid facis?** becomes **quid (ille) faceret?**
**Quid facit?** becomes **quid (illum) facere?**

(But **rogavit, quid (ipse, ille,** &c.) **faceret** for all alike.)

765 3. All subordinate sentences (§§ 738, 758), as also all sentences in the subjunctive and imperative moods in **oratio recta**, are put in the subjunctive (comp. § 672), with few exceptions, viz.:

(*a*) The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis to a conditional sentence, are (in **oratio obliqua**) expressed in the active voice by the future participle with **fuisse**: in the passive, by the periphrasis **futurum fuisse ut** (§ 771). The future participle with **esse** is used also for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) active; and **fore** or **futurum esse ut** for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) passive.

(*b*) Occasionally short relative clauses are attracted into the infinitive: (compare § 701).

**Scribebant, ut feras quasdam nulla mitescere arte, sic immitem et implacabilem ejus viri animum esse.** (Liv.)

**Admonemus cives nos eorum esse et, si non easdem opes habere, eandem tamen patriam incolere.** (Liv.)

**Affirmavi quidvis me potius perpessurum, quam ex Italia ad bellum civile exiturum.** (Cic.)

(*c*) Sentences with **dum** sometimes (in poets, &c.) retain the indicative (cf. § 759).

**Dic hospes Spartae nos te hic vidisse jacentes dum sanctis patriae legibus obsequimur.** (Cic.)

766 (B) 1. The tenses of the infinitive are present, or perfect, or future according as the time would have been present, past, or future in the **oratio recta**.

2. The tenses of the subjunctive are usually secondary, viz. imperfect and pluperfect, especially in commands or questions; but the present and perfect are sometimes used, especially if the verb on which the whole **oratio obliqua** depends be in the present.

767 (C) In ordinary historical accounts no other *person* than the third can in general be used. Thus

1. Instead of pronouns of the 1st or 2nd persons, the pronouns **se, suus, ipse, is, ille**, in the requisite cases are used.

The pronouns **hic**, *this near me*, and **iste**, *that near you*, are rarely found in **oratio obliqua**.

(**Nos** and **noster** are sometimes used by Caesar of the Roman people or Roman army generally.)

2. All finite verbs are put in the third person.

768 The following tabular statement of the above may be useful:

(A) Mood: Principal sentences.

| | *Oratio Recta.* | *Oratio Obliqua.* |
|---|---|---|
| *Statements* | Indicative | Infinitive. |
| | Subjunctive (hypothesis) | In active, future part. with **fuisse**, or sometimes (for present or imperfect) **esse.** In passive **futurum fuisse, ut,** &c., or sometimes (for present or imperfect) **fore** or **futurum esse, ut,** &c. |
| *Questions* | Indicative: 1st & 3rd pers. | Infinitive |
| | Indicative: 2nd pers. | Subjunctive |
| | Subjunctive | Subjunctive |
| *Commands* or *Prohibitions* | Imperative / Subjunctive | Subjunctive |

Subordinate sentences.

| | |
|---|---|
| Indicative / Subjunctive | Subjunctive |

(B) Tense.

| | *Subjunctive.* |
|---|---|
| Present / Future | Imperfect, sometimes Present |
| Completed Future / Perfect | Pluperfect, sometimes Perfect |
| Imperfect | Imperfect |
| Pluperfect: ordinary | Pluperfect |
| Pluperfect: hypothetical | Future participle with **fuerim** |

| | *Infinitive.* |
|---|---|
| Present | Present |
| Future / Completed Future | Fut. part. with **esse** |
| Perfect / Imperfect / Pluperfect | Perfect |

(C) Person.

| | |
|---|---|
| **ego, meus, nos, noster, tu, tuus, vos, vester, iste, is, ille.** | **se, ipse, suus,** (usually) of the subject of the sentence: **is, ille,** of what is not the subject. |
| **hic, nunc,** often by | **ille, tum, tunc** |

769 The above rules will be best illustrated by the following extracts:

ORATIO RECTA.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faci*et*, in eam partem *ibunt* atque ibi *erunt* Helvetii, ubi *tu* eos constitu*eris* atque esse volu*eris*; sin bello persequi persever*abis*, reminisc*itor* et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus *es*, cum ii qui flumen transi*erant* suis auxilium ferre non pot*erant*, ne ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtuti tribu*eris* aut *nos* despexeris. *Nos* ita a patribus majoribusque *nostris* didici*mus* ut magis virtute, quam dolo contend*amus* aut insidiis nit*amur*. Quare ne commi*seris* ut *hic* locus ubi constit*imus* ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capi*at* aut memoriam prod*at*.

770 Eo *mihi* minus dubitationis da*tur*, quod eas res quas vos (legati Helvetii) commemora*vistis* memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero quo minus merito populi Rom. accid*erunt*; qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fu*it* difficile cavere: sed eo deceptus *est*, quod neque commissum a se intelligebat quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum put*abat*. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vo*lo*, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *me* invito iter per provinciam per vim temptas*tis*, quod Haeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexas*tis*, memoriam deponere pos*sum*? Quod *vestra* victoria tam insolenter gloria*mini*, quodque tam diu *vos* impune injurias tulisse[1] admira*mini*, eodem

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(Is ita cum Caesare egit): Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis fac*eret*, in eam partem *ituros* atque ibi *futuros* Helvetios, ubi eos *Caesar* constitu*isset* atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi persever*aret*, reminis*ceretur* et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus *esset*, cum ii qui flumen transis*sent* suis auxilium ferre non pos*sent*, ne ob eam rem aut *suae* magnopere virtuti tribu*eret* aut *ipsos* despic*eret*: *se* ita a patribus majoribusque *suis* didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contend*erent* aut insidiis nit*erentur*. Quare ne commi*tteret* ut *is* locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen cap*eret* aut memoriam prod*eret*.

(His Caesar ita respondit:) Eo *sibi* minus dubitationis da*ri*, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoras*sent* memoria tene*ret*, atque eo gravius fer*re* quo minus merito populi Rom. accid*issent*: qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fu*isse* difficile cavere; sed eo deceptu*m*, quod neque commissum a se intelligeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum puta*ret*. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci v*ellet*, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *eo* invito iter per provinciam per vim temptas*sent*, quod Haeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexas*sent*, memoriam deponere po*sse*? Quod *sua* victoria tam insolenter gloriar*entur*, quodque tam diu *se* impune injurias tulisse admir*arentur*, eodem perti-

[1] '*Have carried off scotfree*,' i.e. '*have not been punished for*.'

ORATIO RECTA.

pertin*et*. Consuer*unt* enim d*ii* immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen si obsides a *vobis mihi* d*abuntur*, uti ea quae pollic*emini* facturos intelliga*m*, et si Haeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intul*istis*, item si Allobrogibus satisfaci*etis*, *vobis*cum pacem faci*am*.

771 *Rem male egit natura*, quod cervis et cornicibus vitam diuturnam, quorum id nihil interesset[1], hominibus, quorum maxime interfuisset, tam exiguam vitam ded*it*: quorum si aetas potuisset esse longinquior, omnibus perfectis artibus, omni doctrina, hominum vita erudi*ta esset*.

[1] Subjunctive by § 732.

772 Quid *est* levius aut turpius quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

773 Deorum immortalium benignitate, *meis* consiliis, patientia militum, Vei*i* jam *erunt* in potestate populi Romani: quid de praeda faciendum *censetis?*

774 Quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani adtul*erint*, id iis eripi quis pati poss*it?*

775 Ar*a est* in vestibulo templi Laciniae Junonis, cujus cinis nullo unquam move*tur* vento.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

*nere*. Consue*sse* enim de*os* immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum *ea* ita sint, tamen si obsides ab *iis sibi* d*entur*, uti ea quae pollic*eantur* facturos intelliga*t*, et si Haeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intul*erint*, item si Allobrogibus satisfaci*ant*, *sese* cum *iis* pacem *esse* fac*turum*. (Caes.)

Theophrastus moriens *accusasse naturam* dicitur, quod cervis et cornicibus vitam diuturnam, quorum id nihil interesset, hominibus, quorum maxime interfuisset, tam exiguam vitam ded*isset*: quorum si aetas potuisset esse longinquior, *futurum fuisse ut* omnibus perfectis artibus, omni doctrina, hominum vita erudi*retur*. (Cic.)

(Tribuni militum nihil temere agendum existimabant:) Quid *esse* levius aut turpius quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium? (Caes.)

(Litteras ad senatum misit,) deum immortalium benignitate, *suis* consiliis, patientia militum, Vei*os* jam *fore* in potestate populi Romani: quid de praeda faciendum *censerent?* (Liv.)

(Dixit)...Quod vero ad amicitiam populi Rom. adtul*issent*, id iis eripi quis pati poss*et?* (Caes.)

(Fama est) ar*am esse* in vestibulo templi Laciniae Junonis, cujus (= et ejus) cinerem nullo unquam move*ri* vento. (Liv.)

| Oratio recta. | Oratio obliqua. |
|---|---|
| 776 **Reg*itur* mund*us* numine deorum: est quasi communis urbs et civitas hominum et deorum...ex quo illud natura conseq*uitur* ut,** &c. | **Mund*um* censent reg*i* numine deorum *eum*que es*se* quasi communem urb*em* et civitat*em* hominum et deorum...ex quo illud natura conseq*ui* ut,** &c. (Cic.) |
| 777 **Jace*nt* tamdiu irrit*ae* actiones quae de *nost*ris commodis fer*un*tur, cum interim de sanguine ac supplicio *nostr*o lat*a* le*x* confestim exercet*ur*.** (Comp. §§ 729, 733.) | **(Aegerrime id plebs ferebat:) jace*re* tam diu irrit*as* actiones quae de *su*is commodis fer*ren*tur cum interim de sanguine ac supplicio *su*o lat*am* le*gem* confestim exerc*eri*.** (Liv.) |

778 When an indicative mood is found in the midst of **oratio obliqua**, it expresses an assertion of the narrator, not of the person whose speech is being reported; as

**Caesar per exploratores certior factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse.** (Caes.)

(The clause **quam Gallis concesserat** is Caesar's explanation for the benefit of his readers: the scouts would describe it to him by the local relations.)

**Interim Caesari nuntiatur Sulmonenses, quod oppidum a Confinio VII. milium intervallo abest, cupere ea facere quae vellet, sed a Q. Lucretio senatore et Attio Peligno prohiberi, qui id oppidum VII. cohortium praesidio tenebant.** (Caes.)

**Diogenes quidem Cynicus dicere solebat Harpalum, qui temporibus illis praedo felix habebatur, contra deos testimonium dicere, quod in illa fortuna tam diu viveret.** (Cic.)

779 But this principle is sometimes neglected, and the indicative put where the subjunctive ought to stand.

**C. Mario magna atque mirabilia portendi haruspex dixerat: proinde, quae animo agitabat, fretus dis ageret.** (Sall.)

**Hortatur, ad cetera, quae levia sunt, parem animum gerant.** (Sall.)

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### ORDER OF WORDS AND SENTENCES.

780 i. Order of words in a prose sentence.

The order in which the words stand in a Latin sentence is not fixed by any invariable rule but depends chiefly on the requirements of *facility of comprehension*, *emphasis* and *rhythm*.

(A) *Facility of comprehension* suggests the following rules, which however are frequently superseded, if emphasis or rhythm require a different order.

781 1. The subject is put first, the predicate last, and the object and other qualifications of the predicate interposed, in order that the precise extent and purport of the predicate may be known, before the hearer or reader can suppose the sense to be complete.

**Cur ego tuas partes suscipio? Cur M. Tullius P. Africani monumenta requirit, P. Scipio eum, qui illa sustulit, defendit?** (Cic.)

In poetry the order depends greatly on the requirements of the metre:

**Ponitur ad patrios barbara praeda deos.** (Ov.)

782 2. Qualificatory expressions (except attributes) are for a similar reason placed immediately before the word they qualify. Consequently,

(*a*) The preposition precedes its substantive, either immediately, or with qualificatory expressions only interposed.

**Consul de bello ad populum tulit.** (Liv.)
**Sine ullo metu et summa cum honestate vivemus.** (Cic.)
**Haec officia pertinent ad earum rerum, quibus utuntur homines, facultatem, ad opes, ad copias.** (Cic.)

783 Some prepositions, chiefly disyllabic, occasionally stand after a relative pronoun without a substantive.

**Cum** is always suffixed to personal and usually to relative pronouns.

**Quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat.** (Caes.)
**Homo disertus non intellegit eum, quem contra dicit, laudari a se, eos, apud quos dicit, vituperari.** (Cic.)

In poetry the order is often modified.

**Solus avem caelo dejecit ab alto.** (Verg.)
**Foedera regum vel Gabiis vel cum rigidis aequata Sabinis.** (Hor.)

784 (*b*) Adverbs and oblique cases precede the verb or adjective to which they belong.

**Bellum civile opinione plerumque et fama gubernatur.** (Cic.)
**Multi autem, Gnathonum similes, sunt loco, fortuna, fama superiores.** (Cic.)

(*c*) Negatives precede the word they qualify.

**Nec animo nec benevolentiae nec patientiae cujusquam pro vobis cedam.** (Plancus.)
**Nihil ne ab iis quidem tribunis ad Velitras memorabile factum.** (Liv.)

785 3. Attributes, whether adjectives, substantives in apposition, or oblique cases, usually follow their substantive, but the reverse order is frequent, and with demonstrative pronouns, and adjectives of number and quantity, is the rule.

**Principio male reprehendunt praemeditationem rerum futurarum.** (Cic.)
**Balbus quaestor, magna numerata pecunia, magno pondere auri, majore argenti coacto de publicis exactionibus, Kal. Juniis traiecit se in regnum Bogudis, plane bene peculiatus.** (Asin. Pollio.)

**Bellienus verna Demetrii Domitium quendam, nobilem illic, Caesaris hospitem, a contraria factione nummis acceptis comprehendit et strangulavit.** (Cael.)

Adjectives and (not so frequently) a genitive case are sometimes put before, instead of between or after, a preposition and its substantive: e.g. **Magna ex parte, tribus de rebus, ea de causa; deorum in mente.**

785 In many expressions the order of the words is fixed by custom:

e.g. **Populus Romanus, civis Romanus, res familiaris, res gestae, aes alienum, jus civile, senatus consultum, magister equitum, tribunus plebi, pontifex maximus, Bona Dea, Carthago nova,** &c.

787 4. When a substantive is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, or by both a genitive and a prepositional expression, the adjective in the first case, the genitive in the second case, is usually put first, and the other attribute interposed between that and the substantive, e.g.

**Amicitia nullam aetatis degendae rationem patitur esse expertem sui.** (Cic.)

**Cujus rationis vim ex illo caelesti Epicuri de regula et judicio volumine accepimus.** (Cic.)

788 5. Relative pronouns regularly stand at the commencement of their clause, never after their verb.

**Hic est, quem quaerimus. Quae cum ita sint, hoc loquor.**

But sometimes an emphatic word (or words) is prefixed to the relative, especially when the demonstrative sentence is put after the relative sentence.

**Romam quae apportata sunt, ad aedem Honoris et Virtutis videmus.**

789 6. Connective adverbs and interrogative pronouns usually (except for emphasis' sake) stand at the head of their clause or only after words (e.g. relative or demonstrative pronouns) referring to the preceding sentence; never after their verb.

**Quae cujusmodi sint, facilius jam intelligemus, cum ad ipsa ridiculorum genera veniemus.** (Cic.)

**Haec tu, Eruci, tot et tanta si nactus esses in reo, quam diu diceres?** (Cic.)

But in poetry we have, e.g.:

**Tu numina ponti victa domas ipsumque, regit qui numina ponti.** (Ov.)

790 7. Words belonging to two or more co-ordinate words or expressions should strictly be put either before them all or after them all. But it is very usual, partly for rhythm's sake, for the common word to be put after the first of the co-ordinated words.

**Jam viris vires, jam ferro sua vis, jam consilia ducibus deerant.** (Liv.)

**An tu existimas, cum esset Hippocrates ille Cous, fuisse tum alios medicos, qui morbis, alios qui volneribus, alios qui oculis mederentur.** (Cic.)

**Una est enim eloquentia, nam sive de caeli natura loquitur, sive de terra, sive de divina vi sive de humana, sive ex inferiore loco sive ex aequo sive ex superiore, sive ut impellat homines, sive ut doceat, sive ut deterreat, rivis est diducta oratio, non fontibus.** (Cic.)

But in poetry irregularities occur: e.g.

**Pacis eras mediusque belli.** (Hor.)

791 (B) Emphasis suggests the following rules:

1. Any word which is to be made prominent is placed at or near the beginning of the sentence, or sometimes, if not the primary predicate, at the end (as an unusual position).

**A malis mors abducit, non a bonis.** (Cic.)
**Dedi veniam homini impudenter petenti.** (Cic.)
**Sequemur igitur hoc tempore et in hac quaestione potissimum Stoicos.** (Cic.)

2. An unemphatic word is sometimes inserted between words connected with one another, partly to throw the words before it into greater relief, partly to prevent itself occupying a more important position in the sentence. So especially **est, sunt,** &c.

**Quadridui sermonem superioribus ad te perscriptum libris misimus.** (Cic.)
**Qui in fortunae periculis sunt ac varietate versati.** (Cic.)
**Primum Marcelli ad Nolam praelio populus se Romanus erexit.** (Cic.)

3. Contrasted words are put next to one another.

**Ego Q. Fabium, senem adulescens, ita dilexi ut aequalem.** (Cic.)
**Quid quod tu te ipse in custodiam dedisti?** (Cic.)

4. Contrasted pairs of words are often put with the words in one pair in a reverse order to that of the other pair, (two of the contrasted words still often being together as by last rule). This figure is called **chiasmus** (i. e. *crossing*).

**Ratio enim nostra consentit; pugnat oratio.** (Cic.)
**Cum spe vincendi simul abjecisti certandi etiam cupiditatem.** (Cic.)
**Clariorem inter Romanos deditio Postumium, quam Pontium incruenta victoria inter Samnites fecit.** (Liv.)
**Cedere alius, alius obtruncari.** (Sall.)

5. Where cumulative effect or a sense of similarity rather than contrast is desired, the same order of words is preserved in the component clauses. This figure is called **anaphora** (i. e. *repetition*).

**His similes sunt omnes qui virtuti student: levantur vitiis, levantur erroribus.** (Cic.)
**Ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas rupes, subire iniquissimum locum.** (Caes.)

792 (C) Rhythm admits of no definite rules being given, but suggests

1. That short words or expressions occupying a distinct position as subject, predicate, &c. be put first.

**Erant ei veteres inimicitiae cum duobus Rosciis Amerinis.** (Cic.)
**Terrebat et proximus annus lugubris duorum consulum funeribus.** (Liv.)
**Movet ferocem animum juvenis seu ira seu detrectandi certaminis pudor seu inexsuperabilis vis fati.** (Liv.)

2. That there be variety in the arrangements of neighbouring sentences as regards prosody and syntax. (Thus B. 4, and B. 5, are often found together.)

**Vide quid intersit inter tuam libidinem majorumque auctoritatem, inter amorem furoremque tuum et illorum consilium atque prudentiam.** (Cic.)

**Adde huc fontium gelidas perennitates, liquores perlucidos amnium, riparum vestitus viridissimos, speluncarum concavas amplitudines, saxorum asperitates, impendentium montium altitudines immensitatesque camporum : adde etiam reconditas auri argentique venas infinitamque vim marmoris.** (Cic.)

793 (D) The position of the following adverbs may be specially noticed:

(*a*) **Nam** always, **namque** almost always, at the beginning; **enim** after one or (rarely) two words.

(*b*) **Itaque** almost always at beginning; **igitur** usually (except in Sallust) after one or two words.

(*c*) **Etiam** immediately precedes the word it qualifies; **quŏque, quidem, demum,** immediately succeed such a word.

(*d*) **Tamen** first except for emphasis; **autem, vero,** after one (or two closely connected) words.

(*e*) **Ne** (affirmative) is (except in a peculiar class of answers in Plautus) prefixed to a personal or demonstrative pronoun.

794 ii. Position of subordinate sentences.

1. Subordinate sentences (except those which express a result) follow the rule of qualificatory words or phrases, i.e. they are put before the principal sentence to which they belong; either before the whole of it or before all but a few words.

**Cum hostium copiae non longe absunt, etiamsi inruptio nulla facta est, tamen pecua relinquuntur, agricultura deseritur.** (Cic.)

**Qui autem ita faciet, ut oportet, primum vigilet in deligendo (quem imitetur), deinde, quem probavit, in eo, quae maxime excellent, ea diligentissime persequatur.** (Cic.)

**Quid autem agatur cum aperuero, facile erit statuere quam sententiam dicatis.** (Cic.)

2. A short principal sentence is often prefixed to the whole or part of the subordinate sentence, especially if this be a dependent interrogative.

**Stoicorum autem non ignoras quam sit subtile vel spinosum potius disserendi genus.** (Cic.)

# SUPPLEMENT TO SYNTAX.

I. *Prepositions and quasi-prepositional Adverbs.*

II. *Conjunctions.*

III. *Negative particles.*

IV. *Interrogative particles.*

V. *Pronouns.*

---

## 1. *Prepositions and quasi-prepositional Adverbs.*

795 i. (*a*) Prepositions proper; are those which are not used except with a substantive in an oblique case (or in composition).

**ab, ad, apud, cis, cum, de, ex, in, inter, ob, per, pro, sed, sine, sub, uls.** To these may be added **erga, penes, tenus.**

(*b*) Some other words have both an adverbial and a prepositional use, i.e. are used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in an oblique case:

**adversus, ante, circa, circiter, circum, citra, clam, clanculum, contra, coram, ergo, extra, infra, intra, intus, juxta, palam, pone, post, prae, praeter, procul, prope, propter, secundum, simul, subter, super, supra, ultra.**

(*c*) A few particles used only in composition, viz. **amb-**; **an-, dis-, per-, red-, -secus**; and a few adverbs closely akin to prepositions, e.g. **contro, intro, retro, simul, simitu** are also noticed.

796 ii. The following are (*a*) used with accusative and ablative; **in, sub, super. Clam** has very rarely an accusative.

(*b*) Used with accusative only;

**ad, adversus, ante, apud, circum, circa, circiter, cis, citra, clam, clanculum, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, ob, penes, per, pone, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, supra, uls, ultra.**

(*c*) With ablative only; **ab, coram, cum, de, ex, intus, palam, prae, pro, procul, sed, simul, sine.**

(*d*) With accusative and dative; **advorsum, contra, juxta.**

(*e*) With genitive and ablative; **tenus.**

(*f*) With genitive only; **ergo.**

797 iii. (*a*) Prepositions used in composition (as well as with oblique cases);

**ab, ad, apud, cum, de, ex, in, inter, ob, per, prae, pro, sed, sub.**

(*b*) Used with verbs, but without clear mark of composition;

**ante, contra, intra, post, praeter, subter, super.**

798 Occasionally the preposition is separated from its case by other words. This is usual with **per** in oaths and adjurations: but otherwise is almost confined to poetry.

**Ergo** and **versus** are always subjoined to the substantive; **tenus** to the substantive or its epithet. **Cum** is always subjoined to a personal pronoun, and often to a relative pronoun. Besides these:—

Cicero subjoins **propter** occasionally to personal and relative pronouns; **de, contra,** and, rarely, **ante, circa, circum** to relatives.

Vergil occasionally subjoins **circum, contra, inter, juxta, penes, propter, sine, subter, supra**; and, when an attribute follows, **ab, ad, ex, in, per, sub, ultra.** Other writers have occasional instances, Livy and Tacitus not infrequently; especially after relatives.

799 **Abs, ăb, ā,** *from* (**ab** before vowels, **a** before consonants): with ablative only.

*From* (*a*) e.g. **ab urbe,** *from the city;* **a puero hoc fecit,** *he has done it from his boyhood;* **a Fufio solvere,** *to pay by a draft on Fufius;* **possum a me dare,** *I can supply* (*it*) *from home.*

(*b*) Of the agent: *from* or *by;* **captus a rege,** *taken by the king;* **zona torrida ab igni,** *a belt scorched by fire.*

(*c*) Of the department concerned: **a te stat,** *he is on your side;* **servus a rationibus,** *a slave for book-keeping.*

In composition: **abs** before **c, q, t**; **as** before **p**; **ab** before **d, l, n, r, s, j, h,** and vowels; **au** before **f,** except in **afui, afore**; **a** before **m, v.**

It denotes *separation;* e.g. **abscedere,** *to go away;* **abdicare,** *to cry off, renounce; consumption;* e.g. **absorbere,** *to sup up; reversal;* e.g. **a jungere,** *to unyoke.*

800 **Absque,** *without,* used only as preposition with ablative. Not in Cicero or Augustan writers.

**Absque sententia** (Quintil.), *without thinking.* In Plautus **absque te foret** (conditional clause), *had it not been for you.*

801 **Ad,** *to* (*but not into*): with accusative only:

(*a*) *To;* **ire ad Capuam,** *to go to Capua;* **ad arma,** *to arms;* **ad necem caedi,** *to be beaten to death;* comp. **ad fătim (affatim),** § 227; **admodum,** (*up to the limit?*) *very.*

**Ad septingentos periere,** *They perished to the number of seven hundred.* Sometimes the prepositional character is forgotten; e.g. **ad mille et sep-**

**tingenti caesi**, *up to* 1700 *men were killed;* **ad hoc** (*in addition to this*), *besides, moreover.*

(*b*) *At, near, before:* **ad manum habere**, *to have at his hand;* **ad vinum disertus**, *eloquent over his wine;* **ad postremum**, *at last;* **ad hiemem**, *on the approach of winter.*

(*c*) *Looking at* (of a model or object): **ad hunc modum instituere**, *to train up after this fashion;* **ad ludibrium salutare**, *to greet in mockery;* **comparare ad lecticam homines**, *to get porters for the sedan.*

In composition: **ad** is usually assimilated to **c** and (written **c**) to **q**, and the **d** omitted before **gn**. But it is also often assimilated to **p**, **f**, **g**, **t**, **n**, **l**, **r**, and the **d** is often omitted before **s**.

*To, at:* **accēdere**, *to approach;* **adoptare**, *to adopt;* **adamare**, *to fall in love;* **addubitare**, *to come to doubt.*

*In addition:* **agnasci**, *to be born* (*grow*) *into a family* (often only intensive); **adĕdĕre**, *to eat up;* **attrectare**, *to handle.*

802 **Adversum, adversus** (also **exadversum, exadversus**, as adverb rarely) with dative and accusative. *Towards, against:*

(*a*) with dative: **venire advorsum mihi** (Plaut.), *to come to fetch me;*

(*b*) with accusative: **exadversus eum locum**, *opposite to that place;* **adversus montem**, *breasting the hill;* **adversus ea respondere**, *to reply to this;* **adversus edictum**, *against the edict.*

803 **Amb-, am-, an-** in composition only; *around, on both sides* (comp. ἀμφί, ἄμφω, **ambo**); e.g.
**ambīre**, *go round, canvass;* **ampŭtare**, *lop around, cut off;* **ancīsus**, *cut round* or *at both ends.*

804 **Ante** (**antid**, *old*) *before:* as adverb, and with accusative.

(*a*) *Before*, as adverb: **paucis ante diebus** (*before by a few days*, § 496), *a few days before.*

(*b*) With accusative: **ante ostium stare**, *to stand before the door;* **ante alios miserandus**, *pitiable before* (*above*) *others.*

For **antehac, antea**, *previously*, § 212.

In composition; **antecellere**, (*project*) *excel;* **anteponere**, *place in front.*

805 **Apud**, *at;* only with accusative: usually with names of persons. **Apud me esse**, *at my house* or *in my judgment;* **non sum apud me** (Ter.), *I am not in my senses;* **apud populum manumissus**, *freed in presence of the people;* **apud Ciceronem**, *in Cicero's writings.*

**Apud aedem Bellonae**, *at the temple of Bellona.*

806 **Circum, circa, circiter**, *round, about;* both as adverbs and with accusative.

(*a*) **Circum, circa**, of space; **circum undique convenire**, *to come from all sides around;* **circa pectus**, *round his breast;* **circum amicos mittere**, *to send round to one's friends.*

(*b*) **Circiter** of time and number: **diebus circiter quindecim pervenire**, *to arrive within fifteen days;* **octavam circiter horam redire**, *to return about the eighth hour.*

(*c*) **Circa**, *about*, i.e. *concerning* (post-Augustan): **circa hoc disputare**, *to dispute about this;* **circa deos neglegens**, *careless in divine matters.*

**Quocirca** (for **quodcirca?**), *wherefore;* **idcirco**, *on that account.*

In composition (loose); **circumdare**, *throw around;* **circumducere**, **-scribere**, **-venire**, used specially in metaphorical sense, *cheat.*

807 **Cis**, **citra**, *on this side*, with accusative: **citra** also as adverb; **citro** (adv.), *hitherwards.* **Cis** is usually opposed to **trans** (**uls** being antiquated); **citra**, **citro** to **ultra**, **ultro.**

(*a*) As adverb: **dextra diriguit nec citra mota nec ultra**, *his right-hand grew stiff, moving neither to him, nor from him;* **telum citra cadit**, *the dart falls short;* **verba ultro citroque habita**, *words exchanged between them.*

(*b*) As preposition: **cis flumen esse**, *to be on this side the stream;* **citra veritatem**, *falling short of truth.*

(*c*) **Citra**, *without*, only post-Augustan: **citra docentem scire**, *to know without a teacher;* **longe citra aemulum**, *quite without a rival.*

808 **Clam**, used both as (*a*) adverb, and (*b*) with an accusative.

(*a*) *Secretly:* **vel vi, vel clam, vel precario**, *by force, or secretly, or on sufferance;* **nec id clam esse potuit**, *and this could not be concealed.*

(*b*) *Unknown to:* **clam matrem suam**, *without the knowledge of his mother.*

**Clam** is very rarely used with ablative. **Clanculum** is also used as adverb and once with accusative.

809 **Com** (*old*), **cum**, *with*, only with an ablative. It is placed *after* the personal pronouns and the relative (except usually **quibus**).

**Caesar cum legionibus**, *Caesar with the legions;* **cum gladio**, *wearing a sword;* **cum cura cavere**, *to take careful precautions;* **tecum loqueris**, *you are talking to yourself;* **cum animo suo volvere**, *to turn it over in his mind;* **tecum actio est**, *an action lies against you.*

In composition: **com-** before **p**, **b**, **m**; **co-** before vowels; **con-** before **v**, **j**, and before dentals and linguals generally, except that **n** is often assimilated before **l** and **r.**

*Together:* e.g. **conjurare**, *to conspire;* **confiteri**, *to confess to another;* **commutare**, *to barter.*

*Completely:* e.g. **concoquere**, *to digest;* **condemnare**, *to condemn;* **consequi**, *to overtake;* **constare**, *to be well ascertained.*

810 **Contra**, *opposite to;* both as adverb and with a substantive, apparently in dative (Plaut., Ter.) but usually accusative cases.

(*a*) *Opposite:* **stat contra**, *he stands opposite;* **contra me**, *opposite me.*

(*b*) *In return:* **contra diligere**, *to requite love;* with dative (or *ablative of price?*) **contra auro vendere**, *to sell for gold.*

(*c*) *Contrary:* **contra quam fas est**, *contrary to what is right;* **in stultitia contra est**, *it is just the other way in folly;* **contra ea**, *on the other hand.*

(*d*) *Against:* **non pro me sed contra me**, *not for me, but against me.*

811 **Coram**, used as adverb and with ablative.

(*a*) *Face to face:* **coram sumus**, *we are face to face;* **vēni coram**, *I came into his presence.*

(*b*) *In presence of:* **coram latrone**, *in a brigand's presence;* **ii coram quibus magis quam apud quos verba facit**, *his audience rather than his judges.*

812 **De**, *down from;* with ablative only.

(*a*) *Down from:* **de caelo tactus**, *struck from heaven;* **de digito anulum detrahere**, *to draw a ring from a finger.*

(*b*) *From, of:* **aliquis de ludo**, *a man from the school;* **de patre audire**, *to hear from one's father;* **mereri de illo**, *to deserve from him;* **duodeviginti**, *two from twenty*, i.e. *eighteen;* **templum de marmore**, *a temple of marble.*

(*c*) *Of, concerning:* e.g. **de republica disputare**, *discuss politics;* **qua de re agitur**, *which is the matter in question;* **actumst de me**, *it is all over with me.*

(*d*) *Of time:* e.g. **somnus de prandio**, *sleep just after dinner;* **de nocte**, *in the course of the night;* **de tertia vigilia**, *during the third watch.*

(*e*) In various phrases: **de consilii sententia**, *under the opinions of his assessors;* **de more**, *according to custom;* **de industria**, *of set purpose* (opposed to **sine industria**); **de integro**, *afresh;* **de lucro**, *as a piece of good luck;* **gravi de causa**, *on solid grounds.*

813 In composition:

(*a*) *Down:* **descendere**, *to come down;* **destinare**, *to fix down.*

(*b*) *Off, away:* **designare**, *mark off;* **deverti**, *to turn aside, put up at an inn.*

(*c*) *Down to:* **devenire**, *to come to;* **deferre**, *to report;* **deferre alicui jusjurandum**, *to put a man on his oath* (**offerre**, *to offer to take one's oath*).

(*d*) *Formally*, or *completely:* e.g. **decurrere**, *to run in procession, march past;* **deplorare**, *to weep bitterly, give up for lost;* **decantare**, *to sing over and over again;* **debellare**, *to bring war to an end.*

(*e*) *Un-:* **dedecēre**, *to be unbecoming;* **dedocere**, *to unteach;* **desperare**, *to despair;* **detegere**, *to uncover.*

814 **Dis-**, **di-**, *in twain:* only in composition.

**Dis-** before sharp mutes and **s**; **dir-** before a vowel or **h**; **dī-** before flat mutes, liquids, nasals, semi-vowels, and **sp**, **sc**, **st**. Before **f**, **dis-** is assimilated (e.g. **differre**).

(*a*) *Asunder:* **discindere**, *cleave asunder;* **dissĭcĕre (dis jăcĕre)**, *to scatter;* **divendere**, *sell piecemeal.*

(*b*) *Un-:* **discingere**, *ungird;* **diffĭteri**, *disavow.*

(*c*) *Exceedingly:* **differtus**, *crammed;* **disperire**, *utterly perish.*

(*d*) *Among:* **dignoscere**, *distinguish;* **dispicere**, *see through.*

815 **Ergā**, *towards:* only with accusative.

**Fides erga imperatorem**, *loyalty to the general;* **odium erga regem**, *hatred to the king.*

In Tacitus also *in relation to:* **inscitia erga domum suam**, *ignorance of his own family matters.*

816 **Ergo** as adverb and as postposition with genitive case.

(*a*) *In consequence, therefore:* **Exitus ergo quis est**, *What then is his end?*

(*b*) With gen. rare except in old language;

**Ludi victoriae, non valetudinis, ergo voti** (Liv.), *Games vowed for the sake of a victory, not for health's sake.*

817 **Ex, e**, *out of:* used with ablative case only. In some phrases (see *b*) **e**, not **ex**, is used.

(*a*) *From*, i.e. *out of, from off:* **negotiator ex Africa**, *a trader from Africa;* **ex equis desilire**, *to leap down from their horses;* **ex tempore**, *on the spur of the moment;* **e vestigio**, *without delay;* **ex itinere oppugnare**, *to attack while on the march.*

Metaphorically of the source: **ex otio fructus capere**, *to get profit from leisure;* **ex Pollione audire, accipere**, *to hear from Pollio;* **ex pedibus laborare**, *to be in trouble with his feet*, e.g. *have gout.*

(*b*) *In accordance with:* **ex animi sententia**, *in accordance with one's conscience* or *wish;* **heres ex deunce**, *heir to eleven-twelfths;* **ex aequo**, *equally;* **ex contrario**, *on the contrary;* **ex composito**, *as agreed;* **ex merito**, *as earned;* **ex more**, *according to custom;* **magna ex parte**, *in a great degree;* **e re tua**, *to your interest;* **e republica**, *to the interest of the state;* **e re nata**, *under the actual circumstances;* **e regione**, *in a straight line* or *directly opposite.*

(*c*) Of the material or ground: **pocula ex auro**, *cups of gold;* **ex fraude factus**, *made up of fraud;* **resina ex melle**, *resin mixed with honey.*

(*d*) *After:* **ex consulatu proficisci**, *to start after his consulship;* **diem ex die ducere**, *to drag on day by day.*

818 In composition: **ex** before vowels, **h**, and sharp consonants; **ef**, sometimes **ec**, before **f**; otherwise **e**.

(*a*) *Out, forth:* **excĭdere**, *to fall out;* **exponere**, *to set out, to disembark;* **exsurgere**, *to rise up.*

(*b*) *Throughout:* **enarrare**, *to tell in detail;* **emerere**, *to serve out one's time.*

(*c*) *Thoroughly:* **elevare**, *to lighten, disparage;* **extimescere**, *to fall into a panic.*

(*d*) *Un-:* **exarmare**, *to disarm;* **enōdare**, *to unravel.*

819 **Extra**, *outside;* both as adverb, and with accusative.

(*a*) **Extra et intra hostem habent**, *they have an enemy outside and in;* **extra munitionem egredi**, *to step outside the defences.*

Metaphorically (*b*) **extra jocum**, *without joking:* **extra numerum**, *out of time;* **extra ordinem**, *out of rank* or *turn.*

(*c*) *Not including:* **reliqui extra ducem**, *the rest excepting the leader.*

820 **In** (old forms **endo**, **indu**) used both with accusative (of *motion to*) and ablative (of *rest in*).

(*a*) Of place (accus.) *into, onto:* **in eorum finis incurrere**, *to make an incursion into their territory;* **in jus ducere**, *to lead into court;* **in murum evadere**, *to get onto the wall.*

(abl.) **In eorum finibus bellum gerere**, *to wage war in their territory;* **in jure res est**, *the matter is in court;* **in capite coronam habere**, *to have a chaplet on the head;* **in praedio pecuniam ponere**, *to invest the money in a farm.*

(*b*) Of time and number: (accus.) **in posterum diem invitare**, *to invite for the next day;* **dicere in noctem**, *to speak till night-fall;* **tricena jugera in pedites dare**, *to give* 300 *acres for every foot-soldier;* **in dies major**, *greater every day.*

(abl.) **in praesentia**, *at the moment;* **sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit**, *the sun makes two turns in the course of each year;* **virtutem in bonis habere**, *to count virtue among his goods.*

(*c*) Of the circumstances: (accus.) *according to;* **in mea verba jurare**, *swear acceptance of my words;* **opus in speciem deforme**, *a work plain in appearance;* **in orbem ire**, *to move* (*so as to make*, i.e.) *in a circle;* **in vicem**, *in turn;* **in partem juvare**, *to contribute a share of help.*

(abl.) **in honore et pretio esse**, *to be honoured and valued;* **in tanta propinquitate castrorum haec deferuntur**, *this is reported, the camp being so near;* **opus vel in hac magnificentia urbis conspiciendum**, *a work, striking, even with the city in its present splendour;* **in incerto esse**, *to be uncertain;* **in aequo**, *on an equality;* **in primo**, *in front.*

(*d*) Of the object: (accus.) **impietas in deos**, *impiety towards the gods;* **pecunia in rem militarem data**, *money provided for military purposes.*

(abl.) **elegans in dicendo**, *neat in speaking;* **talis in hoste fuit Priamo**, *such was he in the case of* (or *in dealing with*) *his enemy Priam.*

821 In composition: often assimilated to **l**, **r**, and written **m** before labials (**p**, **b**, **m**).

(*a*) *In, on:* **includere**, *shut in;* **inspicere**, *look in;* **imminere**, *hang over;* **inniti**, *lean on;* **invidere**, *look at* (*grudgingly*).

(*b*) Intensive: **incipere**, *take up, begin;* **inhorrere**, *shudder.*

822 **Infra**, *below:* as adverb and with accusative; used of space, time, and metaphorically:

**Innumerabiles mundi, supra infra, dextra sinistra, ante post**, *countless worlds above, below, on right, on left, before, behind;* **accubuit infra me**

**Atticus**, *Atticus reclined at table below me;* **Homerus non infra Lycurgum fuit**, *Homer was not later than Lycurgus;* **magnitudine infra elephantos**, *in size less than elephants.*

823 **Inter**: with accusative only.

(*a*) *Among, in the middle of:* **inter ceteram planitiem mons saxeus**, *a rocky hill in the midst of what otherwise was level;* **inter epulas obtruncatur**, *he is killed whilst at dinner;* **inter saucios**, *among the wounded;* **inter paucos disertus**, *eloquent as but few are;* **inter se diligere, aspicere**, &c., *to love, behold one another.*

So **interea, interim**, *meanwhile;* (**interim**, in post-Augustan writers also denotes *sometimes*).

(*b*) *Between:* e.g. **inter loricam galeamque**, *between the breastplate and helmet;* **inter manus aufertur**, *he is carried away in their arms;* **inter caesa et porrecta**, *between the slaying and offering;* **inter eos decernere**, *to give a decree in the suit between them.*

In composition:

(*a*) *Among, between:* **intercedere**, *interpose;* **interesse**, *be a difference;* **interrogare**, *cross-question.*

(*b*) *Of breaking a continuity:* **intercīdere**, *cut through;* **intercĭdere**, *fall through, be lost;* **interĭmere**, *take off, kill;* **intervertere**, *turn away, embezzle.*

(*c*) *Together:* **interjungere**, *yoke together.*

824 **Intra**, *within;* as adverb, and with accusative. **Intro** adverb of motion *within.*

(*a*) **Deni in quadram pedes, quadraginta per oram, intra centum erunt**, *It will be ten feet square, forty in circumference, a hundred in area;* **sequimini me intro huc**, *follow me in here.*

(*b*) **Intra moenia esse, ire**, *to be, go, within the walls;* **intra annum mori**, *to die within a year;* **modice aut etiam intra modum**, *in moderation or still less;* **intra verba peccare**, *to offend but in words only.*

**Intro** is loosely compounded with **ducere, ire**, &c.

825 **Intus**, *within*, as adverb; rarely also with ablative.

**Intus evocare foras**, *to call a man out from within;* **intus est**, '*he is within;*' **duci intus**, '*to be led within;*' **tali intus templo sedet** (Verg.), '*such is the temple in which he sits.*'

826 **Juxta**, *close to*, as adverb, and with dative (rare) or accusative.

(*a*) **Accedere juxta**, *approach near;* **juxta murum castra ponere**, *pitch the camp close to the wall;* **juxta divinas religiones fides humana colitur**, *next to divine obligations good faith among men is cultivated.*

(*b*) *Alike:* **ceteri juxta insontes**, *the others just as innocent;* **res parva ac juxta magnis difficilis**, *a small matter, as difficult as great ones.*

827 **Ob**: only with accusative case.

(*a*) *Before, so as to obstruct:* **mors ob oculos versatur**, *death is before my eyes;* **obviam venire**, *to come to meet.* But **ob iter**, *on the way.*

(*b*) *For, on account of:* **ob asinos argentum ferre**, *to bring money in payment of the asses;* **ob decem minas pignori opponere**, *to pledge for* 10 *minae;* **pretium ob stultitiam ferre**, *to carry off a reward for folly;* **frustra an ob rem**, *in vain or for real advantage?* **quam ob rem**, *on which account;* **ob timorem**, *on the ground of fear;* **ob salutem accipere**, *take for safety's sake.*

828 In composition **obs**, **ob** is generally assimilated to **p**, **f**, **c**, **g**; often written (as pronounced) **op** before **s** and **t**; the **b** of **obs** is omitted in **ostendere**.

(*a*) *Over, against, before*, as obstruction: e.g. **occludere**, *shut against a person;* **officere**, *get in the way;* **obloqui**, *to speak against;* **obrepere**, *to steal upon;* **obsignare**, *seal up.*

(*b*) *Towards*, with the idea of favour: **obsequi**, *follow compliantly;* **oboedire**, *hearken to.*

(*c*) *Down:* **occidere**, (of the sun) *set;* **opprimere**, *squeeze;* **obtruncare**, *cut down.*

829 **Palam** as adverb and rarely with ablative:

(*a*) *openly*: **haec in foro palam gesta sunt**, *this was done publicly in the forum;* **palam est res**, *the thing is known;* **pisces audire palam est**, *it is notorious that fish can hear.*

(*b*) '*in presence of*' with ablative: **rem creditori palam populo solvit**, *he pays the amount to the creditor in the presence of the people.*

830 **Pĕnes**, *with*, i.e. *in the possession of*, only with accusative, and almost always with the name of a person: **Penes quos sunt auspicia more majorum? nempe penes patres**, *In whose hands are auspices according to the custom of our ancestors? why with the Fathers of course.*

831 **Per**, *through*, only with accusative (except in loose compounds, e.g. **per quam**, **per mihi mirum est**).

(*a*) *Through*, of space, &c.: **coronam per forum fert**, *he carries the crown through the forum;* **praesidia per oppida disponere**, *to place garrisons throughout the towns;* **per manus tradere**, *to pass from hand to hand;* **per triennium**, *for a whole three years.* In comic poets **per tempus advenire**, *to come at the right time.*

(*b*) *Through, by the aid of:* **eos aut per se aut per alios sollicitat**, *he tries to win them either by himself or by the aid of others;* **per me stetit quominus hoc fieret**, *I was the cause of its not being done;* **per vim**, *by force;* **per ego te deos oro** (cf. § 798), *I implore you by the gods.*

(*c*) *Without hindrance from:* **trahantur per me pedibus omnes**, *they may all be dragged off by the feet for what I care;* **si per commodum reipublicae possit**, *if it can be done without hurt to the commonweal.*

832 In composition:

(*a*) *Through, all over:* **perfringere**, *to break through;* **perscribere**, *to write in full;* **persalutare**, *to greet all in succession.*

(*b*) *Intensive:* **percutere**, *to strike, shock;* **perdiscere**, *to learn thoroughly;* **permanere**, *to last out;* **perpurgare**, *to cleanse thoroughly;* **pervenire**, *to reach.*

(*c*) In a bad sense: **perdĕre**, *to destroy;* **perire**, *to be destroyed;* **perfugere**, *to desert;* **pervertere**, *to overturn.*

833 **Pōne**, *behind*, (for **pos-ne**; cf. **post**) both as adverb and with accusative.

**Pone subit conjux**, *his wife comes behind;* **pone castra pabulatum ibant**, *they went behind the camp to collect fodder.*

834 **Por-**, old form of **pro** (comp. **porro**, *πρόσω, πόρρω*) only in composition, e.g. **porrĭcĕre** (**por jăcĕre**), *offer in sacrifice;* **portendere**, (*hold forth*) *portend;* **possĭdere**, *occupy.*

835 **Post**, *behind, after*, both as adverb and with accusative:

(*a*) In space: **servi post erant**, *slaves were behind;* **se post cratera tegebat**, *he concealed himself behind a mixing bowl.*

(*b*) In time: **multis post annis**, *many years after;* **maximus post hominum memoriam**, *the greatest* (*since* i.e.) *in men's records;* **ex post facto**, *from subsequent events.* So **posthac, posteā, postilla** (§ 212), *afterwards.*

(*c*) Metaphorically: **post esse**, *to be thought less of;* **post ferre, habere, putare**, *put second, hold, think less of.* So in argument, **quid postea**, *what then? what follows from that?*

836 **Prae**, *in front, before*, both as adverb and with ablative:

(*a*) *Before:* e.g. **i prae**, *go before;* **prae se ferre**, *to display;* **prae manu habere**, *to have at hand.*

(*b*) *In comparison with;* **prae nobis beatus**, *happy compared with us;* adverbially in Plaut. **praeut, praequam**, *compared with how.*

(*c*) *For, in consequence of*, usually of hindrances: e.g. **nec loqui prae moerore potuit**, *he could not speak for grief.*

837 In composition

(*a*) *Before, in front, at the end:* **praecedere**, *go before;* **praescribere**, *write at the top;* **praetexere**, *edge;* **praestare**, *vouch for, make good.*

(*b*) *Of time:* e.g. **praecipere**, *seize beforehand, admonish;* **praeire**, *go over first, as a pattern;* **praevenire**, *outstrip.*

(*c*) *Before others, greatly:* **praecellere**, *be distinguished;* **praegestire**, *exult.*

838 **Praeter** as adverb and with an accusative:

(*a*) *Past:* **praeter castra copias produxit**, *led forth his troops past the camp.*

(*b*) *Beyond:* **praeter modum crescere**, *grow beyond bounds;* **unus praeter ceteros**, *one far beyond others.*

(*c*) *Except:* **nihil praeter pellis habent**, *have nothing except skins;* **praeterea**, *besides;* **praeterquam**, *except, except that.*

Often with verbs in loose composition, e.g. **praeter-ire, -ducere**, &c.

839 **Pro**, *before, in front*, with ablative only (except in **prout, proinde**).

(*a*) *Before:* **pro castris**, *in front of the camp;* **pro tectis aedificiorum**, *on the front of the roof.*

(*b*) *In behalf of:* **contra legem proque lege dicere**, *speak against and in defence of the law;* **pro collegio pronuntiant**, *they declare on behalf of the board;* **pro imperio jubet**, *commands in virtue of his authority*, i.e. *officially and authoritatively.*

(*c*) *Instead of:* **pro consule**, *acting in place of the consul;* **pro damnato erat**, *he was as good as condemned;* **pro explorato habere**, *regard as certain.*

(*d*) *In return for:* **pro vectura solvere**, *pay as passage-money.*

(*e*) *According to:* **atrocius quam pro numero**, *more fiercely than would be expected from the number;* **vires pro corpore, corpus grande**, *strength in proportion to his body and a big body;* **pro virili parte defendere**, *to take a man's share in the defence;* **pro eo quanti te facio**, *in accordance with my appreciation of you.*

840 In composition **prod** before vowels; **prō** usually long, except before **f**.

(*a*) *Forth;* **proclamare**, *shout out;* **procumbere**, *fall prostrate;* **proscribere**, *advertise, proscribe.*

(*b*) *Before;* **prōfari**, *foretell;* **proludere**, *practise beforehand.*

841 **Prŏcŭl**; as adverb and with ablative; often also with **ab**.

(*a*) *At a distance:* **procul este**, *stand aloof;* **haud procul moenibus** (Liv.), *not far from the walls;* **procul negotiis**, *far from business.*

(*b*) Metaphorically: **quis tam procul a litteris?** *who stands so far aloof from education?* **procul dubio**, *undoubtedly.*

842 **Prŏpĕ**: chiefly as adverb, sometimes with accusative.

(*a*) *Near:* **prope adest**, *it is close at hand;* **non modo prope me sed plane mecum habitat**, *lives not merely near me, but actually with me.*

Also with prepositions **ab, ad**; **prope a meis aedibus**, *near to my house;* **prope ad portas**, *close at the gates.*

(*b*) *Almost:* **prope firmissimus**, *almost the firmest;* **prope est factum ut**, &c., *it almost happened that, &c.;* **tam prope ab exule fuit quam postea a principe**, *he was as near being an exile as he was afterwards being emperor.*

843 **Propter** (for **propi-ter**); both as adverb and with accusative.

(*a*) *Near:* **voluptates propter intuens**, *taking a near view of pleasures;* **propter aquae rivum**, *near a stream of water.*

(*b*) *On account of:* **non tam propter me quam propter pueros**, *not so much on my account as on that of the boys.*

So **quāpropter**, *wherefore;* **propterea**, *therefore;* **propterea quod**, *because.*

844 **Red-, re-** in composition only: **red-** before vowels and **h**, **rĕ-** before consonants: (but sometimes the **d** was assimilated, or fell off, the vowel being lengthened to compensate. Thus **reddo, reccīdo** or **rēcīdo, rējectus; rēliquiae, rēlĭcuus** (**rēlĭqvus** in post-Augustan poets), **rēligio.** So the perfects **reppĕri, reppŭli, rettŭli, rettŭdi**, partly due to the reduplication, cf. § 318).

(*a*) *Back*: e.g. **recedere**, *go back;* **religare**, *bind back, tie up;* **retinere**, *hold back.*

(*b*) *In response:* **redarguere**, *refute;* **reddere**, *give in return;* **resonare**, *resound.*

(*c*) *Against, counter:* **reclamare**, *cry out against;* **repugnare**, *resist.*

(*d*) *Behind:* **relinquere**, *leave behind;* **restare**, *remain, be left.*

(*e*) *Again*, esp. of restoration: **reconciliare**, *reunite;* **reficere**, *renew;* **reminisci**, *recall to mind;* **resurgere**, *rise again.*

(*f*) *Un-:* **recantare**, *recant;* **recingere**, *ungird;* **resignare**, *unseal, cancel.*

845 **Retro**, *behind*, only used as adverb:

**Quod retro est**, *what is behind* (in space), *past* (in time); **retroponere**, *to put in the background;* **retroagere**, *turn back, reverse.*

846 **Sed**, **se** in old language with ablative; **se fraude esto** (XII. Tabb.), *it shall not be a crime.*

In composition: **sēcedere**, *go apart;* **sējungere**, *disjoin;* **sēd-itio**, *a secession*, or *sedition.*

847 **Sĕcundum**, *following*, properly the neuter of the gerundive of **sequor**: used chiefly with an accusative.

(*a*) *Behind:* **volnus accepit secundum aurem**, *he received a wound behind the ear.*

(*b*) *Along:* **secundum flumen**, *along the river.*

(*c*) *After:* **castra secundum praelium capta**, *the camp was taken after the battle;* **ille mihi secundum te est**, *he is in my estimation next to you.*

(*d*) *In accordance with:* **secundum naturam vivere**, *to live in obedience to nature;* **multa secundum causam nostram disputare**, *to argue at length in favour of our case.*

848 **Simul**, *together*, as adverb, in post-Augustan also with ablative.

**Totos dies simul eramus**, *We were together whole days:* often with **cum**, e.g. **nobiscum simul**, *together with us.*

**Pollio Mamerco simul postulatur**, *Pollio is put on his trial with Mamercus.*

In Plautus **simītu** is used adverbially as **simul.**

849 **Sĭnĕ**, used only with ablative.

*Without*, i.e. *not having:* **homo sine re, sine fide, sine spe, sine sede, sine fortunis** (Cic.), *a man without property, without honour, without hope, without home, without chances;* **sine multorum pernicie**, *without exposing many to ruin.*

850 **Sub**, **subter**, used with accusative and ablative; **subter** also rarely as adverb.

(*a*) *Beneath:* **quae supra et subter sunt**, *things above and beneath.*

(accus.) **Sub divum rapiam**, *I will bring them to the light of day;* **aedis suas detulit sub Veliam**, *moved his house to the foot of the Velia.*

(abl.) **Vitam sub divo agere**, *to pass life in the open air;* **sub monte consedit**, *settled at the foot of the mountain.*

(*b*) *Of time* (acc.), *close upon*, i.e. (usually) *just after:* **sub galli cantum**, *just after cockcrow;* sometimes *just before* or *up to:* **sub ipsum funus**, *just before death.*

(abl.) *At:* **sub luce**, *at daybreak.*

(*c*) Metaphorically: *under* (accus.): **sub oculos venit**, *it comes under one's eye.*

(abl.) **sub judice lis est**, *the matter is before the judge;* **sub specie pacis**, *under the appearance of peace.*

851 In composition: **b** is often assimilated to labials, **f**, **r** and gutturals; **sus** (for **subs**) before **t** and sometimes **c** and **p**; **su** before **s** usually.

(*a*) *Under:* **succumbere**, *lie under;* **subducere**, *draw from under;* **subscribere**, *write under.*

(*b*) *In substitution:* **subděre**, *substitute, forge;* **subnasci**, *grow into place.*

(*c*) *Up, from under up:* **succrescere**, *grow up;* **summittere**, *send up, rear;* **suspendere**, *hang up,*

(*d*) *Secretly:* **subauscultare**, *overhear;* **subornare**, *equip secretly;* **subripere**, *snatch away.*

(*e*) *Slightly:* **subaccusare**, *blame somewhat;* **sublucere**, *faintly gleam;* **subirasci**, *be a bit angry;* **subnegare**, *half deny.*

852 **Sŭper**, as adverb, and with accusative and ablative.

(*a*) In space, *over, upon:* **imponendum medicamentum**, *a dressing should be put upon it.* So **desuper**, *from above.*

(accus.) **Super lateres coria inducuntur**, *hides are put upon the bricks.*

(abl.) **Super impia cervice pendet ensis**, *a sword hangs over his impious neck.*

(*b*) *Above, beyond:* (accus.) **Nomentanus erat super ipsum Porcius infra**, *Nomentanus sat above him, Porcius below;* **super omnia Romanum nomen**, *the name of Roman beyond everything.*

(*c*) In time (rare), *over, during, at:*

(accus.) **super cenam loqui**, *to talk over supper.*

(abl.) **rixa super mero debellata**, *a quarrel fought out over the wine.*

(*d*) *Over, besides:* **satis superque est**, *it is enough and to spare;* **quid super sanguinis est?** *what blood have we left?* So **insuper**, *in addition.*

(*e*) *Upon, concerning:* (abl.) **sed hac super re nimis**, *too much on this matter;* **multa super Priamo rogitans**, *putting repeated questions about Priam.*

In composition: *over:* **supergredi**, *step over;* **supersternere**, *lay over;* **supersedere**, *sit upon, be above, forbear.*

853 **Suprā**, rarely **supera**: as adverb and with accusative.

(*a*) *On the top, above:* **toto vertice supra est**, *he is a whole head above them;* **versus supra tribunal et supra praetoris caput scribebantur**, *verses were perpetually written above the bench and above the praetor's head.*

(*b*) *Above, before:* **ut supra dixi**, *as I said above;* **paulo supra hanc memoriam**, *a little before our time.*

(*c*) *Above, more:* **trecentis aut etiam supra millibus emptum**, *bought for* 300000 *sesterces or more;* **supra Coclites Muciosque id facinus est**, *the deed surpasses the Coclites and Mucii;* **supra gratiam**, *above the reach of influence.*

854 **Tĕnus**, *as far as*, with genitive or ablative: always put *after* the word dependent on it.

(gen.) **Rumores Cumarum tenus caluerunt**, *rumours were rife as far as Cumae;* **crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent**, *the dewlaps hang from the chin as far as the legs.*

(abl.) **Lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem**, *plunged the sword into his side up to the hilt:* **verbo tenus acute disserere**, *discuss cleverly as far as theory goes.*

Hence **hactenus**, *thus far;* **protenus** or **protinus**, *right on, forthwith.*

855 **Trans**, *across*, with accusative only: **multitudinem trans Rhenum traduxit**, *he led the mass across the Rhine;* **trans flumen est**, *he is across the river.*

In composition: often becomes **tra** before **j**, **d**, **l**, **m**, **n**.

(*a*) *Across:* **transire**, *go across;* **traicere**, *throw across.*

(*b*) *Of a change:* **tradere**, *hand over, hand down to posterity;* **transfundere**, *decant, transfer.*

(*c*) *Through to the end:* **transigere**, *complete, settle a suit.*

856 **Versus, versum** (**vorsus, vorsum**), *towards*, used both with (*a*) a preposition, (*b*) a locative adverb, and (*c*) accusative which however is usually an ordinary accusative of the *place towards which.*

(*a*) **Modo ad urbem, modo in Galliam vorsus, castra movet**, *moves his camp now towards the city, now into Gaul.*

(*b*) **Nescio neque unde eam neque quorsum (quo vorsum) eam**, *I know not whence nor whitherwards I am going.*

So **horsum**, *hitherwards;* **sinistrorsus**, *to the left;* **sursum**, *upwards*, &c.

(*c*) **Cursum Massiliam versus perficit** (Cic.), *completes his run (of ships) to Marseilles;* **quem locum Aegyptum vorsus finem imperii habuere** (Sall.), *this place was the limit of their power in the direction of Egypt.*

857 **Ultra**, *beyond* as adverb and with accusative: (**uls** is only in old language).

(*a*) *In space:* **paulo ultra eum locum**, *a little beyond that place.*

(*b*) *In time:* **usque ad Accium et ultra**, *as late as Accius and later;* **non ultra vos differam**, *I will not put you off any longer.*

(acc.) **Nec ultra pueriles annos retinebitur**, *it will not be kept beyond the years of childhood.*

(*c*) *In quantity, degree, &c.:* **ultra nobis quam oportebat indulsimus**, *we indulged ourselves more than we ought.*

(acc.) **Ultra legem tendere opus,** *extend one's work beyond the statute.* **ultro citroque,** *there and back, backwards and forwards* (see **citro**); **ultro,** *further, unasked, unprovoked.* Often in English, *actually, even:* **ultro pollicetur,** *offers spontaneously, actually offers.*

858 **Usque,** *all the way, continuously:* used as adverb, and with prepositions, and with accusative which usually comes under *place to which.*

(*a*) *In space:* **perreptavi usque omne oppidum,** *I have crawled through the whole town;* **usque Romam voces referuntur,** *the voices are borne all the way to Rome.*

(*b*) *In time and order, &c.:* **omnes usque ab Romulo (usque ad Romulum),** *all continuously starting with Romulus (ending with Romulus);* **usque eo (adeo) dum,** *so long until;* **poenas dedit usque superque quam satis est,** *he was punished quite as much as or more than was sufficient.*

## II. (*Co-ordinating*) *conjunctions.*

(Mainly from Madvig.)

859 Co-ordinate sentences, regularly expressed, either have a conjunction with every member, or with all but the first. In the former case the writer shews that he has foreseen, and determines to mark, the distribution of his sentence into two or more co-ordinate clauses or parts; in the latter case the first clause expresses the original idea, the others are in the nature of afterthoughts.

### i. Copulative Conjunctions.

Copulative conjunctions are those which connect both the sentences and their meaning: **et**; **-que,** appended to (usually) the first word of a clause; **atque** (before consonants or vowels), **ac** (before consonants only).

860 1. **et** simply connects, whether words or sentences:

**que** marks the second member as an appendage or supplement to the first: and is often used in joining two words, which together make up one conception:

**ac,** or **atque,** lays a greater stress on the appended second member: e.g. **omnia honesta et inhonesta,** *all things becoming and unbecoming;* **omnia honesta inhonestaque,** *all becoming things, and the unbecoming too;* **omnia honesta atque inhonesta,** *all becoming things and no less the unbecoming also.*

These distinctions are not always clearly marked, and the selection is sometimes made rather to give variety to the sentence and to avoid the confusion of principal with subordinate divisions.

**Est tamen quaedam philosophi discriptio, ut is, qui studeat omnium rerum divinarum atque humanarum vim naturam causasque nosse, et omnem bene vivendi rationem tenere et persequi, nomine hoc appelletur.** (Cic.)

**Molliebantur irae, et ipsa deformitas Pleminii memoriaque absentis Scipionis favorem ad vulgum conciliabat.** (Liv.)
**Senatus populusque Romanus. Jus potestatemque habere.**

861 2. **et, ac** are sometimes found emphatically in commencing a reply, e.g. **Curae est mihi. Mic. Et mihi curae est.** (Ter.)
**E caelo? Sy. Atque e medio quidem.** (Plaut.) See also § 667 *b*.
**et** is also used for *also*, chiefly in such expressions as, **et ille et ipse, et nunc,** &c. e.g. **Sunt et mea contra fata mihi.** (Verg.)
For **ac** in comparison see §§ 660, 661.

862 3. An affirmative sentence, following a negative sentence and expressing the same general meaning, is joined to it by **et, ac, -que**, not, as in English, by an adversative conjunction.

**Nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt.** (Caes.)

863 4. When the distribution of a sentence or expression is foreseen and marked, the conjunctions are used as follows:

**et...et** connect either words or sentences. This is the regular mode.

**que...et** connect words only; (not in Cicero).

**que...que** in prose are rare; but are used with a double relative.

**et...que** only as a loose connexion of two sentences.

**Et mittentibus et missis ea laeta expeditio fuit.** (Liv.)
**Omnes legatique et tribuni.** (Liv.)
**Omnes, quique Romae quique in exercitu erant.** (Liv.)

864 5. (*a*) In stating three or more perfectly co-ordinate words,
Either no conjunction is put, e.g. **summa fide, constantia, justitia**;
or (*b*) each is connected with the preceding, e.g. **summa fide** (or **et fide**) **et constantia et justitia**;
or (*c*) the conjunction is omitted between the first members, and **que** (sometimes **et** or **atque**) is annexed to the last, e.g. **summa fide, constantia justitiaque.**

865 A conjunction is usually put between two epithets, and either omitted or inserted between three, e.g.

**multae et graves causae** (not **multae graves causae**; but **multae aliae causae** is frequent).

**multae et graves et diuturnae causae**; or **causae multae, graves, diuturnae.**

866 6. Occasionally two co-ordinate words are put without any conjunction. This is chiefly (*a*) when the words are opposites, completing one another; or (*b*) in old forms.

(*a*) **Omnes te di homines, summi medii infimi, cives peregrini, viri mulieres, liberi servi oderunt.** (Cic.)

(*b*) **Deus optimus maximus. Cn. Pompeio, M. Crasso consulibus. Velitis, jubeatis Quirites,** &c.

867 7. Co-ordinate words and sentences are connected or introduced by other adverbs also, e.g. **tum...tum**, *at one time...at another time;* (**cum...tum**, *as well...as*); **modo...modo**; **nunc...nunc**; more rarely in prose **jam...jam**; **simul...simul**; **qua...qua**; e.g.

**Disserens in utramque partem, tum Graece, tum Latine.** (Cic.)

**Intellego te distentissimum esse, qua de Buthrotiis, qua de Bruto.** (Cic.)

868 Any word may however serve in rhetorical language in place of a co-ordinative conjunction.

**Quod si recte Cato judicavit, non recte frumentarius ille, non recte aedium pestilentium venditor tacuit.** (Cic.)

**Nihil enim habet praestantius, nihil quod magis expetat, quam honestatem, quam laudem, quam dignitatem, quam decus.** (Cic.)

869 A series of propositions are often marked by the use of, first **primum**, then **deinde** or **tum**, then (sometimes) **porro, postea**, or **praeterea**, last **denique** or **postremo**.

**Primum Latine Apollo numquam locutus est: deinde ista sors inaudita Graecis est; praeterea Phoebi temporibus jam Apollo versus facere desierat; postremo...hanc amphiboliam versus intellegere potuisset.** (Cic.)

## ii. Adversative Conjunctions.

870 Adversative conjunctions contrast the meaning, while they connect the sentences. Such are **sed, verum, ceterum, autem, vero, ast, at, atqui, quod**, and in some uses **quamquam, tamen, etsi, tametsi**. Of these **autem** and **vero** are placed not at the beginning of the sentence, but after one word, or sometimes two closely connected words; **tamen** is placed either at the beginning of the sentence or after an important word.

871 1. **Sed (set)**, *but*, introduces a statement which alters or limits the assertion of the preceding sentence; or it expresses transition to another subject of discourse. It is often repeated with each clause or word to give them additional emphasis.

**Verum**, sometimes **verum enimvero** (*but be that as it may*) is similar, but is used with a stronger effect.

**Ceterum** is similarly used; chiefly in Sallust and Livy.

**Sed jam ad id, unde digressi sumus, revertamur.** (Cic.)

**At inquit, trecenti sumus; et ita respondit: trecenti, set viri, set armati, set ad Thermopylas.** (Sen. Rhet.)

**In M. Catone quae bona nonnunquam requirimus, ea sunt omnia non a natura, verum a magistro.** (Cic.)

**Illis merito accidet quidquid evenerit: ceterum vos, patres conscripti, quid in alios statuatis considerate.** (Sall.)

2. **Autem**, *however*, introduces a different statement, in continuation of the preceding, without really altering or limiting it. Sometimes it is used to pick up, for special notice, a preceding word or statement.

**Ast**, is similar but is almost confined to old legal language, to Vergil, and post-Augustan poets.

**Vero**, *indeed*, is similarly used, and gives special emphasis to the word preceding it: it is also often used after **nec** or **tum**.

**Nunc quod agitur agamus: agitur autem, liberine vivamus an mortem obeamus.** (Cic.)

**Scimus musicen nostris moribus abesse a principis persona, saltare vero etiam in vitiis poni.** (Nep.) [(Cic.)

**Num quis testis Postumum appellavit? testis autem? num accusator?**

3. **At**, *but, on the other hand* (sometimes *whereupon*), introduces an emphatic remark different from and opposed to the preceding statement. Sometimes it appears in the apodosis of a conditional sentence. It is especially used in a lively retort or exclamation: **at enim** in the statement of an adversary's objection.

**Quod si se ipsos nostri illi liberatores e conspectu nostro abstulerunt, at exemplum facti reliquerunt.** (Cic.)

**Horum omnium studium una mater oppugnat. At quae mater?** (Cic.)

**Quibus rebus confectis omnia propere per nuntios consuli declarantur. At illum ingens cura atque laetitia simul occupavere.** (Sall.)

4. **Atqui**, *but*, sometimes introduces an objection, sometimes a fresh step in the reasoning.

**Quod si virtutes sunt pares inter se, paria esse etiam vitia necesse est: atqui pares esse virtutes facillime potest perspici.** (Cic.)

5. **Quod**, *but*, is used (chiefly before **si, nisi,** but also before **etsi, quia, quoniam**) to continue a statement.

**Coluntur tyranni simulatione, dum taxat ad tempus: quod si forte, ut fit plerumque, ceciderunt, tum intelligitur quam fuerint inopes amicorum.** (Cic.)

6. The statement of a fact opposite to or corrective of previous statements is often introduced by **quanquam, tamen, etsi, tametsi,** *And yet.* (For **nisi** in this sense, see § 653.)

**Non video quo pacto Hercules 'in domum aeternam patris' pervenerit, quem tamen Homerus apud inferos conveniri facit ab Ulixe. Quamquam quem potissimum Herculem colamus, scire sane velim.** (Cic.)

**'Quid est? Crasse,' inquit Julius, 'imusne sessum? etsi admonitum venimus te, non flagitatum.'** (Cic.)

(The ordinary use of **etsi** and other concessive conjunctions is given in § 651 *c*; of **quamquam** in § 711 *b*.)

### iii. Disjunctive Conjunctions.

872 1. Disjunctive conjunctions are those, which connect the sentences, but disconnect their meaning; viz. **aut, vel, -ve** (appended to first word of clause), **sive** or (before consonants only) **seu.**

**aut** is used where the difference between the conceptions or propositions is real or important;

**vel** (often **vel potius, vel dicam, vel etiam**), and **-ve**, are used where the difference is unimportant, or concerns the expression more than the substance. Both **aut** and **vel** are sometimes used in adding the consequence of denying a former proposition: *or else, otherwise.*

**Seu (sive)** is used chiefly to correct a previous assertion, and, when without a following **seu**, usually has **potius** with it.

**Qua re vi aut clam agendum est.** (Cic.)

**Post obitum vel potius excessum Romuli.** (Cic.)

**Quod ipsum a se movetur, id nec nasci potest nec mori; vel concidat omne caelum, omnisque natura consistat necesse est.** (Cic.)

**Quid perturbatius hoc ab urbe discessu sive potius turpissima fuga?** (Cic.)

873 2. Where the distribution is foreseen, the conjunctions are doubled, preserving their usual distinction from each other.

**aut...aut** are used of things mutually exclusive, especially where an alternative is put distinctly.

**Omne enuntiatum aut verum aut falsum est.** (Cic.)

**vel...vel** (in poetry also **ve...ve**) are used of things, both or all of which may co-exist (*partly...partly*), or where the choice is a matter of indifference to the speaker or concerns the expression only.

**sive (seu)...sive (seu)** are used where it is uncertain or indifferent which conception should be taken. (When used with verbs, they are often conditional particles = **vel si**. Cf. § 651 *d*.)

**Hanc tu mihi vel vi vel clam vel precario fac tradas.** (Ter.)

**Vel imperatore vel milite me utimini.** (Sall.)

**Corpora vertuntur : nec, quod fuimusve sumusve, cras erimus.** (Ov.)

**Homines nobiles seu recte seu perperam facere coeperunt, in utroque excellunt.** (Cic.)

874 3. **Vel** is used, especially with a superlative, as an intensive particle ('even') to introduce what is regarded as the climax, the inferior stages being left to the imagination or implied in the context.

**Heus, te tribus verbis volo.** Sy. **Vel trecentis.** (Plaut.)

So it introduces a special instance : *why even, for instance.*

**Raras tuas quidem, sed suaves accipio litteras. Vel quas proxime acceperam, quam prudentes !** (Cic.)

## III. *Negative particles.*

875 The negative particles are **nĕ, nē, ni, nec, neque, non, haud.**

**Nĕ** is found in composition, e.g. **nĕque, nĕqueo, nōlo (nĕvis), nescio, nĕfas, nēmo (ne hemo** old for **homo), nullus (ne ullus), nŭtiquam (neutiquam).** It is identical with the enclitic interrogative **-ne**, and is found in **quin** (see § 221), and probably in **sin.**

**Ne** and **ni** were originally identical, and at one time (6th Cent. U.C.) often written **nei.** Hence **nihil** for **nē (nei, ni) hīlum. Nē** is used in the phrase **nē...quidem**; and sometimes by itself, sometimes following **qui** (adj. and adv.), **ut, dum,** in sentences with imperative, or subjunctive signifying *wish, command, purpose,* &c. (§§ 664, 678). The enclitic disjunctive **-ve** is often appended, and makes **neve** or **neu.**

**Ne** or **nec** is found, in composition with **quiquam** (abl. ?) or **quidquam** (acc.), in the words **nequiquam** or **nequicquam,** *in vain;* it is also found in **nequaquam,** *by no means ;* **nedum** (§ 688).

**Ni** is generally used as a negative conditional particle for **nisi** (originally **ne si** ?). Originally it was probably a simple negative, as in phrases, **nimirum** (cf. § 747), **quidni, quippini,** and became specially appropriated to conditional clauses, as **ne** did to final clauses. **-ve** is sometimes appended.

876 **Nec** is usually a co-ordinate conjunction, interchangeable with **neque,** of which it is regarded as an abbreviation. But it is also found

as a simple negative in some old phrases; e.g. **nec recte** (Plaut.), also in the compounds **nec-opinus, neglego, neg-otium**, and in the derivative **nego**. It is also used, with **-ne** appended, in the second member of a disjunctive question (**nec-ne**, *or not*, cf. § 772).

**Non**, originally **noenum** (for **ne unum** acc. cf. § 224), is the ordinary simple negative.

**Haud** (**haut, hau**) is a simple negative, used chiefly before adverbs (e.g. **haud quaquam, haud sane, haud procul**) and adjectives, not often before verbs, at least after Plautus, except in phrase **haud** (**hau**) **scio an.**

**In-** and **ve-** are used only in composition (§ 408, 1. 2).

877 1. (*a*) **Non, haud, nec** (in phrases referred to above) are used as simple negatives, as English *not*. Both **non** and **nec** are occasionally (**nec** frequently in Ovid and Livy) found with an imperative or jussive subjunctive (instead of **nē**).

**Nihil** as adverbial accusative (§ 461 *a*), and **nullus** as adjective, are sometimes used where we use, *not at all*.

**Non, non sic futurumst: non potest.** (Ter.)

**Thebani nihil moti sunt, quamquam nonnihil succensebant Romanis.** (Liv.)

**Haec bona in tabulas publicas nulla redierunt.** (Cic.)

(*b*) **Ne** before a word and **quidem** after it are together equal to *not even*, or *not ..either*, (when we use this latter expression as adverb without *nor* following,) e.g. **ne hoc quidem**, *not even this, not this either*.

**Nec** is also sometimes used in the sense of **ne...quidem** in and after the Augustan age.

**Postero die Curio milites productos in acie collocat. Ne Varus quidem dubitat copias producere.** (Caes.)

**Tu voluptatem summum bonum putas: ego nec bonum.** (Sen.)

(*c*) **Ne** with the imperative or the subjunctive of *wish* or *command* is *not*; but with a subjunctive of purpose (without **ut**) is *lest* or *that not*. So (in such sentences) **ne quis, ne quando, ne ullus, necubi**, &c. are used instead of **ut nemo, ut nunquam, ut nullus, ut nusquam**, &c. **Noli dicere, cave dicas** are equivalent simply to *do not say*.

**Lata lex est, ne auspicia valerent, ne quis obnuntiaret; ne quis legi intercederet, ut lex Aelia, lex Fufia ne valeret.** (Cic.)

(*d*) **Minus**, especially after **si, sin** (§ 651 *d*), or **quo** (§ 682), and **minime**, *least of all*, are used as equivalent to *not at all, not*. **Vix**, *scarcely;* **parum**, *but little*, and sometimes **male**, have a character approaching to that of a negative.

**Egone ut, quod ad me adlatum esse alienum sciam, celem? minume istuc faciet noster Daemones.** (Plaut.)

**Ego autem illum male sanum semper putavi.** (Cic.)

878 2. A negative sentence, or member of a sentence, requiring to be joined to the preceding by a co-ordinate conjunction, is introduced by **neque** (**nec**); or if a purpose or command, &c. be implied, usually by

**neve (neu).** So **nec** for **et non, necdum** for **et nondum, nec quisquam** for **et nemo, neque ullus** for **et nullus**, &c. Usually also the Romans said **neque enim, neque vero, nec tamen**, though sometimes **non enim** is found, and rarely **non tamen.**

**Et** (or **ac**) **non, et nullus**, &c., are found where the negative belongs to a special word in the sentence, or the new sentence is intended as a correction of the former. So also **et** (sometimes **ac**) **ne...quidem.**

**Senatui pacis auctor fui, nec sumptis armis belli ullam partem attigi. Patior, judices, et non moleste fero.** (Cic.) [(Cic.)

**Quasi nunc id agatur, quis ex tanta multitudine occiderit, ac non hoc quaeratur, utrum,** &c. (Cic.)

879 Sometimes **neque (nec)** is used, where the negative belongs only to a participial or other subordinate clause, but the principal verb or sentence has to be united with that preceding.

**Haud cunctanter Hiberum transgrediuntur; nec ullo viso hoste Saguntum pergunt ire** (Liv.)=**et, nullo viso hoste, pergunt.**

880 3. Several negative sentences or clauses may in fact form one sentence, without the connexion being marked, or foreseen. Either (*a*) there is no conjunction used, or (*b*) the conjunction is used (§ 864) only with the second or third members, not with the first.

(*a*) **Non gratia, non cognatione, non aliis recte factis, non denique aliquo mediocri vitio, tot tantaque ejus vitia sublevata esse videbuntur.** (Cic.)

(*b*) **Justum et tenacem propositi virum non civium ardor prava jubentium, non vultus instantis tyranni mente quatit solida, neque auster,...nec fulminantis magna manus Jovis.** (Hor.)

881 4. When the distribution of the sentence or thought into two or more co-ordinate clauses or expressions is foreseen, it may be marked in several ways.

If all the clauses are negative, we have

(*a*) **neque (nec)...neque (nec)**, *neither...nor...*, except usually in commands, &c.

(*b*) **neve (neu)...neve (neu)**, *neither...nor*, where a prohibition or wish is intended: *that neither...nor, lest either...or*, where a purpose, &c. is intended. (This is not frequent.)

(*c*) **non modo**[1] **(solum) non...sed ne...quidem**, *not only not...but not even;* where the second member implies a stronger statement than the first.

If a predicate or other word is common to both clauses, but stands with the latter, the **non** after **modo** or **solum** is frequently omitted, and we have

**non modo (solum)...sed ne...quidem.**

(See also § 689 and **nedum, ne dicam, non dico**, &c. §§ 690, 691.)

[1] **Non modo** is '*not exactly*,' '*I do not say;*' **non solum** '*not only*,' **non tantum** '*not so much.*' **Non modo** is more common at least in Cicero.

(*a*) **Virtus nec eripi nec subripi potest; neque naufragio neque incendio amittitur; nec tempestatum nec temporum turbatione mutatur.** (Cic.)

(*b*) **Peto a te, ut id a me neve in hoc reo neve in aliis requiras.** (Cic.)

(*c*) **Obscenitas non solum non foro digna, sed vix convivio liberorum.** (Cic.)

**Regnat Romae advena, non modo vicinae, sed ne Italicae quidem stirpis.** (Liv.)

**882** If all the clauses are not negative, these clauses are introduced by

(*a*) **et...neque**, *both...and not*, if the first be affirmative. If the negative belong to a word only, **et...et non** may be used.

(*b*) **neque...et**, *neither...and*, if the second be affirmative. **neque...que** is more rare.

(*c*) **non modo** (**solum, tantum**) **non...sed** (**verum**) **etiam**, if the second be affirmative and a stronger statement than the first.

**Patebat via et certa neque longa.** (Cic.)

**Uva, vestita pampinis, nec modico tepore caret et nimios solis defendit ardores.** (Cic.)

**Nec domi tantum indignationes continebant, sed congregabantur undique ad regem Sabinorum.** (Liv.)

**883** 5. One negative, applied to another, destroys its effect, and the result is equivalent to an affirmative. This is chiefly seen in the phrases **non nemo**, *some one;* **non nullus**, *some;* **non nihil**, *something;* **non nunquam**, *sometimes;* **nemo non**, **nullus non**, *everyone;* **nihil non**, *everything;* **nunquam non**, *always;* **nusquam non**, *everywhere;* **non possum non**, *I cannot help myself*, i.e. *I must.*

**Necnon** in the earlier prose is not used, as it is sometimes in verse and in later prose, as little more than an equivalent for **etiam.**

**Nec hoc ille non vidit, sed verborum magnificentia est et gloria delectatus.** (Cic.) Here it has its full force.

**Necnon et Tyrii frequentes convenēre.** (Ver.)

**884** But negatives do not destroy one another, when the first negative is general, and this is followed

(*a*) By **ne...quidem** or **non modo** emphasizing some particular word or phrase.

(*b*) By several subordinate members each with a negative.

(*c*) By another co-ordinate member joined by **neque** (**nec**).

(*a*) **Se quoque dictatorem Romae fuisse, nec a se quemquam, ne plebis quidem hominem, non centurionem, non militem violatum.** (Liv.)

(*b*) **Nemo umquam neque poeta neque orator fuit, qui quemquam meliorem quam se arbitraretur.** (Cic.)

(*c*) **Nequeo satis mirari neque conicere.** (Ter.)

## IV. *Interrogative Particles.*

885 Interrogative particles are used in those sentences in which a question is asked relating to the truth or falsehood of a particular statement, and a simple affirmative or negative answer is expected.

These questions are either simple or alternative.

Simple questions may be expressed without any interrogative pronoun or particle. An affirmative sentence then not unfrequently expects a negative answer, and *vice versa*, the tone of voice or circumstances supplying the necessary warning. In alternative questions the first member is similarly left sometimes without any interrogative particle.

The particles which are used in introducing simple questions (when they have no interrogative pronoun) are

**-ne**, properly, *not* (appended to another word), **non-ne**, and **num**, properly, *now* (**numne**, **numnam**, **numquid**). **An** is also found in what appear at first to be simple questions.

In conversational language the final **e** in **-ne** is often omitted, e.g. **nostin**; and then a preceding **s** is in some verbs omitted; e.g. **ain, scin, vidĕn, audĭn** (for **ais-ne, scis-ne, vides-ne, audis-ne**). So also **satin** for **satis-ne**.

The particles used in introducing alternative questions are **utrum** (neut. of **uter**), *whether*, **-ne**, and **an**.

For dependent questions, see §§ 750—752.

### i. In simple Questions.

886 **-Ne** puts a question without any implication as to the character of the answer: e.g. **Sentisne?** *Do you feel?* **Nonne** implies the expectation of an affirmative answer: e.g. **Nonne sentis?** *Do you not feel?* **Num** implies the expectation of a negative answer: e.g. **Num sentis,** *You do not feel, do you?*

An affirmative answer is expressed by **etiam, ita, factum, vero, verum, sane, ita vero, ita est, sane quidem**, &c.; or with the proper pronoun, as, **ego vero**; or by the verb (or other words), repeated in the proper person, e.g. **sentio.** (Cf. 439 *c*.)

A negative answer is expressed by **non, minime, minime vero**; or with the pronoun, e.g. **minime ego quidem**; or with the verb, &c. e.g. **non sentio.** When the contrary is asserted by way of reply, we have **immo, immo vero,** *No, on the other hand, Nay rather.*

**Quid hoc? Dasne, aut manere animos post mortem aut morte ipsa interire? Do vero.** (Cic.)

**Quid? canis nonne similis lupo?** (Cic.)

**Num igitur peccamus? Minime nos quidem.** (Cic.)

**Huic ego 'studes?' inquam. Respondit 'etiam.'** (Plin.)

**Huc abiit Clitipho. CH. Solus? ME. Solus.** (Ter.)

**AN. Jam ea praeteriit? DO. Non.** (Ter.)

**Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima.** (Cic.)

### ii. In alternative Questions.

887 In alternative questions **utrum** or **-ne** are used in the first member of the sentence, **an** (sometimes **anne**) in the second member. In comic poets **utrum** is often put first and the alternatives are then expressed by **ne...an.** *Or not* is expressed by **an non** or **nec-ne.**

In dependent questions **-ne** is frequent in the second member, especially if the first have no particle. **-Ne...-ne** are found occasionally, chiefly in the poets.

**Utrum nescis quam alte ascenderis, an pro nihilo id putas?** (Cic.)
**Vosne vero L. Domitium an vos Domitius deseruit?** (Caes.)
**Utrum voltis patri Flacco licuisse necne?** (Cic.)
**Utrum praedicemne an taceam?** (Ter.)

888 **An** is frequently used in a question apparently simple, but which may be regarded as really the second member of an alternative question, the first being either not put in the form of a question or left to be inferred from the context. It introduces questions which imply the needlessness of the preceding remark, or meets an anticipated objection.

**TOR. Sed ad haec, nisi molestum est, habeo quae velim. TUL. An me, nisi te audire vellem, censes haec dicturum fuisse?** *Do you then think?* (Cic.)

**Quando ista vis autem evanuit? An postquam homines minus crēduli esse coeperunt?** (Cic.) *Was it not after*, &c.?

889 From alternative questions must be distinguished such questions as have several subordinate parts, which are different from, but not alternatives to, one another. These are connected by **aut.**

**An tu mei similem putas esse aut tui deum? Profecto non putas. Quid ergo? solem dicam aut lunam aut caelum deum?** (Cic.)

## V. *Pronouns.*

### Hic, iste, ille, is.

890 The demonstrative pronouns are **hic, iste** or **istic, ille,** or **illic.** They denote respectively, **hic,** that which is near the speaker in place, time, or thought: **iste,** that which is near the person addressed: **ille,** that which is not (comparatively) near either.

**Is** has no definite demonstrative meaning, but always refers to some person or thing named in the context. If more emphasis is required, **hic** or **ille** is used. The adverbs derived from these pronouns are used with the same relative signification.

In time and thought **hic** and **ille** are opposed, **hic** referring to that which is near, **ille** to that which is remote. **Ille** is also used of a well-known or famous person or thing.

**Iste** is specially used of an opponent in a lawsuit, and hence of something despised or disliked.

**Is,** with conjunction **et** or **ac** prefixed, is used to give additional emphasis to a new predicate or description; **ille** (like other pronouns), with **quidem** appended, is used in making concessions (where in English we use no pronoun).

**Hanc urbem hoc biennio consul evertes.** (Cic.)
**Gratia te flecti non magis potuisse demonstras, quam Herculem Xenophontium illum a voluptate.** (Cic.)
**Hunc illum poscere fata reor.** (Verg.)
**Hic et ille, ille et ille,** *this or that.*
**Habet homo memoriam et eam infinitam rerum innumerabilium.** (Cic.)
**Uno atque eo facili proelio caesi ad Antium hostes.** (Liv.)
**Doctum igitur hominem cognovi et studiis optimis deditum, idque a puero.** (Cic.)
**P. Scipio non multum ille quidem nec saepe dicebat, sed Latine loquendo cuivis erat par.** (Cic.)

### Se, suus, ipse.

891 **Se** and **ipse** are both used where we in English use *self*, but they are also found where we do not use it. Thus **se** often corresponds to *him, her, them;* **ipse** to the adjective *very*, or other expressions of emphasis. **Se** is of the third person only; **ipse** is simply an adjective of emphasis, and can be used of any person, but when in an oblique case by itself (without **me, te, nos, vos**), it is of the third person. **Se, suus** are distinguished from other pronouns of the third person, by being used always either of the subject or of some word in the sentence. If *him, her*, &c. requires emphasis, when not relating to the subject (or otherwise where **se** is suitable), **ipsum** is used, either with or without **eum.**

**Suus,** the possessive of **se,** relates also to the subject of discourse. When it is an attribute of the grammatical subject, it can of course only relate to some other subject of discourse, very commonly to the direct or indirect object.

892 **Se, suus** are used primarily in reference to the grammatical subject of the sentence. If the subject itself requires emphasis, **ipse** is used.

**Athenae urbs est ea vetustate, ut ipsa ex sese suos civis genuisse dicatur.** (Cic.)
**Neque sane, quid ipse sentiret, sed quid ab illis diceretur, ostendit.** (Cic.)

893 In speaking of actions by the subject upon himself, **ipse** is very common and agrees normally with the emphasized word. But it is predicated of the subject, not merely when (*a*) what is emphasized is the subject, and not others, acting, but also sometimes (*b*) when it is the subject acting on, or by, himself, and not on others.

(*a*) **Non egeo medicina: me ipse consolor.** (Cic.)
**Sunt qui Tarpeiam dicant, fraude visam agere, sua ipsam peremptam mercede.** (Liv.)

(*b*) **Iste repente ex alacri atque laeto sic erat humilis atque demissus, ut non modo populo Romano sed etiam sibi ipse condemnatus videretur.** (Cic.)

**Hos delectari videmus, si quid ratione per se ipsi invenerint.** (Cic.)
**Bellum pacem foedera societates per se ipse, cum quibus voluit, injussu populi ac senatus fecit diremitque.** (Liv.)

894 **Se, suus**, especially the latter, are also used in reference to some word in the sentence which is not the subject. This is rarely done where the context would create ambiguity.

**Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt.** (Cic.)
**Suis flammis delete Fidenas.** (Liv.)
**Neque occasioni tuae desis, neque suam occasionem hosti des.** (Liv.)
But also **Deum adgnoscis ex operibus ejus.** (Cic.)

895 **Se, suus** are also used in reference to the subject of the sentence or clause, on which the subordinate clause containing **se, suus** depends. So regularly when the subordinate clause has a subjunctive of the classes[1] D, G, or H. (But exceptions occasionally occur.)

(*a*) **Scipionem Hannibal eo ipso, quod adversus se dux potissimum lectus esset, praestantem virum credebat.** (Liv.)
**Domitius ad Pompeium in Apuliam peritos regionum mittit, qui petant atque orent, ut sibi subveniat.** (Caes.)

(*b*) Similarly of what is the logical, though not the grammatical, subject, of the principal sentence.
**A Caesare valde liberaliter invitor, sibi ut sim legatus.** (Cic.)

**Ipsius, ipsi,** &c. are sometimes found for **suum ipsius, sibi ipsi,** &c.

**Caesar milites incusavit: cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent?** (Caes.)

896 **Se, suus** are also used in reference to the unexpressed subject of an abstract infinitive or gerund.

**Honestius est alienis injuriis quam re sua commoveri.** (Cic.)

### Quis, quispiam, aliquis, quidam, nescio quis, alteruter, aliquot, nonnemo, &c.

897 The pronouns, which correspond to the English *a* or *some*, are **quis, quispiam, aliquis, quidam.** Of these **quis** is the least emphatic and **quidam** the most.

**Quis** is usually in relative sentences, and after **cum, si, nisi, ne, num**; **aliquis** is not uncommon after **si**, and sometimes used after **ne.**

**Quis** and **quispiam** are best translated by *a* (man, thing, &c.), *one*, or in the plural by nothing;
**aliquis** (plur. **aliqui**) by *some one, some one or other;*
**quidam** means *a certain person*, &c.;
**aliquot** (indeclinable), *a few, several;*
**nescio quis**, *some one or other* (§ 755), **alteruter** (*of two persons*), *one or other no matter which.*

[1] In consecutive sentences **eum**, not **se**, is regularly used.

More specific are the double negatives **nonnemo**, *one or two*, **nonnullus** (adj.), *some certainly, some at least*, **nonnihil**, *something at any rate*. So **est (sunt) qui**, §§ 703, 706.

(*a*) In affirmative sentences:

**Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est judiciumque.** (Hor.)
**Si nulla est (nota), quid istos interpretes audiamus? Sin quaepiam est, aveo scire quae sit.** (Cic.)
**Commentabar declamitans saepe cum M. Pisone et cum Q. Pompeio aut cum aliquo cotidie.** (Cic.)
**Accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantum.** (Hor.)
**Hoc quidem certe video, cum sit necesse alterum utrum vincere, qualis futura sit vel haec vel illa victoria.** (Cic.)

(*b*) In negative sentences; also with **sine**, &c.

**His idem propositum fuit, quod regibus, ut ne qua re egerent, ne cui parerent, libertate uterentur.** (Cic.)
**Vidi, fore, ut aliquando non Torquatus neque Torquati quispiam similis, sed ut aliquis patrimonii naufragus, bonorum hostis, aliter indicata haec esse diceret.** (Cic.)

### Quisquam, ullus, uter, quivis, quilibet, utervis.

898 The pronouns which correspond most with the English *any* are **quisquam** (usually subst.), **ullus** (adj.), **quivis, quilibet. Quisquam** and **ullus** are *any whatever, any at all*, where all are excluded; and are used in negative or quasi-negative sentences (the negative being always prefixed), or after comparatives, or in relative and conditional sentences, where the barest minimum is sufficient to justify an affirmative. **Quivis** and **quilibet** (originally relative sentences) signify *any you please*, and imply that all will answer the required conditions. Hence they can be used in either positive or negative sentences.

When only two persons or things are concerned, **uter** is (rarely) used corresponding to **quisquam; utervis, uterlibet** to **quivis, quilibet.**

For **non quisquam, non ullus, non quidquam, non uter**, &c. are generally used, at least in prose, **nemo, nullus, nihil, neuter**, &c. (For the use of the forms of **quisquam**, see § 209; of **nemo, nullus**, § 196; of **nihil, nihilum**, § 117.)

**Iste nihil umquam fecit sine aliquo quaestu atque praeda.** (Cic.)
**Quam diu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives.** (Cic.)
**Non recito cuiquam nisi amicis, idque coactus, non ubivis, coramve quibuslibet.** (Hor.)
**Cuivis potest accidere quod cuiquam potest.** (Publ.)
**Ut enim histrioni actio, saltatori motus non quivis sed certus quidam est datus, sic vita agenda est certo genere quodam, non quolibet.** (Cic.)
**At minus habeo virium, quam vestrum utervis.** (Cic.)

**Quisque, uterque, ambo, singuli, alterni,** &c.

899 **Quisque,** *each* (and sometimes, in Lucretius frequently, **quisquis**), is used of each several case, where there are more than two: **uterque** (rarely **quisque**, except with **suus**) of each several case, where there are two only. In the plural **quisque** and **uterque** are properly used of *each party*, or of *each set of cases.*

When all are spoken of without implying any distinction between them, **omnes** or **nemo non** are used; **ambo** of two only. **Cunctus** (usually in plural) and **universus** are *all together;* **totus** is *the whole.*

**Unus quisque,** *every single person;* **singuli,** *one apiece, several;* **alterni,** *every other.*

**Quisque** is frequently accompanied by **se** or **suus**; and also frequently joined to a superlative or ordinal, which is always placed before **quisque**, e.g. **optimus quisque,** *all the best people;* **decimus quisque,** *every tenth, one in ten;* **primus quisque,** *one after the other;* also *the very earliest;* **quotus quisque,** *how few!*

To **quisque** correspond generally (though not as distinguished from **omnes**) **ubique, usque**; to **uterque** corresponds **utrobique**, or **utrinque.**

**Magni est judicis statuere, quid quemque cuique praestare oporteat.**
**Abduci non potest, quia uterque utrique est cordi.** (Ter.) [(Cic.)
**Pro se quisque, ut in quoque erat auctoritatis plurimum, ad populum loquebatur.** (Cic.)
**Quid ubique habeat frumenti et navium, ostendit.** (Caes.)
**Qui timet his adversa, fere miratur eodem, quo cupiens, pacto: pavor est utrobique molestus.** (Hor.)
**Ex ceteris philosophis nonne optumus et gravissimus quisque confitetur multa se ignorare?** (Cic.)
**Forma dei munus. Forma quota quaeque superbit?** (Ov.)
**Censeo, uti C. Pansa, A. Hirtius consules, alter ambove, si eis videbitur, de ejus honore praemiove primo quoque die ad senatum referant.** (Cic.)
**In viduitate relictae filiae singulos filios parvos habentes.** (Liv.)
**Vix hostem, alterni si congrediamur, habemus.** (Verg.)

**Quisquis, quicunque, qualiscunque, utercumque,** &c.; **utique.**

900 The indefinite relative pronouns are sometimes used absolutely, i.e. instead of *whoever, whichever*, they denote *any one whosoever, some one or other, any thing whatever.* So **quisquis, quantusquantus, quicunque, qualiscunque, utercumque,** &c.

**De Drusi hortis quanti licuisse tu scribis, id ego quoque audieram, sed quantiquanti bene emitur, quod necesse est.** (Cic.)
**Vos animam hanc potius quocumque absumite leto.** (Verg.)
**Quae sanari poterunt, quacumque ratione, sanabo.** (Cic.)
**Si numina divum sunt aliquid, si non perierunt omnia mecum, quandocumque mihi poenas dabis.** (Ov.)
**Nisi mercedem aut nummos unde unde extricat, amaras porrecto jugulo historias, captivus ut, audit.** (Hor.)

901 Similarly **utique** comes to mean *anyhow*, *at all events;* **non (ne) utique**, *not of course*, *not necessarily*.

**Velim M. Varronis et Ollii mittas laudationem, Ollii utique, nam illam legi, volo tamen regustare.** (Cic.)

**Sapienti propositum est in vita agenda non utique, quod temptat, efficere, sed omnino recte facere: gubernatori propositum est utique navem in portum perducere.** (Sen.)

### Idem, alius, alter, ceteri.

902 **Idem** is *same*, as opposed to **alius**; **alius** is *other* generally, **alter**, *other of two* or *the second* of many; **ceteri** is *the others*. **Reliquus** is *remaining*, i.e. after something has been subtracted. Often it is indistinguishable from **ceteri**.

When **alius** or **alter** is repeated in different clauses, the first is in English often to be translated *one*, the second **alius** is *another*, **alter** *the other*. In Livy, &c. **alius** is sometimes used where **ceteri** would be more strictly right.

When repeated in the same sentence, **alius** is often to be translated by *different;* e.g. **alius alium videt (vident)**, *different men see different things*, or *one sees one thing, another another;* sometimes **alius alium (alter alterum) vident** is *they see one another*.

**Unus et alter** is *one or two*. (For **idem ac, alius ac** see § 661.)

**Multae idem istuc aliae cupiunt.** (Plaut.)

**Equidem certo idem sum qui semper fui.** (Plaut.)

**Alium esse censes nunc me atque olim, cum dabam?** (Ter.)

**Alias bestias nantis aquarum incolas esse voluit, alias volucres caelo frui libero, serpentis quasdam, quasdam esse gradientis: earum ipsarum partim solivagas, partim congregatas, inmanis alias, quasdam autem cicures, nonnullas abditas terraque tectas.** (Cic.)

**Illi alias aliud eisdem de rebus et sentiunt et judicant.** (Cic.)

**Alteri apud alteros formidinem facere. Pro metu repente gaudium mutatur: milites alius alium laeti appellant.** (Sall.)

**Numero centuriarum Tarquinius alterum tantum adjecit.** (Liv.)

**Unus et alter adsuitur pannus.** (Hor.)

**Altero vicesimo die litteras reddidit.** (Cic.)

**O spectaculum uni Crasso jucundum, ceteris non item!** (Cic.)

**Refugientes pauci aliam omnem multitudinem in potestate hostium esse afferebant.** (Liv.)

**Quis? quisnam? ecquis? ecquisnam? numquis?**

903 Of the interrogative pronouns **quis** and (usually) **quisnam** (sometimes **namquis**) denote *who? which (of many)?* **uter**, *whether of two;* **ecquis, numquis**, and sometimes **siquisnam, num quisnam** inquire whether *any* one or thing of the kind exists.

In all these **quis, quid** are substantive, **qui, quod** adjective (§ 207).

**TH. Quis fuit igitur? PY. Iste Chaerea. TH. Qui Chaerea? PY. Iste ephebus frater Phaedriae.** (Ter.)

**Ecquis in aedibust? Heus ecquis hic est? ecquis hoc aperit ostium? ecquis exit?** (Plaut.)

**Nihil jam quaerere aliud debetis, nisi uter utri insidias fecerit.** (Cic.)

## Miscellaneous Remarks on Pronouns.

904 The second person plural is not used in Latin (as in English) for the singular. e.g. **Quid ais?** *What say you?*

The first person plural is sometimes so used, as in English.

**Tu, quaeso, festina ad nos venire.** (Cic.)

**Reliquum est ut de felicitate (Pompeii) timide ac pauca dicamus. Ego enim sic existimo.** (Cic.)

905 On the usual omission of any separate personal pronoun, when it would be the subject, see §§ 571, 572 sq.

It is also, if no ambiguity is likely to arise, often omitted, when it would be in the accusative or dative.

**Fratrem tuum in ceteris rebus laudo: in hac una reprehendere cogor.**

So always **vidi eum rogavique**; never **vidi eum et rogavi eum. Meos Caesarisque libros reliqui,** *I left my own books and those of Caesar* (never **eosque Caesaris**).

The possessive pronoun is generally omitted.

**Roga parentes** (sc. **tuos**).

**Patris** (sc. **mei**) **animum mihi reconciliasti.**

906 The possessive pronouns are sometimes used in the sense of 'favourable to me, you,' &c.

**Loco aequo, tempore tuo pugnasti.** (Liv.)

**Alfenus utebatur populo sane suo.** (Cic.)

907 The indefinite pronoun 'one' is variously expressed in Latin: but these different modes are not all equally applicable in all circumstances.

(*a*) By a personal passive: e.g. **Rex hic valde diligitur,** *one feels strongly attached to the king.*

(*b*) By an impersonal expression: e.g. **Non licet ire,** *one may not go;* **solet dici,** *one often says;* **parendum est,** *one must obey.*

(*c*) By the first person plural: e.g. **Quae volumus, credimus libenter,** *what one wishes, one readily believes.*

(*d*) By the second person singular subjunctive; e.g. **putares**, *one would have fancied.*

(*e*) By **quis** or **aliquis**; e.g. **si quis dicat**, *if one should say*, &c.

(*f*) By **is** with a relative, e.g. **is qui hoc dicit**, *one who says this*, &c.

(*g*) By **se** after, or with, a general infinitive (cf. § 537 *c*); e.g.

**Neglegere quid de se quisque sentiat** (*what people think of one*), **non solum arrogantis est sed etiam omnino dissoluti.** (Cic.)
**Melius est ire se ipsum**, *it is better* (*one does better*) *to go oneself.*

Frequently this indefinite pronoun is omitted altogether in Latin: e.g. **Libros quaeris: bonum affero**, *You seek books: I bring you a good one.*

So after '*any*,' '*each*,' '*some*,' '*certain*;' e.g. **quisquam**, **quivis**, *anyone;* **quisque**, *each one;* **aliquis**, *some one;* **quidam**, *a certain one;* or simply '*one*.'

908 '*Each other*,' '*one another*,' &c. are expressed in Latin by,

(*a*) **alius alium** (**alter alterum**) **intueri**, *they began to look at one another.* (Cf. § 582.)

(*b*) **inter se, inter nos**, &c.

**Veri amici non solum colent inter se ac diligent, sed etiam verebuntur.** (Cic.) *Will not only look after and love, but also respect one another.*

(*c*) Sometimes by repetition of the noun.

**Manus manum lavat.** (Similarly, but without implying reciprocity: **Vir virum legit. Dies diem docet.**)
**(Atticus moriens) non ex vita, sed ex domo in domum migrare videbatur.** (Nep.)
**Tantae fuerunt tenebrae, ut per biduum nemo hominem homo agnosceret.** (Cic.)

(*d*) In later writers by **invicem** (*in turn*).

**Quae omnia huc spectant, ut invicem ardentius diligamus.** (Plin.)

(*e*) Sometimes by **ultro citro**,

**Societas inter populum Carthaginiensem regemque data ultro citroque fide affirmatur.** (Liv.)

# APPENDICES.

## APPENDIX A.

### MONEY, MEASURES, WEIGHTS, &c.

#### i. Coinage (chiefly from Hultsch).

909 COINED money was not used at Rome till the time of the decemviral legislation (303 U.C. = 451 B.C.). The coin was called an **as** and was supposed to weigh a pound; hence called, in distinction from the subsequent **as, as libralis** or **librarius**. Coins also existed for the **semis, triens, qvadrans, sextans** and **uncia**. The real weight (of unworn pieces now found) is 9 to 11 **unciae** and may be taken therefore at an average of 10 **unciae**. The coinage was of copper (**aes**), alloyed with tin and lead.

In 485 U.C. (= 269 B.C.), shortly before the first Punic war, silver was first coined, and at the same time the **as** was reduced to the weight of 4 **unciae** (and then gradually before the end of the first Punic war to 2 **unciae**) instead of an actual 10, nominal 12, **unciae**. Three silver coins were introduced; the **denarius** (often stamped with a **biga**, or **qvadriga**, and thence called **bigatus** or **qvadrigatus**) = 10 (reduced) **asses**; the **qvinarius** = 5 **asses**; the **sestertius** = $2\frac{1}{2}$ **asses**. The coin equivalent to the reduced **as** was of copper and called **libella**; the half of this was **sembella**; the quarter (of the **libella**) was **teruncius**. The double **as** was coined and called **dupondius**; other coins were **tressis** = 3 **asses**; **decessis** = 10 **asses**. The **denarius** was probably $\frac{1}{72}$ pound of silver.

In the year 537 U.C. (= 217 B.C.) the copper **as** was reduced to the weight of one **uncia**, and to the value of $\frac{1}{10}$ **denarius** or $\frac{1}{4}$ **sestertius**. Probably at the same time the **denarius**, which had been gradually losing, was reduced so as to be equal to $\frac{1}{84}$ pound of silver. The **as** eventually sunk to the value of $\frac{1}{2}$ **uncia**.

A new silver coin called **victoriatus**, because stamped on the reverse with a figure of Victory, was introduced probably about the year 228 B.C. At first it was $\frac{3}{4}$ **denarius**, afterwards by the Clodian law, 104 B.C., it was reduced to be = $\frac{1}{2}$ **denarius**, and as such was known to Varro, Cicero, &c.

In the time of Nero the **denarius** was again reduced to $\frac{1}{96}$ pound of silver, and at the same time Nero debased the silver.

Copper coinage was dropped from about 84 to 74 B.C. until 15 B.C. (Except that some coins by Antony are found.) Then the silver sesterce being given up, a four-**as** piece was coined instead; and a piece of half the value of the new sesterce, viz. the **dupondius**. Both these were of brass. The **as, semis** and **qvadrans** were of copper.

Gold was first coined in 217 B.C.: but sparsely until Sulla, Pompey and Caesar. Caesar's coin called **aureus** was fixed as equivalent to 25 **denarii** or 100 sesterces.

The value of these different coins is about as follows:

| | Eng. Mon. |
|---|---|
| **As libralis** (copper) . . . . . | $5\frac{1}{3}d.$ |
| 269—217 B.C. | |
| **As sextantarius** (=$\frac{2}{3}$ **sestertius**) (copper) | nearly $1d.$ |
| **Sestertius** (silver) . . . . . | $2\frac{1}{3}d.$ |
| **Denarius** (silver) . . . . . | $9\frac{1}{3}d.$ |
| 217—30 B.C. | |
| **Sestertius** (silver) . . . . . | nearly $2d.$ |
| **Denarius** (silver) . . . . . | $8\frac{1}{4}d.$ |
| **Aureus** (gold) = 25 **denarii** = 100 **sestertii** . | $17s.$ |

Hence the following amounts are deduced:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mille sestertium** . . . . . | . £8. 10*s.* |
| **Decies sestertium** = 1,000,000 **sestertii** . . | £8500. |

### ii. Expression of sums of money.

910 The **denarius** which was the silver coin in most currency was little used in reckoning. The ordinary unit of reckoning was the **sestertius**, or **nummus**, or, in full, **sestertius nummus**.

Up to 2000, the cardinal numbers are prefixed, e.g. **centum sestertii, ducenti sestertii**. But for higher numbers, in thousands up to a million, a neuter substantive in the plural number was used, **sestertia**, e.g. **duo** or **septem sestertia** for **duo** or **septem millia sestertium** (the short form of the genitive plural being taken for a neuter substantive); **sestertium sexagena millia, sestertium sexagena millia nummum, sestertium nummum qvinque millia.**

For sums of a million and upwards numeral adverbs are resorted to, e.g. **decies centum** (or **centena**) **millia sestertium.** Usually the numeral adverb and **sestertium** are put alone, e.g. **decies sestertium**; similarly **duodecies sestertium** (1,200,000), **ter et vicies** (2,300,000). In these expressions again **sestertium** was taken to be a neuter substantive, and described as such, but in the singular number only, e.g. (nom.) **sestertium qvadragies relinquitur** (4,000,000); (acc.) **sestertium qvadragies accepi**; (abl.) **sestertio decies fundum emi, in sestertio vicies egere** (*to be poor in the possession of* 2,000,000 *sesterces*). Occasionally, when the context is clear, the adverb alone is put, and **sestertium** omitted. Sometimes other parts of the full expression are omitted, e.g. **decies centena millia, decies centena** (cf. § 188. 2). As an instance of a composite expression may serve, **Accepi vicies ducenta, triginta qvinque milia, qvadringentos decem et septem nummos** (Cic.), 2,235,417 sesterces.

### iii. Expression of Interest of Money.

911 Interest was denoted at first by the proportionate part of the capital, and the parts of the **as** were made use of for this purpose. Thus the decemviral legislation fixed legal interest at $\frac{1}{12}$ of the capital, **fenus unciarium.** This is equivalent to $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent., and if Niebuhr's views be right, that this originally related to the old year of ten months, it would be equivalent to 10 per cent. for a year of twelve months. In 347 B.C. the rate was reduced to **semunciarium fenus**, i.e. $\frac{1}{24}$ of the capital, i.e. 5 per cent. for the year of twelve months.

In and after Sulla's time, the more common Greek method of reckoning interest *by the month* came in, and the legal rate was $\frac{1}{100}$ of the capital per month, called **centesima** (sc. **pars sortis**), i.e. 12 per cent. for a year. Lower rates of interest were denoted by the fractional parts of the **as** (the **centesima** being taken as the **as**), higher rates by distributives (or a combination of distributives and fractions). The following expressions are found either in the *Corpus Juris* or Cicero. Interest is expressed by the plural **usurae**, in apposition to the parts of the **as**:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **usurae unciae** . . | i.e. $\frac{1}{12}$ | of the **centesima** . | = 1 per cent. |
| **usurae qvadrantes** . . | $\frac{1}{4}$ | ..... | = 3 ... |
| **usurae trientes** or **tertia centesimae pars** . . | $\frac{1}{3}$ | ..... | = 4 ... |
| **usurae qvincunces** . . | $\frac{5}{12}$ | ..... | = 5 ... |
| **usurae semisses** or **dimidia centesimae** . . | $\frac{1}{2}$ | ..... | = 6 ... |
| **usurae besses** or **bes centesimae** . . . . . | $\frac{2}{3}$ | ..... | = 8 ... |
| **usurae deunces** . . . | $\frac{11}{12}$ | ..... | = 11 ... |
| **usurae centesimae** . . | | ..... | = 12 ... |
| **binae centesimae** . . . | | ..... | = 24 ... |
| **ternae centesimae** . . | | ..... | = 36 ... |
| **qvaternae centesimae** . | | ..... | = 48 ... |
| **qvinae (centesimae)** . . | | ..... | = 60 ... |

But the singular is sometimes found, e.g. **fenus ex triente factum erat bessibus** (Cic.). Interest rose from $\frac{1}{3}$ to $\frac{2}{3}$, i.e. per month, =4 per cent. to 8 per cent. per year.

### iv. Measures of Weight[1].

**912** The **as** and its divisions and multiples have been already given, § 189.

The Greek system also was used in the imperial times, the unit being a **denarius**, called from the Greek **drachma**, of which the **libra** (=**as**) contained until Nero's time 84 (so in Celsus and Pliny), afterwards 96. This latter **drachma** was divided into three **scriptula**, the **scriptulum** = two **oboli**, the **obolus** = three **siliquae**.

The **libra** may be taken as about $\frac{7}{8}$ pound Troy. Hence the **denarius** or **drachma** (before Nero's time) was nearly an Engl. drachm (60 grains).

### v. Measures of Length.

**913** The unit of one system was *a finger-breadth*, **digitus**; four finger-breadths made a *palm*, **palmus**; and four palms, a *foot*, **pes**; *a foot and a palm* was **palmipes**; a foot and a half (**sesquipes**) was a *forearm*, **cubitus**. The **ulna** was taken as a third of a man's height, perhaps the length of the whole arm.

But the foot was also divided into twelve parts, and for these the names of the fractions of an **as** were used. *Two feet* was similarly called **dupondius**; $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet was **pes sestertius**.

[1] In §§ iv—vii. I have chiefly followed Hultsch. The English equivalents are usually from the tables appended to Smith's *Dict. Antiqq.*

In land-surveying, the *rod*, **pertica**, contained ten feet, hence called **decempeda**. The **actus** (i. e. the furrow made at one drawing (*driving*) of the plough oxen) measured twelve rods.

The unit of distance was not the single step (**gradus**, $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet) but the **passus**, 5 feet, i.e. the distance from the point where the same foot is taken up to the point where it is put down. A *thousand* paces, **mille passus**, gives the origin of a *mile*. The Greek **stadium** was also used and taken at $\frac{1}{8}$ of a mile (i.e. our furlong).

The **pes** = 11·6 Eng. inches; **mille passus** = 4850 Eng. feet or ·919 Eng. mile. The **pertica** = 9 feet 8·5 inches.

## vi. Measures of Surface.

914 The **pes qvadratus** (*square foot*), as contrasted with the **pes porrectus** (*foot in length*), was the unit. But in land measurement a higher unit was taken, the **scripulum** (Varro), **decempeda qvadrata** (Pallad.), i.e. the *square rod*.

The **actus qvadratus**, often simply **actus**, contained 144 *square rods*, **perticae**; a double **actus** was a **jugerum**; a double **jugerum** formed an **heredium**; 100 **heredia** formed a **centuria**; 4 **centuriae** formed a **saltus** (Varr. *R. R.* 110).

The fractions of the **jugerum** were denoted by the parts of an **as**, the **sicilicus** also being used for $\frac{1}{48}$; the **sextula** for $\frac{1}{72}$; the **scripulum** (for $\frac{1}{24}$ of the **sextula**, i.e. for) $2\frac{1}{3}$ of the **jugerum**.

The **pes qvadratus** = ·94 Engl. sq. foot: the **actus qvadratus** = 1 rood 9 perches 231 sq. feet: the **jugerum** = 2 roods 19 perches 189·9 square feet, i.e. almost $\frac{5}{8}$ of an acre; an **heredium** was nearly an acre and a quarter.

## vii. Measures of Capacity.

915 The unit of *liquid* measure was the **qvadrantal**, which was defined as **vas pedis qvadrati**, i.e. as *containing a square foot* of wine. The name in and after Cicero's time was superseded by that of **amphora** (ἀμφορεύς). The **amphora** contained two **urnae**, the **urna** four **congii**; the **congius** six **sextarii**; the **sextarius** two **heminae**; the **hemina** two **qvartarii**; the **qvartarius** two **acetabula**. A **culeus** contained 20 **amphorae**.

The duodecimal system was applied to the **sextarius**, a twelfth of which was a **cyathus** = **uncia**. The **triens** = 4 **cyathi**, **qvadrans** = 3 **cyathi**, **sextans** = 2 **cyathi**, &c., are spoken of.

The unit of *dry* measure was the **modius**, which contained two **semodii** or 16 **sextarii**. The divisions of the **sextarius** (**hemina**, &c.) were the same as of liquid measure.

The **sextarius** was = ·96 pint Engl. Hence the **amphora** was about = $5\frac{3}{4}$ gall. Engl.; the **modius** = nearly 2 gall. Engl.

# APPENDIX B.

## DIVISION OF TIME AND EXPRESSION OF DATE.

916 The Romans divided time into years, months, days, and hours. A civil day, as recognised in law, was from midnight to midnight; a natural day, from sunrise to sunset. The duodecimal system was applied here also, the natural day being divided into twelfths, called **horae**, which were therefore of different absolute lengths according to the time of year. From Dec. 23rd, when the day at Rome was, according to modern reckoning, 8 hrs. 54 m. long, and the Roman hour was 44½ m., the length increased up to 25 June, when the day was 15 hrs. 6 m., and the Roman hour 75½ m. At the equinoxes, 23 March, 25 Sept., the Roman hour was of the same length as our own. The civil day is sometimes spoken of as divided into twenty-four hours.

The night was for military purposes divided into four *watches* (**vigilia prima**, &c.) of equal length. And a similar division of the day into four parts is also implied by Varro's account of the praetor's marshal crying the 3rd hour, noon, and the 9th hour. Various loose names for different parts of the day and night came into vogue, and are arranged by Censorinus (c. 24) in the following order, starting from midnight:

1. **De media nocte**; 2. **gallicinium**; 3. **conticinium**, *general silence;* 4. **ante lucem**; 5. **diluculum**; 6. **mane**; 7. **ad meridiem**; 8. **meridies**; 9. **de meridie**; 10. **suprema**; 11. **vespera**; 12. **crepusculum**; 13. **luminibus accensis**, or, anciently, **prima facie**; 14. **concubium**; 15. **intempesta nox**; 16. **ad mediam noctem**; 17. **media nox.**

917 The division of time into weeks of seven days with distinct names was not used by the ancient Romans (before the introduction of Christianity). The months were distinguished by the names adopted by us from the Romans, excepting that, before the time of the Emperor Augustus, **Julius** and **Augustus** had the names of **Quinctilis** and **Sextilis** (i. e. *fifth* and *sixth* month, March being the first). The days of the month were computed from three leading days in each, which were called respectively **Calendae (Kal.)**, **Nonae (Non.)**, and **Idus (Id.)**; to these the name of the month was appended as an adjective. The **Calendae** was the first day of every month; the **Nonae** and **Idus** the fifth and thirteenth, except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which they were the seventh and fifteenth respectively. From these days they counted backwards, the days between the 1st and the Nones being reckoned as so many days before the Nones: the days between the Nones and Ides as so many days before the Ides; and the remaining days of the month as so many days before the Kalends of the *next* month. The day immediately preceding any of these reckoning points was called **pridie Nonas**, &c.; the day next but one before was the *third* day before (in consequence of the Nones, &c. being themselves included in the reckoning), and so on.

There are two abbreviated modes of denoting the date; e.g. the 27th of March might be marked as **vi Kal. Apr.**, or **a. d. vi Kal. Apr.** The first is for **sexto (die ante) Kalendas Apriles**; the second for **ante diem sextum Kalendas Apriles.** The latter expression appears to have originally signified *before* (*on the sixth day*) *the Kalends of April;* the exact day being

thrown in parenthetically, and attracted from the ablative into the accusative case in consequence of following **ante**. Similarly we find the date sometimes denoted by the number of days preceding a festival; as **a. d. v Terminalia**, i.e. 19th Feb. (the festival of the god of boundaries being on the 23rd Feb.). This expression was considered as one word, before which **in** or **ex** may stand: as, **Ex ante diem iii Nonas Junias usque ad pridie Kalendas Septembres**, *from the 3rd June to the 31st August;* **differre aliquid in ante diem xv Kalendas Novembres**, *to put off something to the 18th October.*

The readiest way of reckoning the day is, (1) if the date lie between the Kalends and Nones, or between the Nones and Ides, to subtract the number of the day mentioned from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and add *one* (for the inclusive reckoning): (2) if the date lie between the Ides and the Kalends, to subtract the number of the day mentioned from the number of the days in the month, and add *two* (i.e. one for the inclusive reckoning, and *one* because the Kalends are not the last of the month in which the date lies, but the first of the following month).

918 In leap year the intercalated day was counted between **a. d. vi Kal. Mart.** and **a. d. vii Kal. Mart.** and denominated **a. d. bissextum Kal. Mart.**, so that **a. d. vii Kal. Mart.** answers as in the ordinary February to Feb. 23, and **a. d. viii Kal. Mart.** to Feb. 22nd, &c. (Hence the name of leap year, **annus bissextilis.**)

Before the reformation of the Calendar by Julius Caesar, B.C. 45, the number of days in the months were in March, May, July and October, 31; in February 28; in all the rest 29. Hence, as these four months were two days longer, the Nones and Ides were two days later. This should be remembered in reading Cicero's letters, many of which were written before 45 B.C. After that year the number of days in each month was the same as it is with us.

The following examples suppose the date to be *subsequent to* B.C. 45. The usual abbreviated form is given. [It must be remembered that **Kalendae**, **Nonae**, and **Idus** are feminine, and the months *adjectives;* that the date (*'on the first,'* &c.) is in the ablative (**Kalendis**, **Nonis**, **Idibus**); and that **a. d. vi Non. Mart.** &c. is for **ante diem sextum Nonas Martias.**]

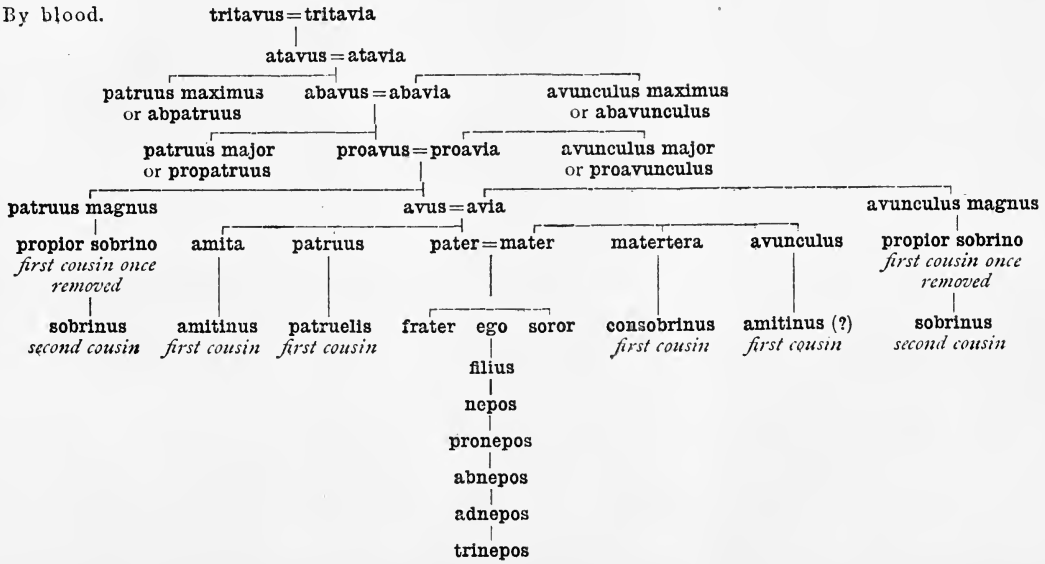
| Day of English month. | January (So also Aug. Dec.). | April (So also Jun., Sept., Nov.). | March (So also May, Jul., Oct.). |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **Kal. Jan.** | **Kal. Apr.** | **Kal. Mart.** |
| 2 | **a. d. iv Non. Jan.** | **a. d. iv Non. Apr.** | **a. d. vi Non. Mart.** |
| 4 | **Prid. Non. Jan.** | **Prid. Non. Apr.** | **a. d. iv Non. Mart.** |
| 5 | **Non. Jan.** | **Non. Apr.** | **a. d. iii Non. Mart.** |
| 6 | **a. d. viii Id. Jan.** | **a. d. viii Id. Apr.** | **Prid. Non. Mart.** |
| 7 | **a. d. vii Id. Jan.** | **a. d. vii Id. Apr.** | **Non. Mart.** |
| 8 | **a. d. vi Id. Jan.** | **a. d. vi Id. Apr.** | **a. d. viii Id. Mart.** |
| 12 | **Prid. Id. Jan.** | **Prid. Id. Apr.** | **a. d. iv Id. Mart.** |
| 13 | **Id. Jan.** | **Id. Apr.** | **a. d. iii Id. Mart.** |
| 14 | **a. d. xix Kal. Feb.** | **a. d. xviii Kal. Mai.** | **Prid. Id. Mart.** |
| 15 | **a. d. xviii Kal. Feb.** | **a. d. xvii Kal. Mai.** | **Id. Mart.** |
| 16 | **a. d. xvii Kal. Feb.** | **a. d. xvi Kal. Mai.** | **a. d. xvii Kal. Apr.** |
| 30 | **a. d. iii Kal. Feb.** | **Prid. Kal. Mai.** | **a. d. iii Kal. Apr.** |
| 31 | **Prid. Kal. Feb.** | | **Prid. Kal. Apr.** |

# APPENDIX C.

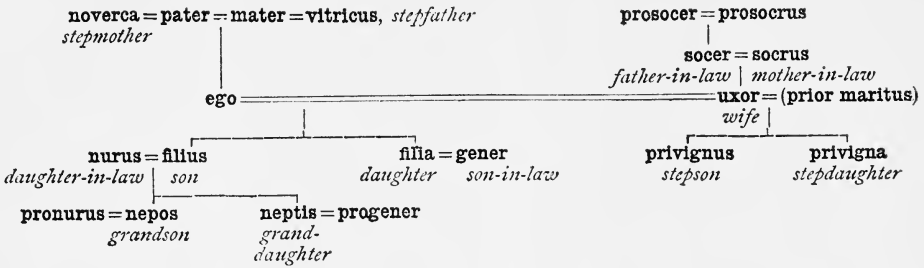
## NAMES OF RELATIONS BY BLOOD AND MARRIAGE.

N.B. =denotes marriage, | denotes descent. — is put between brothers and sisters.

**919** i. By blood.



920 ii. By marriage.




921 All the names in the above tables denote their relation to *me*. Their relation to others would of course be denoted analogously.

In Table i. are omitted, for clearness' sake, (*a*) all ascendants of the mother, the names being the same as for the ascendants of the father; (*b*) all female relatives, except mother, grandmothers on father's side, sister and aunts; the names of others being easily supplied by analogy; e.g. **amita magna**; **amita major** or **proamita**; **propior sobrinā**; **sobrina**; **amitina**; **filia**; **neptis**; **proneptis**, &c.

**amitinus, consobrinus, patruelis** are properly adjectives, and **frater** (or **soror**) is often used with them. **Consobrinus**, properly *sister's children*, became the ordinary term for any *first cousin*.

In Table ii. the descendants of a **filia** would be described by the same names as those of a **filius**; and **prosocer, prosocrus** would apply to the father and mother of a **socrus** as well as a **socer**.

**levir** is *a husband's brother*; **glos** (comp. γάλως), *a husband's sister*.

**agnatus** is *a relative through males*; consequently it includes a **soror, filia, amita**, &c., but not any of their descendants. **Cognatus** is any *relative by blood*; **affinis**, a *relative by marriage*.

# APPENDIX D.

## ELEMENTS AND TERMS OF LATIN METRE.

### FEET.

**922** A *foot* consists of two or more adjoining syllables, having defined quantities, and may be contained in one or more words or parts of words. The Latin names of the different feet recognised in statements on metre are, as follows: examples of each are added:

Disyllabic.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Pyrrhĭchius** | ⏑ ⏑ *age* | **Spondēus** | – – *vici* |
| **Trŏchaeus** or **Chŏrēus** | – ⏑ *prode* | **Iambus** | ⏑ – *agas* |

Trisyllabic.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Trĭbrăchys** | ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ *agite* | **Mŏlossus** | – – – *vicini* |
| **Dactўlus** | – ⏑ ⏑ *prodite* | **Anăpaestus** | ⏑ ⏑ – *agitas* |
| **Crētĭcus** or **Amphĭmăcer** | – ⏑ – *proditos* | **Bacchĭus**[1] | ⏑ – – *amari* |
| **Antĭbacchĭus**[1] | – – ⏑ *vicina* (nom. or acc.) | **Amphĭbrăchys** | ⏑ – ⏑ *amare* (inf.) |

Quadrisyllabic.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Prŏcĕleusmătĭcus** | ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ *recipere* | **Dispondēus** | – – – – *insanires* |
| **Dĭtrŏchaeus** or **Dichŏrēus** | – ⏑ – ⏑ *flagitare* | **Diiambus** | ⏑ – ⏑ – *inutiles* |
| **Chŏriambus** | – ⏑ ⏑ – *flagitio* | **Antispastus** | ⏑ – – ⏑ *recepere* |
| **Iōnĭcŭs a majori** | – – ⏑ ⏑ *felicia* | **Iōnĭcus a minori** | ⏑ ⏑ – – *agitasti* |
| **Paeon I**$^{mus}$ | – ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ *flagitia* | **Paeon II**$^{dus}$ | ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ *inutile* |
| **Paeon III**$^{tius}$ | ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ *trepidare* | **Paeon IV**$^{tus}$ | ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ – *memineras* |
| **Epĭtrĭtus I**$^{mus}$ | ⏑ – – – *reclinatos* | **Epitritus II**$^{dus}$ | ⏑ ⏑ – – *insecuti* |
| **Epĭtrĭtus III**$^{tius}$ | – – ⏑ – *dijudicas* | **Epitritus IV**$^{tus}$ | – – – ⏑ *insanire* |

Pentasyllabic.

**Dochmius** ⏑ – – ⏑ – *requisiveras*

### VERSES.

**923** A verse or line is composed of a number of feet in a definite order, and is variously named and described by the number of syllables or of feet or of metres which it contains: e.g. **hendecasyllabus** (*eleven-syllabled*), **dĕcăsyllabus**, &c.; **sēnarius** (*with six feet*), **septenarius**, &c.; **mŏnŏmĕter** (*with one metre*), **dimĕter** (*two*), **pentămĕter** (*five*), **hexămĕter** (*six*), &c.

In dactylic verse one foot makes (for this purpose of description) a *metre;* in iambic, trochaic, and anapaestic verse two feet make one metre.

A verse containing the stated number of *complete* metres is called *acatalectic.*

If the last metre be short by one syllable, it is called *catalectic:* if short by two syllables *brachycatalectic.*

[1] Some writers reverse the application of the terms **Bacchius** and **Antibacchius.**

If there be one or two syllables after the last complete metre, it is called *hypercatalectic*.

A verse is said to be *pure* when it consists only of one kind of feet (e. g. pure iambic). Most verses are impure, i. e. they contain more than one kind of feet. Some verses admit in certain parts any of several feet, while in other parts one kind only is admissible.

Some kinds of verse are named after their inventor or first user, usually a Greek lyric poet; e. g. Archilŏchus (cir. 700 B. C.), Alcaeus, Alcman and Sappho (cir. 600 B. C.), Hippōnax (cir. 540 B. C.), Anacreon (cir. 520 B.C.), Pherecrates (cir. 450 B. C.), Asclepiades and Glycon (age unknown).

**924** The main classification of verses is best made by considering whether a verse moves from long syllables to short (*falling rhythm*) or from short to long (*rising rhythm*). Thus verses composed of dactyls and of trochees form one class: those composed of iambs and of anapaests form another class.

Many verses are catalectic, that is to say, the last foot is abridged. If this is the case in iambic or trochaic or anapaestic verse the last foot is thus represented by one syllable, most frequently a long syllable: in dactylic verse either by a single syllable (*male* ending) or by a trochee (*female* ending). A certain rest is thus obtained. In verses of more than two metres (i. e. in trimeters, tetrameters, &c.) a similar rest is often sought in the middle of the verse by making a break. And this in two ways:

(1) In the verses which are used continuously to form long poems or long parts of plays, viz. in the dactylic hexameter, in the iambic trimeter and in the trochaic tetrameter, this break is procured by making the end of a disyllabic or polysyllabic word come at the middle of the third or fourth foot or of both feet. This '*cutting*' of the verse is called *caesura*. It is in harmony with the principle which prevails in these verses of avoiding, at least in the first half, frequent coincidences, especially successive coincidences, of words with feet.

(2) In some other verses we find regularly, at the end of the first or second half of the verse, or at the end of both, a long syllable, after which, as after a rest, the rhythm starts afresh. Thus in the falling rhythm a trochee with such a long syllable becomes a cretic, a dactyl becomes a choriamb, and, in the rising rhythm, an iamb becomes a bacchic, an anapaest becomes a rising or lesser ionic (*ionicus a minori*).

A spondee, as being equal in length (§ 51) to either a dactyl or anapaest, belongs to both rhythms, and is freely used in certain parts of the verse, sometimes necessarily, sometimes optionally, in place of trochee, dactyl, iamb or anapaest (cf. Hor. *A. P.* 256 sq.). A tribrach is found, in some verses frequently, taking the place of iamb or trochee, the long syllable being *resolved* (as it is often said) into two short ones.

**925** The last syllable of a verse is in most, but not in all kinds of verses, at option either long or short, whatever the metre may theoretically require. A short vowel is not so frequent a close as is a long vowel or a consonant. Again, generally an hiatus is not noticed between the end of a verse and the beginning of the following verse. Occasionally, however, a short vowel is so elided (§ 64). If, however, the metre runs on continuously, the end of the verse being subject to the same requirements as to quantity and as to the avoidance of hiatus as if there were no division of verses, there is said to be **sȳnăphĭa** (*continuity*) in the metre or between the verses. Anapaestic verse in Greek has always this continuity. It is frequent also in Glyconics

and Sapphics as used by Catullus and sometimes in those used by Horace. A word is rarely divided between one line and the next (cf. Hor. *Od.* 1. 2. 19; Catull. 61. 82).

The following are the principal kinds of verses which occur in Latin poetry now preserved. Sometimes a poem, or a distinct part of a poem, is composed of a number of verses all of one kind, sometimes of two or more, used alternately or in some regular order.

## FALLING RHYTHMS.

N.B. The vertical line is used in the metrical scheme to mark the feet or sets of feet; in the lines quoted it is used to mark a caesura or break.

926 ### *Dactylic.*

1. **Dactylic hexameter catalectic**, or **Heroic** verse, consists of six feet, the first four of which are either dactyls or spondees, the fifth is a dactyl, rarely a spondee, the sixth always a trochee or spondee. If the fifth foot is a spondee, the fourth is a dactyl. There is usually a caesura (either male or female) in the middle of the third foot, sometimes not until the middle of the fourth foot. First used in Latin by Ennius, then by Lucilius, Lucretius, Catullus (62; 64) and above all by Vergil, Horace (in Satires and the Epistles), Ovid (in Metamorphoses) and many later writers.

– ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ | – ⏑ | – ⏓
– – | – – | – – | – – |

*Eumenides,* | *quibus anguino* | *redimita capillo*
*Frons expirantis* | *praeportat pectoris iras,*
*Huc huc adventate* | *meas* | *audite querelas.*
*Ipsius ante pedes* | *fluctus* | *maris adludebant.* (Catull.)

2. **Dactylic tetrameter acatalectic**: rare (Pseudo-Sen. *Herc. Oet.* 1958 sq.).

– ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡
– – | – – | – – |

*Unde sonus trepidas aures ferit.*

3. **Dactylic tetrameter catalectic**: similar to the last four feet of the Hexameter: used chiefly with other verses.

– ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ | – ⏓
– – | – – | – – |

*Cras ingens iterabimus aequor.*
*Plurimus in Junonis honorem.* (Hor.)

4. **Dactylic dimeter catalectic** (or **Adonius**, from a poem of Sappho calling on Adonis) consists of a dactyl and a trochee or spondee. Used only with other verses.

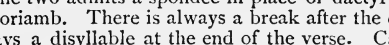
– ◡ ◡ | – ⏓ *Terruit urbem.* (Hor.)

927 ### *Dactylo-choriambic.*

5. **Dactylic dimeter hypercatalectic**, or **Archilochius minor**, consists of a dactyl and a choriamb. Used only with other verses.

– ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ – *Pulvis et umbra sumus.* (Hor.)

6. **Dactylic pentameter** is composed of two dimeter hypercatalectics, but the first of the two admits a spondee in place of dactyl and a molossus in place of a choriamb. There is always a break after the choriamb. Ovid has nearly always a disyllable at the end of the verse. Catullus and Propertius have occasionally words of three, four, or five syllables. The verse is very frequently used in alternation with the hexameter. See § 938 A.



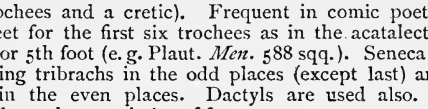
*Obruet hostiles | ista ruina domos.* (Ov.)
*Tunc vero longas | condimus Iliadas.* (Propert.)
*Id quod verbosis | dicitur et fatuis.* (Catull.)

928 *Trochaic.*

7. **Trochaic tetrameter acatalectic** consists of eight trochees, for any of which a spondee may be used, and for all but the last a dactyl or anapaest or tribrach. Only in comic poets; e. g. Plaut. *Menaech.* 588 foll.

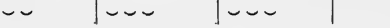
*Dixi causam: condiciones | tetuli tortas confragosas.*

8. **Trochaic tetrameter catalectic** consists of seven trochees and a half (i. e. six trochees and a cretic). Frequent in comic poets with the same choice of feet for the first six trochees as in the acatalectic. A break at end of 4th or 5th foot (e. g. Plaut. *Men.* 588 sqq.). Seneca observes stricter rules allowing tribrachs in the odd places (except last) and spondees and anapaests in the even places. Dactyls are used also. Seneca's metre appears to have these varieties of feet:

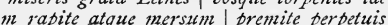


*Pallidi fauces averni | vosque Taenarei specus*
*Unda miseris grata Lethes | vosque torpentes lacus*
*Impium rapite atque mersum | premite perpetuis malis.*
(Sen. *Phaedr.* 1210 foll.)

9. **Trochaic dimeter catalectic** consists of two trochees and a cretic. Only used in combination with other lines (Hor. II. 18). See also under Glyconic.


*Non ebur neque aureum.* (Hor.)

10. **Ithyphallic,** i. e. **trochaic dimeter brachycatalectic,** consists of three trochees. Only used with other lines.


*Bacche, Bacche, Bacche.*

929 *Dactylo-trochaic.*

N.B. Dactyls followed by trochees form what are sometimes called **Logaoedic** verses.

11. **Archĭlŏchius major** consists of four dactyls followed by three trochees. In the first three feet spondees may be used. Only used with other verses (Hor. *Od.* I. 4).

– ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ – | – –
– – | – – | – – | | |

*Nunc decet aut viridi* | *nitidum caput impedire myrto.*
*Pallida mors aequo* | *pulsat pede pauperum tabernas.* (Hor. *Od.* 1. 4.)

12. **Alcāic decasyllable** consists of two dactyls (not each contained in a separate word) followed by two trochees. Only used as the fourth line of the Alcaic stanza.

– ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ – ⏓ *Impavidum ferient ruinae.*
*Omne caput movet urna nomen.* *Impetus aut orientis haedi.* (Hor.)

13. **Aristŏphănic** consists of a dactyl followed by a trochee and spondee (or trochee?). Not used by itself in Horace (1. 8).

– ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | – – *Lydia dic per omnes.* (Hor.)

930 ## *Trochaeo-dactylic.*

The first disyllabic foot in these verses is often called the *base*. It usually admits of some variety; e.g. spondee, trochee or iamb.

14. **Sapphic (Sapphicus minor)** is a trochaic quinarius with a dactyl always in third foot. It usually consists (in this order) of trochee, spondee, dactyl and two trochees. Catullus has (but rarely) a trochee in the second foot. There is a caesura, usually male, sometimes female, in the dactyl. This verse is usually combined with the adonic, but in Seneca is frequently used continuously by itself.

– ⏑ – – | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ – ⏑
– ⏑ | |

*Pauca nuntiate* | *meae puellae.* (Catull.)
*Quo nihil majus* | *meliusve terris*
*Fata donavere* | *bonique Divi.* (Hor.)

15. **Phalaecian**, or simply **Hendecasyllabus**, is like the last a special form of trochaic quinarius. The first foot is usually a spondee, but in Catullus occasionally a trochee or iamb; the second a dactyl (except in Catull. 55 where it is frequently a spondee). The other three feet are trochees. There is no special caesura. It forms whole poems and is much used by Catullus, Seneca, and Martial; also by Statius (*Silv.* 1. 6; 11. 7; IV. 3; 9).

– ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ – ⏑ – ⏓
– – | – – |
⏑ – | |

*Adeste hendecasyllabi quot estis*
*Omnes undique quotquot estis omnes.* (Catull.)
*Tanto ten fastu negas, amice?* (Catull. 55.)

16. **Phĕrĕcrătian** consists of a dactyl between two disyllabic feet which in Catullus are trochees or spondees, in Horace spondees only. (For 1st foot Catullus once has iamb, Horace once has trochee.) Used in stanzas with other feet (see below § 938).

– ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏓ (Catull.) *Prodeas nova nupta.*
– – | – ⏑ ⏑ | – – (Hor.) *Grato Pyrrha sub antro.*

17. **Glyconic** consists of a trochee or spondee followed by two dactyls. Catullus usually has a trochee in first place, a cretic in 3rd place. Horace

has almost always a spondee in 1st place. Seneca (cf. *Oedip.* 903 sqq. but not *Thyest.* 336 sqq.) has sometimes a spondee in second place, which makes the verse in fact the same as a trochaic dimeter catalectic.

– ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏓
– – |  |

*Quicquid excessit modum*
*Pendet instabili loco.* (Sen.)
*Cinge tempora floribus.* (Catull.)
*Nos cantabimus invicem.* (Hor.)

18. **Priāpēus** consists of trochee or spondee, followed in order by a dactyl, cretic, trochee, dactyl, trochee. In fact it is glyconic + pherecratian. There is a break at the end of the cretic foot. Only found in Catull. 17, *Priap.* 85.

– ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ – | – ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏓
– – |  |  |  |  |

*O colonia quae cupis | ponte ludere longo.*
*Uva pampinea rubens | educata sub umbra.*

19. **Asclepiădēus mĭnor** consists of one spondee, one choriamb and two dactyls. A break usually after choriamb. Much used by Horace and Seneca. (This line repeated forms what is called the First Asclepiad metre, Hor. I. 1 ; III. 30.)

– – | ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏓

*Maecenas atavis | edite regibus.* (Hor.)
*Tecum conseruit | pestiferas manus.* (Sen.)

20. **Asclepiădēus major** consists of one spondee, two choriambs and two dactyls. A break usually after each choriamb. (Catull. 30; Hor. I. 11 ; 18; IV. 10).

– ⏑ | ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏓ | – ⏑ ⏓

*Quae mens est hodie | cur eadem | non puero fuit?* (Hor.)
*Alphene immemor atque | unanimis | false sodalibus.* (Catull.)

21. **Sapphĭcus major** (i.e. the ordinary sapphic with a choriamb inserted) consists of trochee, spondee, choriamb, dactyl, trochee and spondee. A break after the choriamb. Only in Hor. I. 8.

– ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ – –

*Cur timet flavum Tiberim | tangere? cur olivum.*

931 ## *Cretic and greater Ionic.*

22. **Cretic tetrameter acatalectic** consists of four cretics. Only found in comic poets (e.g. Ter. *Andr.* 625 sqq.). Occasionally admits of other feet, e.g. dactyl or paeon.

– ⏑ – | – ⏑ – | – ⏑ – | – ⏑ ⏓

*Tanta vecordia innata cuiquam ut siet.*
*Tum coacti necessario se aperiunt.*

23. **Sōtădēus** consists of three ionics a majori and one trochee or spondee. A double trochee is often substituted for the 3rd ionic, sometimes for the first; and some of the long syllables are occasionally resolved into two shorts. Only in Terentianus Maurus.

– – ⏑ ⏑ | – – ⏑ ⏑ | – – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏓
– ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ | | – ⏑ – ⏑ | –

Lavinia *cum dicimus, haec tamen figura est*
*Metrumque facit, sōtădĭcon quod vocitarunt*
*Qui multa ferunt hoc pede Sotaden locutum.* (Ter. Maur. 1508 sqq.)
*Quasi si repetam quos docui disyllabos jam.* (1st foot ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑)
*Unum ut faciant duo pariter pedes jugati.* (2nd foot – ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑)
(*Ib.* 1458 sq.)

## RISING RHYTHMS.

932 ### *Anapaestic.*

24. **Anapaestic dimeter acatalectic** consists of four anapaests, for any of which a spondee and for the first and third of which a dactyl may be substituted. A break after second foot. Coincident endings of foot and word are frequent. Much used by Seneca.

⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏑ –
– – | – – | – – | – –
– ⏑ ⏑ | | – ⏑ ⏑ |

*Ite umbrosas | cingite silvas*
*Summaque montis | juga cecropii*
*Celeri planta | lustrate vagi.* (Sen.)

25. **Anapaestic monometer acatalectic** consists of two feet, either anapaests or spondees. The first may also be a dactyl. Only interspersed among dimeters.

⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏑ – *Saltus aperit.*
– – | – – *Captent auras.*
– ⏑ ⏑ | *Nocte silenti.*

**Anapaestic tetrameter catalectic** is frequent in Greek (e. g. in Aristophanes).

933 ### *Iambic.*

26. **Iambic tetrameter catalectic** consists of seven iambs and a half. In the first and fifth places are found spondees occasionally (Catull. 25). The comic poets use spondees, &c. in every place but the seventh.

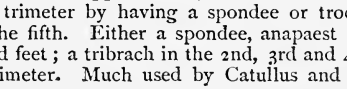
⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – ⏓
– – | | – – |

*Remitte pallium mihi | meum quod involasti.* (Catull.)
*Nunc demum experior mi ob oculos | caliginem obstitisse.* (Plaut.)

27. **Iambic trimeter acatalectic** consists of six iambs. It is sometimes found pure throughout a poem (Catull. 4; 29), but generally in Horace admits a spondee frequently, a dactyl rarely, in the 1st, 3rd and 5th places, and an anapaest in the 1st and 5th. Seneca has the spondee and anapaest frequently in these places. The tribrach occurs in all places except the last. Seneca uses it chiefly in the even places. Phaedrus and the comic poets admit all these substitutes for iambics in any of the first five places. There is a caesura usually at the end of 2½ feet, sometimes not until the end of 3½ feet.

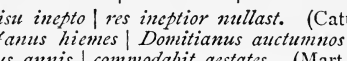
*Socer generque | perdidistis omnia.* (Catull.)
*Et hoc negat minacis | Adriatici.* (Catull.)
*Infamis Helenae | Castor offensus via.* (Hor.)
*Pavidumque leporem et | advenam laqueo gruem.* (Hor.)
*Nil praeter domini | nomen mutant pauperes.* (Phaedr.)

28. **Iambic Scazon** or **Hippōnacteus**, also a trimeter acatalectic, differs from the ordinary trimeter by having a spondee or trochee in the sixth foot and iamb in the fifth. Either a spondee, anapaest or dactyl may be used in first or third feet; a tribrach in the 2nd, 3rd and 4th. Caesuras as in the ordinary trimeter. Much used by Catullus and Martial, also by Persius in Prologue.



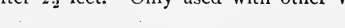
*Nam risu inepto | res ineptior nullast.* (Catull.)
*Dum Janus hiemes | Domitianus auctumnos*
*Augustus annis | commodabit aestates.* (Mart.)
*Nihil est miserius | neque gulosius Santra.* (Mart.)

29. **Iambic trimeter catalectic** consists of four iambs, and a bacchic. Spondees are sometimes used in the 1st and 3rd places and a tribrach once occurs. A break after 2½ feet. Only used with other verses (Hor. I. 4; II. 18).



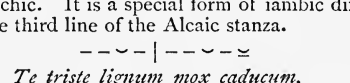
*Trahentque siccas | machinae carinas.*
*Mea renidet | in domo lacunar.* (Hor.)

30. **Alcaicus enneasyllabus** consists of spondee (sometimes iamb), iamb, spondee, bacchic. It is a special form of iambic dimeter hypercatalectic, and forms the third line of the Alcaic stanza.



*Te triste lignum mox caducum.*
*Clari giganteo triumpho.* (Hor.)

31. **Iambic dimeter acatalectic** consists of four iambs, for the first and third of which a spondee is often substituted. A tribrach and dactyl also occur though rarely. Used with other verses (Hor. *Epod.* 1—10).



*Sacer nepotibus cruor.*
*Virtus sepulchrum condidit.* (Hor.)

32. **Iambic dimeter catalectic** consists of two iambs and a bacchic. A special form of this verse called the **anacreontic** has an anapaest in the first foot. They are used together in Seneca (*Med.* 857 sqq.).

| | |
|---|---|
| ⏑ – ⏑ – \| ⏑ – ⏑ | *Quonam cruenta maenas* |
| – – \| | *Praeceps amore saevo* |
| ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ \| | *Rapitur? quod impotenti* |
| | *Facinus parat furore?* (Sen.) |

33. **Iambic dimeter brachycatalectic** consists of three iambs. Only found at close of a system of dimeter catalectics.

– – ⏑ – ⏑ – *Quis credat exulem.* (Sen. *Med.* 865.)

934 *Anapaesto-Iambic.*

34. **Galliambic** consists in theory of two iambic or anacreontic dimeters of which the first is catalectic and the second brachycatalectic. There are thus six feet, which are usually anapaest, iamb, bacchic, anapaest, tribrach, iamb; but with some variations. The metre is only found in Catullus' 63th poem. The name is from the *Gaulish* priests of Cybĕle, which form the subject of it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ⏑ ⏑ – \| | ⏑ – \| | ⏑ ⏑ – \| | ⏑ ⏑ – \| | ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ \| | ⏑ ⏓ \| |
| – – \| | ⏑ ⏑ – \| | \| | – – \| | ⏑ – \| | \| |
| ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ \| | ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ \| | \| | \| | \| | \| |

*Super alta vectus Atys | celeri rate maria.*
*Tibicen ubi canit Phryx | curvo grave calamo,*
*Ubi capita maenades vi | jaciunt ederigerae.*
*Jamjam dolet quod egi; | jam jamque paenitet.*

935 *Bacchiac and lesser Ionic.*

35. **Bacchiac tetrameter acatalectic** consists of four bacchics. Only found in comic poets, e.g. Plaut. *Men.* 753 sqq.; *Trin.* 223 sqq.; *Amph.* 550 sqq.

⏑ – – | ⏑ – – | ⏑ – – | ⏑ – ⏓

*Sed haec res mihi in pectore et corde curae st.*
*Homo idem in duobus locis ut simul sit.*

Occasionally a **bacchiac hexameter** occurs; e.g. Pl. *Amph.* 627 sqq.

*Satin parva res est voluptatem in vita atque in aetate agunda.*

36. **Ionic a minori.** The only metre of this kind in Latin is in one ode of Horace (III. 12). The poem is composed of forty feet, all of this description, and may (as the synaphia throughout is perfect) be divided into four decameters, but is usually printed as if divided into four stanzas, each containing two tetrameters and a dimeter.

⏑ ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏑ – – &c.

*Miserarum est neque amori dare ludum neque dulci*
*Mala vino lavere aut exanimari, metuentes*
*Patruae verbera linguae.*

COMPOSITE.

936 *Iambo-Dactylic.*

37. **Alcaic hendecasyllable** consists of a spondee (occasionally iamb), and bacchic followed by two dactyls. There is almost always a break after the bacchic. It is used for the 1st and 2nd lines of the alcaic stanza. It might be considered as an iambic quinarius with a spondee in the third foot and an anapaest in the fourth (Madvig), but looking at the character of the fourth line of the stanza it is better to consider the first and second lines as compounded of iambic and dactylic rhythm. The first syllable of this and of the nine-syllable verse (*supr.* 30) is often called **ănăcrūsis** (*back-stroke*).

– – | ⏑ – – | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑

*Nec vera virtus* | *cum semel excidit*
*Curat reponi* | *deteriōribus.*
*Retorta tergo* | *brachia libero.* (Hor.)

937 *Iambo-Trochaic.*

38. **Saturnian.** This is the oldest form of Latin verse, and the laws of it are very uncertain, because few, and those mostly very irregular, specimens are preserved. The most regular form is an iambic trimeter hypercatalectic, with a spondee in the fourth foot and a break in the middle of it. Or it may be considered as compounded of an iambic dimeter catalectic, followed by an ithyphallic (No. 10), i. e. by three trochees. But the first part was sometimes merely three feet, either spondees, iambs, dactyls, or anapaests, and the last part was similarly rudely organised.

⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – – ‖ – ⏑ – ⏑ – ⏑

*Dabunt malum Metelli Naevio poetae.*
*Immortales mortales si foret fas flere,*
*Flerent divae camenae Naevium poetam.*
*Itaque, postquam est orcino traditust thesauro,*
*Obliti sunt Romae loquier lingua latina.* (Naev.)
*? Rōmāī*

938 STANZAS or SYSTEMS OF METRE.

Some of the above-mentioned verses are merely repeated to form a poem or large portion of a poem. Above all the dactylic hexameter (No. 1), and iambic trimeter (No. 27) are so used: less frequently the iambic scazon (No. 28), trochaic tetrameter (No. 8), Phalaecian (No. 15), the lesser Asclepiad (No. 19, cf. Hor. *Od.* I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8) and the greater Asclepiad (No. 20, cf. Hor. I. 11; 18; IV. 10) and in Seneca the lesser Sapphic (No. 14) and the Glyconic (No. 17). But elegiac and lyric poets frequently combine in regular order two or more kinds of verses. The following are the principal composite metres (in this sense), with the components of each stanza, the stanzas being repeated as often as the poet chooses.

A. **Elegiac.** Dactylic hexameter (No. 1) and dactylic pentameter (No. 6) alternately. The sense is usually (except in Catullus) not continued syntactically from one couplet to the succeeding one. Ovid, except in the

Metamorphoses, used this metre exclusively. So also Tibullus (Books I. II.) and Propertius. Catullus' elegiacs are rough. Martial wrote many poems in this metre.

B. **Alcaic.** A stanza of four lines; viz. two eleven-syllable (No. 37), one nine-syllable (No. 30) and one ten-syllable (No. 12). The stanza is artistically composed, of two lines having iambic rhythm in the first half, and dactylic rhythm in the second half; then of an iambic line; last of a dactylo-trochaic. (See Hor. I. 9 and often; especially III. 1—6.)

C. **First Glyconic.** A stanza of four lines; viz. three glyconic (No. 17) and one pherecratian (No. 16). Only in Catull. 34.

D. **Second Glyconic.** A stanza of five lines; viz. four glyconic and one pherecratian. Only in Catull. 61.

E. **Second Asclepiad.** A stanza of four lines; viz. three lesser asclepiads (No. 19) and one glyconic (No. 17). Hor. I. 6; 15; 24; 33; II. 12; III. 10; 16; IV. 5; 12. (For first asclepiad, see No. 19.)

F. **Third Asclepiad.** A stanza of four lines; viz. two lesser asclepiads, one pherecratian and one glyconic. Hor. I. 5; 14; 21; 23; III. 7; 13; IV. 13.

G. **Fourth Asclepiad.** Glyconic and lesser asclepiad alternately. Hor. I. 3; 13; 19; 36; III. 9; 15; 19; 24; 25; 28; IV. 1; 3.

H. **(First) Sapphic.** A stanza of four lines; viz. three (lesser) sapphics (No. 14) and an adonic (No. 4). Catull. 11; 51; Hor. I. 2 and often; Sen. *Med.* 582 sqq.; Stat. *Silv.* IV. 7.

J. **Second Sapphic.** An aristophanic (No. 13) and greater sapphic (No. 21) alternately. Only in Hor. I. 8.

K. **Alcmanian.** Dactylic hexameter (No. 1) and dactylic tetrameter alternately. Hor. I. 7; 28; *Epod.* 12.

L. **First Archilochian.** Dactylic hexameter and lesser archilochian (No. 5) alternately. Only in Hor. IV. 7.

M. **Second Archilochian.** A stanza of three lines; viz. dactylic hexameter, iambic dimeter (No. 31) and lesser archilochian (No. 5). The two latter are usually considered as forming together one verse, called an **iambĕlĕgus.** But as there is no **synaphia** between the iambic and the archilochian (whence this supposed one verse is called **asynartētus,** i.e. *not fitted together*) it seems best to treat them as separate verses. (So Lambinus.) Only in Hor. *Epod.* 13.

N. **Third Archilochian.** A stanza of three lines; viz. iambic trimeter (No. 27), lesser archilochian (No. 5) and iambic dimeter (No. 31). The two latter here also (as in M) are often treated as one verse and called **elegiambus.** Only in Hor. *Epod.* 11.

O. **Fourth Archilochian.** A greater archilochian (No. 11) and iambic trimeter catalectic (No. 29) alternately. Only in Hor. I. 4.

P. **First Pythiambic.** Dactylic hexameter and iambic dimeter (No. 31) alternately. Only in Hor. *Epod.* 14, 15.

Q. **Second Pythiambic.** Dactylic hexameter and iambic trimeter (No. 27) alternately. Only in Hor. *Epod.* 16.

R. **Hipponactean.** Trochaic dimeter catalectic (No. 9) and iambic trimeter catalectic (No. 29) alternately. Only in Hor. II. 18.

S. **Second Iambic.** Trimeter and dimeter acatalectic iambics alternately. Hor. *Epod.* 1—10; Martial I. 49; III. 14; IX. 77. (The so-called 'first iambic' consists of trimeters.)

T. Iambic trimeter scazon (No. 28) and iambic dimeter (No. 31) alternately. Only in Martial I. 61.

V. **Anapaestic.** Consists of a number of anapaestic dimeter acatalectics (No. 24), frequently mixed with monometers (No. 25); e.g. Sen. *Med.* 790 sqq.; *Phaedr.* 1 sqq. In Greek the set of dimeters is frequently closed by a dimeter brachycatalectic (which is often immediately preceded by a monometer). This closing verse from its frequently expressing a proverb is often called **versus paroemiăcus.**

X. **Anacreontic** consists of a number of iambic dimeter catalectics (No. 32) closed by a single iambic dimeter brachycatalectic (No. 33). See Sen. *Med.* 856 sqq.

## APPENDIX E.

### EXPLANATION OF SOME GRAMMATICAL AND RHETORICAL TERMS.

939 N.B. Many of these terms being in fact Greek words of wide generic meaning have not been applied by grammarians and rhetoricians uniformly to the same class of expression.

1. GRAMMATICAL TERMS; chiefly names of grammatical figures.

**Amphĭbŏlia,** 'ambiguity;' e.g. *aio te Romanos vincere posse* where *te* may be subject and *Romanos* object; and *vice versa.*

**Anăcŏlūthŏn,** where a sentence is begun in one way and finished in another not syntactically accordant; e.g. *Deos verisimile est ut alios indulgentius tractent* for *deos...alios tractare* or *Di...ut...tractent.*

**Anastrŏphē,** 'inversion;' e.g. *male quod vult* for *quod male vult; tecum* for *cum te; transtra per et remos,* &c.

**Aphaerĕsĭs,** 'omission' of a letter or syllable at the beginning of a word; e.g. *lis* for *stlis, natus* for *gnatus.*

**Apŏcŏpē,** 'cutting off,' i.e. omission of a letter or syllable at end of a word; e.g. *ille* for *illus, me* for *med, vigil* for *vigilis.*

**Apŏdŏsĭs,** 'reply' applied to the demonstrative or consequent or principal clause; cf. §§ 626, 628, 629, 638, 654, &c.

940 **Archaismŭs,** use of an '*old*' or obsolete form or word or expression; e.g. *olli* in Vergil for *illi; duellum* in Horace for *bellum.*

**Assimilatio,** see §§ 22—27.

**Asyndĕtŏn,** 'omission of conjunctions;' e.g. *usus fructus; sarta tecta; inde ventis remis in patriam properavi* (Cic.). Cf. § 439 *b.*

**Attractio,** often applied to such constructions as are referred to in § 451: also *urbem quam statuo vestra est* for *urbs quam,* &c.

**Barbarismus,** using a faulty 'non-Latin' word, esp. a word faultily formed; e.g. *gladia* for *gladii, scala* for *scalae.* Distinguished by relating to a single word from **soloecismus** which relates to a complex of words.

**Brachўlŏgia,** 'shortening of expression;' e.g. 581, 582.

941 **Crāsĭs,** 'union' of two or more vowel sounds; e.g. *cors* for *cŏhors*, *prorsus* for *prōversus*.

**Diaerĕsĭs,** 'separation' of one vowel sound into two; e.g. *Orphĕŭs* for *Orphēus*: also the treatment of a usually consonantal *v* as a vowel; e.g. *sĭlŭae* for *silvae*.

**Ecthlīpsĭs,** 'crushing out,' in verse of a syllable ending in *m* before an ensuing vowel; see § 63.

**Ellīpsĭs,** 'omission' of a word syntactically required. Cf. §§ 447, 563, 583, &c.

**Enallăgē,** 'change;' i.e. putting of one case for another, applied by old grammarians to such usages as those in §§ 475 *a*, 480 and others.

**Epenthĕsĭs,** 'insertion;' e.g. of *u* in *Alcŭmēna* for *Alcmena*; *p* in *sumpsi*, *sumptum* (§ 29).

942 **Graecismŭs** / **Hellēnismus** 'Graecism;' use of a Greek form or construction, not properly Latin also; e.g. cf. §§ 148, 156, &c.; 528, 530, 540 (3).

**Hendĭădўs,** 'one by two;' use of two words co-ordinated instead of an expression in which one qualifies the other grammatically; e.g. *paterae et aurum* for *aureae paterae*. See also § 580.

**Hўpallăgē,** 'exchange;' applied to such deviations from ordinary expression or construction as *Tyrrhenus tubae clangor* for *Tyrrhenae tubae clangor*; *arma dei Volcania* for *arma a deo Volcano facta*, &c.

**Hўperbăton,** 'transgression;' i.e. when a considerable clause or expression is interpolated between two parts of a sentence mutually connected in meaning; e.g. *hyperboreo septem subjecta trioni; animadverti omnem accusatoris orationem in duas divisam esse partes*.

**Hўphen,** 'union' of two words, as if by composition; e.g. *non-sūtor*, 'one who is not a tailor,' *ignari ante-malorum*, 'ignorant of the ills before.'

943 **Mĕtăthĕsĭs,** 'change of position;' transposition of two (or more) letters; e.g. *crĕtus* for *certus* (§ 31 *d*).

**Părăgōgē,** 'addition;' applied (according to a probably false theory) to the formation of *dicier* from *dici* by addition of *er*. But see § 288.

**Părenthĕsĭs,** 'insertion' of a clause into the midst of another; e.g. *si nos, id quod maxime debet, nostra patria delectat* (Cic.). The term is generally applied to an ordinary insertion; if unusual either from its character or length, it is sometimes called **hyperbaton.**

**Plĕŏnasmŭs,** 'saying too much,' an unnecessary fullness of expression; e.g. *erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent* (Caes.); *suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*, 'I slay him with his own sword to him;' *praesensi prius*.

**Prŏlēpsis,** 'anticipation,' applied to such use of an adjective as *laceras aries ballistave concutit arces*, where the towers are *lacerae* from the effects of *concutit*.

**Prŏtăsĭs,** 'proposal,' applied to the relative or conditional, &c. clause, cf. § 650.

944 **Syllepsĭs,** 'taking together,' applied to the relation of an adjective to two or more substantives of different genders, &c. § 446.

**Synaerĕsĭs,** 'contraction' of two vowels into one sound: e.g. treating *deinde*, *quoad* as monosyllables; *aureo*, *eidem* as disyllables; *ariete*, *tenuia* as trisyllables; cf. §§ 43—50. Other terms are **synecphōnēsis** and **synīzēsis.** All three are variously distinguished

and applied, but most frequently used of those contractions which are regarded as exceptional and not expressed in writing; e.g. §§ 44, 49, while **crasis** would apply to §§ 47, 48.

**Sȳnăloepha,** 'coalescing' of two vowels, applied to the elision in verse of the vowel at the end of one word before a vowel beginning the next (§ 63).

**Syncŏpē,** 'striking together,' applied to the omission of a vowel in the middle of a word; e.g. *saeclum* for *saecŭlum*, *puertia* for *puerĭtia*, &c. Cf. § 39.

**Synecphōnēsis,** 'pronouncing together,' see **Synaerĕsis.**

**Sȳnēsis,** where the construction is adapted to the 'sense' of the word rather than to the form; e.g. *turba ruunt* (§ 577); *turba circumfusi fremabant* (Liv.); *concursus populi mirantium* (Liv.). Cf. some exx. in § 443.

**Sȳnīzēsis,** 'settlement together,' see **Synaerĕsis.**

945 **Tmēsis,** 'cutting' of a compound word into two; e.g. *septem subjecta trioni* for *septem-trioni*; *per mihi gratum feceris* for *per-gratum*; *quae me cunque vocant*, for *quae cunque me*; and *saxo cere comminuit brum* which Ennius wrote, probably mistaking *cerebrum* for a compound.

**Zeugma,** 'joining,' where a verb grammatically belonging to two or more substantives, is in sense appropriate to one (or to less than all); e.g. *te greges centum Siculaeque circum mugiunt vaccae* (Hor.); where 'lowing' does not properly suit *greges* sc. *ovium*. *Magonem alii naufragio* (sc. *perisse*), *alii a servis ipsius interfectum, scriptum reliquerunt* (Nep.).

2. Rhetorical Terms (called 'figures of speech').

946 **Allēgŏria,** a continued description of one thing in terms and in images properly belonging to another; e.g. *at jam tempus equum fumantia solvere colla* (Verg.), of 'concluding a book.' A more detailed allegory is seen in Horace's description (*Od.* I. 14) of the State in political difficulties under the name of a ship tossed by waves. Essentially allegory and metaphor are the same.

**Anăphŏra,** 'repetition' of the same word or grammatical form at the commencement of several clauses; e.g. *in his templis atque tectis dux Lentulus erat constitutus meis consiliis meis laboribus, mei capitis periculis, sine tumultu, sine delectu, sine armis,* &c. (Cic.). Cf. § 791, 5.

**Antĭthēsis,** 'contrast;' e.g. *ego projector, quod tu peccas; tu delinquis, ego arguor; pro malefactis Helena redeat, virgo pereat innocens* (Enn.).

**Antŏnŏmăsia,** 'substituting' a description 'for a name;' e.g. *Tydīdes* for *Diomedes*; *eversor Karthaginis* for *Scipio*.

**Apŏsiōpēsis,** 'breaking into silence' after a sentence or subject has been begun; e.g. *Quos ego—sed motos praestat componere fluctus* (Verg. *A.* I. 135).

947 **Apostrŏphē,** 'turning away' to address some person, or thing, who is absent or at least not the proper object of address at the time; e.g. *o leges Porciae legesque Semproniae* (Cic.); *Citae Mettum in diversa quadrigae distulerant: at tu dictis, Albane, maneres* (Verg.).

**Cătăchrēsis,** a 'wrong use' of a term either to supply the place of a non-existing word, e.g. *parricida* for the murderer of a brother; or to

put a different aspect on a case; e.g. *virtus* for *temeritas*, *liberalitas* for *luxuria*, &c.

**Chiasmŭs**, 'making a (Greek) X,' i.e. '*crossing*,' where a second and corresponding set of words are stated in inverse order to that of the first set; e.g. *multa quae nostra causa non facimus, facimus causa amicorum* (Cic.). Cf. § 791, 4.

**Clīmax** (or **gradatio**), a series of words or expressions each stronger than the preceding: *nihil agis, nihil moliris, nihil cogitas, quod ego non modo audiam, sed etiam videam planeque sentiam* (Cic.). See also the first ex. in § 537 *a*.

**Enallăgē**, 'change,' i.e. use of a more general word for a specific word: e.g. *Poenus* for *Hannibal*, *urbs* for *Roma*.

948 **Epexēgēsĭs**, 'additional explanation,' applied to such usages as *habere* in *loricam donat habere viro* (Verg.), or to the subordinate clause in *pacem amicitiamque hortatus est, ut cum rege in gratiam rediret* (Nep.), &c.

**Homoeŏtĕleutŏn**, 'like ending' of several clauses; e.g. *in muros statim curritur, exercitus a sociis accersitur, dilectus juventuti denuntiatur; neminem alteri posse dare in matrimonium nisi penes quem sit patrimonium.*

**Hŏmōnymia**, 'applicability of same word to different things;' such words are called **hŏmōnўmă**; e.g. *taurus* may be an animal, a mountain, a constellation, name of man or root of tree. (So Quintilian.)

**Hўperbŏlē**, 'exaggeration;' e.g. *gemini minantur in caelum scopuli* (Verg.); or the description of Camilla's swiftness in last ex. of § 642.

**Hystĕrŏn prŏtĕrŏn**, 'putting the former later,' of an inversion in expressions of the proper order in thought or fact; e.g. *moriamur et in arma ruamus* (Verg.).

949 **Irōnĭa**, 'dissimulation,' when the thing that is said is, or suggests, the contrary of that which is meant; e.g. *in balneis delituerunt: testis egregios! dein temere prosiluerunt; homines temperantis!* (Cic. *Caec.* 26); *meque timoris argue tu, Drance, quando tot stragis acervos Teucrorum tua dextra dedit* (Verg.). (Cf. § 653 and many sentences with *quasi* (690).)

**Lītŏtēs**, 'plainness,' used of a self-depreciatory mode of speaking; e.g. *non nego* instead of *aio; non indoctus* for *doctus*, &c.

**Mĕtăphŏra** (or **translatio**), 'transference' of a term from its proper subject to another: frequently the application of a physical or concrete term to a mental or abstract subject; e.g. *sitiunt segetes, asper homo* ('rough,' i.e. 'ill-tempered'); *incensus ira*, 'fired with rage;' *eloquentiae fulmina*, &c. It differs from allegory only by being less sustained, and by being worked into the discourse instead of being an independent fable. Almost all language is metaphor, more or less vivid and conscious.

**Mĕtōnўmia**, 'change of name,' applied to such expressions as *Neptunus* for 'sea;' *Vulcanus* for 'fire;' *Ceres* for 'corn;' *bene moratae urbes* for *bene morati urbis cives; Graecia* for *Graeci; Vergilius* for *carmina Vergili; proximus ardet Ucalegon*, where *Ucalegon* is for 'Ucalegon's house.'

**Onŏmătŏpoeia**, 'name making,' in modern writers applied only to making names from the sounds which they are to denote; e.g. *ŭlŭla*, 'howler;' *murmur; clangor; hirrire* (of a dog snarling), &c.

950 **Oxўmōrŏn**, 'pointedly foolish,' applied to such expressions as *insaniens*

*sapientia ; strenua inertia ; splendidē mendax : et absentes adsunt et egentes abundant et imbecilli valent et, quod difficilius dictu est, mortui vivunt* (Cic. *Lael.* 7).

**Părŏnŏmăsia (adnominatio)**, 'playing upon a word,' 'punning;' e.g. *consul ipse parvo animo et pravo, facie magis quam facetiis ridiculus* (Cic.). *Inceptio est amentium haud amantium* (Ter.). *Praetor iste vel potius praedo sociorum. Cui quod libet, hoc licet.*

**Pĕrĭphrăsĭs**, 'roundabout expression,' 'circumlocution;' e.g. *fac discas* for *disce; vos oratos volo* for *vos oro; Scipionis providentia Karthaginis opes fregit* for *Scipio Karthaginem fregit.*

**Prŏsōpŏpoeia**, 'personification;' e.g. *crudelitatis mater avaritiast, pater furor. Si patria mea loquatur,* '*M. Tulli, quid agis?*' (Cic.) *Extemplo Libyae magnas it Fama per urbes* (Verg.). See Verg. *Aen.* VI. 273—281.

**Sŷnecdŏchē**, when the whole is 'understood along with' (i. e. under the name of) '*a part;*' e.g. *puppis* for *navis; tectum* for *domus; mucro* or *ferrum* for *gladius;* &c.

951 **Sŏloecismus**, i.e. grammatical blunder in matters of syntax; Quintilian instances *non feceris* for *ne feceris* (§ 668); *hic aut ille* for *hic an ille; eo intus* and *intro sum* for *eo intro* and *intus sum.* See **Barbarismus.**

**Sŷnōnŷmia**, 'using different words or expressions for same meaning;' e.g. *non feram, non patiar, non sinam* (Cic.). Words of same meaning are called **sŷnōnŷmă**; e.g. *gladius* with *ensis; scutum* with *clipeus; mare* with *pontus*, &c.

**Tautŏlŏgia**, 'repetition of the same thing;' sometimes used as identical with **synonymia**; sometimes applied to repetitions of the same word; e.g. *non solum igitur illud judicium judicii simile, judices, non fuit* (Cic.). *Nam cujus rationis ratio non exstat, ei rationi ratio non est fidem habere* (Cornif.).

952 It is important to bear in mind that these terms are only short modes of referring to certain (or uncertain) classes of usages, and the sphere of this application is different in different writers. Whether the usages are legitimate or proper depends on the context and the occasion and on general considerations of intelligibility, good sense, vigorous expression, propriety, habit of speakers and writers and the like, and does not depend at all on there being a name for the usage. A name confers no licence, and a grammatical or rhetorical figure is a name of a fact, not of a law. The mode in which these figures are spoken of in old writers (e.g. 'This is *by* metonymy,' &c.) might mislead a student to attribute to them some inherent worth or authority.

# APPENDIX F.

## PRINCIPAL (EXTANT) LATIN AUTHORS.

### *Prae-Ciceronian Age.*

953 **Cn. Naevius**, a Latin of Campania, d. 199 B.C. Dramatic and epic poems; only fragments extant.

**T. Maccius Plautus**, b. 254 B.C. at Sassina in Umbria, d. 184 B.C. Comedies, 20 of which are extant, many being written 201—189 B.C.

**Q. Ennius**, b. 239 B.C. at Rudiae in Calabria, d. 169 B.C. Poems epic and dramatic; only fragments extant.

**M. Porcius Cato (Censorinus)**, b. 234 B.C. at Tusculum, d. 149 B.C. History, speeches, and treatise on farming; this treatise and fragments extant.

954 P. **Tĕrentius**, b. 185 B.C. at Carthage; d. 159 B.C. Six comedies; all preserved.

**L. Attius** (or **Accius**), b. 170 B.C., d. cir. 94 B.C. Tragedies and other poems; fragments only extant.

**C. Lūcĭlius**, b. 148 B.C. at Suessa Aurunca in Campania, d. 103 B.C. Satires; only fragments extant.

### 953 *Golden Age.* (A) *Ciceronian.*

**Cornificius**, probable name of the author of a treatise on rhetoric addressed to C. Herennius and printed with Cicero's works. Possibly Q. Cornificius trib. pl. 69 B.C.

**M. Terentius Varro**, b. 116 B.C. at Reate, d. 27 B.C. Antiquarian and grammatical writings; satires, partly in verse; a treatise on farming. Extant: part of a work on the Latin language (written cir. 43 B.C.), and the treatise *de re rustica* (written 37 B.C.): fragments only of others.

**M. Tullius Cĭcĕro**, b. 106 B.C. at Tusculum, d. 43 B.C. Speeches, treatises on rhetoric and philosophy, and private letters. 58 speeches (some mutilated), most of the treatises and many letters are extant. Speeches from 81 B.C; treatises from 55 B.C., except a work on rhetoric written in his youth; letters from 68 B.C. all reaching nearly to his death. Fragments only of his poems extant.

**Q. Tullius Cicero**, b. 102 B.C., d. 43 B.C. A short political essay *de petitione consulatus:* extant (with his brother's writings).

**C. Jūlius Caesar**, b. 100 B.C., d. 44 B.C. Speeches, history, treatises on astronomy and grammar; only histories (or rather notes for history) of his own campaigns extant.

**A. Hirtius**, d. 43 B.C., wrote 8th book of Caesar *de Bello Gallico*, and *Bellum Alexandrinum:* both extant, printed with Caesar.

**Cornēlius Nĕpos**, b. 104 to 94 B.C. near the Po, d. after 32 B.C. History in the form of biographies: some extant.

**T. Lŭcrētius Cārus**, b. 98 B.C., d. 55 B.C. Philosophical poem: extant.

**C. Vălĕrius Cătullus**, b. 87 B.C. at Verona, d. 54 B.C. Poems, of varied character; epic, lyric, occasional: extant.

**Publilius Syrus** of Antioch, cir. 45 B.C. Mimes. Extant a collection of proverbial lines extracted from them.

**C. Sallustius Crispus,** b. 87 B.C. at Amiternum, d. 34 B.C. History. Extant: histories of wars with Catiline and with Jugurtha, and some speeches from the other histories.

956 **M. Caelius M. F. Rūfus** b. 85—82 B.C., d. cir. 48 B.C. Speeches. Some lively letters to Cicero are extant, forming Book VIII. of Cic. *ad Familiares.*

Among other correspondents of Cicero, several of whose letters have come to us with Cicero's, are **L. Munatius Plancus** (Cic. *ad Fam.* Book X.); **C. Asinius Pollio** (same Book); **D. Brutus** (Book XI.); **C. Cassius** (Book XII.); **P. Lentulus** (ibid.); **M. Junius Brutus** (Cic. *Epist. ad M. Brutum*). One or two letters also occur from **C. Jul. Caesar, Cn. Pompeius, M. Porcius Cato, M. Antonius, M. Lepidus, Q. Metellus Nepos, Matius, Caecina, Cicero filius.**

## (B) *Augustan.*

957 **P. Vergĭlius Māro,** b. 70 B.C. at Andes near Mantua, d. 19 B.C. Rural and epic poems, viz. *Bucolica* (B.C. 41—38); *Georgica* (B.C. 37—30); *Aeneis* (begun cir. B.C. 26; left unfinished at his death): all extant. Some other smaller poems, partly satirical, which have been ascribed to him, are extant.

**Q. Hŏrātius Flaccus,** b. 65 B.C. at Venusia, d. 8 B.C. Poems lyrical and satirical or didactic; partly in the form of epistles; all extant.

**T. Lĭvius,** b. 59 B.C. at Patavium, d. 17 A.D. History of Rome from the foundation of the city to the death of Drusus (9 B.C.), in 142 books of which 35 books (viz. I—X. XX—XLV) only are extant.

**Albius Tĭbullus,** b. cir. 54 B.C., d. 19 B.C. Poems chiefly amatory. Other poems are printed with Tibullus', especially those of

**Lygdămus,** b. cir. 43 B.C. Amatory poems.

**Sextus Prŏpertius,** b. cir. 49 B.C. in Umbria, d. after 16 B.C. Poems chiefly amatory; all extant.

**L. Annaeus Sĕnĕca** (the father), b. cir. 54 B.C. at Corduba, d. cir. 38 A.D. Wrote in old age reminiscences and specimens of the exercises of rhetorical schools, called *Suasoriae* and *Controversiae;* partly extant. (Often called Seneca Rhetor to distinguish him from his son.)

**Vitruvius Pollio,** cir. 14 B.C. Wrote a work on Architecture, still extant.

**P. Ovĭdius Nāso,** b. 43 B.C. at Sulmo, d. 17 A.D. Poems amatory (B.C. 14—1 A.D.) mythological and antiquarian (A.D. 2—8) and elegiac (A.D. 9—16) all extant. A tragedy which he wrote is not extant.

**Grātius.** Poem on hunting; extant probably only in part.

**Manilius.** Poem on astronomy written about the end of Augustus' reign; extant.

## *Silver Age.* (A) *Age of Seneca.*

953 **T. Claudius Caesar Germanicus,** b. 15 B.C., d. 18 A.D. Translation in hexameters of Aratus' poem on the constellations.

**M. Velleius Păterculus,** a soldier before 1 A.D., d. after 30 A.D. Roman history; a short work mainly extant.

**Vălĕrius Maximus**, cir. 30 A.D. Wrote collection of anecdotes, all or almost all extant.

**A. Cornēlius Celsus**, time of Tiberius. Practical treatises on various arts; work on medicine extant.

**Phaedrus** (freedman of Augustus). Fables in verse; mainly extant.

**L. Annaeus Sĕnĕca** (the son), b. cir. 4 B.C., d. 65 A.D. Philosophy and tragedies; both largely extant.

**Q. Curtius Rūfus**, time of Claudius. History of Alexander the Great; not wholly extant.

**L. Jūnius Mŏdĕrātus Cŏlŭmella**, of Gades, time between Celsus and Plinius major. Treatise on farming, in twelve books (one in verse); all extant.

**Q. Ascōnius Pĕdiānus**, cir. 3—88 A.D. Notes on Cicero's speeches, partly preserved.

**Pompōnius Mela** of Tingentera in Spain, time of Claudius. Geography; extant.

**A. Persius Flaccus**, b. at Volaterra 34 A.D., d. 62 A.D. Satirical poetry; extant.

**M. Annaeus Lūcānus**, b. 39 A.D., d. 65 A.D. Poem on war between Pompey and Caesar called *Pharsalia*; extant.

**Petrōnius Arbĭter**, time of Nero. Romance; extant in large fragments, chiefly in prose, but partly in verse.

**Calpurnius**, time of Nero. Bucolic poetry; extant.

959 (B) *Age of Quintilian.*

**C. Plīnius Sĕcundus** (the elder), b. 23 A.D., d. 79 A.D. History, Grammar, Natural History; extant only Natural History in 37 books.

**C. Vălĕrius Flaccus**, d. before 90 A.D. Epic poem on Argonautic expedition; extant.

**C. Sĭlius Ĭtălĭcus**, b. 25 A.D., d. 101 A.D. Epic poem on 2nd Punic War. Extant.

**P. Papinius Stătius**, b. at Naples cir. 45 A.D., d. 96 A.D. Poems epic and occasional. Extant: *Thebais* cir. 80—92 A.D.; *Achilleis* (unfinished) and *Silvae* written in the last years of his life.

**M. Vălĕrius Martiālis**, b. at Bilbilis in Spain cir. 42 A.D., d. cir. 102 A.D. Epigrams in verse; extant.

**M. Făbius Quintĭlianus**, b. at Calagurris in Spain, cir. 35 A.D., d. cir. 95 A.D. Treatise on rhetoric; extant.

**Sex. Jūlius Frontīnus**, b. cir. 40 A.D., d. cir. 103 A.D. Military and engineering works. Extant: treatise on Roman aqueducts, and anecdotes of military tactics, and fragments.

960 (C) *Age of Tacitus.*

**Cornēlius Tăcĭtus**, b. cir. 54 A.D., d. cir. 119 A.D. Rhetoric and later Roman history. Extant: a considerable part of the history, a life of Julius Agricola and a description of Germany. A dialogue '*de oratoribus*' is attributed to him, but its very different style from that of the other works of Tacitus makes this attribution doubtful.

**C. Plīnius Caecĭlius Secundus** (the younger), b. at Comum 62 A.D., d. 113 A.D. Letters (published by himself) and a panegyrical speech. Extant.

**D. Jūnius Jūvĕnālis**, b. at Aquīnum cir. 67 A.D., d. cir. 147 A.D. (So according to Friedländer. Usually put 20 years earlier.) Satires; extant.

**Velius Longus**, time of Trajan. Grammatical treatises, one of which is extant.

**Hyginus**, time of Trajan. Landsurveying; partly extant.

**C. Suētōnius Tranquillus**, b. cir. 75 A.D., d. cir. 160 A.D. Biographical, antiquarian and grammatical writings. Partly extant, principally the Lives of the Caesars, written cir. 120 A.D.

## APPENDIX G.

### ABBREVIATIONS.

For abbreviations of *money*, see §§ 178, 181, of *date*, §§ 917, 918.

(1) *First names* (**Praenomina**).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. | **Aulus.** | Mam. | **Mamercus.** |
| App. | **Appius.** | N. *or* Num. | **Numerius.** |
| C. | **Gaius.** | P. | **Publius.** |
| Cn. | **Gnaeus.** | Q. | **Qvintus.** |
| D. | **Decimus.** | S. *or* Sex. | **Sextus.** |
| K. | **Kaeso.** | Ser. | **Servius.** |
| L. | **Lucius.** | S. *or* Sp. | **Spurius.** |
| M. | **Marcus.** | T. | **Titus.** |
| Ⅿ. | **Manius.** | Ti. | **Tiberius.** |

Women's names are expressed by inverted characters; as, ↄ for Gaia.

(2) *Titles of Persons, &c.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| CES. *or* CENS. | **Censor** *or* **Censores.** | QUIR. | **Qvirites.** |
| COS.[1] | **Consul** *or* **Consules.** | RESP. | **Respublica.** |
| D. | **Divus.** | R. P. P. R. Q. | **Respublica Populi Romani Qviritium.** |
| DES. | **Designatus.** | | |
| F. | **Filius.** | S. | **Servus.** |
| IMP. | **Imperator.** | S. P. Q. R. | **Senatus Populusque Romanus.** |
| LEG. | **Legatus.** | | |
| L. *or* LIB. | **Libertus, Liberta.** | S. P. P. Q. R. | **Senatus Populus Plebesque Romana.** |
| MAG. | **Magister.** | | |
| N. | **Nepos.** | TR. MIL. | **Tribunus Militum.** |
| P. C. | **Patres Conscripti.** | TR. PL. | **Tribunus Plebis.** |
| P. M. | **Pontifex Maximus.** | TR. POT. | **Tribunicia Potestate.** |
| PR. | **Praetor,** *or* **Praetores.** | X. V. | **Decemvir(um)**[2]. |
| PROC. *or* PRO. COS. | **Pro consule, i.e. Proconsul.** | X. VIR. STL. JUDIK. | **Decemvir(um) stlitibus (i.e. litibus) judicandis.** |
| PRO. PR. | **Propraetor.** | | |
| PROQ. | **Proqvaestor.** | XV. V. S. F. | **Qvindecimviri sacris faciundis.** |
| P. R. | **Populus Romanus.** | | |
| Q. | **Qvaestor.** | | |

[1] Not until 3rd cent. p. Chr. was **cons.** used; in Diocletian's time began the custom of doubling the **s** (e.g. **conss.**) to denote the plural (Mommsen).

[2] Descriptive genitive: 'of,' i.e. 'one of the ten commissioners.'

The name of the tribe to which a person belonged is sometimes added to the name in an abbreviated form; thus, **Pup.** for **Pupiniā**; **Qvi.** or **Qvir.** for **Qvirinā**. See § 512, and Caelius' letter in Cic. *Epist. ad Fam.* VIII. 8, § 5.

(3) *Sepulchral.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| D. M. S. | **Dis Manibus Sacrum.** | H. S. E. | **Hic situs est.** |
| D. S. P. | **De sua pecunia.** | OB. | **Obiit.** |
| F. C. | **Faciendum curavit.** | P. C. | **Ponendum curavit.** |
| H. C. E. | **Hic conditus est.** | V. | **Vixit.** |

(4) *In voting on trials.* *In voting on laws.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. | **Absolvo.** | A. P. | **Antiquam (legem) probo.** |
| C. | **Condemno.** | V. R. | **Uti rogas.** |
| N. L. | **Non liquet.** | | |

(5) *Epistolary.*

D. **Data (est epistola).**
S. D. **Salutem dicit.**
S. P. D. **Salutem plurimam dicit.**
S. **Salutem (dicit).**
S. V. B. E. E. V. **Si vales, bene est: ego valeo.**
S. T. E. Q. V. B. E. E. Q. V. **Si tu exercitusque valetis bene est: ego quoque valeo.**
S. V. G. V. **Si vales gaudeo. Valeo.**

(6) *In decrees of the Senate.*

D. E. R. I. C. **De ea re ita censuerunt.**
I. N. **Intercessit nemo.** Scr. arf. **Scribendo arfuerunt** (i.e. **adfuerunt**).
S. C. **Senatus consultum.** V. F. **Verba fecit.**

(7) *Miscellaneous.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. U. C. | **Anno urbis conditae.** | ITER. | **Iterum.** |
| D. D. | **Dono dedit.** | L. | **Libertas.** |
| DD. | **Dederunt.** | M. P. | **Mille passuum.** |
| D. D. D. | **Dat, dicat, dedicat.** | Q. B. F. F. Q. S. | **Quod bonum felix faustumque sit** (cf. § 666). |
| F. F. F. | **Felix, faustum, fortunatum.** | | |

HS (for IIS, i.e. **duo** + **semis**) **sestertius** (§ 910).

(8) *Modern Latin.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| A. C. | **Anno Christi.** | coll. | **collato**, or, **collatis.** |
| A. D. | **Anno Domini.** | comp. or cp. | **compara**, or, **comparetur.** |
| A. M. | **Anno mundi.** | del. | **dele**, or, **deleatur.** |
| a. C. n. / p. C. n. | **ante** / **post** **Christum natum.** | D. O. M. | **Deo optimo maximo.** |
| c. | **caput, capitis**, &c. (*chapter*). | ed., edd. | **editio, editiones.** |
| cet. | **cetera.** | e.g. | **exempli gratiā.** |
| cf. | **confer**, or, **conferatur.** | etc. *or* &c. | **et cetera.** |
| Cod., Codd. | **Codex, Codices.** | h. e. | **hoc est.** |

I. C. **Jesus Christus.**
Ictus. **Juris consultus.**
ibid. **ibidem.**
id. **idem.**
i. e. **id est.**
i. q. **id quod.**
L. or Lib., Libb. **Liber, Libri.**
L. B. **Lectori Benevolo.**
l. c. **loco citato.**
l. l. **loco laudato.**
leg. **lege,** or, **legatur.**
L. S. **Locus Sigilli.**
MS., MSS. **Manuscriptum** (or **Manuscriptus,** sc. **liber**), **Manuscripta,** or **manuscripti.**
N.B. **Nota bene.**
N. T. **Novum Testamentum.**
obs. **observa,** or, **observetur.**
P. S. **Postscriptum.**
q. v. **quem,** or **quod, vide.**
sc. **scilicet.**
sq., sqq. **sequenti, sequentibus.**
s. v. **sub voce.**
vid. **vide.**
viz. **videlicet.**
v. **versus, versum,** &c.
v. c. **verbi causâ.**
V. cel. **Vir celeberrimus.**
V. cl. **Vir clarissimus.**
V. T. **Vetus Testamentum.**

# TRANSLATION OF EXAMPLES IN SYNTAX.

[The figures relate to the sections.]

**439.** They will compare Veii, Fidēnae, Collātia, Aricia, Tuscŭlum with Caere, Teānum, Neāpŏlis, Pūteŏli, Nuceria. You gave no answer to your fellow-citizens, none to your allies, none to kings: no assertion was made by the verdict of judges, by the votes of the people, by the authority of the body before me: before your eyes was a dumb forum, a voiceless senate-house, a silent and downcast state. **441** (*a*). He unites his two daughters to the royal youths Lucius and Arruns Tarquin. Publius and Servius Sulla. Tĭbĕrius and Gāius Gracchus. Pet Tullia, my little darling, is clamorous for your present. O philosophy guide of life, O thou that ever seekest for virtue and drivest vices forth. This is the war, Porsinna, which we Roman youths proclaim against you. The name of that disease is avarice.

**441** (*b*). This city is Rome. Caesar was created consul. Caesar may be (be created, propose a law in his capacity of,) consul. Gāius Jūnius dedicated when dictator the temple, which he had vowed when consul, and had ordered when censor to be built. Dolabella having been decreed yesterday to be an enemy, war must be carried on. Could I make Cilicia into Aetolia or Macedonia? A good-for-nothing and an idler is Davus: *you* on the other hand are spoken of as a fine and clever judge of the old masters. The arrival of Philotimus—what a fellow that is! such a fool and for ever telling lies for Pompey—took away all our breath. This man's name also is Menaechmus. The boy had the name of *Needson* given him from his poverty. We caught a sight of your heart, a simpleminded fellow.

**443.** The learned are of opinion. Sweets delight. What is this? To whom did he give the purchase money? whence did he get it, and how much was it he gave? I am a timid man. I am a timid woman. They are timid women. Death then is a wretched thing, since it is an evil thing. That is just what I think, that the good are blessed, the villainous are wretched. Flattery is unworthy not merely of a friend but even of a freeman. Toil and pleasure, things most unlike by nature, are joined to one another by a kind of natural fellowship. Leisure and riches, which mortals count the first things. The heads of that conspiracy were (men) beaten with rods and struck with axes. A grievous thing is a wolf to the folds. An uncertain and ever changeable creature is woman. **444.** A young man, an agnate (a relative through males; cp. App. C), a friend, a living creature, an infant, a youth, a married man, an intimate, a rustic, a serpent (*a crawling he or she*), a fellow, &c. A convenience, a decree, a saying, a deed, fate (*an uttered* thing), a prodigy, an agreement, a sin, an answer, a secret, truth, a vow, &c. **445.** This empty affair was presently the cause of a real disaster. I restore to you that law of Acilius', by which law many have been condemned after one statement of the case. **446.** All lands and seas. Lands and seas all. To man's service we see all lands and seas obedient. **447.** The African (wind);

hoary (hairs); the (games) of the circus; a birth(day); the setting (sun, i.e. the west); the Seventh (month, i.e. September); the sesterce (coin *of two and a half* pounds). Africa (the land *of the Afri*); lamb (flesh); Appius' (road); arithmetic (the art *of numeration*); hot (water); a tithe (*tenth* part); right (hand); a wild (beast); the Latin (festival); father-(land); a bordered (gown); the main (thing); a three-oar (ship), i. e. with three ranks of oars. An estate at Cumae; Falernian (wine); neat (wine); winter-, settled, quarters. To play the first (parts); to drink cold (water). **448.** True friendships are (friendships) for ever. *I* hand over to you a kingdom, strong if you be good, weak if you be evil. **449.** They are called in their own tongue Kelts, in ours Gauls. The wings (tend) in different directions, the right tends towards the camp of the Samnites, the left towards the city.

**450.** The envoys came to Caesar: he sent them back immediately. That fatherland is the first (to us in dearness, i. e.) in our affections, for which we ought to die, and to which we ought to devote ourselves wholly, and in which we ought to place all that is ours. For myself I was never brought to such great hopes by your letters as I was by those of others. Sternness in old age I approve, but, like other things, in bounds. The place on to which the Enetans and the Trojans first disembarked is called Troy. **451.** That they used to think was riches, that was good reputation, and great rank. What among others is called passionateness, in a despotism is named haughtiness and cruelty. There was no doubt that the Roman should bring succour to the people of Luceria; the only matter for deliberation was the road (§ 490) they should take. Pompey the father who was a light to the empire of the Roman people having been extinguished, his son, the very copy of the father, was put to death. **452.** It is only to the wise man that it happens to do nothing unwillingly, or in pain, or under compulsion. Marius who was previously set against the nobility, then presses them much and fiercely. Active make for the forum in the morning and at (i. e. not before) eventide your house. Appius from that day maintained the obstinacy from of old hereditary in his family by holding the censorship alone. **455.** Milo was present. Pompey spoke. The gates are thrown open. Knowest thou not? Take then your crook. Guilt falls to prayers, the innocent to wrath. It is the facts, the time, the risks, poverty, the splendid spoils of war, more than my words that urge you. Whence and whither wends Catius? **456.** Lo, Priam (is here). Ha, Crispinus again. Ha, two letters from Varro. There's a crime, there's a cause for a runaway (slave), to put a king on his trial. **457.** Hail, my soul. O dear Clinia, hail. Mother, I call on thee. Keep not thy wrath, great priestess: Go, our glory, go. O Corydon, Corydon, what madness seized you? You, mounds and groves of Alba, you, I say, I implore. Pollio, thee, Messalla, with thy brother, and you too, Bibulus and Servius, and with them thee, bright Furnius, I deliberately pass over. **459.** Caesar advanced a three days' journey. A wall ten feet high. He is a thousand paces from Utica. One ought not to swerve a nail's breadth from a right conscience. Caesar pitches his camp three thousand paces from the camp of the Helvetii. **460.** Through the nights he kept watch till actual morning, the whole of the day he used to snore. Now for a year you have been attending Cratippus' lectures. Nor will he be of this mind all his life. Sextus Roscius, forty years old. **461.** Somewhat we have aided the Rutulians. What hurt do those things of yours do me? One feeling have you all, one desire. Sweetly smiling, sweetly speaking Lălăge will I love. Rough, bitter-looking, back he retreats. Do I already seem to you to be living a long life? Let me, I pray thee, first rage this rage of mine.

I have served a slavery to thy commands, my father. **462.** In face and shoulders like a God. And she stands with her side pierced (§ 471, 1) with a javelin, stands wounded in the breast. The women clothe themselves in linen robes, leaving their arms bare to the shoulders (bare as to their forearms and arms above elbow). Anxious on behalf of the general. They live mainly on milk and cattle. **463.** Far across the Tiber he lies (ill) near Caesar's gardens. Hannibal threw his forces across the Ebro. The Belgae crossed the Rhine of old. He keeps his army as near as possible to the enemy. He himself nearer the mountain places his troops. **464.** He went away (into Sicily to Syracuse, i.e.) to Syracuse in Sicily. We came to Leucas: thence we had a splendid voyage to Corcȳra. Write to your home. The old man buried himself in the country. Exiled by fate he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores. The army was ordered to assemble at Aquilonia. He received a matron into his house. **465.** He went to Tarquinii, a large city of Etruria. **466.** They come to look, they come to be looked at themselves. Maecēnas goes to play, I and Vergil to take some sleep. I was engaged just now to cook, not to be thrashed. Is she given in marriage to Pamphīlus to-day? **467.** He went off to take service with the king in Sicily (unto Sicily to the king to fight). He flies to the Beaks (i.e. the place of addressing the Romans). He forced him to an arbitration (to an arbitrator). **468.** Not woods nor rivers, 'tis the country she loves and boughs bearing prolific fruits. Cervius in wrath is ever threatening (folk) with the laws and ballot box. Ware dog. I returned thanks. He gives me words (instead of money, i.e. cheats me). **469.** He blushed before the rights and honour of the suppliant (i.e. He respected the rights of the suppliant who appealed to his honour). The woods reecho 'Beautiful Amaryllis.' He begged him to dance (in the character of) the shepherd Cyclops. Even now with the tribuneship on his lips he seeks an opportunity for sedition. **470.** I did not conceal from you the language of Titus Ampius. I was the first whom the tribune asked his opinion. The Latin legions had been taught Roman warfare by their long alliance. **471.** The old man rises and wraps his limbs in the cloak. This youth having his temples girt with pure bay. At length having her spirit glutted, at length having avenged her hard griefs. Boys having their satchel and board hanging on their left arm. Having put on robes girt back, barefoot, with hair thrown upon her bare shoulders. **472.** O too happy tillers of the soil, if they did but know their blessings. What a wretched guard was yours, Gnaeus Plancius! what a tearful watch! what bitter nights! what an unfortunate post to guard my life too! On your honour, gods (I appeal to your honour); (you see) a man lost and wretched. Lo four altars! behold two for thee, Daphnis, two (altars), high altars, for Phoebus. Whence (can I get) me a stone? But what is the good of riches collected by such torments? **474** (*a*). You plough for yourself, you harrow for yourself, you sow for yourself, for yourself also will you reap. Whither my books have been allowed to go, I am not allowed to go. He says to Cleomenes: I will spare you only. When I married you, my torch was a hurt to none. What wished I for my wretched self? Keep your things to yourself (*a formula used in divorces*). What presents will you give Nisus worthy of him? The excellent father smiled to him. **474** (*b*). I put in to unknown (shores), having escaped from my brother and the sea. Life is taken from the young by force, from the old by ripe age. Cassius was being put to direct the fires, Cethegus the slaughter. Thou who art lord to me art a wretched slave to others. Ward off the solstice from the herd. **474** (*c*). Everything is made more like a

camp than a city. A grievous thing is a wolf to the folds, showers to the ripe corn. **475.** From thee is the start: for thee (i.e. when I have reached thee) will I leave off. Leaning on a taper olive thus began Damon. *We* (men) put loads on certain beasts, *we* put yokes. The Samnites kept riding up to the rampart. **476.** Caesar had everything to do at once. Each must use his own judgment. Who has not heard of Demosthenes' sleepless nights? To many good men he left tears when he died, to none more tears than thee. Land is before thy eyes, before ours are the waters. **477.** To himself Damocles seemed a fortunate man. Blest to me is the land in which thou wert born. To a longing mind nothing is done speedily enough. To those who confess the truth, it was the broadacres that ruined Italy. **478.** This was their two days' warservice for you. But, you must know, of a sudden came Caninius to me in the morning. There's a youth for you, the copy and likeness of myself. **479.** Know you not then that kings have long arms? It is always so in a state; those who have no wealth envy the good (i.e. the nobler). What is the good of fortune to me if I am not allowed to use it (*Quo mihi* with accus. not nom. perhaps for *quo mihi est habere*)? In this case I have to do entirely with Clodia. It will be the mischief for my soldiers, if (I shall find) they have not kept quiet. There's for you! Woe to your head! **480.** Cato is Rome's father and Rome's husband. For him the eyes (i.e. his eyes) are pressed with hard rest and iron sleep. As a lad whose name was Servius Tullius was sleeping, his head they say caught fire. **481.** A commission of ten for writing laws. The instructions for doing a work. They settled a day for a council. Magius was insolvent. We found (at the time) no drinking-water. **482** (*a*). The sea is destructive to greedy skippers. I find myself forced to be a burden before I am a benefit to you. As a vine is a grace to trees, and grapes to vines, thou art all grace to thine. I hate, and am hateful to, the Romans. The business did not prove damaging to anyone. That easily comes to pass which is dear to the Gods. It is not worth while to recount this. **482** (*b*). To sit in the middle of three is among the Numidians taken as an honour. He has it in charge to see what you lack. Who will there be to throw that at you as a fault? You blame that in me which to Q. Metellus was granted to be an honour, and is to-day and ever will be the greatest glory. **482** (*c*). They had sent the cavalry to aid Caesar. He leaves five cohorts to guard the camp. Not until the battle was over did the Samnites come to support the Romans. **485.** You choose to trade: why not at Pergamum? at Smyrna? at Tralles? Fleeing from the battlefield they did not stop before (they were at) Venusia or Canusium. The commons of Rome I have tended in the field and at home. I am in an agony of soul. We are in suspense of soul. He died at Cumae whither he had betaken himself. **486.** Fickle as the wind, let me in Rome love Tibur and at Tibur Rome. He prepares for war by land and sea. There is a panic all through the camp. The first of the two spears was fixed in the ground, the second in the middle of his back. **488.** A senator is bid three things, to attend; to speak in his place, that is, when the question is put to him; to speak with moderation, (that is) not to speak interminably. In the first place we see (§ 478) everywhere in all directions there is no limit. **489.** They agree on oath that no one should receive to his city, his house, his table, his hearth, anyone who has left the battlefield a conquered man. He from his notorious intimacy will (cheer me with, i.e.) show me hospitality. **490.** A wolf entered by the Esquiline Gate and passing along Tuscan Street had escaped through the Capene Gate. From here we take straight to Beneventum. **491.** Caninius

having come to me late in the evening and said he was going the next morning to you, I wrote a letter at night. I wish (that it should be come to Philolaches to meet me, i.e.) to be fetched from Philolaches' (house), in good time. The temple of Castor was dedicated the same year on the 15th July. It had been vowed during the war with the Latins. The Arabs wander over fields and mountains winter and summer. Livius (Andronicus) exhibited a play in the consulship of Gaius Claudius and Marcus (Sempronius) Tuditanus (i.e. in the year 240 B.C.). **492.** In three hours you can get to Aduatuca. If he had owed it, Sextus, you would have sued for it immediately; if not immediately, soon (*paulo* § 496) after; if not soon, still some time after (§ 496); within (those six months, i.e.) six months from then surely; in the course of a year without question. So (within these four hundred years, i.e.) within four hundred years from now there was a king at Rome. **493.** It is a real sorrow not to have seen the games of the circus for a year. He lived (eighty years, i.e.) to the age of eighty. Why do you ask how long he lived? **494.** Take this rice-gruel. How much did it cost? A trifle. But how much? Eight asses (four pence). Of little worth are arms abroad, unless there is policy at home. The father reckons it at nothing. Our ancestors placed in the laws that a thief should be condemned in double (the value of the property), a usurer in fourfold. **495.** This man sold his country for gold: he made and remade laws for a price. In Sicily corn was at most 3 sesterces per bushel (*strictly* the bushel of corn was at 3 sesterces). That hesitation cost him dearly. Most men sentence souls to death, as if they had been condemned of a capital offence. The same thing was done by Lucius Philippus, a man most worthy of his father, grandfather and ancestors. For my part I do not think myself worthy of such an honour. **496.** Occasionally they make a month a day or two longer. If you had become the worse looking by only a black tooth or a single nail, I should have believed you. The more numerous the Veientes were, the greater the slaughter was. He had vowed the temple ten years before (before by ten years) the war with the Poeni. The temple of Aesculapius is five miles (five thousand paces) from the city. **497.** You have erred not indeed in the whole matter but, what is most important, in the dates. All bewildered in ears and eyes were (§ 339) numb with fear. As great as Calchas in (interpreting) the organs (of animals), or the Telamonian in arms, or Autŏmĕdon with a chariot, so great am I as a lover. They eat herbs terrible (in the speaking, i.e.) to speak of, not merely to eat. **498.** Rich in land, rich in money invested in loans. The country house abounds with pork, kid, lamb, fowl, milk, cheese, honey. To him the city was surrendered, bare of a garrison, crammed with supplies. Ariovistus forbade the whole of Gaul to the Romans. He did me out of all that gold. **499.** Bulls defend themselves with horns, boars with tusks, lions with the grip of their teeth, other beasts by flight, others by hiding. These are the things I feed on, these I delight in, these I thoroughly enjoy. Friends one can neither collect by an armed raid nor procure with gold: they are got by attention and good faith. He is overwhelmed with the hatred of all classes, above all he is floored by the evidence. What are you to do with such a man as this? **500.** Sometimes the eyes cannot discharge their proper functions. The comforts which we have, and the light we enjoy, and the breath we draw are, as we see, given us by Jove. Now is the need for courage, Aeneas, now for a steady heart. You fade after discharging all the duties of life. **501.** He all but collapsed from fear, I from laughter. In so long a time (§ 492) many properties were being held without wrong by inheritance (cf.

§ 99 *d*), many by purchase, many by dowry. He was growing old from grief and tears. The district of Abano is esteemed for its countryman Livius. **502.** What sort of looking man was he? A red man, big-bellied, with thick ankles, somewhat black (in hair), with a big head, sharp eyes, a ruddy face, very big feet. He kept declaring that he had no slave at all of that name. The first elements are simple and solid. Lucius Catilina was born of noble race, with great energy mental and physical, but of a bad and vicious disposition. Tribunes of the soldiers with the power of consuls. **503** 1. First if you please let us proceed after the fashion of the Stoics, afterwards we will digress as our habit is. Marius advances with his troops in square column. **503** 2. Think that Naevius did everything at Rome properly and reasonably, if this is considered to have been done rightly and duly. Caesar, as was his custom, was on guard at the work. I had scarce uttered these words, when with a groan he thus replies. They leap down from their chariots and fight on foot. **504.** What can be maintained with such a people as this? Nothing should be despaired of with Teucer for leader and Teucer for luckbringer. I am sorry that you suspected me on the score of negligence. I copy out the books in the forum among a great crowd of people. **505.** While the consul was saying this, the horsemen throw themselves on the flanks. Quickly accomplishing the work and taking the légions across and choosing a fit place for the camp, he recalled the rest of the troops. A (meeting of the) senate cannot be held in the whole month of February, unless the deputations are either settled or put off. When dictating this to you I was in good spirits excepting only for your not being with me. Thence he advanced towards Pluinna, having not yet ascertained what part the enemy had made for. **506.** It is decreed that they should be sent into the provinces according to the result of the lot. At length with reluctance, driven by the loud shouts of the Ithacan, according to agreement he opens his mouth. In a calm as they say anyone makes a pilot. **507.** It was necessary to meet Hirtius. Before you begin there needs deliberation, and, after deliberation, early action. **508.** In the presence of the judge. In hand. Before the walls. He lies under the ground. **509.** Damaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii. Nothing here as yet from Brundisium. Brutus wrote from Rome. Showers of stones fell from the sky. **510.** To fall off the rock. To come from Pollio. He comes from Spain. He departed from Gergovia. He is driven out of the town of Gergovia. He is three thousand paces from Rome. **511.** He endeavoured to drive Publius Varius from his holdings. Caesar had cut off the enemy from their supplies of corn. He leaves Italy. He loses his case. I was abstaining from lampreys. Released from work. Free from care and toil. Ware mischief. **512.** Apollo was the son of Jove and Latona. From Latinus sprang Alba, from Alba Atys, from Atys Capys, from Capys Capetus, from Capetus Tiberinus. L. Domitius, son of Gnaeus, of the Fabian tribe, (surnamed) Ahenobarbus (Brazenbeard). **513** (*a*). What is more hard than a rock, what softer than a wave? This state has brought forth none either more brilliant for their achievements (§ 497) or more refined gentlemen than Publius Africanus, Gaius Laelius, Lucius Furius. I am in want of bread, a better thing to me now than honeyed cakes. I fear you may think some other than the wise and good to be the happy man. **513** (*b*). He did not come to Rome so soon as all hoped. My eyes see farther than usual. Plant no tree, Varus, before the sacred vine. **516.** Cicero's house. Crassus' son. Hector's Andromache (his wife). The sun's rising. The moon's horns. Goddesses of the sea. The toil of learning. His best friends. An enemy to ease, a

foe to the good. It is worth while to recall to mind the pains our ancestors took. What a full attendance of the senate on that occasion, what expectations on the part of the people, how the deputations flocked to the place from all Italy, how manly, spirited, and dignified was Publius Lentulus the consul! As a God will you be to me. **517.** Everything which was the woman's becomes the man's property, held as dowry. Now I know myself to be entirely given to Pompey. We held the Carthaginians as our wards. It is all men's interest to act rightly. **518.** My house. Thy friends. My accuser. By my single help (By the help of me alone) the commonwealth is preserved. It is mine (my habit) to speak freely. The common parent of us all. Nor will I make the glory mine, the toil theirs. **519.** This concerns me. He said, this concerned them more than himself. It is greatly for the interest of Cicero or rather for mine or, upon my word, for that of both, that I should visit him while at his studies. **520.** Alone of all. Many of you. The third of the kings of Rome. Of the provinces, Macedonia is harassed by the wild tribes, Cilicia by the pirates. Each of them. The middle of the path. The level parts of the city. The better part of me. **521.** All of us. In the middle of the city. At the end of the year. The whole of Asia. The rest of the crowd. The front of the base. The back of the paper. Each of the brothers. Three hundred of us have sworn to one another. Friends, of whom he had many, were present. **522.** This piece of reward. But little prudence. Something beautiful. To such a pitch of misery was I to come. You have logs in plenty (cf. § 227). All the ships (What of ships) there had been anywhere they had collected to one place. They point out that there is nothing left them beyond the soil of the land. **523** (*a*). The honour of the consulship. The number of three hundred. The virtue of justice. The lofty city of Buthrōtum. The nymphs gave the nourishment of milk. A squadron of three hundred horsemen. Supports (consisting) both of foot and horse. There are two kinds of liberality; one in giving a kindness, the other in returning it. **523** (*b*). A heap of corn. Rewards in money. A great number of horses. A great quantity of seeds. Six days' space. A thousand coins. He was reluctant to give too much profit out of the tithes. A scoundrel of a fellow, Palaestrio. They get 400 bushels to the good. They are compelled to pay to Valentius 30,000 sesterces extra. **524.** A ditch a hundred feet long. A boy of sixteen. You will have a guest of no great appetite, but great in merriment. Your letters are of the greatest weight with me. **525** (*a*). The accusation of the guilty. The possession of influence. The care for other people's things. The purchaser of the estate. A knowledge of law. An actor of the best parts. Lazy reluctance to bury them individually. Hesitation to invade. Greedy of praise. Shirking toil. A man who holds to his purpose. Time that eats things away. Like their parents. Conscious of the crime. (Declaration of law, i.e.) Jurisdiction. **525** (*b*). Freedom from office. The struggle for official honours. Gods who have the rule over souls. Animosities taken up from political differences. Devoted to literature. A mind without fear of death. Uncertain of opinion. Doubtful of the future. **526.** Ripe in age. Late in studies. Lessened in (head, i.e.) civil position. Upright in judgment. Secret in hatred. Fierce of tongue. **527.** He accused the one of canvassing. They get acquitted of treason. He charges Gaius Verres with avarice and boldness. You duly sue for theft. Condemned to pay his vow. Caught in the perpetration of capital crimes. On his trial for parricide. Already suspected of entertaining too ambitious hopes. **528.** Some day (i.e. At length) pity

your allies. I indeed feel pity for the very walls and roof. It repents you of your fortune. I am bored and wearied with the ways of the state. To admire for justice. To envy one the chickpease reserved. **529.** I remember the living nor yet am I allowed to forget Epicurus. Catilina kept putting one in mind of his poverty, another of his desire. He made me informed of his design. The thought of Plato occurred to me. **530.** Tullia infects the young man with her own rashness. He is in need of exercise. He makes himself master of Adherbal. The house was crowded with dice-players, full of drunken men. Sated with all things. Italy was crowded with Pythagoreans. Land fertile in crops. Free from businesses. To abstain from fits of passion. To be cheated of one's toils. Wearied of matters. **534** (*a*). I can, am used to, ought to, wish to, dare to, do this thing. You know how to conquer, Hannibal; the way to use your conquest you know not. He did not leave off warning. He set on to follow. He hastens to set out. Give up praying. I hate sinning. He loves being praised. You hope to ascend. They delight to touch the rope. I had to say this. Grant that the fleet escape the flame. He takes trouble to know this. **534** (*b*). I will teach Rullus to hold his tongue after this. He bade the Helvetii go away. He trained his horses to stay. **535.** I say (think, know, grieve, warn you) that Caesar has gone off conqueror. I wish myself both to be, and to be considered, a wise citizen. I allow no honours to be decreed me. He sees that he will be in danger. We desire you to enjoy your conquest. Caesar was informed that the enemy had sat down at the foot of the mountain. Caelius is the authority for Mago's having crossed the river. Great hope possesses me that this place will be a refuge. **536** (*a*). Caesar is said (is thought, is heard, is found) to have gone away as conqueror. These things seem to be easier. You are ordered to be returned as consul. They are ordered (to be taken to the Syracusan stonequarries, to be imprisoned there, i.e.) to be taken and imprisoned in the Syracusan stonequarries. **536** (*b*). To an educated man to live is to think. This, Roman, is to make a display of war, not to wage it. **537** (*a*). It is a wicked deed to bind a Roman citizen, a crime to beat him, almost a parricide to kill him: what am I to call fastening him on a cross? These very things are marks of honour—to be greeted, sought, made way for, be received by persons rising, be escorted, brought back, consulted. One may frisk. Learning the arts thoroughly softens the manners. **537** (*b*). This ought to be and must be done (It behoves and is necessary that this be done). I am pleased that you are in cheerful spirits. The news was brought me that the Parthians had crossed the Euphrates. **537** (*c*). To have no desires is wealth; to have no eagerness to purchase is a revenue. One may be a citizen of Gades (Cadiz). It will be given you to be free from this mischief. **538.** Ah, to treat so carelessly a matter of this importance! There now—that I should have been in Spain at that time rather than at Formiae! **539.** When Catulus had said this, all (began) to look at me. Then there was a horrible spectacle in the open plains: following, flying, slaughter, capture: horses and men dashed to the ground, and many, from wounds they had received, able neither to fly nor to endure to lie still, but only to struggle and fall down on the spot. **540** 1. There is no sense in letting slip an opportunity of that kind. It is time now to attempt something greater. **540** 2. The Arcadians alone are skilled in singing. Her mind was apt to be caught. Snow-white to the sight. The one was worthy to be chosen, the other to choose. **540** 3. He sent me to beg. We are going out to look. He sends me to seek. He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains. **540** 4. He gives the

man a corslet to possess. We are a number only, and born to consume the crops. **540** 5. There remains nothing except love. There is a deal of difference between giving and receiving. **541** *b*. Son of Atreus, you forbid anyone to think of burying Ajax. The consuls issued a proclamation forbidding anyone to sell or buy anything to facilitate flight. He avoids doing anything which he would afterwards have trouble in changing. The seer is frenzied in her attempts (cf. § 748) to shake off the mighty god from her breast. **545**. One will not repent of having paid attention to that. Then was the time for weeping when our arms were taken from us. **547**. These things are very easy to decide. He was sent to ascertain the dispositions of the kings. A large sum has now been expended on buying and arming slaves for service in war. **548**. The consul gives his attention to appeasing the Gods at Rome and holding a levy. Numbers of people flocked together ready to hear and believe this. The following were present at the recording. A commission of ten for deciding lawsuits. The states are not solvent. **549** (*a*). Caesar gained glory by giving, by relieving, by excusing, Cato by making no present at all. Herdonius by confessing himself an enemy almost served a notice on you to take up arms, this man by denying that there were wars at all, took the arms out of your hands. At this day Asia rests on the maintenance of the arrangements and, I may say, on treading in the footsteps of Lucullus. **549** (*b*). The word *law* in Greek is derived from assigning each his own. The first book is on the contempt of death. I spent my exertions in making the accusation and setting forth the charges. Instead of bringing help to the allies he proceeds to march in person to lay siege to the city. **550**. We are so (born and made, i.e.) framed by nature as to contain in ourselves the instincts to do something, to love some people, and to repay a favour. In this state have been formed plans for destroying the city, butchering the citizens, putting an end to the name of Rome. **551**. At this crisis we must be slaves or lords: we must feel fear or cause it, Quirites. Each must use his own judgment. Caesar had to do everything at once; to set up the flag, give the signal with the trumpet, recall the soldiers from work, draw up the line. I withdrew from a war in which one had either to fall in battle, or to fall into an ambush, to come into the conqueror's hands or to take refuge with Juba or to choose a place for what would be exile, or to decree oneself a voluntary death. We have to fear in death eternal punishment. **552** (*a*). He had some land from my father to cultivate. Let us give ourselves to philosophy to refine. Caesar has a bridge (of boats) made in the Arar (*Saone*). Part of it is kept for drinking. He puts out a contract for cleaning the sewers. **552** (*b*). There's a deed which calls for (notice, i.e.) punishment. Let me tell you now of another type of general, one which calls for very careful retention and preservation. Rest between toils either already spent or soon to be spent refreshed their bodies and spirits to endure everything anew. He cried both that he had bought and was to buy everything. It was scarcely to be believed. They gave the name of *pains* to toils which could not be avoided. **553**. Come as soon as you can to have a laugh at this. Envoys came into the camp of the Aequi to complain of the wrongs and demand restitution in accordance with the treaty. I will not go to be a slave to Grecian mothers. He thinks that all or most things will appear ambiguous. **554**. Foul to say (in the saying). Terrible forms to look at. The other hill was convenient for practical purposes. Water pleasant to drink. **556**. I am loved, I am about to love, &c. I say that thou art loved. Nothing worthy of mention was done this year (cf. § 491). Old age is busy and

ever doing and stirring something. **557.** Having said this he went aloft. Every evil is easily crushed in its birth, but when grown old becomes stronger. Upon my word it would not have occurred to me if I had not been reminded of it. Nor has he lived ill who has escaped notice both in birth and death. Thence you will protect Greece, at once wearing to the Romans the appearance of preparing to cross, and actually ready to cross if circumstances should require it. With almost an harangue of this kind in his mouth he went from man to man. **559.** I ask you to hold me excused; I dine at home. I put aside the mathematicians (astrologers), grammarians, musicians. I will so lay low the legions of the Latins as the envoy lay low just now before your eyes. No one doubted that it was outraged guests, slaughtered envoys, ransacked temples that brought about this great destruction. There were kings at Rome, counting from the foundation of the city to the deliverance of it, for 244 years. Then the Danai with a groan, raging at the girl's having been carried off, collected from all sides and rush on. Failure in getting favourable omens for a long time had detained the dictator. A verse was found in the Sibylline books on account of the frequent showers of stones in that year. There was no reason why haste should be required. **561.** A wise man (lit. A man having taste). Fixed penalty. A shrill (sharpened) voice. Time to come. What? are then those images of yours so obedient to us (lit. so listening for us at our word)? The doctor quite confirms the opinion that you will be shortly in health. **569.** The man was persuaded: it was done: they came: we are beaten: he married (the lady). A grudge is felt at the benefits received by the men themselves, but their exertions to benefit others are viewed with favour. Still however we will give satisfaction and no labour shall be spared. Each wishes himself to be trusted. Strenuous opposition was made by Cotta and the (centurions of the) first ranks. **570.** To myself no injury can now be done by them. This is the only point of contention. **572.** What I was at Trasumene (lake) and at Cannae, that you are to-day. It is denied by the whole of Italy, denied by the senate, denied by you. **573.** Verres comes into the temple of Castor: looks upon the sanctuary: turns himself about: seeks what to do. **574.** They are wont in the schools (of rhetoric) to bring forward decisions of the immortal Gods on the subject of death. Official congratulations from the towns all along the road (*imperfect tense*) were offered to Pompey. Part of us are so timid as to have thrown aside all recollection of the favours of the people of Rome, part so opposed to the commonwealth as to show that they favour the enemy. Friends partly deserted me, partly even betrayed me. **575** (*a*). The deed itself puts him to shame. Pity seizes me for others. **575** (*b*). It lightens; it thunders; it rains; it freezes; it draws to evening. At Reate a shower of stones fell (it stoned in a shower). It begins to dawn here now ('it, here' represent *hoc*). **575** (*c*). The order is obeyed. Who could have been spared? The damages in the suits have been strictly assessed: the party pleased forgets it; the party hurt remembers. You who think yourself flourishing are weighed down by anxieties; you are tormented with desires; you are racked all day and night, because what you have is not enough. In fact all of us householders have left reaping-hook and plough, and crept within the city walls. **577** (*a*). Some fly off to the ships: part again climb the (wooden) horse. Each of them lead out their armies from the stationary camp away on the side of the river Apsus. **577** (*b*). Lovers' quarrels are a renewal of love. To be contented with one's property is the greatest and surest riches. **578.** Paulus and Marcellus are passed over by private agreement. If you and Tullia are well, I and my sweetest Cicero are well.

I and you know to separate a rude saying from a humorous one. **579.** The leader himself with some chiefs are taken. This neither I nor you have done. **580.** The senate and people of Rome understands. When time and need requires, we must fight it out with force. **581.** This much both the Peripatetics and the old Academy grants me. I delight to be called a good and wise man, and so do you. And of this opinion were Democrĭtus, Heraclĭtus, Empĕdŏcles, Aristotle. The quaestorship I was a candidate for, Cotta for the consulship, Hortensius for the aedileship. It was stated on oath by Publius Titius, guardian of the ward Junius: it was stated by Marcus Junius, guardian and uncle: it would have been stated by Lucius Mustius if he had been alive; it was stated by L. Domitius. **582.** Both armies, that of Veii and that of Tarquinii, go off each to their own homes. We endure each his own ghost (the events of a ghostly life). From sluggishness and softness of spirit you hesitate, one waiting for another. The consuls of that year had perished, one by disease, the other by the sword. **583.** What, says he, are you here for so early, Tubero? Then he (spake). You have done wisely in leaving this, if you did so deliberately; and fortunately if you did so by accident. The Gauls (did) nothing else for two days but stand ready. Gaius Caesar (ask) money from me? Why so rather, than I from him? More and more anxious became Agrippina, because no one came from her son. What is the good of my possessing fortune, if I am not allowed to make use of it? This however is nothing to me. Whither tends (i.e. What is the purpose of) this? Why make many words of it? **584.** On the 3rd day before the Ides of November (11th Nov.), on my coming down Holy Street, he followed me with his (roughs): shouts, stones, sticks, swords: all these unexpectedly. A sea raging, harbourless, land fertile in crops, good for cattle, unfavourable to trees: a scarcity of water both in sky and land. Meanwhile with all my forces I made a raid on the Amanienses, our constant enemies: many were slain, (or) captured: the rest dispersed: some fortified hamlets were taken by a sudden attack and set on fire. **585.** He answered that it had not occurred to him that anyone would do it. A crowded senate determined that a colony should be established at Lavīcum. Why do you hesitate? He ought to have been hurried aloft by this time. What matters it whether I wished it to be done or rejoice at its being already done? **590** (p. 236 note). I will beg Achilles to give me the gold for which Hector was ransomed. **593.** Here I am waiting for Servius. Now when I look at you, I see you to be Romans. **594.** He gave Archagathus the task of having the silver carried down to the sea. Archagathus goes up into the town, bids all to produce whatever they had. There was a great panic. I had scarce uttered this: of a sudden everything seemed to quiver: sinking down we drop to the ground and a voice is borne to our ears. **595.** In complying with the young men's request, I forgot myself to be an old man. Whilst the Romans are preparing and consulting, Saguntum was already being besieged with might and main. Whilst the elephants are being conveyed across, meantime Hannibal had sent 500 horsemen to spy out the Roman camp. Now is the time for imbuing the boy with those arts which, imbibed while he is of tender age, will make him come better prepared to more important matters. I for my part desire and I have for long been desiring to visit Alexandria. What? did I ever cheat you (§ 468 tr.) at all since I have been yours? **597.** Well, what do you say? Crassus, are we going to sit down? Look to the camp and defend it heedfully, if anything fall out for the worse: I meantime am going round the rest of the gates and strengthening the guards of the camp. **598.** Before I

speak of the accusation itself, I will say a few words on the hope of the accusers. You meantime will await us here till we come out. **599.** What is ever in motion is eternal. Your interests are concerned (lit. Your business is being done) when the adjoining wall is on fire. **600.** If we take nature as our guide, we shall never go wrong. Our time here, while we are on the earth, will be like that heavenly life. Anyone who shall wish to gain true glory, should discharge the duties of justice. Remember to take me to listen wheresoever you go. **601.** If however the wise man had been susceptible of suffering, he would have been susceptible of wrath; now as he is free from wrath he will be free also from suffering. I have found she is of kin to us. What? are you out of your senses? It will turn out as I say: I am not speaking at random. **602.** About the water if there is any trouble, you will look to it, if Philip does anything. **603.** They attack the rear rank of the Romans. At that time Marius was busy in the front, because Jugurtha with most of the enemy was there. Archias was in those days a pleasant associate of Metellus the conqueror of Numidia, his recitations were attended by Marcus Aemilius, he used to live with Quintus Catulus both father and son, his acquaintance was cultivated by Lucius Crassus. **604.** I was (am) writing this at the ninth hour of the night on the eighth before the Kalends. Milo was (is) already in possession of the plain of Mars: the candidate Marcellus was (is) snoring so loud that I heard (hear) him through the wall. Feb. 12th. I have written this before daybreak: I am going to day to dine at Pomponius' wedding dinner. What is the state of politics with you at the time of my writing this I know not: I hear there are some disturbances: I hope they are wrongly reported, so that we may sometime enjoy liberty and peace. These are my anxieties at the time of writing to you: if some God shall turn them into joy, I shall not complain of the apprehensions. **605.** Anything he had earned he bestowed on his greedy belly. In Greece musicians were in favour, and all used to learn the art. I used to practise declaiming daily. Hortensius used to speak better than he has written (*or* ever wrote). All who were present were dying with laughter: and for the future all began to dread me. Both lines take up a position and they prepared themselves for battle. The consuls, uncertain what sudden mischief had fallen on the city, tried to allay the tumult, and by their efforts to do this sometimes excited it. Of this surrender Postumius himself, who was offered in surrender, was the adviser and mover. After they failed in seeing any sign of the enemy, the Gauls marching on reach the city of Rome. **608** 1 (*a*). At last Catiline came into the senate. Then Marcus Tullius the consul made a speech at once brilliant and politically useful. He afterwards wrote and published it. I came, I saw, I conquered. Lucius Lucullus was for many years governor of the province of Asia. **608** 1 (*b*). I almost forgot that which was the principal object of my letter. I love Brutus as much as you do, I had almost said as much as I love you. **608** 1 (*c*). After Gnaeus Pompeius was sent to the war by sea, the power of the oligarchy grew. Hispala did not let the young man go till he pledged his word that he would keep aloof from these rites. **608** 2 (*a*). We use our limbs before we have learnt for what purpose we have them. At length, Quirites, we have, shall I say, expelled Catiline from the city or, if you like, let him go or escorted him with words in his voluntary retirement. He has gone away, has withdrawn, has escaped, has broken out. Now no more will the destruction of our walls be plotted inside the walls. **608** 2 (*b*). We Trojans are things of the past: Ilium is no more and the great glory of the Teucri. I have an only son, a young man. Ah! What

said I? that I have (a son)? Nay I have had, Chremes. Whether I have still or not, is uncertain. The earth trembles, the beasts are fled. **608** 2 (*c*). When fortune blows (has blown) on us, we are dashed to the ground. **608** 2 (*d*). Whilst the king is safe, all (the bees) have but one mind: if he is lost, they break at once their loyalty and plunder the honey they had piled up. Not house or lands, nor heap of bronze and gold has drawn away fevers from the sick body of their lord. **609** 1. When you come to read this, I shall perhaps have met him. When I have seen him I shall proceed to Arpinum. **609** 2. He that shall crush (have crushed) Antony, will thereby put an end to the war. Will he not then be really the conqueror, if on any terms whatever he succeed in entering this city with his (troops)? **609** 3. Plato, if I shall succeed in translating him, uses some such words as these. By the Judicature Act neither will the man who chooses be elected, nor the man who refuses escape election: those will be the judges whom the Act itself, not man's caprice, shall have selected. **609** 4. But if we are utterly fallen, I shall have been the ruin of all my friends. Shall one man go unpunished after causing this carnage through the city? after sending so many leading warriors to (for) Orcus? **609** 5. Trust me, I say. I will help you either by consolation or counsel or act. Do you invite the ladies; meantime I shall have summoned the boys. If I am troublesome, give back the money: I will then be off at once. Some time I will look to what he effects: meanwhile I highly value his offer. **610**. As a father of a household shall enact with regard to his own family and money, so shall the law be. Come now, Stichus: whichever of (us) two shall cry off shall be fined a glass. **611** (*a*). He decided to put up with anything rather than enter on war, because the previous attempt had turned out ill. Hanno, with those who had come up last after the battle was lost, is taken alive. **611** (*b*). We are now travelling on a hot and dusty road. I sent off (a letter) from Ephesus yesterday: this letter I send from Tralles. **611** (*c*). A hundred and twenty lictors had filled the forum and were carrying axes bound up with their bundles of rods. The crops not only were being consumed by this great number of beasts and men, but had also been beaten to the ground by the season and the showers. Publius Africanus, after he had been twice consul and censor, proceeded to put L. Cotta on his trial. **611** (*d*). The enemy, whenever from the shore they caught sight of single soldiers disembarking, attacked them while embarrassed. **612**. Do whatever you like. I mean to give you no more. I have lent you everything which I meant to lend. An orator must try the minds and feelings of those before whom he may be pleading at the time (§ 600 *a*) or be preparing to plead. The chamber where the king was to stay (for the night), if he had continued his journey, fell in the very next night. **613**. Mind you keep well. Collect the sheep, lads. When you have admitted this, then deny, if you will, that you received the money. **621**. He asks Rubrius to invite whomever it may be convenient to him: and leave one place for himself, if Rubrius pleased. At the same time Rubrius orders his slaves to shut the gate and stand themselves at the doors. **622**. The other side demand that judges to try the case should be assigned out of those states who frequented that forum: those were chosen whom Verres thought fit. Mago sends envoys to the senate at Carthage to represent in exaggerated terms the defection of the allies and urge them to send reinforcements so that they might recover the empire of Spain which had come to them from their fathers. **623**. For three years he so harassed and ruined Sicily that it cannot possibly be restored to its former condition, and it will require many years before it can

have a chance of some partial recovery. **624.** Aemilius Paullus brought so much money into the treasury that the booty gained by one general has put an end to the poll-tax. Their resources had grown so greatly that not even at the death of Aeneas did the Etruscans or any other neighbours dare to take up arms. **625.** The orators of old are praised, for their habit of defending at length the cases of accused persons. That all men, father, said he, might truly report me sprung from your blood, on a challenge I slew my enemy and bear these horsemen's spoils to you. **640** (*a*). If you were here, you would feel differently. If I were to say that I am moved by regret for Scipio, I should tell a lie. What if a father were to rob temples, drive a mine to the treasury? would a son give information of it to the magistrates? That indeed would be (§ 643) a sin: nay he would even defend his father, if he should be accused. **640** (*b*). Then verily should I in vain have, with this right hand, saved the Capitol and the citadel, if I were to see a fellow-citizen be dragged to prison. Without your consent, general, I should never think of fighting out of the ranks, not though I were to see victory certain. In fine I would upon my word rather flee away at once than return if I should know that my return must be thither. These, if my care were not resisting, the flames would already have seized and the hostile sword would have drained (their blood). **640** (*c*). All this seems to you laughable, for you are not present: if you had been a spectator you would not have restrained your tears. It is I Hannibal who sue for peace,—I who would not have been sueing if I had not believed it to be expedient. Would you then have thought Opimius, if you had lived in those days, a rash or cruel citizen? How I am listened to now I am fully sensible, but if I had been speaking then, I should not have been listened to. You however alike if you had been defending a will, would have pleaded so that all rights of all wills might seem to be involved in that trial, or if you had been pleading the cause of the soldier would with your words have roused his father from the dead. **640** (*d*). If I had distrusted Metellus' honour, I should not have retained him as a judge. The matter neither now seems to me in a difficult position and would have been in a very easy one, if some persons had not been to blame. But, Velleius, if you had not said something, you would not have succeeded in getting me to say anything. **641** (*a*). If you do this, you see me today for the last time. We indeed, if pleasure contains everything, are far away distanced by beasts. In fine if you are a God, you ought to confer benefits on mortals, not take away what they have: but if you are a man, always bear in mind that which you are. If you shall be condemned, and in fact when you are condemned (for with those men as judges what doubt of your condemnation could there be?), you will have to be beaten to death with rods. What? if a father shall attempt to seize a throne, or betray his country, will the son keep silence? Nay he will implore his father not to do it: if he prevail nothing he will accuse him. If so many examples of valour do not move you, nothing ever will move you: if so terrible a disaster did not make life cheap, none will make it so. **641** (*b*). If I wished to take you off by poison at your supper, what was less suitable conduct than to make you angry? I told you when you were starting that I was lazy: what good did I get by telling you this, if notwithstanding you attack rights which are on my side? Epicurus however courteous he may have been in defending his friends, still, if this is true, for I affirm nothing, was deficient in sharpness. If you be found to bring the money, I shall be found to break my word to him. You will greatly please me, and I hope Scaevola also, if you discuss friendship.

**641** (*c*). If you had not already previously formed a plan for the death of Sextus Roscius, this piece of news did not in the least concern you. If Metellus was not sufficiently defended by his own modesty, the rank of our family ought to have given him sufficient support. At that time in fact a man who had got an office did not hold it, if the Fathers had not given formal sanction. **641** (*d*). I had yielded to odium, if you will have it that the commons were hostile to me, which they were not; if there was violence in the matter, then to fear; if there was danger to the citizens, then to the commonwealth. Both my husband and your wife ought to have been living, if we had not meant to dare some great deed. **642.** Defeated in one battle Alexander would have been defeated in the whole war; but what battle could have broken the Roman, who was not broken by the Caudine Forks, not broken by Cannae? At a push from him lofty walls with high towers would have been stirred: the serpent remained without a wound. I could have wished I had been permitted: I should have said this. You may say it. I should have done this. You may do it: no one stops you. I should have decreed this. Decree away, only decree rightly: all will approve. Assuredly no other nation would have failed to be overwhelmed with such a weight of disaster. In this space of time the conquered committed more cruelties on themselves than the conquerors, if set on, would have committed. All our own productions please us while they are being produced: otherwise they would not be (have been) written. She would have flown over the tops of the stalks of unmown corn and not have hurt the tender beards as she ran, or would have taken her course through the midst of the sea suspended on the swelling wave and not have wetted her swift feet in the water. **643** (*a*). I could (can) go through the many attractions of country life, but I feel that even what I have said has been too long. It is a long business to mention them: but this much in brief I will say. There is no reason why you should fear lest this be troublesome to him, for he will not find it tedious to go round the world for my sake. **643** (*b*). Either the war ought not to have been undertaken or it ought now to be waged in a way worthy of the Roman people. It would have been better for Cinna to have been forbidden and prevented from putting so many leading men to death than for himself at some time to suffer for it. **643** (*c*). I might have called disturbances of mind diseases; but (if I had) it would not have been convenient (§ 642) in all respects. And so Plato thinks that they would not even take part in politics unless compelled: it would have been fairer however for it to be done voluntarily. **643** (*d*). How much better had it been for the father's promise not to have been kept in this matter. Catiline rushed out of the senate, triumphing in delight, he who never ought to have gone thence alive. **644** (*a*). I (could) wish you would excuse me for doing it against the will of your mother-in-law. Really I should have preferred you continuing in dread of Cerberus than that you should say that with so little consideration. Who can doubt that riches lies in virtue? So great a war as this who would ever have thought could be finished in one year? Nor am I inclined to object to 'scripsere alii rem'; 'scripserunt' I think is the more correct. Whenever the Sarmatians come (§ 721) in squadrons, scarce any line could stand it. **644** (*b*). But I should not readily say anyone was more apt in words or closer packed with meaning. I would gladly give all wealth to everybody if only (§ 684) I could be allowed to live in your fashion without being interrupted by brute force. Cicero I would boldly match against any of the Greeks whatever. Bravely spoken! (lit. Blessed for valour, § 501), in fact I myself should not mind going wrong in your hero's company. So I should give my opinion

to your friends that they should avoid that new style of speaking. **645** (*a*). I wish you to take a wife to-day. I much prefer your being silent to your saying that you are silent. I prefer upon my word that what you maintain should be proved before those judges and the Roman people than what I charge against you. These are great deeds of course: who denies it? but they are stimulated by great rewards and by the eternal remembrance of mankind. Good heavens! Will anyone after learning these things say that Oppianicus was deceived? Enough and more than enough has your liberality enriched me: I shall not (be found to) have acquired what either like greedy Chremes I may bury in the earth or squander like a loose young rake. **645** (*b*). I will for my part gladly yield for you, Laelius, to discourse on that. I am possessed by moderate vices such as may be excused (§ 646): perchance even these length of time will handsomely diminish. Now what is it you say? Beware of pardoning. This is the language neither of a man nor (fit to be addressed) to a man: he that uses such language before you, Gnaeus Caesar, will be quicker in casting off his own human feeling than in wresting yours. I will gladly give my opinion that each should practise the art he knows. **646.** 'Tis in vain that you exhort a man who is roused neither by glory nor dangers. He holds an apple taken from a tree: you would think the Hesperides had given it him. Without the word of command they bear back the standards, and sorrowful—you would have thought them conquered—return into the camp. Presently you would have seen no one at rest throughout the camp. One would have thought that there ought to be an end to that mourning. The mind too and spirit, unless you drop oil as it were upon their light, die away from old age. A good man only becomes less active if you neglect him, but a bad man becomes more wicked. **647** 1. Some one will perhaps inquire, whether I disapprove of using the protection of the laws to drive off danger. No, judges, I do not disapprove. A man will say, What then is your opinion? that we should take measures against those who have betrayed the commonwealth to the enemy? Not by arms, not by force, &c. Do you then speak of yourself? some one will have said. I do it unwillingly, but pain at the wrong I have suffered makes me unusually boastful. **647** 2. You will ask, how much I value it at? If I shall ever be permitted to live in ease, you will find by experience. Where shall we find those who do not prefer office to friendship? Where can you find the man who prefers the promotion of his friend to his own? **650** (*a*). Should you ask me what I consider to be the nature of the Gods, I should perhaps give no answer: should you inquire, whether I think it to be such as you have just set forth, I should say that nothing seems to me less likely. A share in this great work, had grief permitted, Icarus, thou wouldst have had (been now having). Had you given this mind a body equal to it, he would have done what (i.e. the definite thing) he wished. For without you (were it), I should not have been living till sunset this day. **650** (*b*). One who sees these and innumerable things of the same kind, would he not be forced to admit the existence of Gods? One who had seen (been seeing) the Trojan horse brought inside would have said that the city was taken. **650** (*c*). If you had not heard of these things as done, but had been looking at them in a picture, still it would have been clear which of the two was the plotter. Even if death had to be met, I should have preferred meeting it at home and in my country rather than in strange places abroad. **650** (*d*). And yet for my part if a philosopher were to be furnished with eloquence, I should not despise it; if he have it not, I should not require it. **651** (*a*). Whatever they say, I praise: if again they deny it, I praise that too.

Does any one say no, I say no: does he say ay, I say ay. He has by his decree assigned supreme command to a most illustrious man, but that man a private individual. In this he has imposed a very great burden on us. (If) I shall assent, I shall have thereby brought canvassing into the senate-house. If I shall refuse, I shall seem by my vote to have refused a post of honour to a great friend. You laugh, he is convulsed with a louder laugh: he weeps, if he sees (has seen) his friend in tears. (Shall you have) come into my country with me, there I will return the favour to you. Attend and you will understand. Take away this thought: you will have taken away all mourning. **651** (*b*). There is in fact nothing more loveable than virtue: the man that has gained that, wherever he be (§ 600) in the world, will have our affection. These and things of this kind anyone will easily see who wishes to praise. **651** (*c*). In the Decii Magii if there was not the control which is usually found in our consuls, there was pomp, there was show. Good men do many things for this reason, because it is right, although they see no advantage likely to result. What a man often sees he does not wonder at, even though he is ignorant of its cause. **651** (*d*). If you do (shall have done) what you profess, I shall be very grateful to you; if you do not, I shall excuse it. Either if you are hard, say no, if you are not hard, come. Luxury, while disgraceful to every age, is foulest to old age: but if there is besides want of control over the desires, the evil is twofold. For be it that we can attain wisdom, it should not be procured only but enjoyed: be it that that is difficult, still there is no limit to the hunt for truth until you have found it. **652** (*a*). You loaded him with every insult whom, if you had had a spark of dutiful affection, you ought to have reverenced as a father. The whole army might have been annihilated, if the conquerors had pursued the fugitives. Neither will you dare to say this, nor will you be allowed, if you were to desire it. If he had said this, still no excuse should have been allowed him. They had come into such a position that if the consul had had a foe like the former kings of the Macedonians, a great disaster might have been incurred. Philip not doubting that, if there had been day enough left, the Athamanes also might have been turned out of their camp, sat down at the foot of the hill. **652** (*b*). Those very farmers who had remained, were going to leave all their farms, if Metellus had not written to them from Rome. What do you mean to do, if the enemy come to the city? If he had not set them free, these men would have had to be given up to torture. Such should have been the mourning for Peleus if he had been dying. Nor was there any doubt that the enemy would have turned their backs, if this small number had been able to be in all places at once. And this thing is naturally so wicked and criminal that even if there had been no law it should have been carefully avoided. **653.** No one hardly dances when sober, unless perchance he is mad. Absurd creature! as if it were necessary, if he does not give her to him, that you should marry her: unless you look to it, pray, and court the old man's friends. I can form no judgment on the matter, only I persuade myself of this that a man such as you has done nothing without good reason. We found out nothing about it by putting questions, but saw by positive measurements with a water-glass that the nights were shorter than on the mainland. **654** 1. Many things urge me to keep aloof from you, Quirites, did not my devotion to the state overcome them. I remember the tune if I could but have retained the words. **654** 2. Why, if you were to bid me describe the Giants subdued by Jove's fire, the task will break me down in the attempt. If the world were to be broken up and

fall on him, dauntless will he receive the blow of the ruins. **654** 3. The bridge of piles all but furnished a road for the enemy, if it had not been for one man. Why, I was slipping still further if I had not checked myself. If L. Metellus had not prevented it, the mothers and sisters of the wretches were coming. **654** 4. We had had a splendid victory if Lepidus had not received Antony when stripped, disarmed, a fugitive. A tree falling on my head had taken me off, only that Faunus with his right hand lightened the blow. **655.** Wherefore if you love me as much as assuredly you do love me, if you are sleeping, awake; if you are standing, step on; if you are stepping on, run; if you are running, fly to me. Live and farewell: if you know anything more correct than these rules, candidly impart them; if not, use these with me. Even if others shall be occupying the front rank, and the lot shall have placed you among the rearguard, still from thence fight with voice, with cheer, with example, with spirit. Spare ye however the dignity of Lentulus if he has spared his own reputation: spare the youth of Cethegus, unless this be the second time that he has made war on his country. Will she find fault, do you find fault; whatever she approves, do you approve: say what she says, deny what she denies. Has she smiled, smile on her: if she weep, remember to weep also. If she is in the country and says 'Come'—love hates the lazy—if wheels shall not be at hand, do you hurry to her on foot. **656.** Such was the end of a man, worthy of record if he had not been born in a free state. We saw blackbirds too being placed (on table), nice things if the host had not proceeded to describe their causes and qualities. **657** (*a*). How I could wish you had been at Rome, if perchance you are not there. Your virtue has so won us to you, that whilst you are our friend safe and sound we fear not, if it is not impious to say so, even the Gods in wrath. I should like you however to read the speech, unless as is possible you have read it already. **657** (*b*). For if night does not take away a happy life, why should (§ 674) a day like a night take it away? May I be hanged if it were (§ 643 *c*) not the best course. If I have my brother and you with me, those fellows may (§ 668) for all I care be dragged by the feet to execution. If you were too lazy to proceed beyond the gates, at least you should have bidden (§ 670) my (funeral) couch go thither more slowly. But if the groaning (of which we speak) be quite pitiful, weak, despairing, tearful, I should scarcely call (§ 644 *b*) one who abandoned himself to it, a man. **657** (*c*). If ever you thought me brave in politics, certainly you would have admired me that day (i.e. if you had been present). And if this cannot be done in our present world without God's assistance, neither would Archimedes without God-inspired intellect have succeeded in imitating the same movements in a ball. **658.** What if I bid him be seized? You would be wiser (to do so). **659.** What if I rather remain till noon? **660.** The fact is men spoilt by pride lead their life as if they despised the offices you confer: and yet are candidates for them as if they led an upright life. But, you say, the son of C. Cornelius is accuser and that ought to have as much weight as if his father had been the informer. The army of the Samnites, as though there were to be no delay in joining battle, draws up its line. Here however we see a great struggle, as though there were no fights elsewhere, none dying throughout the city. Just as if it were difficult for me to produce by name as many as ever you like. **661.** A very different tale is told us from what you had written. For both her life is the same and her feelings towards you the same as they were. They bade us make a larger statue of Jove and place it on high and, contrary to what it had been before, turn it to the east. Once upon a time there was an old

man just as I am now: he had two daughters, just as mine are now: these were married to two brothers, just as mine are now to you. **662.** If only that golden bough would but show itself to us on a tree in this mighty grove! And yet oh if there were still any spark of our wonted valour! **663.** Of Fabianus Severus Cassius had said before he was put on his trial by him: You are fluent after a sort, handsome after a sort, rich after a sort: there is one thing only which you are not after a sort—a flat. The nobility tried to keep down M. Porcius then in his canvass as throughout his life. The safety of Gnaeus Plancius I am bound to defend no otherwise than my own. **665** (*a*). Naevius, I wish to hear it from your own lips: I wish this unprecedented act to be proved by the voice of the man who did it. Neither do I choose to be put up anywhere in wax with a face made worse than it is, nor to be honoured in badly composed verses. **665** (*b*). Meantime surrender us common persons; you will afterwards surrender also those consecrated men, as soon as they have gone out of office. However you will keep your health and look after my business, and expect me, please the Gods, before midwinter. On hearing you, so it was that I felt annoyed that so powerful a mind—you will kindly excuse my saying it—should have fallen into such absurd sentiments. **666** (*a*). Farewell to my fellow-citizens, may they be unharmed, may they be flourishing, may they be happy. The envoys in front of the meeting (said), May this proposal (which we are going to make) be good happy and prosperous for you and the commonwealth: return into your country. Had the Gods but consented to my having no father! And Ceres after the prayer that so might she rise on a lofty stalk, smoothed with wine the anxieties of the furrowed brow. Phoebus, who hast ever pitied the heavy toils of Troy, so far (and no farther) may the fortune of Troy have followed us. May I not be saved if I write other than I think. I beseech you, think me to be a simple citizen from the midst of the meeting shouting to you in reply: with your kind leave permit us to choose out of these proposals those which we think to be wholesome for us, and to reject the rest. In the opinion of myself and of every one, you have, let me speak without offence to these gentlemen, left scarcely any distinction for other orators. **666** (*b*). O that Varro himself would throw himself into the cause! O that the people of Rome had but one neck! Almighty Juppiter, would that the ships of Cecrops had not the first time touched the shores of Gnosus! O father and king Juppiter, would that weapons may be laid aside and perish from rust and that no one may hurt me a lover of peace! O may all the Gods just destroy him (§ 280) who first hit upon the plan of holding a meeting. **667.** What the cause was I will consider presently: meantime I shall hold this. However about yourself you will see: of myself I shall declare this. Now die: as for me the father of Gods and men must look to it. Wrathfulness itself they used to say was the whetstone of courage: whether rightly or not will be for us to look to at another time. You, said Lucretia, will have to see what is due to him: myself though I acquit of guilt I do not free from punishment. How easy that (art) is, they will settle who strut about supporting themselves on the claims of the art as if it were excessively difficult, and next to them you yourself will settle. But about this we will consider: only let us go out. About the debt you will see with Cispius. **668.** I think we ought to observe in life the rule which is maintained in wine-parties among the Greeks: either he must drink, it says, or must go. So something should be granted to age: youth may be a little freer: not everything should be refused to pleasures: the true and strict rule should not always prevail. Let us love our country, obey the senate, look to the

interests of the good, neglect immediate profits, work for the glory of posterity: let us hope for what we wish, but bear what happens. Use that advantage while it is here; when it is gone, do not seek for it. What the warloving Cantabrian, Quintus Hirpinus, may be thinking of, waive inquiring, nor flurry yourself to provide for the needs of a life which (really) needs but few things. Cross not the Ebro: have nothing to do with the people of Saguntum: don't move a step (from your footmark) anywhither. Excuse nothing: yield not an inch to favour: be not stirred to pity; remain firm in your opinion. **669** (*a*). Enrolled fathers, assist me, wretched man that I am, go and meet the wrong, let not the realm of Numidia waste away. Keep to yourself by all means that laudatory decree of the Mamertines. Yield thou not to woes but march more boldly to face them. Why art thou afraid of what is safe? Gird thyself and push aside all delay. Stop weeping and let me know what is the matter whatever it be: don't keep it secret, don't shrink, trust, I say, to me. Off with you! Farewell. Good bye. **669** (*b*). When you have most carefully thought for your health, then, dear Tiro, think of sailing. If perchance the heavy burden of my paper chafe you, throw it away rather than wildly dash the panniers against the place whither you have to carry it. Be the first to dig the ground, the first to carry off and burn the loppings, and the first to bring the stakes under cover: the last to reap. By means of this nourish thou the rich olive dear to Peace. God bless *you* for your courage and care. You, Titius, shall be my heir and shall decide (whether to accept or not) within a hundred days of your having notice and not being disabled. If you shall not so decide, you shall be disinherited. When the north wind is blowing plough not, plant not crops, cast not seed. **670.** Was I not to pay him the money? You should not have paid it him nor have bought anything of him, nor sold to him, nor have given him the means of going to the bad. You sent a citizen of Rome to the cross. You should have reserved the man, kept him shut up, until Raecius could come from Panhormus; had he then recognised the man, you should have remitted something of the extreme penalty; had he been ignorant of him, then, &c. What ought you to have done? If you did as most others do, you should not have bought corn, but have taken the amount in money. **671.** You'll drink some hellebore, I'll take care, for some twenty days. I'll secure, he'll thereby lose both wine and labour. **672.** Away, bear this public message to the Fathers that they fortify the city of Rome. Jugurtha exhorts the townsmen to defend their walls. We had told you, Procillus, yester-eve to dine with me to-day. He must have done everything which has been enjoined on him and notified to him before he put in any request. To such a life as this, crowned with so many full delights, fortune herself must yield. Why you may even use Greek words when you choose, if Latin words fall short. How much I should have preferred he had given them up to me in chains. I do not wish the old man to see me at this crisis. Don't fancy that anything ever excited men's wonder more. **673.** I'm determined, I will work the old ground and be my own master. Prythee permit it quietly. I think I shall succeed in getting him to put off the marriage for some days at least (lit. put forward some days for the marriage); meanwhile something will be done I hope. No doubt (*ironical*), either those are frightened by the fear of death or these by (the fear of) the sanctity (of the place). **674** (*a*). What is she to do? fight? a woman will be beaten in fight: cry out? but he had in his hand a sword to forbid that. Seeing this what was I to do, judges? was I, a private person, to contend in arms against a tribune of the commons? Perchance some one

may be found to say, You should have resisted, should have fought against him, should have met death in arms. Are you to tell me (§ 478) that you have been with the army all these years, not put foot in the forum; absent all this time, and then come here after this long interval and dispute for a post of honour with those who have lived in the forum? Was then he, when beaten in song, not to give me the goat (he wagered)? **674** (*b*). It was not at all clear to Brutus or the tribunes of the soldiers what to do or what plan of battle to adopt. We have nowhere to make a stand except Sextus Pompeius. At once the plan was discussed how by acting on the offensive to turn the enemy from Italy. What to do about the boys, I do not see. **674** (*c*). Have you got the man, pray? (Why should I not have him? i.e.) Of course I have got him. On Maximus having recovered Tarentum, Salinator asked him to remember that it was by *his* services that he had recovered Tarentum. Why should I not (i.e. Of course I) remember it? says he: for I never should have recovered it if you had not lost it. **675** (*a*). But why do I mention things which when they were in doing used to be praised to the skies? Yet what do you advise me? Do I fly to him or do I stop? For my part I am both fast in the midst of my books and I do not wish to receive him here. **675** (*b*). Are we then actually waiting till beasts speak, and are we not contented with the concurrent authority of men? But am I actually loitering instead of escorting her to Thais? Shall Verres have at his own house a candelabrum of Jove's? Pretty well that! gone off, and cares not a lock of wool for what I said. Actually smiling? Did it seem then to you such a fine joke to laugh at us, you villain? **675** (*c*). What shall we have to eat afterwards? Will you be silent? Am I to be accountable to you? I believe, my father will not believe it. Will you not be silent, you fool? He'll believe it, I'm sure. Why, if we have the vigour of youth, do we not mount our horses and inspect with our own eyes the dispositions of our wives? Why, look at the matter thus, judges. In truth I now neither exhort you nor ask you to return home: why, I myself desire to fly from hence. **676** (*a*). If we do not gain your approval of these views, assume that they are false, at any rate they are not of a nature to excite odium. Be it that there is no strength in old age: from old age strength is not expected. A bad citizen, a wicked consul, a factious fellow was Gnaeus Carbo: (Let him have been so to others, i.e.) Be it that he was so in the opinion of others (§ 477); when did you begin to be of that opinion? There never was such a man, you will say. Be it so (lit. Let no one have been so), I am discussing what I desire, not what I have seen. But the fortune of fight had been doubtful. Grant that it had: whom did I, doomed to death, fear? I would have borne torches into his camp. **676** (*b*). You do nothing, pain: however troublesome you are, I shall never admit you to be an evil. Let them be as humorous, witty and eloquent as they will, the power shown in the forum is one thing and that at the dinner-table is another. Gaius Gracchus however told many people that when he was a candidate for the quaestorship his brother Tiberius seemed to say to him in his sleep, let him hesitate as much as he chose, he would have to die by the same death by which he had himself died. **676** (*c*). Old men retain their abilities, if only they retain their zeal and industry. I now refer to you whom I am to follow: only let no one give me that very ignorant and absurd answer, 'Anybody, provided it be somebody.' **677** (*a*). That course of yours is right, but this is expedient. Suppose that you have rightly waged war: ought you therefore to have had to deal with women? **677** (*b*). You will reply that the Stoics call the same things preferable which your friends call good. True they do call them so, but

they deny that a happy life is filled with them. He thinks that it is one thing to have joy, another thing to be free from pain. Yes, and makes a great mistake. **677** (*c*). We may attack them as much as you please, I am afraid they are the only philosophers. **677** (*d*). He was among them in royal rank, although he had not the name. Although one of the two has perished he who remains to me shall stand both for himself and for Remus. Nor was there wanting one to recommend a deed however bold. Expect to hear of any deed you please (i.e. *quod facinus expectare commodum est vobis*), as bad as you please, still I shall surpass the expectation of all. **677** (*e*). Whom indeed I shall at once compel to confess—only do ye stand aside. **679.** I sent one in a friendly way, and he told this to Antony. Nature has given man reason, whereby the appetites of the soul are ruled. Aelius used to write speeches, which others used to deliver. That only is good by which the soul will be made better. From each man's loss, pain, inconvenience, ruin, wrong, the praetor drew up public formulae, on which model a private suit is arranged. They bid up as high as they thought they could do the business for; Aeschrio bid above them. **680.** I have one to avoid: I have none to follow. I sent in a friendly way one to say this to Antony. Nature has given man reason whereby to rule the appetites of the soul. Aelius used to write speeches for others to say. Give him back tit for tat so as to sting him. Most persons think the matter one fit for inquiry and the men worth arguing with. In this respect you were sharp-sighted, in laying down beforehand a limit above which I was not to purchase. **682** (*a*). We must eat to live; not live to eat. Both times I so bore myself as not to be a disgrace to you, or to your kingdom or to the race of the Macedonians. It is useful for there to be a number of accusers in a state, that boldness may be kept in check by fear: but it is only useful provided we are not simply made sport for the accusers. Only see that at the present time there be nothing which can get in his way. I will endeavour to prevent your having formed these hopes of me in vain. It had been written to him to prepare everything against the games and to take care that his haste should not prove fruitless to himself. Trunks are covered over with skin or bark that they may be safer from frosts and heats. Caesar saw that it was due to Afranius that a pitched battle was not fought. I shall not object to all the world reading my writings. I will not add a word to prevent you dying like a man. The soldiers scarcely restrained their feelings enough to prevent their making a rush on them at once. **682** (*b*). Verres begs and prays Dolabella to go to Nero. The senate decreed that L. Opimius should see that the state received no damage. The Fathers maintained their ground that no motion should be made to the people: the commons were successful in electing the same men tribunes for the fifth time. It is the first principle of justice that no one should hurt anyone unless wrongly provoked. The next thing is for me to show that the world is ruled by the providence of the Gods. **683** 1. There is the greatest possible difference with them in habits and pursuits. The bare names of places will be given, and with as much brevity as can be. Jugurtha arms the greatest number of troops that he can. Craftily (§ 452) conceal your words under characters as ambiguous as possible. He held the place as long as he could bear the toil. Having brought back from thence a booty exceeding the fame of the war, he held some sports. This was as pleasing as anything ever was to the senate. **683** 2. They kept doing this for a great part of the summer so much the more easily because our ships were being kept back by storms. The more completely master of his art and more

able a man is, so much more irritation and pain does teaching cause him. In proportion to my want of ability I have had to rely upon carefulness. Nor now indeed do I feel the want of a young man's strength, any more than when a young man I used to feel the want of that of a bull or an elephant, I wish Antony to be worse off than he is (worse to be to A. than there is). **684.** We have accepted Caesar's terms, but on condition that he withdraws his garrisons from the places he has seized. And he so puts his inventions, so mixes up true with false, as to secure the middle according with the beginning and the end with the middle. To the people of Lanuvium the citizenship (of Rome) was given and their own sacred rites restored with the proviso that the temple and grove of the saviour Juno should be common to the burghers of Lanuvium and the people of Rome. **685** (*a*). The want of harmony is enormous between the Median scymetar and wine and lights. He was going in with strangely bitter feelings, so that I had to scold him. O Phaedria, my superiority in wisdom over my master is incredible. **685** (*b*). Strange how much not merely the occupation but even the thought of that place delights me. He was interrupted by frequent cries from the soldiers of Ventidius, for of his own he has very few. It was not easy to remember all the objections made, for most of them were utterly trivial. **686.** My boy, I fear you will not be long-lived, and some of your greater friends will kill you with cold (receptions). They kept saying that they were afraid as to the possibility of bringing up the supplies of corn properly. I fear lest if we delay like this it will be for Hannibal and the Phoenicians that our ancestors have so often saved Rome. I fear I shall not get it. Many things of that kind are said in declamations (lit. in the schools), but perhaps it is not necessary for us to believe them all. It would be (§ 643) your line, if anyone's, to count nothing but virtue among goods. Perhaps, said he, it would rather be your line. **687** (*a*). Haven't I nicely forgotten that I told you? He remembers his freedom pretty well, eh? **687** (*b*). Just look at this, how he wheedles; no one when he (has begun) does begin is more coaxing. O look there, how the rascal has twisted his face. **688.** In weak health, one scarcely avoids cold even indoors, much more difficult is it to guard against the inclemency of the weather when on the sea. This complaint was that the consuls were both war-loving men who even in profound peace would be able to stir up a war, much less would they let the state have breathing-time in war. The fact is, prosperity wears the temper of wise men, much less could such men with depraved habits make a moderate use of victory. **689.** Lepidus never approved of the plan of leaving Italy: Tullus still less. These things then the wise man will not undertake in the interest of the state, nor will the state wish them to be undertaken in her interest. Time however not only does not lighten this grief but actually increases it. The oracles of Apollo never met with credence even from any ordinary person, much less from a skilled inquirer. The condition of things in the whole of this crisis was more than anyone could bewail as it deserved, still less can anyone find words to describe it. **690.** Not to be longer, farewell. Since with you respect is paid to courage, that you may owe to your (may have got by) kindness what you have failed to get by threats, (I tell you) three hundred of us leaders of the youth of Rome have sworn to one another to attack you in this way. It showed great recklessness, not to say audacity (§ 517), to touch any of those things. **691.** It is incredible and portentous how he managed to squander such a quantity of things in so few—not months but days (*tam multa quam paucis*, &c., as many things as the days were few). There has

been in that city nothing—I don't say done, but even devised, against this state. **692** (*a*). Wait, pray, till I can see Atticus. He waited at anchor till the ninth hour to allow of the remaining ships meeting there. He suffered much in war till he could found a city and bring in his Gods to Latium (i.e. to help, &c. Latium, § 475). The battle of Actium is rehearsed by the lads after the manner of enemies under your leadership, until swift victory can crown one or other with her (palm) branch. Epaminondas used to practise greatly running and wrestling, until he could manage while standing to grip his adversary and struggle with him. **692** (*b*). Without any further delay the king sent 4000 armed men to Scotussa while the panic was fresh. **693.** I was in fear until we came to challenging the jurymen. Milo was in the senate on that day until the senate was dismissed. I shall be anxious about what you are doing (*or* how you are faring) till I know what you have done (how you have fared). **694.** The elephants were not at all alarmed as long as they were being driven on what appeared like a continuous bridge: the first fright began when the raft being loosed from the rest, they were borne quickly into the open river. There pushing one another, as those on the outside drew back from the water, they began to shew some panic, until as they looked at the water all round them fear itself (brought quiet, i.e.) made them quiet. **695.** In fact all the time I was with you you did not see my soul. This I did as long as I was permitted: I ceased doing so as long as I was not permitted. Just as there is said to be hope for a sick man as long as there is breath, so I as long as Pompeius was in Italy, did not cease to hope. So long as I was pleasing to you, I throve, more blessed than the king of the Persians. So long as you were more in love with no other woman, I throve more renowned than the Ilia of Rome. As long as there shall be anyone to dare to defend you, you shall live. **696.** So long as (i.e. If only) things remain, let them invent words at their own choice. That expression is cruel and detestable, 'Let them hate (so long as they fear, i.e.) if they do but fear.' You may be sure it was written in the time of Sulla. 'Let them hate'—what? So long as they obey? No. So long as they approve? No. What then? So long as they fear. On these terms I should not have been willing even to be loved. Be whatever you like, if only you don't recite. Many neglect everything that is right and honourable if only they can get power. Imitate, enrolled fathers, the inconsiderate mob, if only I am not required to imitate the tribunes. **697** (*c*). Whilst his friends are coming, he walked about alone, his son standing at a distance, he himself turning in his mind many things. Without any evident causes died two Caesars while putting on shoes in the morning; Q. Aemilius Lepidus while just stepping out, having knocked his toe against the threshold of his chamber; Gaius Aufustius after leaving his house, as he was going to the senate, having struck his foot (against something) in the Assembly-place; Gnaeus Baebius Tamphilus, when he had asked the time from his (boy, i.e.) slave; L. Tuccius a physician whilst taking a draught of honey-wine; Appius Saufeius when on his return from the bath he had drunk some honey-wine, and was sucking an egg; &c. Whilst these things were doing at Veii, meantime the citadel of Rome and the Capitol was in great danger. **697** (*d*). We have fallen into these disasters while preferring to be feared than to be loved and esteemed. Thus the lady while seeking to retain a few slaves ruined all her fortunes. I have however gone on too freely into deeper water in my annoyance and weariness of the ways of my country. **698.** The Roman sticking to his rear burst in as it were in one body before the doors of the gates could be

shut against him. He of course before he can come into Pontus will send a despatch to Gnaeus Pompeius. But you will not gird with walls the city given you, before cruel hunger force you to consume with your jaws the gnawed tables. He did not cease to send to his brother and friends until he could confirm peace with them. A few days (§ 496) before Syracuse was taken, Otacilius crossed into Africa. **699** (*a*). Love strikes us, before in safety we see our enemy. All this property, he who had made the will, had some time before his death delivered to the use and possession of Heraclius. Nor did they stop in their flight till they came to the river Rhine about five thousand paces from that place. I shall not tire of it before I have learnt their two-edged ways and methods of disputing both for and against everyone. We use our limbs before we have learnt for what purpose we have them. **699** (*b*). But upon my honour (§ 417) I shall much sooner sacrifice my own safety for you than surrender Gnaeus Plancius' safety to your attack. **700.** Zeno of Elea endured everything rather than inform against those who conspired with him to overthrow the despotism. Anyone shall tear out my eyes sooner than scorn you and despoil you of a rotten nut. Many of the common people in despair, rather than be tortured with still drawing breath, covered up their heads and threw themselves into the Tiber. **701.** Pompeius adds that he will be slain by Clodius before I shall be hurt. I am grieved that you, a man endowed with almost unique wisdom, are not rather delighted with your own advantages than troubled with others' woes. Did not I declare to you that I would endure anything whatever rather than go out of Italy to a civil war? They determine rather to adopt that plan than undergo terms either of surrender or of peace. **704.** I am a man who never did anything for my own sake rather than for that of my fellow-citizens. The Campanians had committed in their revolt too great crimes to admit of pardon (§ 569). This is the only contention which has remained till now. You are the only man, Gaius Caesar, whose victory was marked by the death of no one who did not bear arms. O fortunate youth to have found a herald of your valour in Homer. The time will assuredly come for you to regret the lofty spirit of the bravest of men. The life of Romulus fell in an age when Greece was already full of poets and musicians. **705.** Spurius Thorius had considerable power in the popular style of oratory—I mean the man who by a bad and useless law relieved the public land from tax. Epicurus was not sufficiently educated in those arts which give their possessors the title of 'accomplished.' Choose which of the two is convenient to you. Virtue is most of all things fixed with the deepest roots; it can never be shaken by any force. Ah! wretched that I am! I looked at your feelings with the eyes of my own. Fortunate was his end: he saw not the things actually happening which he foresaw would happen. The long period when I shall not exist moves me more than this short time. You have had ample opportunity of seeing my views ever since the time when you came to meet me at my house at Cumae. **706.** There are those who think that death is the departure of the soul from the body. There is a limit to the indulgence which may be given to friendship. There was formerly a time when the Gauls surpassed the Germans in valour. How many then are there who obey dreams, or even understand them or remember them? Nor can anyone be king of the Persians who has not previously mastered the Magians' course of instruction. I say that there was not throughout Sicily a single silver vessel which Verres did not hunt up, inspect, and take from it anything that pleased him. There was not one of all the soldiers in the fort who was not wounded. **707.** Many are those

who take away from one to give to another. There is one man to whom a crow gave the possession of a surname. It is many years since M. Fadius is in my treasures and loved by me for his thorough culture. But crises often occur when what seems especially worthy of a just man changes and becomes the contrary. The time is past when it could be said: Why, you are a patrician and sprung from the liberators of your country: now the consulship is the reward not of race as formerly but of valour. Is anything good which does not make him who possesses it better? I do not consider him a free man who does not occasionally do nothing. **708.** Why that unnamed gentleman who is wont to be mentioned in disputations used to see things 200 miles off. L. Pinarius was a sharp man, who trusted more to precluding the possibility of being deceived than to the honour of the Sicilians. True, we often look for a Latin word parallel and equivalent to a Greek word: here there was no reason for looking. In explaining names you Stoics toil to a piteous extent. **709.** He must needs fear many whom many fear. A man whom you could not have overreached if you brought the case before an arbitrator, to whom judgment on such a question did not properly belong, him will you condemn by means of a judge who has no right as arbitrator on such a matter. I do not even know by what name I should address you. Citizens? you who have revolted from your country. Or soldiers? you who have thrown off respect for your general and the auspices, and have broken the obligation of your oath. **710.** Of all orators, so far at least as I know them, I consider Q. Sertorius the most acute. There is not a slave, if only he is in a tolerable condition as a slave, who does not shudder at the boldness of the citizens. Epicurus alone, so far as I know, dared to profess himself a wise man. I beg then of you to oblige him in all things, so far as you can do so without trouble to yourself, I should be glad of your coming as soon as possible consistently with your convenience. **711** (*a*). Who however of our orators of the present day reads Cato? Who that has ever cared to know these things moderately is ignorant that there are three kinds of Greeks? The censors used to examine the case of those who were discharged from serving in the army, and anyone whose discharge seemed at present not legitimate, they compelled to take an oath (§ 467) as follows: "According to the purpose of your mind you will according to the decree of Gaius Claudius and Titus Sempronius the censors return into the province of Macedonia, so far as you shall be able honestly to do so." You have, so far as in you lay, ruined both yourself and the unhappy woman. **711** (*b*). But however that is, this complaint of yours is of no avail. Whatever it is, I fear the Danai even when bringing gifts. I count as ours the forces of Deiotărus, however great they are. Whatever is the matter, wherever he is, whatever he does, Egnatius has a smile. This may no doubt be false, it may be true, but whichever it is, it is not surprising. In whatever way posterity will take those deeds, love of country will conquer. The Romans, although they were weary with marching and battle, still advance in order and on the alert to meet Metellus. **712** (*a*). You are not the man, Catilina, for shame ever to have recalled you from foul acts. The rest they drove in such a panic of fear that they did not desist from flight before they had come in sight of our column. He made this speech with so firm a voice and look as to seem not to be retiring from life, but from one house to another. The Sicilians are never in such a bad way that they cannot say something witty and apt. I never had anyone to whom to give a letter for you but what I gave it. The Trevĭri did not stop any time during the whole winter sending envoys across the Rhine. **712** (*b*). So far are we

from admiring our own productions that we are actually so hard to please and whimsical as not to be satisfied with Demosthenes himself. It is the habit of men to dislike the same man's excelling in several things. It often happens that debtors do not meet their obligations punctually. Not even a God can make one who has lived not to have lived, or one who has held office not to have held office, or twice ten not to be twenty. Appius Claudius besides being old was also blind. When Varus stopped behind and asked who he was and what he wanted, Fabius strikes his uncovered shoulder with his sword and all but killed Varus. I cannot help sending you a letter every day in order that I may get one from you. **713.** It happened very inconveniently that you nowhere caught sight of him. You are checked neither by the period of the censorship having expired, nor by your colleague having resigned his office, nor by statute nor by shame. It was much against Eumenes while living among the Macedonians that he was of a foreign state. I omit the fact that she selected that as a home and settlement for herself. Licinius acted very politely in coming to me in the evening after the senate was dismissed. In addition to the fear inspired by the war with the Latins had come the fact that it was tolerably clear that thirty tribes had already leagued themselves together. In this one respect above all others we excel wild beasts, that we have speech to express our feelings. **714** (*c*). His ability I praise without being much afraid of it, and approve while thinking that I can be more easily pleased than beguiled by him. Not very long ago it received the steady spondees into its ancestral right, obliging and contented, but not to the extent of withdrawing in its love of companionship from the second or the fourth place. Who is there who would be willing to live in abundance of everything without either loving anyone or being himself loved by any? **714** (*d*). Even supposing that you were more worthy than Plancius, itself a point which I shall presently discuss with you without detracting from your worth, it is not your competitor but the people that is to blame (for your not being elected). How very few skilled lawyers there are, even if you count those who claim to be. Even if I do not compare your life with his (for it does not admit of comparison) I will compare this one point in which you make yourself out to be superior. Granted that I have gone wrong in these matters, still by mentioning a different opinion as well, I have avoided deceiving my readers. However, supposing this not to be so, still I propose to myself a splendid spectacle, provided only I may enjoy it with you in the seat next me. For even if Plato had brought no reason (see what weight I assign the man), he would have subdued me by his mere authority. **714** (*e*). That this fellow should carry off from me all this money and laugh in my face? It were better to die. I interrupt you? I should not have wished that either. And yet what am I saying? Can it be that anything should break you? that you should ever correct yourself? that you should think at all of flight? Would that the Gods would give you the disposition to it. (To think) that you should have laughed unpunished at the revealing of the Cotyttian mysteries. **715** (*a*). The consul, having laid this news before the senate exactly as it had reached him, consulted them on the religious point. As you shall have sown, so will you reap. They interpreted that, each according to his own temper. **715** (*b*). These men however are, compared with the age of the people of Rome, old men: but, as the generations of Athenians are reckoned, ought to be considered young men. But upon my word, as the case now stands, although it was shaken by yesterday's conversation, it seems to me perfectly true. Sthenius had got, so far as the means of a man of Thermae

went, a very fair quantity of well-made silver. **715** (*c*). But although, my dear Plancus, you may have made a mistake, for who can avoid that? still who does not see that deceived you could not have been? The people of Saguntum, although they had rest from fighting, yet had never ceased working either by night or day. **715** (*d*). Grant that Ennius is, as he no doubt is, more perfect. The enemy required frightening more than deceiving, as frightened in fact they were. **715** (*e*). Led on by the authority of the Vĕnĕti the neighbouring tribes—Gauls always form sudden and hasty plans—retain Trebius on the same ground. Chrysippus, always careful in historical investigation, collects many other usages. **715** (*f*). My life upon it, I incur the utmost expense. **718.** I seem to myself to have sinned in leaving you. How blind I was not to have seen this before. We ourselves, although at first as stern as Lycurgus, become milder every day. The stranger touched by religious scruple, desiring as he did to have everything done duly, at once went down to the Tiber. They make their way back to the camp now full of panic and confusion, women and boys and other non-combatants being mixed up there. The brightness of the Sun is more brilliant than that of any fire, shining as it does so far and wide in an immeasurable universe. You the quaestor did not obey the tribune of the commons, and that too though your colleague obeyed. **719** (*a*). You are tormented days and nights through, for what you have is not enough, and you fear lest even that should not last long. O trusty right hand of Antonius, with which he cut down numbers of citizens. I feel very grateful to old age: it has increased my eagerness for discourse, and removed my eagerness for drink and food. Jugurtha on the other hand on receiving the unexpected news (for he had a fixed conviction that everything at Rome was purchaseable), sends ambassadors to the senate. **719** (*b*). If you had left the business to me, such is my love to you, I would have settled it. They rise to consider their judgment, when Oppianicus, as was allowed at that time, declared that he wished the votes to be given openly. **720.** When they caught sight of a debtor being led into court, they used to rush together from all parts. Nor did he accept the succession to anyone's property, except when he had deserved it by friendship. When the envoy had said this, he used to hurl a spear into their territory. Philopoemen whenever he travelled anywhere and came to a difficult pass used to consider on all sides the character of the place, and then if travelling by himself, discuss in his own mind; if with companions, question them, what plan should be adopted supposing an enemy made its appearance there. He used to take food even before dinner, at whatever place and time his appetite demanded it. In whatever direction he took himself he drew with him no doubtful victory. As often as he took counsel on such a matter, he used to resort to a high part of the house and with the knowledge of one freedman only. Nor was the Roman consul negligent in trying the cities if any chance shewed itself in any quarter. **721.** When I (have) come to my villa, this is just what I like, to do nothing and be quite idle. When a father of a family of higher rank dies (has died) his relations meet. Wherever you turn your eyes your own wrong deeds, like furies, meet you. When idleness has caused strength, time, ability to dwindle away, men throw blame on natural weakness. Anyone, whoever he was, who had at the time of my disaster a share in Clodius' crime, wherever he came, whatever trial he had to stand, was condemned. He generally kept the soldiers in fixed quarters, except when effluvia or want of fodder forced him to change the place. For my part whenever I was praised by our friend Cato I readily put up

even with censure from others. If they proved unable to keep the enemy from pursuing, they used by a flank march to attack them in the rear as they were scattered. As each man's lot fell he briskly caught up his arms in haste. Nor will this lad whenever he sees me (§ 609, 1) sigh and say that he sees the ruin of his father. **722.** On his approaching the gate a fire as agreed was raised by Hannibal: as the well-known voice of Philomenus and the signal now familiar roused the guard, the small gate is opened. As Phocion was being led to death, Ephiletus met him. On his saying with tears, 'What an unworthy fate is yours, Phocion,' he replied: 'But not an unexpected one.' At noon when Caesar had despatched three legions to forage, of a sudden the enemy from all sides flew up to the foragers. As I was at Athens, I used to attend Zeno's lectures frequently. As the night was far advanced and I had stayed in the country-house of P. Valerius, and the day after stayed with him waiting for a wind, a great number of the burghers of Rhegium came to me. **723.** Pompeius when he saw his cavalry routed, retired from the battle. When this opinion was scornfully rejected and, on the same messenger returning, he was consulted again, he recommended that they should all to a man be put to death. Another hope succeeded, after this had turned out unfounded. After that victory was established and we withdrew from arms, though (§ 732) men were being proscribed, Roscius used to be frequently at Rome. As soon as his sister Juturna saw talk of this kind to grow, she flings herself into the midst of the ranks. **724.** Lollius is dragged up by the slaves of Venus just when Apronius had returned from the palaestra and had thrown himself on the dinner-couch. He entered the city—with what a suite or rather with what an army! on the right and on the left, amid the groans of the people of Rome, threatening the owners, marking the houses, openly promising his followers that he would divide the city among them. Day by day he used to make invidious charges against my power, saying that the senate decreed not what it thought right but what I chose. **725.** When you will be reading this, we shall have consuls (i. e. the consuls will have been elected). Whilst this was doing at Rome, Antiochus at Chalcis was working on the minds of the townships. As soon as ever I came to Rome, I thought nothing should take precedence of my (congratulating you in your absence, i. e.) writing to congratulate you on my return. It remains that you should tell me everything before you set out, and when you have set out take care and let me know it. As to the name of despot I can answer this that whatever I am, I am the same I was when you yourself made an alliance with me. When the consul got to Placentia, Hannibal had already moved out of his fixed camp. We ourselves (were of that class, i. e.) acted in that way, when the circumstances of our canvass required it. What groves or what mountain forests held you, Naid girls, when Gallus was being ruined by an unworthy love. At the time when in Asia very many had lost large properties, we know at Rome credit had collapsed from the difficulties in the way of payment. When I got there, the praetor was resting: the brothers from Cibyra were walking about. **726.** I have often heard my father-in-law say that his father-in-law Laelius was wont almost always to go into the country with Scipio. We have seen with our own eyes troops of young men at Lacedaemon struggling with incredible determination and rather losing their life than admit themselves conquered. **727.** It was, when I despatched this letter, just thirty days during which I had had none from you. It is not quite 110 years since a law giving a right of action for moneys extorted was brought forward by Lucius Piso, there having been none before (§ 722).

**728.** This being the case, Catilina, proceed whither you have begun. But since there are Gods, if there are Gods as unquestionably there are, it must be that they are living. Dionysius, not daring to stand on the common hustings, used to address the people from a lofty tower. **729.** May all the Gods grant you all your wishes, since you honour me with such great honour, and since you take me out of prison. Since the Gods love you, I am pleased. I congratulate you, since you have so much weight with Dolabella. What are masters to do when thieves are so daring? What will the wise man do, when the fool is pleased with a present? **730.** Your (son) Cicero came to us to dinner, since Pomponia was dining out. What will hair do, when things like that give way before iron? What is a guard to do when there are so many theatres in the city and when she goes whither her companions are forbidden to go? **731.** Who in accusing this man accuse Naevius, Plautus, and Ennius. But as to you, Catilina, when they are quiet, they approve; when they suffer, they decree; when they are silent, they shout. I allow you to pass over those things which by your silence you allow to be nothing. Epicurus drew religion out of men's minds by the roots, when in treating of the immortal Gods he took from them help and favour. **732.** The river Drance, though it carries a great force of water, is yet not navigable. Notwithstanding that you are really Pylades, will you say that you are Orestes, in order to die for your friend? Cicero himself, though in very delicate health, did not leave himself even night-time for rest. Now that I perceive his mind to be averse from me, why should I bring him back? At this very time, though all the gymnasia are occupied by philosophers, still their hearers prefer to hear a quoit than a philosopher. **733.** What then am I to do? Not go? Not now even, when I am actually sent for? Alas! they go so far as to say I am mad, when they are mad themselves. **734.** How then do you bring this charge against Sestius, when at the same time you praise Milo? He pretends that he is trusting to their protection, while in the meantime he has been (for) long planning some other scheme. Fadius he dragged off, half buried him in the school and burnt him alive, whilst he all the time having dined, with bare feet, loosened robe, and hands behind his back, walked up and down, and answered the poor wretch who pleaded his rights as a Quirite: 'Now off with you, throw yourself on the honour of the people.' Thucydides was never counted an orator; nor indeed if he had not written history would his name have been prominent, and that too though he had held office and was a noble. **735.** The soldiers, when they broke into the house, went in different directions to look for the king (§ 539), filling everything with noise and disturbance, when in the meantime Hiempsal is discovered, concealing himself in the cottage of a slave woman. The camp was pitched with little care on the enemy's territory, when of a sudden the legions of the Samnites came up. Hannibal was coming up to the walls, when suddenly the gate was thrown open and the Romans make a sally upon him just as he was apprehending nothing of the kind. And now they were preparing to do this by night, when the matrons suddenly advanced into the public place. **736.** Sisenna's history, easily as it surpasses all before, still shows how far removed it is from perfection. Singularly as I have loved you from your boyhood, yet for this deed of yours or, shall I say, judgment of the Roman people on you, I love you still more ardently. **737.** Whilst I desire to acquire an actual knowledge of the law of augury, I am upon my word incredibly delighted with your devotion and benefits to me. Whilst I have always greatly loved you, the singular affection of your brothers does not allow me to omit any

act of duty towards you. **739.** Paetus made a present to me of (as a matter of fact) all the books which his brother had left. Verres sends to ask for (what in fact was) the most beautiful plate which he had seen at his house. He said that he would not take judges by lot in accordance with Rupilius' law: he appointed five judges—just those which it suited him to give. **740 1.** Paetus made a present to me of all such books as his brother had left. He offers great rewards to such as should slay the king. In the meantime Caesar daily demanded from the Haedui the corn which (as Caesar described it) they had officially offered. **740 2.** Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstemious. Are you then not satisfied that I brought the army across in safety? that at the first onset as I came, I routed the enemy's fleet? that twice in two days I conquered in cavalry engagements? Caesar mentioned the favours he himself and the senate had bestowed on him, that he had received the title of king and that of friend from the senate, and that handsome presents had been sent him. The Romans were less stirred by those disasters because they saw that the consuls in the critical part of the war were up to that time managing successfully. Boxers groan when wielding the gloves, not that they are in pain or having any sinking in their courage, but because by the utterance of a cry the whole body is put on the stretch and the blow comes with greater force. To me those acts seem more praiseworthy which are done without vaunting, and away from the eyes of the people; not that the people should be avoided, for all good deeds wish to be placed in the light, but yet to virtue there is no theatre greater than conscience. My chief efforts in each instance are not to help my case, but to avoid hurting it, not but what both deserve one's exertions, but still it is more disgraceful for an orator to be thought to have injured his case than not to have helped it. **741.** Nor in truth can I understand why you are angry with me. If it is because I defend the man whom you attack, why am I not wroth with you, because you attack the man whom I defend? So it happens that they are present because their duty leads them, they are silent because they shun risk. They are indignant because you breathe, because you speak, because you have men's shapes. The villas at Tusculum and Pompeii greatly please me, only that they have involved me in debt. You, Quirites, seeing that it is now night, depart to your houses. Since then virtue is a disposition of the mind, making those people, who have it, praiseworthy, from it proceed right acts of will. The greatest service is done by those who are distinguished in warfare, since it is by their wisdom and at their risk that we are enabled to enjoy our privileges both as a state and as individuals. Since neither the authority of the senate nor my age has any weight with you, I appeal to the tribunes of the commons. Why should I not continually plead with you by means of verses from Homer, since you do not permit me to plead with you by means of your own? On which account I am the more harassed, not because I am in debt, as is true, to many, but because the claims of some who have deserved well of me often clash with one another. **742.** For having by Hannibal's permission gone out of the camp, he returned soon after on the plea of having forgotten something. Those who come from your part find fault with you for haughtiness in refusing, as they assert, to give an answer to inquiries. **743.** You write that if I wish you will come to me. *I* wish I were with *you*. As to Silius' wish that you should talk to Clodius, I consent to your doing so. This being so, whereas Gaius Pansa the consul has addressed us respecting the despatch which was brought from Q. Caepio, on that matter my recommendation is as follows. **744.** Soldier, I

give you notice, if I ever again find you in this square, however you may say to me "I was looking for someone else, my road lay in this direction," it is all over with you. As to your thinking that you are now freed from all fear for your reputation, that you have done with honours and are consul elect, believe me those distinctions and favours of the Roman people require no less trouble to keep than to get. **745.** If the war which the people has ordered to be waged with king Antiochus shall be completed in accordance with the feeling of the senate and people of Rome, then in thy honour, father Jove, will the people of Rome celebrate great games for ten successive days. **746** (*a*). The praetor vowed a temple to Jove, if he should succeed in routing the enemy that day. Metellus summons the magistrates to appear before him, utters terrible threats if they fail in restoring the statues. Jugurtha was afraid of the anger of the senate, if he did not obey the envoys. Nor could the danger of the enemy's recovering courage make them hasten their steps. The Hernici, moved by shame also, and not pity only, if they should neither oppose the common enemy nor bring aid to their allies who were besieged, march to Rome. Why was M. Brutus on your motion freed from (the penalties of) the laws if he should be away from the city more than ten days? **746** (*b*). Rubrius made a wager with Apronius whether Apronius had not frequently said that you were his partner in the tithes. Those who had served with him declared that Caeso was with them and constant with the standards without any leave of absence. If that were not so, many made Volscius the offer of a judge on their private account (i.e. offered to bet Volscius that it was so). **747.** I will go and see, if he is at home. I shall now go back (§ 597); I go to see if perchance my brother has come back. Strange if this fellow is not thinking of boning me like a lamprey. If it is not a miracle, pander, you have lost the woman outright. I am surprised if with such haughtiness and cruelty Tarquinius could ever have had a friend. **748.** He inquired again, if it were permitted to go to the war along with the Romans. The enemy were waiting in case our men should cross this marsh. The thing was tried whether Ardea could be taken at the first rush. He moves his camp to Gonnus in the hopes of making himself master of the town. **749.** How is he? does he remember me? Atticus, 'What was the talk? what was done?' Cicero, 'I will write to you when I know for certain.' **750.** What the talk was and what was done I will write and tell you when I know for certain. I have been carried about and don't know where I am. At present we are waiting to know two things, one, what Caesar is going to do, the other what Pompeius is doing. I am seeking here for a young man Lesbonicus, (to know) where in these parts he lives. They ask me frequently how I am, what I am doing, what business I am at. See how unfair your eagerness makes you. Look now how the defendant corrected it. What was the reason why you did not follow Caesar into Africa, especially as there was so much of the war still remaining? They are driven into the senate-house, uncertain how far Volĕro would carry his victory. They ordered the envoys to look out whether an attempt had been made by King Perseus on the minds of the allies. **751.** Tell me, where is she now, I beseech you. I should very much like someone to make this clear to me, where does this pander Ballio now live? I want to know, to whom did you give it back? Who am I then, pray, if I am not Sósia? I put the question to *you*. I ask you, judges, just because he is eloquent, ought I to be condemned? Look you, does his colour show anywhere a trace of shame? But do you know, what has come into my

mind? So then, help me Castor, he's fair: look, how his hair becomes him! Do you see, prythee, how they give a sidelong glance at us? **752.** Whether I rejoice, says he, or am pained that a lamentable war is being waged, is doubtful. Show me this that whether I am in pain or not makes no difference. There is only this difference, whether he came on that march to the city or returned from the city into Campania. In short he said everything was lost, and I almost think that is the case. **753.** Old men remember everything which they care about, appointments to appear in court, who is their debtor and creditor. Listen in brief (abl. § 503) and you will know what I wish of you and what you are seeking. What you desire, is for you to settle (§ 667): whatever you decide is your desire, you shall certainly have. **754.** I grant it: perhaps someone sometime may have done a thing of the kind. Why the advantages which perhaps we do not even feel, how important are they! What is there to prevent them from having power to establish a colony on the Janiculum? One (of the two things) cannot be said, viz., why those, who fear nothing, are not vexed, and have no desires, should not be happy. Nor did it escape Caesar that the victory began with the cohorts which were placed facing the cavalry in the fourth line. Orgetorix died: nor is there wanting a suspicion, as the Helvetii think, that he (resolved on death for himself, i.e.) put an end to his own life. **755.** Perhaps someone will call these small, for such they are. Perhaps, unfortunate one, you were then afraid of the winds and waves. See, Calidorus comes: he has someone or other with him. I by no means agree with those who greatly praise that unpainfulness, if I may call it so (*nescio quam*), which cannot and ought not to exist. Sharp sayings in numbers drawn from some hidden source or other will find a place. **756.** What then do you tell? What do I tell? Why by your aid affairs are now coming back as plainly as possible to a rope for me. Ah, Demea, I had not caught sight of you. What's doing? What's doing? I cannot be astonished enough at your mode of acting. **757.** Your father— What of my father? Your mistress— What of her? Has seen— Seen? woe's me wretched. I prythee by Poll, get up: my father has come here. Your father come? Bid him go away again. **760 1.** Now I seem to myself to have done some business in coming here. The wise man does not hesitate, if that should be the better course, to withdraw from life. I see that this, while I have wished to say it briefly, has been actually said somewhat obscurely. They deny that it is right for him to look at the light, who admits that a man has been slain by him. For I am not one to say that whatever is seen is such as it seems. Romulus is said to have been ordered by Amulius to be exposed along with his brother Remus as soon as he was born. **760 2.** If in the daytime also the dogs should bark, when people have come to pay their respects to the Gods, their legs, I imagine, would be broken for being on the alert even when there is no ground for suspicion. Hortensius possessed such a good memory as I think I have known in no one else, so that what he had thought over in his own mind he repeated, without a line on paper, in the same words which he had framed in thought. This is what I seem to see clearly that we are so framed by nature that all have fellowship with one another, but the greater fellowship in proportion to nearness. There were many who, though thinking that that was not the state of the case, still readily said what I have named about those orators. Whether I should be spending my labour profitably if I should succeed in writing the affairs of Rome from the first origin of the city, I am by no

means sure, nor, if I were, should I dare to say so. **761** 1. At the river Hypanis which flows from part of Europe into the Euxine, Aristotle says there are some insects born which live for one single day. The force of speech enables us both to learn the things of which we are ignorant, and to teach the things we know. Thinkest thou that you can make the wicked acts of Verres appear to those who will hear of them as cruel and unworthy as they appeared to those who felt them? May I be permitted so to place the commonwealth in safety that I may, when dying, bear with me the hope that the foundations of the commonwealth which I shall have laid will remain in their own impress. It is right that you also should actively perform your duties in whatever position each shall be placed and whatever order shall be given him. **761** 2. If death had been an object of fear, L. Brutus would not have fallen in battle while preventing the return of the despot whom he had himself driven out. If these things had been contrary to what I say, still, &c. I would give this piece of advice to all defendants. This much is at once seen to, that whatever plate there was among that man's effects should be carried off to the defendant. The speaker must slyly use just so much imitation that his hearer may imagine more than he sees. Lest you should say no indulgence has been allowed you, says Papirius, I allow you not to stroke the back (of your horse) when you get down from your horses. How few philosophers are found with conduct such as their system demands. There is no slave who does not contribute as much goodwill, as he dares and can, to our safety. **765** (*b*). They were constantly writing that just as certain beasts are never tamed by any skill, so man's disposition could neither be tamed nor appeased. We remind them that we are their fellow-citizens, and, if we have not the same means, yet we inhabit the same country. I declared that I would endure anything whatever rather than leave Italy for a civil war. **765** (*c*). Stranger, tell Sparta that you saw us lying here in obedience to the hallowed laws of our country. **778.** Caesar was informed by scouts that from the part of the village which he had left to the Gauls all had departed by night. Meanwhile word is brought to Caesar, that the people of Sulmo, a town about 7 miles from Corfinium, desire to do what he wished, but are prevented by Q. Lucretius a Senator and Attius a Paelignian, who held the town with a garrison of 7 cohorts. Why, Diogenes the Cynic was wont to say, that Harpalus, who in those times was reputed a lucky brigand, was a witness against the (existence of) gods, in that he lived so long in luck like that. **779.** C. Marius had been told by an haruspex that great and marvellous things were indicated for him: wherefore he should trust the gods and do what he had in mind. He exhorts them to bring a like temper to the easy matters which remained. **781.** Why am I undertaking your part? Why is M. Tullius demanding the memorials of P. Africanus, while P. Scipio is defending the man who removed them? The foreign spoil is placed before the gods of their fatherland. **782.** The Consul brought (the question) of war before the people. Without any fear and with the highest honour (uprightness) shall we live. These duties relate to power over the things which men use, to means, to supplies. **783.** He sends five cohorts into the nearest crops to get corn: between the crops and the camp there was only one hill. This fluent gentleman does not understand that he is praising the man he speaks against and abusing those he is addressing. He only struck the bird down from high heaven. Treaties of the kings made for equal rights with the Gabii and with the hard Sabines. **784** (*b*). A civil war is swayed for the most part by opinion and report,

Many however like Gnathos are superior in position, in fortune, in reputation. **784** (*c*). To no one's spirit or good-will or endurance in your cause will I yield. Not even by these tribunes was anything noticeable done at Velitrae. **785.** At the commencement they are wrong in checking meditation on the future. My quaestor Balbus, having collected from public levies a great quantity of coin, a great weight of gold and still greater weight of silver, on the first of June crossed into the kingdom of Bogudes, with quite a nice little property. Bellienus a house slave of Demetrius, having received money from the opposite party, arrested and strangled a certain Domitius, a nobleman there and a guest-friend of Caesar. **787.** Friendship allows no plan of spending life into which she does not enter. The force of this reasoning we have learnt from the divine book of Epicurus on the text and criterion. **788.** This is the man we are seeking. This being so, I speak as follows. What were brought to Rome we see near the temple of Honour and Virtue. **789.** What kind of things those are, we shall more easily understand, when we come to the actual classification of jokes. These points, Erucius, so many, so important, if you had them to urge in the case of a defendant, how long a speech would you have made? Thou subduest the conquered Powers of the sea and him who rules the Powers. **790.** Now the strong men had lost their strength, the sword its strong edge, the leaders their plans. Or think you that, at the time when the great Hippocrates of Cos lived, there were some doctors who prescribed for diseases, some who prescribed for wounds, others for the eyes? In fact eloquence is one and the same: for whether it speaks of the origin of the heaven or of the earth, of the divine or human power, whether it speaks from a lower place or on a level or from a higher, whether to urge men on or to instruct them or to deter them, speech is spread by channels not by springs (i.e. a stream which has many channels but only one source). Thou wast the same mid peace and war. **791** 1. It is from evils that death leads us away, not from goods. I gave the man permission, though the request was impudent. We shall follow then, at this time and on this subject, principally the Stoics. **791** 2. Four days' discourse we have sent you written in full in the former books. Who have experienced the risks and change of fortune. Marcellus' fight at Nola was the first thing that raised the spirits of the Roman people. **791** 3. Q. Fabius was old and I was young, yet I loved him as if he were my own age. What of your putting yourself in prison? **791** 4. Our principles agree: the fight is one of language. Together with the hope of conquest you have thrown away also the desire of fighting. Postumius was more distinguished among the Romans by his surrender than Pontius among the Sabines by his bloodless victory. One gives way, another is cut down. **791** 5. Like these are all who pursue virtue; they are relieved of vices, relieved of errors. So that we ought to judge that it was not for nothing that men of so great valour dared to cross a very broad river, to climb very high rocks, to come up to a most unfavourable position. **792** 1. He had old quarrels with the Roscii of Ameria. They were frightened also by the last year which had been one of mourning from the deaths of the two consuls. The high spirit of the youth was stirred perhaps by anger, perhaps by shame of shirking a contest, perhaps by the irresistible force of destiny. **792** 2. See what a difference there is between your lust and the authority of our ancestors, between your love and madness and their policy and forethought. Add to this the icy everflowings of the springs, the transparent waters of the rivers, the clothing of the banks greenest of the green, the hollow

vastness of the caves, the roughnesses of the rocks, the heights of the overhanging mountains and the unmeasured expanse of the plains: add also the hidden veins of gold and silver, and the unlimited mass of marble. **794** 1. When the forces of the enemy are at no great distance, even if no attack is made, yet the cattle are abandoned, farming is given up. He however who will act as he ought should first choose with his eyes open whom to imitate, then most carefully practise the qualities which are of chief excellence in the person whom he has made his standard. When however I shall have disclosed what the real question is, it will be easy to decide what you should give as your opinion. **794** 2. As for the Stoics you are not unaware how fine or rather how prickly their line of argument is. **860.** Yet a philosopher may be defined as one (yet there is a definition of the philosopher namely that he should be so called) who exerts himself to know the meaning, the nature and causes of all things, divine as well as human, and to grasp and carry out in practice the whole method of right living. Their anger began to soften, and even the haggard looks of Pleminius and the memory of the absent Scipio were gaining him favour in the eyes of the common people. The senate and people of Rome. To have right and power. **861.** It is an anxiety to me. Yes and to me also. From heaven? Yes and in fact from the very middle of it. I too have my own destiny opposed to that. **862.** The enemy proved unable to bear the charge of our soldiers and turned their backs. **863.** Both senders and sent were delighted at the expedition. All both ambassadors and tribunes. All, both those at Rome and those in the army. **866.** All hate you, gods and men, from the highest to the lowest, citizens and foreigners, men and women, free and slave. God the best and greatest. In the consulship of Gnaeus Pompeius and Marcus Crassus. Would you be pleased to order, Quirites? **867.** Arguing on either side in Greek as well as in Latin. I understand that you are completely occupied, on the one hand with the Buthrotians, on the other hand with Brutus. **868.** If Cato's decision was right, the cornmerchant we mentioned was wrong and the vendor of the infected house was wrong in not disclosing the fact. For it (nature) has nothing more excellent, nothing which it more aims at than uprightness, praise, dignity, honour. **869.** In the first place Apollo never spoke Latin, in the next place the Greeks never heard of that oracle: besides in Pyrrhus' time, Apollo had ceased to make verses: lastly he (Pyrrhus) would have been able to understand the ambiguity of the line. **871** 1. But now let us return to the point whence we digressed. But, says he, we are (but) three hundred: and he replied, Yes three hundred, but we're men, we're armed, we're at Thermopylae. The good qualities which we sometimes miss in M. Cato are all products of training, not gifts of nature. *They* will deserve their fate, be it what it may: there remains the consideration what sentence, conscript fathers, you should pronounce on others. **871** 2. Now let us deal with the real question, and that question is whether we are to live as freemen or to meet death. We know that according to our customs music is not an accomplishment for a statesman and dancing is even reckoned a disgrace. Did any witness name Postumus? Did I say witness? did the prosecutor himself name him? **871** 3. But if those our deliverers have taken themselves from our sight, still they have left us the memory of their deed. The desire of all these is assailed by his mother only. But what kind of mother is she? On these things being accomplished messengers report everything in haste to the consul, who was filled with anxiety mixed with joy. **871** 4. Now if virtues are equal to one another,

vices also must be so; but, that virtues are equal, may be very easily perceived. **871** 5. Despots are courted but hypocritically and only for a time: but if, as generally happens, they chance to fall, then is seen how much they lacked friends. **871** 6. I do not see how Hercules 'came into his father's eternal home', whilst Homer makes Ulysses meet him in the realm below. However I should like to know which Hercules it is we ought chiefly to worship. Well, Crassus, says Julius, are we to have a sitting? though we have come to suggest it to you, not demand it. **872.** Wherefore we must act by force or else by stealth. After the death or rather the departure of Romulus. That which moves of itself can neither be born nor die: or else the whole heaven must collapse and all nature stand still. What could be a more frenzied act than this departure, or rather most disgraceful flight, from the city? **873.** Every proposition is either true or false. Mind you deliver her to me, either by force or stealth or entreaty. Take me either as your general or your fellow soldier. Our bodies change; and we shall not be to-morrow what we were or are. Noblemen, whether they take to acting rightly or wrongly, are distinguished in either case. **874.** Halloo, a few words with you. Three hundred if you like. I receive but few letters from you, but they are very charming. Your last for instance was a model of wisdom. **877** (*a*). No, no, it will not be so; it cannot. The Thebans were not at all moved, although they were inclined to be somewhat angry with the Romans. These goods in no case fell in to the public books (i.e. were not confiscated). **877** (*b*). The next day Curio leads forth his soldiers and puts them in line. Neither does Varus hesitate to lead forth his troops. You think pleasure to be the highest good: I think it is not even a good at all. **877** (*c*). A law was proposed that the auspices should have no force, no one should report unfavourable auspices, no one should put a veto on the law; that Aelius' Act and Fufius' Act should have no force. **877** (*d*). That I should conceal what has been brought to me and is to my knowledge others' property? our friend Daemones (i.e. I) will least of all do that. I however have always thought him scarcely sane. **878.** I recommended peace to the senate, and, when arms were taken up, I had nothing to do with the war. I suffer it, judges, and I bear it with no reluctance. As if the point now were who in all that number killed him, and the question were not rather this, whether &c. **879.** Without delay they cross the Ebro, and without seeing an enemy they continue their march to Saguntum. **880.** It will not be by influence or kinship or some good deeds, no not by some slight fault that relief will be thought to have been found for faults so many and so great. The righteous man firm of purpose is not shaken from his steady mind by the passion of his fellow citizens decreeing injustice, nor by the look of a despot standing over him, nor by the south wind nor the mighty hand of thundering Jove. **881.** Virtue can neither be forced nor stolen from one, it is neither lost by shipwreck nor by fire, nor changed by the disturbance of weather or events. I beg you not to expect this from me either in the case of this accusation (accused) or any other. Obscenity (is) not only not fit for the forum, but scarcely for a dinnerparty of gentlemen. At Rome reigns a stranger of no neighbour stock, not even of an Italian stock. **882.** A road was open before him certain and not long. The berry clothed with the vineleaves wants not gentle heat and keeps off excessive glow of the sun. Nor kept they their indignant feelings at home but gathered from all parts to the king of the Sabines. **883.** Nor did he fail to see this, but he was pleased with the splendour and glory of words. Nor did the Tyrians also fail to come in numbers. **884.** (He said) that he too

had been dictator at Rome, and that he had used force to no one, not even to a commoner, not to a centurion, not to a soldier. There was never any one either poet or orator, who thought any one better than himself. I cannot wonder or guess enough. **886.** What of this? Do you grant that souls either remain after death or perish by death itself? I do. What? Is not a dog like a wolf? Are we then in fault? Not we indeed. I said to him, Are you studying? He answered, Yes. Hither went off Clitipho. Alone? Alone. Has it (the day) already passed? No. Is then the cause not a good one? Nay, it is the best possible. **887.** Are you ignorant, how high you have ascended, or do you count that for nothing? Did you desert Domitius or did Domitius desert you? Whether will you that it was allowable for Flaccus the father or that it was not? Shall I say it or keep silence? **888.** But I have something I should like to say in reply to this, if it is not troubling you. Do you then think that I should have said this (cf. 628), if I had not wished to hear you? Now when did that force expire? Was it not after men became less credulous? **889.** Do you then think that a god is like me or you? Of course you do not think so. What then? Am I to say that the sun or the moon or the sky is god? **890.** In two years from now you as consul will overturn this city. You show that you could no more have been turned by favour than Hercules in Xenophon was by pleasure. This I think is the man demanded by the fates. Man has memory, and that unlimited, of innumerable things. In one, and that an easy battle, the enemy were struck down near Antium. I found him to be an educated man, given up to the best studies, and that from his boyhood. Publius Scipio did not indeed speak much or often, but in Latin style he was a match for any one. **892.** The city of Athens is so ancient that it is said to have given birth to its citizens itself. Nor indeed did he show what he thought himself, but what was said by them. **893** (*a*). I need no medicine: I am my own comforter. There are persons who say that Tarpeia, being thought to be acting falsely, was herself killed with her own wages. **893** (*b*). He of a sudden from being alert and cheerful became so humble and downcast, that he seemed, not merely to the Roman people but to himself, a condemned man. These we see delighted, if ever they have found out anything by their own wits. War, peace, treaties, alliances he made and broke of himself, with whom he chose, without the orders of the people and senate. **894.** Hannibal was expelled from the city by his own fellow citizens. Destroy Fidenae with its own flames. Neither be wanting, if an opportunity occurs to yourself, nor allow an opportunity to occur to the enemy. You acknowledge God from his works. **895** (*a*). Hannibal thought Scipio to be a man of excellence from the very fact that he above others was selected to oppose him. Domitius sends to Pompeius in Apulia some men acquainted with the country to beg and pray him to come to his succour. **895** (*b*). I am invited by Caesar in very complimentary terms to be his legate. Caesar reproached his soldiers. Why (he asked) did they despair either of their own valour or of his care? **896.** It is more honourable to be moved by others' wrongs than by one's own. **897** (*a*). If a man have composed scandalous verse against one, there is law and judgment to be had. If there is no mark of distinction, why should we listen to your interpreters? but, if there is one, I am eager to know what it is. I used to practise declaiming often with M. Piso and with Q. Pompeius or with some one every day. There runs up a certain fellow known to me by name only. This much at least I see, since one or other of the two must be victorious, what kind of victory either this or that will be.

**897** (*b*). These men had the same object that kings have, to need nothing, to obey no one, to enjoy freedom. I saw that the day would come when, not Torquatus or any one like Torquatus, but some fellow who had made shipwreck of his patrimony, a foe to good men, would say that the information given was different. **898.** That man (the defendant) never did anything without some profit and booty. As long as there shall be any one who dares to defend you, you shall live. I read aloud to no one except friends, and that when I am compelled, not everywhere and before everybody. What may happen to any one at all, may happen to any and everybody. As an actor is not allowed *any* but only certain action, and a dancer only certain movement, so action in life should be of a certain kind, not of any, just as one likes. But I have less strength than either of you. **899.** It requires a great judge to decide what each should do for each. She cannot be taken away because each is dear to the other (to each). Each acting for himself, according as each had influence, proceeded to address the people. He shows what corn and ships he has in each place. Who fears the contrary to these as a rule over-esteems them, in the same way as he who craves: the excitement is troublesome in either case. Of the remaining philosophers do not the best and wisest admit that they are ignorant of many things? Beauty is the god's gift. Of beauty how few can boast? I propose that Gaius Pansa, Aulus Hirtius the consuls, one or both if they shall think fit, bring a motion before the senate on the first possible day for conferring honour and reward upon him. Daughters left in widowhood with one son each. We have hardly got a foe, if only every other one of us fights. **900.** About Drusus' garden, I also had heard the same price (bidding at a sale) which you write, but what one is necessary is well purchased, whatever the price. Rather take ye away this life by any death whatever. What can be remedied in any way whatever I will remedy. If the wills of the gods are something, if everything has not perished with me, sometime or other you shall give me satisfaction. Unless he screws out the interest or principal from somewhere or other, he listens to bitter stories like a captive with outstretched throat. **901.** Please send M. Varro's and Ollius' panegyric, Ollius' at all events, for Varro's I have read, only I wish to taste it again. The philosopher's aim in life is not to accomplish anyhow what he attempts, but in all cases to act rightly: a pilot's aim is to get his vessel anyhow into port. **902.** Many other women desire the same as you. I at any rate am the same I always was. Do you think that I am a different person from what I was when I offered? Some beasts she (nature) willed to swim and dwell in the waters, others to fly and enjoy free heaven, some to be crawlers, some to be steppers: of these again part (she made) solitary wanderers, part herding in numbers, others wild, some again tame, and a few hidden and buried in the earth. They both feel and judge on the same subjects differently at different times. The two forces cause dread to one another. Suddenly fear is changed to joy: the soldiers in delight address one another by name. To the number of the centuries Tarquin added as many again. One or two patches are sewn on. In the twenty-second day he delivered the letter. A sight pleasant to Crassus only, to others not so. A few flying back reported that all the rest of the mass were in the power of the enemies. **903.** Who was it then? Your Chaerea. What Chaerea? That youth, the brother of Phaedria. Is any one in the house? Hey, is any one here? Is any one opening this door? Is any one coming out? You ought now to investigate one thing only, which of the two laid a plot for the other. **904.** Prithee make haste to come to us. It remains for me to say a few words timidly

about the good fortune of Pompeius. For this is my opinion. **905.** I praise your brother in other matters: in this one point only I am compelled to blame him. Ask your parents. You have regained for me my father's affections. **906.** You fought in a favourable position, and your own time. Alfenus had indeed the people devoted to him. **908** (*c*). Hands wash each other. Man chooses man (i. e. each chooses a fellow). Day teaches day (i. e. we grow wiser with time). Atticus when dying seemed to be passing not from life but from one home to another. The darkness was so thick that for two days no human being recognised another. **908** (*d*). All which things tend to this, that we should love one another more warmly. **908** (*e*). The alliance between the people of Carthage and the king is strengthened by plighting troth to one another.

# INDEX.

The numbers refer to the sections, unless *p* for *page* be prefixed to the number.


A *usual mark of feminine* 82; *some masculine stems* 105; *noun-stems* 102; *Greek nouns* 149—152; *verb stems, formation* 397; *inflexions* 244 *foll.*
a, *quantity of final* 54; *change of, in root* 34
a, ab, abs 799; *with abl. of agent* 568; *rare after gerundive* 476; *with names of places* 510; *in expressions of distance* 510
a *or* ah *in exclamations* 416; cf. 608. 2 *b*
abavus 919
*abbreviations* 961
abesse *inflexions* 251; tantum abest ut... ut 712 *b*; paulum abest quin 712 *b*; *in expressions of distance* 459
abies 143: abiete 44
*ablative, early in* d 103, 115; *in* -abus 104; *in* -ubus 120; *of* i-*stems and consonant stems* 124; *use contrasted with accus.* 453; *general use* 483 *foll.*; *of gerund* 549; *of verbal stems in* -tu (*supine*) 497, 554; *absolute* 504; *forming adverbs of place* 212; *of order* 213 (3)
*expressing agent with* ab 568, 799; *amount* 494; *amount of difference* 496; *cause* 501; *circumstances* 504 *foll.*; *comparison, standard of* 513; *cost* 495; *deprivation* 498; *description* 502; *instrument* 499; *manner* 503; *means* 489, 499; *measure* 496; *origin* 512; *part concerned* 497; *penalty* 495; *place at which* 485 *foll.*; *place from which* 509; *price* 495; *road by which* 490; *separation* 511; *time when* 491; *time in course of which* 492; *time throughout which* 493; *tribe* 512, 961(2)
*after* ab 799, 510; *compounds of* ab 511; abundare 498; alius 513; ante 496; captus 497; censeri 501; circumducere 498; damnari 495; dignus 495; dives 498; ex 817; facere 499; fruor 500; fungor 500; in 820; intercludere 511; interdicere 498; interesse 519; invitare 489; macte 669 *b*; natus 512; nudus 498; nitor 500; opus est 500, 507; ortus 512; post 496; potiri 500; refert 519; stare '*cost*' 495; sub 350; super 352; vendere 495; usus est 500, 507; uti 500
abolere *p.* 144
abscondere *p.* 138 *s. v.* do
absolvere *with gen. of crime* 527
absque 800; *in conditional clause* 650 *a.*
abstinere *regular construction* 511; irarum 530
*abstract nouns defined* 421 *b*; *plural of* 99 *d*; *use of concrete for* 560
abundare *with abl.* 498
abunde 217, 2
-abundo- *stems so formed* 365; *with accus.* 558
-abus *in dat. abl. plur.* 104
ac, atque 219; *general use* 851 *foll.*; *in comparisons* 661; ac si 660
*acatalectic verse p.* 923
accedit quod 713; ut 712 *b*
*accent* 70; *led to omission of syllables* 76
*accentuation, rules of* 71 *foll.*
acceptilatio 406 *c*
accersere *p* 135 *s. v.* arcesso
accidit quod 713
*accompaniment*, cum (*prep.*) *with abl.* 809
accusare aliquem furti, &c. 527
*accusative of* i-*stems sing. in* -im, 124, 134 (2), *plur. in* -is, -es *or* -eis 125; *of Greek nouns Class* I. 150, 153; *Class* II. 159 *foll.*, 163, 170, &c.; *used as adv.* 224, 461
*general use of* 437, 458; *contrasted with other uses* 453, 454; *of gerund how used* 547; *of gerundive, special use* 552; *of verbal stems in* -tu 553
*with infin.* 535, 542; *as oblique pred. of unexpressed subject of infin.* 537 *c*
*adverbial accus.* 458 A; *cognate* 461 *b*; *double* 470; *in exclamations* 472; *factitive* cf. 434
*expressing action as goal of motion* 466; *compass* 459, 461; *description* 462; *distance* 459; *extent of action* 461; *object direct of transitive verb* 468; (*double*) 470; *of passive verb* 471, 470; cf. 570; *of verbs originally intrans.* 469; *verbal noun-stems in* -tion *p.* 224 *note*; *part concerned* 462; *place towards which* 464, 465; *space over which* 459; *time throughout which* 460; *with prepositions* 463, 467, 796
*after* abdere 464; abesse 459; adigere 467; altus 459; -bundo-, *stems in* 558; cavere 468; celare 470; censeri 501; convenire 469; docere 470; ecce, en 472; erubescere 469; frui, fungi, &c. 500; indictus 464; indutus 471; juvare 461; meminisse 529; natus 460; oblivisci 529; proprior, proxime, &c. 463; quo (mihi) 583, cf. 472; reminisci 529; rogare 470; saltare 469; saucius 462; sollicitus 462; traducere, traicere 463; vivere 461 *b*; cf. 462
-aceo, *stems in* 389
acer *declined* 128
Acheron, Acheruns 168
Achilles 163, 160
-aci *stems in* 127, 356

acies 106; acie 503, 2
acroama 91
*action as object to a verb* 533, 534; *as goal of motion* 466, 553
actus, *measure of length* 913
actutum 224
a. d. 917, 918
ad *general use* 801; *with place towards which* 465; *with gerund* 547; *assimilated* 801
adeo 213 (4); *in climax* 689
adequitare *with dat.* 475
adfatim, *see* affatim
adi 276
adigere 467
*adjectives defined* 422; *gender* 87—89; *inflexions* a- *and* o-*stems* 118; u-*stems* 122; i-*stems* 124—128; *consonant-stems* 139, 141; *old classification* 85; *form large part of* i-*stems* 132; *comparison of* 173 *foll.*; *numeral* 178 *foll.*: *pronominal* 119, 194 *foll.*; *tabular arrangement* 234
*general use* 427, 430, 441—452; *used as substantives* 444, 447; *as adverbs* 452; *with dependent accus.* 462; *dative* 474 *c*, 476: *ablative* 497; *genitive* 525—530; *infinitive* 540 (2); *used specially with agreeing accus.* 461 *b*; *ablat.* 502—504; *genitive* 524; *in partitive expressions* 520, 521; *with numerals* 801; *position in sentence* 785—787
admodum 801
admonere *with accus. and gen.* 529; *with* de *and abl* 529 fin.
adnepos 919
adolere *p.* 144 *s. v.* oleo
adonius versus 926, 4
*adverbs defined* 423; *classification of* 211 *foll.*; *of manner in* -o 213; *in* -e 216; *in* -ter 229; *in* -tim 227; *of place* 236; *'to which'* 213 (4); *'at which'* 221 (3), 222, 226; *'from which'* 231, 226; *of time* 215, 223, 224 *esp.* 237; *numeral* 178, 233; *pronominal tabular arrangements* 235—237: *use of* 438: *quasi-prepositional* 795; *with abl. of comparison* 513 *b*
*adversative conjunctions* 870, 871
adversum, adversus, *use of* 802: advorsum veniri 491; adversus (*adj.*) = *front of* 521
ae *becomes* i *in compounds* 34
Aeacida, Aeacide 150
Aedes 101
aeque ac si 660; aequius erat 643 *c*; aequo animo 503
aer 172
aera 99
aestate 491
aetatem *'for a life-time'* 406; istuc aetatis 460
affatim 227; *with gen.* 522
*agent expressed by abl. with ab* 799; *after gerundive by dat.* 476
agere furti 527
aggredior, *p.* 140, *s. v.* gradior
agmine 503
agnatus 921
ai *for gen. &c. of* a *stems* 103
ai *followed by a vowel, how pronounced* 17
aio, *defective verb p.* 135; *opposed to* nego 651 *a*: ain 885
*alcaic stanza* 938 B; *enneasyllabic* 933, 30; *decasyllabic* 929, 12; *hendecasyllabic* 436
*alcmanic stanza* 938 K
*Alcmena, &c.* 152 *c*
ali, *noun-stems in* 380, 138
alibi 198, 222
alioqui 221
aliquam (*adv.*) 223
aliquando 223; 237
aliquis, aliqui 208; aliquae 208; *use of* 897; dicet, dixerit aliquis 647, 1
alis *for* alius 198
alius *declined* 197; aliae 198; alii modi 198; *with abl. dependent* 513; *use of* 902; nihil aliud quam 583
*allegoria* 946
alter *inflexions* 195; *use of* 902; alteruter 195; *use* 897
alterni 899
*although expressed by* etiamsi 650 *c*; etsi 651 *c*; quamvis, &c. 676 *b*: 677 *d*; quamquam 711; licet, licebit 677 *c*; ut *with subj.* 714 *d*; *with indic.* 715 *c*: cum 732 *with subj.*; cum praesertim 734; quom *with ind.* 733; *relative adj.* 718
altrinsecus 226
alveo, alveatia 39
amare *inflexions* 245 *foll.*; amans *declined* 127; *as subst.* 561 *b*; amasti, &c. 306
amb-, am-, *compounds of* 803
ambages 140
ambire 265
ambo *inflexions* 182; ambabus 104
*amphibolia* 939
amphora 160; *contents* 915
amplecti, *p.* 146, *s. v.* plecto 567, 1
an, *in direct questions* 887; *in apparently simple questions* 888; *in dependent questions* 752
*anacoluthon* 939
*Anacreontic verse* 933, 32
*anacrusis* 936
*Anapaestic verse* 932, 938, V; *anapaesto-iambic* 934
*anaphora* 791, 5; 946
*anastrophe* 939
Ancon 171
Androgeos 155
-aneo- *noun-stems in* 389
angiportus 121
anguimanus 122
animalis *declined* 128
animi *loc.* 485; cf. 526
-ano- *noun-stems in* 368
*answers how expressed* 886; *made in words coordinate to part of question* 439 *c*
ante 217; *general use* 804; decem annis ante 496; ante diem (a. d.) 917
antea, antehac 212
*antecedent* 450
antequam *with subj* 698; *with ind.* 699, *pres.* 598, *perf.* 608 *c*
antid 19; *see* ante
antiquus 355 (*p.* 60); *comp. and superl.* 176. 3; antiquitus 231
*antithesis* 946

*antonomasia* 946
anxius animi 526
anxur 96
*aorist i.e. historical perfect* 587, 590, 608
aperire *p.* 145 *s. v.* perio
*aphaeresis* 939
*apocope* 939
*apodosis* 626, 638, 939; *expressed by epithet* 642; *not distinctly conceived* 658; *omitted* 660, 662
Apollo 171
*aposiopesis* 946
*apostrophe* 947
*appellatives*, 421 *b*
appellatur imperator 433 *a*; appellari 435
appellere 563
*apposition* 430 *a*; *often same as secondary predicate* 433 *b and note*; *position in sentence* 785; *apposition in English, sometimes expressed in Latin by gen.* 323 *a*
aptus *p.* 135 *s. v.* apiscor; *with inf.* 540, 2
apud 228; *general use* 805
arbitratu hujus 504
arcessere *p.* 135
*archaism* 940
archilochius *major* 929; *minor* 927, 5; *stanzas* 938 L—O
arcus *declension* 120, 121
arduos 111
Argo 159
Argos 96
argutus *p.* 135 *s. v.* arguo
-ari- *noun-stems in* 386, 138
aries 143; arjetat, &c. 44
-ario- *noun-stems in* 394; *numerals* 180
*Aristophanic verse* 929, 13
*arsis defined p.* 18 *note*
artus (*adj.*) 21; *p.* 135 *s. v.* arceo
as *unit of value* 189 *c*
-as *old gen. of a stems* 103
-as *quantity of* 56
Asclepiadeus *major* 930, 20; *minor* 930, 19; *stanzas* 938 E, F, G
aspici nobis 476
-assere *infin.* 291
assiduo 506
*assimilation of consonants* 22—27
assuefacere *cf.* 413; *with infin.* 534 *b*
ast 871, 2
-aster *suffix* 383
*asyndeton* 940
at *general use* 871, 3; at enim, &c. *in statement of objection* 677 *b*
ater *declined* 118
Athos *declined* 153, 155
-ato- *noun-stems in* 359
atque, *see* ac
atqui 871, 4
Atreus *declined* 158
Atrides *declined* 149
attagen 171
attat 416
*attendant circumstances denoted by secondary predicate* 433 *b*, 557; *specially abl. absolute* 504; *by* cum *with subj.* 634, 716, 722
*attraction of pronoun into gender and number of predicate* 451; *of finite verb into infin.* 765 *b*; mire quam *for* mirum quam 685 *b*
*to attraction are sometimes referred the constructions in* 577 *b*, 701; *the dative* Menaechmo *in* 441 *b*; *and the predicate if dative, in* 537 *c*: *see also* 940
*attribute, general description of* 428 *b*, 430, 441 *foll.*, *position of in sentence*, 785—787; *oblique cases and adverbs as attributes* 438
auceps 146; *derivation* 412
auctor sum *with inf. object clause* 535
audax *declined* 127
audere *p.* 136, *with infin.* 534
audire *inflexions* 252 *foll.*: audieram, audisti 306; ex eo cum diceret 726; auditur abisse 536; dicto audiens esse 561; audire male 564; audis callidus 441; auditum est alicui 476
ave *p.* 136
aversus (*adj.*) '*back of*' 521
auferre *p.* 139; aliquid alicui 474 *b*
augur 145; augurato 506
avidus *with gen.* 525 *a*
ausim 291
auspex 412, 146: auspice Teucro 504
aut *general use* 872; aut...aut 873
autem *general use* 870, 871, 2; *position in sentence* 793
auxilium, auxilia *distinguished* 101; auxilio mittere, &c. 482 *c*

B *pronounced* 3, 4; *written for* v. 10
-ba *suffix of imperfect tense* 285
babae 416
Bacchius 922; *Bacchiac verse* 935
balneum, balneae 117, 100 *f*
*barbarism* 940
*base in metre* 930
basis *inflexions* 165
belli *locative* 485; Latino bello 491
bellus 377
bene 217; mihi 440
benevolus 415; *comp. and superl.* 175
benignus 367, 415
-ber, -bri- *noun-stems in* 138, 385; -bero-, -bro- 382
bes *or* bessis 189, 3 *and note*; usurae besses 911
bi- *compounds of* 409 *a*
-bi *as suffix* 222
bibere *p.* 136; *derivation* 342, 2
biceps 38
bifariam 223
bifidus 415
-bili- *verbal noun-suffix* 379; *with dependent dat.* 476
binus *use of* 188; *derivation* 366
bis 230
bitere *p.* 136
blandus 365
bonus *declined, fem.* 102; *masc. and neut.* 108; *comp. and superl.* 175; bona fide 503, 1; bona venia 666
bos *declined* 122; bovem *monosyllabic* 43
*brachylogia* 940
-bri-, -bro- *suffixes* 385, 382
-bruma 43
bubile 381
-bulo- *noun-stems in* 376

-bundo- *verbal adjectives* 365; *with object in acc.* 558
buris 134, 2, γ
buxus, buxum 94, 113

C *sound of* 2, 4; *written for* q 42
cadere *p.* 136: causa 511
caedere *p.* 136
caelum 117
caestus 121
*caesura* 924; *in hexameters* 926, 1; *prosodiacal effects* 65, 68
Calchas 168
caldus 39
calendae 100 *e*; 917
calfacere 413
calx *declined* 127
canere *and compound verbs p.* 136; *noun-stems compounded of* 414, 415; cf. 91
canis 141; *why it retains* i 45
capere *inflexions* 252 *foll.*; capsis, &c. 291, 3; *verbal compounds p.* 136; *noun compounds* 412, 415; *declined* 129, 146
capessere 316, *p.* 136
captus auribus, &c. 497
caput *declined p.* 44; capite damnari 495; capitis minor, 526; capitis accusare &c. *cf.* 527
carbasus, carbasa 113, 117
*cardinal numbers* 178; *gen. pl. in* -um 185, 115
carere *p.* 136; *with abl.* (circensibus) 493
carnifex 146
caro, carnis 144
carptim 227
*Cases, number and general forms of* 81, 83, 84; *words defective in* 117; *general use of* 429, 437, 438; 453, 454
casses, 100 *f*; 134. 2 γ
castra 100 *f*
*catachresis* 947
cavere *perf.* 310; *supine* 324, 47; cave, *quantity* 55 *b*; *with acc.* 468; cave malo 511; *with perf. inf.* 541 *b*; cave facias 631, 3; 672
causa cadere 511; mea causa 504; quid est causae cur 750: quin 754
-ce 199, 218; *effect on accent* 72, cf. 76
cedere *with abl.* 511; *with dat.* 672
cedo, cette *p.* 136
celare *with double acc.* 470
celer 140
celsus *p.* 136
cenatus 340
censere *with gerundive* 585; *with subj.* 631, 3; 645 *b*; censuerim 644 *b*; censeri *with abl.* 501
Ceos *declined* 155
Ceres 147, 2
cernere *p.* 137
cerritus 359
certior fieri *with inf. object clause* 535; alicujus rei 529
certum est *parenthetical* 673
ceteri *general use of* 902; ceterum 871; ceteroqui 221
cette, *see* cedo
ceu 218; *with subj.* 660
chaos 164
chelys 161
*chiasmus* 791, 4; 947
chlamys 169
*choriamb* 922, 924, 2
Chremes 168
cieo, cio *and compounds p.* 137
-cina- *suffix to verbs* 400; -cinio- *suffix to nouns* 393
cincinnus 342, 1
cingor 566
cinis 147 (2)
circa 212; circum 224; circiter 229(3); *use distinguished* 806; circa *quasi-adjectival use* 438 *b*
Circe *or* Circa *declined* 149
circumdicere *with abl.* 498
*circumflex accent* 71, 74
cis 230; *use of* 807
citerior, citimus 175; citra 212; citro 213; *use of* 807
cito, citius *with hypothetical subj.* 644 *b*; *with ind.* 645 *b*; citius quam *with subj.* 700; *with indic.* 699 *b*
civitas *declined* 129, 143
clam 223; *use of* 808
clamore 503, 2
*clan names* 390
clanculum 224; *cf.* 376; *use of* 808
Claudius 390; Claudi 112
clepere *p.* 137
climax 947
cluere *p.* 137
Cn. 961
-co *suffix to noun-stems* 354
co- for com, cum 809
codicilli 101
coepi &c. *p.* 137; caeptus sum *with pass. infin. ib.*
*cognate acc.* 461 *b*
cognatus 921
cogo *p.* 135
cohors, cors 43, 50; *has* i *stem* 140
colere *p.* 137
*collections of persons* 100 *c*; *of things* 100 *f*
*collective nouns with plural verb* 577
colus 120, 121
comburere *p.* 151 *s. v.* uro
comedo *p.* 107; comedim 280; comestum *p.* 138 (*s. v.* edo)
comes 145
comitium, comitia *distinguished* 101
*command expressed by imperative* 669; *subjunctive* 614, 2; 668 *foll.*; *in reported speech* 768
comminisci 340
comminus 230
committere ut 682 *a*
commodum 224; commodum est (*impers.*) 621, 677 *d*; tuo commodo 504; quod tuo commodo fiat 710
*common in gender* 90 *fin.*; *common nouns* 421 *b*
commosti 306
communis alicui cum aliquo, *cf.* 684
*comparative degree of adjectives* 173—177; *of participles* 177; *inflexions of* 131 *fin.*; *stem suffix* 388; *with abl. of measure* 496; *standard* 513
*comparative sentences with* quantus, quam 683; ut 715; potius quam, quam

ut 700 *b*; quasi, tamquam, &c. *with subj.* 660: ac, tamquam *with ind.* 661
compendi facere 523 *b*
compercere *p.* 144 *s. v.* parco
comperio, comperior *p.* 145 *s. v.* pario; 340
compescere *p.* 145 *s. v.* pasco
complere *with gen. and abl.* 530
*completed action, tenses of* 588 foll.
*completion of predicate* 433 *a*; *by adverbs*, &c. 438
compos *has consonant stem* 146
*composition* 402 *foll.*; *with prepositions used absolutely* 408; *also* (*for verbs*) 799 *foll. and* 339; *used syntactically* 410
*compound noun-stems in* -io 390, 2 *c*
*concession expressed by conditional sentence*, si, &c. (*subj.*) 650; (*ind.*) 651 *c*; *by* ut, ut non (*consecutive subj.*) 714 *d*; (*ind.*) 715 *c*; *by rhetorical command* (*subj.*) 676, (*imp.*) 677 *c*; *by direct assertion* (*ind.*) 677; licet, licebit (*subj.*) 672; (*ind.*) 677 *c*; quam vis, &c. (*subj.*) 676 *b*; (*ind.*) 677 *d*; *by* quamquam (*ind.*) 711 *b*; *by* cum (*subj.*) 732; quom (*ind.*) 733
concretus 340
condemnare *with loc. of penalty* 494; *gen. of charge* 527
condicionibus 503, 2
*condition expressed by subordinate clause with* si, nisi (*ind.*) 641, 649—659; (*subj.*) 640; 648—661; *typical examples* 626—630; *use of tenses* 638;
*by subordinate clause without any particle* (*subj.*) 650 *a*; *ind. or imper.* 651; *with relative* (*subj.*) 650 *b*; (*ind.*) 651 *b*; *by clause with* absque (*subj.*) 650 *a*; *with* dum (*subj.*) 696; *with* ut (*subj.*) 684 *c*; 714 *d*;
*by a word or phrase* (*subj*) 642; *by abl. of circumstances* 504, 505; *condition suppressed* 644; *reported* 746; *expressing a thing to be done* 748; *or ascertained* 747
conducere aliquid faciendum 552
confertim 227
confestim 227
congiarium 394
congius 915
conivere *p.* 143 *s. v.* niveo
*conjugation of verbs* 243 *foll.*; *old classification* 337, 338; *periphrastic* (*so called*) *i. e. part. fut. with* sum (*ind.*) 612, 628; (*subj.*) 629, 630; (*inf.*) 542, 765
*conjunction, defined* 424; *general use* 439; *copulative* 859 *foll.*; *adversative* 870, 871; *disjunctive* 872—874; *negative* 878 *foll.*; *list of* (*with adverbs*) 211 *foll.*
*conjunctive, another name for subjunctive, or some parts or uses of same* 238, 4
*connecting vowel* (*so called*) 347
*connective adverbs* 423 *a*
conquiniscere *p.* 137
consciscere mortem sibi, *cf.* 754
conscius facinoris 525 *a*
'consecutio temporum;' *general rules* 621—625; *typical examples* 626—636
*consecutive subjunctive* 633, 702 *foll.*; *with subordinate conditional sentence* 629, 630, 652
consobrinus 921
*consonants, changes of* 21 *foll.*; *which can begin syllables* 16; *consonant nounstems declension* 129 *foll.*; *classification* 132, 141 *foll.*; *consonant conjugation* 246 *foll.*
consuetudine 503, 2
consul *declined* 131; *abbreviation for*, cons. cos. &c. 961 (2); consulibus *as note of the year* 491
consulari potestate 502
consulto 506, 507
consumpsti 307
*continued action* 591
contra 212; *general use* 810
*contraction of vowels* 46—50
conturbare 563
convenire *with acc.* 469 *a*
*coordination* 439; *coordinating conjunctions* 859 *foll.*; *position of words common to coordinates* 789
Coos 155
copia, copiae *distinguished* 101
copula 427; *copulative conjunctions* 859 *foll.*
cor 142; cordi esse 482
coram 223; *use* 811
cornus 121; cornu *declined* 120
cors, *see* cohors
Corybantes 168 (*p.* 59)
cos *for* consul 961 (2) *note.*
cras 230
*crasis* 941
credo *p.* 138 *s. v.* do; *parenthetical* 673; creduas 280; crederes '*one would have believed*' 646
Creon *declined* 166
creterra 172
*cretic foot* 922, 924 (2); *verse* 931, 22
*crime, case used for* 527
crimen 372
crocire 396
*crude form* 78
crus *declined* 131
Ctesipho *declined* 168
cubare 396, *p.* 137
cucumis 140
cuicuimodi 209
cujus *declined* 205
cum (quom) 224; *general use* 720—736; *typical examples* 634; '*whenever*' (*subj.*) 720; (*ind.*) 721; '*when*' (*subj.*) 722; (*ind.*) 725; '*to the time when*' (*ind.*) 727; '*because*' (*ind.*) 729; '*whereas, since*' (*subj.*) 728, 729; '*and then*' (*ind.*) 735; '*although*' (*subj.*) 732; (*ind.*) 733; *as relative adverb* (fuit tempus cum) *subj.* 706; (*ind.*) 707; cum... tum (*subj.*) 736; (*ind.*) 737; cum praesertim (*subj.*) 734; cum diceret, '*saying as he did*' 724; audivi cum diceret 726
cum, com '*with*' 224; *general use* 809; *position* 798; *accent* 73; cum eo ut 684; *two nouns joined by* cum *may have plural predicate* 579
-cundo- *suffix to quasi-participial stems* 365
cupere *p.* 137; *with infin.* 541; *with infin. object clause* 535
cupressus 121

cur 228; *in depend. questions* 750
curae esse 473 B; *cf.* 602; habere 482 *b*
curare *with gerundive* 552; *with pass. part.* 559
currere *and compounds p.* 137
curriculo, cursu 503, 2
curvus 353
cyathus 915

D *final in abl. sing.* 19, 103, 115; *appended to* me *and* te 191; *neuter acc. of pronouns* 194
*dactylic verse* 926
damnare capite 495; voti 527
dare *inflexions* 262; *compounds p.* 138; *with predicative dative* 482 *b*; *with acc. of gerundive* 552; *of past part.* 559; *with infin. object-clause* 534; dare nuptum 466; operam *with inf.* 534 *a*; pessum 117; verba alicui 468; dabat, dedit *distinguished* 591, 3
daremus *analysed* 241
datatim 227
*Dative of a-stems in plur.* 104; *of* e-*stems* 107; *of* u-*stems* 120; *of* ego 191; *of pronouns adj.* 196; *general use* 437 *b*, 473; *contrasted with other cases* 453, 454; *use of gerund* 548; *of stems in* -tu 554; *for genitive* 480; *for prepositional phrase* 475; *after compound verbs* 474 *b* *expressing agent* 476; *indirect object* 474; *person judging* 477; *person interested (ethical)* 478; *person possessing* 479; *work contemplated* 481 *predicative dative (of purpose)* 482 *dative in various senses after* adequitare 475; advorsum venire 802; aspici 476; bene 440 *d*; credi 569; dare 474, 482 *b*; decemviri 481; defendere 474 *b*; desinere 475; dicere 474 *a*; dolet 575 *c*; ducere 482 *b*; elapsus 474 *b*; em 479; en 478; esse 479—482; flebilis 476; habere 474, 482 *b*; imperitare 474 *b*; imponere 475; incumbere 475; labi 473 *a*; lex 481; licet 474 *a*, 537 *c*; mittere 482 *c*; nocere 474 *a*; nomen est 441 *b*; nubere 474 *a*; parcere 474 *a*; persuasumst 569; placet 575 *c*; praeponi 474 *b*; relinquere 482 *c*; ridere 474 *a*; servire 553; signum 473 *g*; similis 474 *c*; vae 479, velle 474 *a*; vertere 482 *b*
de *prep. general use* 812; *in composition* 813, 410; *sometimes after relative* 798; *used after* admonere, &c. 529
-de *suffix* 220
deabus 104
debeo *p.* 140 (*s. v.* habeo); *with infin.* 534 *a*, 541; *with perf. infin.* 541 *a*; *in apodosis to conditional sentence* 628, 652 *a*
decem septem, *or* septem decem, &c. 186
decemviri *with gerundival dative* 481
decet *not really impersonal* 575 *a*
decies 233; centena milia 188 (2); *value* 909, 910
decipi laborum 530
*declensions, properly two* 82, 102 *foll.*, 120 *foll.*; *old division into five* 85
decori esse 482 *a*
decumanus 368
*defective nouns* 117; *adjectives* 175, 176; *verbs, see in* 339
defit, &c. 265
dein 226; deinceps 230; deinde 220, 226
delere *p.* 142 *s. v.* lino
*demonstrative pronouns, see pronouns*
-dem *as suffix* 225
demum 224
denarius *adj.* 180; *coin* 909
*dentals* 4; *dental verb-stems have supine in* -sum 334; *noun-stems* 357 *foll.*
denuo 213 (2)
deorsum 214
*deponent verbs, inflexions* 258; *list of* 340; *meaning and use* 565, 567
*derivative suffixes of noun-stems* 345 (3), 346 *foll.*; *of verb-stems* 398—400
*desiderative verbs in* -uri- 400
desinere *p.* 148 *s. v.* sino; desii 306; desitus sum *p.* 148; *s. v.* sino
desistere *p.* 148 *s. v.* sisto
despexe 307
destiti *p.* 148 *s. vv.* sino *and* sisto
desuper 228
deunx 189, 3
devorti 566, 2; *p.* 151 *s. v.* verto
deus *declined* 116; *gen. pl.* deum 115 *b*
dextans 189, 3
dexter 110
di meliora 472; di vostram fidem *ib.*
di- *in composition* 23
*diaeresis* 941
dic 276
dicere *with infin. object sentence* 542; dicor scribere, &c. 544; dicet, dixerit aliquis 647, 1; nec cito dixerim 644 *b*; cum diceret 724; audivi cum diceret 725; quod diceret 742; quod dicas 744; dixi 591, 1; dixisse 541 *a*; dico *often omitted* 583; dixti 307
dicto audiens esse 402 *e*; 561; turpe dictu 554; dignum dictu *cf.* 556
*Dido* 159 *b*
dies *declined* 106; dies noctisque 458 A. 2; *cf.* 460; die quinti 484 A. 2 ante diem (a. d.) 917; paucis ante diebus 804; in dies 820 *b*
*difference, amount of, in abl.* 496
dignari, dignus *with abl.* 495; dignus qui *with subj.* 680; dignus *with inf.* 540. (2)
*dimeter* 923
dimidia, dimidium 189, 1, 6
*diminutival suffixes of nouns* 375—377; *of verbs, in* -ta- 400
*diphthongs* 11; *quantity* 52, 1
dirimere 28
dis- *in composition* 814
discere *p.* 137; *contains inchoative suffix* 296 *a*; *cf.* 309
discrucior animi 485
*disjunctive conjunctions* 872, 873; *negative* 881
*disjunctive questions, direct* 877; *indirect* 752
dissensio reipublicae 525 *b*
dissicere *p.* 140 *s. v.* jacio
*distance, expressed by acc.* 459; *cf.* 510
*distributive numerals* 178; *use of* 183
diu 215
dives *with abl.* 493; *with gen. cf.* 530

diurnus 367
divum *for* divorum 115 *b*
dixti 307
-do- *suffix of noun-stems* 365; *of adverbs* 215
docere *with two acc.* 470; *with object and infin.* 534 *b*
dodrans 189
dolere *with infin. object clause* 535; *impersonal with dat.* 575
dolo 503, 2; malo 503, 1
domare *p.* 138
domus *declined* 121; domi 485; domum scribere 464; domo 509
-don- *suffix of noun-stems* 144, 371
donec, donicum, donique 224; '*until*' *subj.* 692; (*ind.*) 693; '*while*' (*ind.*) 695
*dubitative subj.* 674
dubito *followed by* quin, an, &c. 681
dubius quin 629, 630
ducere *with pred. dative* 482 *b*; duc 276
dudum 224
duint 280; duas *ib.*
-dum *enclitic* 224
dum, *general use of* 692—697; '*whilst*' *usually with pres. ind.* 595; *even though dependent on infin.* 765 *c*
dummodo 696
duo *inflexions of* 183; duodeviginti 183, 186; duae partes 189
dupondius, *coin* 909; *applied to length* 913
*duration of time; in acc.* 460; *abl.* 493

E *see* ex
e *takes place of* a *in root* 34; *in suffixes* 35; *of* o 36; *changed to* i 38; *omitted* 41; *specially used before* r *or two consonants* 40; *in connexion with other vowels* 45—50
e, *adverbs ending in* 216—220
eabus 201
'*each other*,' *how expressed in Latin* 908
eadem opera (*abl.*) 503, 1
eapse 202
ebur 145
ecastor 417
ecce 218; eccere 417; *with nom.* 456; *with acc.* 472
ecquis 208; *use of* 903
*ecthlipsis* 941
edepol 417
edere, esse *inflexions of* 264; edim 280
edoctus militiam 476
egenus, egere *with gen.* 530; *abl. see* 498
ego *declined* 190
ehem 416
ei (*dat. pron.*) 201
ei, eja 416
-eio- *suffix of noun-stems; how pronounced* 17; *vocative of such stems* 112
elephans, elephantus *declined* 166
*elision* 64
-ella- *or* -ela-, *noun-suffix* 378
ellipse 941; *of substantives* 448—450; *with certain adjectives* 447; *of verbal predicate* 581—585; *with acc. of exclamation* 472; *of apodosis* 658; *with* quasi 660; *in wishes* 662; *with* quaerere, tentare, &c. 748 *in fragmentary expressions* 440
em 416
emere *p.* 138; *with locative of price* 494
eminus 230
*emphasis, effect on position of words* 791
en *with nom.* 456; *with acc.* 472; *with dat. and acc.* 478
-en- (*gen.* -in-) *suffix of noun-stems* 144
*enallage, grammatical* 341; *rhetorical* 947
*enclitics* 72
-endo- *suffix of gerund* 365
endo *old form of* in 215
enim 226; at enim 677 *b*; 871, 3; neque enim 878
enixa *p.* 143 *s. v.* nitor
eo '*I go*,' *see* ire
eo '*thither*' 213 (4)
eo '*by so much*' 496
*epenthesis* 941
*epexegesis* 948
epicoena 89
Epirus *declined* 153
*epistolary tenses* 604
epulae 117
eques 146; *declined* 129
equidem 225
equos *or* ecus 42
-er- *for* -us-, -es-, *or* -is- 28; *neuter nounstems in* -er- 145
eram 285, 259
-ere *perf. suffix for* -erunt 274
erepsemus 307
erga 212; *use of* 815
ergo 213 (1); *use of as postposition* 816
-eri (-erim, -ero) *verbal tense suffix, quantity of* i 281
-eris *passive suffix 2nd pers., how formed* 270
-erno *suffix of noun-stems* 367
-ero *noun-stems in, how declined* 109
erubescere *with acc.* 469 *b*
-erunt *3rd pers. plur. perf., quantity of penult of* 274
es '*thou art*,' *quantity* 260; *often loses vowel* 260
esse *and compounds, inflexions of* 259—261; *use in predication* 428 *b*; *often omitted* 584, 585; *position in sentence* 791, 2; *with oblique cases and adverbs* 438 *a*; male esse alicui 712 *a*; *with dative of possessor* 479; *predicative* 482 *a*; *work contemplated* 481; *abl. of description* 502; *with gerund*, &c. 551; *with past participle* 590; *with future participle* 612; *in apodosis* 628; longum est, melius fuit, &c. 643; est qui, est cum 704, 706, 707; ut est 715 *d*, *e*; nihil est quod 708; cf. 750
esse '*to eat*' 264
et 228; *general use of* 860—865; et quidem *in replies* 677 *b*; et ipse 861; et non, et nullus, &c. 878
-et- (-it) *noun-stems in* 143
etiam 223; *in questions of surprise*, &c. 675 *b*, *c*; etiam si (*subj.*) 650 *c*; (*ind.*) 651 *c*
-eto *suffix of noun-stems* 359
et si (*ind.*) 651 *c*; '*and yet*' 871, 6

euge, eugipae 417 *b*
ex, ec, e 230; *general use* 817; *in compos.* 818; 408, 2; 410; ex animi sententia 817; 712 *a*; e republica 817; e re nata 817; heres ex asse 189; ex ante diem, &c. 917
exadversum 802
examen 23
excelsus *p.* 136 *s. v.* cello
*exclamations, accusative in* 472; *infin.* 538
exest '*eats out*' 265
exinde 220
exitio esse 482 *a*
expectare dum *with subj.* 692 *a*; si 748; *with dep. question* 750
expensi latio 406 *c*
exta 357, 2
extinxem 307
extra 212; *general use* 819
extrinsecus 226

F *how pronounced* 4
faber *declined* 109
Fabia *abl.* 512
fac 276; fac sciam *used parenthetically* 751
facere *and comp. p.* 138; *passive* (fieri) 264; *half compounds* 413; *other compounds* 412, 415; *with obl. pred.* 434; aliquid alicujus 513; lucri 523 *b*; certiorem facere 529, 535; *with abl.* 499; *with* sacra *understood* 563; mecum 563; *with subj. see under* 666; facere non possum quin 712 *b*; faxo 291; *used parenthetically* 671; quid opust facto 507; factum *as answer to a question* 886
facessere *p.* 138
facilis *forms superlative* 174 *b*; 351; facile 217
fallere *with secondary pred.* 557
familias *gen. sing.* 103; cf. 406 *c*
fari *p.* 139 *s. v.* fatur
-fariam *compounds of* 223
fas 142
faxo, faxim 291. 3; *also see* facere
fel 142
femur 145
fendere *p.* 139
fenus unciarium 911
ferbui *p.* 139 *s. v.* ferveo
fere 55, 216
ferire *p.* 139; cf. festus 331 (*p.* 132)
ferox linguae 526
ferre 264; *compounds of, p.* 139; fer 276; fers, fert 270
fessus *p.* 138 *s. v.* fatisco
festus 331 (*p.* 132)
fides 107; fidei commissum, fidejubere 405 *a*; bona fide 503, 1
fidicen 90; cf. 415
fieri 264; alicujus 517. fit ut *with subj.* 633, 712 *b*. *See also* facere
flamen (*m.*) 144
fluere *p.* 139
fodere, fodiri *p.* 139
foot in Prosody 922
foras 230; *use* 264; foris 232; *use, see example in* 494
fore 259 (*p.* 105); fore ut 543 (2); missum fore 543 (3)
forem, &c. 260
formonsus, formosus 363
forsan, forsitan 228; *with subj.* 754; *with ind.* 755
fortassis, fortasse 232; quaeret fortassis 647; fortassis abstulerit 645 *b*
forte 217, 503, 2; nisi forte 653; si forte 747
fortuito 213, cf. 506
*fractions, expression of* 189
frangere *p.* 139; fregi 310; 31 *b*
fraudi esse 482 *a*
frugi 175
frui *p.* 140; *with abl.* 500
frunisci *p.* 140 *s. v.* fruor
frustra 212
fuam &c. 260
fueram (*compared with* eram) amatus 590; amaturus 612
fui 259 (*compared with* sum *and* eram) amatus 590; amaturus 612; fuerim *with fut. part. in apodosis to a conditional sentence* 629, 630; fuisses 630; fuisse *with* do *in reported speech* 765
funditus 231
fungi *p.* 140; *with abl.* 500; *with acc.* 500
furere *p.* 140
furtim 227
*Future simple indic.* 283, 284; *use of* 590, 600—602; *in conditional sentences* 641 *a*; *in 2nd person used for imperative* 665 *b* *completed indic.* 304, 305; *use of* 590, 609; *in conditional sentences* 641 *b*; *without* si 651; *of repeated actions* 721 *imperative* 613; 669 *b*; *infinitive, see* fore *and periphrases with participles* 542, 543 *participle act.* 336, 384; *with ind. and subj. of* esse 612; *in apodosis of conditional sentences* 628; *in consecutive sentences* 633; *with* quod 635; *in dependent questions* 635, 4; *and other sentences* 636; *with infin. of* esse 542; *also* 768 *future in* -so -sim 291—293; *also* 610
futurum esse ut 543; futurum fuisse ut 765, 768.
fuvit 260

G *when first used* 2; *often omitted before* n 16; *before* m 21, 23
Gaius *denoted by* C 961, 1; *quantity* 62 *c*
*Galliambic verse* 934
gaudere *p.* 140; *with inf.* 534; *with past part.* (*for past infin.*) 585
gelu *abl. of* gelus 121
gemere *p.* 140
*Gender, meaning and expression of* 81, 82, 86—89; *of persons, animals, &c.* 90 *foll.*; *of* a-*stems* 102, 105; of o-*stems* 113, 114; *of* u-*stems* 120; *of* i-*stems* 134 *foll.*; *of consonant-stems* 141 *foll.*; *use of inflexions of gender* 443—445; *attraction of gender* 451
*Genitive in* -as *and* -ai 103; *in* -um 104, 115; *of pronouns* 194; *general use* 438, 515; *difference from other cases* 453,

454; *possessive* 515, 516; *of* '*divided whole*' i. e. *partitive* 520, 522; *of definition* 523; *descriptive* 524; *objective* 525; *secondary after verbs, &c.* 527 *foll.*; *gerundial* 550; *supplied by possessive adj.* 518; *interchangeable with dative* 480; *for locative* 494
*after* absolvere 527; abstinere 530; accusare 527; acervus 523 *b*; admonere 529; aliquid 522: ambiguus 525 *b*; amicissimus 516; certiorem facere 529; contentio 525 *b*; damnatus 527; decipi 530; dies (spatii) 523 *b*; egere 530; ergo 816; facere (lucri) 523 *b*; fessus 530; imperium 525 *b*; implere 530; incertus 525 *b*; instar 516; interest 517; interritus 525 *b*; manifestus 527; medium 520; minor 526; mirari 528; misereri 528; nihil (reliqui) 522; numerus (trecentorum) 523; oblivisci 529; occultus 526; paenitet 528; piget 528; plenus 530; potiri 530; pudet 528; quod 522; refert 519; refertus 530; reus 527; scelus (viri) 523 *b*; suspectus 527; taedet 528; tenax 525; tenus 854; uterque 520
*Gerund and gerundive, formation of* 290, 365; *general use of* 546; *accusative* 547; *ablative* 549; *dative* 548; *genitive* 530; *nominative* 551
*as obl. pred.* 552 *a*; *as mere attribute* 552 *b*; *with agent in dative* 476; *sometimes in abl. with* ab 476
gignere *p.* 140; *contains reduplication* 255
-gino-, -gno-, *adjective suffix* 367
-ginta, *numeral suffix* 358
*Glyconic verse* 930, 17; *stanza* 938 C. D.
gn 16 (3)
gnascor *p.* 143 *s. v.* nascor
-gon- (-gin-) *suffix of substantives* 371
*Graecism* 942
gratia, gratiae 100 *c*, 101; gratiis, gratis 232, 503 *c*
gravatim 227 (1)
*Greek nouns, declension of* 148—172
gregatim 227 (2)
grex 142
grus 142
gryps 167

H, *sound of* 8; *often omitted* 43; *uncertain* 8
habere *with ind. obj.* 474; *with pred. dat.* 482 *b*; *with gerundive* 552; *with past part.* 559; *with infin.* 534 *a*; *compounds of* 140
*habitual action, expressed by imperfect* 605; *with* cum (*ind.*) 721; (*subj.*) 720
hactenus 854
haec *for nom. fem. plur.* 200
hau, haud 228, 876; *use* 877; haud scio an 752
haurire *p.* 140
have = ave *p.* 136
hebes 140
hei 416
*Hellenism* 942
hem 416
*hendiadys* 942
hercle 417
here, heri 221, 491
heredium 914
heres 147, 2; ex deunce 817
*heroic verse* 926
heros *declined* 158
heus 416
*hexameter* (*dactylic*) 926
*hiatus* 65
hibernus 367
hibus 200
hic *declined* 200; *use of* 890; hic (*adv.*) 221 (3); his annis 492; hoc populo 504; hoc praemii 522; hoc pugnatur &c. 570; quo...hoc 683, 2
hiemps 29
hinc 226
hinnus 92
*Hipponactean verse* 933, 28; *stanza* 938 R.
*historical infin.* 539
*historical present* 594; *perfect* 608
hodie 216; hodieque 219
homo 130, 144
*homoeoteleuton* 948
*homonymia* 948
honos, honor 145
horrere aliquem 469
horsum 214, 856
HS 921, 7
huc 213
humane, humaniter 229 (1); humanitus 231
humi 485
*hypallage* 942
*hyperbaton* 942
*hyperbole* 948
*hyphen* 942
*hypothetical sentences* 626, 638 *foll.*; *without condition expressed* 642, 644; *in 2nd pers. sing. subj.* ('*you*' = '*one*') 646; *hypothesis in dep. interrog. or consec. sentence* 652 *a.* 2: *b*
*hysteron proteron* 948

i *in root from* a, e, *or* u 34: *in suffixes from* o 36: *from* u 37; *from* e 38; *often omitted* 41; *arising from assimilation* 39; *has special affinity to some consonants* 40, 45; *from* i + e 49; *from* i + i 50
i *from* ae 34; *from* o + i 47; *from* ĭ + ī *or* ī + ĭ 50
i *remains before* a, o, u, e 49; *treated as consonant* 44; *quantity of* 56; *in perf. and comp. fut.* 281
i *in gen. sing. of* o-*stems* 112; *in voc. sing.* 112; *in gen. sing. of* u-*stems* 121 (*p.* 40); *in abl. sing. of* i-*stems* 124, 134; *in gen. pl.* 123, 125
i *noun-stems in, declension of* 123—128; *distinguished from consonant stems*, 132; *classification of* 133—140; *Greek stems* 162—165
i *adverbs in* 221
i *verb stems in* 303; *derivatives* 397, 4; 400
i *ends perf. ind. 1st pers. sing.* 268; *without other suffix* 318; *in* ii 306; *as characteristic of pres. subj.* 279, 280; *as original subjunctive suffix* 282
iacere *in comp. p.* 140
iacere '*to be prostrated*' 564

jam 223; jam...jam 867
*Iamb* 922; *iambic verse* 933
iano- *noun-suffix* 368
-ibam *for* -iebam 234
ibi 201, 222
ibis 170, 2
ibo 234
ibus (*from* is) 201
-ico- *noun-suffix* 354, 355; -iqvo 355; -ici- 356
ico *or* icio '*I strike*,' *p.* 141
id genus 462; id temporis 460
idcirco 213 *fin.*, 806
idem *declined* 203; idem ac 661
identidem 225
-idon- *noun-suffix* 371
idus (*pl.*) 100 *e*; 120; *place in calendar* 917
-ie *noun-stems in, declined* 106; *suffix* 390
jecit *perf. of* jacio *p.* 140; *of* ico *or* icio *p.* 141
jecur 145
-iens, -ies *adverbial suffix* 233
-iensi- *noun-suffix* 364
-ier *pass. inf.* 288
igitur 228; *place in sentence* 793
ignaviter 229
ignoscere *p.* 143; *how compounded* 408 *c*
-igon *noun-suffix* 371
-ii *in gen. of o-stems* 112
-ili- *noun-suffix* 379; -ili- 381
ilia (*pl.*) 100 *a*
ilicet 405 *a*
ilico (illico) 213
-illa- *verbal suffix* 400
ille *declined* 197; *use of* 839
illic *declined* 199
illim 226, 236
-illimo- *superlative stem* 174 (*p.* 62)
illius, *quantity of penult of* 62
-illo-, -illulo- *noun-suffixes* 377
illo, illuc *adv.* 213 (4), 236
-im *adverbial-suffix* 226, 227; *accusative of* i-*stems* 124, 134; *in pres. subj.* 279, 280
imber *declined* 135
immane quantum 685
immo 213; *in answers* 886; immo vero, *see example in* 641 *a*
-imo- (-umo-) *noun-suffix* 351, 352; *cf.* 174
impedire *construction* 681
imperare, cf. 474; imperor *with infin.* 536 *a*
*Imperative mood, how formed* 275—278; *use of tenses* 613; *general use* 669; *contrasted with subj.* 614, 2; *in protasis of conditional sentence* 651; *in apodosis* 655; *use with* quin 675 *c*; *to make a concession* 677; *with* modo 677 *e*; *expressed in orat. obl. by subjunctive* 765, 768
*Imperfect indicative, formation* 285: *2nd pers. sing. pass. in &c.* 271; *general distinction from other tenses* 587—591; *special uses* 603—606; *use in letters* 604; *with* postquam 606; *in conditional sentences* 641; *in statements of duty, possibility &c.* 643; *in apodosis to conditional sentences* 628, 652; *where subj. might be expected* 654
*Imperfect subjunctive* 281, 286; *general uses* 618, 620; *dependent on historical present* 621, 622; *in hypothetical and conditional sentences* 638; *typical examples* 626, 627; *in jussive sentences* 670; *in final sentences* 678; *in hypothetical sentences, how expressed in orat. obl.* 765
*Impersonal verbs* 575; *in passive voice* 569; *with neuter pronoun* 570; *impersonal use of passive participle* 560, 506
implere *with acc. and gen. or abl.* 530
imponere *with acc. and dat.* 475
impraesentiarum 225
impune 217, 2
in *prep. general use* 820; *in composition* 821; *cf.* 410; in dies 820 *b*; in vicem 820
in- '*not*' *in composition* 408, 1 *c*; 2
*inceptive or inchoative verbs* 296, 397, 5
incessere *p.* 141
*incomplete action, tenses of* 588—591
incumbere *with dat.* 475
inde 220
*Indefinite subject of 3rd. pers. omitted* 574: *expressed by second pers. and subj.* 646; *by* aliquis, *&c. with indic.* 647, 1
*Indicative mood; general use* 586; *distinction of tenses* 587 *foll.*; *in statements of 'duty,' 'power' &c.*, 643; *'purpose' with fut. part.* 612; *in the following sentences:*
*causal*, quod, quia, &c. 741; cum 729:
*comparative*, alius ac, idem ac, quasi, &c. 661; tantus...quantus, tam...quam, &c. 683, 1; eo...quod, eo...quo, quam 683, 2; ut, sicut, &c. 715; citius quam 699:
*concessive*, *with* sane, at enim, &c. 677; etsi, si maxime 651 *c*; quamvis 677 *d*; quamquam 711 *b*; ut 715 *c*; cum 729, 733:
*conditional, in apodosis and protasis* 641; *in apodosis* (*protasis in subj.*) 652, 654; cf. 628; *in protasis without* si 651; *with imperative apodosis* 655; *subjunctive apodosis* 657; *expressing 'thing to be ascertained'* 747:
*dependent on infinitive* 761, 1; *on subjunctive* 761, 2:
*definitive with* qui 679, 703—709, 753; *with* ut 715 *a*:
*interrogative* 675, 749, 751; *repeating words of other speaker* 757:
*limiting* 711:
*relative*, qui 651 *b*, 679, 703—709, 739, 753; *'such'* 719 *b*; ut qui 683; quippe qui 719; quantus 683; quisquis, quicunque 711 *b*, 721:
*substantival with* quod 713:
*temporal with* cum 725—737; donec, dum, &c. 693—697, 765; antequam, priusquam 699; ubi, quoties, &c. 723; postquam 606, 611 *c*, 723;
*in the midst of orat. obl.* 778, 779;
*in clauses with* faxo 671; forsitan 755; fortasse 677; cf. 645 *a*, *b*; nescio quis 755; nisi forte, nisi vero 653; modo 711; prout 715 *a*, *b*; quasi 661; sive 651 *d*; sunt qui 703—707; satin' ut, vide ut, 687:

*in the following expressions*: dicet aliquis 647; dico quod sentio 753; etiam taces? 675 *c*; licet, licebit 677 *c*; melius erat 643; non dicam 691; peream, si... erat 657; quam vis, quam volet 676 *b*; advolone 675 *a*; quod scribis 743; quod facere poteris 711 *b*; videro, videris 667; videbis 667
indidem 220
indigere *with gen. or abl.* 530; *composition of* 215
*indirect discourse* see '*Reported speech*'; *question of command* 674 *b*; *of fact* 750; *rhetorical* (*reported*) 764
indoles 140
indu (*for* in) 215
inducor artus tunica 471 *a*
induere *p.* 141: induor, indutus tunicam 471 *b*
indulgere *p.* 141
infestus 331
*Infinitive*, *present how formed* 287, 288; *in* -sere 291; *perfect* 304; *contracted* 307: *classed as substantive* 421 *b*, *its character* 532; *general use* 533; *use of its tenses* 541—545; *use as object* 534; *as oblique predicate* 535; *as* (*direct*) *secondary predicate* 536; *as subject* 537; *in exclamations* 538; *as primary pred.* (*historic infin.*) 539; *in rare uses* 540; *in reported speech* 763 *foll.*; *in rhetorical questions* 764; *with relative* 765 *b*; *often omitted with past part.* 585: *used* (*in various ways*) *after* aequum erat, &c. 643: aptus 540 (2); assuefieri 534 *b*; audeo 534 *a*; cupio 541: debeo 534 *a*; desisto 534 *a*; dicor 536, 544; dignus 540 (2); do 534 *a*; doceor 534 *b*; est 536; habeo 534 *a*; inter 540 (4); jubeor 536; licet 545; maturo 534 *a*; mitto 534 *a*: *cf.* 540 (3); natus 540 (3); operam do 534 *a*; possum 534 *a*; praeter 540 (4); prohibeor 534 *b*; reperior 536 *a*; scio 534 *a*; soleo 534 *a*; tempus est 540 (1); videor 536 *a*: *accus. with infin. after* admoneo 535: assuefacio 534 *b*; auctor sum, certior fio 535; cupio 535; dico 535, 542; doceo 534 *b*; doleo 535; memini 543 (4); opus est, oportet 537 *a*; sino 535; volo 535 *perfect infin. after* debeo, malo, possum, &c. 541 *a*; caveo, volo 541 *b*; decuit 535
infit 265
infitias 117, 466
infra 212; *general use* 822; *comp. and superl.* 175
inimicus *with gen.* 516
injuria 503, 2
-ino- *noun-suffix cf.* 366, 367; -ino 370
inquam 268; *p.* 141
*insertion of* p *in* sumpsi, &c. 29, 311
insimulare *with gen. of crime* 527
instar *with gen.* 516
instare *with infin.* 534 *a*
inter 229; *general use* 823; inter se 823 *a*; 908 *b*; *with infin.* 540 (4)
intercludere *with abl.* 511
interdicere *with abl.* 498
interdum 224, 237
interea 212, 237
interest Ciceronis 517; mea 519
interibi 222
interim 226; cum interim 735
*Interjections* 416, 417
*Interrogative particles* 204—208; *pronouns* 204—208: *See also* '*questions*'
intervallum 410
intonatus *p.* 150 *s. v.* tono
intra 212; *comp. and superl.* 175 (*p.* 63); *general use* 824
*Intransitive verbs defined* 564; *sometimes become transitive* 469 *impersonal in passive* 565, 569; *with acc.* (*of extent*) 459—461, *cf.* 570; *or cognate* 461 *b*; *with ind. obj.* 474; *with abl. of part. concerned* 497; *have gerund* 546
intrinsecus 226
intro 213; *general use* 824
introrsus 214
intus 231; *general use* 825
invitare hospitio 489
-io *noun-suffix* 390—394
jocineris 145
jocus 117; joco 503, 2.
-ion *noun-suffix* 374; *declension* 130
*Ionic feet* 922, a majori *used in verse* 935, 23; a minori 935, 36
-ios-, -ior- *suffix of comparatives* 388, *cf.* 174; *declension* 131 *fin.*
Jovem 122
ipse *declined* 195; *general use* 891, 893; ipsius *for* suum ipsius 895
-iquo, -inquo *noun-suffix* 355
ire *inflexions* 264; ibo 284; ibam 285; *use with supine* 553; *to form passive infin.* 553; infitias ire 466, 117; pessum, venum, ire 117; ibat videre 533 C
*ironia* 949
irrauserit *p.* 147 *s. v.* ravio
is *declension of* 201; *general use* 890
-issumo- *noun-suffix* (*superlative*) 351, 174
iste *declension of* 197; *general use* 890; isti modi 198
ita 212; ita...ut *with final subj.* 684; *with consecutive subj.* 714; *with indic.* '*as.. so*' 715 *a*; '*although..yet*' 715 *c*; ita vivam ut *with indic.* 715 *f*; ita vero, ita est *in answers* 886
-ita- *suffix of frequentative verbs* 399
-itano- *noun-suffix* 368
item 225
iter *declined* 145; obiter 229 *fin.*
iterum 224, 383
*ithyphallic verse* 928, 10
itidem 225
-itie- *noun-suffix* 392
-ito- *noun-suffix* 359
jubere 311; *p.* 141; jubeo eum abire 534 *b*; jubeor dici consul 536
judex *declined* 129
jugerum 110; *contents* 914
jugulus 117
-ium *gen. plur.* 123
jumentum 23
jungere 295; *p.* 141
-ivo- *noun-suffix* 353
Juppiter 122
juratus 340

-ius *gen. sing. quantity of penult of* 62 *a*
jus 142
jusjurandum 117, 406 *b*
juvare 299; *p.* 141; juvat *with acc. and inf.* 537 *b*
juxta 212; *general use* 826

K. 7
Kal. 917

l *how pronounced* 5; *has attraction for* u; ll *for* e 40
*labials* 4
lac, lacte 136
lacessere *p.* 141
lapidavit (*impers.*) 575
laquear 138
larva, larua 44
*Latin language* 1
lavare, lavere 119 *p.* 141
laurus 121
laus 142; laudi dare 482 *b*
legere *p.* 141
lenibat 285; lenibo 284
-lento *noun-suffix* 358
*letters, tenses used in, imperf.* 604; *pluperf.* 611 *b*; *mode of dating* 917, 918
Leuctra 96
lex 142; operi faciundo 481
libella 909
libet *p.* 142
licere, liceri *p.* 142
licet *p.* 142; *with infin.* 637 *a*, 545; *with dat.* 474; civi esse Gaditano, &c. 537 *c*; *with subj.* 672, 677 *c*; *in apodosis to a conditional subj.* 628
-limo- *superl. suffix* 351, 174 *b*
linere *p.* 142
linquere 295, 4 *b*; *p.* 142
liquefacere 413
liqui *p.* 142
*litotes* 949
locare *with gerundive* 552 *a*
*Locative case* 83, 84; *general use of* 483, 484; *of place* 485; *followed by relative adverb, not adjective* 485 (*p.* 206); *in apposition to abl. with* in 487; *of time when* 491; *of amount* 494; animi 485; belli 485; domi 121, 485; dupli 494; humi 485; luci 491; militiae 485, quanti 494; quotidie 491
locus 117; loco 488
*logaoedic verse* 929
lubet, *see* libet
luci 491
lucri facere 523; de lucro 812 *e*
luere *p.* 142
lues 134, 1
luxuria *declined* 106

M *pronounced* 6; *when final* 19; *frequently omitted* 19, 63; *affected by dental following* 26; *as verbal ending of 1st pers. sing.* 267, 268
macte 217; esto 669 *b*
Maeander *declined* 153
magis 232; *use* 176
magister 383, 2
magno opere 503, 1; magno stare '*cost*' 495
majestatis absolvere 527
major 388
male 217; *almost negative* 877 *d*
malignus 367
malo, *inflexions of* 262; malim, mallem, &c. 644 *a*; *followed by subj.* 672
manceps, mancipium 415
mandare 415
mane 217
manedum 276
manere *p.* 142
manes 134, 2. γ.
manifestus 331 (*p.* 132); *with gen. of crime* 527
manus 120; ad manum 801; inter manus 823; per manus 831
mare 134 *fin.*
mas 136
*masculine gender* 86 *foll.*
matertera 919
maturare *with inf.* 534 *a*
maturus *with gen.* 526
maximus 175; *with* quam, quantus 683, 1; ut qui maxime 683, 1.
'*may*' *expressed by* licet 628; *by subj. after* permittit 631, 3; *after* ut 632 (2)
*means, abl. expressing* 489, 499; *by* per 831 *b*
*measure of difference in abl.* 496
med 191
meditari 340
medium viae 520; in media urbe 521; medio, medio tergo 486
medius fidius 417
mehercules 417, 472
mel 142
Melampus 169
melior *declined* 131 *fin.*
melius erat, fuit, &c. *with inf.* 643; *with perf. inf.* 545
memini *p.* 142 *s. v.* -meniscor; *with gen. or acc.* 529; *with pres. and perf. infin.* 543 (4)
Memmiadae 151 *c*
memor *inflexions* 140
memoriter 229 (2)
-men *noun-suffix* 372; *declension of nouns in* 130, 144
Menandru 154, 4
mensis 141
mentem alicujus, venire in 529
merces 147, 2
mererе *p.* 142; *p.* 153; merito 213 (2); *with hypothet. subj.* 644 *b*
meridies 106
-met *suffix to pronouns* 193
metaphora 949
metathesis 943
metonymia 949
*Metre* 923
metuo ut *with subj.* 686; cf. 632, 2
meus *declined* 119; *use* 191; *as possessive gen.* 518; *as objective gen.* 525 *b*; mea refert, interest 519
mi *vocative* 119; *dative* 190, 191
militiae 485
mille *declined* 184; millia *spelling* 178 *fin.*; mille nummum 523 *b*
minari aliquid alicui cf. 468; ni eant, &c. 635, 3: 746; *with inf. object-clause* 434

-mini *suffix of 2nd pl. pass.* 272
minime *as negative* 877 *b*; *in answers* 886; quam minimum 224
minister 383
-mino *imperative suffix* 278; *noun-suffix* 366
Minoidi 170
minor *compar.* 175; capitis 526; minoris *as gen. of price* 494
Minos *declined* 158
minus *as negative* 877 *d*; sin minus 652 *d*; quominus 682 *a, and note*
mire quam 685
miror si *with subj.* cf. 748; *ind.* 747
mirum ni 747; nisi mirumst 747; mirum quam 685 *a*
mis 191
miscere *p.* 143
misereri *p.* 143; *with gen.* 528
miseret *impers.* 575; *p.* 143; *with gen.* 528
mittere *p.* 143; auxilio Caesari 482 *c*; *with infin. of object* 534; *of purpose* 540(3); *with* ad *and gerundive* 547; *with supine* cf. 466, 553; *with* qui, ut *and subj.* 632. 1; 680, 682; missos facio 559
-mno *noun-suffix* 366
-mo *noun-suffix* 351
moderari *p.* 153
modius 915
modo 213(1), 503; *in wishes* 666 *b*; *in concessions* (*subj.*) 676 *c*; (*imper.*) 677 *e*; *with* dum *in provisoes* (*subj.*) 696; *in restrictions with* qui (*subj.*) 710; (*ind.*) 711; modo...modo 867
non modo...sed 689; *general use* 881, 882
moenia *pl.* 100 *f.*
-monio *substantival suffix* 393
mordicus 230
moribus 503, 2
morte multare 495; mortem obire 563
mos *declined* 131, 142; moribus, 503, 2
mostellaria 394
*motion, goal of, accus.* 464, 465; *dat.* 473 *a*; *motion whence* 509, 510, 511
mulcere *p.* 143; *same root as* mulgere 395 *b*; *as* mulcare 401
muliebris 138
mulier *declined* 131
multimodis 407, 232
*multiplicatives* 179
multus *with gen.* 520; *as attribute* 521; 452; multae et graves (*not* multae graves) 865; *compar. and superl.* 175; multum (*adverbial*) 461
mulus 92
municeps 146; *declined* cf. 129
munus 145
*mutes* 3; *mute followed by liquid* 16; 62, 2
myrtus 120, 121

N, *sound of* 2; 6; *affinity to* i 41; *inserted in verb-stems* 295
nae, *see* ne 220
naevus 353
nam 223; *position in sentence* 793; *appended to pronouns* 208, 903
nancisci *p.* 143
nasci *p.* 143
natura 503, 2
natus *with acc.* 460
nauci 117
naufragus 412
navigium 412
navis 134; *declined* 84
ne *in affirmations* 220
ne *negative* 220, 375; *general use* 875 *foll.*; *with subj.* 614, 2; *in wishes* 664, 666 *b*; *with subj.* 668, 682, &c.; *with imper.* 669; *after verbs of fearing* (*subj.*) 686; ne dicam 690; ne...quidem 689, 877 *b*, 884; *after* non modo 881; ne quis, ne quando *for* ut nemo, &c. 877 *c*
ne *in composition* 875
-ne *interrog. particle* 875, 752
nec *simple negative* 219, 876; *disjunctive* 878; *belonging to subordinate clause* 879; necne 887, 752; necnon 883
necare *p.* 143
necesse est *with subj.* 672
necne, necnon, *see* nec
necopinato 506
nedum *with subj.* 688
nefandus 408 *c*
nefas 408, 2
*negative particles distinguished* 875 *foll.*
negligere, neglexi *or* neglegi *p.* 141 *s. v.* lego
nemo 144, 875; *use of* 196
nempe 218
nequam 223
neque, *see* nec; neque enim 878; neque... et, &c. 882
nequeo 266
nequiquam 221
ne quis, &c. *for* ut nemo, &c. 877 *c*
nequiter 229
nescio 408; nescio quis 755
neve, neu 218; *use* 881 *b*
nevis 263
nevis, nevult 263
*neuter gender* 86; *declension* 82; *accus. used adverbially* 224, 461
*neuter verbs* 564; *passive of* 569
nex 142
nexui *p.* 143 *s. v.* necto
ni 221; *general use* 875; quidni *with subj.* 674 *c*; *in conditional sentences* 640, 641; mirum ni 747
nihil, nihilum 117; nihil aliud quam 583; nili *of value* 494, nihil non, non nihil 883
nimis 232
nimium 224
ningit *p.* 143
nisi 221; *general use with subj.* 640 *foll.*; *with indic.* 641 *foll.*; *with subj. after exaggerated statements* 654, 3; *with reported condition* 746; nisi vero, nisi forte 653; *with abl. of circumstances* 505; *with participle* (*dative*) 557
nitor *p.* 143
nix 136
-no *noun-suffix* 366
nocetur 565
nocte 217; cf. 491; noctes '*nights through*' 460
noctu 215
noenum 224

nolo *inflexions of* 262; noli 262, 275; *with infin.* 269; nolo videat 672
nomen *declined* 130; mihi nomen est *with nom* 441 *a*; *with dative* 441 *b*: nomine negligentiae suspectus 504; servus nomine illo 502
*nominal adjectives* 422 *c*; *adverbs* 423 *d*; *nominal predicate* 426—436
*nominative case* 81 *foll.*; *case of subject* 429, 2; 453; *general use* 455—457; *when called vocative* 457; *used as subject to infin.* 539; *as sec. pred. after infin.* 536, 568; *with* en, ecce 456; *use in nom. of gerund and gerundive* 551. *of stems in* -tion *p.* 224 *note*; *of stems in* -bundo 558; *of passive part.* 560; *neuter with passive impersonal* 570
non 224; *general use* 876, 877; *with jussive subj.* 668, 670; *jussive interrog.* 674; *consecutive* 704; *in restrictions* 714 *c*; *concessions* (ut non) 714 *d*, et non 878; an non 887
nonae 917
nonne 885, 886
nonnemo, nonnullus, &c. 883, 897
nonnunquam 237, 883
non quia, non quod, &c. (*subj.*) 740, 2; (*ind.*) 741 *fin.*
nonvis 263
nos 190; *for* me 904; *what substitute in reported speech* 767, 768 *c*, *Caesar's use* 767
noscere *p.* 143
noster *general use* 192: *as possessive* 518, 525; nostrum omnium 518; nostri, nostrum *as partitive gen.* 520; *as objective* 525; nostra refert, &c. 519
nostras 137
*Noun defined* 421; *inflexions* 80 *foll.*; *formation of* 341 *foll.*; *arrangement of noun-suffixes* 350
ns *often for* nts 21; n *omitted* 25
nubere *p.* 144; *with dative* 474: nuptum dare 466; nupta *p.* 153
nubes *declined* 126
nudius tertius 407
nudus *with abl.* 498; nuda pedem 471
nullus 195; nulli (*gen.*), nullae (*dat.*) 196; nullius, &c. *used for* neminis, &c. 196; nullius rei *for* nihili 117; nullus non, nonnullus 883, 897; ne ullus *for* ut nullus 878
num 224; *as interrog.* 885, 886, 751; *in indirect questions* 750
*Number, noun-inflexion of* 98 *foll.*; *liable to attraction* 451; *use of verb inflexions* 571 *foll.*
*Numerals* 178 *foll.*
numerus *declined* 109; numero (*adv.*) 213
nunc 224
nunciam 223
nundinae 100 *e*
nunquam 224
nurus 120
nusquam 223
nutiquam (neutiquam) 223
nux 142

O, *sound of* 2, 12; *shortening of* o 32, 57; o *changed to* u 34, 36; *also to* e *and* i 36, *retained after* v 42; *contracted with* i 47; *with* e *or* i 48: *in 1st pers. sing.* 268; *quantity when final* 56
o *with vocative* 457; *with accus.* 472; o si 662
ob 222; obs 230; *general use* 827
*object, several kinds of* 454; *direct in accus.* 468 *foll.*; *two direct objects* 470; *indirect object* (*dat.*) 474 *foll.*; *secondary object* (*gen.*) *after verbs* 52; *after nouns* 525, 527 *foll.*; *infinitive* 534, 541; *infin. sentence as object* 535
obire (*sc.* mortem) 563
obiter 229 *fin.*
*oblique cases* 437, 438; *contrasted* 453, 454
*oblique oration, see* oratio
oblivisci *p.* 144; *has inchoative suffix* 296; *with gen. or acc.* 529
obsolescere *p.* 144
obviam 223
occalui 591, 4
occasus *p.* 153
occidere *p.* 136 *s. vv.* caedo *and* cado
occidione occidere 503, 2
occiput 147
occulere *p.* 144; occultus odii 526
ocellus 377
-oci *noun-suffix* 356
ocior 175, 1
odi *p.* 144; odio esse 482 *a*
odor 145
Oedipus *declined* 169
ohe 416
-ola *verbal stem-suffix* 400
olere *p.* 144
olim 226
olli *&c.* 198
-olo *suffix to noun-stems* 375
*omission of vowels* 39; *of consonants* 21 *foll.*
omnimodis 407
omnino 213
omnis 134, 10 *a*: omnium nostrum 518
-ōn- *noun-suffix* 371; -ōn 373, 374; *Greek stems* 171
-ono- *noun-suffix* 369
*onomatopoea* 949
'*one*' *indef. how expressed in Latin* 907; '*one another*' 908
onus *declined* 131
opera eadem, una 503, 1; operae est 482 *a*; operae pretium est 516
opere *with* magno, &c. 503, 1
operire *p.* 145 *s. v.* perio
oportet 144; *called impersonal* 575; *with inf.* 643 *b*, *with inf. object-sentence* 537; *with past part. accus.* 585; *with subj* 672
opperiri *p.* 145 *s. v.* perio
oppido 213
ops 142; opis, opes 101
*optative subj.* 664—666
opus 145; opus est *with abl.* 500; *with accus.* 500; *with abl. neuter pass. part.* 507; *with infin. obj. sentence* 537
-or *noun-suffix* 387; *declension of stems in* 131
*oratio obliqua defined* 762: *general rules for moods, &c.* 763 *foll.*; *use of tenses* 766; *use of pronouns* 767; *tabular statement* 768; *examples* 769 *foll.*

*order of words* 780; *of sentences* 794
*ordinal numbers* 178 *foll.*; *order in compounding* 186, *used in giving date* 187
ordo 144; recte atque ordine 503, *z*; extra ordinem 818
*origin, abl. of* 512
oriri *p.* 144, oriundus *ib.*
-oro *noun-suffix* 384
Orpheus 160
ortus *with abl.* 512
-os *in nom. sing. of o-stem* 84; cf. 36
os, ossis 142; os, oris 142
-oso *noun-suffix* 363
ossua 120
-oto *noun-suffix* 359
ovans *p.* 144
*oxymoron* 950

P 3
pace horum dixerim, cf. 666
pacisci *p.* 144
paene 217
paeninsula 406; *use with perfect* 608 *b*; 654, 3
paenitet *p.* 144; *impersonal* 575; *with perf. infin.* 545
palam 223; *general use* 829
palus 147 (2)
pangere *p.* 144
panis 134, 2 γ
*paragoge* 943
parcere *p.* 144; *with dat.* 474 *a*, 569
*parenthesis*, 943
*parenthetical verbs* 671, 673, 751
pārĕre, *p.* 145
părĕre *p.* 145
paries 143
Paris 170 (2)
*parisyllabic nouns* 134, 141
*paronomasia* 950
pars *to express fractions* 189; partem maximam 462; partes *and* pars 101; alii... pars 577
'*part concerned*' *in abl.* 497; *in gen.* 526; *acc. (of part of body)* 471
*Participles* 336; *defined* 422 *d*; *general use* 436, 555—560; *used as ordinary noun-adjectives* 561 *a*; *as substantives* 561 *b*; *often used in abl. of attendant circumstances* 505
partim 227; *with plural verb* 574
*partitive genitive* 520—522
parum 224; 877 *d*; *with gen.* 522
parvi esse 494
pascere 143; *with abl.* 499
passim 227 (1)
*Passive inflexions* 246 *foll.*; *general meaning* 565 *foll.*; *construction* 568; *tenses* 590
passum 357, 2
passus '*a pace*' 360; 913
patefacere 413
pater 141; *declined* 131
paterfamilias 103, 406
pati *p.* 145
patruelis 380, 919
paucis 503, 1
paullus 377; paullatim 227
-pe 218
pedetemptim 227 (1)
pejor 175, 388, *declined* 162, *cf.* 114
pelagus 164
pellere 145. *with abl.* 511; *has* e *before* ll 41
pelvis 134, 2 γ
*penalty expressed by abl.* 495
penates 100, 137
pendere 145; pendere animis 485
penes 231; *use of* 830
penitus 231
*pentameter* (*dactylic*) 927, 6
penus 121
-per *adv. suffix* 228
per *general use* 831; *in compounds* 832; (pergratus, &c.) 408, 2; per tempus 831; *separated from its case* 798; cf. 831 *b*
percussi *p.* 139 *s. v.* ferio, cf. quatio
perdere *p.* 138 *s. v.* do; perduint 280; qui illum di perduint 666 *b*
peregre, peregri 221
*Perfect stem* 242; *how formed* 308; *by reduplication* 309; *by lengthening stem-vowel* 310; *by suffixing* s 311; *by suffixing* u 312 *foll.*, *by suffixing* v 316 *foll.*; *tenses formed from perfect stem* 304 *foll.*
*Perfect indicative personal inflexions* 268, 270—274: *corresponds to two English tenses* 589; *contrasted with imperfect* 590, 591; *general use* 607, 608; *perf. pass. with* sum *and* fui *distinguished* 590; *in absolute statements of power, &c.* 643 *b*; *of repeated actions* 608, 2 *c. d*; *with* cum, ubi, &c. 721; *use with* paene 654, 3; *with* postquam 608 *c*; *with* dum 695; *with* priusquam 699
*Perfect subjunctive inflexions* 281; *general use* 619 *b*; *in conditional sentences* 638 *b*, 640 *b*; (fuerim *with part. fut.*) 629, 630; *in modest assertions* 644; *in prohibitions* 668; *in final* 678; cf. 682, 686; *consecutive* 624, 633; *concessive* 676
*Perfect infinitive formation* 304—307; *as object to* possum, debeo, &c. 541 *a*; volo 541 *b* (*p.* 220); *as oblique predicate* 542; *after* memini 543; *as (direct) secondary predicate* 544; *as subject to* melius erit, &c. 545
Pergama (*pl.*) 100 *a*; Pergami 485
pergere *p.* 147 *s. v.* rego
periculum 376; meo periculo 504
perinde 220; ut 715 *a*
*periphrasis* 950
*periphrastic conjugation* (*so called*) 512; cf. 628
perire *as pass. of* perdere *p.* 138 *s. v.* do; peream si non...erat 657 *b*
peritus *p.* 145 *s. v.* -perio
perosus *p.* 144 *s. v.* odi
perperam 223
Perseus, *mythical hero* 160: Perses, Perseus, *king of Macedon* 160 *fin.*; Persa, Perses '*a Persian*' 151 *b*; Persis 170
*personal inflexions of verbs* 241; 267 *foll.*; *use of* 427, 428; *in detail* 571 *foll.*
*personal pronouns* 190 *foll.*; *defined* 421 *a*
pertaesum est *p.* 150 *s. v.* taedet
pes 142; *declined* 129; *measure* 913, 914
pessimus 175

pessum dare, ire 117; 405 *a*
petere 303 *d*; *p.* 145; petit *with long* i 306 *fin.*
*Phalaecian verse* 930, 15
*Pherecratian verse* 930, 16
-phon, -phont, *Greek noun-stems in* 168
phy 416
Phyllis *declined* 166 (*p.* 58)
piget *p.* 145; *how used* 575; me morum piget 528
pinguis *comp. and superl.* 176, 3 *a*
pinsere, pisere *p.* 145
pinus 121
Piraeeus 160
pius *declined* 118; piissimus 176, 3
*place whence* 500; (*with prep.*) 510; *where* 485; (*with prep.*) 487; *to which* 464; (*with prep.*) 465
placitus *p.* 153
plane 216
*plants, gender of names of* 94
plaudere *and compounds p.* 145
plebes 107; plebs 136
plectere '*strike*,' *p.* 145; '*twine*' (*with compounds*) *p.* 146
plenus *with gen. or abl.* 530
*pleonasmus* 943
plerique *use of* 521; plerumque 224
-plex *numeral adj. in* 179
plicare *compounds of, p.* 146
-plo- *numeral adj. in* 179
pluit *p.* 146; *impersonal* 575 *b*
*Pluperfect indic. how formed* 304 *foll.*; *general use* 611; *contrasted with imperf.* 591; *passive* 590; *in absolute statements of power, &c.* 643 *d*; *in apodosis of conditional sentences* 641 *d*; *with subj. protasis* 634, 4; *in letters* 611 *b*; *of repeated actions* 611 *d*; *with* cum, ut, &c. 721; *with* postquam 611 *c*; *not used with* dum, donec, &c. 693
*Pluperfect subjunctive, how formed* 304 *foll.*; 281, 282; *general use* 620; *in conditional sentences* 638, 640 *d*; *in apodosis to exaggeration* 654, 4; *in reported conditions* 746; *in wishes* 666 *b*; *commands* 670; *concessions* 676; *in final sentences* 678, 682; *after* donec 694; *with* cum '*when*' 722; '*whenever*' 720; facturus fuisses 630
*Plural of nouns usually singular* 99; *with no singular* 100; *suffixes of verbs* 269, 272, 274; *without subject expressed* 574, 3; *with singular subject* 577; *with several nouns for subject* 578, cf. 579; *with* alius..alius 582; nos *for* ego 904
plus 136, cf. 175; pluris facere, &c. 494
poema 168
pol 417
Pompeius *vocative of* 112; *pronunciation* 17
pondo 117
pone 220; *use of* 833
ponere *p.* 146
por- *in composition* 834
porricere *p.* 140 *s. v.* jacio
porro 213 *fin.*
porta ingredi 490
portubus 120 *fin.*
poscere *p.* 146; *with two acc.* 470
*position of words in sentence* 780 *foll.*; *of subordinate sentences* 794; *of prepositions* 798; *in prosody* 62
posivi *p.* 146 *s. v.* pono
posse 259, 261; *with infin.* 534; *with perf. inf.* 541 *a*; *impersonal* 570; possum, &c. *used where* possim, &c. *might be expected* 643; *in apodosis of conditional sentence* 628; potuerit *in lieu of dependent plup. subj. pass.* 630, 652 *a.* 2; tentare, &c. si possit 748; facere non possum quin 712 *b*; quam maximas potest 683, 1
*possessive genitive* 516 *foll.*, 518
*possessor in gen.* 516; *dat.* 479
possidere *p.* 148 *s. v.* sedeo
post 228; *comp. and superl.* 175, 1 *p.* 63; *general use* 835; post esse, &c. 835
poste, postea 212, 228; quid postea 835
posterus 175
posthac 212
postibi 222
postidea 212
postis 134, 2. γ
postmodo 213
postquam (posteaquam) *general use* 723; *with imperf.* 606; *perf.* 608, 1 *c*; *pluperf.* 611 *c*
postridie 491
postumus *p.* 63
potare *p.* 146
pote 261
potens 259 *fin.*; *in compounds* 415
*Potential mood* 642
potesse 261; potestur 261
potiri *p.* 146; *with abl.* 500; *with gen.* 530
potis, pote 261; *comp. and superl.* 175
potissimum 224
potivi, potui *p.* 146 *s. v.* potior
potius quam *with subj.* 698, 700; *with infin.* 701; quam ut (*subj.*) 700 *b*
potui aqua 481; *cf.* 554; potum *p.* 146 *s. v.* poto
prae 212; *general use* 836; *in composition* 408, 2; 837; praequam 223, 836; praeut 836
praebere *p.* 140 *s. v.* habeo
praecordia (*pl.*) 100 *d*; 390, 2 *c*
praeditus *p.* 138 *s. v.* do
praeesse 261
praefiscini 221
Praeneste 140
praenomina 961
praes 142
praesens 261
praesepe 140
praesertim 227; *with* qui (*subj.*) 718; *with* cum (*subj.*) 734
praeses 146
praesidio relinquere, &c. 482 *c*
praestare *p.* 149 *s. v.* sto; *with acc.* 469 *a*
praesto esse 213 (1)
praeter 229 (3); *general use* 838; praeterea, praeterhac 212; praeterquam 838
praeut 836
praevaricari 398
prandere *p.* 146; pransus *ib.*
precario 213
precem 142
precor 258

*Predicate defined* 426; *contrasted with attribute* 428, 430 *note*;
*primary* 431, 432; *formed by infin.* (*direct*) 539; *oblique* 434, 535;
*secondary* 431, 433, 441 *b*; *after infin.* 435; *instead of adverb* 452, *in special case* 438; *formed by infin.* 536; *by participle* 436, 557; *after* licet 435 (2); 537 *c*; *oblique* 431; *formed by infin.* 434, 435, 535; *in exclamations* 538; *by gerundive* 552; *past participle* 559; *with accus. cognate* 461; *with accus. in exclamations* 472; *of unexpressed subject of infinitive* 537 *c*; *with abl. of description &c.* 502; *of manner* 503; *of attendant circumstances* 504, 505; *after* nisi 557; nomen est 441 *b*; audire 441 *b*
prehendere *p.* 146
premere *p.* 146
*Prepositions defined* 423 *e*; *general use* 438, 795 *foll.*; *position in sentence* 782, 798; *with accus. of extent* 463; *place to which* 465; *goal* (*generally*) 467; *abl. of place at which* 487; (*generally*) 508; *place whence* 510; (*generally*) 514; *effect in composition* 469
*Present stem* 242; *how formed* 295 *foll.*; *tenses formed from it* 283 *foll.*
*Present tense*; *personal inflexions* 267
*Indicative inflexions* 283; *general use of* 592 *foll.*; *passive* 590; *historical present* 594; *followed by primary and secondary tenses* 621; *in statements of power, &c.* 643 *a*; *in questions of future action* 675 *a*; *cf.* 597; *of exhortation* 675 *c*; *with* antequam, &c. 598, 699; dum 595, 598, 695, 697; *though qualifying an infin.* 765 *c*; *with* jampridem 596
*Subjunctive*: *inflexions* 279, 280; *general use* 616—619; *following historical present* 621; *in consecutive sentences* 623; *in hypothetical and conditional* 638 *a*, 640 *a*; 626, 627; *in prohibitions* 668; *in reported speech* 766, 758 B
*Imperative*; *inflexions* 275; *use* 613, 669
*Infinitive*; *inflexions* 287, 288; *use* 541—545; *with* memini 543 (4); *historic* 539
*Participle*; *inflexions* 361, 127; *use* 555
pretio 495
*Priapean verse* 930, 18
pridie 491
*primary predicate* 431; *tenses* 587
primus 175, 178; *used predicatively* 433 *b*; 434; primus quisque 899; primo 213 (3); primum 224; cum primum 725; primum...deinde 869
princeps 146; *declined* 129
principio 488
prior 175, 178
priusquam *with ind.* 699; *esp. present* 598; *perf.* 608 *c*; *subj.* 698; *infin.* 701
privignus 367
privilegium 390, 2. *c*.
pro (*prep.*) 19; *general use* 830; *in composition with verbs* 840; *with nouns* 408, 2; 410; prout 715 *a*, *b*; pro eo ut 715 *b*; pro eo quanti 839 *e*
pro *or* proh 416
proavus 919, 403
probeo *p.* 140 *s. v.* habeo
proclive, proclivi 221
proconsul 410
procul 228; *general use* 841
prod 19, 840
profecto 213 (1)
proficisci *p.* 138 *s. v.* facio
proh 416
prohibere ne, *or* quominus, *with subj.* 632, 2; *with infin.* 681; prohibessit 291
*prohibitions subj.* 668; *imper.* 669
proinde 220, 839
*prolepsis* 943
proles 134
*Pronouns*: (1) *demonstrative defined cf.* 422 *a*; *declined* 197—203; *classified by place and time* 236, 237; *distinguished in use* 890; *position in sentence* 785; *often attracted in gender and number* 451;
(2) *indefinite*: *declined* 207, 208; *distinguished in use* 897, 898; *Engl.* '*one*' 917;
(3) *interrogative*: *declined* 204 *foll.*; *distinguished* 903
(4) *personal*: *declined* 190; *often omitted* 576; 904 *foll.*
(5) *possessive*: *declined* 119; *how used* 191, 192, 518; *with gen. of subst.* 441 *b and note*; *used for objective gen.* 525;
(6) *reflexive*: *declined* 190, 191; *how used* 891 *foll.*;
(7) *relative*: *declined* 204 *foll.*; *in simple definitions* 703; *in final sentences* 680; *in consecutive sentences* 704; *in restrictions* 710; *in conditional sentences* (*subj.*) 650 *b*; (*ind.*) 651 *b*; *of attendant circumstances* 719; *in reported definition* 740 (1)
propalam 223
prope 218; *general use* 842; *comp. and superl.* 175, 1. (*p.* 63)
propedum 225
propemodo 213 (1); propemodum 224
propior, propius *with acc.* 463
propter 229; *general use* 843
prorsus 214
prosa 25 *a*
*Prosody* 51 *foll.*; *in early dramatic verse* 69
prosopopoeia 950
*protasis* 650; 943
protenus 230; *cf.* 854; protinam 223
*proviso expressed by* ita ut...ne 634; modo *with subj.* 676 *c*; dum 656
proximus 218; 175, 1; *with acc.* 463; proximum est ut (*subj.*) 682 *b*
Prusias *declined* 149
-pse *appended to pronouns* 202
-pti *appended to pronouns* 193
pubes 147 (2)
publicitus 231
pudet *p.* 146; *impersonal use* 575; *with gen.* 528
puer *declined* 109

puerpera 412
pulcher, *comp. and superl. of* 174
pulvis 147 (2)
pungere *p.* 146
puppis *declined* 126
*purpose, dat. of* 482; *cf. also* 481; *expressed by infin.* 540 (3); *fut. part. with* sum 612; *subj. with* qui, ut, &c. 678 *foll.*
putare *with infin. object-sentence* 535: putabam, putaram 591, 2; putasses 646; puta 54
puteal 380
putefacere, putrefacere 413
putus 323
*Pythiambic stanza* 938 P, Q.

Q 7; *often changed to* c 42
qua (*nom. acc.*) 204
qua (*abl.*) 236; qua...qua 867; quatenus quadamtenus 212
quadrantal 915
quadrifariam 223
quadriga 409 *a*; *plur.* 100 *f*
quaerere *p.* 146; quaero si *with subj.* 748
quaeso *p.* 146; quaesumus 269
qualis, qualiscumque 234
quam 223; '*how?*' 750; '*how*' 685 *a*; '*as*' *after* tam 683, 1; '*than*' 683, 2; *in various senses after* ante 598, 698, 701; citius 645 *b*; 699 *b*; contra 810 *c*; mirum 685 *a*; mire 685 *b*; oppido 685 *b*; post 606, 608 *c*, 611 *c*, 723; potius 700, 701; praeter 838; prius 598, 698—701; tam 660, 661; valde 685 *b*; ultra 857
quamde 220
quamquam 711 *b*; '*and yet*' 871, 6
quam vis 407; *with ind.* 677 *b*; *subj.* 676 *b*
quam volet, &c. 676 *b*, 677 *d*
quando 215, 741; quandoque 219; quandocunque 215, 900
quantus 683; quanti 494; quantiquanti 900
quapropter 212, 843
quartus 357
quasi 221; *with subj.* 660; *ind.* 661
quatenus 212; '*inasmuch as*' (*ind.*) 741; '*how far*' *dep. question* (*subj.*) 750
quatere *p.* 147
-que *appended to pronouns* 219
-que '*and*' *general use* 859—864
queo 266; *p.* 147
quercus 120, 121 (*p.* 40)
*questions, direct* 749; *with particles, simple* 885, 886; *alternative* 887; *dependent* 750; *quasi-dependent* 751; *dubitative* 674; *expressing surprise, &c.* 675; cf. 787; *repeated in surprise* 756, 757 *c* *with* quidni 674 *c*; quid si 658, 659; quin (*ind.*) 675 *c*; (*subj.*) 754; satin 675 *b*; satin ut 687
qui (*adj.*) *declined* 204; *compounds of* 208; *position in sentence* 788: *sometimes before preposition* 782, 798; *attracted in gender, &c.* 451; *relation to antecedent* 450; '*such*' 719 *b*; sunt qui (*subj.*) 706; (*ind.*) 707; qui '*since he*' (*subj.*) 718; '*for he*' (*ind.*) 719; qui praesertim (*subj.*) 718; quippe qui (*subj.*) 718; (*ind.*) 719; ut qui (*subj.*) 718; qui quidem, qui modo (*subj.*) 710; (*ind.*) 711
qui (*abl. and adv.*) 221, 206
quia 210, 212; *with subj.* 740, 2; *with ind.* 741
quicunque 208; *in limiting clauses* (*ind.*) 711 *b*; *of frequent cases* (*subj.*) 720; (*ind.*) 721; *used absolutely* 900
quid *distinguished from* quod 207, 208; *as acc. of extent* 461; quid opust facto 507; quid multa 583, 883; quid ni 674 *c*; quid si 658, 659; quid est causae cur 750; quid est causae quin 754; scio quid quaeras 753
quidam 208; *general use* 897
quidem 225, 677 *a*; *place in sentence* 793 *c*; et quidem 677 *b*; ne...quidem 689, 884, 877 *b*; qui quidem 710, 711; quandoquidem, si quidem 741
quies 147 (2)
quilibet 208; *general use* 898; cf. 676 *c*
quin 228; *interrog.* 675 *c*; *with imper. and ind.* 675; *dependent* 681; *in final sentences* 682 *a*; *consecutive* 712 *a*, *b*; *dependent interrog.* 754; *for* qui non 704, 706; *after* quid est causae 754; dici non potest 754; facere non possum 713 *b*; paulum afuit 713 *b*; vix temperare 682 *a*; non habere 682 *a*; nemo fuit 706; non fallere 754; non est dubium 635, 4
quinam 208
quingenti 178, 358
quinque, quini, &c. 178
quipiam 209
quippe 218; *with relative* (*subj.*) 718; (*ind.*) 719
quiqui 209 (*p.* 76)
quis *indef.* 207, 897; *interrog.* 207, 903: *compounds* 208; *stem and original cases* 210; quid faciat? quid agerem? &c. 674; quid commemoro 675; nescio quis 755, 897
quis *for* quibus 206
quisnam 208
quispiam 209; *general use* 897
quisquam 209; *general use* 898; nec quisquam 878
quisque 209; cf. 219; *general use* 899; *after* primus, optimus, quotus, unus 899; *with* se, suus 582, 899; ut quisque 721
quisquiliae 100 *f*
quisquis 209; *in limiting clauses* 711 *b*; *used absolutely* 900
quivis 208; *general use* 898
quo 213, 236; *interrog.* quo mihi 472, 479, 583; *relative, of price* cf. 680; quo...eo 496; quo...hoc *with comparative* (*ind.*) 683, 2; quo *with compar.* (*subj.*) 682 *a*; quo minus (*ind.*) 683 (2); (*subj.*) 681, 682; si quo, ne quo 236
quoad 213 (4); *with subj.* 692; *with ind.* 693, 695
quocirca 213, 806
quod *rel. adj.* 204; *distinguished from* quid 207, 208; quod bonum...sit 666; quod commodum est, cf. 677 *d*; quod tuo commodo fiat 710; quod in te fuit 711 *a*; quod quaeris 753; quod sciam 710: quod sentio 753; quod valeat (= ut id v.) 708; cf. 680
quod '*because*' (*ind.*) 741; (*subj.*) 740, 2; '*the fact that*' 713; quod dicas 744; diceret 742; quod scribis 743

quod si, nisi, quoniam, &c. 871, 5
quom 42; *see* cum
quominus, *see* quo
quonam 213, 236
quondam 223, 237
quoniam 223; *of time* 723; *of reason* 741: quod quoniam 871, 5
quoquam 236
quoque *position in sentence* 793 *c*
quoquoversus 214
quor 42; *see* cur
quorsum 214
quot 234; quotannis 232; quotcunque, quotquot 234
quotidie 491
quotiens, quoties 233, 234; *with ind.* 721
quotiescumque *with ind.* 721
quotus 234; quisque 899
quum, *see* cum

R *how pronounced* 13; *often arises from* s 28; *has affinity to* e 41; *has* e *often omitted before it* 39
*radical vowels when changed* 34
rapere *p.* 147
ratus *p.* 147 *s. v.* reor
raucus 354
ravio *p.* 147
ravis 134. 2. γ
re-, red- *in compos.* 408, 1. 2; 844
reapse 202
receptui signum 473 *g*
recidere 844
recipere aliquem tecto 489
recta 490; rectus judicii 526
recte 216; nec recte 876
recusare ne *or* quominus *with subj.* 681, 682
red, *see* re-
reddere *p.* 138 *s. v.* do; *with pass. part.* 559
redimitus *with acc. and abl.* 471
*reduplication in forming words* 342; *in present stem* 295, 1; *in perfect stem* 309; *in compounds* 339, 4
referre *p.* 139 *s. v.* fero
refert *p.* 139 *s. v.* fero; *with gen.* 517; mea 519
refertus *with gen. and abl.* 530
*reflexive pron. see pronouns; probably origin of passive inflexions* 268 *and note; meaning of inflexions* 566, 567
regere *p.* 147
regifugium 414
regione 486
*relative pron. see Pronouns*
relinquere *with double dat.* 482 *c*
reliquus *or* relicuus 844; nihil esse reliqui 522
remex 146
reminisci *with gen. or acc.* 529
repente 217 (2)
reperior abisse 536
repperi 145 *s. v.* pario 844
reri *p.* 147
res *declined* 106, 107; re 484, 4; e re tua 817 *b*
resipiscere *p.* 148 *s. v.* sapio
resonare *with acc.* 469 *b*
respublica 406 *b*
*result, clause expressing,* 702 *foll.*
rete 134, 2. γ; *declined* 127; reticulus 117
retro 845; retrorsum 214
reus *with gen.* 527
rictus 121 (*p.* 40); *p.* 147 *s. v.* ringor
ridere *p.* 147
-rimo *suffix of superlative* 174 *a*; 351
rite 217 (2)
*rivers, names of, masculine* 96
rogare *with two direct objects* 470; *with past participle* 559
ros 142; ros marinus 406 *b*
ruere *p.* 147
rumpere *p.* 147
rursum, &c. 214
rus 142; rus ire 464; rure (*place where*) 486; *place whence* 509
rutus 323

S *how pronounced* 13; *often omitted when final* 19; *often changed to* r 28; *suffix to perfect stem* 311; *in supine stem* 332 *foll.*; *used in archaic future* 291, 292
-sa- *verbal stem ending* 399
saepe 217 (2)
saepire *p.* 147
sal 142
Salamis 171
salire *p.* 147
sallere *p.* 147
saltare Cyclopa 469
saltem 225
salve *p.* 147
salvis legibus 504
sane 216; *in concessions* 677 *a*; *in answers* 886
sapere *p.* 148
*Sapphic verse major* 930, 21; *minor* 930, 14; *stanzas* 938 H. I.
sat, *see* satis; sat agere *p.* 135 *s. v.* ago
satis 232; satin' 885; *with indic.* 675 *b*
satur 110; *no superl.* 175, 3; *with gen.* 530
*Saturnian verse* 937
saucia pectus 462
sc *initial affects preceding vowel* 67
-sc- *inchoative suffix to verbs* 397, 5; *to present stem* 296
scalae (*pl.*) 100 *f*
scalpere *p.* 148
*scazon verse* 933, 28
scibam, scibo 285, 284
scilicet 405 *a*
scire quid quaeras, quod quaeris 753; scin 885; *with logically dependent question* 751; quod sciam 710
sciscere *p.* 148
Scipiadas, &c. 151
scribere *p.* 148; Roma (*abl.*) 509
scriptulum 189, 3; 912
scriptura 384
se, sed (*prep.*) 846
se, sui *pron.* 190 *foll.*; *general use* 891 *foll.*; se ipse 893; se quisque 899; inter se 908
secare *p.* 148
*secondary predicate* 431, 433 *foll.*; *secondary tenses* 587
secundum 224; *general use* 847
secus 230; non secus ac 663; *appended to locatives* 226

sed '*but*' 228; cf. 846; *general use* 871; *repeated* 424
sedere *p.* 148
sedes 134, 1
sella 377
semel 228
sementis 140
semestris 385
semis 189, 3; 909; *in composition* 409 *a*
semol 228
semper 228
senarius 180
senati 121 (*p.* 40)
senex 141; *comp.* 175
sensim 227
*sentence defined* 426
sententia mea 504; ex animi sententia, cf. 711 *a*
sentes (*pl.*) 134, 2. γ
sentire *p.* 148
seorsum 214
septem, septuaginta 178
*sequence of tenses* 619 foll.
sequi *p.* 148; *principal tenses* 258
serere '*sow*' *p.* 148; '*put in rows*' *p.* 148
serus *with gen.* 526; spe serius 513 *b*
servire servitutem 461 *b*
servus (servos), &c. *declined* 84
sesqui 189, 7
sestertium 910; sestertius 909
set, *see* sed
seu 218; *general use* 872, 873; *in sentences of frequency* 720
sextans 189, 3
sextarius 394; *contents* 915
si 221; *in regular conditional sentences* 626–630; (*subj.*) 640; (*ind.*) 641; *with imper. apodosis* 655; *in reported condition* 746; cf. 747; *in wishes* 662; *of frequent actions* 721; *with infin. in or. obl.* 765 *b*; si...si non (*subj.*) 651 *d*; (*ind.*) 652 *d*; si forte 657 *a*; si maxume (*subj.*) 650 *c*; (*ind.*) 651 *c*; si quidem 221, 741
ac si (*subj.*) 660; et si (*ind.*) 651 *c*; '*but*' 871, 6; etiam si (*subj.*) 650 *c*; (*ind.*) 651 *c*; expecto si 748; minor si (*ind.*) 747; nisi 640, 641, 654, 746, &c.; o si 662; quasi (*subj.*) 660; (*ind.*) 661; cf. 663; quaero si 748; quid si (*subj.*) 658; (*ind.*) 659; quod si 871, 5; tam et si (*subj.*) 650 *c*; (*ind.*) 651 *c*; tamquam si (*subj.*) 660; tento si 748; velut si 660
sibi, *see* se
-sibili- *adjectival suffix* 379
sic 221
sicilicus 189, 3
sicut, sicuti 715 *a*, *d*; 660
siem 260, 280
signum receptui 473 *g*
silentio 503, 2
simia 92
similis 138; *superl.* 174 *b*; *with dat.* 474 *c*; *gen.* 525 *a*
simitu 215, 848
Simois 168
simplex 139, 179
simul 228; *general use* 848; simul ac *with ind.* 721
sin 228; *with subj.* 650 *d*; *with ind.* 651 *d*
sine 220; *general use* 849; *not with gerund* 549 *b*
sinere *p.* 148; sirim *ib.*; *with object-sentence* 535
singillatim 227
*singular*, *nouns found only in* 99
singuli *use of* 188, 899
sinister *comp. and superl.* 174 *a*; sinistrorsum 214
-sion *noun-suffix* 374
siquidem 221, 741
sirim, &c. *p.* 148 *s. v.* sino
sis (*from* esse) 280; = si vis 263
sistere *p.* 148; 295 (1)
-sita *verbal frequentative suffix* 399
sive 218; *general use* 872, 873; sive...sive *with ind.* 651 *d*
-so (*for* -to) *participial suffix* 357; cf. 332
-so; -sso *old futures in* 291; *use of* 293, 610
sobrinus 919; cf. 921
socer, socrus 90, 920
Socrates *declined* 162
sodes 417 *a*
solere *p.* 149; *with infin.* 534
*soloecismus* 951
solus 195; non solum...sed, &c. 881, 882
solvere *p.* 149; solvendo esse 481; solutus opera 511
somnus 366
sonare *p.* 149
sorbere *p.* 149
sordes *pl.* 100 *f*
sortilegus 412
sortiri *p.* 153; sortito 506
*Sotadean verse* 931, 23
spatii sex dies 523 *b*
specere *p.* 149
sperare *with infin.* 534
spernere *p.* 149
spes 106, 107; *with infin. object-sentence* 535
spondere *p.* 149
sponsione lacessere ni 746 *b*
sponte 217, 2; 503, 2
ss *arising from* tt *or* dt 27; cf. 332 *foll.*; *in other cases*, 292
-sso, *see* -so
st *interj.* 416; *for* est 269
stare *p.* 149, cf. 299; *with abl. of* '*place where*' 486; magno illi stare 494; per aliquem stare quominus (*subj.*) 682
statim 227
stem *defined* 76; *stem-suffixes* 344 (2); *verb-stems* 395 *foll.*
-sti *verbal personal suffix* 270
stipem 142
stipendium 412
strabo 373
strictim 227
strigilis 140
stringere *p.* 149
struere *p.* 149
strues 134
-su *for* -tu 360, 332
suadere *p.* 149
suamet, suapte 193; cf. 220
sub, subs 222; *general use* 850; *in compos.* 851
subinde 220, 237

*subject* 426; *in what case* 429, 2; cf. 455, 535; *sometimes attracted into case of predicate* 451; *contained in finite verb* 571; *not separately expressed* e. g. '*persons in general*' 574; *of impersonal verbs* 575; *composed of several persons or things* 578; *expressed by infinitive mood* 537, 545; *by* quod *with indic.* 713
*Subjunctive: inflexions* 279–282; *imperfect* 286; *perfect and pluperf.* 304 *foll.*; *general use* 614, 615; *use of tenses* 616–625: *see also* 638, 668, 678; *in reported speech* 768 B, *typical examples* 626–636
*in the following sentences: Concessive* 676; *with* ut 714 *d*; *Conditional* 650 *foll.*; *reported condition* 746; *Consecutive* 702 *foll.*; *Dependent on subj.* 758, 760, 2; *on infinitive* 760, 1; *dependent question of fact* 750; *of command* 674 *b*; *with* quin 754; *Final* 678 *foll.*; *Hypothetical* 638 *foll.*; *Interrogative of command* 674; *repeated in surprise* 756; *Jussive* 668 *foll.*; *Optative* 666; *Restrictive* 710, 714
*with or after the following words:* absque te 650 *a*; antequam 698; cave 672; censeo 631, 3; ceu 660; cum '*whenever*' 720; '*when*' 722; '*since*' 728; '*although*' 732, 734; '*such that then*' 706; dico 672; dignus qui 680; donec 692, 694; dum '*until*' 692 *a*; '*while*' 692 *b*; '*provided that*' 696; dummodo 696; est cum 706; est quod 708; etiamsi 650 *c*; forsitan 754; hortor 672; licet, licebit 677 *c*; modo *in concession* 676 *c*; (*with* qui) 710; ne '*not*' 668, 670; '*lest*' 682 *foll.*; necesse est 672; nedum 688; nolo 672; non quia, non quo 740; nuntia 672; o si 662; oportet 672; permitto 631, 3; postulo 631, 3; potiusquam 700; priusquam 698; quamvis 676 *b*; quasi 660; qui (*adj.*) causal 718; qui *conditional* 650 *b*; qui *consecutive* 704–708; qui *final* 680; qui *restrictive* 710; quia 740; quicumque 720; quidni 674 *c*; quid si 658; quin 681; quippe qui 718; quo 682 *a*; quoad 692; quod 740; quominus 682; si, *see s. v.*; sicuti 660; si maxume 650 *c*; sunt qui 706; taimetsi 650 *c*; tamquam 660; timeo ut 686; ubi '*whenever*' 720; velut 660; vide ne 682 *a*; vide ne non 686; vide ut 686, 750; vide quam 750; ut, *see s. v.*; utinam 666 *b*; ut pote qui 718
*in such expressions as* censuerim, non facile dixerim, &c. 644; crederes, putes 646; ne dicam 690; pace tua dixerim 666; quod dicas 744; quod diceret 742; quod sciam 710; velim, vellem 644
subolat *p.* 144 *s. v.* oleo '*smell*'
subules 140
subpredicate *p.* 189 *note*
subsidio venire 482
*substantive defined* 421; *as subject* 427, 429; *as attribute, is in apposition* 428 *b*. 430, 441 *a*; *as predicate* 427, 429, 441 *b*; *often omitted* 447–450; *qualified by genitive* 438 *b*, 515 *foll.*; *by dative of 'work contemplated'* 481; *by infinitive* 540 (1)
*verbal substantives*, viz. *gerund* 546 *foll.*; *infinitive* 532; *stems in* -ion- 551 *note*; *supine in* -um 553, 466; *in* -u 554
*substantive clauses: with* quod 713; ut 682 *b*; 712 *b*; *dependent questions* 750, 752; *infinitive* 535, 537 *b*, *c*
*substantive verb, see* esse
subter 229; *general use* 850
subtus 231
succensui *p.* 141 *s. v.* irascor
suemus *p.* 149 *s. v.* suesco
suescere *p.* 149
*suffixes* 344
suffocare 410
sui, suus, *see* se
Sulla 377
sultis 263
sum, *see* esse
summates (*pl.*) 137
summatim 227 (2)
summus 175 (*p.* 63); *special use* 521
sunt qui (*subj.*) 706; (*ind.*) 707
suovetaurilia 411
supellex 147
super 228; *general use* 852; supremus 31
supera 212
supercilium 403
superlatives 174 *foll.*, 351, 352
superstes 146
supine (1) *in* -um 336; *formation* 320 *foll.*; *use* 553; 466; *with* iri *forms pass. fut. infin.* 553
(2) *in* u 336; *use* 554, 497
supplex 146
supra 212; *comp. and superl.* 175 (*p.* 63); *use* 853; supremus 31
surgere *p.* 147 *s. v.* rego; cf. § 41; surrexe 307
sursum 214
sus '*pig*' 93, 122
sus- 851
suspectus *with gen.* 527
suspensus loculos lacerto 471
sustuli *p.* 150 *s. v.* tollo: *see also p.* 139 *s. v.* fero
suus 119; *use, see* se; '*favourable*' 906
*syllables defined* 15; *how divided* 15; *what letters can begin* 16
*syllepsis* 944
*synaeresis* 944; 69. 5
*synalaepha* 944
*synaphia* 925
*synecdoche* 950
*synecphonesis* 944
*synesis* 944
*synizesis* 944; 69, 5
*synonymia* 951

T *how pronounced* 4; ti *not* = sh 13
-ta *frequentative suffix of verbs* 399
tabes, tabo 134
tacere *p.* 150; etiam taces? non taces? 675 *c*
taedet *p.* 150; *impersonal* 575; *with gen.* 528
talpa 93
tam 223; *correlative to* quam 235; tam... quam 683; tamquam (*subj.*) 660; (*ind.*) 661; tamquam si 660

tamen 228; *after* nisi 653; *in apodosis to* cum 732; *to* quamquam 711 *b*; *to* quam vellet 676 *b*; *to* si 650 *c*; *place in sentence* 793
tametsi (*subj.*) 650 *c*; (*ind.*) 651 *c*
tamquam, *see* tam
tandem 225
tangere *p.* 150
tantisper 228
tantus 234; tanti est 494; tantum 461; tantum abest ut..ut (*subj.*) 712 *b*; non tantum..sed 881 *note*
tapete, tapeta 140
-tat *noun-suffix* 362
*tautologia* 951
ted 191
tegere *p.* 150
tellus 147 (2)
temere 217; *in prosody* 55 *c*
Tempe 164
temperare quin 682 *a*
temperi 221, 491
tempus *declined* 131, cf. 145; tempus est *with infin.* 540; id temporis 460
tendere *p.* 150; *with acc. of goal* 490
tenebrae (*p.*) 100 *f*
tenere *p.* 150
*Tenses* 238; *of present stem* 283 *foll.*; *of perfect stem* 304 *foll.*; *use of tenses of infinitive* 541 *foll.*; *indicative* 586 *foll.*; *subjunctive* 616 *foll.*; *in reported speech* 768 B
tensum 330; *also p.* 150 *s. v.* tendo
tenvis 44; *comp. and superl.* 176, 3 *a*
tenus 230; *use of* 854
ter *numeral adverb* 228
-ter *adverbial suffix* 229
terere *p.* 150
teres 140
-teri, -tri *noun-suffix* 385
-terno *noun-suffix* 367
ternus, trinus 188
-tĕro, -tro *noun-suffix* 383
terrā 486
teruncius 189, 3; 909
testis 134, 2. β
Tethys *declined* 158, 161
*tetrameter trochaic* 928; *iambic* 933; *anapaestic* 932
Thales *declined* 166, 168
*thesis defined p.* 18 *note*
Thetis *declined* 166, 170 (2)
Tiberis 165
tibicen, 415; *declined* 130
-ticio- *noun-suffix* 391
tigris *declined* 162, 165, 170 (2)
-tili- (-sili-) *noun-suffix* 379
*Time* '*when*' (*loc.*) 491; (*abl.*) 491: '*in the course of which*' (*abl.*) 492; *with* de 812 *d*; *with* in 820 *b*; *with* inter 823 *a*; '*throughout which*' (*acc.*) 460; *with* per 831; (*abl.*) 493; '*from which*' (*abl.*) *with* ab 799 *a*; '*after which*' (*abl.*) *with* ex 817 *d*; *with* de 812 *d*; (*acc.*) *with* post 835
timere ne (ut) *with subj.* 632, 2; 686
-timo- *superlative and ordinal suffix* 352
-tino- *noun-suffix* 367
-tio- *noun-suffix* 392
-tion- *noun-suffix* 374
tis 191
-tita- *frequentative verbal suffix* 399
-tivo- *noun-suffix* 353
*tmesis* 945
-to *noun* (*participial*) *suffix* 357
tollerō *p.* 150
tolutim 227
tonare *p.* 150
tonitras 121 (*p.* 40)
-tor- *noun-suffix* 387
-torio- *noun-suffix* 394
tot 234; totidem 225, 234
totus *declined* 195; totis castris 486
*Towns, gender of names of* 96
traducere *with two acc.* 463
traicere *with two acc.* 463
trans 855
*Transitive verbs* 562; *some become so by composition* 469 *a*; *or by metaphor* 469 *b*
transvorsus 214; transversum unguem 459
tributim 227
-trici- *verbal noun-suffix* 356; cf. 90
triens 189, 3; *as liquid measure* 915
trinus, ternus 188
tristis *declined* 126
Troas, Troasin 169
*trochaic verse* 923
tu *declined* 190—192
-tudon *noun-suffix* 371
tueri *p.* 150
tuli *p.* 150 *s. v.* tollo
tum 224; *in a series* 867; cum...tum (*in contrasts*) 736, 737
tumulti 121 (*p.* 140)
-turo- *suffix for future participle* 384
turris 134, 2. γ.
tus 142
tussis 134, 2. γ
-tut- *noun-suffix* 362
tutus *p.* 150 *s. v.* tueor
tuus 119; *possessive* 191, 518; *for objective genitive* 525 *a*, *b*; tui *part. gen.* 520; *obj. gen.* 525 *a*; tua refert 519.

u *pronunciation of* 2, 12; *arises from change of* a, *&c.* 34, 36; *changes to* i 37; *omitted* 41; *assimilated* 39; *has affinity to* l *and* m 41; *sometimes pronounced as* v 44; *in diphthongs* 47 *foll.*
v *pronunciation of* 10; *omitted between vowels* 43
vacillare 400
vacuus, vocivus 353; *with abl.* 511; *gen.* 530
vae 416
vagire 416 *s. v.* vae
vah 416
valere *p.* 151; vale 669 *a*; valebis 665 *b*; valeant 666 *a*
*value expressed in locative* 494; *genitive* 531, 494
vas, vadis 142
vas, vasis 142
vates 134
ubi 222, 206; '*when*' (*ind.*) 723; '*whenever*' (*subj.*) 720; (*ind.*) 721
ubique 219
ubivis 898
-vĕ 218; *use* 872, 873

vē- 408, 2 (*p.* 180)
vegere *p.* 151
vehere *p.* 151; vehens '*riding*' *ib.*
vel 228; *use* 872—874; vel dicam, vel potius 872.
velle 262, 263; *with infin.* 534 *a*; *with perf. infin.* 541 *b*; *with subj.* 631, 2; *cf.* 644, 645; *with pass. part.* 559; quam vis, quam volent 676 *b*; volet, voluerit *contrasted* 591, 2; velim, vellem 644; vellem *for* volerem 286; *cf.* 41
vellere *p.* 151
velut *subj.* 660
vendere *p.* 138 *s. v.* do 564
venia bona vestra (*abl.*), &c. 666
venire *p.* 151; veni 310; advorsum alicui 802; in mentem venire 529; subsidio 482 *c*
venire *p.* 138 *s. v.* eo; 564
venum dare, ire, &c. 117, 405
Venus 145
*Verb inflexions* 238 *foll.*; *formation of stems* 395 *foll.*; *finite, defined* 420; *transitive and intransitive* 562 *foll.*; *deponent* 567; *omitted* 581 *foll.*
verba dare 468
*verbal nouns* 239; *use of* 546 *foll.*
verbera 145
vereri 258; *p.* 151; ut, ne *with subj.* 686
vero 213 (2); *place in sentence* 793; *after* nisi *ironically* 653; *emphasizes preceding word* 871; *in answers* 886
versum, versus 214; *use of* 856
vertere *p.* 151; *akin to* verrere 395 *b*; anno vertente 492
veru 120
verum 871; *in answers* 886; verum enim vero 871; verum etiam *after* non..modo 882
vesci *p.* 151; *with abl.* 500
vesperi 491
vester 119; *possessive* 191, 518; *for objective genitive* 525 *a*, *b*; vestri *part. gen.* 520; *obj. gen.* 525 *a*
vetare *p.* 151
vetus 145
vi 503, 2
via 484 B, 5 *b*
viaticum 354
vicem 142; sollicitus vicem alicujus 462; in vicem 820 *c*; 908 *d*
vicissim 227
victoriatus 909
videlicet 405
viden 885; *used parenthetically* 751
videre *p.* 151; *with infin. object clause* 535; vidi cum exanimarentur 726, videres 646, videro, viderint, &c. 667; videbis 667; vide ne 682, 686; ne non 686; ut (*subj.*) 686, 750; vide ut (*ind.*) 687 *b*; 752; vide quam 750; vide sis 276
videri *with infin.* 536; *with dat.* 477
videsis 276
vietus *p.* 151
viginti 358
vin, *cf.* 885
vincere *p.* 151; vici 310; ut *with subj.* 682 *b*; debeo vincere, vicisse 541
vincire *p.* 151
vir *declined* 109
virgo 144
viritim 227
visere si (*ind.*) 747
vitio 503, 2; aliquid vertere 482 *b*
vivere *p.* 151; *with cognate acc.* 461 *b*
vix 230; *almost a negative* 877 *d*
-ula- *verbal suffix* 400
-ulento- *noun-suffix* 358
ullus 194, 195; *use* 898
-ulo-, -ullo- *noun suffix* 375—377
uls 230; ultra 212; ultro 213 (4); *general use* 857; *comp. and superl.* 175, 1 (*p.* 63)
ululare 342, 1
-umo- *superlative and ordinal suffix* 351, 352, *cf.* 37
-unculo- *noun-suffix* 376
unde 220; unde unde '*from somewhere or other*' 90 ›
undeviginti 186
-undo- *verbal noun-suffix* 290, 365
unguis 134, 2. γ
-uno- *noun-suffix* 369
-unti- *participial suffix* 289
unus 195; *use of plural*, 182, unusquisque 209; *use* 899; unus et alter 902; unus qui *with subj.* 704; *with ind.* 795; uno '*by one*' 496; una opera 503, 1
-vo-, -uo- *noun-suffix* 353; *stems retained* o 111
*vocative case* 108, 112; *use* 457
vocivus 353
*voices* 238; *use* 562 *foll.*
volo, *see* velle
voltus, *see* vultus
volvere *p.* 151
voluntas 20
volup 217, 2
vomere *p.* 151
vorsum, vorsus 214; *cf.* 42
vovere *p.* 151; aedem Jovi 746
*vowels* 9 *foll.*; *scale of* 14; *change in quantity* 30 *foll.*; *in quality* 33 *foll.*; *omission of* 41 *foll.*; *treated as consonants* 44, 49; *from diphthongs* 46 *foll.*; *quantity in prosody* 53 *foll.*; *vowel-verbs* 243 *foll.*, 298 *foll.*; *connecting vowel* 347
upilio 48
urbs *declined* 127
urere *p.* 151
urgere *p.* 151
-uri-, -urri- *verbal suffix* 400
-urno- *noun-suffix* 367
-usculo- *adjectival suffix* 376
uspiam, usquam 223, 236
usque 219, 237; *use* 858; usquequaque 236
usucapere 405 *a*
usurae centesimae, &c. 911
usus est *with abl.* 500, 507; usui esse 482 *a*; usui opportunus 554; usu 503, 2
ususfructus 406 *f*
ut (uti) 228, 221: (1) '*how?*' (*ind.*) 749; *dep.* (*subj.*) 750; *so probably* timeo ut 686; vide ut 686;
(2) '*how!*' (*ind.*) 752; *in wishes* (*subj.*) 666 *b*;
(3) '*how*' *relative*; *so perhaps* satin ut (*ind.*) 687 *a*; vide ut (*ind.*) 687 *b*;
(4) '*as*' (*ind.*) 683, 715; 610 (uti legassit); *with noun* 439 *a*; *with infin.* 765 *b*;

(5) *'although'* (*ind.*) 715 *c*,
(6) *'when'* (*ind.*) 723;
(7) *'in order that' of intention* (*subj.*) 682; *'provided that'* (*subj.*) 684;
(8) *'so that' of facts* (*subj.*) 712
(9) *'supposing that'* (*subj.*) 714 *d*;
(10) *in questions of surprise* (*subj.*) 714 *e*
utcunque 711 *b*
ut ne 682, 875; ut non 712; ut qui 718; ut qui maxime 683, 1; ut ubi 718; utut 711 *b*
*in various senses with subj. after* abest 712 *b*; accedit 712 *b*; cum eo 684; decerno 682 *b*; facio 712 *b*; fit 712 *b*; 633, 2; fore, futurum esse 543 (2); hortor 622; impero 621; is 712; ita, *see s. v.*; metuo 686; mos est 712 *b*; munus est 682 *b*; oro 682 *b*; postulo 622; potius quam 700; proximum est 682 *b*; rogo 621; scriptum est 682 *a*; tantus 624 bis; 712 *a*; tantum abest 712 *b*; timeo 686; 632, 2; vide, *see s. v.*; vinco 682 *b*
*with indic. after* ita 715 *a*, *f*; perinde 715 *a*; prae 715 *b*; pro, pro eo 715 *b*; satin 687 *a*; sic 715 *a*. *d*; vide 687 *b*
uter 195; *interrog.* 930; *indef.* 898; *relative* 711 *b*; utercumque 195, 900; uterlibet 195, 898; utervis 195, 898; alteruter, 195, 897
uterque 195; *use* 899; *with plural verb* 577; eorum 520; frater (*not* fratrum) 521
uti, *see* ut; *quantity of* i 56; utinam 221; *with subj.* 666 *b*
uti (*verb*) *p.* 151
utique 221; *use* 901
utpote qui *with subj.* 718
utrinque 226
utrubi, utrubique 222
utrum...an 885, 887
vulgus 114; vulgo 503, 574
vultus 331

w *pronunciation of Latin* v 10
*'way,' i. e. road abl.* 490: *i. e. manner* 503
*weight, measures of* 912
*wish expressed by subj.* 666; *by* volo &c. 665 *a*
*'without,' expressed in Latin by* se (*old*) 846; sine (*abl.*) 849; citra (*acc.*) 807 *c*; extra (*acc.*) 819; *by negative*, e. g. *'without ascertaining' &c.* non comperto 505; non nisi admoniti 557; *'without doing'* ut non faciam 714 *d*; *not by* sine *with gerund* 549

x 7

Y *Greek letter* 2
y *sound = Germ.* j; *expressed by* i 44; e 49

z 2; *effect in prosody* 67
*zeugma* 945

CAMBRIDGE: PRINTED BY C. J. CLAY, M.A. & SON, AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

## Latin and Greek Grammars.

A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. In Two Parts. Part I. containing:—Sounds, Inflexions, Word-formation, Appendices. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.* Part II.—Syntax, Prepositions, &c. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

"Marked by the clear and practised insight of a master of his art. A book that would do honour to any country."—*Athenæum.*

A LATIN GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

EXERCISES IN LATIN SYNTAX AND IDIOM, ARRANGED WITH REFERENCE TO ROBY'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Assistant Lecturer in Latin at the Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Key (supplied to Teachers only). Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR. By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A., Assistant Master in St Paul's School, London. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

"Quite the best book of the kind for little boys that we have seen."—*Athenæum.*

A GREEK GRAMMAR. By W. W. GOODWIN, Professor of Greek in Harvard University. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

"The best Greek Grammar of its size in the English language."—*Athenæum.*

A SCHOOL GREEK GRAMMAR. By Professor W. W. GOODWIN, LL.D. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

"Plainness and directness of statement characterize the whole...It is probably the best beginner's book in English."—*Spectator.*

SYNTAX OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE GREEK VERB. By Professor W. W. GOODWIN. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, M.A., Principal of the Owens College, Manchester. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

# Works on Latin and Greek Composition, &c.

A FIRST GREEK GRAMMAR. By W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., Assistant Master in St Paul's School, London. New Edition, enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

"Throughout commendably clear and succinct."—*Saturday Review.*

A GREEK GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JAMES HADLEY, late Professor in Yale College. Revised and in part Rewritten by FREDERIC DE FOREST ALLEN, Professor in Harvard College. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. By K. M. EICKE, B.A., Assistant-Master in Oundle School. Globe 8vo. *2s.*

MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE. FIRST YEAR. By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant-Master at St Paul's School. Globe 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE COMPOSITION. By J. H. LUPTON, M.A., Sur-Master of St Paul's School, and formerly Fellow of St John's College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.*

LATIN PROSE AFTER THE BEST AUTHORS. By F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. CÆSARIAN PROSE. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

LATIN PROSE EXERCISES BASED UPON CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR. With a Classification of Cæsar's Chief Phrases and Grammatical Notes in Cæsar's Usages. By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A., Assistant-Master in Dulwich College, late Scholar in King's College, Cambridge, and Bell University Scholar. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

WORKS by ALEXANDER W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St John's College, Cambridge; Head Master of the Fettes College, Edinburgh.

HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *3s.*

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. Edited with Notes and References to the above. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE. For the use of Teachers only. *2s. 6d.*

SYNTHETIC LATIN DELECTUS. A First Latin Construing Book arranged on the principles of Grammatical Analysis. With Notes and Vocabulary. By F. RUSH, B.A., with Preface by the Rev. W. F. MOULTON, M.A., D.D. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

FIRST GREEK READER. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London. Part I., with Vocabulary, *1s. 6d.* Parts II. and III., with Vocabulary and Index, *3s. 6d.* complete in one Vol. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. cloth. *4s. 6d.*

FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK, adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar. By Professor J. W. WHITE. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION FROM GREEK INTO ENGLISH AND ENGLISH INTO GREEK. Selected, with Introduction and Indices, by Rev. ELLIS C. MACKIE, Assistant Master in Heversham Grammar School. Globe 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

---

*November*, 1886.

# A Catalogue

OF

# Educational Books

PUBLISHED BY

## Macmillan & Co.,

BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON.

10.11.86.

# CONTENTS.


PAGE

**CLASSICS—**

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS . . . . . 3
CLASSICAL SERIES . . . . . 6
CLASSICAL LIBRARY, (1) Text, (2) Translations . . . 11
GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION, AND PHILOLOGY . . . 16
ANTIQUITIES, ANCIENT HISTORY, AND PHILOSOPHY . . 21

**MATHEMATICS—**

ARITHMETIC AND MENSURATION . . . . . 23
ALGEBRA . . . . . 25
EUCLID, AND ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY . . . . 26
TRIGONOMETRY . . . . . 27
HIGHER MATHEMATICS . . . . . 28

**SCIENCE—**

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY . . . . . 35
ASTRONOMY . . . . . 40
CHEMISTRY . . . . . 40
BIOLOGY . . . . . 42
MEDICINE . . . . . 46
ANTHROPOLOGY . . . . . 47
PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY AND GEOLOGY . . . . 47
AGRICULTURE . . . . . 48
POLITICAL ECONOMY . . . . . 48
MENTAL AND MORAL PHILOSOPHY . . . . . 49

**HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY** . . . . . 50

**MODERN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE—**

ENGLISH . . . . . 54
FRENCH . . . . . 59
GERMAN . . . . . 62
MODERN GREEK . . . . . 64
ITALIAN . . . . . 64

**DOMESTIC ECONOMY** . . . . . 64

**ART AND KINDRED SUBJECTS** . . . . . 65

**WORKS ON TEACHING** . . . . . 65

**DIVINITY** . . . . . 66

29 AND 30, BEDFORD STREET, COVENT GARDEN,
LONDON, W.C., *November*, 1886.

# CLASSICS.

## ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

18mo, Eighteenpence each.

THIS SERIES FALLS INTO TWO CLASSES—

(1) First Reading Books for Beginners, provided not only with **Introductions and Notes**, but with **Vocabularies**, and in some cases with **Exercises** based upon the Text.

(2) Stepping-stones to the study of particular authors, intended for more advanced students who are beginning to read such authors as Terence, Plato, the Attic Dramatists, and the harder parts of Cicero, Horace, Virgil, and Thucydides.

These are provided with Introductions and Notes, **but no Vocabulary.** The Publishers have been led to provide the more strictly Elementary Books with Vocabularies by the representations of many teachers, who hold that beginners do not understand the use of a Dictionary, and of others who, in the case of middle-class schools where the cost of books is a serious consideration, advocate the Vocabulary system on grounds of economy. It is hoped that the two parts of the Series, fitting into one another, may together fulfil all the requirements of Elementary and Preparatory Schools, and the Lower Forms of Public Schools.

The following Elementary Books, with Introductions, Notes, and Vocabularies, and in some cases with Exercises, are either ready or in preparation:—

**Aeschylus.**—PROMETHEUS VINCTUS. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A. [*Ready.*

**Cæsar.**—THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

THE INVASION OF BRITAIN. Being Selections from Books IV. and V. of the "De Bello Gallico." Adapted for the use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A. [*Ready.*

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOKS II. AND III. Edited by the Rev. W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster School. [*Ready.*

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK IV. Edited by C. BRYANS, M.A., Assistant-Master at Dulwich College. [*Ready.*

THE GALLIC WAR. SCENES FROM BOOKS V. AND VI. Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant-Master at Harrow; formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOKS V. AND VI. (separately). By the same Editor. [*In preparation.*

**Cicero.**—DE SENECTUTE. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., late Fellow of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

DE AMICITIA. By the same Editor. [*Ready.*

STORIES OF ROMAN HISTORY. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by the Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and A. V. JONES, M.A., Assistant-Masters at Haileybury College. [*Ready.*

**Eutropius.**—Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by WILLIAM WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A., Assistant-Masters at Surrey County School, Cranleigh. [*Ready.*

**Homer.**—ILIAD. BOOK I. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

ILIAD. BOOK XVIII. THE ARMS OF ACHILLES. Edited by S. R. JAMES, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College. [*Ready.*

ODYSSEY. BOOK I. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A. and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

**Horace.**—ODES. BOOKS I.—IV. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at the Charterhouse. Each 1*s.* 6*d.* [*Ready.*

**Livy.**—BOOK I. Edited by H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., Head Master of St. Peter's School, York. [*Ready.*

**Livy.**—THE HANNIBALIAN WAR. Being part of the XXI. AND XXII. BOOKS OF LIVY, adapted for the use of beginners, by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby; formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

THE SIEGE OF SYRACUSE. Being part of the XXIV. AND XXV. BOOKS OF LIVY, adapted for the use of beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by GEORGE RICHARDS, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

**Lucian.**—EXTRACTS FROM LUCIAN. Edited, with Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary, by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

**Nepos.**—SELECT LIVES OF CORNELIUS NEPOS. Edited for the use of beginners with Notes, Vocabulary and Exercises, by G. S. FARNELL, M.A. [*Nearly ready.*

**Ovid.**—SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

ELEGIAC SELECTIONS. Arranged for the use of Beginners with Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by H. WILKINSON, M.A. [*In preparation.*

**Phædrus.**—SELECT FABLES. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabularies, by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

**Thucydides.**—THE RISE OF THE ATHENIAN EMPIRE. BOOK I. cc. LXXXIX. — CXVII. AND CXXVIII. — CXXXVIII. Edited with Notes, Vocabulary and Exercises, by F. H. COLSON, M.A., Senior Classical Master at Bradford Grammar School; Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

**Virgil.**—ÆNEID. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

ÆNEID. BOOK V. Edited by Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. [*Ready.*

**Xenophon.**—ANABASIS. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

SELECTIONS FROM THE CYROPÆDIA. Edited, with Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by A. H. COOKE, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of King's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

The following more advanced Books, with Introductions and Notes, **but no Vocabulary,** are either ready, or in preparation:—

**Cicero.**—SELECT LETTERS. Edited by Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Haileybury College. [*Ready.*

**Euripides.**—HECUBA. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M A and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*Ready.*

**Herodotus.**—SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS VI. AND VII., THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES. Edited by A. H. COOKE, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of King's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

**Horace.** — SELECTIONS FROM THE SATIRES AND EPISTLES. Edited by Rev. W. J. V. BAKER, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge ; Assistant-Master in Marlborough College. [*Ready.*

SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA. Edited by H. A. DALTON, M.A., formerly Senior Student of Christchurch ; Assistant-Master in Winchester College. [*Ready.*

**Plato.**—EUTHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

**Terence.**—SCENES FROM THE ANDRIA. Edited by F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College. [*Ready.*

**The Greek Elegiac Poets.**— FROM CALLINUS TO CALLIMACHUS. Selected and Edited by Rev. HERBERT KYNASTON, D.D., Principal of Cheltenham College, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*Ready.*

**Thucydides.**—BOOK IV. CHS. I.—XLI. THE CAPTURE OF SPHACTERIA. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A. [*Ready.*

**Virgil.**—GEORGICS. BOOK II. Edited by Rev. J. H. SKRINE, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford ; Assistant-Master at Uppingham. [*Ready.*

*** *Other Volumes to follow.*

---

## CLASSICAL SERIES
## FOR COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS

Fcap. 8vo.

Being select portions of Greek and Latin authors, edited with Introductions and Notes, for the use of Middle and Upper forms of Schools, or of candidates for Public Examinations at the Universities and elsewhere.

**Æschines.**— IN CTESIPHONTEM. Edited by Rev. T. GWATKIN, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*In the press.*

**Æschylus.** — PERSÆ. Edited by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A. Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. With Map. *3s. 6d.*

**Andocides.**—DE MYSTERIIS. Edited by W. J. HICKIE, M.A., formerly Assistant Master in Denstone College. *2s. 6d.*

**Cæsar.**—THE GALLIC WAR. Edited, after Kraner, by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*In the press.*

**Catullus.**—SELECT POEMS. Edited by F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. New and Revised Edition. *5s.* The Text of this Edition is carefully adapted to School use.

**Cicero.**—THE CATILINE ORATIONS. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Additions, by A. S. WILKINS, M.A., LL.D., Professor of Latin at the Owens College, Manchester, Examiner of Classics to the University of London. New Edition. *3s. 6d.*

PRO LEGE MANILIA. Edited, after HALM, by Professor A. S. WILKINS, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*

THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, Professor of Latin in the University of Cambridge, and Fellow of St. John's College. New Edition, revised. *5s.*

PRO ROSCIO AMERINO. Edited, after HALM, by E. H. DONKIN, M.A., late Scholar of Lincoln College, Oxford; Assistant-Master at Sherborne School. *4s. 6d.*

PRO P. SESTIO. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; and late Classical Examiner to the University of London. *5s.*

**Demosthenes.**—DE CORONA. Edited by B. DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. New and revised Edition. *4s. 6d.*

ADVERSUS LEPTINEM. Edited by Rev. J. R. KING, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Oriel College, Oxford. *4s. 6d.*

THE FIRST PHILIPPIC. Edited, after C. REHDANTZ, by Rev. T. GWATKIN, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.*

IN MIDIAM. Edited by Prof. A. S. WILKINS, LL.D., and HERMAN HAGER, Ph.D., of the Owens College, Manchester. [*In preparation.*

**Euripides.**—HIPPOLYTUS. Edited by J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., Fellow and Professor of Ancient History in Trinity College, Dublin, and J. B. BURY, Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin. *3s. 6d.*

**Euripides.**—MEDEA. Edited by A. W. VERRALL, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. 3*s.* 6*d.*

IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. Edited by E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Lecturer at the Owens College, Manchester. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Herodotus.**—BOOKS VII. AND VIII. Edited by Rev. A. H. COOKE, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. [*In prep.*

**Homer.**—ILIAD. BOOKS I., IX., XI., XVI.—XXIV. THE STORY OF ACHILLES. Edited by the late J. H. PRATT, M.A., and WALTER LEAF, M.A., Fellows of Trinity College, Cambridge. 6*s.*

ODYSSEY. BOOK IX. Edited by Prof. JOHN E. B. MAYOR. 2*s.* 6*d.*

ODYSSEY. BOOKS XXI.—XXIV. THE TRIUMPH OF ODYSSEUS. Edited by S. G. HAMILTON, B.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Horace.**—THE ODES. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at Charterhouse. 6*s.* (BOOKS I., II., III., and IV. separately, 2*s.* each.)

THE SATIRES. Edited by ARTHUR PALMER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin; Professor of Latin in the University of Dublin. 6*s.*

THE EPISTLES AND ARS POETICA. Edited by A S. WILKINS, M.A., LL.D., Professor of Latin in Owens College, Manchester; Examiner in Classics to the University of London. 6*s.*

**Isaeos.**—THE ORATIONS. Edited by WILLIAM RIDGEWAY, M.A., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge; and Professor of Greek in the University of Cork. [*In preparation.*

**Juvenal.** THIRTEEN SATIRES. Edited, for the Use of Schools, by E. G. HARDY, M.A., Head Master of Grantham Grammar School; late Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford. 5*s.*
The Text of this Edition is carefully adapted to School use.

SELECT SATIRES. Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. X. AND XI. 3*s.* 6*d.* XII.—XVI. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Livy.**—BOOKS II. AND III. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., Head-Master of St. Peter's School, York. 5*s.*

BOOKS XXI. AND XXII. Edited by the Rev. W. W. CAPES, M.A., Reader in Ancient History at Oxford. Maps. 5*s.*

**Livy.**—BOOKS XXIII AND XXIV. Edited by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby. With Maps. 5*s.*

THE LAST TWO KINGS OF MACEDON. SCENES FROM THE LAST DECADE OF LIVY. Selected and Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by F. H. RAWLINS, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; and Assistant-Master at Eton. With Maps. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Lucretius.** BOOKS I.—III. Edited by J. H. WARBURTON LEE, M.A., late Scholar of Corpus Christi College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Rossall. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Lysias.**—SELECT ORATIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., late Assistant-Master at Eton College, formerly Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised. 6*s.*

**Martial.** — SELECT EPIGRAMS. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A. 6*s.*

**Ovid.**—FASTI. Edited by G. H. HALLAM, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow. With Maps. 5*s.*

HEROIDUM EPISTULÆ XIII. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

METAMORPHOSES. BOOKS XIII. AND XIV. Edited by C. SIMMONS, M.A. [*Nearly ready.*

**Plato.**—MENO. Edited by E. S. THOMPSON, M.A., Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

APOLOGY AND CRITO. Edited by F. J. H. JENKINSON. M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

THE REPUBLIC. BOOKS I.—V. Edited by T. H. WARREN, M.A., President of Magdalen College, Oxford. [*In the press.*

**Plautus.**—MILES GLORIOSUS. Edited by R. Y. TYRRELL. M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Dublin. Second Edition Revised. 5*s.*

AMPHITRUO. Edited by ARTHUR PALMER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College and Regius Professor of Latin in the University of Dublin. [*In preparation.*

CAPTIVI. Edited by A. RHYS SMITH, late Junior Student of Christ Church, Oxford. [*In preparation.*

**Pliny.**—LETTERS. BOOK III. Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. With Life of Pliny by G. H. RENDALL, M.A. 5*s.*

**Plutarch.**—LIFE OF THEMISTOKLES. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D. 5*s.*

**Polybius.**—HISTORY OF THE ACHÆAN LEAGUE. Being Parts of Books II., III., and IV. Edited by W. W. CAPES. M.A. [*In the press.*

**Propertius.**—SELECT POEMS. Edited by Professor J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition, revised. 6*s.*

**Sallust.**—CATILINA AND JUGURTHA. Edited by C. MERIVALE, D.D., Dean of Ely. New Edition, carefully revised and enlarged, 4*s.* 6*d.* Or separately, 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

BELLUM CATULINAE. Edited by A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. 4*s.* 6*d.*

JUGURTHA. By the same Editor. [*In preparation.*

**Sophocles.**—ANTIGONE. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

**Tacitus.**—AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA. Edited by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A., Translators of Tacitus. New Edition, 3*s.* 6*d.* Or separately, 2*s.* each.

THE ANNALS. BOOK VI. By the same Editors. 2*s.* 6*d.*

THE HISTORY. BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by A. D. GODLEY. M.A. [*In preparation.*

THE ANNALS. BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by J. S. REID, M.L., LITT.D. [*In preparation.*

**Terence.**—HAUTON TIMORUMENOS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 3*s.* With Translation, 4*s.* 6*d.*

PHORMIO. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, B.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Thucydides.** BOOK IV. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer, and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 5*s.*

BOOKS I. II. III. AND V. By the same Editor. To be published separately. [*In preparation.* (*Book V. in the press.*)

BOOKS VI. AND VII. THE SICILIAN EXPEDITION. Edited by the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. 5*s.*

**Tibullus.**—SELECT POEMS. Edited by Professor J. P. POSTGATE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

**Virgil.**—ÆNEID. BOOKS II. AND III. THE NARRATIVE OF ÆNEAS. Edited by E. W. HOWSON, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow. 3*s.*

**Xenophon.**—HELLENICA, BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by H. HAILSTONE, B.A., late Scholar of Peterhouse, Cambridge. With Map. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Xenophon.**—CYROPÆDIA. BOOKS VII. AND VIII. Edited by ALFRED GOODWIN, M.A., Professor of Greek in University College, London. 5*s.*

MEMORABILIA SOCRATIS. Edited by A. R. CLUER, B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. 6*s.*

THE ANABASIS. BOOKS I.—IV. Edited by Professors W. W. GOODWIN and J. W. WHITE. Adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar. With a Map. 5*s.*

HIERO. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D. 3*s.* 6*d.*

OECONOMICUS. By the same Editor. With Introduction, Explanatory Notes, Critical Appendix, and Lexicon. 6*s.*

*** *Other Volumes will follow.*

---

## CLASSICAL LIBRARY.

(1) **Texts,** Edited with **Introductions and Notes,** for the use of Advanced Students. (2) **Commentaries and Translations.**

**Æschylus.**—THE EUMENIDES. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 5*s.*

AGAMEMNON, CHOEPHORŒ, AND EUMENIDES. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

AGAMEMNO. Emendavit DAVID S. MARGOLIOUTH, Coll. Nov. Oxon. Soc. Demy 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

SEPTEM CONTRA THEBAS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. W. VERRALL, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius.**—BOOK IV. OF THE MEDITATIONS. The Text Revised, with Translation and Notes, by HASTINGS CROSSLEY, M.A., Professor of Greek in Queen's College, Belfast. 8vo. 6*s.*

**Aristotle.**—THE METAPHYSICS. BOOK I. Translated by a Cambridge Graduate. 8vo. 5*s.* [*Book II. in preparation.*

**Aristotle.**—THE POLITICS. Edited, after SUSEMIHL, by R. D. HICKS, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In the press.*

THE POLITICS. Translated by Rev. J. E. C. WELLDON, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Head-Master of Harrow School. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

THE RHETORIC. By the same Translator. [*In the press.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC. With Analysis, Notes, and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 14*s.*

THE SOPHISTICI ELENCHI. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTE, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

**Aristophanes.**—THE BIRDS. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* Help Notes to the same, for the use of Students, 1*s.* 6*d.*

**Attic Orators.**—FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS. By R. C. JEBB, M.A., LL.D., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow. 2 vols. 8vo. 25*s.*

SELECTIONS FROM ANTIPHON, ANDOKIDES, LYSIAS, ISOKRATES, AND ISAEOS. Edited, with Notes, by Professor JEBB. Being a companion volume to the preceding work. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

**Babrius.**—Edited, with Introductory Dissertations, Critical Notes, Commentary and Lexicon. By Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster School. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

**Cicero.**—THE ACADEMICA. The Text revised and explained by J. S. REID, M.L., Litt.D., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. 8vo. 15*s.*

THE ACADEMICS. Translated by J. S. REID, M.L. 8vo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

SELECT LETTERS. After the Edition of ALBERT WATSON, M.A. Translated by G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Haileybury. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Euripides.**—MEDEA. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. W. VERRALL, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Euripides.**—IPHIGENIA IN AULIS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Lecturer in the Owens College, Manchester. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF EURIPIDES. By Professor J. P. MAHAFFY. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Herodotus.**—BOOKS I.—III. THE ANCIENT EMPIRES OF THE EAST. Edited, with Notes, Introductions, and Appendices, by A. H. SAYCE, Deputy-Professor of Comparative Philology, Oxford; Honorary LL.D., Dublin. Demy 8vo. 16*s.*

BOOKS IV.—IX. Edited by REGINALD W. MACAN, M.A., Lecturer in Ancient History at Brasenose College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Homer.**—THE ILIAD. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by WALTER LEAF, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. Vol. I. Books I.—XII. 14*s.*

THE ILIAD. Translated into English Prose. By ANDREW LANG, M.A., WALTER LEAF, M.A., and ERNEST MYERS, M.A. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

THE ODYSSEY. Done into English by S. H. BUTCHER, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh, and ANDREW LANG, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford. Fifth Edition, revised and corrected. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF HOMER. By the Right Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

HOMERIC DICTIONARY. For Use in Schools and Colleges. Translated from the German of Dr. G. AUTENRIETH, with Additions and Corrections, by R. P. KEEP, Ph.D. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Horace.**—THE WORKS OF HORACE RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE. With Introductions, Running Analysis, Notes, &c. By J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A. (*Globe Edition.*) 3*s.* 6*d.*

STUDIES, LITERARY AND HISTORICAL, IN THE ODES OF HORACE. By A. W. VERRALL, Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Demy 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Juvenal.**—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL. With a Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Latin in the University of Cambridge. Second Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. Vol. I. 7*s.* 6*d.* Vol. II. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Juvenal.**—THIRTEEN SATIRES. Translated into English after the Text of J. E. B. MAYOR by ALEXANDER LEEPER, M.A., Warden of Trinity College, in the University of Melbourne. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Livy.**—BOOKS I.—IV. Translated by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., Head Master of St. Peter's School, York. [*In preparation.*

BOOKS XXI.—XXV. Translated by ALFRED JOHN CHURCH, M.A., of Lincoln College, Oxford, Professor of Latin, University College, London, and WILLIAM JACKSON BRODRIBB, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Cr. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF LIVY. By Rev. W. W. CAPES, Reader in Ancient History at Oxford. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Martial.**—BOOKS I. AND II. OF THE EPIGRAMS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor J. E. B. MAYOR, M.A. 8vo. [*In the press.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Pausanias.**—DESCRIPTION OF GREECE. Translated by J. G. FRAZER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

**Phrynichus.**—THE NEW PHRYNICHUS; being a Revised Text of the Ecloga of the Grammarian Phrynichus. With Introduction and Commentary by Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head Master of Westminster School. 8vo. 18*s.*

**Pindar.**—THE EXTANT ODES OF PINDAR. Translated into English, with an Introduction and short Notes, by ERNEST MYERS, M.A., late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

THE OLYMPIAN AND PYTHIAN ODES. Edited, with an Introductory Essay, Notes, and Indexes, by BASIL GILDERSLEEVE, Professor of Greek in the Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Plato.**—PHÆDO. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by R. D. ARCHER-HIND, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College. Cambridge. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

TIMÆUS.—Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by the same Editor. 8vo. [*In the press.*

PHÆDO. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by W. D. GEDDES, LL.D., Principal of the University of Aberdeen. Second Edition. Demy 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

PHILEBUS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by HENRY JACKSON, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Plato.**—THE REPUBLIC.—Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by H. C. GOODHART, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo [*In preparation.*

THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO. Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes, by J. LL. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

EUTHYPHRO, APOLOGY, CRITO, AND PHÆDO. Translated by F. J. CHURCH. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Plautus.**—THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS. With Notes, Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., of the University of Glasgow. 8vo. 14*s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Polybius.**—THE HISTORIES. Translated, with Introduction and Notes, by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Sallust.**—CATILINE AND JUGURTHA. Translated, with Introductory Essays, by A. W. POLLARD, B.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

THE CATILINE (separately). Crown 8vo. 3*s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

**Studia Scenica.**—Part I., Section I. Introductory Study on the Text of the Greek Dramas. The Text of SOPHOCLES' TRACHINIAE, 1–300. By DAVID S. MARGOLIOUTH, Fellow of New College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Tacitus.**—THE ANNALS. Edited, with Introductions and Notes, by G. O. HOLBROOKE, M.A., Professor of Latin in Trinity College, Hartford, U.S.A. With Maps. 8vo. 16*s.*

THE ANNALS. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and Maps. New Edition. Cr. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE HISTORIES. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Rev. W. A. SPOONER, M.A., Fellow of New College, and H. M. SPOONER, M.A., formerly Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE HISTORY. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and a Map. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANY, WITH THE DIALOGUE ON ORATORY. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and Maps. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF TACITUS. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A. and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

**Theocritus, Bion, and Moschus.** Rendered into English Prose with Introductory Essay by A. LANG, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Virgil.**—THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis, and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. New Edition. Globe 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE ÆNEID. Translated by J. W. MACKAIL, M.A., Fellow of Balliol College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

## GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION, & PHILOLOGY.

**Belcher.**—SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR, to which is prefixed a Chapter on Analysis of Sentences. By the Rev. H. BELCHER, M.A., Rector of the High School, Dunedin, N.Z. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE (for Teachers only). 3*s.* 6*d.*

SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Part II., On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix, including EXERCISES IN LATIN IDIOMS, &c. 18mo. 2*s.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE (for Teachers only). 3*s.*

**Blackie.**—GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JOHN STUART BLACKIE, Emeritus Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Bryans.**—LATIN PROSE EXERCISES BASED UPON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR. With a Classification of Cæsar's Chief Phrases and Grammatical Notes on Cæsar's Usages. By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A., Assistant-Master in Dulwich College. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE (for Teachers only). 3*s.* 6*d.*

GREEK PROSE EXERCISES based upon Thucydides. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Colson.**—A FIRST GREEK READER. By F. H. COLSON, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Senior Classical Master at Bradford Grammar School. Globe 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Eicke.**—FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. By K. M. EICKE, B.A., Assistant-Master in Oundle School. Globe 8vo. 2*s.*

**Ellis.**—PRACTICAL HINTS ON THE QUANTITATIVE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN, for the use of Classical Teachers and Linguists. By A. J. ELLIS, B.A., F.R.S. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**England.**—EXERCISES ON LATIN SYNTAX AND IDIOM ARRANGED WITH REFERENCE TO ROBY'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Assistant Lecturer at the Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* Key for Teachers only, *2s. 6d.*

**Goodwin.**—Works by W. W. GOODWIN, LL.D., Professor of Greek in Harvard University, U.S.A.

SYNTAX OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE GREEK VERB. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

A GREEK GRAMMAR. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

"It is the best Greek Grammar of its size in the English language."—ATHENÆUM.

A GREEK GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Greenwood.**—THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, Principal of Owens College, Manchester. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

**Hadley and Allen.**—A GREEK GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JAMES HADLEY, late Professor in Yale College. Revised and in part Rewritten by FREDERIC DE FOREST ALLEN, Professor in Harvard College. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

**Hodgson.**—MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICATION. A brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients, prepared to be rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By F. HODGSON, B.D., late Provost of Eton. New Edition, revised by F. C. HODGSON, M.A. 18mo. *3s.*

**Jackson.**—FIRST STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. By BLOMFIELD JACKSON, M.A., Assistant-Master in King's College School, London. New Edition, revised and enlarged. 18mo. *1s. 6d.*

KEY TO FIRST STEPS (for Teachers only). 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

SECOND STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION, with Miscellaneous Idioms, Aids to Accentuation, and Examination Papers in Greek Scholarship. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

KEY TO SECOND STEPS (for Teachers only). 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

**Kynaston.**—EXERCISES IN THE COMPOSITION OF GREEK IAMBIC VERSE by Translations from English Dramatists. By Rev. H. KYNASTON, D.D., Principal of Cheltenham College. With Introduction, Vocabulary, &c. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo. *5s.*

KEY TO THE SAME (for Teachers only). Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Lupton.**—AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE COMPOSITION. By J. H. LUPTON, M.A., Sur-Master of St. Paul's School, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.*

LATIN RENDERING OF THE EXERCISES IN PART II. (XXV.-C.). *3s. 6d.*

**Mackie.**—PARALLEL PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO GREEK AND ENGLISH. Carefully graduated for the use of Colleges and Schools. With Indexes. By Rev. ELLIS C. MACKIE, Classical Master at Heversham Grammar School. Globe 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Macmillan.**—FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR. By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A., late Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge; sometime Assistant-Master in St. Paul's School. New Edition, enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.* A SHORT SYNTAX is in preparation to follow the ACCIDENCE.

**Macmillan's Latin Course.** FIRST PART. By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant-Master at St. Paul's School. Globe 8vo. *2s. 6d.* *** *The Second Part is in preparation*

**Macmillan's Shorter Latin Course.** By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant-Master at St. Paul's School. Being an abridgment of "Macmillan's Latin Course," First Year. Globe 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

**Marshall.**—A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS, classified according to the arrangement of Curtius's Greek Grammar. By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., Head Master of the Grammar School, Durham. New Edition. 8vo. *1s.*

**Mayor (John E. B.)**—FIRST GREEK READER. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Mayor (Joseph B.)**—GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London. Part I., with Vocabulary, *1s. 6d.* Parts II. and III., with Vocabulary and Index, *3s. 6d.* Complete in one Vol. fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Nixon.**—PARALLEL EXTRACTS, Arranged for Translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer, King's College, Cambridge. Part I.—Historical and Epistolary. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

PROSE EXTRACTS, Arranged for Translation into English and Latin, with General and Special Prefaces on Style and Idiom. I. Oratorical. II. Historical. III. Philosophical and Miscellaneous. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Peile.**—A PRIMER OF PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge. 18mo. 1*s.*

**Postgate and Vince.**—A DICTIONARY OF LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., and C. A. VINCE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

**Potts (A. W.)**—Works by ALEXANDER W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Head Master of the Fettes College, Edinburgh.

HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3*s*

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. Edited with Notes and References to the above. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

LATIN VERSIONS OF PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE (for Teachers only). 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Reid.**—A GRAMMAR OF TACITUS. By J. S. REID, M.L., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

A GRAMMAR OF VERGIL. By the same Author. [*In preparation*

*** *Similar Grammars to other Classical Authors will probably follow.*

**Roby.**—A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Third Edition. Part I. containing:—Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflexions. Book III. Word-formation. Appendices. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Part II. Syntax, Prepositions, &c. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

"Marked by the clear and practised insight of a master in his art. A book that would do honour to any country."—ATHENÆUM.

SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

**Rush.**—SYNTHETIC LATIN DELECTUS. A First Latin Construing Book arranged on the Principles of Grammatical Analysis. With Notes and Vocabulary. By E. RUSH, B.A. With Preface by the Rev. W. F. MOULTON, M.A., D.D. New and Enlarged Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Rust.**—FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By the Rev. G. RUST, M.A., of Pembroke College, Oxford, Master of the Lower School, King's College, London. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE. By W. M. YATES, Assistant-Master in the High School, Sale. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Rutherford.**—Works by the Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster School.

A FIRST GREEK GRAMMAR. New Edition, enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

**Rutherford.**—Works by the Rev. W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., (*continued*)—

REX LEX. A Short Digest of the principal Relations between Latin, Greek, and Anglo-Saxon Sounds. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE NEW PHRYNICHUS; being a Revised Text of the Ecloga of the Grammarian Phrynichus. With Introduction and Commentary. 8vo. 18*s.*

**Simpson.**—LATIN PROSE AFTER THE BEST AUTHORS. By F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. CÆSARIAN PROSE. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE, for Teachers only. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

**Thring.**—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Head-Master of Uppingham School.

A LATIN GRADUAL. A First Latin Construing Book for Beginners. New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentence Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

**White.**—FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. Adapted to GOODWIN'S GREEK GRAMMAR, and designed as an introduction to the ANABASIS OF XENOPHON. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D., Assistant-Professor of Greek in Harvard University. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Wright.**—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Head Master of Sutton Coldfield School.

A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR; or, The Form and Use of Words in Latin, with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME. An Easy Narrative, abridged from the First Book of Livy by the omission of Difficult Passages; being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes and Vocabulary. New and revised Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

FIRST LATIN STEPS; OR, AN INTRODUCTION BY A SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. Crown 8vo. 3*s.*

ATTIC PRIMER. Arranged for the Use of Beginners. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

A COMPLETE LATIN COURSE, comprising Rules with Examples, Exercises, both Latin and English, on each Rule, and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Wright (H. C.)**—EXERCISES ON THE LATIN SYNTAX. By Rev. H. C. WRIGHT, B.A., Assistant-Master at Haileybury College. 18mo. [*In preparation.*

## ANTIQUITIES, ANCIENT HISTORY, AND PHILOSOPHY.

**Arnold.**—Works by W. T. ARNOLD, M.A.

A HANDBOOK OF LATIN EPIGRAPHY. [*In preparation.*

THE ROMAN SYSTEM OF PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE THE GREAT. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Arnold (T.)**—THE SECOND PUNIC WAR. Being Chapters of THE HISTORY OF ROME. By the late THOMAS ARNOLD, D.D., formerly Head Master of Rugby School, and Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. Edited, with Notes, by W. T. ARNOLD, M.A. With 8 Maps. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

**Beesly.**—STORIES FROM THE HISTORY OF ROME. By Mrs. BEESLY. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Classical Writers.**—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

EURIPIDES. By Professor MAHAFFY.

MILTON. By the Rev. STOPFORD A. BROOKE, M.A.

LIVY. By the Rev. W. W. CAPES, M.A.

VIRGIL. By Professor NETTLESHIP, M.A.

SOPHOCLES. By Professor L. CAMPBELL, M.A.

DEMOSTHENES. By Professor S. H. BUTCHER, M.A.

TACITUS. By Professor A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A.

**Freeman.**—HISTORY OF ROME. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., Hon. Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford, Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. (*Historical Course for Schools.*) 18mo. [*In preparation.*

A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

HISTORICAL ESSAYS. Second Series. [Greek and Roman History.] By the same Author. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Geddes.**—THE PROBLEM OF THE HOMERIC POEMS. By W. D. GEDDES, Principal of the University of Aberdeen. 8vo. 14*s.*

**Gladstone.**—Works by the Rt. Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P.

THE TIME AND PLACE OF HOMER. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

A PRIMER OF HOMER. 18mo. 1*s.*

**Jackson.**—A MANUAL OF GREEK PHILOSOPHY. By HENRY JACKSON, M.A., Litt.D., Fellow and Prælector in Ancient Philosophy, Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

**Jebb.**—Works by R. C. JEBB, M.A., LL.D., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow.

THE ATTIC ORATORS FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS. 2 vols. 8vo. 25*s.*

SELECTIONS FROM THE ATTIC ORATORS, ANTIPHON, ANDOKIDES, LYSIAS, ISOKRATES, AND ISAEOS. Edited, with Notes. Being a companion volume to the preceding work. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

A PRIMER OF GREEK LITERATURE. 18mo. 1*s.*

**Kiepert.**—MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY, Translated from the German of Dr. HEINRICH KIEPERT. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

**Mahaffy.**—Works by J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., Fellow and Professor of Ancient History in Trinity College, Dublin, and Hon. Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.

SOCIAL LIFE IN GREECE; from Homer to Menander. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 9*s.*

RAMBLES AND STUDIES IN GREECE. With Illustrations. Second Edition. With Map. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A PRIMER OF GREEK ANTIQUITIES. With Illustrations. 18mo. 1*s.*

EURIPIDES. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

**Mayor (J. E. B.)**—BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CLUE TO LATIN LITERATURE. Edited after HÜBNER, with large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Newton.**—ESSAYS IN ART AND ARCHÆOLOGY. By C. T. NEWTON, C.B., D.C.L., Professor of Archæology in University College, London, and Keeper of Greek and Roman Antiquities at the British Museum. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

**Ramsay.**—A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME. By G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. With Maps. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Sayce.**—THE ANCIENT EMPIRES OF THE EAST. By A. H. SAYCE, Deputy-Professor of Comparative Philosophy, Oxford, Hon. LL.D. Dublin. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Wilkins.**—A PRIMER OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Professor WILKINS, M.A., LL.D. Illustrated. 18mo. 1*s.*

# MATHEMATICS.

(1) Arithmetic and Mensuration, (2) Algebra, (3) Euclid and Elementary Geometry, (4) Trigonometry, (5) Higher Mathematics.

## ARITHMETIC AND MENSURATION.

**Aldis.**—THE GREAT GIANT ARITHMOS. A most Elementary Arithmetic for Children. By MARY STEADMAN ALDIS. With Illustrations. Globe 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Brook-Smith (J.).**—ARITHMETIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE. By J. BROOK-SMITH, M.A., LL.B., St. John's College, Cambridge; Barrister-at-Law; one of the Masters of Cheltenham College. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Candler.**—HELP TO ARITHMETIC. Designed for the use of Schools. By H. CANDLER, M.A., Mathematical Master of Uppingham School. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Dalton.**—RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ARITHMETIC. By the Rev. T. DALTON, M.A., Assistant-Master in Eton College. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

[*Answers to the Examples are appended.*

**Lock.**—ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS. By Rev. J. B. LOCK, M.A., Senior Fellow, Assistant Tutor, and Lecturer of Caius College, Cambridge, formerly Assistant-Master at Eton. With Answers and 1000 additional Examples for Exercises. Globe 8vo. *4s. 6d.* Or in Two Parts:—Part I. Up to and including Practice, with Answers. Globe 8vo. *2s.* Part II. With Answers and 1000 additional Examples for Exercise. Globe 8vo. *3s.*

*** *The complete book and both parts can also be obtained* without answers *at the same price, though in different binding. But the edition* with answers *will always be supplied unless the other is specially asked for.*

**Pedley.**—EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC for the Use of Schools. Containing more than 7,000 original Examples. By S. PEDLEY, late of Tamworth Grammar School. Crown 8vo. *5s.* Also in Two Parts *2s. 6d.* each.

**Smith.**—Works by the Rev. BARNARD SMITH, M.A., late Rector of Glaston, Rutland, and Fellow and Senior Bursar of S. Peter's College, Cambridge.

ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA, in their Principles and Application; with numerous systematically arranged Examples taken from the Cambridge Examination Papers, with especial reference to the Ordinary Examination for the B.A. Degree. New Edition, carefully Revised. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS. New Edition. Cr. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

A KEY TO THE ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC. Crown 8vo, limp cloth, 2*s.* With Answers, 2*s.* 6*d.* Answers separately, 6*d.*

SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. 18mo, cloth. 3*s.* Or sold separately, in Three Parts, 1*s.* each.

KEYS TO SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. Parts I., II., and III., 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC FOR NATIONAL AND ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. 18mo, cloth. Or separately, Part I. 2*d.*; Part II. 3*d.*; Part III. 7*d.* Answers, 6*d.*

THE SAME, with Answers complete. 18mo, cloth. 1*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.* The same, with Answers, 18mo, 2*s.* Answers, 6*d.*

KEY TO EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE METRIC SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC, ITS PRINCIPLES AND APPLICATIONS, with numerous Examples, written expressly for Standard V. in National Schools. New Edition. 18mo, cloth, sewed. 3*d.*

A CHART OF THE METRIC SYSTEM, on a Sheet, size 42 in. by 34 in. on Roller, mounted and varnished. New Edition. Price 3*s.* 6*d.*

Also a Small Chart on a Card, price 1*d.*

EASY LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC, combining Exercises in Reading, Writing, Spelling, and Dictation. Part I. for Standard I. in National Schools. Crown 8vo. 9*d.*

EXAMINATION CARDS IN ARITHMETIC. (Dedicated to Lord Sandon.) With Answers and Hints.

Standards I. and II. in box, 1*s.* Standards III., IV., and V., in boxes, 1*s.* each. Standard VI. in Two Parts, in boxes, 1*s.* each.

A and B papers, of nearly the same difficulty, are given so as to prevent copying, and the colours of the A and B papers differ in each Standard, and from those of every other Standard, so that a master or mistress can see at a glance whether the children have the proper papers.

**Todhunter.**—MENSURATION FOR BEGINNERS. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., late of St. John's College, Cambridge. With Examples. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

KEY TO MENSURATION FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. FR. LAWRENCE MCCARTHY, Professor of Mathematics in St. Peter's College, Agra. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

## ALGEBRA.

**Dalton.**—RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ALGEBRA. By the Rev. T. DALTON, M.A., Assistant-Master of Eton College. Part I. New Edition. 18mo. *2s.* Part II. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

*** *A Key to Part I. for Teachers only*, *7s. 6d.*

**Jones and Cheyne.**—ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES. Progressively Arranged. By the Rev. C. A. JONES, M.A., and C. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S., Mathematical Masters of Westminster School. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

**Hall and Knight.**—ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA FOR SCHOOLS. By H. S. HALL, M.A., formerly Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge, Master of the Military and Engineering Side, Clifton College; and S. R. KNIGHT, B.A., formerly Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge, late Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. Second Edition, Revised and Corrected. Globe 8vo, bound in maroon coloured cloth, *3s. 6d.*; with Answers, bound in green coloured cloth, *4s. 6d.*

ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES AND EXAMINATION PAPERS. To accompany ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA. By the same Authors. Globe 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

HIGHER ALGEBRA. A Sequel to "ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA FOR SCHOOLS." By the same Authors. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Smith (Barnard).**—ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA, in their Principles and Application; with numerous systematically arranged Examples taken from the Cambridge Examination Papers, with especial reference to the Ordinary Examination for the B.A. Degree. By the Rev. BARNARD SMITH, M.A., late Rector of Glaston, Rutland, and Fellow and Senior Bursar of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. New Edition, carefully Revised. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

**Smith (Charles).**—Works by CHARLES SMITH, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge.

ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA. Globe 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

In this work the author has endeavoured to explain the principles of Algebra in as simple a manner as possible for the benefit of beginners, bestowing great care upon the explanations and proofs of the fundamental operations and rules.

ALGEBRA FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. [*In the press.*

**Todhunter.**—Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., late of St. John's College, Cambridge.

"Mr. Todhunter is chiefly known to Students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text-books, which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical or other."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

ALGEBRA. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

## EUCLID, & ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY.

**Constable.**—GEOMETRICAL EXERCISES FOR BEGINNERS. By SAMUEL CONSTABLE. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Cuthbertson.**—EUCLIDIAN GEOMETRY. By FRANCIS CUTHBERTSON, M.A., LL.D., Head Mathematical Master of the City of London School. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Dodgson.**—Works by CHARLES L. DODGSON, M.A., Student and late Mathematical Lecturer of Christ Church, Oxford.

EUCLID. BOOKS I. AND II. Fourth Edition, with words substituted for the Algebraical Symbols used in the First Edition. Crown 8vo. *2s.*

*** The text of this Edition has been ascertained, by counting the words, to be *less than five-sevenths* of that contained in the ordinary editions.

EUCLID AND HIS MODERN RIVALS. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

**Eagles.**—CONSTRUCTIVE GEOMETRY OF PLANE CURVES. By T. H. EAGLES, M.A., Instructor in Geometrical Drawing, and Lecturer in Architecture at the Royal Indian Engineering College, Cooper's Hill. With numerous Examples. Crown 8vo. *12s.*

**Hall and Stevens.**—A TEXT BOOK OF EUCLID'S ELEMENTS. Including alternative Proofs, together with additional Theorems and Exercises, classified and arranged. By H. S. HALL, M.A., and F. H. STEVENS, M.A., Assistant-Masters in Clifton College. Globe 8vo.

*** *Part I., containing Books I. and II., will be published before the end of the year. Price 2s.*

**Halsted.**—THE ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY. By GEORGE BRUCE HALSTED, Professor of Pure and Applied Mathematics in the University of Texas. 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

**Kitchener.**—A GEOMETRICAL NOTE-BOOK, containing Easy Problems in Geometrical Drawing preparatory to the Study of Geometry. For the Use of Schools. By F. E. KITCHENER, M.A., Head-Master of the Grammar School, Newcastle, Staffordshire. New Edition. 4to. 2*s.*

**Mault.**—NATURAL GEOMETRY: an Introduction to the Logical Study of Mathematics. For Schools and Technical Classes. With Explanatory Models, based upon the Tachymetrical works of Ed. Lagout. By A. MAULT. 18mo. 1*s.*
Models to Illustrate the above, in Box, 12*s.* 6*d.*

**Snowball.**—THE ELEMENTS OF PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. By J. C. SNOWBALL, M.A. Fourteenth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Syllabus of Plane Geometry** (corresponding to Euclid, Books I.—VI.). Prepared by the Association for the Improvement of Geometrical Teaching. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 1*s.*

**Todhunter.**—THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*
KEY TO EXERCISES IN EUCLID. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

**Wilson (J. M.).**—ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY. BOOKS I.—V. Containing the Subjects of Euclid's first Six Books. Following the Syllabus of the Geometrical Association. By the Rev. J. M. WILSON, M.A., Head Master of Clifton College. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

## TRIGONOMETRY.

**Beasley.**—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. With Examples. By R. D. BEASLEY, M.A. Ninth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Lock.**—Works by Rev. J. B. LOCK, M.A., Senior Fellow, Assistant Tutor and Lecturer in Mathematics, of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge; late Assistant-Master at Eton.

TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS, as far as the Solution of Triangles. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

ELEMENTARY TRIGONOMETRY. Fourth Edition (in this edition the chapter on logarithms has been carefully revised). Globe 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Mr. E. J. ROUTH writes:—"It is an able treatise. It takes the difficulties of the subject one at a time, and so leads the young student easily along."

HIGHER TRIGONOMETRY. Globe 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*
Both Parts complete in One Volume. Globe 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

(See also under *Arithmetic.*)

**M'Clelland and Preston.**—A TREATISE ON SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. With numerous Examples. By WILLIAM J. M'CLELLAND, Sch.B.A., Principal of the Incorporated Society's School, Santry, Dublin, and THOMAS PRESTON, Sch.B.A. In Two Parts. Crown 8vo. Part I. To the End of Solution of Triangles, 4*s.* 6*d.* Part II., 5*s.*

**Todhunter.**—Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., late of St. John's College, Cambridge.

TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. For Schools and Colleges. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

KEY TO PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A TREATISE ON SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

(See also under *Arithmetic and Mensuration*, *Algebra*, and *Higher Mathematics.*)

## HIGHER MATHEMATICS.

**Airy.**—Works by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., formerly Astronomer-Royal.

ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Designed for the Use of Students in the Universities. With Diagrams. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

ON THE ALGEBRAICAL AND NUMERICAL THEORY OF ERRORS OF OBSERVATIONS AND THE COMBINATION OF OBSERVATIONS. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

**Alexander (T.).**—ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS. Being the simpler and more practical Cases of Stress and Strain wrought out individually from first principles by means of Elementary Mathematics. By T. ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Civil Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan. Part I. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Alexander and Thomson.**—ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS. By THOMAS ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan; and ARTHUR WATSON THOMSON, C.E., B.Sc., Professor of Engineering at the Royal College, Cirencester. Part II. TRANSVERSE STRESS. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Boole.**—THE CALCULUS OF FINITE DIFFERENCES. By G. BOOLE, D.C.L., F.R.S., late Professor of Mathematics in the Queen's University, Ireland. Third Edition, revised by J. F. MOULTON. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Cambridge Senate-House Problems and Riders, with Solutions:—**

1875—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By A. G. GREENHILL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

1878—SOLUTIONS OF SENATE-HOUSE PROBLEMS. By the Mathematical Moderators and Examiners. Edited by J. W. L. GLAISHER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 12*s.*

**Carll.**—A TREATISE ON THE CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS. Arranged with the purpose of Introducing, as well as Illustrating, its Principles to the Reader by means of Problems, and Designed to present in all Important Particulars a Complete View of the Present State of the Science. By LEWIS BUFFETT CARLL, A.M. Demy 8vo. 21*s.*

**Cheyne.**—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE PLANETARY THEORY. By C. H. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S. With a Collection of Problems. Third Edition. Edited by Rev. A. FREEMAN, M.A., F.R.A.S. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Christie.**—A COLLECTION OF ELEMENTARY TEST-QUESTIONS IN PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS; with Answers and Appendices on Synthetic Division, and on the Solution of Numerical Equations by Horner's Method. By JAMES R. CHRISTIE, F.R.S., Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

**Clausius.**—MECHANICAL THEORY OF HEAT. By R. CLAUSIUS. Translated by WALTER R. BROWNE, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Clifford.**—THE ELEMENTS OF DYNAMIC. An Introduction to the Study of Motion and Rest in Solid and Fluid Bodies. By W. K. CLIFFORD, F.R.S., late Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics at University College, London. Part I.—KINEMATIC. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Cockshott and Walters.**—A TREATISE ON GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS. By ARTHUR COCKSHOTT, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton, and F. B. WALTERS, M.A., Principal of King William's College, Isle of Man. Crown 8vo.

[*In preparation.*

**Cotterill.**—APPLIED MECHANICS: an Elementary General Introduction to the Theory of Structures and Machines. By JAMES H. COTTERILL, F.R.S., Associate Member of the Council of the Institution of Naval Architects, Associate Member of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Professor of Applied Mechanics in the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. Medium 8vo. 18*s.*

**Day (R. E.)**—ELECTRIC LIGHT ARITHMETIC. By R. E. DAY, M.A., Evening Lecturer in Experimental Physics at King's College, London. Pott 8vo. 2*s.*

**Drew.**—GEOMETRICAL TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS. By W. H. DREW, M.A., St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

**Dyer.**—EXERCISES IN ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY. Compiled and arranged by J. M. DYER, M.A., Senior Mathematical Master in the Classical Department of Cheltenham College. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Eagles.**—CONSTRUCTIVE GEOMETRY OF PLANE CURVES. By T. H. EAGLES, M.A., Instructor in Geometrical Drawing, and Lecturer in Architecture at the Royal Indian Engineering College, Cooper's Hill. With numerous Examples. Crown 8vo. 12*s.*

**Edgar (J. H.) and Pritchard (G. S.).**—NOTE-BOOK ON PRACTICAL SOLID OR DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY. Containing Problems with help for Solutions. By J. H. EDGAR, M.A., Lecturer on Mechanical Drawing at the Royal School of Mines, and G. S. PRITCHARD. Fourth Edition, revised by ARTHUR MEEZE. Globe 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Edwards.**—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS. With Applications and numerous Examples. By JOSEPH EDWARDS, M.A., formerly Fellow of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Ferrers.**—Works by the Rev. N. M. FERRERS, M.A., Master of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON TRILINEAR CO-ORDINATES, the Method of Reciprocal Polars, and the Theory of Projectors. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SPHERICAL HARMONICS, AND SUBJECTS CONNECTED WITH THEM. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Forsyth.**—A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. By ANDREW RUSSELL FORSYTH, M.A., F.R.S., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 14*s.*

**Frost.**—Works by PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., D.Sc., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Mathematical Lecturer at King's College.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CURVE TRACING. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. 8vo. 12.

SOLID GEOMETRY. Third Edition. Demy 8vo. 16*s.*

**Greaves.**—A TREATISE ON ELEMENTARY STATICS. By JOHN GREAVES, M.A., Fellow and Mathematical Lecturer of Christ's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

**Greenhill.**—DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS. With Applications. By A. G. GREENHILL, M.A., Professor of Mathematics to the Senior Class of Artillery Officers, Woolwich, and Examiner in Mathematics to the University of London. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

**Hemming.**—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. By G. W. HEMMING, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Second Edition, with Corrections and Additions. 8vo. *9s.*

**Ibbetson.**—THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF PERFECTLY ELASTIC SOLIDS, with a short account of Viscous Fluids. An Elementary Treatise. By WILLIAM JOHN IBBETSON, B.A., F.R.A.S., Senior Scholar of Clare College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Jellet (John H.).**—A TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF FRICTION. By JOHN H. JELLET, B.D., Provost of Trinity College, Dublin; President of the Royal Irish Academy. 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

**Johnson.**—Works by WILLIAM WOOLSEY JOHNSON, Professor of Mathematics at the U.S. Naval Academy, Annopolis, Maryland.

INTEGRAL CALCULUS, an Elementary Treatise on the; Founded on the Method of Rates or Fluxions. Demy 8vo. *8s.*

CURVE TRACING IN CARTESIAN CO-ORDINATES. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Kelland and Tait.**—INTRODUCTION TO QUATERNIONS, with numerous examples. By P. KELLAND, M.A., F.R.S., and P. G. TAIT, M.A., Professors in the Department of Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

**Kempe.**—HOW TO DRAW A STRAIGHT LINE: a Lecture on Linkages. By A. B. KEMPE. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *1s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Kennedy.**—THE MECHANICS OF MACHINERY. By A. B. W. KENNEDY, M.Inst.C.E., Professor of Engineering and Mechanical Technology in University College, London. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. [*Nearly ready.*

**Knox.**—DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS FOR BEGINNERS. By ALEXANDER KNOX. Fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Lock.**—DYNAMICS FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. J. B. LOCK, M.A., Author of "Trigonometry," "Arithmetic for Schools," &c. Globe 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Lupton.**—CHEMICAL ARITHMETIC. With 1,200 Examples. By SYDNEY LUPTON, M.A., F.C.S., F.I.C., formerly Assistant Master in Harrow School. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Macfarlane.**—PHYSICAL ARITHMETIC. By ALEXANDER MACFARLANE, M.A., D.Sc., F.R.S.E., Examiner in Mathematics to the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

**MacGregor.**—KINEMATICS AND DYNAMICS. An Elementary Treatise. By J. G. MACGREGOR, Professor of Mathematics in Dalhousie College, Halifax, Nova Scotia. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Merriman.**—A TEXT BOOK OF THE METHOD OF LEAST SQUARES. By MANSFIELD MERRIMAN, Professor of Civil Engineering at Lehigh University, Member of the American Philosophical Society, American Association for the Advancement of Science, &c. Demy 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

**Millar.**—ELEMENTS OF DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY. By J. B. MILLAR, C.E., Assistant Lecturer in Engineering in Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

**Milne.**—WEEKLY PROBLEM PAPERS. With Notes intended for the use of students preparing for Mathematical Scholarships, and for the Junior Members of the Universities who are reading for Mathematical Honours. By the Rev. JOHN J. MILNE, M.A., late Second Master of Heversham Grammar School. Pott 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

SOLUTIONS TO WEEKLY PROBLEM PAPERS. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

COMPANION TO "WEEKLY PROBLEM PAPERS." By the same Author. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Muir.**—A TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF DETERMINANTS. With graduated sets of Examples. For use in Colleges and Schools. By THOS. MUIR, M.A., F.R.S.E., Mathematical Master in the High School of Glasgow. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

**Parkinson.**—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON MECHANICS. For the Use of the Junior Classes at the University and the Higher Classes in Schools. By S. PARKINSON, D.D., F.R.S., Tutor and Prælector of St. John's College, Cambridge. With a Collection of Examples. Sixth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *9s. 6d.*

**Pirie.**—LESSONS ON RIGID DYNAMICS. By the Rev. G. PIRIE, M.A., late Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Cambridge; Professor of Mathematics in the University of Aberdeen. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

**Puckle.**—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS AND ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY. With Numerous Examples and Hints for their Solution; especially designed for the Use of Beginners. By G. H. PUCKLE, M.A. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d*

**Reuleaux.**—THE KINEMATICS OF MACHINERY. Outlines of a Theory of Machines. By Professor F. REULEAUX. Translated and Edited by Professor A. B. W. KENNEDY, C.E. With 450 Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21*s.*

**Rice and Johnson.**—DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS, an Elementary Treatise on the ; Founded on the Method of Rates or Fluxions. By JOHN MINOT RICE, Professor of Mathematics in the United States Navy, and WILLIAM WOOLSEY JOHNSON, Professor of Mathematics at the United States Naval Academy. Third Edition, Revised and Corrected. Demy 8vo. 16*s.* Abridged Edition, 8*s.*

**Robinson.**—TREATISE ON MARINE SURVEYING. Prepared for the use of younger Naval Officers. With Questions for Examinations and Exercises principally from the Papers of the Royal Naval College. With the results. By Rev. JOHN L. ROBINSON, Chaplain and Instructor in the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

CONTENTS.—Symbols used in Charts and Surveying—The Construction and Use of Scales—Laying off Angles—Fixing Positions by Angles —Charts and Chart-Drawing—Instruments and Observing — Base Lines—Triangulation—Levelling—Tides and Tidal Observations—Soundings—Chronometers—Meridian Distances —Method of Plotting a Survey—Miscellaneous Exercises—Index.

**Routh.**—Works by EDWARD JOHN ROUTH, D.Sc., LL.D., F.R.S., Fellow of the University of London, Hon. Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

A TREATISE ON THE DYNAMICS OF THE SYSTEM OF RIGID BODIES. With numerous Examples. Fourth and enlarged Edition. Two Vols. 8vo. Vol. I.—Elementary Parts. 14*s.* Vol. II.—The Advanced Parts. 14*s.*

STABILITY OF A GIVEN STATE OF MOTION, PARTICULARLY STEADY MOTION. Adams' Prize Essay for 1877. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

**Smith (C.).**—Works by CHARLES SMITH, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge.

CONIC SECTIONS. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SOLID GEOMETRY. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 9*s.* 6*d.* (See also under *Algebra.*)

**Tait and Steele.**—A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS OF A PARTICLE. With numerous Examples. By Professor TAIT and Mr. STEELE. Fifth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 12*s.*

**Thomson.**—A TREATISE ON THE MOTION OF VORTEX RINGS. An Essay to which the Adams Prize was adjudged in 1882 in the University of Cambridge. By J. J. THOMSON, Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Professor of Experimental Physics in the University. With Diagrams. 8vo. 6*s.*

**Todhunter.**—Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., late of St. John's College, Cambridge.

"Mr. Todhunter is chiefly known to students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text-books, which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical and other."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF EQUATIONS. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

PLANE CO-ORDINATE GEOMETRY, as applied to the Straight Line and the Conic Sections. With numerous Examples. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

A TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A TREATISE ON THE INTEGRAL CALCULUS AND ITS APPLICATIONS. With numerous Examples. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

EXAMPLES OF ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY OF THREE DIMENSIONS. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 4*s.*

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF PROBABILITY, from the time of Pascal to that of Laplace. 8vo. 18*s.*

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORIES OF ATTRACTION, AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH, from the time of Newton to that of Laplace. 2 vols. 8vo. 24*s.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON LAPLACE'S, LAME'S, AND BESSEL'S FUNCTIONS. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

(See also under *Arithmetic and Mensuration*, *Algebra*, and *Trigonometry*.)

**Wilson (J. M.).**—SOLID GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS. With Appendices on Transversals and Harmonic Division. For the Use of Schools. By Rev. J. M. WILSON, M.A. Head Master of Clifton College. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Woolwich Mathematical Papers,** for Admission into the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, 1880—1884 inclusive. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Wolstenholme.**—MATHEMATICAL PROBLEMS, on Subjects included in the First and Second Divisions of the Schedule of subjects for the Cambridge Mathematical Tripos Examination. Devised and arranged by JOSEPH WOLSTENHOLME, D.Sc., late Fellow of Christ's College, sometime Fellow of St. John's College, and Professor of Mathematics in the Royal Indian Engineering College. New Edition, greatly enlarged. 8vo. 18*s.*

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE IN THE USE OF SEVEN FIGURE LOGARITHMS. By the same Author. [*In preparation.*

# SCIENCE.

(1) Natural Philosophy, (2) Astronomy, (3) Chemistry, (4) Biology, (5) Medicine, (6) Anthropology, (7) Physical Geography and Geology, (8) Agriculture, (9) Political Economy, (10) Mental and Moral Philosophy.

## NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

Airy.—Works by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., formerly Astronomer-Royal.

ON SOUND AND ATMOSPHERIC VIBRATIONS. With the Mathematical Elements of Music. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo 9*s*

A TREATISE ON MAGNETISM. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Crown 8vo. 9*s*. 6*d*.

GRAVITATION: an Elementary Explanation of the Principal Perturbations in the Solar System. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s*. 6*d*.

Alexander (T.).—ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS. Being the simpler and more practical Cases of Stress and Strain wrought out individually from first principles by means of Elementary Mathematics. By T. ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Civil Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan. Crown 8vo. Part I. 4*s*. 6*d*.

Alexander — Thomson. — ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS. By THOMAS ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan: and ARTHUR WATSON THOMSON, C.E., B.Sc., Professor of Engineering at the Royal College, Cirencester. Part II. TRANSVERSE STRESS; upwards of 150 Diagrams, and 200 Examples carefully worked out; new and complete method for finding, at every point of a beam, the amount of the greatest bending moment and shearing force during the transit of any set of loads fixed relatively to one another—*e.g.*, the wheels of a locomotive; continuous beams, &c., &c. Crown 8vo. 10*s*. 6*d*.

Ball (R. S.).—EXPERIMENTAL MECHANICS. A Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Science for Ireland. By Sir R. S. BALL, M.A., Astronomer Royal for Ireland. Cheaper Issue. Royal 8vo. 10*s*. 6*d*.

**Chisholm.**—THE SCIENCE OF WEIGHING AND MEASURING, AND THE STANDARDS OF MEASURE AND WEIGHT. By H.W. CHISHOLM, Warden of the Standards. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series*).

**Clausius.**—MECHANICAL THEORY OF HEAT. By R. CLAUSIUS. Translated by WALTER R. BROWNE, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Cotterill.**—APPLIED MECHANICS: an Elementary General Introduction to the Theory of Structures and Machines. By JAMES H. COTTERILL, F.R.S., Associate Member of the Council of the Institution of Naval Architects, Associate Member of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Professor of Applied Mechanics in the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. Medium 8vo. 18*s.*

**Cumming.**—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE THEORY OF ELECTRICITY. By LINNÆUS CUMMING, M.A., one of the Masters of Rugby School. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

**Daniell.**—A TEXT-BOOK OF THE PRINCIPLES OF PHYSICS. By ALFRED DANIELL, M.A., LL.B., D.Sc., F.R.S.E., late Lecturer on Physics in the School of Medicine, Edinburgh. With Illustrations. Second Edition. Revised and Enlarged. Medium 8vo. 21*s.*

**Day.**—ELECTRIC LIGHT ARITHMETIC. By R. E. DAY, M.A., Evening Lecturer in Experimental Physics at King's College, London. Pott 8vo. 2*s.*

**Everett.**—UNITS AND PHYSICAL CONSTANTS. By J. D. EVERETT, M.A., D.C.L., F.R.S., F.R.S.E., Professor of Natural Philosophy, Queen's College, Belfast. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

**Gray.**—ABSOLUTE MEASUREMENTS IN ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. By ANDREW GRAY, M.A., F.R.S.E., Professor of Physics in the University College of North Wales. Crown 8vo. [*New Edition in the press.*

**Grove.**—A DICTIONARY OF MUSIC AND MUSICIANS. (A.D. 1450—1886). By Eminent Writers, English and Foreign. Edited by Sir GEORGE GROVE, D.C.L., Director of the Royal College of Music, &c. Demy 8vo.

Vols. I., II., and III. Price 21*s.* each.

Vol. I. A to IMPROMPTU. Vol. II. IMPROPERIA to PLAIN SONG. Vol. III. PLANCHE TO SUMER IS ICUMEN IN. Demy 8vo. cloth, with Illustrations in Music Type and Woodcut. Also published in Parts. Parts I. to XIV., Parts XIX—XXI., price 3*s.* 6*d.* each. Parts XV., XVI., price 7*s.* Parts XVII., XVIII., price 7*s.*

"Dr. Grove's Dictionary will be a boon to every intelligent lover of music."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

**Huxley.**—INTRODUCTORY PRIMER OF SCIENCE. By T. H. HUXLEY, F.R.S., &c. 18mo. *1s.*

**Ibbetson.**—THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF PERFECTLY ELASTIC SOLIDS, with a Short Account of Viscous Fluids. An Elementary Treatise. By WILLIAM JOHN IBBETSON, B.A., F.R.A.S., Senior Scholar of Clare College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Kempe.**—HOW TO DRAW A STRAIGHT LINE; a Lecture on Linkages. By A. B. KEMPE. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *1s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Kennedy.**—THE MECHANICS OF MACHINERY. By A. B. W. KENNEDY, M.Inst.C.E., Professor of Engineering and Mechanical Technology in University College, London. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. [*Shortly.*

**Lang.**—EXPERIMENTAL PHYSICS. By P. R. SCOTT LANG, M.A., Professor of Mathematics in the University of St. Andrews. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Lupton.**—NUMERICAL TABLES AND CONSTANTS IN ELEMENTARY SCIENCE. By SYDNEY LUPTON, M.A., F.C.S., F.I.C., Assistant Master at Harrow School. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Macfarlane.**—PHYSICAL ARITHMETIC. By ALEXANDER MACFARLANE, D.Sc., Examiner in Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

**Mayer.**—SOUND: a Series of Simple, Entertaining, and Inexpensive Experiments in the Phenomena of Sound, for the Use of Students of every age. By A. M. MAYER, Professor of Physics in the Stevens Institute of Technology, &c. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Mayer and Barnard.**—LIGHT: a Series of Simple, Entertaining, and Inexpensive Experiments in the Phenomena of Light, for the Use of Students of every age. By A. M. MAYER and C. BARNARD. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Newton.**—PRINCIPIA. Edited by Professor Sir W. THOMSON and Professor BLACKBURNE. 4to, cloth. *31s. 6d.*

THE FIRST THREE SECTIONS OF NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA. With Notes and Illustrations. Also a Collection of Problems, principally intended as Examples of Newton's Methods. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. Third Edition. 8vo. *12s.*

**Parkinson.**—A TREATISE ON OPTICS. By S. PARKINSON, D.D., F.R.S., Tutor and Prælector of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

**Perry.** — STEAM. AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE. By JOHN PERRY, C.E., Whitworth Scholar, Fellow of the Chemical Society, Professor of Mechanical Engineering and Applied Mechanics at the Technical College, Finsbury. With numerous Woodcuts and Numerical Examples and Exercises. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Ramsay.**— EXPERIMENTAL PROOFS OF CHEMICAL THEORY FOR BEGINNERS. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in University College, Bristol. Pott 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Rayleigh.**—THE THEORY OF SOUND. By LORD RAYLEIGH, M.A., F.R.S., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, 8vo. Vol. I. 12*s.* 6*d.* Vol. II. 12*s.* 6*d.* [*Vol. III. in the press.*

**Reuleaux.**—THE KINEMATICS OF MACHINERY. Outlines of a Theory of Machines. By Professor F. REULEAUX. Translated and Edited by Professor A. B. W. KENNEDY, C.E. With 450 Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21*s.*

**Roscoe and Schuster.**—SPECTRUM ANALYSIS. Lectures delivered in 1868 before the Society of Apothecaries of London. By Sir HENRY E. ROSCOE, LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Owens College, Victoria University, Manchester. Fourth Edition, revised and considerably enlarged by the Author and by ARTHUR SCHUSTER, F.R.S., Ph.D., Professor of Applied Mathematics in the Owens College, Victoria University. With Appendices, numerous Illustrations, and Plates. Medium 8vo. 21*s.*

**Shann.**—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON HEAT, IN RELATION TO STEAM AND THE STEAM-ENGINE. By G. SHANN, M.A. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Spottiswoode.**—POLARISATION OF LIGHT. By the late W. SPOTTISWOODE, F.R.S. With many Illustrations. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Stewart (Balfour).**—Works by BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Owens College, Victoria University, Manchester.

PRIMER OF PHYSICS. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition, with Questions. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. With numerous Illustrations and Chromolitho of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

QUESTIONS ON BALFOUR STEWART'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSICS. By Prof. THOMAS H. CORE, Owens College, Manchester. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.*

**Stewart and Gee.**—ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSICS, LESSONS IN. By Professor BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., and W. HALDANE GEE, B.Sc. Crown 8vo.

Part I.—GENERAL PHYSICAL PROCESSES. 6*s.*
Part II.—ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. [*In the press.*
Part III.—OPTICS, HEAT, AND SOUND. [*In preparation.*
A SCHOOL COURSE OF PRACTICAL PHYSICS. By the same Authors. [*In preparation.*

**Stokes.**—ON LIGHT. Being the Burnett Lectures, delivered in Aberdeen in 1883-1884. By GEORGE GABRIEL STOKES, M.A., P.R.S., &c., Fellow of Pembroke College, and Lucasian Professor of Mathematics in the University of Cambridge. First Course. ON THE NATURE OF LIGHT.—Second Course. ON LIGHT AS A MEANS OF INVESTIGATION. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* each.
[*Third Course in the press.*

**Stone.**—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SOUND. By W. H. STONE, M.D. With Illustrations. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Tait.**—HEAT. By P. G. TAIT, M.A., Sec. R.S.E., formerly Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge, Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Thompson.**—ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. By SILVANUS P. THOMPSON, Principal and Professor of Physics in the Technical College, Finsbury. With Illustrations. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Thomson.**—ELECTROSTATICS AND MAGNETISM, REPRINTS OF PAPERS ON. By Sir WILLIAM THOMSON, D.C.L., LL.D., F.R.S., F.R.S.E., Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Glasgow. Second Edition. Medium 8vo. 18*s.*

THE MOTION OF VORTEX RINGS, A TREATISE ON. An Essay to which the Adams Prize was adjudged in 1882 in the University of Cambridge. By J. J. THOMSON, Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Professor of Experimental Physics in the University. With Diagrams. 8vo. 6*s.*

**Todhunter.**—NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR BEGINNERS. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc.

Part I. The Properties of Solid and Fluid Bodies. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Part II. Sound, Light, and Heat. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Turner.**—HEAT AND ELECTRICITY, A COLLECTION OF EXAMPLES ON. By H. H. TURNER, B.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Wright (Lewis).**—LIGHT; A COURSE OF EXPERIMENTAL OPTICS, CHIEFLY WITH THE LANTERN. By LEWIS WRIGHT. With nearly 200 Engravings and Coloured Plates. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

## ASTRONOMY.

**Airy.**—POPULAR ASTRONOMY. With Illustrations by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., formerly Astronomer-Royal. New Edition. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

**Forbes.**—TRANSIT OF VENUS. By G. FORBES, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Andersonian University, Glasgow. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Godfray.**—Works by HUGH GODFRAY, M.A., Mathematical Lecturer at Pembroke College, Cambridge.

A TREATISE ON ASTRONOMY, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. Fourth Edition. 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE LUNAR THEORY, with a Brief Sketch of the Problem up to the time of Newton. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

**Lockyer.**—Works by J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S.

PRIMER OF ASTRONOMY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. *1s.* (*Science Primers.*)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. With Coloured Diagram of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ, and numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

QUESTIONS ON LOCKYER'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. For the Use of Schools. By JOHN FORBES-ROBERTSON. 18mo, cloth limp *1s. 6d.*

**Newcomb.**—POPULAR ASTRONOMY. By S. NEWCOMB, LL.D., Professor U.S. Naval Observatory. With 112 Illustrations and 5 Maps of the Stars. Second Edition, revised. 8vo. *18s.*

"It is unlike anything else of its kind, and will be of more use in circulating a knowledge of Astronomy than nine-tenths of the books which have appeared on the subject of late years."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

## CHEMISTRY.

**Cooke.**—ELEMENTS OF CHEMICAL PHYSICS. By JOSIAH P. COOKE, Junr., Erving Professor of Chemistry and Mineralogy in Harvard University. Fourth Edition. Royal 8vo. *21s.*

**Fleischer.**—A SYSTEM OF VOLUMETRIC ANALYSIS. Translated, with Notes and Additions, from the Second German Edition by M. M. PATTISON MUIR, F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

**Jones.**—Works by FRANCIS JONES, F.R.S.E., F.C.S., Chemical Master in the Grammar School, Manchester.

THE OWENS COLLEGE JUNIOR COURSE OF PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. With Preface by Sir HENRY ROSCOE, F.R.S., and Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

QUESTIONS ON CHEMISTRY. A Series of Problems and Exercises in Inorganic and Organic Chemistry. Fcap. 8vo. *3s.*

**Landauer.**—BLOWPIPE ANALYSIS. By J. LANDAUER. Authorised English Edition by J. TAYLOR and W. E. KAY, of Owens College, Manchester. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Lupton.**—ELEMENTARY CHEMICAL ARITHMETIC. With 1,200 Problems. By SYDNEY LUPTON, M.A., F.C.S., F.I.C., formerly Assistant-Master at Harrow. *Second Edition, Revised and Abridged.* Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Muir.**—PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS. Specially arranged for the first M.B. Course. By M. M. PATTISON MUIR, F.R.S.E. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

**Muir and Wilson.**—THE ELEMENTS OF THERMAL CHEMISTRY. By M. M. PATTISON MUIR, M.A., F.R.S.E., Fellow and Prælector of Chemistry in Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge; Assisted by DAVID MUIR WILSON. 8vo. 12*s* 6*d.*

**Remsen.**—Works by IRA REMSEN, Professor of Chemistry in the Johns Hopkins University.

COMPOUNDS OF CARBON; or, Organic Chemistry, an Introduction to the Study of. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF CHEMISTRY (INORGANIC CHEMISTRY). Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

**Roscoe.**—Works by Sir HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester.

PRIMER OF CHEMISTRY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. With Questions. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY, INORGANIC AND ORGANIC. With numerous Illustrations and Chromolitho of the Solar Spectrum, and of the Alkalies and Alkaline Earths. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS, prepared with Special Reference to the foregoing, by T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Yorkshire College of Science, Leeds, Adapted for the Preparation of Students for the Government, Science, and Society of Arts Examinations. With a Preface by Sir HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S. New Edition, with Key. 18mo. 2*s.*

**Roscoe and Schorlemmer.**—INORGANIC AND ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. A Complete Treatise on Inorganic and Organic Chemistry. By Sir HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., and Professor C. SCHORLEMMER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo.

Vols. I. and II.—INORGANIC CHEMISTRY.

Vol. I.—The Non-Metallic Elements. 21*s.* Vol. II. Part I.—Metals. 18*s.* Vol. II. Part II.—Metals. 18*s.*

Vol. III.—ORGANIC CHEMISTRY.

THE CHEMISTRY OF THE HYDROCARBONS and their Derivatives, or ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo. Two Parts. 21*s.* each.

**Roscoe and Schorlemmer**—*continued.*

Vol. III.—Part III. ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, continued. [*Immediately.*

**Schorlemmer.**—A MANUAL OF THE CHEMISTRY OF THE CARBON COMPOUNDS, OR ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. By C. SCHORLEMMER, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester. With Illustrations. 8vo. 14*s.*

**Thorpe.**—A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS, prepared with Special Reference to Sir H. E. Roscoe's Lessons in Elementary Chemistry, by T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Normal School of Science, South Kensington, adapted for the Preparation of Students for the Government, Science, and Society of Arts Examinations. With a Preface by Sir HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S. New Edition, with Key. 18mo. 2*s.*

**Thorpe and Rücker.**—A TREATISE ON CHEMICAL PHYSICS. By T. E. THORPE, Ph.D., F.R.S. Professor o. Chemistry in the Normal School of Science, and Professor A. W. RÜCKER. Illustrated. 8vo. [*In preparation*

**Wright.**—METALS AND THEIR CHIEF INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS. By C. ALDER WRIGHT, D.Sc., &c., Lecturer on Chemistry in St. Mary's Hospital Medical School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

## BIOLOGY.

**Allen.**—ON THE COLOUR OF FLOWERS, as Illustrated in the British Flora. By GRANT ALLEN. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Balfour.**—A TREATISE ON COMPARATIVE EMBRYOLOGY. By F. M. BALFOUR, M.A., F.R.S., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. With Illustrations. Second Edition, reprinted without alteration from the First Edition. In 2 vols. 8vo. Vol. I. 18*s.* Vol. II. 21*s.*

**Bettany.**—FIRST LESSONS IN PRACTICAL BOTANY. By G. T. BETTANY, M.A., F.L.S., formerly Lecturer in Botany at Guy's Hospital Medical School. 18mo. 1*s.*

**Bower—Vines.**—A COURSE OF PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN BOTANY. By F. O. BOWER, M.A., F.L.S., Professor of Botany in the University of Glasgow, and SYDNEY H. VINES, M.A., D.Sc., F.R.S., Fellow and Lecturer, Christ's College, Cambridge. With a Preface by W. T. THISELTON DYER, M.A., C.M.G., F.R.S., F.L.S., Director of the Royal Gardens, Kew.

Part I.—PHANEROGAMÆ—PTERIDOPHYTA. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Darwin (Charles).**—MEMORIAL NOTICES OF CHARLES DARWIN, F.R.S., &c. By THOMAS HENRY HUXLEY, F.R.S., G. J. ROMANES, F.R.S., ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S., and W. T. THISELTON DYER, F.R.S. Reprinted from *Nature*. With a Portrait, engraved by C. H. JEENS. Crown 8vo. 2*s*. 6*d*. (*Nature Series*.)

**Flower and Gadow.**—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE OSTEOLOGY OF THE MAMMALIA. By WILLIAM HENRY FLOWER, LL.D., F.R.S., Director of the Natural History Departments of the British Museum, late Hunterian Professor of Comparative Anatomy and Physiology in the Royal College of Surgeons of England. With numerous Illustrations. Third Edition. Revised with the assistance of HANS GADOW, Ph.D., M.A., Lecturer on the Advanced Morphology of Vertebrates and Strickland Curator in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 10*s*. 6*d*.

**Foster.**—Works by MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., Sec. R.S., Professor of Physiology in the University of Cambridge.

PRIMER OF PHYSIOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s*.

A TEXT-BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY. With Illustrations. Fourth Edition, revised. 8vo. 21*s*.

**Foster and Balfour.**—THE ELEMENTS OF EMBRYOLOGY. By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.A., M.D., LL.D., Sec. R.S., Professor of Physiology in the University of Cambridge, Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and the late FRANCIS M. BALFOUR, M.A., LL.D., F.R.S., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Professor of Animal Morphology in the University. Second Edition, revised. Edited by ADAM SEDGWICK, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge, and WALTER HEAPE, Demonstrator in the Morphological Laboratory of the University of Cambridge. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10*s*. 6*d*.

**Foster and Langley.**—A COURSE OF ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGY. By Prof. MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., Sec. R.S., &c., and J. N. LANGLEY, M.A., F.R.S., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s*. 6*d*.

**Gamgee.**—A TEXT-BOOK OF THE PHYSIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY OF THE ANIMAL BODY. Including an Account of the Chemical Changes occurring in Disease. By A. GAMGEE, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester. 2 Vols. 8vo. With Illustrations. Vol. I. 18*s*. [*Vol. II. in the press.*

**Gegenbaur.**—ELEMENTS OF COMPARATIVE ANATOMY. By Professor CARL GEGENBAUR. A Translation by F. JEFFREY BELL, B.A. Revised with Preface by Professor E. RAY LANKESTER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 8vo. 21*s*.

**Gray.**—STRUCTURAL BOTANY, OR ORGANOGRAPHY ON THE BASIS OF MORPHOLOGY. To which are added the principles of Taxonomy and Phytography, and a Glossary of Botanical Terms. By Professor ASA GRAY, LL.D. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Hooker.**—Works by Sir J. D. HOOKER, K.C.S.I., C.B., M.D., F.R.S., D.C.L.

PRIMER OF BOTANY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

THE STUDENT'S FLORA OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS. Third Edition, revised. Globe 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Howes.**—AN ATLAS OF PRACTICAL ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY. By G. B. HOWES, Assistant Professor of Zoology, Normal School of Science and Royal School of Mines. With a Preface by THOMAS HENRY HUXLEY, F.R.S. Royal 4to. 14*s.*

**Huxley.**—Works by THOMAS HENRY HUXLEY, F.R.S.

INTRODUCTORY PRIMER OF SCIENCE. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition Revised. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

QUESTIONS ON HUXLEY'S PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS. By T. ALCOCK, M.D. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

**Huxley and Martin.**—A COURSE OF PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY. By THOMAS HENRY HUXLEY, F.R.S., assisted by H. N. MARTIN, M.B., D.Sc. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Kane.**—EUROPEAN BUTTERFLIES, A HANDBOOK OF By W. F. DE VISMES KANE, M.A., M.R.I.A., Member of the Entomological Society of London, &c. With Copper Plate Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A LIST OF EUROPEAN RHOPALOCERA WITH THEIR VARIETIES AND PRINCIPAL SYNONYMS. Reprinted from the *Handbook of European Butterflies.* Crown 8vo. 1*s.*

**Lankester.**—Works by Professor E. RAY LANKESTER, F.R.S.

A TEXT BOOK OF ZOOLOGY. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

DEGENERATION: A CHAPTER IN DARWINISM. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Lubbock.**—Works by SIR JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S., D.C.L.

THE ORIGIN AND METAMORPHOSES OF INSECTS. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

ON BRITISH WILD FLOWERS CONSIDERED IN RELATION TO INSECTS. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series*).

FLOWERS, FRUITS, AND LEAVES. With Illustrations Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**M'Kendrick.**—OUTLINES OF PHYSIOLOGY IN ITS RELATIONS TO MAN. By J. G. M'KENDRICK, M.D., F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

**Martin and Moale.**—ON THE DISSECTION OF VERTEBRATE ANIMALS. By Professor H. N. MARTIN and W. A. MOALE. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Mivart.**—Works by ST. GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S., Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St. Mary's Hospital.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY ANATOMY. With upwards of 400 Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

THE COMMON FROG. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Müller.**—THE FERTILISATION OF FLOWERS. By Professor HERMANN MÜLLER. Translated and Edited by D'ARCY W. THOMPSON, B.A., Professor of Biology in University College, Dundee. With a Preface by CHARLES DARWIN, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21*s.*

**Oliver.**—Works by DANIEL OLIVER, F.R.S., &c., Professor of Botany in University College, London, &c.

FIRST BOOK OF INDIAN BOTANY. With numerous Illustrations. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY. With nearly 200 Illustrations. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Parker.**—A COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN ZOOTOMY (VERTEBRATA). By T. JEFFREY PARKER, B.Sc. London, Professor of Biology in the University of Otago, New Zealand. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

**Parker and Bettany.**—THE MORPHOLOGY OF THE SKULL. By Professor W. K. PARKER, F.R.S., and G. T. BETTANY. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Smith.**—Works by JOHN SMITH, A.L.S., &c.

A DICTIONARY OF ECONOMIC PLANTS. Their History, Products, and Uses. 8vo. 14*s.*

DOMESTIC BOTANY: An Exposition of the Structure and Classification of Plants, and their Uses for Food, Clothing, Medicine, and Manufacturing Purposes. With Illustrations. New Issue. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

**Smith (W. G.)**—DISEASES OF FIELD AND GARDEN CROPS, CHIEFLY SUCH AS ARE CAUSED BY FUNGI. By WORTHINGTON G. SMITH, F.L.S., M.A.I., Member of the Scientific Committee R.H.S. With 143 New Illustrations drawn and engraved from Nature by the Author. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Wiedersheim (Prof.).**—ELEMENTS OF THE COMPARATIVE ANATOMY OF VERTEBRATES. Adapted from the German of ROBERT WIEDERSHEIM, Professor of Anatomy, and Director of the Institute of Human and Comparative Anatomy in the University of Freiburg-in-Baden, by W. NEWTON PARKER, Professor of Biology in the University College of South Wales and Monmouthshire. With Additions by the Author and Translator. With Two Hundred and Seventy Woodcuts. Medium 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

## MEDICINE.

**Brunton.**—Works by T. LAUDER BRUNTON, M.D., D.Sc., F.R.C.P., F.R.S., Assistant Physician and Lecturer on Materia Medica at St. Bartholomew's Hospital; Examiner in Materia Medica in the University of London, in the Victoria University, and in the Royal College of Physicians, London; late Examiner in the University of Edinburgh.

A TEXT-BOOK OF PHARMACOLOGY, THERAPEUTICS, AND MATERIA MEDICA. Adapted to the United States Pharmacopœia, by FRANCIS H. WILLIAMS, M.D., Boston, Mass. Second Edition. Adapted to the New British Pharmacopœia, 1885. Medium 8vo. 21*s.*

TABLES OF MATERIA MEDICA: A Companion to the Materia Medica Museum. With Illustrations. New Edition Enlarged. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Hamilton.**—A TEXT-BOOK OF PATHOLOGY. By D. J. HAMILTON, Professor of Pathological Anatomy (Sir Erasmus Wilson Chair), University of Aberdeen. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Klein.**—MICRO-ORGANISMS AND DISEASE. An Introduction into the Study of Specific Micro-Organisms. By E. KLEIN, M.D., F.R.S., Lecturer on General Anatomy and Physiology in the Medical School of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London. With 121 Illustrations. Third Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo 6*s.*

**Ziegler-Macalister.**—TEXT-BOOK OF PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY AND PATHOGENESIS. By Professor ERNST ZIEGLER of Tübingen. Translated and Edited for English Students by DONALD MACALISTER, M.A., M.D., B.Sc., F.R.C.P., Fellow and Medical Lecturer of St. John's College, Cambridge, Physician to Addenbrooke's Hospital, and Teacher of Medicine in the University. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo.

Part I.—GENERAL PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Part II.—SPECIAL PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY. Sections I.—VIII. 12*s.* 6*d.* Sections IX.—XVII. *in the press.*

## ANTHROPOLOGY.

**Flower.**—FASHION IN DEFORMITY, as Illustrated in the Customs of Barbarous and Civilised Races. By Professor FLOWER, F.R.S., F.R.C.S. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Tylor.**—ANTHROPOLOGY. An Introduction to the Study of Man and Civilisation. By E. B. TYLOR, D.C.L., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

## PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY & GEOLOGY.

**Blanford.**—THE RUDIMENTS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY FOR THE USE OF INDIAN SCHOOLS; with a Glossary of Technical Terms employed. By H. F. BLANFORD, F.R.S. New Edition, with Illustrations. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Geikie.**—Works by ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, LL.D., F.R.S., Director-General of the Geological Survey of Great Britain and Ireland, and Director of the Museum of Practical Geology, London, formerly Murchison Professor of Geology and Mineralogy in the University of Edinburgh, &c.

PRIMER OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. With Questions. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*
QUESTIONS ON THE SAME. 1*s.* 6*d.*

PRIMER OF GEOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

CLASS BOOK OF GEOLOGY. With upwards of 200 New Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

TEXT-BOOK OF GEOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition, Fifth Thousand, Revised and Enlarged. 8vo. 28*s.*

OUTLINES OF FIELD GEOLOGY. With Illustrations. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Huxley.**—PHYSIOGRAPHY. An Introduction to the Study of Nature. By THOMAS HENRY HUXLEY, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations, and Coloured Plates. New and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Phillips.**—A TREATISE ON ORE DEPOSITS. By J. ARTHUR PHILLIPS, F.R.S., V.P.G.S., F.C.S., M.Inst.C.E., Ancien Élève de l'École des Mines, Paris; Author of "A Manual of Metallurgy," "The Mining and Metallurgy of Gold and Silver," &c. With numerous Illustrations. 8vo. 25*s.*

## AGRICULTURE.

**Frankland.**—AGRICULTURAL CHEMICAL ANALYSIS, A Handbook of. By PERCY FARADAY FRANKLAND, Ph.D., B.Sc., F.C.S., Associate of the Royal School of Mines, and Demonstrator of Practical and Agricultural Chemistry in the Normal School of Science and Royal School of Mines, South Kensington Museum. Founded upon *Leitfaden für die Agriculture Chemiche Analyse*, von Dr. F. KROCKER. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

**Smith (Worthington G.).**—DISEASES OF FIELD AND GARDEN CROPS, CHIEFLY SUCH AS ARE CAUSED BY FUNGI. By WORTHINGTON G. SMITH, F.L.S., M.A.I., Member of the Scientific Committee of the R.H.S. With 143 Illustrations, drawn and engraved from Nature by the Author. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Tanner.**—Works by HENRY TANNER, F.C.S., M.R.A.C., Examiner in the Principles of Agriculture under the Government Department of Science; Director of Education in the Institute of Agriculture, South Kensington, London; sometime Professor of Agricultural Science, University College, Aberystwith.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN THE SCIENCE OF AGRICULTURAL PRACTICE. Fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

FIRST PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE. 18mo. *1s.*

THE PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE. A Series of Reading Books for use in Elementary Schools. Prepared by HENRY TANNER, F.C.S., M.R.A.C. Extra fcap. 8vo.

I. The Alphabet of the Principles of Agriculture. *6d.*

II. Further Steps in the Principles of Agriculture. *1s.*

III. Elementary School Readings on the Principles of Agriculture for the third stage. *1s.*

## POLITICAL ECONOMY.

**Cossa.**—GUIDE TO THE STUDY OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Dr. LUIGI COSSA, Professor in the University of Pavia. Translated from the Second Italian Edition. With a Preface by W. STANLEY JEVONS, F.R.S. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Fawcett (Mrs.).**—Works by MILLICENT GARRETT FAWCETT:—

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS, WITH QUESTIONS. Fourth Edition. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

TALES IN POLITICAL ECONOMY. Crown 8vo. *3s.*

**Fawcett.**—A MANUAL OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Right Hon. HENRY FAWCETT, F.R.S. Sixth Edition, revised, with a chapter on "State Socialism and the Nationalisation of the Land," and an Index. Crown 8vo. *12s.*

**Jevons.**—PRIMER OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By W. STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

**Marshall.**—THE ECONOMICS OF INDUSTRY. By A. MARSHALL, M.A., Professor of Political Economy in the University of Cambridge, and MARY P. MARSHALL, late Lecturer at Newnham Hall, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Sidgwick.**—THE PRINCIPLES OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Professor HENRY SIDGWICK, M.A., LL.D., Knightbridge Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Cambridge, &c., Author of "The Methods of Ethics." 8vo. 16*s.*

**Walker.**—Works by FRANCIS A. WALKER, M.A., Ph.D., Author of "Money," "Money in its Relation to Trade," &c.

POLITICAL ECONOMY. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A BRIEF TEXT-BOOK OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

THE WAGES QUESTION. 8vo. 14*s.*

## MENTAL & MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

**Calderwood.**—HANDBOOK OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY. By the Rev. HENRY CALDERWOOD, LL.D., Professor of Moral Philosophy, University of Edinburgh. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Clifford.**—SEEING AND THINKING. By the late Professor W. K. CLIFFORD, F.R.S. With Diagrams. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (*Nature Series.*)

**Jardine.**—THE ELEMENTS OF THE PSYCHOLOGY OF COGNITION. By the Rev. ROBERT JARDINE, B.D., D.Sc. (Edin.), Ex-Principal of the General Assembly's College, Calcutta. Second Edition, revised and improved. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

**Jevons.**—Works by the late W. STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S.

PRIMER OF LOGIC. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Science Primers.*)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN LOGIC; Deductive and Inductive, with copious Questions and Examples, and a Vocabulary of Logical Terms. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE PRINCIPLES OF SCIENCE. A Treatise on Logic and Scientific Method. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

STUDIES IN DEDUCTIVE LOGIC. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Keynes.**—FORMAL LOGIC, Studies and Exercises in. Including a Generalisation of Logical Processes in their application to Complex Inferences. By JOHN NEVILLE KEYNES, M.A., late Fellow of Pembroke College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Kant—Max Müller.**—CRITIQUE OF PURE REASON. By IMMANUEL KANT. In commemoration of the Centenary of its first Publication. Translated into English by F. MAX MÜLLER. With an Historical Introduction by LUDWIG NOIRÉ. 2 vols. Demy 8vo. 16*s.* each.

Volume I. HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION, by LUDWIG NOIRÉ; &c., &c.

Volume II. CRITIQUE OF PURE REASON, translated by F. MAX MÜLLER.

For the convenience of students these volumes are now sold separately.

**McCosh.**—PSYCHOLOGY.—THE COGNITIVE POWERS. By JAMES MCCOSH, D.D., LL.D., Litt.D., President of Princeton College, Author of "Intuitions of the Mind," "Laws of Discursive Thought," &c. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

**Ray.**—A TEXT-BOOK OF DEDUCTIVE LOGIC FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS. By P. K. RAY, D.Sc. (Lon. and Edin.), Professor of Logic and Philosophy, Dacca College. Second Edition Globe 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Sidgwick.**—Works by HENRY SIDGWICK, M.A., LL.D., Knightbridge Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Cambridge.

THE METHODS OF ETHICS. Third Edition. 8vo. 14*s.* A Supplement to the Second Edition, containing all the important Additions and Alterations in the Third Edition. Demy 8vo. 6*s.*

OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF ETHICS, for English Readers. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

## HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

**Arnold (T.).**—THE SECOND PUNIC WAR. Being Chapters from THE HISTORY OF ROME. By THOMAS ARNOLD, D.D. Edited, with Notes, by W. T. ARNOLD, M.A. With 8 Maps. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

**Arnold (W. T.).**—THE ROMAN SYSTEM OF PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE THE GREAT. By W. T. ARNOLD, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

"Ought to prove a valuable handbook to the student of Roman history."—GUARDIAN.

**Beesly.**—STORIES FROM THE HISTORY OF ROME. By Mrs. BEESLY. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Bryce.**—THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE. By JAMES BRYCE, D.C.L., Fellow of Oriel College, and Regius Professor of Civil Law in the University of Oxford. Eighth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Buckland.**—OUR NATIONAL INSTITUTIONS. A Short Sketch for Schools. By ANNA BUCKLAND. 18mo. 1*s.*

**Buckley.**—A HISTORY OF ENGLAND FOR BEGINNERS. By ARABELLA BUCKLEY. With Maps. Globe 8vo. [*In the press,*

**Clarke.**—CLASS-BOOK OF GEOGRAPHY. By C. B. CLARKE, M.A., F.L.S., F.G.S., F.R.S. New Edition, with Eighteen Coloured Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.*

**Dicey.**—LECTURES INTRODUCTORY TO THE STUDY OF THE LAW OF THE CONSTITUTION. By A. V. DICEY, B.C.L., of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law; Vinerian Professor of English Law; Fellow of All Souls College, Oxford; Hon. LL.D. Glasgow. Second Edition. Demy 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

**Dickens's** DICTIONARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD, 1886-7. 18mo, sewed. 1*s.*

**Dickens's** DICTIONARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE, 1886-7. 18mo, sewed. 1*s.*
Both books (Oxford and Cambridge) bound together in one volume. Cloth. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Freeman.**—Works by EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford, &c.

OLD ENGLISH HISTORY. With Five Coloured Maps. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

METHODS OF HISTORICAL STUDY. A Course of Lectures. By the Same Author. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

HISTORICAL ESSAYS. First Series. Fourth Edition. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*
Contents:—The Mythical and Romantic Elements in Early English History—The Continuity of English History—The Relations between the Crown of England and Scotland—St. Thomas of Canterbury and his Biographers, &c.

HISTORICAL ESSAYS. Second Series. Second Edition, with additional Essays. 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*
Contents:—Ancient Greece and Mediæval Italy—Mr. Gadstone's Homer and the Homeric Ages—The Historians of Athens—The Athenian Democracy—Alexander the Great—Greece during the Macedonian Period—Mommsen's History of Rome—Lucius Cornelius Sulla—The Flavian Cæsars, &c., &c.

HISTORICAL ESSAYS. Third Series. 8vo. 12*s.*
Contents:—First Impressions of Rome—The Illyrian Emperors and their Land—Augusta Treverorum—The Goths at Ravenna—Race and Language—The Byzantine Empire—First Impressions of Athens—Mediæval and Modern Greece—The Southern Slaves—Sicilian Cycles—The Normans at Palermo.

THE GROWTH OF THE ENGLISH CONSTITUTION FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY. New Edition. Enlarged, with Maps, &c. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.* (Vol. I. of Historical Course for Schools.)

EUROPE. 18mo. 1*s.* (*History Primers.*)

CHIEF PERIODS OF EUROPEAN HISTORY. A Course of Lectures. 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Green.** — Works by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D., late Honorary Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford.

SHORT HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE. With Coloured Maps, Genealogical Tables, and Chronological Annals. Crown 8vo. *8s. 6d.* 121st Thousand.

"Stands alone as the one general history of the country, for the sake of which all others, if young and old are wise, will be speedily and surely set aside."—ACADEMY.

ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY, based on Green's "Short History of the English People." By C. W. A. TAIT, M.A., Assistant-Master, Clifton College. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

READINGS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY. Selected and Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN. Three Parts. Globe 8vo. *1s. 6d.* each. I. Hengist to Cressy. II. Cressy to Cromwell. III. Cromwell to Balaklava.

**Green.** — A SHORT GEOGRAPHY OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS. By JOHN RICHARD GREEN and ALICE STOPFORD GREEN. With Maps. Fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Grove.**—A PRIMER OF GEOGRAPHY. By Sir GEORGE GROVE, D.C.L. With Illustrations. 18mo. *1s.* (*Science Primers.*)

**Guest.**—LECTURES ON THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By M. J. GUEST. With Maps. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

**Historical Course for Schools**—Edited by EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford, Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford.

I.—GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Chronological Table, Maps, and Index. 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

II.—HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By EDITH THOMPSON. New Ed., revised and enlarged, with Coloured Maps. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

III.—HISTORY OF SCOTLAND. By MARGARET MACARTHUR. New Edition. 18mo. *2s.*

IV.—HISTORY OF ITALY. By the Rev. W. HUNT, M.A. New Edition, with Coloured Maps. 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

V.—HISTORY OF GERMANY. By J. SIME, M.A. New Edition Revised. 18mo. *3s.*

VI.—HISTORY OF AMERICA. By JOHN A. DOYLE. With Maps. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

VII.—EUROPEAN COLONIES. By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. With Maps. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

VIII.—FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. With Maps. 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

GREECE. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. [*In preparation.*

ROME. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. [*In preparation.*

**History Primers**—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D., Author of "A Short History of the English People."

ROME. By the Rev. M. CREIGHTON, M.A., Dixie Professor of Ecclesiastical History in the University of Cambridge. With Eleven Maps. 18mo. 1*s.*

GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A., Fellow and late Tutor of University College, Oxford. With Five Maps. 18mo. 1*s.*

EUROPEAN HISTORY. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D. With Maps. 18mo. 1*s.*

GREEK ANTIQUITIES. By the Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A. Illustrated. 18mo. 1*s.*

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By H. F. TOZER, M.A. 18mo. 1*s.*

GEOGRAPHY. By Sir G. GROVE, D.C.L. Maps. 18mo. 1*s.*

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Professor WILKINS. Illustrated. 18mo. 1*s.*

FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. 18mo. 1*s.*

**Hole.**—A GENEALOGICAL STEMMA OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND AND FRANCE. By the Rev. C. HOLE. On Sheet. 1*s.*

**Jennings**—CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES. Compiled by Rev. A. C. JENNINGS. [*In the press.*

**Kiepert.**—A MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. From the German of Dr. H. KIEPERT. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

**Labberton.**—AN HISTORICAL ATLAS. Comprising 141 Maps, to which is added, besides an Explanatory Text on the period delineated in each Map, a carefully selected Bibliography of the English Books and Magazine Articles bearing on that Period. By R. H. LABBERTON, Litt.Hum.D. 4to. 12*s.* 6*d.*

**Lethbridge.**—A SHORT MANUAL OF THE HISTORY OF INDIA. With an Account of INDIA AS IT IS. The Soil, Climate, and Productions; the People, their Races, Religions, Public Works, and Industries; the Civil Services, and System of Administration. By Sir ROPER LETHBRIDGE, M.A., C.I.E., late Scholar of Exeter College, Oxford, formerly Principal of Kishnaghur College, Bengal, Fellow and sometime Examiner of the Calcutta University. With Maps. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

**Michelet.**—A SUMMARY OF MODERN HISTORY. Translated from the French of M. MICHELET, and continued to the Present Time, by M. C. M. SIMPSON. Globe 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Otté.**—SCANDINAVIAN HISTORY. By E. C. OTTÉ. With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6*s.*

**Ramsay.**—A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME. By G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. With Maps. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Tait.**—ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY, based on Green's "Short History of the English People." By C. W. A. TAIT, M.A., Assistant-Master, Clifton College. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Wheeler.**—A SHORT HISTORY OF INDIA AND OF THE FRONTIER STATES OF AFGHANISTAN, NEPAUL, AND BURMA. By J. TALBOYS WHEELER. With Maps. Crown 8vo. *12s.*

**Yonge (Charlotte M.).** — CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe," Extra fcap. 8vo. New Edition. *5s.* each. (1) FROM ROLLO TO EDWARD II. (2) THE WARS IN FRANCE. (3) THE WARS OF THE ROSES. (4) REFORMATION TIMES. (5) ENGLAND AND SPAIN.

EUROPEAN HISTORY. Narrated in a Series of Historical Selections from the Best Authorities. Edited and arranged by E. M. SEWELL and C. M. YONGE. First Series, 1003—1154. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *6s.* Second Series, 1088—1228. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

## MODERN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE.

(1) English, (2) French, (3) German, (4) Modern Greek, (5) Italian.

### ENGLISH.

**Abbott.**—A SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR. An attempt to illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *6s.*

**Brooke.**—PRIMER OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. By the Rev. STOPFORD A. BROOKE, M.A. 18mo. *1s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

**Butler.**—HUDIBRAS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by ALFRED MILNES, M.A. Lon., late Student of Lincoln College, Oxford. Extra fcap 8vo. Part I. *3s. 6d.* Parts II. and III. *4s. 6d.*

**Cowper's** TASK: AN EPISTLE TO JOSEPH HILL, ESQ.; TIROCINIUM, or a Review of the Schools; and THE HISTORY OF JOHN GILPIN. Edited, with Notes, by WILLIAM BENHAM, B.D. Globe 8vo. *1s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

**Dowden.**—SHAKESPEARE. By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. *1s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

**Dryden.**—SELECT PROSE WORKS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor C. D. YONGE. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Gladstone.**—SPELLING REFORM FROM AN EDUCATIONAL POINT OF VIEW. By J. H. GLADSTONE, Ph.D., F.R.S., Member of the School Board for London. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

**Globe Readers.** For Standards I.—VI. Edited by A. F. MURISON. Sometime English Master at the Aberdeen Grammar School. With Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Primer I. | (48 pp.) 3*d.* | Book III. | (232 pp.) 1*s.* 3*d.* |
| Primer II. | (48 pp.) 3*d.* | Book IV. | (328 pp.) 1*s.* 9*d.* |
| Book I. | (96 pp.) 6*d.* | Book V. | (416 pp.) 2*s.* |
| Book II. | (136 pp.) 9*d.* | Book VI. | (448 pp.) 2*s.* 6*d.* |

"Among the numerous sets of readers before the public the present series is honourably distinguished by the marked superiority of its materials and the careful ability with which they have been adapted to the growing capacity of the pupils. The plan of the two primers is excellent for facilitating the child's first attempts to read. In the first three following books there is abundance of entertaining reading. . . . . Better food for young minds could hardly be found."—THE ATHENÆUM.

***The Shorter Globe Readers.**—With Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Primer I. | (48 pp.) 3*d.* | Standard III. | (178 pp.) 1*s.* |
| Primer II. | (48 pp.) 3*d.* | Standard IV. | (182 pp.) 1*s.* |
| Standard I. | (92 pp.) 6*d.* | Standard V. | (216 pp.) 1*s.* 3*d.* |
| Standard II. | (124 pp.) 9*d.* | Standard VI. | (228 pp.) 1*s.* 6*d.* |

* This Series has been abridged from "The Globe Readers" to meet the demand or smaller reading books.

**GLOBE READINGS FROM STANDARD AUTHORS.**

**Cowper's** TASK: AN EPISTLE TO JOSEPH HILL, ESQ.; TIROCINIUM, or a Review of the Schools; and THE HISTORY OF JOHN GILPIN. Edited, with Notes, by WILLIAM BENHAM, B.D. Globe 8vo. 1*s.*

**Goldsmith's** VICAR OF WAKEFIELD. With a Memoir of Goldsmith by Professor MASSON. Globe 8vo. 1*s.*

**Lamb's (Charles)** TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE. Edited, with Preface, by ALFRED AINGER, M.A. Globe 8vo. 2*s.*

**Scott's (Sir Walter)** LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL; and THE LADY OF THE LAKE. Edited, with Introductions and Notes, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. Globe 8vo. 1*s.*

MARMION; and the LORD OF THE ISLES. By the same Editor. Globe 8vo. 1*s.*

**The Children's Garland from the Best Poets.**—Selected and arranged by COVENTRY PATMORE. Globe 8vo. 2*s.*

**Yonge (Charlotte M.).**—A BOOK OF GOLDEN DEEDS OF ALL TIMES AND ALL COUNTRIES. Gathered and narrated anew by CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." Globe 8vo. 2*s.*

**Goldsmith.**—THE TRAVELLER, or a Prospect of Society; and THE DESERTED VILLAGE. By OLIVER GOLDSMITH. With Notes, Philological and Explanatory, by J. W. HALES, M.A. Crown 8vo. *6d.*

THE VICAR OF WAKEFIELD. With a Memoir of Goldsmith by Professor MASSON. Globe 8vo. *1s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

SELECT ESSAYS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor C. D. YONGE. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Hales.**—LONGER ENGLISH POEMS, with Notes, Philological and Explanatory, and an Introduction on the Teaching of English, Chiefly for Use in Schools. Edited by J. W. HALES, M.A., Professor of English Literature at King's College, London. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Johnson's** LIVES OF THE POETS. The Six Chief Lives (Milton, Dryden, Swift, Addison, Pope, Gray), with Macaulay's "Life of Johnson." Edited with Preface and Notes by MATTHEW ARNOLD. New and cheaper edition. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Lamb (Charles).**—TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE. Edited, with Preface, by ALFRED AINGER, M.A. Globe 8vo. *2s* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

**Literature Primers**—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D., Author of "A Short History of the English People."

ENGLISH COMPOSITION. By Professor NICHOL. 18mo. *1s.*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D., sometime President of the Philological Society. 18mo. *1s.*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES. By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and H. C. BOWEN, M.A. 18mo. *1s.*

EXERCISES ON MORRIS'S PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By JOHN WETHERELL, of the Middle School, Liverpool College. 18mo. *1s.*

ENGLISH LITERATURE. By STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. *1s.*

SHAKSPERE. By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. *1s.*

THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY. Selected and arranged with Notes by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. In Two Parts. 18mo. *1s.* each.

PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, M.A. 18mo. *1s.*

**Macmillan's Reading Books.**—Adapted to the English and Scotch Codes. Bound in Cloth.

PRIMER. 18mo. (48 pp.) *2d.*

BOOK I. for Standard I. 18mo. (96 pp.) *4d.*

BOOK II. for Standard II. 18mo. (144 pp.) *5d.*

BOOK III. for Standard III. 18mo. (160 pp.) *6d.*

BOOK IV. for Standard IV. 18mo. (176 pp.) *8d.*

**Macmillan's Reading Books** *(continued)*—

BOOK V. for Standard V. 18mo. (380 pp.) 1*s.*

BOOK VI. for Standard VI. Cr. 8vo. (430 pp.) 2*s.*

Book VI. is fitted for higher Classes, and as an Introduction to English Literature.

**Macmillan's Copy-Books**—

Published in two sizes, viz. :—

1. Large Post 4to. Price 4*d.* each.
2. Post Oblong. Price 2*d.* each.

1. INITIATORY EXERCISES AND SHORT LETTERS.
2. WORDS CONSISTING OF SHORT LETTERS.
*3. LONG LETTERS. With Words containing Long Letters—Figures.
*4. WORDS CONTAINING LONG LETTERS.
4a. PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK. For Nos. 1 to 4.
*5. CAPITALS AND SHORT HALF-TEXT. Words beginning with a Capital.
*6. HALF-TEXT WORDS beginning with Capitals—Figures.
*7. SMALL-HAND AND HALF-TEXT. With Capitals and Figures.
*8. SMALL-HAND AND HALF-TEXT. With Capitals and Figures.
8a. PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK. For Nos. 5 to 8.
*9. SMALL-HAND SINGLE HEADLINES—Figures.
10. SMALL-HAND SINGLE HEADLINES—Figures.
11. SMALL-HAND DOUBLE HEADLINES—Figures.
12. COMMERCIAL AND ARITHMETICAL EXAMPLES, &c.
12a. PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK. For Nos. 8 to 12.

* *These numbers may be had with Goodman's Patent Sliding Copies.* Large Post 4to. Price 6*d.* each.

**Martin.**—THE POET'S HOUR: Poetry selected and arranged for Children. By FRANCES MARTIN. New Edition. 18mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

SPRING-TIME WITH THE POETS: Poetry selected by FRANCES MARTIN. New Edition. 18mo. 3*s* 6*d.*

**Milton.**—By STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

**Morris.**—Works by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D.

HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE, comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word-formation. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR, containing Accidence and Word-formation. New Edition. 18mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 18mo. 1*s.* (See also *Literature Primers.*)

**Oliphant.**—THE OLD AND MIDDLE ENGLISH. A New Edition of "THE SOURCES OF STANDARD ENGLISH," revised and greatly enlarged. By T. L. KINGTON OLIPHANT. Extra fcap. 8vo. 9*s.*

**Oliphant**—Works by T. L. KINGTON OLIPHANT, (*continued*)—
THE NEW ENGLISH. By the same Author. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 21*s.*

**Palgrave.**—THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY. Selected and arranged, with Notes, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. 18mo. 2*s.* 6*d.* Also in Two Parts. 18mo. 1*s.* each.

**Patmore.**—THE CHILDREN'S GARLAND FROM THE BEST POETS. Selected and arranged by COVENTRY PATMORE. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

**Plutarch.**—Being a Selection from the Lives which Illustrate Shakespeare. North's Translation. Edited, with Introductions, Notes, Index of Names, and Glossarial Index, by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Scott's (Sir Walter)** LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL, and THE LADY OF THE LAKE. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. Globe 8vo. 1*s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

MARMION; and THE LORD OF THE ISLES. By the same Editor. Globe 8vo. 1*s.* (*Globe Readings from Standard Authors.*)

**Shakespeare.**—A SHAKESPERIAN GRAMMAR. By Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. Globe 8vo. 6*s.*

A SHAKESPEARE MANUAL. By F. G. FLEAY, M.A., late Head Master of Skipton Grammar School. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

PRIMER OF SHAKESPEARE. By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. 1*s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

**Sonnenschein and Meiklejohn.** — THE ENGLISH METHOD OF TEACHING TO READ. By A. SONNENSCHEIN and J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN, M.A. Fcap. 8vo.

COMPRISING:

THE NURSERY BOOK, containing all the Two-Letter Words in the Language. 1*d.* (Also in Large Type on Sheets for School Walls. 5*s.*)

THE FIRST COURSE, consisting of Short Vowels with Single Consonants. 6*d.*

THE SECOND COURSE, with Combinations and Bridges, consisting of Short Vowels with Double Consonants. 6*d.*

THE THIRD AND FOURTH COURSES, consisting of Long Vowels, and all the Double Vowels in the Language. 6*d.*

"These are admirable books, because they are constructed on a principle, and that the simplest principle on which it is possible to learn to read English."—SPECTATOR.

**Taylor.**—WORDS AND PLACES; or, Etymological Illustrations of History, Ethnology, and Geography. By the Rev. ISAAC TAYLOR, M.A., Litt. D., Hon. LL.D., Canon of York. Third and Cheaper Edition, revised and compressed. With Maps. Globe 8vo. *6s.*

**Tennyson.**—The COLLECTED WORKS of LORD TENNYSON, Poet Laureate. An Edition for Schools. In Four Parts. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* each.

**Thring.**—THE ELEMENTS OF GRAMMAR TAUGHT IN ENGLISH. By EDWARD THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham. With Questions. Fourth Edition. 18mo. *2s.*

**Vaughan (C.M.).**—WORDS FROM THE POETS. By C. M. VAUGHAN. New Edition. 18mo, cloth. *1s.*

**Ward.**—THE ENGLISH POETS. Selections, with Critical Introductions by various Writers and a General Introduction by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Edited by T. H. WARD, M.A. 4 Vols. Vol. I. CHAUCER TO DONNE.—Vol. II. BEN JONSON TO DRYDEN.—Vol. III. ADDISON TO BLAKE.—Vol. IV. WORDSWORTH TO ROSSETTI. Crown 8vo. Each *7s. 6d.*

**Wetherell.**—EXERCISES ON MORRIS'S PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By JOHN WETHERELL, M.A. 18mo. *1s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

**Woods.**—A FIRST SCHOOL POETRY BOOK. Compiled by M. A. WOODS, Head Mistress of the Clifton High School for Girls. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Yonge (Charlotte M.).**—THE ABRIDGED BOOK OF GOLDEN DEEDS. A Reading Book for Schools and general readers. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." 18mo, cloth. *1s.*

GLOBE READINGS EDITION. Complete Edition. Globe 8vo. *2s.* (See p. 54.)

## FRENCH.

**Beaumarchais.**—LE BARBIER DE SEVILLE. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by L. P. BLOUET, Assistant Master in St. Paul's School. Fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Bowen.**—FIRST LESSONS IN FRENCH. By H. COURTHOPE BOWEN, M.A., Principal of the Finsbury Training College for Higher and Middle Schools. Extra fcap. 8vo. *1s.*

**Breymann.**—Works by HERMANN BREYMANN, Ph.D., Professor of Philology in the University of Munich.

A FRENCH GRAMMAR BASED ON PHILOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

FIRST FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

SECOND FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d*

**Fasnacht.**—Works by G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT, Author of "Macmillan's Progressive French Course," Editor of "Macmillan's Foreign School Classics," &c.

THE ORGANIC METHOD OF STUDYING LANGUAGES. Extra fcap. 8vo. I. French. *3s. 6d.*

A SYNTHETIC FRENCH GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

GRAMMAR AND GLOSSARY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**Macmillan's Primary Series of French and German Reading Books.**—Edited by G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT, Assistant-Master in Westminster School. With Illustrations. Globe 8vo.

DE MAISTRE—LA JEUNE SIBÉRIENNE ET LE LÉPREUX DE LA CITÉ D'AOSTE. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. By STEPHANE BARLET, B.Sc. Univ. Gall. and London; Assistant-Master at the Mercers' School, Examiner to the College of Preceptors, the Royal Naval College, &c. *1s. 6d.*

GRIMM—KINDER UND HAUSMÄRCHEN. Selected and Edited, with Notes, and Vocabulary, by G. E. FASNACHT. *2s.*

HAUFF.—DIE KARAVANE. Edited, with Notes and Vocabulary, by HERMAN HAGER, Ph.D. Lecturer in the Owens College, Manchester. *2s. 6d.*

LA FONTAINE—A SELECTION OF FABLES. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by L. M. MORIARTY, B.A., Professor of French in King's College, London. *2s.*

PERRAULT—CONTES DE FÉES. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by G. E. FASNACHT. *1s.*

G. SCHWAB—ODYSSEUS. With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by the same Editor. [*In preparation.*

**Macmillan's Progressive French Course.**—By G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT, Assistant-Master in Westminster School.

I.—FIRST YEAR, containing Easy Lessons on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. *1s.*

II.—SECOND YEAR, containing an Elementary Grammar with copious Exercises, Notes, and Vocabularies. A new Edition, enlarged and thoroughly revised. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s.*

III.—THIRD YEAR, containing a Systematic Syntax, and Lessons in Composition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

THE TEACHER'S COMPANION TO MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE. With Copious Notes, Hints for Different Renderings, Synonyms, Philological Remarks, &c. By G. E. FASNACHT. Globe 8vo. *Second Year 4s. 6d. Third Year 4s. 6d.*

**Macmillan's Progressive French Readers.** By G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT.

I.—FIRST YEAR, containing Fables, Historical Extracts, Letters, Dialogues, Ballads, Nursery Songs, &c., with Two Vocabularies: (1) in the order of subjects; (2) in alphabetical order. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

II.—SECOND YEAR, containing Fiction in Prose and Verse, Historical and Descriptive Extracts, Essays, Letters, Dialogues, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Macmillan's Foreign School Classics.** Edited by G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT. 18mo.

FRENCH.

CORNEILLE—LE CID. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. *1s.*

DUMAS—LES DEMOISELLES DE ST. CYR. Edited by VICTOR OGER, Lecturer in University College, Liverpool. *1s. 6d.*

LA FONTAINE'S FABLES. Books I.—VI. Edited by L. M. MORIARTY, B.A., Professor of French in King's College, London. [*In preparation.*

MOLIÈRE—L'AVARE. By the same Editor. *1s.*

MOLIÈRE—LE BOURGEOIS GENTILHOMME. By the same Editor. *1s. 6d.*

MOLIÈRE—LES FEMMES SAVANTES. By G. E. FASNACHT. *1s.*

MOLIÈRE—LE MISANTHROPE. By the same Editor. *1s.*

MOLIÈRE—LE MÉDECIN MALGRE LUI. By the same Editor. *1s.*

RACINE—BRITANNICUS. Edited by EUGÈNE PELLISSIER, Assistant-Master in Clifton College, and Lecturer in University College, Bristol. *2s.*

FRENCH READINGS FROM ROMAN HISTORY. Selected from Various Authors and Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at Harrow. *4s. 6d.*

SAND, GEORGE—LA MARE AU DIABLE. Edited by W. E. RUSSELL, M.A., Assistant Master in Haileybury College. *1s.*

SANDEAU, JULES—MADEMOISELLE DE LA SEIGLIERE. Edited by H. C. STEEL, Assistant Master in Winchester College. *1s. 6d.*

THIERS'S HISTORY OF THE EGYPTIAN EXPEDITION. Edited by Rev. H. A. BULL, M.A. Assistant-Master in Wellington College. [*In preparation.*

VOLTAIRE—CHARLES XII. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. *3s. 6d.*

*** *Other volumes to follow.*

(See also *German Authors*, page 63.)

**Masson (Gustave).**—A COMPENDIOUS DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE (French-English and English-French). Adapted from the Dictionaries of Professor ALFRED ELWALL. Followed by a List of the Principal Diverging Derivations, and preceded by Chronological and Historical Tables. By GUSTAVE MASSON, Assistant Master and Librarian, Harrow School. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

**Molière.**—LE MALADE IMAGINAIRE. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by FRANCIS TARVER, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

(See also *Macmillan's Foreign School Classics.*)

**Pellissier.**—FRENCH ROOTS AND THEIR FAMILIES. A Synthetic Vocabulary, based upon Derivations, for Schools and Candidates for Public Examinations. By EUGÈNE PELLISSIER, M.A., B.Sc., LL.B., Assistant Master at Clifton College, Lecturer at University College, Bristol. Globe 8vo. *6s.*

## GERMAN.

**Huss.**—A SYSTEM OF ORAL INSTRUCTION IN GERMAN, by means of Progressive Illustrations and Applications of the leading Rules of Grammar. By HERMANN C. O. HUSS, Ph.D. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

**Macmillan's Progressive German Course.** By G EUGÈNE FASNACHT.

PART I.—FIRST YEAR. Easy Lessons and Rules on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

Part II.—SECOND YEAR. Conversational Lessons in Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Etymological Vocabulary. New Edition, enlarged and thoroughly recast. Extra fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Part III.—THIRD YEAR. [*In preparation.*

TEACHER'S COMPANION TO MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE. With copious Notes, Hints for Different Renderings, Synonyms, Philological Remarks, &c. By G. E. FASNACHT. Extra Fcap. 8vo. FIRST YEAR. *4s. 6d.*

SECOND YEAR. *4s. 6d.*

**Macmillan's Progressive German Readers.** By G. E. FASNACHT.

I.—FIRST YEAR, containing an Introduction to the German order of Words, with Copious Examples, extracts from German Authors in Prose and Poetry; Notes, and Vocabularies. Extra Fcap. 8vo., *2s. 6d.*

**Macmillan's Primary German Reading Books.**

(See page 60.)

**Macmillan's Foreign School Classics.** Edited by G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT, 18mo.

GERMAN.

FREYTAG (G.).—DOKTOR LUTHER. Edited by FRANCIS STORR, M.A., Head Master of the Modern Side, Merchant Taylors' School. [*In preparation.*

GOETHE—GOTZ VON BERLICHINGEN. Edited by H. A. BULL, M.A., Assistant Master at Wellington College. *2s.*

GOETHE—FAUST. PART I., followed by an Appendix on PART II. Edited by JANE LEE, Lecturer in German Literature at Newnham College, Cambridge. *4s. 6d.*

HEINE—SELECTIONS FROM THE REISEBILDER AND OTHER PROSE WORKS. Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant-Master at Harrow, late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.*

LESSING.—MINNA VON BARNHELM. Edited by JAMES SIME. [*In preparation.*

SCHILLER—SELECTIONS FROM SCHILLER'S LYRICAL POEMS. Edited, with Notes and a Memoir of Schiller, by E. J. TURNER, B.A., and E. D. A. MORSHEAD, M.A. Assistant-Masters in Winchester College. *2s. 6d.*

SCHILLER—DIE JUNGFRAU VON ORLEANS. Edited by JOSEPH GOSTWICK. *2s. 6d.*

SCHILLER—MARIA STUART. Edited by C. SHELDON, M.A., D.Lit., of the Royal Academical Institution, Belfast. *2s. 6d.*

SCHILLER—WILHELM TELL. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. [*In the press.*

SCHILLER.—WALLENSTEIN'S LAGER. Edited by H. B. COTTERILL, M.A. [*In preparation.*

UHLAND—SELECT BALLADS. Adapted as a First Easy Reading Book for Beginners. With Vocabulary. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. *1s.*

*** *Other Volumes to follow.*

(See also *French Authors*, page 61.)

**Pylodet.**—NEW GUIDE TO GERMAN CONVERSATION; containing an Alphabetical List of nearly 800 Familiar Words; followed by Exercises; Vocabulary of Words in frequent use; Familiar Phrases and Dialogues; a Sketch of German Literature, Idiomatic Expressions, &c. By L. PYLODET. 18mo, cloth limp. *2s. 6d.*

**Whitney.**—Works by W. D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit and Instructor in Modern Languages in Yale College.

A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

A GERMAN READER IN PROSE AND VERSE. With Notes and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

**Whitney and Edgren.**—A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY, with Notation of Correspondences and Brief Etymologies. By Professor W. D. WHITNEY, assisted by A. H. EDGREN. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

THE GERMAN-ENGLISH PART, separately, *5s.*

## MODERN GREEK.

**Vincent and Dickson.** — HANDBOOK TO MODERN GREEK. By EDGAR VINCENT and T. G. DICKSON, M.A. Second Edition, revised and enlarged, with Appendix on the relation of Modern and Classical Greek by Professor JEBB. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

## ITALIAN.

**Dante.** — THE PURGATORY OF DANTE. Edited, with Translation and Notes, by A. J. BUTLER, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

THE PARADISO OF DANTE. Edited, with Translation and Notes, by the same Author. Crown 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

## DOMESTIC ECONOMY.

**Barker.**—FIRST LESSONS IN THE PRINCIPLES OF COOKING. By LADY BARKER. New Edition. 18mo. *1s.*

**Berners.**—FIRST LESSONS ON HEALTH. By J. BERNERS. New Edition. 18mo. *1s.*

**Fawcett.**—TALES IN POLITICAL ECONOMY. By MILLICENT GARRETT FAWCETT. Globe 8vo. *3s.*

**Frederick.**—HINTS TO HOUSEWIVES ON SEVERAL POINTS, PARTICULARLY ON THE PREPARATION OF ECONOMICAL AND TASTEFUL DISHES. By Mrs. FREDERICK. Crown 8vo. *1s.*

"This unpretending and useful little volume distinctly supplies a desideratum . . . . The author steadily keeps in view the simple aim of 'making every-day meals at home, particularly the dinner, attractive,' without adding to the ordinary household expenses."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

**Grand'homme.**— CUTTING-OUT AND DRESSMAKING. From the French of Mdlle. E. GRAND'HOMME. With Diagrams. 18mo. *1s.*

**Jex-Blake.**—THE CARE OF INFANTS. A Manual for Mothers and Nurses. By SOPHIA JEX-BLAKE, M.D., Member of the Irish College of Physicians; Lecturer on Hygiene at the London School of Medicine for Women. 18mo. *1s.*

**Tegetmeier.**—HOUSEHOLD MANAGEMENT AND COOKERY. With an Appendix of Recipes used by the Teachers of the National School of Cookery. By W. B. TEGETMEIER. Compiled at the request of the School Board for London. 18mo. *1s.*

**Thornton.**—FIRST LESSONS IN BOOK-KEEPING. By J. THORNTON. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

The object of this volume is to make the theory of Book-keeping sufficiently plain for even children to understand it.

**Wright.**—THE SCHOOL COOKERY-BOOK. Compiled and Edited by C. E. GUTHRIE WRIGHT, Hon Sec. to the Edinburgh School of Cookery. 18mo. *1s.*

## ART AND KINDRED SUBJECTS.

**Anderson.**—LINEAR PERSPECTIVE, AND MODEL DRAWING. A School and Art Class Manual, with Questions and Exercises for Examination, and Examples of Examination Papers. By LAURENCE ANDERSON. With Illustrations. Royal 8vo. *2s.*

**Collier.**—A PRIMER OF ART. With Illustrations. By JOHN COLLIER. 18mo. *1s.*

**Delamotte.**—A BEGINNER'S DRAWING BOOK. By P. H. DELAMOTTE, F.S.A. Progressively arranged. New Edition improved. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Ellis.**—SKETCHING FROM NATURE. A Handbook for Students and Amateurs. By TRISTRAM J. ELLIS. With a Frontispiece and Ten Illustrations, by H. STACY MARKS, R.A., and Twenty-seven Sketches by the Author. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* (*Art at Home Series.*)

**Hunt.**—TALKS ABOUT ART. By WILLIAM HUNT. With a Letter from Sir J. E. MILLAIS, Bart., R.A. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**Taylor.**—A PRIMER OF PIANOFORTE PLAYING. By FRANKLIN TAYLOR. Edited by Sir GEORGE GROVE. 18mo. *1s.*

## WORKS ON TEACHING.

**Blakiston**—THE TEACHER. Hints on School Management. A Handbook for Managers, Teachers' Assistants, and Pupil Teachers. By J. R. BLAKISTON, M.A. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* (Recommended by the London, Birmingham, and Leicester School Boards.)

"Into a comparatively small book he has crowded a great deal of exceedingly useful and sound advice. It is a plain, common-sense book, full of hints to the teacher on the management of his school and his children."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

**Calderwood**—ON TEACHING. By Professor HENRY CALDERWOOD. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Carter.**—EYESIGHT IN SCHOOLS. A Paper read before the Association of Medical Officers of Schools on April 15th, 1885. By R. BRUDENELL CARTER, F.R.C.S., Ophthalmic Surgeon to St. George's Hospital. Crown 8vo. Sewed. *1s.*

**Fearon.**—SCHOOL INSPECTION. By D. R. FEARON, M.A., Assistant Commissioner of Endowed Schools. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

**Gladstone.**—OBJECT TEACHING. A Lecture delivered at the Pupil-Teacher Centre, William Street Board School, Hammersmith. By J. H. GLADSTONE, Ph.D., F.R.S., Member of the London School Board. With an Appendix. Crown 8vo. *3d.*

"It is a short but interesting and instructive publication, and our younger teachers will do well to read it carefully and thoroughly. There is much in these few pages which they can learn and profit by."—THE SCHOOL GUARDIAN.

**Hertel.**—OVERPRESSURE IN HIGH SCHOOLS IN DENMARK. By Dr. HERTEL, Municipal Medical Officer, Copenhagen. Translated from the Danish by C. GODFREY SÖRENSEN. With Introduction by Sir J. CRICHTON-BROWNE, M.D., LL.D., F.R.S. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

---

# DIVINITY.

*** For other Works by these Authors, see THEOLOGICAL CATALOGUE.

**Abbott (Rev. E. A.)**—BIBLE LESSONS. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

"Wise, suggestive, and really profound initiation into religious thought."—GUARDIAN.

**Abbott—Rushbrooke.**—THE COMMON TRADITION OF THE SYNOPTIC GOSPELS, in the Text of the Revised Version. By EDWIN A. ABBOTT, D.D., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and W. G. RUSHBROOKE, M.L., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

**The Acts of the Apostles.** — Being the Greek Text as revised by Professors WESTCOTT and HORT. With Explanatory Notes for the Use of Schools, by T. E. PAGE, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master at the Charterhouse. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

**Arnold.** — A BIBLE-READING FOR SCHOOLS. — THE GREAT PROPHECY OF ISRAEL'S RESTORATION (Isaiah, Chapters xl.—lxvi.). Arranged and Edited for Young Learners. By MATTHEW ARNOLD, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford, and Fellow of Oriel. New Edition. 18mo, cloth. 1*s.*

ISAIAH XL.—LXVI. With the Shorter Prophecies allied to it. Arranged and Edited, with Notes, by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

ISAIAH OF JERUSALEM, IN THE AUTHORISED ENGLISH VERSION. With Introduction, Corrections, and Notes. By MATTHEW ARNOLD. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Benham.**—A COMPANION TO THE LECTIONARY. Being a Commentary on the Proper Lessons for Sundays and Holy Days. By Rev. W. BENHAM, B.D., Rector of S. Edmund with S. Nicholas Acons, &c. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

**Cassel.**—MANUAL OF JEWISH HISTORY AND LITERATURE; preceded by a BRIEF SUMMARY OF BIBLE HISTORY. By DR. D. CASSEL. Translated by Mrs. HENRY LUCAS. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Cheetham.**—A CHURCH HISTORY OF THE FIRST SIX CENTURIES. By the Ven. ARCHDEACON CHEETHAM, Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

**Cross.**—BIBLE READINGS SELECTED FROM THE PENTATEUCH AND THE BOOK OF JOSHUA. By the Rev. JOHN A. CROSS. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**Curteis.**—MANUAL OF THE THIRTY-NINE ARTICLES. By G. H. CURTEIS, M.A., Principal of the Lichfield Theological College. [*In preparation.*

**Davies.**—THE EPISTLES OF ST. PAUL TO THE EPHESIANS, THE COLOSSIANS, AND PHILEMON; with Introductions and Notes, and an Essay on the Traces of Foreign Elements in the Theology of these Epistles. By the Rev. J. LLEWELYN DAVIES, M.A., Rector of Christ Church, St. Marylebone; late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition. Demy 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Drummond.**—THE STUDY OF THEOLOGY, INTRODUCTION TO. By JAMES DRUMMOND, LL.D., Professor of Theology in Manchester New College, London. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

**Gaskoin.**—THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF BIBLE STORIES. By Mrs. HERMAN GASKOIN. Edited with Preface by Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D. PART I.—OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. 18mo. 1*s.* PART II.—NEW TESTAMENT. 18mo. 1*s.* PART III.—THE APOSTLES: ST. JAMES THE GREAT, ST. PAUL, AND ST JOHN THE DIVINE. 18mo. 1*s.*

**Golden Treasury Psalter.**—Students' Edition. Being an Edition of "The Psalms Chronologically arranged, by Four Friends," with briefer Notes. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Greek Testament.**—Edited, with Introduction and Appendices, by CANON WESTCOTT and Dr. F. J. A. HORT. Two Vols. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I. The Text.

Vol. II. Introduction and Appendix.

**Greek Testament.**—Edited by Canon WESTCOTT and Dr. HORT. School Edition of Text. 12mo. cloth. 4*s.* 6*d.* 18mo. roan, red edges. 5*s.* 6*d.*

SCHOOL READINGS IN. A Course of Thirty-Six Lessons, mainly following the Narrative of St. Mark. Edited and Arranged, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. [*In the press.*

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES. Being the Greek Text as revised by Drs. WESTCOTT and HORT. With Explanatory Notes by T. E. PAGE, M.A., Assistant Master at the Charterhouse. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE GOSPEL ACCORDING TO ST. MARK. Being the Greek Text as revised by Drs. WESTCOTT and HORT. With Explanatory Notes by Rev. J. O. F. MURRAY, M.A., Lecturer in Emmanuel College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

**The Greek Testament and the English Version, a Companion to.** By PHILIP SCHAFF, D.D., President of the American Committee of Revision. With Facsimile Illustrations of MSS., and Standard Editions of the New Testament. Crown 8vo. 12*s.*

**Hardwick.**—Works by Archdeacon HARDWICK:—

A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH. Middle Age. From Gregory the Great to the Excommunication of Luther. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. With Four Maps. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH DURING THE REFORMATION. Eighth Edition. Edited by Professor STUBBS. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Jennings and Lowe.**—THE PSALMS, WITH INTRODUCTIONS AND CRITICAL NOTES. By A. C. JENNINGS, M.A.; assisted in parts by W. H. LOWE, M.A. In 2 vols. Second Edition Revised. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

**Lightfoot.**—Works by the Right Rev. J. B. LIGHTFOOT, D.D., D.C.L., LL.D., Lord Bishop of Durham.

ST. PAUL'S EPISTLE TO THE GALATIANS. A Revised Text, with Introduction, Notes, and Dissertations. Eighth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*

ST. PAUL'S EPISTLE TO THE PHILIPPIANS. A Revised Text, with Introduction, Notes, and Dissertations. Eighth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*

ST. CLEMENT OF ROME—THE TWO EPISTLES TO THE CORINTHIANS. A Revised Text, with Introduction and Notes. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

ST. PAUL'S EPISTLES TO THE COLOSSIANS AND TO PHILEMON. A Revised Text, with Introductions, Notes, and Dissertations. Eighth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE APOSTOLIC FATHERS. Part II. S. IGNATIUS—S. POLYCARP. Revised Texts, with Introductions, Notes, Dissertations, and Translations. 2 volumes in 3. Demy 8vo. 48*s.*

**Maclear.**—Works by the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D., Canon of Canterbury, Warden of St. Augustine's College, Canterbury, and late Head-Master of King's College School, London:—

A CLASS-BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. New Edition, with Four Maps. 18mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

A CLASS-BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, including the Connection of the Old and New Testaments. With Four Maps. New Edition. 18mo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

A SHILLING BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo, cloth. New Edition.

A SHILLING BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo, cloth. New Edition.

These works have been carefully abridged from the Author's large manuals.

CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

A FIRST CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND. With Scripture Proofs, for Junior Classes and Schools. New Edition. 18mo. 6*d.*

A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION FOR CONFIRMATION AND FIRST COMMUNION. WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS. 32mo, cloth extra, red edges. 2*s.*

**Maurice.**—THE LORD'S PRAYER, THE CREED, AND THE COMMANDMENTS. A Manual for Parents and Schoolmasters. To which is added the Order of the Scriptures. By the Rev. F. DENISON MAURICE, M.A. 18mo, cloth, limp. 1*s.*

**Pentateuch and Book of Joshua**: an Historico-Critical Inquiry into the Origin and Composition of the Hexateuch. By A. KUENEN, Professor of Theology at Leiden. Translated from the Dutch, with the assistance of the Author, by PHILIP H. WICKSTEED, M.A. 8vo. 14*s.*

**Procter.**—A HISTORY OF THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER, with a Rationale of its Offices. By Rev. F. PROCTER. M.A. Seventeenth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

**Procter and Maclear.**—AN ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION TO THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER. Rearranged and supplemented by an Explanation of the Morning and Evening Prayer and the Litany. By the Rev. F. PROCTER and the Rev. Dr. MACLEAR. New and Enlarged Edition, containing the Communion Service and the Confirmation and Baptismal Offices. 18mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

**The Psalms, with Introductions and Critical Notes.**—By A. C. JENNINGS, M.A., Jesus College, Cambridge, Tyrwhitt Scholar, Crosse Scholar, Hebrew University Prizeman, and Fry Scholar of St. John's College, Carus and Scholefield Prizeman, Vicar of Whittlesford, Cambs.; assisted in Parts by W. H. LOWE, M.A., Hebrew Lecturer and late Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge, and Tyrwhitt Scholar. In 2 vols. Second Edition Revised. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

**Ramsay.**—THE CATECHISER'S MANUAL; or, the Church Catechism Illustrated and Explained, for the Use of Clergymen, Schoolmasters, and Teachers. By the Rev. ARTHUR RAMSAY, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

**Ryle.**—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE CANON OF THE OLD TESTAMENT. By Rev. H. E. RYLE, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of King's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo.
[*In preparation.*

**St. John's Epistles.**—The Greek Text with Notes and Essays, by BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, D.D., Regius Professor of Divinity and Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, Canon of Westminster, &c. Second Edition Revised. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

**St. Paul's Epistles.**—Greek Text, with Introduction and Notes.

THE EPISTLE TO THE GALATIANS. Edited by the Right Rev. J. B. LIGHTFOOT, D.D., Bishop of Durham. Eighth Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE PHILIPPIANS. By the same Editor. Eighth Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

**St. Paul's Epistles** (*continued*)—

THE EPISTLE TO THE COLOSSIANS AND TO PHILEMON. By the same Editor. Eigthth Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS. Edited by the Very Rev. C. J. VAUGHAN, D.D., Dean of Llandaff, and Master of the Temple. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE PHILIPPIANS, with Translation, Paraphrase, and Notes for English Readers. By the same Editor. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE THESSALONIANS, COMMENTARY ON THE GREEK TEXT. By JOHN EADIE, D.D., LL.D. Edited by the Rev. W. YOUNG, M.A., with Preface by Professor CAIRNS. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLES TO THE EPHESIANS, THE COLOSSIANS, AND PHILEMON; with Introductions and Notes, and an Essay on the Traces of Foreign Elements in the Theology of these Epistles. By the Rev. J. LLEWELYN DAVIES, M.A., Rector of Christ Church, St. Marylebone; late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition, revised. Demy 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**The Epistle to the Hebrews.** In Greek and English. With Critical and Explanatory Notes. Edited by Rev. FREDERIC RENDALL, M.A., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow School. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**Westcott.**—Works by BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, D.D., Canon of Westminster, Regius Professor of Divinity, and Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

A GENERAL SURVEY OF THE HISTORY OF THE CANON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT DURING THE FIRST FOUR CENTURIES. Sixth Edition. With Preface on "Supernatural Religion." Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE FOUR GOSPELS. Sixth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

THE BIBLE IN THE CHURCH. A Popular Account of the Collection and Reception of the Holy Scriptures in the Christian Churches. New Edition. 18mo, cloth. 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE EPISTLES OF ST. JOHN. The Greek Text, with Notes and Essays. Second Edition Revised. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS. The Greek Text Revised, with Notes and Essays. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

SOME THOUGHTS FROM THE ORDINAL. Cr. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

**Westcott and Hort.** — THE NEW TESTAMENT IN THE ORIGINAL GREEK. The Text Revised by B. F. WESTCOTT, D.D., Regius Professor of Divinity, Canon of Westminster, and F. J. A. HORT, D.D., Hulsean Professor of Divinity; Fellow of Emmanuel College, Cambridge: late Fellows of Trinity College, Cambridge. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I. Text.

Vol. II. Introduction and Appendix.

THE NEW TESTAMENT IN THE ORIGINAL GREEK, FOR SCHOOLS. The Text Revised by BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, D.D., and FENTON JOHN ANTHONY HORT, D.D. 12mo. cloth. 4*s.* 6*d.* 18mo. roan, red edges. 5*s.* 6*d.*

**Wilson.** — THE BIBLE STUDENT'S GUIDE to the more Correct Understanding of the English Translation of the Old Testament, by reference to the original Hebrew. By WILLIAM WILSON, D.D., Canon of Winchester, late Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford. Second Edition, carefully revised. 4to. cloth. 25*s.*

**Wright.**—THE BIBLE WORD-BOOK: A Glossary of Archaic Words and Phrases in the Authorised Version of the Bible and the Book of Common Prayer. By W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A., Fellow and Bursar of Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

**Yonge (Charlotte M.).**—SCRIPTURE READINGS FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." In Five Vols.

FIRST SERIES. GENESIS TO DEUTERONOMY. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments, 3*s.* 6*d.*

SECOND SERIES. From JOSHUA to SOLOMON. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments, 3*s.* 6*d.*

THIRD SERIES. The KINGS and the PROPHETS. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments, 3*s.* 6*d.*

FOURTH SERIES. The GOSPEL TIMES. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments. Extra fcap. 8vo, 3*s.* 6*d.*

FIFTH SERIES. APOSTOLIC TIMES. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* With Comments, 3*s.* 6*d.*

**Zechariah—Lowe.**—THE HEBREW STUDENT'S COMMENTARY ON ZECHARIAH, HEBREW AND LXX. With Excursus on Syllable-dividing, Metheg, Initial Dagesh, and Siman Rapheh. By W. H. LOWE, M.A., Hebrew Lecturer at Christ's College, Cambridge. Demy 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

*Richard Clay & Sons, London and Bungay.*

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

JUL 30 1914

JUN 24 1921

MAY 8 1926

FEB 10 1941 M

JUN 24 1948

5Oct51CM

MAY 25 1952 LU

5Nov'56FC

REC'D LD

JAN 7 1957

29Sep'60LO

REC'D LD

DEC 22 1960

Nov 6 1 D

REC'D LD

JAN 4 1962

MAR 29 19

30m-6,'14

YB 00203

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES

C045912918